

Informix Guide to SQL

Syntax

Informix Extended Parallel Server, Version 8.3
Informix Dynamic Server.2000, Version 9.2

December 1999
Part No. 000-6527

Published by Informix® Press

Informix Corporation
4100 Bohannon Drive
Menlo Park, CA 94025-1032

© 1999 Informix Corporation. All rights reserved. The following are trademarks of Informix Corporation or its affiliates, one or more of which may be registered in the United States or other jurisdictions:

Answers OnLine™; C-ISAM®, Client SDK™; DataBlade®, Data Director™; Decision Frontier™; Dynamic Scalable Architecture™; Dynamic Server™; Dynamic Server™, Developer Edition™; Dynamic Server™ with Advanced Decision Support Option™; Dynamic Server™ with Extended Parallel Option™; Dynamic Server™ with MetaCube®; Dynamic Server™ with Universal Data Option™; Dynamic Server™ with Web Integration Option™; Dynamic Server™, Workgroup Edition™; Dynamic Virtual Machine™; Extended Parallel Server™; Formation™; Formation Architect™; Formation Flow Engine™; Gold Mine Data Access®, IIF.2000™; i.Reach™; i.Sell™; Illustra®, Informix®; Informix® 4GL; Informix® InquireSM; Informix® Internet Foundation.2000™; InformixLink®; Informix® Red Brick® Decision Server™; Informix Session Proxy™; Informix® Vista™; InfoShelf™; Interforum™; I-Spy™; Mediazation™; MetaCube®; NewEra™; ON-Bar™; OnLine Dynamic Server™; OnLine/Secure Dynamic Server™; OpenCase®, Orca™; PaVER™; Red Brick® and Design; Red Brick® Data Mine™; Red Brick® Mine Builder™; Red Brick® Decisionscape™; Red Brick® Ready™; Red Brick Systems®; Regency Support®, Rely on Red BrickSM; RISQL®, Solution DesignSM; STARindex™; STARjoin™; SuperView®, TARGETindex™; TARGETjoin™; The Data Warehouse Company®; The one with the smartest data wins.™; The world is being digitized. We're indexing it.SM; Universal Data Warehouse Blueprint™; Universal Database Components™; Universal Web Connect™; ViewPoint®, Visionary™; Web Integration Suite™. The Informix logo is registered with the United States Patent and Trademark Office. The DataBlade logo is registered with the United States Patent and Trademark Office.

Documentation Team: Linda Briscoe, Evelyn Eldridge, Kathy Schaefer Francis, Mary Kraemer, Barbara Nomiyama, Tom Noronha, Elaina Von Haas, Richelle White

GOVERNMENT LICENSE RIGHTS

Software and documentation acquired by or for the US Government are provided with rights as follows:

- (1) if for civilian agency use, with rights as restricted by vendor's standard license, as prescribed in FAR 12.212;
- (2) if for Dept. of Defense use, with rights as restricted by vendor's standard license, unless superseded by a negotiated vendor license, as prescribed in DFARS 227.7202. Any whole or partial reproduction of software or documentation marked with this legend must reproduce this legend.

Table of Contents

Introduction

In This Introduction	3
About This Manual	3
Types of Users	3
Software Dependencies	4
Assumptions About Your Locale.	4
Demonstration Databases	5
New Features	6
New Features in Version 8.3	6
New Features in Version 9.2	8
Documentation Conventions	10
Typographical Conventions	11
Icon Conventions	12
Syntax Conventions	14
Sample-Code Conventions.	19
Additional Documentation	19
On-Line Manuals	20
Printed Manuals	20
On-Line Help	20
Error Message Documentation	20
Documentation Notes, Release Notes, Machine Notes	21
Related Reading	22
Compliance with Industry Standards	22
Informix Welcomes Your Comments	23

Chapter 1

Overview of SQL Syntax

In This Chapter	1-3
How to Enter SQL Statements	1-4
How to Enter SQL Comments	1-6
Categories of SQL Statements	1-9
ANSI Compliance and Extensions	1-13

Chapter 2

SQL Statements

In This Chapter	2-5
ALLOCATE COLLECTION	2-6
ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR	2-8
ALLOCATE ROW	2-10
ALTER FRAGMENT	2-12
ALTER FUNCTION	2-41
ALTER INDEX	2-44
ALTER PROCEDURE	2-48
ALTER ROUTINE	2-51
ALTER TABLE	2-55
BEGIN WORK.	2-91
CLOSE	2-94
CLOSE DATABASE	2-98
COMMIT WORK.	2-100
CONNECT	2-103
CREATE AGGREGATE	2-115
CREATE CAST	2-119
CREATE DATABASE	2-124
CREATE DISTINCT TYPE	2-127
CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE	2-131
CREATE FUNCTION	2-146
CREATE FUNCTION FROM.	2-155
CREATE INDEX	2-157
CREATE OPAQUE TYPE	2-186
CREATE OPCLASS	2-193
CREATE PROCEDURE	2-199
CREATE PROCEDURE FROM	2-209
CREATE ROLE	2-212
CREATE ROUTINE FROM	2-214
CREATE ROW TYPE	2-216
CREATE SCHEMA	2-222
CREATE SYNONYM	2-226
CREATE TABLE	2-230
CREATE Temporary TABLE	2-286
CREATE TRIGGER	2-296
CREATE VIEW	2-334
DATABASE.	2-341
DEALLOCATE COLLECTION	2-343
DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR	2-345
DEALLOCATE ROW	2-347
DECLARE	2-349
DELETE	2-373

DESCRIBE	2-382
DISCONNECT	2-389
DROP AGGREGATE	2-393
DROP CAST	2-395
DROP DATABASE.	2-397
DROP FUNCTION	2-399
DROP INDEX	2-401
DROP OPCLASS	2-403
DROP PROCEDURE	2-404
DROP ROLE.	2-407
DROP ROUTINE	2-408
DROP ROW TYPE.	2-410
DROP SYNONYM.	2-412
DROP TABLE	2-413
DROP TRIGGER	2-417
DROP TYPE	2-418
DROP VIEW.	2-420
EXECUTE.	2-422
EXECUTE FUNCTION	2-434
EXECUTE IMMEDIATE.	2-441
EXECUTE PROCEDURE	2-444
FETCH.	2-455
FLUSH.	2-469
FREE	2-472
GET DESCRIPTOR	2-475
GET DIAGNOSTICS	2-483
GRANT	2-500
GRANT FRAGMENT	2-523
INFO	2-532
INSERT	2-535
LOAD	2-553
LOCK TABLE	2-563
OPEN	2-566
OUTPUT	2-577
PREPARE.	2-579
PUT.	2-593
RENAME COLUMN	2-604
RENAME DATABASE	2-606
RENAME TABLE	2-607
REVOKE	2-610
REVOKE FRAGMENT	2-628
ROLLBACK WORK	2-632

SELECT	2-634
SET AUTOFREE	2-691
SET CONNECTION.	2-694
SET Database Object Mode	2-700
SET DATASKIP	2-709
SET DEBUG FILE TO	2-712
SET DEFERRED_PREPARE	2-715
SET DESCRIPTOR	2-719
SET EXPLAIN.	2-730
SET ISOLATION	2-736
SET LOCK MODE	2-742
SET LOG	2-745
SET OPTIMIZATION	2-747
SET PDQPRIORITY	2-751
SET PLOAD FILE	2-755
SET Residency.	2-756
SET ROLE	2-758
SET SCHEDULE LEVEL	2-760
SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION.	2-761
SET STATEMENT CACHE	2-764
SET TRANSACTION	2-768
SET Transaction Mode	2-774
START VIOLATIONS TABLE	2-778
STOP VIOLATIONS TABLE	2-800
TRUNCATE	2-802
UNLOAD	2-805
UNLOCK TABLE	2-813
UPDATE	2-815
UPDATE STATISTICS	2-835
WHENEVER	2-848

Chapter 3 **SPL Statements**

In This Chapter	3-3
CALL.	3-4
CASE.	3-7
CONTINUE	3-10
DEFINE	3-11
EXIT	3-24
FOR	3-26
FOREACH	3-30
IF	3-37
LET	3-41

ON EXCEPTION	3-45
RAISE EXCEPTION	3-50
RETURN	3-52
SYSTEM	3-55
TRACE	3-58
WHILE.	3-62

Chapter 4 Segments

In This Chapter	4-3
Argument.	4-6
Collection Derived Table	4-9
Condition	4-27
Database Name	4-47
Database Object Name	4-50
Data Type.	4-53
DATETIME Field Qualifier	4-71
Expression	4-73
External Routine Reference.	4-202
Identifier	4-205
INTERVAL Field Qualifier	4-223
Jar Name	4-226
Literal Collection	4-227
Literal DATETIME.	4-231
Literal INTERVAL	4-234
Literal Number	4-237
Literal Row	4-239
Optimizer Directives	4-244
Owner Name	4-257
Quoted String	4-260
Relational Operator	4-265
Return Clause	4-270
Routine Modifier	4-274
Routine Parameter List	4-286
Shared-Object Filename	4-292
Specific Name	4-296
Statement Block.	4-298

Appendix A Reserved Words for Dynamic Server 2000

Appendix B Reserved Words for Extended Parallel Server

Index

Introduction

In This Introduction	3
About This Manual.	3
Types of Users	3
Software Dependencies	4
Assumptions About Your Locale.	4
Demonstration Databases	5
New Features.	6
New Features in Version 8.3	6
Performance Enhancements	6
New SQL Functionality	6
Version 8.3 Features from Version 7.30	7
New Features in Version 9.2	8
Extensibility Enhancements	8
Performance Improvements	9
Special Features	9
Version 9.2 Features from Dynamic Server 7.30	9
Documentation Conventions	10
Typographical Conventions	11
Icon Conventions	12
Comment Icons	12
Feature, Product, and Platform Icons	12
Compliance Icons	14
Syntax Conventions	14
Elements That Can Appear on the Path	15
How to Read a Syntax Diagram.	18
Sample-Code Conventions	19

Additional Documentation	19
On-Line Manuals	20
Printed Manuals	20
On-Line Help	20
Error Message Documentation	20
Documentation Notes, Release Notes, Machine Notes	21
Related Reading	22
Compliance with Industry Standards.	22
Informix Welcomes Your Comments	23

In This Introduction

This Introduction provides an overview of the information in this manual and describes the conventions it uses.

About This Manual

This manual contains all the syntax descriptions for structured query language (SQL) and Stored Procedure Language (SPL) statements for Version 9.2 of Informix Dynamic Server 2000 and Version 8.3 of Informix Extended Parallel Server.

This manual is a companion volume to the *Informix Guide to SQL: Reference*, the *Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial*, and the *Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation*. The *Informix Guide to SQL: Reference* provides reference information for aspects of SQL other than the language statements. The *Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial* shows how to use basic and advanced SQL and SPL routines to access and manipulate the data in your databases. The *Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation* shows how to use SQL to implement and manage your databases.

Types of Users

This manual is written for the following users:

- Database users
- Database administrators
- Database-application programmers

This manual assumes that you have the following background:

- A working knowledge of your computer, your operating system, and the utilities that your operating system provides
- Some experience working with relational databases or exposure to database concepts
- Some experience with computer programming

If you have limited experience with relational databases, SQL, or your operating system, refer to the [Getting Started](#) manual for your database server for a list of supplementary titles.

Software Dependencies

This manual assumes that you are using one of the following database servers:

- Informix Extended Parallel Server, Version 8.3
- Informix Dynamic Server 2000, Version 9.2

Assumptions About Your Locale

Informix products can support many languages, cultures, and code sets. All culture-specific information is brought together in a single environment, called a Global Language Support (GLS) locale.

This manual assumes that you use the U.S. 8859-1 English locale as the default locale. The default is **en_us.8859-1** (ISO 8859-1) on UNIX platforms or **en_us.1252** (Microsoft 1252) for Windows NT environments. This locale supports U.S. English format conventions for dates, times, and currency, and also supports the ISO 8859-1 or Microsoft 1252 code set, which includes the ASCII code set plus many 8-bit characters such as é, è, and ñ.

If you plan to use nondefault characters in your data or your SQL identifiers, or if you want to conform to the nondefault collation rules of character data, you need to specify the appropriate nondefault locale.

For instructions on how to specify a nondefault locale, additional syntax, and other considerations related to GLS locales, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

Demonstration Databases

The DB-Access utility, which is provided with your Informix database server products, includes one or more of the following demonstration databases:

- The **stores_demo** database illustrates a relational schema with information about a fictitious wholesale sporting-goods distributor. Many examples in Informix manuals are based on the **stores_demo** database.
- The **sales_demo** database illustrates a dimensional schema for data-warehousing applications. For conceptual information about dimensional data modeling, see the *Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation*. ♦
- The **superstores_demo** database illustrates an object-relational schema. The **superstores_demo** database contains examples of extended data types, type and table inheritance, and user-defined routines. ♦

For information about how to create and populate the demonstration databases, see the *DB-Access User's Manual*. For descriptions of the databases and their contents, see the *Informix Guide to SQL: Reference*.

The scripts that you use to install the demonstration databases reside in the **\$INFORMIXDIR/bin** directory on UNIX platforms and in the **%INFORMIXDIR%\bin** directory in Windows environments.

XPS

IDS

New Features

For a comprehensive list of new database server features, see the release notes. This section lists new features relevant to this manual.

New Features in Version 8.3

This manual describes new features in Version 8.3 of Extended Parallel Server. The features fall into the following areas:

- Performance enhancements
- New SQL functionality
- Version 8.3 features from Dynamic Server 7.30

Performance Enhancements

This manual describes the following performance enhancements to Version 8.3 of Extended Parallel Server:

- Insert cursors with simple large objects
- Coarse-grain index locks
- Updates with subquery in SET clause
- Index on aggregates

New SQL Functionality

This manual describes the following new SQL functionality in Version 8.3 of Extended Parallel Server:

- CASE statement in Stored Procedure Language (SPL)
- Creating a table with RANGE fragmentation
- DELETE...USING statement to delete rows based on a table join
- Globally detached indexes
- Load and unload simple large objects to external tables

- MIDDLE function
- Referential integrity for globally detached indexes
- TRUNCATE statement

Version 8.3 Features from Version 7.30

This manual describes the following features from Version 7.3 of Dynamic Server in Version 8.3 of Extended Parallel Server:

- Ability to retain update locks
- ALTER FRAGMENT attach with remainders
- ALTER TABLE to add or drop a foreign key constraint
- ALTER TABLE to add, drop, or modify a column
- Constraints on columns other than the fragmentation column
- COUNT function
- DBINFO provides all Version 7.3 information and adds the coserver ID and dbspace name
- Deferred constraints for all constraint types
- Deferred referential-integrity constraints
- Insert from SPL functions
- NVL and DECODE functions
- REPLACE, SUBSTR, LPAD, and RPAD functions for string manipulation
- RENAME COLUMN statement
- TO_CHAR and TO_DATE functions for date conversion
- Triggers
- UPDATE SET clause subqueries
- UPPER, LOWER, and INITCAP functions for case-insensitive search
- Memory-resident tables
- Violations table

New Features in Version 9.2

This manual describes new features in Version 9.2 of Dynamic Server. The features fall into the following areas:

- Extensibility enhancements
- Performance improvements
- Special features
- Version 9.2 features from Version 7.30 of Dynamic Server

Extensibility Enhancements

This manual describes the following extensibility enhancements to Version 9.2 of Dynamic Server:

- General enhancements to SQL:
 - Embedded newline characters in quoted strings
 - Nested dot expressions for row types
- Triggers on SELECT statements
- Enhancements to smart large objects:
 - Round-robin fragmentation for smart large objects
 - ALTER TABLE for smart large objects
- Enhancements to collections:
 - Collection constructors that use arbitrary expression elements
 - Collection-derived tables
 - Collection subqueries
- Enhancements to row types:
 - Serial types in row types
 - GRANT, REVOKE UNDER on row types
- Enhancements to user-defined routines (UDRs):
 - GRANT, REVOKE on UDR external languages
 - ALTER FUNCTION, PROCEDURE, ROUTINE statements
 - User-defined aggregates

Performance Improvements

This manual describes the following performance improvements to Version 9.2 of Dynamic Server:

- For SQL:
 - Parallel statement-local variables (SLVs)
 - SQL statement cache
- For UDRs:
 - Expensive-function optimization
 - Parallel UDRs
 - User-defined statistics routines

Special Features

This manual describes the following special features of Version 9.2 of Dynamic Server:

- Long identifiers:
 - 128-character identifier
 - 32-character user names
- Ability to retain update locks

Version 9.2 Features from Dynamic Server 7.30

This manual also describes features first released in Version 7.30. These features fall into the following areas:

- Reliability, availability, and serviceability:
 - ALTER FRAGMENT ATTACH, DETACH enhancements
- Performance:
 - Optimizer directives
 - Select first *n* rows
 - SET OPTIMIZATION statement enhancements
 - Memory-resident tables

- Application migration:
 - UPPER, LOWER, and INITCAP functions for case-insensitive search (for built-in types)
 - REPLACE, SUBSTR, LPAD, and RPAD functions for string manipulation (for built-in types)
 - UNION operator in CREATE VIEW statement
 - CASE expression
 - NVL and DECODE functions
 - TO_CHAR and TO_DATE date-conversion functions (for built-in types)
 - EXECUTE PROCEDURE syntax to update triggering columns
 - New arguments to the **dbinfo()** function to obtain the hostname and version of the database server

Documentation Conventions

This section describes the conventions that this manual uses. These conventions make it easier to gather information from this and other volumes in the documentation set.

The following conventions are discussed:

- Typographical conventions
- Icon conventions
- Syntax conventions
- Sample-code conventions

Typographical Conventions

This manual uses the following conventions to introduce new terms, illustrate screen displays, describe command syntax, and so forth.

Convention	Meaning
KEYWORD	All primary elements in a programming language statement (keywords) appear in uppercase letters in a serif font.
<i>italics</i> <i>italics</i> <i>italics</i>	Within text, new terms and emphasized words appear in italics. Within syntax and code examples, variable values that you are to specify appear in italics.
boldface <i>boldface</i>	Names of program entities (such as classes, events, and tables), environment variables, file and pathnames, and interface elements (such as icons, menu items, and buttons) appear in boldface.
monospace <i>monospace</i>	Information that the product displays and information that you enter appear in a monospace typeface.
KEYSTROKE	Keys that you are to press appear in uppercase letters in a sans serif font.
◆	This symbol indicates the end of one or more product- or platform-specific paragraphs.
→	This symbol indicates a menu item. For example, “Choose Tools→Options ” means choose the Options item from the Tools menu.



Tip: When you are instructed to “enter” characters or to “execute” a command, immediately press RETURN after the entry. When you are instructed to “type” the text or to “press” other keys, no RETURN is required.

Icon Conventions

Throughout the documentation, you will find text that is identified by several different types of icons. This section describes these icons.

Comment Icons

Comment icons identify three types of information, as the following table describes. This information always appears in italics.

Icon	Label	Description
	<i>Warning:</i>	Identifies paragraphs that contain vital instructions, cautions, or critical information
	<i>Important:</i>	Identifies paragraphs that contain significant information about the feature or operation that is being described
	<i>Tip:</i>	Identifies paragraphs that offer additional details or shortcuts for the functionality that is being described

Feature, Product, and Platform Icons

Feature, product, and platform icons identify paragraphs that contain feature-specific, product-specific, or platform-specific information.

Icon	Description
	Identifies information that is specific to C user-defined routines (UDRs)
	Identifies information that is specific to DB-Access
	Identifies information that is specific to Informix ESQL/C

(1 of 2)

Icon	Description
Ext	Identifies information that is specific to external routines, that is, UDRs written in both C and Java.
GLS	Identifies information that relates to the Informix Global Language Support (GLS) feature
IDS	Identifies information that is specific to Informix Dynamic Server 2000
Java	Identifies information that is specific to UDRs written in Java
SQL E	Identifies information that is specific to SQL Editor, which is a component of Informix Enterprise Command Center for Dynamic Server
UNIX	Identifies information that is specific to UNIX platforms
WIN NT	Identifies information that is specific to the Windows NT environment
XPS	Identifies information or syntax that is specific to Informix Extended Parallel Server

(2 of 2)

These icons can apply to an entire section or to one or more paragraphs within a section. If an icon appears next to a section heading, the information that applies to the indicated feature, product, or platform ends at the next heading at the same or higher level. A ♦ symbol indicates the end of feature-, product-, or platform-specific information that appears in one or more paragraphs within a section.

Compliance Icons

Compliance icons indicate paragraphs that provide guidelines for complying with a standard.

Icon	Description
ANSI	Identifies information that is specific to an ANSI-compliant database
X/O	Identifies functionality that conforms to X/Open
+	Identifies information or syntax that is an Informix extension to ANSI SQL-92 entry-level standard SQL

These icons can apply to an entire section or to one or more paragraphs within a section. If an icon appears next to a section heading, the information that applies to the indicated feature, product, or platform ends at the next heading at the same or higher level. A ♦ symbol indicates the end of feature-, product-, or platform-specific information that appears within one or more paragraphs within a section.

Syntax Conventions

This section describes conventions for syntax diagrams. Each diagram displays the sequences of required and optional keywords, terms, and symbols that are valid in a given statement or segment, as [Figure 1](#) shows.

Figure 1
Example of a Simple Syntax Diagram



Each syntax diagram begins at the upper-left corner and ends at the upper-right corner with a vertical terminator. Between these points, any path that does not stop or reverse direction describes a possible form of the statement.

Syntax elements in a path represent terms, keywords, symbols, and segments that can appear in your statement. The path always approaches elements from the left and continues to the right, except in the case of separators in loops. For separators in loops, the path approaches counterclockwise. Unless otherwise noted, at least one blank character separates syntax elements.

Elements That Can Appear on the Path

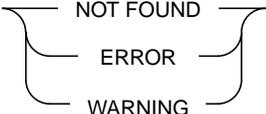
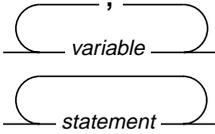
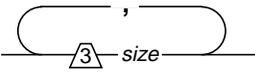
You might encounter one or more of the following elements on a path.

Element	Description
KEYWORD	A word in UPPERCASE letters is a keyword. You must spell the word exactly as shown; however, you can use either uppercase or lowercase letters.
(. , ; @ + * - /)	Punctuation and other nonalphanumeric characters are literal symbols that you must enter exactly as shown.
' '	Single quotes are literal symbols that you must enter as shown.
<i>variable</i>	A word in italics represents a value that you must supply. A table immediately following the diagram explains the value.
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block; margin-bottom: 5px;">ADD Clause p. 3-288</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">ADD Clause</div>	A reference in a box represents a subdiagram. Imagine that the subdiagram is spliced into the main diagram at this point. When a page number is not specified, the subdiagram appears on the same page.
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">Back to ADD Clause p. 1-14</div>	A reference in a box in the upper-right corner of a subdiagram refers to the next higher-level diagram of which this subdiagram is a member.
<div style="background-color: black; color: white; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">E/C</div>	An icon is a warning that this path is valid only for some products, or only under certain conditions. Characters on the icons indicate what products or conditions support the path.
	These icons might appear in a syntax diagram:

(1 of 3)

Element	Description
C	This path is valid only for C user-defined routines (UDRs).
DB	This path is valid only for DB-Access.
E/C	This path is valid only for Informix ESQL/C.
Ext	This path is valid only for external routines, that is, UDRs written in C and Java.
GLS	This path is recommended only if you use a nondefault locale.
Java	This path is valid only for UDRs written in Java.
IDS	This path is valid only for Dynamic Server.
SPL	This path is valid only if you are using Informix Stored Procedure Language (SPL).
XPS	This path is valid only for Extended Parallel Server.
+	This path is an Informix extension to ANSI SQL-92 entry-level standard SQL. If you initiate Informix extension checking and include this syntax branch, you receive a warning. If you have set the DBANSIWARN environment variable at compile time, or have used the -ansi compile flag, you receive warnings at compile time. If you have DBANSIWARN set at runtime, or if you compiled with the -ansi flag, warning flags are set in the sqlwarn structure. The Informix extension warnings tend to be conservative. Sometimes the warnings appear even when a syntax path conforms to the ANSI standard.

(2 of 3)

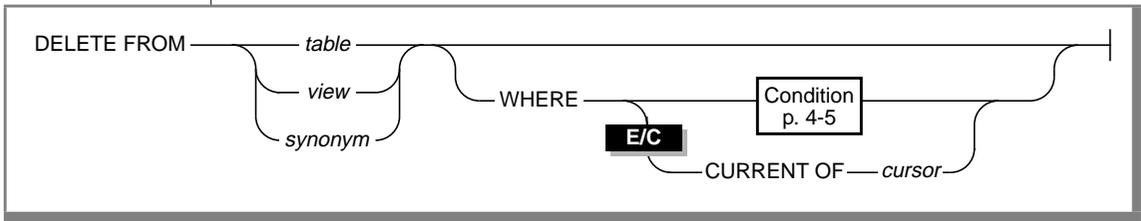
Element	Description
	<p>A shaded option is the default action.</p>
	<p>Syntax within a pair of arrows is a subdiagram.</p>
	<p>The vertical line terminates the syntax diagram.</p>
	<p>A branch below the main path indicates an optional path. (Any term on the main path is required, unless a branch can circumvent it.)</p>
	<p>A set of multiple branches indicates that a choice among more than two different paths is available.</p>
	<p>A loop indicates a path that you can repeat. Punctuation along the top of the loop indicates the separator symbol for list items. If no symbol appears, a blank space is the separator.</p>
	<p>A gate ($\triangle 3$) on a path indicates that you can only use that path the indicated number of times, even if it is part of a larger loop. You can specify <i>size</i> no more than three times within this statement segment.</p>

(3 of 3)

How to Read a Syntax Diagram

Figure 2 shows a syntax diagram that uses most of the path elements that the previous table lists.

Figure 2
Example of a Syntax Diagram



To use this diagram to construct a statement, start at the top left with the keyword `DELETE FROM`. Follow the diagram to the right, proceeding through the options that you want.

Figure 2 illustrates the following steps:

1. Type `DELETE FROM`.
2. You can delete a table, view, or synonym:
 - Type the table name, view name, or synonym, as you desire.
 - You can type `WHERE` to limit the rows to delete.
 - If you type `WHERE` and you are using DB-Access or the SQL Editor, you must include the Condition clause to specify a condition to delete. To find the syntax for specifying a condition, go to the “Condition” segment on the specified page.
 - If you are using ESQL/C, you can include either the Condition clause to delete a specific condition or the `CURRENT OF cursor` clause to delete a row from the table.
3. Follow the diagram to the terminator.
Your `DELETE` statement is complete.

Sample-Code Conventions

Examples of SQL code occur throughout this manual. Except where noted, the code is not specific to any single Informix application development tool. If only SQL statements are listed in the example, they are not delimited by semicolons. For instance, you might see the code in the following example:

```
CONNECT TO stores_demo
...

DELETE FROM customer
      WHERE customer_num = 121
...

COMMIT WORK
DISCONNECT CURRENT
```

To use this SQL code for a specific product, you must apply the syntax rules for that product. For example, if you are using DB-Access, you must delimit multiple statements with semicolons. If you are using an SQL API, you must use EXEC SQL at the start of each statement and a semicolon (or other appropriate delimiter) at the end of the statement.



***Tip:** Ellipsis points in a code example indicate that more code would be added in a full application, but it is not necessary to show it to describe the concept being discussed.*

For detailed directions on using SQL statements for a particular application development tool or SQL API, see the manual for your product.

Additional Documentation

For additional information, you might want to refer to the following types of documentation:

- On-line manuals
- Printed manuals
- On-line help
- Error message documentation
- Documentation notes, release notes, and machine notes
- Related reading

On-Line Manuals

An Answers OnLine CD that contains Informix manuals in electronic format is provided with your Informix products. You can install the documentation or access it directly from the CD. For information about how to install, read, and print on-line manuals, see the installation insert that accompanies Answers OnLine.

Informix on-line manuals are also available on the following Web site:

www.informix.com/answers

Printed Manuals

To order printed manuals, call 1-800-331-1763 or send email to moreinfo@informix.com. Please provide the following information when you place your order:

- The documentation that you need
- The quantity that you need
- Your name, address, and telephone number

WIN NT

On-Line Help

Informix provides on-line help with each graphical user interface (GUI) that displays information about those interfaces and the functions that they perform. Use the help facilities that each GUI provides to display the on-line help.

Error Message Documentation

Informix software products provide ASCII files that contain all of the Informix error messages and their corrective actions.

UNIX

To read error messages and corrective actions on UNIX, use one of the following utilities.

Utility	Description
finderr	Displays error messages on line
rofferr	Formats error messages for printing

**WIN NT**

To read error messages and corrective actions in Windows environments, use the **Informix Find Error** utility. To display this utility, choose **Start→Programs→Informix** from the Task Bar. ◆

Instructions for using the preceding utilities are available in Answers OnLine. Answers OnLine also provides a listing of error messages and corrective actions in HTML format.

Documentation Notes, Release Notes, Machine Notes

In addition to printed documentation, the following sections describe the on-line files that supplement the information in this manual. Please examine these files before you begin using your database server. They contain vital information about application and performance issues.

On UNIX platforms, the following on-line files appear in the **\$INFORMIXDIR/release/en_us/0333** directory. Replace **x.y** in the filenames with the version number of your database server.

On-Line File	Purpose
SQLDOC_x.y	The documentation-notes file for your version of this manual describes topics that are not covered in the manual or that were modified since publication.
SERVERS_x.y	The release-notes file describes feature differences from earlier versions of Informix products and how these differences might affect current products. This file also contains information about any known problems and their workarounds.
IDS_9.2 or XPS_x.y	The machine-notes file describes any special actions that you must take to configure and use Informix products on your computer. Machine notes are named for the product described.

UNIX

The following items appear in the **Informix** folder. To display this folder, choose **Start→Programs→Informix** from the Task Bar.

Program Group Item	Description
Documentation Notes	This item includes additions or corrections to manuals, along with information about features that might not be covered in the manuals or that have been modified since publication.
Release Notes	This item describes feature differences from earlier versions of Informix products and how these differences might affect current products. This file also contains information about any known problems and their workarounds.

Machine notes do not apply to Windows environments. ♦

Related Reading

For a list of publications that provide an introduction to database servers and operating-system platforms, refer to your *Getting Started* manual.

Compliance with Industry Standards

The American National Standards Institute (ANSI) has established a set of industry standards for SQL. Informix SQL-based products are fully compliant with SQL-92 Entry Level (published as ANSI X3.135-1992), which is identical to ISO 9075:1992. In addition, many features of Informix database servers comply with the SQL-92 Intermediate and Full Level and X/Open SQL CAE (common applications environment) standards.

Informix Welcomes Your Comments

Let us know what you like or dislike about our manuals. To help us with future versions of our manuals, we want to know about any corrections or clarifications that you would find useful. Include the following information:

- The name and version of the manual that you are using
- Any comments that you have about the manual
- Your name, address, and phone number

Send electronic mail to us at the following address:

`doc@informix.com`

The **doc** alias is reserved exclusively for reporting errors and omissions in our documentation.

We appreciate your suggestions.

Overview of SQL Syntax

In This Chapter	1-3
How to Enter SQL Statements	1-4
How to Enter SQL Comments	1-6
Categories of SQL Statements	1-9
ANSI Compliance and Extensions	1-13



In This Chapter

This chapter provides information about how to use the SQL statements, SPL statements, and segments that are discussed in the later chapters of this book. It is organized into the following sections.

Section	Starting Page	Scope
“How to Enter SQL Statements”	1-4	This section shows how to use the statement diagrams and descriptions to enter SQL statements correctly.
“How to Enter SQL Comments”	1-6	This section shows how to enter comments for SQL statements.
“Categories of SQL Statements”	1-9	This section lists SQL statements by functional category.
“ANSI Compliance and Extensions”	1-13	This section lists SQL statements by degree of ANSI compliance.

How to Enter SQL Statements

The purpose of the statement descriptions in this manual is to help you to enter SQL statements successfully. Each statement description includes the following information:

- A brief introduction that explains the purpose of the statement
- A syntax diagram that shows how to enter the statement correctly
- A syntax table that explains each input parameter in the syntax diagram
- Rules of usage, including examples that illustrate these rules

If a statement consists of multiple clauses, the statement description provides the same set of information for each clause.

Each statement description concludes with references to related information in this manual and other manuals.

The major aids for entering SQL statements include:

- the combination of the syntax diagram and syntax table.
- the examples of syntax that appear in the rules of usage.
- the references to related information.

Using Syntax Diagrams and Syntax Tables

Before you try to use the syntax diagrams in this chapter, it is helpful to read the “[Syntax Conventions](#)” on page 14 of the Introduction. This section is the key to understanding the syntax diagrams in the statement descriptions.

The Syntax Conventions section explains the elements that can appear in a syntax diagram and the paths that connect the elements to each other. This section also includes a sample syntax diagram that illustrates the major elements of all syntax diagrams. The narrative that follows the sample diagram shows how to read the diagram in order to enter the statement successfully.

When a syntax diagram within a statement description includes input parameters, the syntax diagram is followed by a syntax table that shows how to enter the parameters without generating errors. Each syntax table includes the following columns:

- The **Elements** column lists the name of each parameter as it appears in the syntax diagram.
- The **Purpose** column briefly states the purpose of the parameter. If the parameter has a default value, it is listed in this column.
- The **Restrictions** column summarizes the restrictions on the parameter, such as acceptable ranges of values.
- The **Syntax** column points to the SQL segment that gives the detailed syntax for the parameter.

Using Examples

To understand the main syntax diagram and subdiagrams for a statement, study the examples of syntax that appear in the rules of usage for each statement. These examples have two purposes:

- To show how to accomplish particular tasks with the statement or its clauses
- To show how to use the syntax of the statement or its clauses in a concrete way



***Tip:** An efficient way to understand a syntax diagram is to find an example of the syntax and compare it with the keywords and parameters in the syntax diagram. By mapping the concrete elements of the example to the abstract elements of the syntax diagram, you can understand the syntax diagram and use it more effectively.*

For an explanation of the conventions used in the examples in this manual, see [“Sample-Code Conventions”](#) on page 19 of the Introduction.

Using Related Information

For help in understanding the concepts and terminology in the SQL statement description, check the “Related Information” section at the end of each statement.

This section points to related information in this manual and other manuals that helps you to understand the statement in question. The section provides some or all of the following information:

- The names of related statements that might contain a fuller discussion of topics in this statement
- The titles of other manuals that provide extended discussions of topics in this statement

Tip: If you do not have extensive knowledge and experience with SQL, the “[Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#)” gives you the basic SQL knowledge that you need to understand and use the statement descriptions in this manual.



How to Enter SQL Comments

You can add comments to clarify the purpose or effect of particular SQL statements. You can also use comment symbols during program development to disable selected statements without deleting them from your source code.

Your comments can help you or others to understand the role of the statement within a program, SPL routine, or command file. The code examples in this manual sometimes include comments that clarify the role of an SQL statement within the code.

The following table shows the SQL comment symbols that you can enter in your code. A *Y* in a column signifies that you can use the symbol with the product or database type named in the column heading. An *N* in a column signifies that you cannot use the symbol with the product or database type that the column heading names.

Comment Symbol	ESQL/C	SPL Routine	DB-Access	ANSI-Compliant Databases	Databases That Are Not ANSI Compliant	Description
double dash (--)	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	The double dash precedes the comment. The double dash can comment only a single line. To comment more than one line, you must put the double dash at the beginning of each comment line.
braces ({})	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Braces enclose the comment. The { precedes the comment, and the } follows the comment. You can use braces for single-line comments or for multiple-line comments. Comments cannot be nested.

ANSI

If the product that you are using supports both comment symbols, your choice of a comment symbol depends on your requirements for ANSI compliance:

- The double dash (--) complies with the ANSI SQL standard.
- Braces ({}) are an Informix extension to the standard.

If ANSI compliance is not an issue, your choice of comment symbols is a matter of personal preference. ♦

DB

In DB-Access, you can use either comment symbol when you enter SQL statements with the SQL editor and when you create SQL command files with the SQL editor or a system editor. An SQL command file is an operating-system file that contains one or more SQL statements. Command files are also known as command scripts. For more information about command files, see the discussion of command scripts in the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#). For information on how to create and modify command files with the SQL editor or a system editor in DB-Access, see the [DB-Access User's Manual](#). ♦

SPL

You can use either comment symbol in any line of an SPL routine. See the discussion of how to comment and document an SPL routine in the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#). ♦

In ESQL/C, you can use the double dash (--) to comment SQL statements. For further information on the use of SQL comment symbols and language-specific comment symbols in ESQL/C programs, see the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#). ♦

Examples of SQL Comment Symbols

Some simple examples can help to illustrate the different ways to use the SQL comment symbols.

Examples of the Double-Dash Symbol

The following example shows the use of the double dash (--) to comment an SQL statement. In this example, the comment appears on the same line as the statement.

```
SELECT * FROM customer -- Selects all columns and rows
```

In the following example, the user enters the same SQL statement and the same comment as in the preceding example, but the user places the comment on a line by itself:

```
SELECT * FROM customer
-- Selects all columns and rows
```

In the following example, the user enters the same SQL statement as in the preceding example but now enters a multiple-line comment:

```
SELECT * FROM customer
-- Selects all columns and rows
-- from the customer table
```

Examples of the Braces Symbols

The following example shows the use of braces ({} to comment an SQL statement. In this example, the comment appears on the same line as the statement.

```
SELECT * FROM customer {Selects all columns and rows}
```

In the following example, the user enters the same SQL statement and the same comment as in the preceding example but places the comment on a line by itself:

```
SELECT * FROM customer
      {Selects all columns and rows}
```

In the following example, the user enters the same SQL statement as in the preceding example but enters a multiple-line comment:

```
SELECT * FROM customer
      {Selects all columns and rows
      from the customer table}
```

GLS

Non-ASCII Characters in SQL Comments

You can enter non-ASCII characters (including multibyte characters) in SQL comments if your locale supports a code set with the non-ASCII characters. For further information on the GLS aspects of SQL comments, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

Categories of SQL Statements

SQL statements are divided into the following categories:

- Data definition statements
- Data manipulation statements
- Cursor manipulation statements
- Cursor optimization statements
- Dynamic management statements
- Data access statements
- Data integrity statements
- Optimization statements
- Routine Definition statements
- Auxiliary statements
- Client/server connection statements
- Optical subsystem statements

The specific statements for each category are as follows.

Data Definition Statements

ALTER FRAGMENT	CREATE TEMPORARY TABLE
ALTER FUNCTION	CREATE TRIGGER
ALTER INDEX	CREATE VIEW
ALTER PROCEDURE	DATABASE
ALTER ROUTINE	DROP AGGREGATE
ALTER TABLE	DROP CAST
CLOSE DATABASE	DROP DATABASE
CREATE AGGREGATE	DROP INDEX
CREATE CAST	DROP PROCEDURE
CREATE DATABASE	DROP ROLE
CREATE DISTINCT TYPE	DROP ROW TYPE
CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE	DROP SYNONYM
CREATE INDEX	DROP TABLE
CREATE OPAQUE TYPE	DROP TRIGGER
CREATE PROCEDURE	DROP VIEW
CREATE PROCEDURE FROM	RENAME COLUMN
CREATE ROLE	RENAME DATABASE
CREATE ROW TYPE	RENAME TABLE
CREATE SCHEMA	TRUNCATE
CREATE SYNONYM	
CREATE TABLE	

Data Manipulation Statements

DELETE	SELECT
INSERT	UNLOAD
LOAD	UPDATE

Cursor Manipulation Statements

CLOSE	FREE
DECLARE	OPEN
FETCH	PUT
FLUSH	SET AUTOFREE

Cursor Optimization Statements

SET AUTOFREE
SET DEFERRED_PREPARE

Dynamic Management Statements

ALLOCATE COLLECTION	EXECUTE
ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR	EXECUTE IMMEDIATE
ALLOCATE ROW	FREE
DEALLOCATE COLLECTION	GET DESCRIPTOR
DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR	PREPARE
DEALLOCATE ROW	SET DEFERRED_PREPARE
DESCRIBE	SET DESCRIPTOR

Data Access Statements

GRANT	SET LOCK MODE
GRANT FRAGMENT	SET ROLE
LOCK TABLE	SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION
REVOKE	SET TRANSACTION
REVOKE FRAGMENT	SET TRANSACTION MODE
SET ISOLATION	UNLOCK TABLE

Data Integrity Statements

BEGIN WORK	SET PLOAD FILE
COMMIT WORK	SET TRANSACTION MODE
ROLLBACK WORK	START VIOLATIONS TABLE
SET DATABASE OBJECT MODE	STOP VIOLATIONS TABLE
SET LOG	

Optimization Statements

SET EXPLAIN	SET SCHEDULE LEVEL
SET OPTIMIZATION	SET STATEMENT CACHE
SET PDQPRIORITY	UPDATE STATISTICS
SET RESIDENCY	

Routine Definition Statements

ALTER FUNCTION	CREATE ROUTINE FROM
ALTER PROCEDURE	DROP FUNCTION
ALTER ROUTINE	DROP PROCEDURE
CREATE FUNCTION	DROP ROUTINE
CREATE FUNCTION FROM	EXECUTE FUNCTION
CREATE PROCEDURE	EXECUTE PROCEDURE
CREATE PROCEDURE FROM	SET DEBUG FILE TO

Auxiliary Statements

INFO	SET DATASKIP
OUTPUT	WHENEVER
GET DIAGNOSTICS	

Client/Server Connection Statements

CONNECT	SET CONNECTION
DISCONNECT	

IDS

Optical Subsystem Statements

ALTER OPTICAL CLUSTER	RELEASE
CREATE OPTICAL CLUSTER	RESERVE
DROP OPTICAL CLUSTER	SET MOUNTING TIMEOUT

Important: *Optical Subsystem statements are described in the “[Guide to the Optical Subsystem](#).”*



ANSI Compliance and Extensions

The following lists show statements that are compliant with the ANSI SQL-92 standard at the entry level, statements that are ANSI compliant but include Informix extensions, and statements that are Informix extensions to the ANSI standard.

ANSI-Compliant Statements

CLOSE	SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION
COMMIT WORK	SET TRANSACTION
ROLLBACK WORK	

ANSI-Compliant Statements with Informix Extensions

CREATE SCHEMA AUTHORIZATION	GRANT
CREATE TABLE	INSERT
CREATE TEMPORARY TABLE	OPEN
CREATE VIEW	SELECT
DECLARE	SET CONNECTION
DELETE	UPDATE
EXECUTE	WHENEVER
FETCH	

Statements That Are Extensions to the ANSI Standard

ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR	GRANT FRAGMENT
ALTER FRAGMENT	INFO
ALTER FUNCTION	LOAD
ALTER INDEX	LOCK TABLE
ALTER OPTICAL CLUSTER	OUTPUT
ALTER PROCEDURE	PREPARE
ALTER ROUTINE	PUT
ALTER TABLE	RELEASE
BEGIN WORK	RENAME COLUMN
CLOSE DATABASE	RENAME DATABASE
CONNECT	RENAME TABLE
CREATE AGGREGATE	RESERVE
CREATE DATABASE	REVOKE
CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE	REVOKE FRAGMENT
CREATE INDEX	SET AUTOFREE
CREATE OPTICAL CLUSTER	SET DATABASE OBJECT MODE
CREATE PROCEDURE	SET DATASKIP
CREATE PROCEDURE FROM	SET DEBUG FILE TO
CREATE ROLE	SET DEFERRED_PREPARE
CREATE SYNONYM	SET DESCRIPTOR
CREATE TRIGGER	SET EXPLAIN
DATABASE	SET ISOLATION
DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR	SET LOCK MODE
DESCRIBE	SET LOG
DISCONNECT	SET MOUNTING TIMEOUT
DROP AGGREGATE	SET OPTIMIZATION
DROP DATABASE	SET PDQPRIORITY
DROP INDEX	SET PLOAD FILE
DROP OPTICAL CLUSTER	SET RESIDENCY
DROP PROCEDURE	SET ROLE
DROP ROLE	SET SCHEDULE LEVEL
DROP SYNONYM	SET STATEMENT CACHE
DROP TABLE	SET TRANSACTION
DROP TRIGGER	SET TRANSACTION MODE
DROP VIEW	START VIOLATIONS TABLE
EXECUTE IMMEDIATE	STOP VIOLATIONS TABLE
EXECUTE PROCEDURE	TRUNCATE
FLUSH	UNLOAD
FREE	UNLOCK TABLE
GET DESCRIPTOR	UPDATE STATISTICS
GET DIAGNOSTICS	

SQL Statements

In This Chapter	2-5
ALLOCATE COLLECTION	2-6
ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR.	2-8
ALLOCATE ROW	2-10
ALTER FRAGMENT	2-12
ALTER FUNCTION	2-41
ALTER INDEX	2-44
ALTER PROCEDURE	2-48
ALTER ROUTINE	2-51
ALTER TABLE	2-55
BEGIN WORK	2-91
CLOSE.	2-94
CLOSE DATABASE	2-98
COMMIT WORK	2-100
CONNECT	2-103
CREATE AGGREGATE	2-115
CREATE CAST	2-119
CREATE DATABASE.	2-124
CREATE DISTINCT TYPE	2-127
CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE	2-131
CREATE FUNCTION	2-146
CREATE FUNCTION FROM	2-155
CREATE INDEX	2-157
CREATE OPAQUE TYPE	2-186
CREATE OPCLASS	2-193
CREATE PROCEDURE	2-199
CREATE PROCEDURE FROM	2-209

CREATE ROLE	2-212
CREATE ROUTINE FROM	2-214
CREATE ROW TYPE	2-216
CREATE SCHEMA	2-222
CREATE SYNONYM	2-226
CREATE TABLE	2-230
CREATE Temporary TABLE	2-286
CREATE TRIGGER	2-296
CREATE VIEW	2-334
DATABASE	2-341
DEALLOCATE COLLECTION	2-343
DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR.	2-345
DEALLOCATE ROW	2-347
DECLARE	2-349
DELETE	2-373
DESCRIBE	2-382
DISCONNECT	2-389
DROP AGGREGATE	2-393
DROP CAST	2-395
DROP DATABASE.	2-397
DROP FUNCTION	2-399
DROP INDEX	2-401
DROP OPCLASS	2-403
DROP PROCEDURE	2-404
DROP ROLE	2-407
DROP ROUTINE	2-408
DROP ROW TYPE	2-410
DROP SYNONYM.	2-412
DROP TABLE	2-413
DROP TRIGGER	2-417
DROP TYPE	2-418
DROP VIEW	2-420
EXECUTE.	2-422
EXECUTE FUNCTION	2-434
EXECUTE IMMEDIATE	2-441
EXECUTE PROCEDURE	2-444

FETCH . . . . .	.2-455
FLUSH . . . . .	.2-469
FREE . . . . .	.2-472
GET DESCRIPTOR . . . . .	.2-475
GET DIAGNOSTICS . . . . .	.2-483
GRANT . . . . .	.2-500
GRANT FRAGMENT . . . . .	.2-523
INFO . . . . .	.2-532
INSERT . . . . .	.2-535
LOAD . . . . .	.2-553
LOCK TABLE . . . . .	.2-563
OPEN. . . . .	.2-566
OUTPUT . . . . .	.2-577
PREPARE . . . . .	.2-579
PUT . . . . .	.2-593
RENAME COLUMN . . . . .	.2-604
RENAME DATABASE . . . . .	.2-606
RENAME TABLE. . . . .	.2-607
REVOKE . . . . .	.2-610
REVOKE FRAGMENT. . . . .	.2-628
ROLLBACK WORK. . . . .	.2-632
SELECT . . . . .	.2-634
SET AUTOFREE . . . . .	.2-691
SET CONNECTION. . . . .	.2-694
SET Database Object Mode . . . . .	.2-700
SET DATASKIP . . . . .	.2-709
SET DEBUG FILE TO . . . . .	.2-712
SET DEFERRED_PREPARE . . . . .	.2-715
SET DESCRIPTOR . . . . .	.2-719
SET EXPLAIN . . . . .	.2-730
SET ISOLATION . . . . .	.2-736
SET LOCK MODE . . . . .	.2-742
SET LOG . . . . .	.2-745
SET OPTIMIZATION . . . . .	.2-747
SET PDQPRIORITY . . . . .	.2-751
SET PLOAD FILE . . . . .	.2-755

SET Residency	2-756
SET ROLE.	2-758
SET SCHEDULE LEVEL.	2-760
SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION	2-761
SET STATEMENT CACHE	2-764
SET TRANSACTION	2-768
SET Transaction Mode	2-774
START VIOLATIONS TABLE	2-778
STOP VIOLATIONS TABLE	2-800
TRUNCATE	2-802
UNLOAD.	2-805
UNLOCK TABLE	2-813
UPDATE	2-815
UPDATE STATISTICS	2-835
WHENEVER.	2-848

In This Chapter

This chapter gives comprehensive reference descriptions of SQL statements. The statement descriptions appear in alphabetical order. For an explanation of the structure of statement descriptions, see [Chapter 1, “Overview of SQL Syntax.”](#)

+

IDS

E/C

ALLOCATE COLLECTION

Use the `ALLOCATE COLLECTION` statement to allocate memory for a collection variable.

Use this statement with `ESQL/C`.

Syntax

```
ALLOCATE COLLECTION _____ variable _____
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>variable</i>	Name that identifies a typed or untyped collection variable for which to allocate memory	The variable must be the name of an unallocated <code>ESQL/C</code> collection host variable.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

Usage

The `ALLOCATE COLLECTION` statement allocates memory for a variable that stores collection data. To create a collection variable for an `ESQL/C` program, perform the following steps:

1. Declare the collection variable as a client collection variable in an `ESQL/C` program.
The collection variable can be a typed or untyped collection variable.
2. Allocate memory for the collection variable with the `ALLOCATE COLLECTION` statement.

The `ALLOCATE COLLECTION` statement sets **SQLCODE** (`sqlca.sqlcode`) to zero (0) if the memory allocation was successful and to a negative error code if the allocation failed.

You must explicitly release memory with the `DEALLOCATE COLLECTION` statement. Once you free the collection variable with the `DEALLOCATE COLLECTION` statement, you can reuse the collection variable.



Tip: The `ALLOCATE COLLECTION` statement allocates memory for an `ESQL/C` collection variable only. To allocate memory for an `ESQL/C` row variable, use the `ALLOCATE ROW` statement.

Examples

The following example shows how to allocate resources with the `ALLOCATE COLLECTION` statement for the untyped collection variable, `a_set`:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
      client collection a_set;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
.
.
.

EXEC SQL allocate collection :a_set;
.
.
.
```

The following example uses `ALLOCATE COLLECTION` to allocate resources for a typed collection variable, `a_typed_set`:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
      client collection set(integer not null) a_typed_set;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
.
.
.

EXEC SQL allocate collection :a_typed_set;
.
.
.
```

Related Information

Related examples: Refer to the collection variable example in [PUT](#)

Related statements: [ALLOCATE ROW](#) and [DEALLOCATE COLLECTION](#)

For a discussion of collection data types, see the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

+

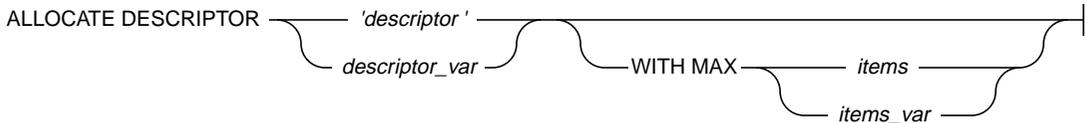
E/C

ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR

Use the ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement to allocate memory for a system-descriptor area. This statement creates a place in memory to hold information that a DESCRIBE statement obtains or to hold information about the WHERE clause of a statement.

Use this statement with ESQL/C.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>descriptor</i>	Quoted string that identifies a system-descriptor area	Use single quotes. String must represent the name of an unallocated system-descriptor area.	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>descriptor_var</i>	Host-variable name that identifies a system-descriptor area	Variable must contain the name of an unallocated system-descriptor area.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>items</i>	Number of item descriptors in the system-descriptor area The default value is 100.	Value must be unsigned INTEGER greater than zero.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>items_var</i>	Host variable that contains the number of items	Data type must be INTEGER or SMALLINT.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

Usage

The ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement creates a system-descriptor area. A system-descriptor area contains one or more fields called item descriptors. Each item descriptor holds a data value that the database server can receive or send. The item descriptors also contain information about the data such as type, length, scale, precision, and nullability.

If the name that you assign to a system-descriptor area matches the name of an existing system-descriptor area, the database server returns an error. If you free the descriptor with the DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement, you can reuse the descriptor.

A system-descriptor area holds information that a DESCRIBE...USING SQL DESCRIPTOR statement obtains or it holds information about the WHERE clause of a dynamically executed statement.

WITH MAX Clause

You can use the WITH MAX clause to indicate the maximum number of item descriptors you need. When you use this clause, the COUNT field is set to the number of *items* you specify. If you do not specify the WITH MAX clause, the default value of the COUNT field is 100. You can change the value of the COUNT field with the SET DESCRIPTOR statement.

The following examples show valid ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statements. Each example includes the WITH MAX clause. The first line uses embedded variable names to identify the system-descriptor area and to specify the desired number of item descriptors. The second line uses a quoted string to identify the system-descriptor area and an unsigned integer to specify the desired number of item descriptors.

```
EXEC SQL allocate descriptor :descname with max :occ;
```

```
EXEC SQL allocate descriptor 'desc1' with max 3;
```

Related Information

Related statements: [DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR](#), [DECLARE](#), [DESCRIBE](#), [EXECUTE](#), [FETCH](#), [GET DESCRIPTOR](#), [OPEN](#), [PREPARE](#), [PUT](#), and [SET DESCRIPTOR](#)

For more information on system-descriptor areas, refer to the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

+

IDS

E/C

ALLOCATE ROW

Use the ALLOCATE ROW statement to allocate memory for a row variable.

Use this statement with ESQL/C.

Syntax

```
ALLOCATE ROW _____ variable _____ |
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>variable</i>	Name that identifies a typed or untyped row variable for which to allocate memory	The variable must be an unallocated ESQL/C row host variable.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

Usage

The ALLOCATE ROW statement allocates memory for a variable that stores row-type data. To create a row variable, perform the following steps in your ESQL/C program:

1. Declare the row variable.
The row variable can be a typed or untyped row variable.
2. Allocate memory for the row variable with the ALLOCATE ROW statement.

The ALLOCATE ROW statement sets **SQLCODE (sqlca.sqlcode)** to zero (0) if the memory allocation was successful and to a negative error code if the allocation failed.

You must explicitly release memory with the DEALLOCATE ROW statement. Once you free the row variable with the DEALLOCATE ROW statement, you can reuse the row variable.

Tip: The ALLOCATE ROW statement allocates memory for an ESQL/C row variable only. To allocate memory for an ESQL/C collection variable, use the ALLOCATE COLLECTION statement.



When you use the same row variable in multiple calls without deallocating it, a memory leak on the client computer results. Because there is no way to determine if a pointer is valid when it is passed, ESQL/C assumes that it is not valid and assigns it to a new memory location.

Example

The following example shows how to allocate resources with the ALLOCATE ROW statement for the typed row variable, **a_row**:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
      row (a int, b int) a_row;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
.
.
.
EXEC SQL allocate row :a_row;
```

Related Information

Related statements: [ALLOCATE COLLECTION](#) and [DEALLOCATE ROW](#)

For a discussion of complex types, see the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

Usage

The clauses of the ALTER FRAGMENT statement let you perform the following tasks.

Clause	Purpose
ATTACH	Combines tables that contain identical table structures into a single fragmented table.
DETACH	Detaches a table fragment or slice from a fragmentation strategy and places it in a new table.
INIT	Provides the following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Defines and initializes a fragmentation strategy on a table. ■ Creates a fragmentation strategy for tables. ■ Changes the order of evaluation of fragment expressions. ■ Alters the fragmentation strategy of an existing table or index. ■ Changes the storage location of an existing table.
ADD	Adds an additional fragment to an existing fragmentation list.
DROP	Drops an existing fragment from a fragmentation list.
MODIFY	Changes an existing fragmentation expression.

The ALTER FRAGMENT statement applies only to table or index fragments that are located at the current site (or cluster, for Extended Parallel Server). No remote information is accessed or updated.



Warning: This statement can cause indexes to be dropped and rebuilt. Before undertaking alter operations, check corresponding sections in your “[Performance Guide](#)” to review effects and strategies

General Privileges

You must have the Alter or the DBA privilege to change the fragmentation strategy of a table. You must have the Index or the DBA privilege to alter the fragmentation strategy of an index.

IDS

XPS

Restrictions on When You Can Use the ALTER FRAGMENT Statement

You cannot use the ALTER FRAGMENT statement on a temporary table, an external table, or a view.

If your table or index is not already fragmented, the only clauses available to you are INIT and ATTACH.

You cannot use ALTER FRAGMENT on a typed table that is part of a table hierarchy. ♦

You cannot use the ALTER FRAGMENT statement on a generalized-key (GK) index. Also, you cannot use the ALTER FRAGMENT statement on any table that has a dependent GK index defined on it. In addition, you cannot use this statement on a table that has range fragmentation.

If the *surviving_table* has hash fragmentation, the only clauses available are ATTACH and INIT. ♦

How Is the ALTER FRAGMENT Statement Executed?

If your database uses logging, the ALTER FRAGMENT statement is executed within a single transaction. When the fragmentation strategy uses large numbers of records, you might run out of log space or disk space. (The database server requires extra disk space for the operation; it later frees the disk space).

Making More Space

When you run out of log space or disk space, try one of the following procedures to make more space available:

- Turn off logging and turn it back on again at the end of the operation. This procedure indirectly requires a backup of the root dbspace.
- Split the operations into multiple ALTER FRAGMENT statements, moving a smaller portion of records at each time.

For information about log-space requirements and disk-space requirements, see your [Administrator's Guide](#). That guide also contains detailed instructions about how to turn off logging. For information about backups, refer to your [Backup and Restore Guide](#).

Determining the Number of Rows in the Fragment

You can place as many rows into a fragment as the available space in the dbspace allows.

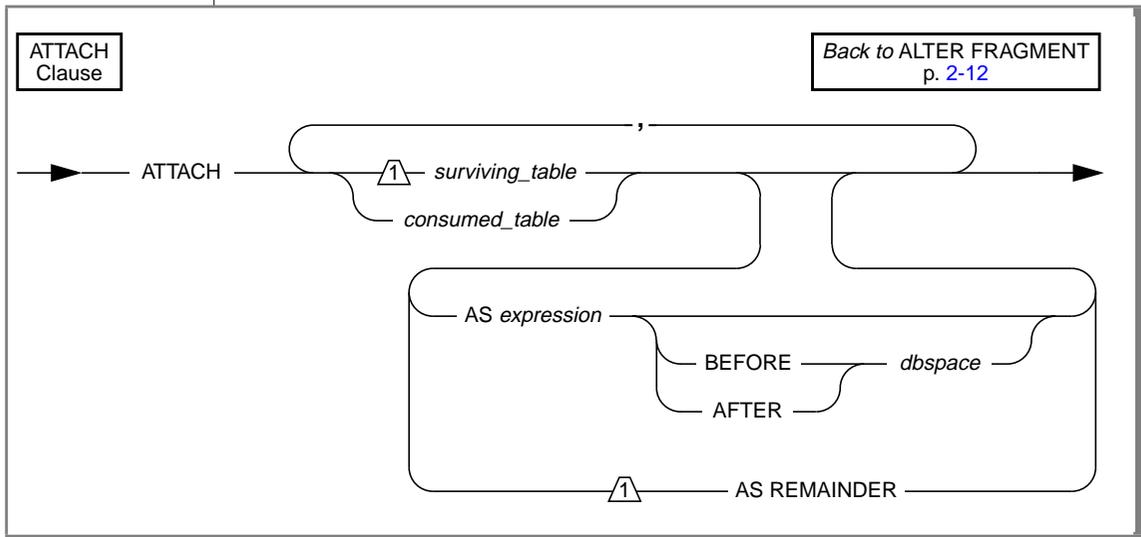
To find out how many rows are in a fragment

1. Run the UPDATE STATISTICS statement on the table. This step fills the **sysfragments** system catalog table with the current table information.
2. Query the **sysfragments** system catalog table to examine the **npused** and **nrows** fields. The **npused** field gives you the number of data pages used in the fragment, and the **nrows** field gives you the number of rows in the fragment.

ATTACH Clause

Use the ATTACH clause to combine tables that contain identical table structures into a fragmentation strategy.

Important: Use the CREATE TABLE statement or the INIT clause of the ALTER FRAGMENT statement to create fragmented tables.



ALTER FRAGMENT

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>consumed_table</i>	Table which loses its identity and becomes part of the surviving table	<p>The table must exist at the time you execute the statement.</p> <p>The table cannot contain serial columns.</p> <p>The table cannot contain unique, referential, or primary-key constraints.</p> <p>The table must be nonfragmented (IDS only).</p> <p>See also, “General Restrictions for the ATTACH Clause” on page 2-17.</p>	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>dbspace</i>	<p>Dbospace that specifies where the consumed table expression occurs in the fragmentation list</p> <p>With a hybrid-fragmented table, dbospace identifies a set of dbspaces (XPS only). See “Altering Hybrid-Fragmented Tables” on page 2-19.</p>	The dbospace must exist at the time you execute the statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>expression</i>	Expression that defines which rows are stored in a fragment	<p>The expression element can contain only columns from the current table and only data values from a single row.</p> <p>No subqueries, user-defined routines, aggregates, or references to the fields of a row-type column are allowed. In addition, the current, date and/or time built-in functions are not allowed.</p>	Condition, p. 4-27 , and Expression, p. 4-73
<i>surviving_table</i>	Table that survives the execution of ALTER FRAGMENT	<p>The table must exist at the time you execute the statement.</p> <p>The table cannot contain any constraints.</p> <p>See also, “General Restrictions for the ATTACH Clause” on page 2-17.</p>	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

The ATTACH clause allows you to perform the following tasks:

- Create a single fragmented table by combining two or more identically-structured, nonfragmented tables
(See [“Combining Nonfragmented Tables to Create a Fragmented Table”](#) on page 2-18.)
- Attach one or more tables to a fragmented table
(See [“Attaching a Table to a Fragmented Table”](#) on page 2-19.)

Privileges

You must be the DBA or the owner of the tables that are involved to use the ATTACH clause.

General Restrictions for the ATTACH Clause

Any tables that you attach must have been created previously in separate dbspaces. You cannot attach the same table more than once.

All consumed tables listed in the ATTACH clause must be identical in structure to the surviving table; that is, all column definitions must match. The number, names, data types, and relative position of the columns must be identical.

You cannot attach a fragmented table to another fragmented table. ♦

Additional Restrictions on the ATTACH Clause Specific to XPS

In addition to the general restrictions, every consumed table must be of the same usage type as the surviving table. For information about how to specify the usage type of a table, refer to [“Usage-Type Options”](#) on page 2-231.

You cannot use the ATTACH clause in certain situations. The attach operation fails:

- if the consumed tables contain data that belongs in some existing fragment of the surviving table.
- if existing data in the surviving table would belong in a new fragment.

IDS**XPS**

In other words, you cannot use the ATTACH clause for data movement among fragments. To perform this task, see the [“INIT Clause” on page 2-27](#).

Using the BEFORE, AFTER, and REMAINDER Options

The BEFORE and AFTER options allow you to place a new fragment either before or after an existing dbspace. You cannot use the BEFORE and AFTER options when the distribution scheme is round-robin.

When you attach a new fragment without an explicit BEFORE or AFTER option, the database server places the added fragment at the end of the fragmentation list, unless a remainder fragment exists. If a remainder fragment exists, the new fragment is placed just before the remainder fragment. You cannot attach a new fragment after the remainder fragment.

When you create or append to a hybrid-fragmented table, the positioning specification (BEFORE, AFTER, or REMAINDER) applies to an entire dbslice. You can use any dbspace in a dbslice to identify the dbslice for the BEFORE or AFTER position. ♦

Combining Nonfragmented Tables to Create a Fragmented Table

When you transform tables with identical table structures into fragments in a single table, you allow the database server to manage the fragmentation instead of allowing the application to manage the fragmentation. The distribution scheme can be round-robin or expression-based.

To make a single, fragmented table from two or more identically-structured, nonfragmented tables, the ATTACH clause must contain the surviving table in the *attach list*. The attach list is the list of tables in the ATTACH clause.

To include a **rowid** column in the newly-created single, fragmented table, attach all tables first and then add the **rowid** with the ALTER TABLE statement. ♦

XPS

IDS

Attaching a Table to a Fragmented Table

To attach a nonfragmented table to an already fragmented table, the nonfragmented table must have been created in a separate dbspace and must have the same table structure as the fragmented table. In the following example, a round-robin distribution scheme fragments the table **cur_acct**, and the table **old_acct** is a nonfragmented table that resides in a separate dbspace. The example shows how to attach **old_acct** to **cur_acct**:

```
ALTER FRAGMENT ON TABLE cur_acct ATTACH old_acct
```

IDS

When you attach one or more tables to a fragmented table, a *consumed table* must be nonfragmented. ♦

XPS

When you attach one or more tables to a fragmented table, a *consumed table* can be nonfragmented or have hash fragmentation.

If you specify a *consumed_table* that has hash fragmentation, the hash column specification must match that of the *surviving_table* and any other *consumed_table* involved in the attach operation. ♦

XPS

Altering Hybrid-Fragmented Tables

When you alter a hybrid-fragmented table with either an ATTACH or DETACH clause, you need specify only one dbspace to identify the entire set of dbspaces that are associated with a given expression in the base fragmentation strategy of the table.

The set of dbspaces associated with an expression in the base fragmentation strategy of the table might have been defined as one or more dbslices or a dbspaces. For more information, see [“Fragmenting by HYBRID” on page 2-264](#).

If you know the name of the dbslice, but not any of the dbspaces that it comprises, you can name the first dbspace in the dbslice by adding `.1` to the name of the dbslice. For example, if the dbslice were named **dbsl1**, you could specify `dbsl1.1`.

What Happens?

After the attach executes, all consumed tables no longer exist. Any constraints (CHECK or NOT NULL) that were on the consumed tables also no longer exist.

You must reference the records that were in the consumed tables through the surviving table.

What Happens to Indexes?

In a logging database, when the attach executes, the database server extends any attached index on the surviving table according to the new fragmentation strategy of the surviving table. All rows in the consumed table are subject to these automatically adjusted indexes. For information on whether the database server completely rebuilds the index on the surviving table or reuses an index that was on the consumed table, see your [Performance Guide](#).

IDS

In a nonlogging database, when the attach executes, the database server does not extend indexes on the surviving table according to the new fragmentation strategy of the surviving table. To extend the fragmentation strategy of an attached index according to the new fragmentations strategy of the surviving table, you must drop the index and recreate it on the surviving table. ♦

A detached index on the surviving table retains its same fragmentation strategy. That is, a detached index does not automatically adjust to accommodate the new fragmentation of the surviving table.

For more information on what happens to indexes, see the discussion about altering table fragments in your [Performance Guide](#).

What Happens to BYTE and TEXT Columns?

IDS

Each BYTE and TEXT column in every table that is named in the ATTACH clause must have the same storage type, either blobspace or tblspace. If the BYTE or TEXT column is stored in a blobspace, the same column in all tables must be in the same blobspace. If the BYTE or TEXT column is stored in a tblspace, the same column must be stored in a tblspace in all tables. ♦

In Extended Parallel Server, BYTE and TEXT columns are stored in separate fragments that are created for that purpose. If a table includes a BYTE or TEXT column, the database server creates a separate, additional fragment in the same dbspace as each regular table fragment. BYTE or TEXT columns are stored in the separate fragment that is associated with the regular table fragment where a given row resides.

When an attach occurs, BYTE and TEXT fragments of the consumed table become part of the surviving table and continue to be associated with the same rows and data fragments as they were before the attach. ♦

What Happens to Triggers?

When you attach tables, any triggers that are defined on the consumed table no longer exist, and all rows in the consumed table are subject to the triggers that are defined in the surviving table. That is, triggers on the surviving table survive the ATTACH, but triggers on the consumed table are dropped.

No triggers are activated with the ATTACH clause, but subsequent data-manipulation operations on the new rows can activate triggers.

What Happens to Views?

Views on the surviving table survive the ATTACH, but views on the consumed table are dropped.

What Happens with the Distribution Scheme?

You can attach a nonfragmented table to a table with any type of supported distribution scheme. In general, the resulting table has the same fragmentation strategy as the prior fragmentation strategy of the *surviving table*. However, when you attach two or more nonfragmented tables, the distribution scheme can either be based on expression or round-robin.

IDS

The following table shows the distribution schemes that can result from different distribution schemes of the tables mentioned in the ATTACH clause.

Prior Distribution Scheme of Surviving Table	Prior Distribution Scheme of Consumed Table	Resulting Distribution Scheme
None	None	Round-robin or expression
Round-robin	None	Round-robin
Expression	None	Expression



XPS

The following table shows the distribution schemes that can result from different distribution schemes of the tables mentioned in the ATTACH clause.

Prior Distribution Scheme of Surviving Table	Prior Distribution Scheme of Consumed Table	Resulting Distribution Scheme
None	None	Round-robin or expression
None	Hash	Hybrid
Round-robin	None	Round-robin
Expression	None	Expression
Hash	None	Hybrid
Hash	Hash	Hybrid
Hybrid	None	Hybrid
Hybrid	Hash	Hybrid

When you attach a nonfragmented table to a table that has hash fragmentation, the resulting table has hybrid fragmentation.

You can attach a table with a hash distribution scheme to a table that currently has no fragmentation, hash fragmentation, or hybrid fragmentation. In any of these situations, the resulting table has a hybrid distribution scheme. ◆

Examples

The following examples illustrate the use of the ATTACH clause to create fragmented tables with different distribution schemes.

Round-Robin Distribution Scheme

The following example combines nonfragmented tables **pen_types** and **pen_makers** into a single, fragmented table, **pen_types**. Table **pen_types** resides in dbspace **dbsp1**, and table **pen_makers** resides in dbspace **dbsp2**. Table structures are identical in each table.

```
ALTER FRAGMENT ON TABLE pen_types
ATTACH pen_types, pen_makers
```

After you execute the ATTACH clause, the database server fragments the table **pen_types** round-robin into two dbspaces: the dbspace that contained **pen_types** and the dbspace that contained **pen_makers**. Table **pen_makers** is consumed, and no longer exists; all rows that were in table **pen_makers** are now in table **pen_types**.

Expression Distribution Scheme

Consider the following example that combines tables **cur_acct** and **new_acct** and uses an expression-based distribution scheme. Table **cur_acct** was originally created as a fragmented table and has fragments in dbspaces **dbsp1** and **dbsp2**. The first statement of the example shows that table **cur_acct** was created with an expression-based distribution scheme. The second statement of the example creates table **new_acct** in **dbsp3** without a fragmentation strategy. The third statement combines the tables **cur_acct** and **new_acct**. Table structures (columns) are identical in each table.

```
CREATE TABLE cur_acct (a int) FRAGMENT BY EXPRESSION
a < 5 in dbsp1,
a >= 5 and a < 10 in dbsp2;

CREATE TABLE new_acct (a int) IN dbsp3;

ALTER FRAGMENT ON TABLE cur_acct ATTACH new_acct AS a>=10;
```

When you examine the **sysfragments** system catalog table after you alter the fragment, you see that table **cur_acct** is fragmented by expression into three dbspaces. For additional information about the **sysfragments** system catalog table, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).



XPS

In addition to simple range rules, you can use the ATTACH clause to fragment by expression with hash or arbitrary rules. For a discussion of all types of expressions in an expression-based distribution scheme, see [“FRAGMENT BY Clause for Tables”](#) on page 2-30.

Warning: When you specify a date value in a fragment expression, make sure to specify 4 digits instead of 2 digits for the year. When you specify a 4-digit year, the DBCENTURY environment variable has no effect on the distribution scheme. When you specify a 2-digit year, the DBCENTURY environment variable can affect the distribution scheme and can produce unpredictable results. For more information on the DBCENTURY environment variable, see the [“Informix Guide to SQL: Reference.”](#)

Hybrid Fragmentation Distribution Scheme

Consider a case where monthly sales data is added to the **sales_info** table defined below. Due to the large amount of data, the table is distributed evenly across multiple coservers with a system-defined hash function. To manage monthly additions of data to the table, it is also fragmented by a date expression. The combined hybrid fragmentation is declared in the following CREATE TABLE statement:

```
CREATE TABLE sales_info (order_num int, sale_date date, ...)
FRAGMENT BY HYBRID (order_num) EXPRESSION
sale_date >= '01/01/1996' AND sale_date < '02/01/1996'
IN sales_slice_9601,
sale_date >= '02/01/1996' AND sale_date < '03/01/1996'
IN sales_slice_9602,
.
.
.
sale_date >= '12/01/1996' AND sale_date < '01/01/1997'
IN sales_slice_9612
```

The data for a new month is originally loaded from an external source. The data is distributed evenly across the name coservers on which the **sales_info** table is defined, using a system-defined hash function on the same column:

```
CREATE TABLE jan_97 (order_num int, sale_date date, ...)
FRAGMENT BY HASH (order_num) IN sales_slice_9701
INSERT INTO jan_97 SELECT (...) FROM ...
```

Once the data is loaded, you can attach the new table to **sales_info**. You can issue the following ALTER FRAGMENT statement to attach the new table:

```
ALTER FRAGMENT ON TABLE sales_info ATTACH jan_97
AS sale_date >= '01/01/1997' AND sale_date < '02/01/1997'
```

XPS

DETACH Clause

Use the DETACH clause to detach a table fragment from a distribution scheme and place the contents into a new nonfragmented table.

In Extended Parallel Server, the new table can also be a table with hash fragmentation. ♦

For an explanation of distribution schemes, see [“FRAGMENT BY Clause for Tables” on page 2-30](#).

DETACH
Clause
[Back to ALTER FRAGMENT
p. 2-12](#)

→ DETACH dbspace new_table →

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>dbspace</i>	<p>DbSPACE that contains the fragment to be detached</p> <p>With a hybrid-fragmented table, dbSPACE identifies a set of dbSPACES (XPS only). See “Altering Hybrid-Fragmented Tables” on page 2-19.</p>	The dbSPACE must exist when you execute the statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>new_table</i>	<p>Nonfragmented table that results after you execute the ALTER FRAGMENT statement</p> <p>In XPS, the table can also be a hash-fragmented table.</p>	The table must not exist before you execute the statement.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

The new table that results from the execution of the DETACH clause does not inherit any indexes or constraints from the original table. Only the data remains.

The new table that results from the execution of the DETACH clause does not inherit any privileges from the original table. Instead this table has the default privileges for any new table. For further information on default table-level privileges, see the GRANT statement on [“Table-Level Privileges” on page 2-505](#).

Restrictions

The DETACH clause cannot be applied to a table if that table is the parent of a referential constraint or if a rowid column is defined on the table.

In Extended Parallel Server, you cannot use the DETACH clause if the table has a dependent GK index defined on it. ♦

Detach That Results in a Non-fragmented Table

The following example shows the table **cur_acct** fragmented into two dbspaces, **dbsp1** and **dbsp2**:

```
ALTER FRAGMENT ON TABLE cur_acct DETACH dbsp2 accounts
```

This example detaches **dbsp2** from the distribution scheme for **cur_acct** and places the rows in a new table, **accounts**. Table **accounts** now has the same structure (column names, number of columns, data types, and so on) as table **cur_acct**, but the table **accounts** does not contain any indexes or constraints from the table **cur_acct**. Both tables are now nonfragmented.

The following example shows a table that contains three fragments:

```
ALTER FRAGMENT ON TABLE bus_acct DETACH dbsp3 cli_acct
```

This statement detaches **dbsp3** from the distribution scheme for **bus_acct** and places the rows in a new table, **cli_acct**. Table **cli_acct** now has the same structure (column names, number of columns, data types, and so on) as **bus_acct**, but the table **cli_acct** does not contain any indexes or constraints from the table **bus_acct**. Table **cli_acct** is a nonfragmented table, and table **bus_acct** remains a fragmented table.

Detach That Results in a Table with Hash Fragmentation

The new table will be a hash-fragmented table if the *surviving_table* had hybrid fragmentation and the detached dbslice has more than one fragment. In a hybrid-fragmented table, you specify the dbslice to be detached by naming *any* dbspace in that slice.

Consider the **sales_info** table discussed in the “[Hybrid Fragmentation Distribution Scheme](#)” on page 2-24. Once the January 1997 data is available in the **sales_info** table, you might archive year-old **sales_info** data.

```
ALTER FRAGMENT ON TABLE sales_info
DETACH sales_slice_9601.1 jan_96
```

In this example, data from January 1996 is detached from the **sales_info** table and placed in a new table called **jan_96**.

INIT Clause

The INIT clause allows you to:

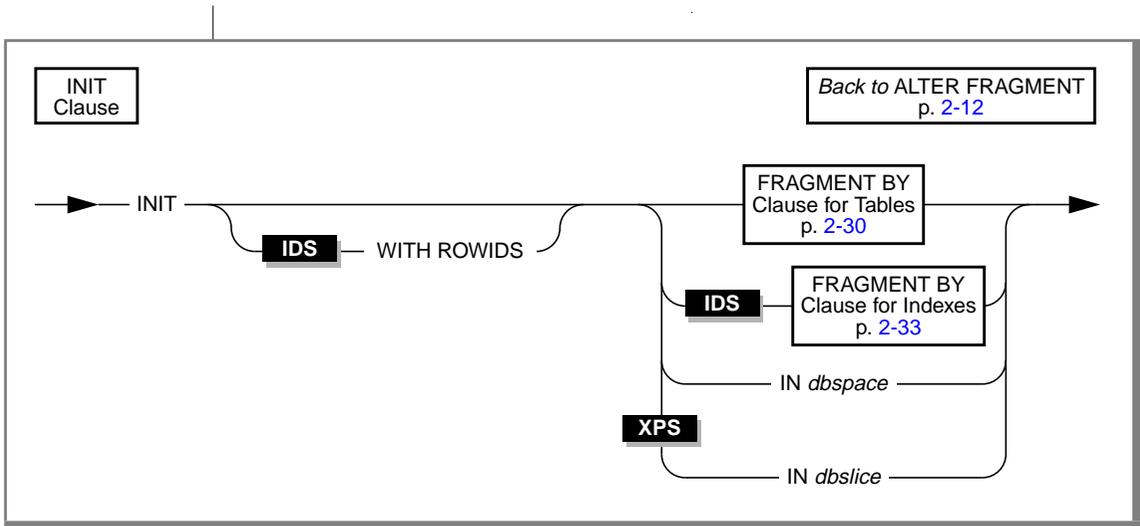
- move a nonfragmented table from one dbspace to another dbspace.
- convert a fragmented table to a nonfragmented table.
- fragment an existing table that is not fragmented without redefining the table.
- convert an existing fragmentation strategy to another fragmentation strategy
- fragment an existing index that is not fragmented without redefining the index
- convert a fragmented index to a nonfragmented index. ♦

IDS



Warning: When you execute the *ALTER FRAGMENT* statement with this clause, it results in data movement if the table contains any data. If data moves, the potential exists for significant logging, for the transaction being aborted as a long transaction, and for a relatively long exclusive lock being held on the affected tables. Use this statement when it does not interfere with day-to-day operations.

ALTER FRAGMENT



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>dbslice</i>	Dbslice that contains the fragmented information	The dbslice must exist at the time you execute the statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>dbspace</i>	DbSPACE that contains the fragmented information	The dbSPACE must exist at the time you execute the statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205

XPS

You cannot use the INIT clause to change the fragmentation strategy of a table that has a GK index. ♦

For more information about the storage spaces in which you can store a table, see [“Using the IN Clause” on page 2-257](#).

When you use the INIT clause to modify a table, the **tabid** value in system catalog tables changes for the affected table. The **constrid** of all unique and referential constraints on the table also change.

WITH ROWIDS Option

Nonfragmented tables contain a pseudocolumn called the **rowid** column. Fragmented tables do not contain this column unless it is explicitly created.

Use the WITH ROWIDS option to add a new column called the **rowid** column. The database server assigns a unique number to each row that remains stable for the existence of the row. The database server creates an index that it uses to find the physical location of the row. Each row contains an additional 4 bytes to store the **rowid** column after you add the WITH ROWIDS option.

Important: *Informix recommends that you use primary keys, rather than the **rowid** column, as an access method.*



Converting a Fragmented Table to a Nonfragmented Table

You might decide that you no longer want a table to be fragmented. You can use the INIT clause to convert a fragmented table to a nonfragmented table. The following example shows the original fragmentation definition as well as how to use the ALTER FRAGMENT statement to convert the table:

```
CREATE TABLE checks (col1 int, col2 int)
  FRAGMENT BY ROUND ROBIN IN dbsp1, dbsp2, dbsp3;

ALTER FRAGMENT ON TABLE checks INIT IN dbsp1;
```

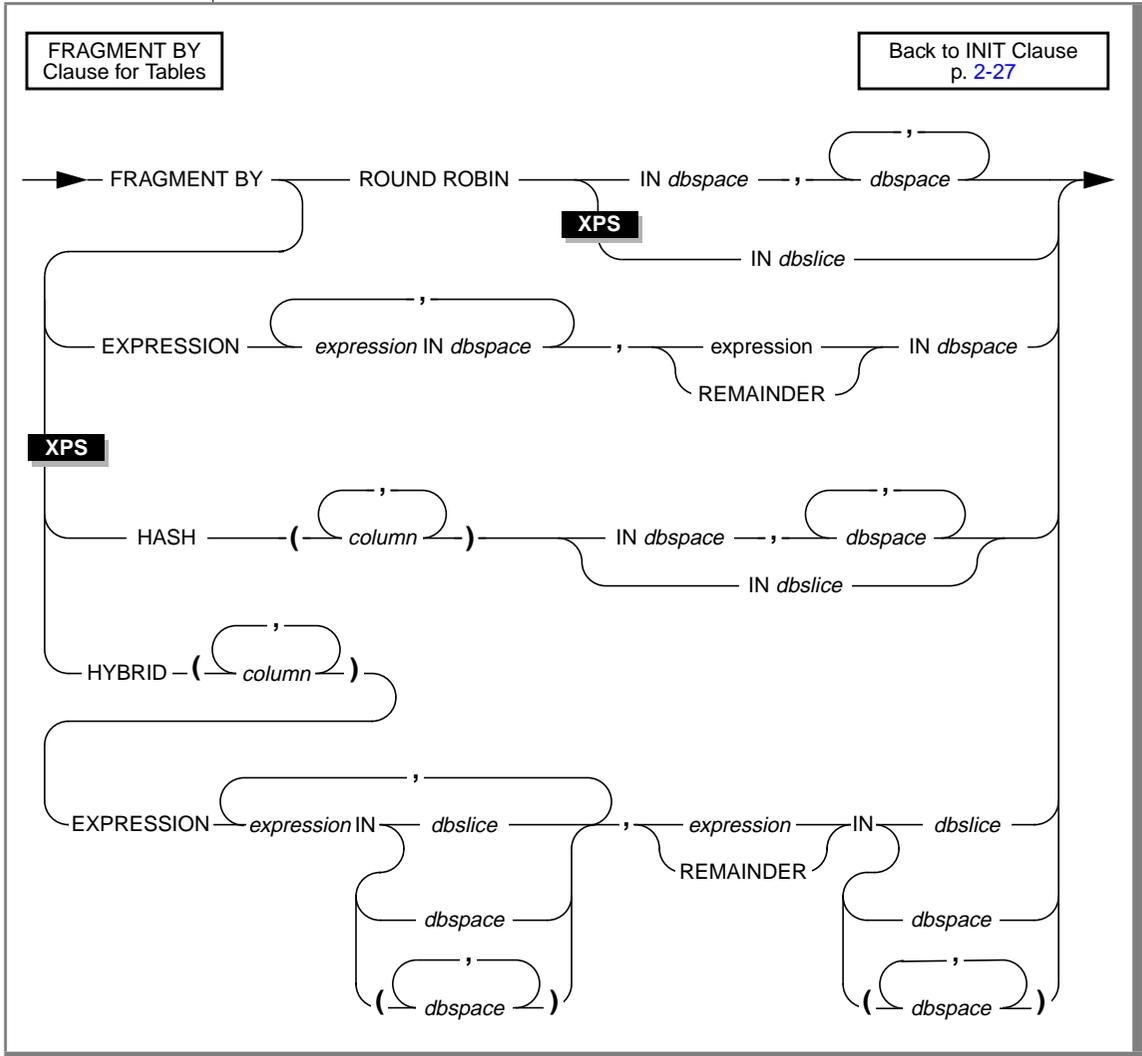
You must use the IN *dbspace* clause to place the table in a dbspace explicitly.

When you use the INIT clause to change a fragmented table to a nonfragmented table (that is, to rid the table of any fragmentation strategy), all attached indexes become nonfragmented indexes. In addition, constraints that do not use existing user indexes (detached indexes) become nonfragmented indexes. All newly nonfragmented indexes exist in the same dbspace as the new nonfragmented table.

When you use the INIT clause to change a fragmented table to a nonfragmented table, the fragmentation strategy of detached indexes (and constraints that use detached indexes) is not affected.

FRAGMENT BY Clause for Tables

Use the FRAGMENT BY portion of the INIT clause to fragment an existing non-fragmented table or convert an existing fragmentation strategy to another fragmentation strategy.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of the column or columns on which you want to apply the fragmentation strategy In the HYBRID clause, column identifies the column or columns on which you want to apply the hash portion of the hybrid table fragmentation strategy	The column must exist.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>dbslice</i>	Dbslice that contains the table fragment	The dbslice must be defined.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>dbspace</i>	DbSPACE that contains the table fragment	You must specify at least two dbspaces. You can specify a maximum of 2,048 dbspaces.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>expression</i>	Expression that defines a table fragment using a range, hash, or arbitrary rule	Each fragment expression can contain only columns from the current table and only data values from a single row. No subqueries, user-defined routines, aggregates, or references to the fields of a row-type column are allowed. In addition, the current, date and/or time built-in functions are not allowed.	Condition, p. 4-27 , and Expression, p. 4-73

For more information on the available fragmentation strategies, see the “[FRAGMENT BY Clause](#)” on page [2-259](#).

Changing an Existing Fragmentation Strategy on a Table

You can redefine a fragmentation strategy on a table if you decide that your initial strategy does not fulfill your needs. When you alter a fragmentation strategy, the database server discards the existing fragmentation strategy and moves records to fragments as defined in the new fragmentation strategy.

The following example shows the statement that originally defined the fragmentation strategy on the table **account** and then shows an ALTER FRAGMENT statement that redefines the fragmentation strategy:

```
CREATE TABLE account (col1 int, col2 int)
    FRAGMENT BY ROUND ROBIN IN dbbsp1, dbbsp2;

ALTER FRAGMENT ON TABLE account
    INIT FRAGMENT BY EXPRESSION
    col1 < 0 in dbbsp1,
    col2 >= 0 in dbbsp2;
```

If an existing dbspace is full when you redefine a fragmentation strategy, you must not use it in the new fragmentation strategy.

Defining a Fragmentation Strategy on a Nonfragmented Table

You can use the INIT clause to define a fragmentation strategy on a nonfragmented table. It does not matter whether the table was created with a storage option.

When you use the INIT clause to fragment an existing nonfragmented table, all indexes on the table become fragmented in the same way as the table. ♦

When you use the INIT clause to fragment an existing nonfragmented table, indexes retain their existing fragmentation strategy.

The following example shows the original table definition as well as how to use the ALTER FRAGMENT statement to fragment the table:

```
CREATE TABLE balances (col1 int, col2 int) IN dbbsp1;

ALTER FRAGMENT ON TABLE balances INIT
    FRAGMENT BY EXPRESSION
    col1 <= 500 IN dbbsp1,
    col1 > 500 and col1 <=1000 IN dbbsp2,
    REMAINDER IN dbbsp3;
```

♦

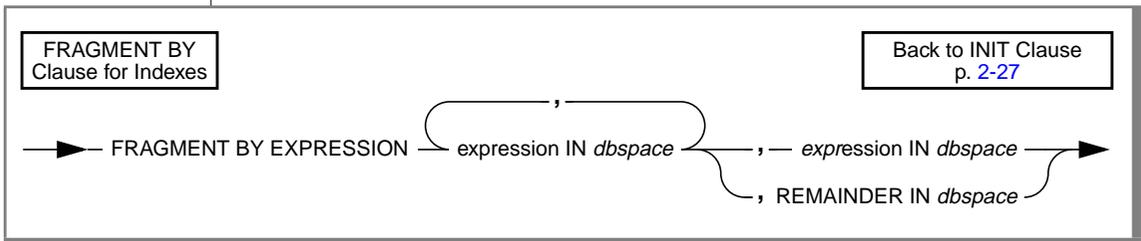
IDS

XPS

FRAGMENT BY Clause for Indexes

The INIT FRAGMENT BY clause for indexes allows you to fragment an existing index that is not fragmented without redefining the index. You can convert an existing fragmentation strategy to another fragmentation strategy. Any existing fragmentation strategy is discarded and records are moved to fragments as defined in the new fragmentation strategy. You can also convert a fragmented index to a nonfragmented index.

Use the FRAGMENT BY clause for indexes to define the expression-based distribution scheme.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>dbspace</i>	DbSPACE that contains the fragmented information	You must specify at least two dbSPACES. You can specify a maximum of 2,048 dbSPACES.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>expression</i>	Expression that defines an index fragment by using a range, hash, or arbitrary rule	Each fragment expression can contain only columns from the current table and only data values from a single row. No subqueries, user-defined routines, aggregates, or references to the fields of a row-type column are allowed. In addition, the current, date and/or time built-in functions are not allowed.	Condition, p. 4-27, and Expression, p. 4-73

Fragmenting Unique and System Indexes

You can fragment unique indexes only if the table uses an expression-based distribution scheme. The columns that are referenced in the fragment expression must be indexed columns. If your ALTER FRAGMENT INIT statement fails to meet either of these restrictions, the INIT fails, and work is rolled back.

You might have an attached unique index on a table fragmented by **Column A**. If you use INIT to change the table fragmentation to **Column B**, the INIT fails because the unique index is defined on **Column A**. To resolve this issue, you can use the INIT clause on the index to detach it from the table fragmentation strategy and fragment it separately.

System indexes (such as those used in referential constraints and unique constraints) use user indexes if the indexes exist. If no user indexes can be used, system indexes remain nonfragmented and are moved to the dbspace where the database was created. To fragment a system index, create the fragmented index on the constraint columns, and then use the ALTER TABLE statement to add the constraint.

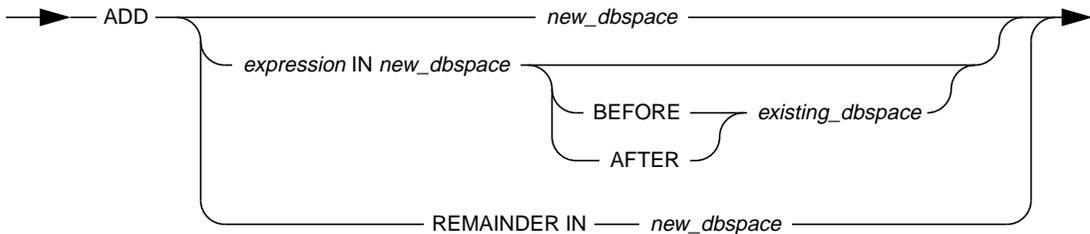
Detaching an Index from a Table-Fragmentation Strategy

You can detach an index from a table-fragmentation strategy with the INIT clause, which causes an attached index to become a detached index. This breaks any dependency of the index on the table fragmentation strategy.

IDS

ADD Clause

Use the ADD clause to add another fragment to an existing fragmentation list.

ADD
ClauseBack to ALTER FRAGMENT
p. 2-12

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>existing_dbspace</i>	Name of a dbspace in an existing fragmentation list	The dbspace must exist at the time you execute the statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>expression</i>	Expression that defines the added fragment	The expression can contain only columns from the current table and only data values from a single row. No subqueries, user-defined routines, aggregates, or references to the fields of a row-type column are allowed. In addition, the current, date and/or time built-in functions are not allowed.	Condition, p. 4-27, and Expression, p. 4-73
<i>new_dbspace</i>	Name of dbspace to be added to the fragmentation scheme	The dbspace must exist at the time you execute the statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Adding a New Dbspace to a Round-Robin Distribution Scheme

You can add more dbspaces to a round-robin distribution scheme. The following example shows the original round-robin definition:

```
CREATE TABLE book (col1 int, col2 title)
FRAGMENT BY ROUND ROBIN in dbsp1, dbsp4;
```

To add another dbspace, use the ADD clause, as shown in the following example:

```
ALTER FRAGMENT ON TABLE book ADD dbsp3;
```

Adding Fragment Expressions

Adding a fragment expression to the fragmentation list in an expression-based distribution scheme can shuffle records from some existing fragments into the new fragment. When you add a new fragment into the middle of the fragmentation list, all the data existing in fragments after the new one must be re-evaluated. The following example shows the original expression definition:

```
.
.
.
FRAGMENT BY EXPRESSION
c1 < 100 IN dbsp1,
c1 >= 100 and c1 < 200 IN dbsp2,
REMAINDER IN dbsp3;
```

If you want to add another fragment to the fragmentation list and have this fragment hold rows between 200 and 300, use the following ALTER FRAGMENT statement:

```
ALTER FRAGMENT ON TABLE news ADD
c1 >= 200 and c1 < 300 IN dbsp4;
```

Any rows that were formerly in the remainder fragment and that fit the criteria `c1 >= 200 and c1 < 300` are moved to the new dbspace.

Using the BEFORE and AFTER Options

The BEFORE and AFTER options allow you to place a new fragment either before or after an existing dbspace. You cannot use the BEFORE and AFTER options when the distribution scheme is round-robin.

When you attach a new fragment without an explicit BEFORE or AFTER option, the database server places the added fragment at the end of the fragmentation list, unless a remainder fragment exists. If a remainder fragment exists, the new fragment is placed just before the remainder fragment. You cannot attach a new fragment after the remainder fragment.

Using the REMAINDER Option

You cannot add a remainder fragment when one already exists. When you add a new fragment to the fragmentation list, and a remainder fragment exists, the records in the remainder fragment are retrieved and re-evaluated. Some of these records may move to the new fragment. The remainder fragment always remains the last item in the fragment list.

IDS

DROP Clause

Use the DROP clause to drop an existing fragment from a fragmentation list.

DROP
Clause[Back to ALTER FRAGMENT
p. 2-12](#)

→ DROP *dbspace* →

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>dbspace</i>	Name of the <i>dbspace</i> that contains the dropped fragment	The <i>dbspace</i> must exist at the time you execute the statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205

You cannot drop one of the fragments when the table contains only two fragments. You cannot drop a fragment in a table that is fragmented with an expression-based distribution scheme if the fragment contains data that cannot be moved to another fragment. If the distribution scheme contains a REMAINDER option, or if the expressions were constructed in an overlapping manner, you can drop a fragment that contains data.

When you want to make a fragmented table nonfragmented, use either the INIT or DETACH clause.

When you drop a fragment from a dbspace, the underlying dbspace is not affected. Only the fragment data within that dbspace is affected. When you drop a fragment all the records located in the fragment move to another fragment. The destination fragment might not have enough space for the additional records. When this happens, follow one of the procedures that are listed in [“Making More Space” on page 2-14](#) to increase your space, and retry the procedure.

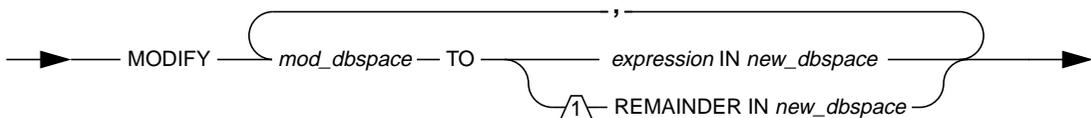
The following examples show how to drop a fragment from a fragmentation list. The first line shows how to drop an index fragment, and the second line shows how to drop a table fragment.

```
ALTER FRAGMENT ON INDEX cust_indx DROP dbbsp2;
ALTER FRAGMENT ON TABLE customer DROP dbbsp1;
```

IDS

MODIFY Clause

Use the MODIFY clause to change an existing fragment expression on an existing dbspace. You can also use the MODIFY clause to move a fragment expression from one dbspace to a different dbspace.

MODIFY
ClauseBack to ALTER FRAGMENT
p. 2-12

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>expression</i>	Modified range, hash, or arbitrary expression	The fragment expression can contain only columns from the current table and only data values from a single row. No subqueries, user-defined routines, aggregates, or references to the fields of a row-type column are allowed. In addition, the current, date and/or time built-in functions are not allowed.	Condition, p. 4-27, and Expression, p. 4-73
<i>mod_dspace</i>	Modified dspace	The dspace must exist when you execute the statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>new_dspace</i>	Dspace that contains the modified information	The dspace must exist when you execute the statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205

General Usage

When you use the MODIFY clause, the underlying dbspaces are not affected. Only the fragment data within the dbspaces is affected.

You cannot change a REMAINDER fragment into a nonremainder fragment if records within the REMAINDER fragment do not pass the new expression.

Changing the Expression in an Existing Dspace

When you use the MODIFY clause to change an expression without changing the dspace storage for the expression, you must use the same name for the *mod_dspace* and the *new_dspace*.

The following example shows how to use the MODIFY clause to change an existing expression:

```
ALTER FRAGMENT ON TABLE cust_acct
  MODIFY dbsp1 to acct_num < 65 IN dbsp1
```

Moving an Expression from One Dbspace to Another

When you use the MODIFY clause to move an expression from one dbspace to another, *mod_dbspace* is the name of the dbspace where the expression was previously located, and *new_dbspace* is the new location for the expression.

The following example shows how to use the MODIFY clause to move an expression from one dbspace to another:

```
ALTER FRAGMENT ON TABLE cust_acct
  MODIFY dbsp1 to acct_num < 35 in dbsp2
```

In this example, the distribution scheme for the **cust_acct** table is modified so that all row items in the column **acct_num** that are less than 35 are now contained in the dbspace **dbsp2**. These items were formerly contained in the dbspace **dbsp1**.

Changing the Expression and Moving it to a New Dbspace

When you use the MODIFY clause to change the expression and move it to a new dbspace, change both the expression and the dbspace name.

What Happens to Indexes?

If your indexes are attached indexes, and you modify the table, the index fragmentation strategy is also modified.

Related Information

Related statements: [CREATE TABLE](#), [CREATE INDEX](#), and [ALTER TABLE](#)

For a discussion of fragmentation strategy, refer to the [Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation](#).

For information on how to maximize performance when you make fragment modifications, see your [Performance Guide](#).

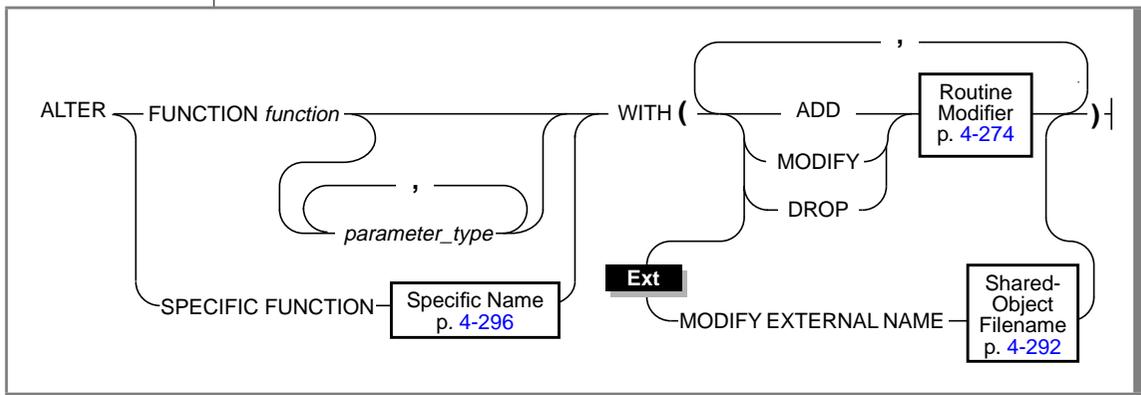
+

IDS

ALTER FUNCTION

Use the ALTER FUNCTION statement to change the routine modifiers or pathname of a user-defined function.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>function</i>	Name of the user-defined function to modify	The function must exist (that is, be registered) in the database. If the name does not uniquely identify a function, you must enter one or more appropriate values for <i>parameter_type</i> .	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>parameter_type</i>	Data type of the parameter	The data type (or list of data types) must be the same types (and specified in the same order) as those specified in the CREATE FUNCTION statement when the function was created.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Usage

The ALTER FUNCTION statement allows you to modify a user-defined function to tune its performance. With this statement you can modify characteristics that control how the function executes. You can also add or replace related UDRs that provide alternatives for the optimizer, which can improve performance.

All modifications take effect on the next invocation of the function.

Privileges

To use the ALTER FUNCTION statement, you must be the owner of the UDR or have the DBA privilege.

Keywords That Introduce Modifications

Use the following keywords to introduce the items in the user-defined function that you want to modify.

Keyword	Purpose
ADD	Introduces a routine modifier that you want to add to the user-defined function
MODIFY	Introduces a routine modifier for which you want to modify a value
DROP	Introduces a routine modifier that you want to remove from the user-defined function
MODIFY EXTERNAL NAME (for external functions only)	Introduces a new location for the executable file
WITH	Introduces all modifications

If the routine modifier is a Boolean value, MODIFY sets the value to be T (that is, it is the equivalent of using the keyword ADD to add the routine modifier). For example, both of the following statements alter the **func1** function so that it can be executed in parallel in the context of a parallelizable data query statement.

```
ALTER FUNCTION func1 WITH (MODIFY PARALLELIZABLE)
```

```
ALTER FUNCTION func1 WITH (ADD PARALLELIZABLE)
```

For a related example, see [“Altering Routine Modifiers Example” on page 2-54](#).

Related Information

Related Statements: [ALTER PROCEDURE](#), [ALTER ROUTINE](#), [CREATE FUNCTION](#), [CREATE PROCEDURE](#), [DROP FUNCTION](#), [DROP PROCEDURE](#), and [DROP ROUTINE](#)

For a discussion on how to create and use SPL routines, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For a discussion of how to create and use external routines, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

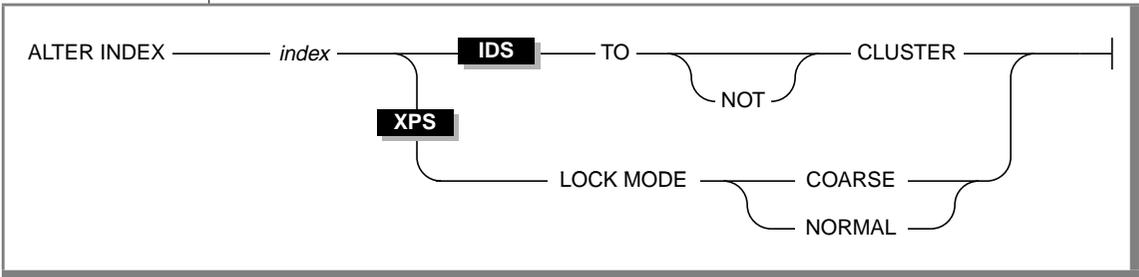
For information about how to create C UDRs, see the [DataBlade API Programmer's Manual](#).



ALTER INDEX

Use the ALTER INDEX statement to put the data in a table in the order of an existing index or to release an index from the clustering attribute.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>index</i>	Name of the index to alter	The index must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

The ALTER INDEX statement works only on indexes that are created with the CREATE INDEX statement; it does not affect constraints that are created with the CREATE TABLE statement.

You cannot alter the index of a temporary table.

TO CLUSTER Option

The TO CLUSTER option causes the rows in the physical table to reorder in the indexed order.

The following example shows how you can use the ALTER INDEX TO CLUSTER statement to order the rows in the **orders** table physically. The CREATE INDEX statement creates an index on the **customer_num** column of the table. Then the ALTER INDEX statement causes the physical ordering of the rows.

```
CREATE INDEX ix_cust ON orders (customer_num);  
ALTER INDEX ix_cust TO CLUSTER;
```

When you reorder, the entire file is rewritten. This process can take a long time, and it requires sufficient disk space to maintain two copies of the table.

While a table is clustering, the table is locked IN EXCLUSIVE MODE. When another process is using the table to which the index name belongs, the database server cannot execute the ALTER INDEX statement with the TO CLUSTER option; it returns an error unless lock mode is set to WAIT. (When lock mode is set to WAIT, the database server retries the ALTER INDEX statement.)

Over time, if you modify the table, you can expect the benefit of an earlier cluster to disappear because rows are added in space-available order, not sequentially. You can recluster the table to regain performance by issuing another ALTER INDEX TO CLUSTER statement on the clustered index. You do not need to drop a clustered index before you issue another ALTER INDEX TO CLUSTER statement on a currently clustered index.

XPS

If you are using Extended Parallel Server, you cannot use the CLUSTER option on STANDARD tables. ♦

TO NOT CLUSTER Option

The NOT option drops the cluster attribute on the index name without affecting the physical table. Because only one clustered index per table can exist, you must use the NOT option to release the cluster attribute from one index before you assign it to another. The following statements illustrate how to remove clustering from one index and how a second index physically reclusters the table:

```
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX ix_ord
  ON orders (order_num);

CREATE CLUSTER INDEX ix_cust
  ON orders (customer_num);
.
.
.

ALTER INDEX ix_cust TO NOT CLUSTER;

ALTER INDEX ix_ord TO CLUSTER;
```

The first two statements create indexes for the **orders** table and cluster the physical table in ascending order on the **customer_num** column. The last two statements recluster the physical table in ascending order on the **order_num** column.

XPS***LOCK MODE Options***

Use the lock modes to specify the locking granularity of the index.

When you use the coarse-lock mode, index-level locks are acquired on the index instead of item-level or page-level locks. This mode reduces the number of lock calls on an index.

Use the coarse-lock mode when you know the index is not going to change, that is, when read-only operations are performed on the index.

Use the coarse-lock mode to have the database server place item-level or page-level locks on the index as necessary. Use this mode when the index gets updated frequently.

When the database server executes the command to change the lock mode to coarse, it acquires an exclusive lock on the table for the duration of the command. Any transactions that are currently using a lock of finer granularity must complete before the database server switches to the coarse-lock mode.

Related Information

Related statements: [CREATE INDEX](#) and [CREATE TABLE](#)

For a discussion of the performance implications of clustered indexes, see your [Performance Guide](#).

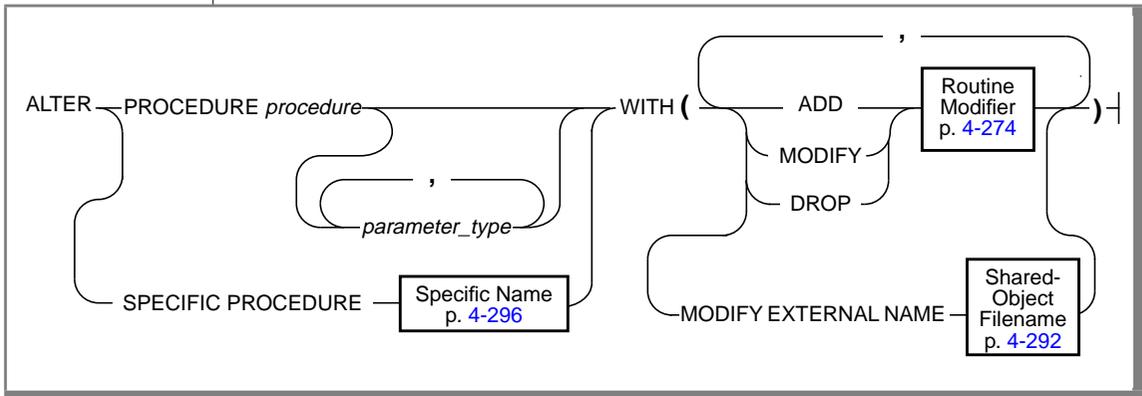
+

IDS

ALTER PROCEDURE

Use the ALTER PROCEDURE statement to change the routine modifiers or pathname of a previously defined external procedure.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>parameter_type</i>	Data type of the parameter	The data type (or list of data types) must be the same types (and specified in the same order) as those specified in the CREATE PROCEDURE statement when the procedure was created.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>procedure</i>	Name of the external procedure to modify	The procedure must exist (that is, be registered) in the database. If the name does not uniquely identify a procedure, you must enter one or more appropriate values for <i>parameter_type</i> .	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

The ALTER PROCEDURE statement allows you to modify an external procedure to tune its performance. With this statement you can modify characteristics that control how the external procedure executes. You can also add or replace related UDRs that provide alternatives for the optimizer, which can improve performance.

All modifications take effect on the next invocation of the procedure.

Privileges

To use the ALTER PROCEDURE statement, you must be the owner of the UDR or have the DBA privilege.

Keywords That Introduce Modifications

Use the following keywords to introduce the items in the external procedure that you want to modify.

Keyword	Purpose
ADD	Introduces a routine modifier that you want to add to the external procedure
MODIFY	Introduces a routine modifier for which you want to modify a value
DROP	Introduces a routine modifier that you want to remove from the external procedure
MODIFY EXTERNAL NAME (for external routines only)	Introduces a new location for the executable file
WITH	Introduces all modifications

If the routine modifier is a Boolean value, MODIFY sets the value to be T (that is, it is the equivalent of using the keyword ADD to add the routine modifier). For example, both of the following statements alter the **proc1** procedure so that it can be executed in parallel in the context of a parallelizable data query statement.

```
ALTER PROCEDURE proc1 WITH (MODIFY PARALLELIZABLE)
```

```
ALTER PROCEDURE proc1 WITH (ADD PARALLELIZABLE)
```

For a related example, see [“Altering Routine Modifiers Example” on page 2-54](#).

Related Information

Related Statements: [ALTER FUNCTION](#), [ALTER ROUTINE](#), [CREATE FUNCTION](#), [CREATE PROCEDURE](#), [DROP FUNCTION](#), [DROP PROCEDURE](#), and [DROP ROUTINE](#)

For a discussion on how to create and use SPL routines, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For a discussion of how to create and use external routines, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

For information about how to create C UDRs, see the [DataBlade API Programmer's Manual](#).

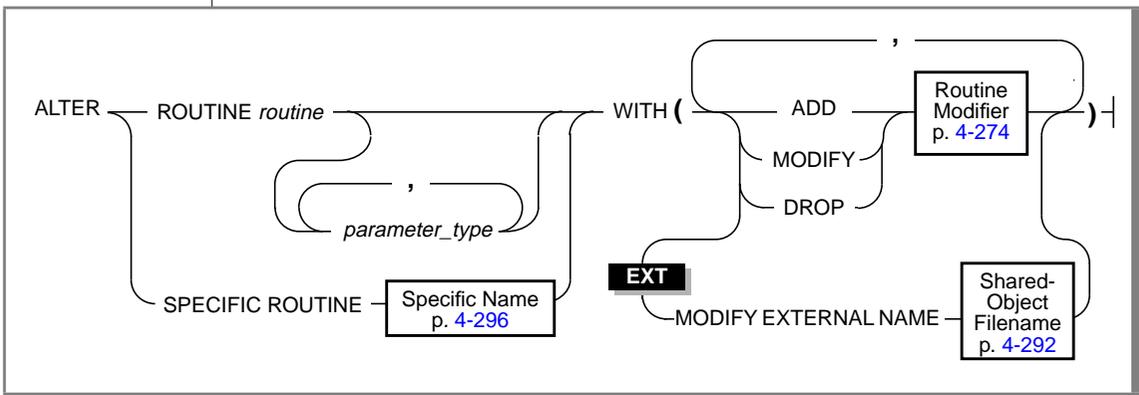
+

IDS

ALTER ROUTINE

Use the ALTER ROUTINE statement to change the routine modifiers or pathname of a previously defined user-defined routine (UDR).

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>parameter_type</i>	Data type of the parameter	The data type (or list of data types) must be the same types (and specified in the same order) as those specified when the UDR was created.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>routine</i>	Name of the UDR to modify	The UDR must exist (that is, be registered) in the database. If the name does not uniquely identify a UDR, you must enter one or more appropriate values for <i>parameter_type</i> .	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

The ALTER ROUTINE statement allows you to modify a previously-defined UDR to tune its performance. With this statement you can modify characteristics that control how the UDR executes. You can also add or replace related UDRs that provide alternatives for the optimizer, which can improve performance.

This statement is useful when you do not know whether a UDR is a user-defined function or a user-defined procedure. When you use this statement, the database server alters the appropriate user-defined procedure or user-defined function.

All modifications take effect on the next invocation of the UDR.

Privileges

To use the ALTER ROUTINE statement, you must be the owner of the UDR or have the DBA privilege.

Restrictions

When you use this statement, the type of UDR cannot be ambiguous. The UDR that you specify must refer to either a user-defined function or a user-defined procedure. If either of the following conditions exist, the database server returns an error:

- The name (and parameters) that you specify apply to both a user-defined procedure and a user-defined function
- The specific name that you specify applies to both a user-defined function and a user-defined procedure

Keywords That Introduce Modifications

Use the following keywords to introduce the items in the UDR that you want to modify.

Keyword	Purpose
ADD	Introduces a routine modifier that you want to add to the UDR
MODIFY	Introduces a routine modifier for which you want to modify a value
DROP	Introduces a routine modifier that you want to remove from the UDR
MODIFY EXTERNAL NAME (for external UDRs only)	Introduces a new location for the executable file
WITH	Introduces all modifications

If the routine modifier is a Boolean value, MODIFY sets the value to be T (that is, it is the equivalent of using the keyword ADD to add the routine modifier). For example, both of the following statements alter the **func1** UDR so that it can be executed in parallel in the context of a parallelizable data query statement.

```
ALTER ROUTINE func1 WITH (MODIFY PARALLELIZABLE)
```

```
ALTER ROUTINE func1 WITH (ADD PARALLELIZABLE)
```

Altering Routine Modifiers Example

Suppose you have an external function **func1** that is set to handle null values and has a cost per invocation set to 40. The following ALTER ROUTINE statement adjusts the settings of the function by dropping the ability to handle null values, tunes the **func1** by changing the cost per invocation to 20, and indicates that the function can execute in parallel.

```
ALTER ROUTINE func1(char, int, boolean)
  WITH (
    DROP HANDLESNULLS,
    MODIFY PERCALL_COST = 20,
    ADD PARALLELIZABLE
  )
```

Note also, that because the name **func1** is not unique to the database, the data type parameters are specified so that the routine signature would be unique. If this function had a Specific Name, for example, **raise_sal**, specified when it was created, you could identify the function with the following first line:

```
ALTER SPECIFIC ROUTINE raise_sal
```

Related Information

Related Statements: [ALTER FUNCTION](#), [ALTER PROCEDURE](#), [CREATE FUNCTION](#), [CREATE PROCEDURE](#), [DROP FUNCTION](#), [DROP PROCEDURE](#), and [DROP ROUTINE](#)

For a discussion on how to create and use SPL routines, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For a discussion of how to create and use external routines, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

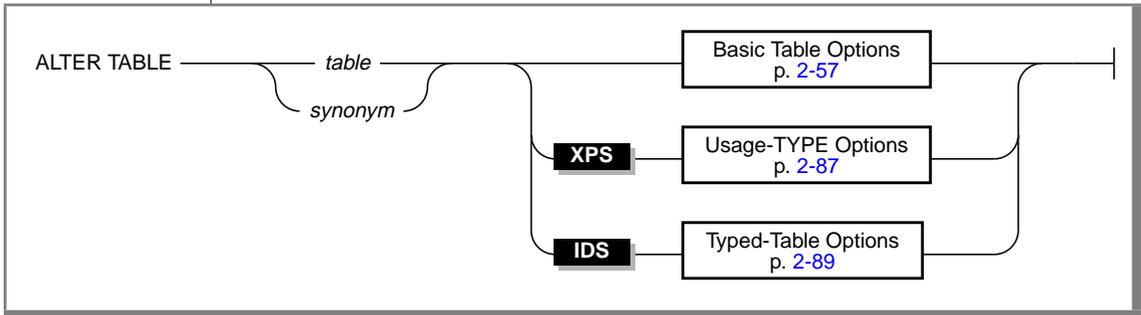
For information about how to create C UDRs, see the [DataBlade API Programmer's Manual](#).

+

ALTER TABLE

Use the ALTER TABLE statement to modify the definition of a table.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>synonym</i>	Name of the synonym for the table to alter	The synonym and the table to which the synonym points must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of the table to alter	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

Altering a table on which a view depends might invalidate the view.



Warning: The clauses available with this statement have varying performance implications. Before you undertake alter operations, check corresponding sections in your “[Performance Guide](#)” to review effects and strategies.

Restrictions

You cannot alter a temporary table. You also cannot alter a violations or diagnostics table. In addition, you cannot add, drop, or modify a column if the table that contains the column has violations and diagnostics tables associated with it.

If a table has range fragmentation, the parts of this statement that you can use are the Usage-TYPE options, and the Lock-Mode clause. All other operations return an error.

If you have a static or raw table, the only information that you can alter is the usage type of the table. That is, the Usage-TYPE options are the only part of the ALTER TABLE statement that you can use. ♦

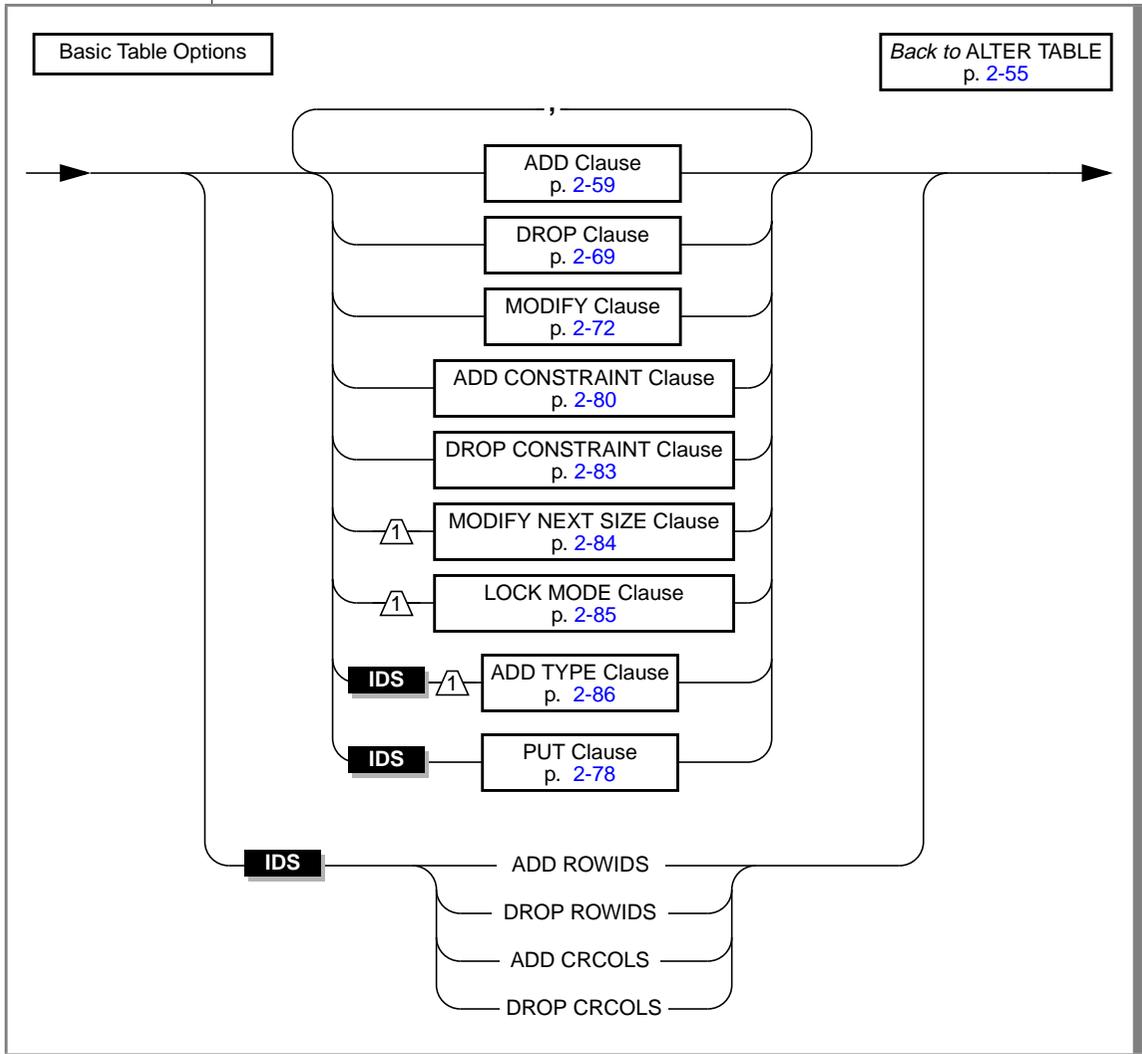
Privileges

To use the ALTER TABLE statement, you must meet one of the following conditions:

- You must have the DBA privilege on the database where the table resides.
- You must own the table.
- You must have the Alter privilege on the specified table and the Resource privilege on the database where the table resides.
- To add a referential constraint, you must have the DBA or References privilege on either the referenced columns or the referenced table.
- To drop a constraint, you must have the DBA privilege or be the owner of the constraint. If you are the owner of the constraint but not the owner of the table, you must have Alter privilege on the specified table. You do not need the References privilege to drop a constraint.

Basic-Table Options

With the ALTER TABLE statement, you can perform basic alter operations such as adding, modifying, or dropping columns and constraints, and changing the extent size and locking granularity of a table. The database server performs the alter operations in the order that you specify. If any of the actions fails, the entire operation is cancelled.



IDS

You can also associate a table with a named-row type or specify a new storage space to store large-object data.

In addition, you can add or drop rowid columns and shadow columns that for Enterprise Replication. However, you cannot specify these options in conjunction with any other alterations. ♦

IDS

Using the ADD ROWIDS Keywords

Use the ADD ROWIDS keywords to add a new column called **rowid** to a fragmented table. (Fragmented tables do not contain the hidden **rowid** column by default.)

When you add a **rowid** column, the database server assigns a unique number to each row that remains stable for the life of the row. The database server creates an index that it uses to find the physical location of the row. After you add the **rowid** column, each row of the table contains an additional 4 bytes to store the **rowid** value.



Tip: Use the ADD ROWIDS clause only on fragmented tables. In nonfragmented tables, the **rowid** column remains unchanged. Informix recommends that you use primary keys as an access method rather than exploiting the **rowid** column.

For additional information about the **rowid** column, refer to your [Administrator's Reference](#).

IDS

Using the DROP ROWIDS Keywords

Use the DROP ROWIDS keywords to drop a **rowid** column that you added (with either the CREATE TABLE or ALTER FRAGMENT statement) to a fragmented table. You cannot drop the **rowid** column of a nonfragmented table.

IDS

Using the ADD CRCOLS Keywords

Use the ADD CRCOLS keywords to create the shadow columns, **cdrserver** and **cdrttime**, that Enterprise Replication uses for conflict resolution. You must add these columns before you can use time-stamp or UDR conflict resolution.

IDS

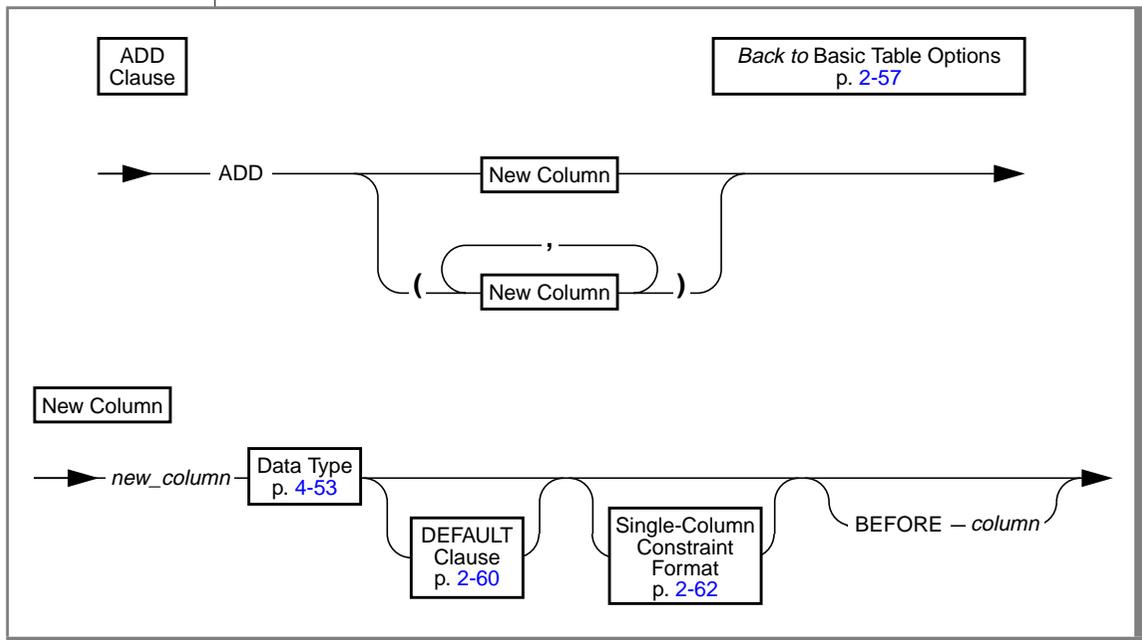
For more information, refer to [“Using the WITH CRCOLS Option” on page 2-255](#) and to the [Guide to Informix Enterprise Replication](#).

Using the DROP CRCOLS Keywords

Use the DROP CRCOLS keywords to drop the **cdserver** and **cdftime** shadow columns. You cannot drop these columns if Enterprise Replication is in use.

ADD Clause

Use the ADD clause to add a column to a table.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of the column before which the new column is to be placed	The column must already exist in the table.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>new_column</i>	Name of the column that you are adding	You cannot add a serial column if the table contains data.	Identifier, p. 4-205

The following restrictions apply to the ADD clause:

- You cannot add a serial column to a table if the table contains data.
- In Extended Parallel Server, you cannot add a column to a table that has a bit-mapped index. ♦

Using the BEFORE Option

Use the BEFORE option to specify the column before which a new column or list of columns is to be added.

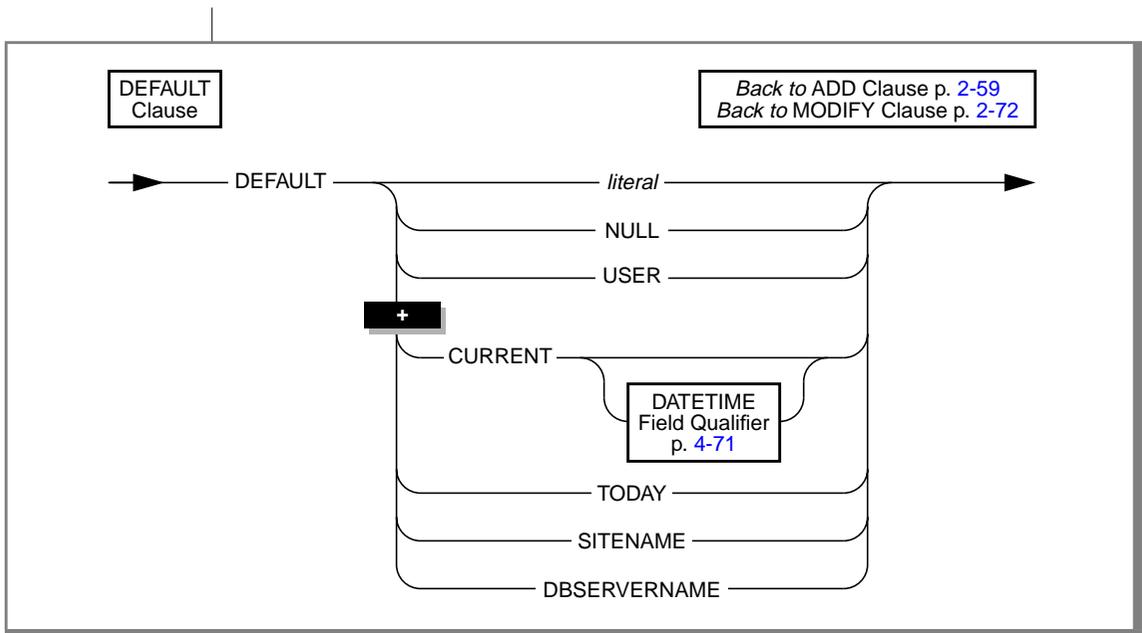
If you do not include the BEFORE option, the database server adds the new column or list of columns to the end of the table definition by default.

In the following example, the BEFORE option directs the database server to add the **item_weight** column before the **total_price** column:

```
ALTER TABLE items
  ADD (item_weight DECIMAL(6,2) NOT NULL
      BEFORE total_price)
```

DEFAULT Clause

Use the DEFAULT clause to specify the default value that the database server should insert in a column when an explicit value for the column is not specified.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>literal</i>	Literal term that defines alpha or numeric constant characters to use as the default value for the column	Term must be appropriate type for the column. See “Using a Literal as a Default Value” on page 2-235.	Expression, p. 4-73

You cannot place a default on serial columns.

If the table that you are altering already has rows in it when you add a column that contains a default value, the database server inserts the default value for all pre-existing rows.

For more information about the options of the **DEFAULT** clause, refer to [“DEFAULT Clause”](#) on page 2-234.

Example of a Literal Default Value

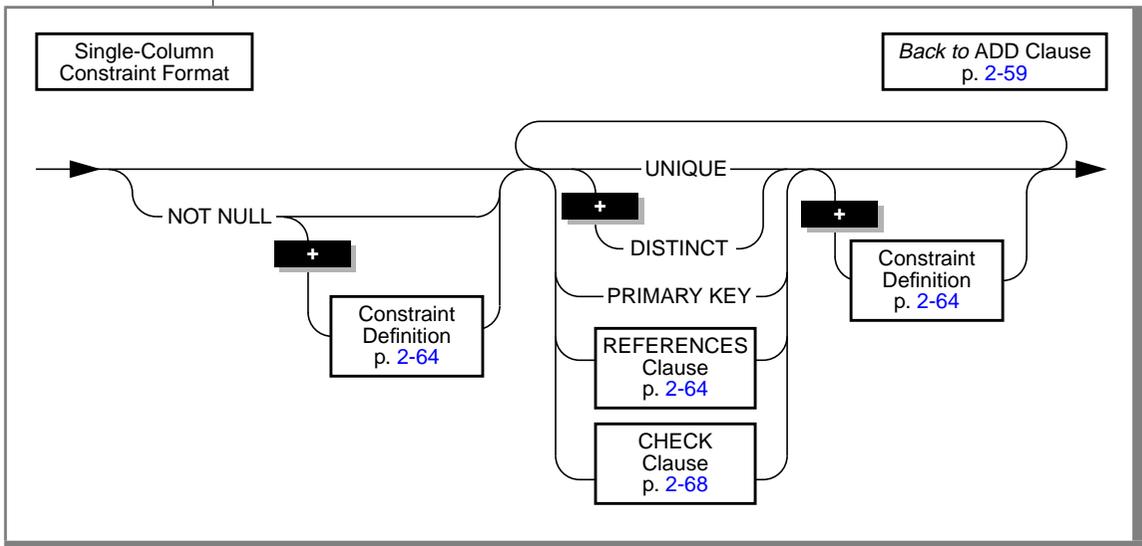
The following example adds a column to the **items** table. In **items**, the new column **item_weight** has a literal default value:

```
ALTER TABLE items
  ADD item_weight DECIMAL (6, 2) DEFAULT 2.00
  BEFORE total_price
```

In this example, each existing row in the **items** table has a default value of 2.00 for the **item_weight** column.

Single-Column Constraint Format

Use the Single-Column Constraint Format to associate constraints with a particular column.



You cannot specify a primary-key or unique constraint on a new column if the table contains data. However, in the case of a unique constraint, the table can contain a *single* row of data. When you want to add a column with a primary-key constraint, the table must be empty when you issue the ALTER TABLE statement.

The following rules apply when you place primary-key or unique constraints on existing columns:

- When you place a primary-key or unique constraint on a column or set of columns, the database server creates an internal B-tree index on the constrained column or set of columns unless a user-created index was defined on the column or set of columns.
- When you place a primary-key or unique constraint on a column or set of columns, and a unique index already exists on that column or set of columns, the constraint shares the index. However, if the existing index allows duplicates, the database server returns an error. You must then drop the existing index before you add the constraint.
- When you place a primary-key or unique constraint on a column or set of columns, and a referential constraint already exists on that column or set of columns, the duplicate index is upgraded to unique (if possible), and the index is shared.

You cannot place a unique constraint on a BYTE or TEXT column, nor can you place referential constraints on these types of columns. You can place a check constraint on a BYTE or TEXT column. However, you can check only for IS NULL, IS NOT NULL, or LENGTH.

When you place a referential constraint on a column or set of columns, and an index already exists on that column or set of columns, the index is upgraded to unique (if possible) and the index is shared.

Using Not-Null Constraints with ADD

If a table contains data, when you add a column with a not-null constraint you must also include a DEFAULT clause. If the table is empty, no additional restrictions exist; that is, you can add a column and apply only the not-null constraint.

The following statement is valid whether or not the table contains data:

```
ALTER TABLE items
  ADD (item_weight DECIMAL(6,2)
      DEFAULT 2.0 NOT NULL
      BEFORE total_price)
```

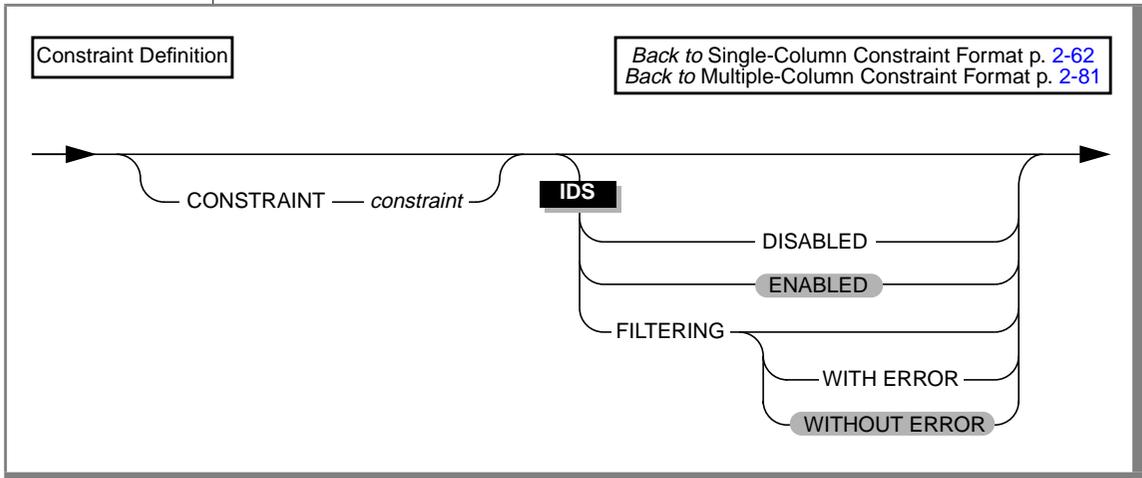
Constraint Definition

IDS

Use the Constraint Definition portion of the ALTER TABLE statement to assign a name to a constraint and to set the mode of the constraint to disabled, enabled, or filtering. ♦

XPS

In Extended Parallel Server, use the Constraint Definition portion of the ALTER TABLE statement to assign a name to a constraint. ♦



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>constraint</i>	Name assigned to the constraint	None.	Identifier, p. 4-205

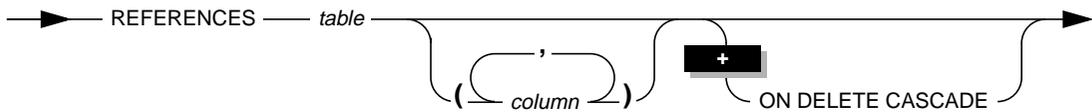
For more information about constraint-mode options, see “[Choosing a Constraint-Mode Option](#)” on page 2-249.

REFERENCES Clause

The REFERENCES clause allows you to place a foreign-key reference on a column. The referenced column can be in the same table as the referencing column, or the referenced column can be in a different table in the same database.

REFERENCES
Clause

[Back to Single-Column Constraint Format p. 2-62](#)
[Back to Multiple-Column Constraint Format p. 2-81](#)



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Referenced column or set of columns in the referenced table If the referenced table is different from the referencing table, the default is the primary-key column. If the referenced table is the same as the referencing table, there is no default.	See “Restrictions on the Referenced Column” on page 2-66.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>table</i>	Name of the referenced table	The referenced table can be the same table as the referencing table, or it can be a different table. The referenced and referencing tables must reside in the same database.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Restrictions on Referential Constraints

You must have the REFERENCES privilege to create a referential constraint.

Restrictions on the Referenced Column

You must observe the following restrictions on the *column* variable (the referenced column) in the REFERENCES clause:

- The referenced and referencing tables must be in the same database.
- The referenced column (or set of columns) must have a unique or primary-key constraint.
- The data types of the referencing and referenced columns must be identical.

The only exception is that a referencing column must be an integer data type if the referenced column is a serial.

- You cannot place a referential constraint on a BYTE or TEXT column.
- A column-level REFERENCES clause can include only a single column name.
- The maximum number of columns in a table-level REFERENCES clause is 16.
- The total length of the columns in a table-level REFERENCES clause cannot exceed 390 bytes. ♦
- The total length of the columns in a table-level REFERENCES clause cannot exceed 255 bytes. ♦

Default Values for the Referenced Column

If the referenced table is different from the referencing table, you do not need to specify the referenced column; the default column is the primary-key column (or columns) of the referenced table. If the referenced table is the same as the referencing table, you must specify the referenced column.

IDS

XPS

The following example creates a new column in the **cust_calls** table, **ref_order**. The **ref_order** column is a foreign key that references the **order_num** column in the **orders** table.

```
ALTER TABLE cust_calls
  ADD ref_order INTEGER
  REFERENCES orders (order_num)
  BEFORE user_id
```

When you place a referential constraint on a column or set of columns, and a duplicate or unique index already exists on that column or set of columns, the index is shared.

Using the ON DELETE CASCADE Option

Use the ON DELETE CASCADE option to specify whether you want rows deleted in the child table when corresponding rows are deleted in the parent table. If you do not specify cascading deletes, the default behavior of the database server prevents you from deleting data in a table if other tables reference it.

If you specify this option, later when you delete a row in the parent table, the database server also deletes any rows associated with that row (foreign keys) in a child table. The principal advantage to the cascading deletes feature is that it allows you to reduce the quantity of SQL statements you need to perform delete actions.

For example, in the **stores_demo** database, the **stock** table contains the **stock_num** column as a primary key. The **catalog** table refers to the **stock_num** column as a foreign key. The following ALTER TABLE statements drop an existing foreign-key constraint (without cascading delete) and add a new constraint that specifies cascading deletes:

```
ALTER TABLE catalog DROP CONSTRAINT aa

ALTER TABLE catalog ADD CONSTRAINT
  (FOREIGN KEY (stock_num, manu_code) REFERENCES stock
  ON DELETE CASCADE CONSTRAINT ab)
```

With cascading deletes specified on the child table, in addition to deleting a stock item from the **stock** table, the delete cascades to the **catalog** table that is associated with the **stock_num** foreign key. This cascading delete works only if the **stock_num** that you are deleting was not ordered; otherwise, the constraint from the **items** table would disallow the cascading delete. For more information, see [“Restrictions on DELETE When Tables Have Cascading Deletes”](#) on page 2-376.

Restrictions

If a table has a trigger with a DELETE trigger event, you cannot define a cascading-delete referential constraint on that table. You receive an error when you attempt to add a referential constraint that specifies ON DELETE CASCADE to a table that has a delete trigger.

For information about syntax restrictions and locking implications when you delete rows from tables that have cascading deletes, see [“Considerations When Tables Have Cascading Deletes”](#) on page 2-375.

Locks Held During Creation of a Referential Constraint

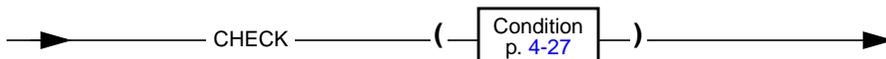
When you create a referential constraint, the database server places an exclusive lock on the referenced table. The lock is released after you finish with the ALTER TABLE statement or at the end of a transaction (if you are altering a table in a database with transactions, and you are using transactions).

CHECK Clause

A check constraint designates a condition that must be met *before* data can be inserted into a column.

CHECK
Clause

[Back to Single-Column Constraint Format p. 2-62](#)
[Back to Multiple-Column Constraint Format p. 2-81](#)



During an insert or update, if a row evaluates to *false* for any check constraint defined on a table, the database server returns an error. The database server does not return an error if a row evaluates to null for a check constraint. In some cases, you might wish to use both a check constraint and a NOT NULL constraint.

Check constraints are defined using *search conditions*. The search condition cannot contain the following items: subqueries, aggregates, host variables, rowids, or user-defined routines. In addition, the search condition cannot contain the following built-in functions: CURRENT, USER, SITENAME, DBSERVERNAME, or TODAY.

You cannot create check constraints for columns across tables. When you are using the ADD or MODIFY clause, the check constraint cannot depend upon values in other columns of the same table. The following example adds a new column, **unit_price**, to the **items** table and includes a check constraint that ensures that the entered value is greater than 0:

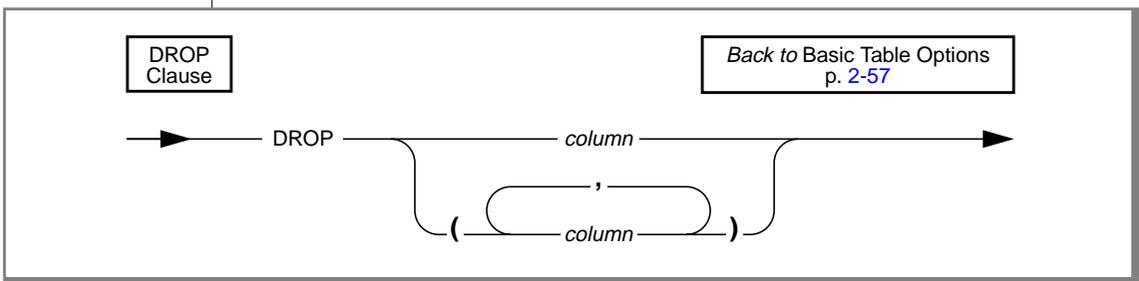
```
ALTER TABLE items
  ADD (unit_price MONEY (6,2) CHECK (unit_price > 0) )
```

To create a constraint that checks values in more than one column, use the ADD CONSTRAINT clause. The following example builds a constraint on the column that was added in the previous example. The check constraint now spans two columns in the table.

```
ALTER TABLE items ADD CONSTRAINT
  CHECK (unit_price < total_price)
```

DROP Clause

Use the DROP clause to drop one or more columns from a table.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of the column that you want to drop	The column must already exist in the table. If the column is referenced in a fragment expression, it cannot be dropped. If the column is the last column in the table, it cannot be dropped.	Identifier, p. 4-205

XPS

You cannot issue an ALTER TABLE DROP statement that would drop every column from the table. At least one column must remain in the table.

You cannot drop a column that is part of a fragmentation strategy.

In Extended Parallel Server, you cannot use the DROP clause if the table has a dependent GK index. ♦

How Dropping a Column Affects Constraints

When you drop a column, all constraints placed on that column are dropped, as described in the following list:

- All single-column constraints are dropped.
- All referential constraints that reference the column are dropped.
- All check constraints that reference the column are dropped.
- If the column is part of a multiple-column primary-key or unique constraint, the constraints placed on the multiple columns are also dropped. This action, in turn, triggers the dropping of all referential constraints that reference the multiple columns.

Because any constraints that are associated with a column are dropped when the column is dropped, the structure of other tables might also be altered when you use this clause. For example, if the dropped column is a unique or primary key that is referenced in other tables, those referential constraints also are dropped. Therefore the structure of those other tables is also altered.

How Dropping a Column Affects Triggers

In general, when you drop a column from a table, the triggers based on that table remain unchanged. However, if the column that you drop appears in the action clause of a trigger, you can invalidate the trigger.

The following statements illustrate the possible affects on triggers:

```
CREATE TABLE tab1 (i1 int, i2 int, i3 int);
CREATE TABLE tab2 (i4 int, i5 int);
CREATE TRIGGER col1trig UPDATE OF i2 ON tab1 BEFORE(INSERT
INTO tab2 VALUES(1,1));
ALTER TABLE tab2 DROP i4;
```

After the ALTER TABLE statement, **tab2** has only one column. The **col1trig** trigger is invalidated because the action clause as it is currently defined with values for two columns cannot occur.

If you drop a column that occurs in the triggering column list of an UPDATE trigger, the database server drops the column from the triggering column list. If the column is the only member of the triggering column list, the database server drops the trigger from the table. For more information on triggering columns in an UPDATE trigger, see [“CREATE TRIGGER” on page 2-296](#).

If a trigger is invalidated when you alter the underlying table, drop and then recreate the trigger.

How Dropping a Column Affects Views

When you drop a column from a table, the views based on that table remain unchanged. That is, the database server does not automatically drop the corresponding columns from associated views.

The database server does not automatically drop the column because you can change the order of columns in a table by dropping a column and then adding a new column with the same name. In this case, views based on the altered table continue to work. However, they retain their original sequence of columns.

If a view is invalidated when you alter the underlying table, you must rebuild the view.

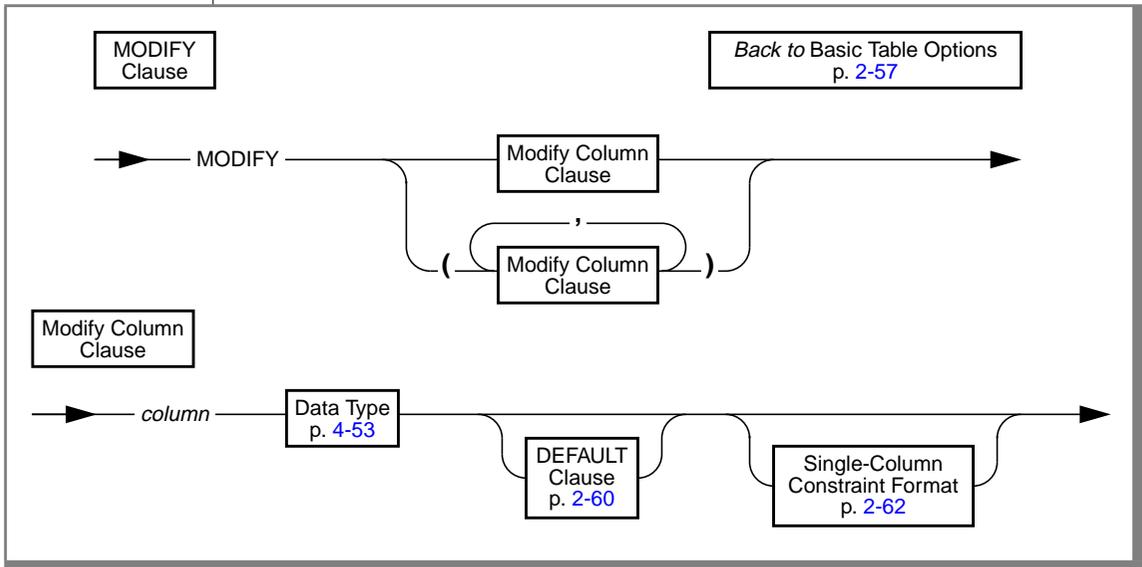
XPS

How Dropping a Column Affects a Generalized-Key Index

In Extended Parallel Server, if you drop a column from a table that has a dependent GK index, all GK indexes on the table that refer to the dropped column are dropped. Any GK indexes on other tables that refer to the dropped column are also dropped.

MODIFY Clause

Use the MODIFY clause to change the data type of a column and the length of a character column, to add or change the default value for a column, and to allow or disallow nulls in a column.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of the column that you want to modify	The column must already exist in the table. The data type of the column cannot be a collection data type.	Identifier, p. 4-205

XPS

IDS



In Extended Parallel Server, you cannot use the `MODIFY` clause if the table has a dependent GK index. ♦

You cannot change the data type of a column to be a collection type or a row type. ♦

When you modify a column, *all* attributes previously associated with that column (that is, default value, single-column check constraint, or referential constraint) are dropped. When you want certain attributes of the column to remain, such as `PRIMARY KEY`, you must re-specify those attributes. For example, if you are changing the data type of an existing column, **quantity**, to `SMALLINT`, and you want to keep the default value (in this case, 1) and non-null attributes for that column, you can issue the following `ALTER TABLE` statement:

```
ALTER TABLE items
  MODIFY (quantity SMALLINT DEFAULT 1 NOT NULL)
```

Tip: *Both attributes are specified again in the `MODIFY` clause.*

When you modify a column that has column constraints associated with it, the following constraints are dropped:

- All single-column constraints are dropped.
- All referential constraints that reference the column are dropped.
- If the modified column is part of a multiple-column primary-key or unique constraint, all referential constraints that reference the multiple columns also are dropped.

For example, if you modify a column that has a unique constraint, the unique constraint is dropped. If this column was referenced by columns in other tables, those referential constraints are also dropped. In addition, if the column is part of a multiple-column primary-key or unique constraint, the multiple-column constraints are not dropped, but any referential constraints placed on the column by other tables *are* dropped. For example, a column is part of a multiple-column primary-key constraint. This primary key is referenced by foreign keys in two other tables. When this column is modified, the multiple-column primary-key constraint is not dropped, but the referential constraints placed on it by the two other tables *are* dropped.

Using the MODIFY Clause in Different Situations

The characteristics of the object you are attempting to modify can affect how you handle your modifications.

Altering BYTE and TEXT Columns

You can use the MODIFY clause to change a BYTE column to a TEXT column, and vice versa. However, you cannot use the MODIFY clause to change a BYTE or TEXT column to any other type of column, and vice versa.

You can also use the MODIFY clause to change a BYTE column to a BLOB column and a TEXT column to a CLOB column. ♦

Altering the Next Serial Number

You can use the MODIFY clause to reset the next value of a serial column. You cannot set the next value below the current maximum value in the column because that action can cause the database server to generate duplicate numbers. However, you can set the next value to any value higher than the current maximum, which creates gaps in the sequence.

The following example sets the next serial number to 1000.

```
ALTER TABLE my_table MODIFY (serial_num serial (1000))
```

As an alternative, you can use the INSERT statement to create a gap in the sequence of a serial column. For more information, see [“Inserting Values into Serial Columns” on page 2-543](#).

Altering the Next Serial Number of a Typed Table

You can set the initial serial number or modify the next serial number for a row-type field with the MODIFY clause of the ALTER TABLE statement. (You cannot set the start number for a serial field when you create a row type.)

Suppose you have row types **parent**, **child1**, **child2**, and **child3**.

```
CREATE ROW TYPE parent (a int);
CREATE ROW TYPE child1 (s serial) UNDER parent;
CREATE ROW TYPE child2 (b float, s8 serial8) UNDER child1;
CREATE ROW TYPE child3 (d int) UNDER child2;
```

IDS

IDS

You then create corresponding typed tables:

```
CREATE TABLE OF TYPE parent;  
CREATE TABLE OF TYPE child1 UNDER parent;  
CREATE TABLE OF TYPE child2 UNDER child1;  
CREATE TABLE OF TYPE child3 UNDER child2;
```

To change the next serial and next serial 8 numbers to 75, you can enter the following command:

```
ALTER TABLE child3tab  
    MODIFY (s serial(75), s8 serial8(75))
```

When the ALTER TABLE statement executes, the database server updates corresponding serial columns in the **child1**, **child2**, and **child3** tables.

Altering the Structure of Tables

When you use the MODIFY clause, you can also alter the structure of other tables. If the modified column is referenced by other tables, those referential constraints are dropped. You must add those constraints to the referencing tables again, using the ALTER TABLE statement.

When you change the data type of an existing column, all data is converted to the new data type, including numbers to characters and characters to numbers (if the characters represent numbers). The following statement changes the data type of the **quantity** column:

```
ALTER TABLE items MODIFY (quantity CHAR(6))
```

When a primary-key or unique constraint exists, however, conversion takes place only if it does not violate the constraint. If a data-type conversion would result in duplicate values (by changing FLOAT to SMALLFLOAT, for example, or by truncating CHAR values), the ALTER TABLE statement fails.

Modifying Tables for Null Values

You can modify an existing column that formerly permitted nulls to disallow nulls, provided that the column contains no null values. To do this, specify MODIFY with the same column name and data type and the NOT NULL keywords. The NOT NULL keywords create a not-null constraint on the column.

You can modify an existing column that did not permit nulls to permit nulls. To do this, specify MODIFY with the column name and the existing data type, and omit the NOT NULL keywords. The omission of the NOT NULL keywords drops the not-null constraint on the column. If a unique index exists on the column, you can remove it using the DROP INDEX statement.

An alternative method of permitting nulls in an existing column that did not permit nulls is to use the DROP CONSTRAINT clause to drop the not-null constraint on the column.

Adding a Constraint When Existing Rows Violate the Constraint

If you use the MODIFY clause to add a constraint in the enabled mode and receive an error message because existing rows would violate the constraint, you can take the following steps to add the constraint successfully:

1. Add the constraint in the disabled mode.
Issue the ALTER TABLE statement again, but this time specify the DISABLED keyword in the MODIFY clause.
2. Start a violations and diagnostics table for the target table with the START VIOLATIONS TABLE statement.
3. Issue a SET statement to switch the database object mode of the constraint to the enabled mode.

When you issue this statement, existing rows in the target table that violate the constraint are duplicated in the violations table; however, you receive an integrity-violation error message, and the constraint remains disabled.

4. Issue a SELECT statement on the violations table to retrieve the nonconforming rows that are duplicated from the target table.
You might need to join the violations and diagnostics tables to get all the necessary information.
5. Take corrective action on the rows in the target table that violate the constraint.

6. After you fix all the nonconforming rows in the target table, issue the SET statement again to switch the disabled constraint to the enabled mode.

This time the constraint is enabled, and no integrity-violation error message is returned because all rows in the target table now satisfy the new constraint.

How Modifying a Column Affects a Generalized-Key Index

In Extended Parallel Server, when you modify a column, all GK indexes that reference the column are dropped if the column is used in the GK index in a way that is incompatible with the new data type of the column.

For example, if a numeric column is changed to a character column, any GK indexes involving that column are dropped if they involve arithmetic expressions.

How Modifying a Column Affects Triggers

If you modify a column that appears in the triggering column list of an UPDATE trigger, the trigger is unchanged.

When you modify a column in a table, the triggers based on that table remain unchanged. However, the column modification might invalidate the trigger.

The following statements illustrate the possible affects on triggers:

```
CREATE TABLE tab1 (i1 int, i2 int, i3 int);
CREATE TABLE tab2 (i4 int, i5 int);
CREATE TRIGGER col1trig UPDATE OF i2 ON tab1 BEFORE(INSERT
INTO tab2 VALUES(1,1));
ALTER TABLE tab2 MODIFY i4 char;
```

After the ALTER TABLE statement, column **i4** accepts only character values. Because character columns accept only values enclosed in quotation marks, the action clause of the **col1trig** trigger is invalidated.

If a trigger is invalidated when you modify the underlying table, drop and then recreate the trigger.

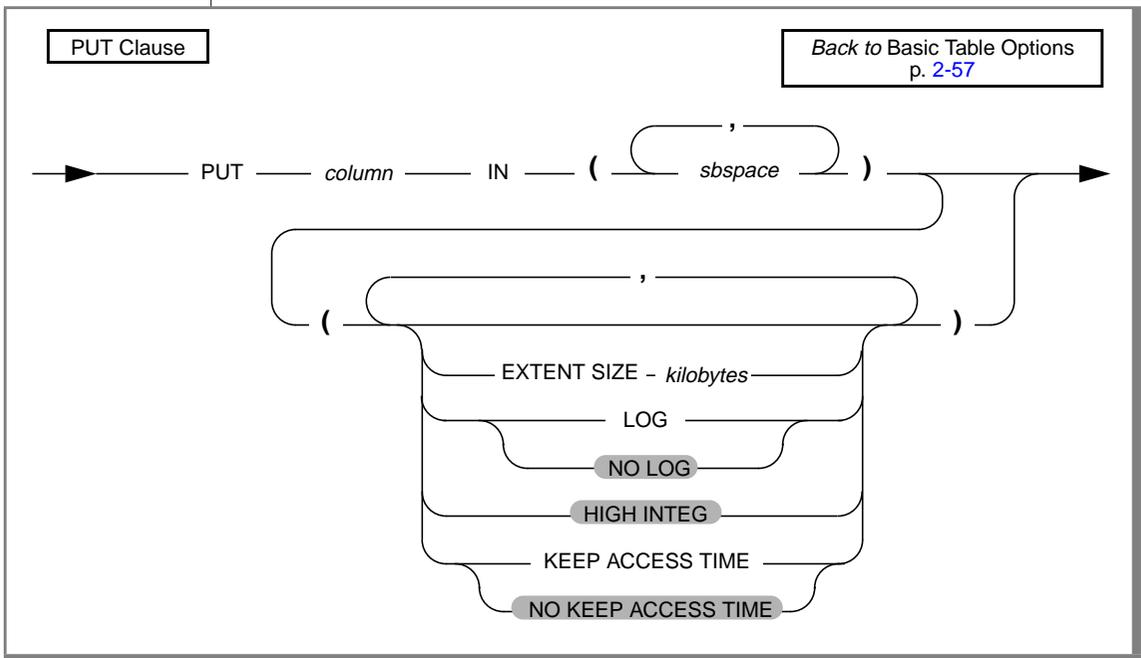
How Modifying a Column Affects Views

When you modify a column in a table, the views based on that table remain unchanged. If a view is invalidated when you alter the underlying table, you must rebuild the view.

IDS

PUT Clause

Use the PUT clause to specify the storage space (an sbspace) for a column that contains smart large objects. You can use this clause to specify storage characteristics for a new column or replace the storage characteristics of an existing column.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of the column to store in the specified sbspace	Column must contain a user-defined type, complex type, BLOB, or CLOB data type. The column cannot be in the form <i>column.field</i> . That is, the smart large object that you are storing cannot be one field of a row type.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>kilobytes</i>	Number of kilobytes to allocate for the extent size	The number must be an integer value.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>sbspace</i>	Name of an area of storage used for smart large objects	The sbspace must exist.	Identifier, p. 4-205

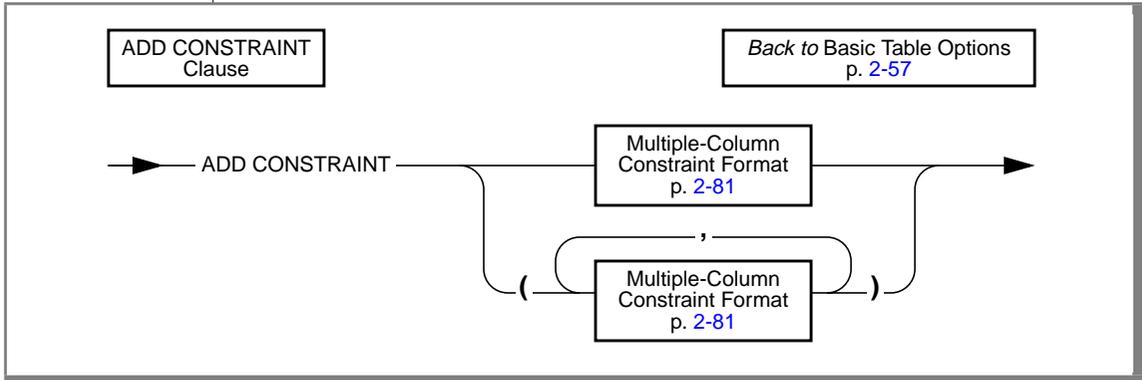
When you modify the storage characteristics of an existing column, *all* attributes previously associated with the storage space for that column are dropped. When you want certain attributes to remain, you must respecify those attributes. For example, to retain logging, you must respecify the LOG keyword.

When you modify the storage characteristics of a column that holds smart large objects, the database server does not alter smart large objects that already exist. The database server applies the new storage characteristics to only those smart large objects that are inserted after the ALTER TABLE statement takes effect.

For more information on the available storage characteristics, refer to the counterpart of this section in the CREATE TABLE statement, [“PUT Clause” on page 2-273](#). For a discussion of large-object characteristics, refer to [“Large-Object Data Types” on page 4-62](#).

ADD CONSTRAINT Clause

Use the ADD CONSTRAINT clause to specify a constraint on a new or existing column or on a set of columns.



For example, to add a unique constraint to the **fname** and **lname** columns of the **customer** table, use the following statement:

```
ALTER TABLE customer
  ADD CONSTRAINT UNIQUE (lname, fname)
```

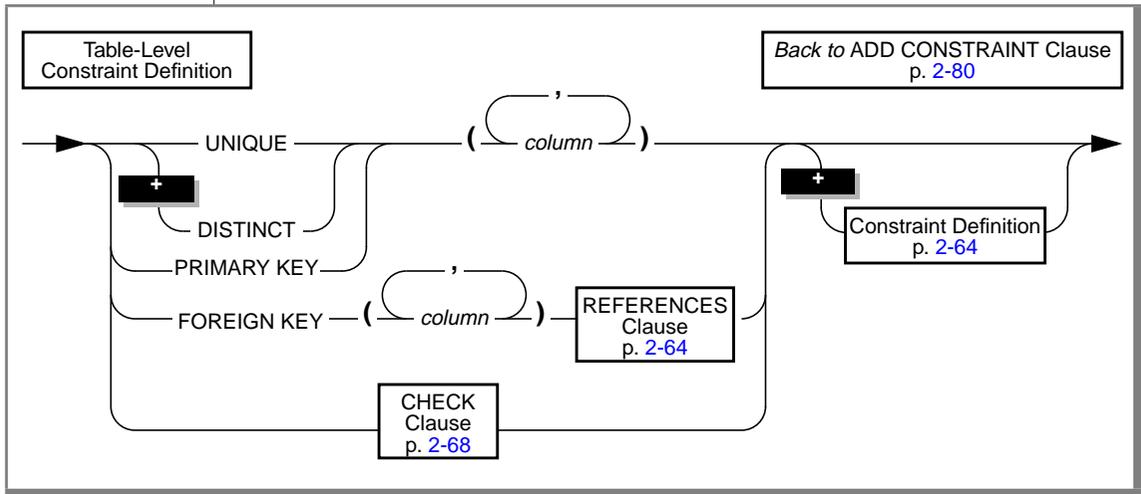
To name the constraint, change the preceding statement, as the following example shows:

```
ALTER TABLE customer
  ADD CONSTRAINT UNIQUE (lname, fname) CONSTRAINT u_cust
```

When you do not provide a constraint name, the database server provides one. You can find the name of the constraint in the **sysconstraints** system catalog table. For more information about the **sysconstraints** system catalog table, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

Multiple-Column Constraint Format

Use the Multiple-Column Constraint Format option to assign a constraint to one column or a set of columns.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of the column or columns on which the constraint is placed	The maximum number of columns is 16, and the total length of the list of columns cannot exceed 255 bytes.	Identifier, p. 4-237

A constraint that involves multiple columns can include no more than 16 column names.

- The total length of the list of columns cannot exceed 390 bytes. ♦
- The total length of the list of columns cannot exceed 255 bytes. ♦

You can assign a name to the constraint and set its mode by means of “[Constraint Definition](#)” on page 2-64.

Adding a Primary-Key or Unique Constraint

When you place a primary-key or unique constraint on a column or set of columns, those columns must contain unique values.

IDS

XPS

When you place a primary-key or unique constraint on a column or set of columns, the database server checks for existing constraints and indexes.

- If a user-created unique index already exists on that column or set of columns, the constraint shares the index.
- If a user-created index that allows duplicates already exists on that column or set of columns, the database server returns an error.
You must drop the existing index before adding the primary-key or unique constraint.
- If a referential constraint already exists on that column or set of columns, the duplicate index is upgraded to unique (if possible) and the index is shared.
- If no referential constraint or user-created index exists on that column or set of columns, the database server creates an internal B-tree index on the specified columns.

Adding a Referential Constraint

When you place a referential constraint on a column or set of columns, and an index already exists on that column or set of columns, the index is shared.

Privileges Required for Adding Constraints

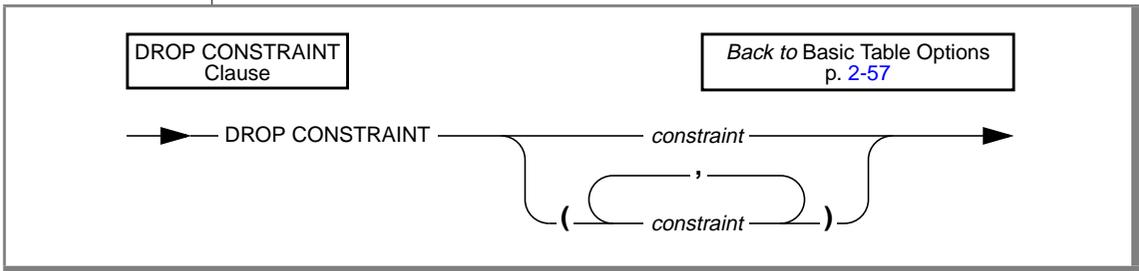
When you own the table or have the Alter privilege on the table, you can create a check, primary-key, or unique constraint on the table and specify yourself as the owner of the constraint. To add a referential constraint, you must have the References privilege on either the referenced columns or the referenced table. When you have the DBA privilege, you can create constraints for other users.

Recovery from Constraint Violations

If you use the ADD CONSTRAINT clause to add a constraint in the enabled mode and receive an error message because existing rows would violate the constraint, you can follow a procedure to add the constraint successfully. See [“Adding a Constraint When Existing Rows Violate the Constraint”](#) on page 2-76.

DROP CONSTRAINT Clause

Use the DROP CONSTRAINT clause to drop a named constraint.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>constraint</i>	Name of the constraint that you want to drop	The constraint must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

To drop an existing constraint, specify the DROP CONSTRAINT keywords and the name of the constraint. The following statement is an example of dropping a constraint:

```
ALTER TABLE manufact DROP CONSTRAINT con_name
```

If a constraint name is not specified when the constraint is created, the database server generates the name. You can query the **sysconstraints** system catalog table for the name and owner of a constraint. For example, to find the name of the constraint placed on the **items** table, you can issue the following statement:

```
SELECT constrname FROM sysconstraints
WHERE tabid = (SELECT tabid FROM systables
WHERE tabname = 'items')
```

When you drop a primary-key or unique constraint that has a corresponding foreign key, the referential constraints are dropped. For example, if you drop the primary-key constraint on the **order_num** column in the **orders** table and **order_num** exists in the **items** table as a foreign key, that referential relationship is also dropped.

MODIFY NEXT SIZE Clause

Use the MODIFY NEXT SIZE clause to change the size of new extents.

MODIFY NEXT SIZE
Clause

[Back to Basic Table Options p. 2-57](#)
[Back to Typed-Table Options p. 2-89](#)

—▶ MODIFY NEXT SIZE —▶ *kilobytes* —▶

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>kilobytes</i>	Length in kilobytes that you want to assign for the next extent for this table	The minimum length is four times the disk-page size on your system. For example, if you have a 2-kilobyte page system, the minimum length is 8 kilobytes. The maximum length is equal to the chunk size.	Expression, p. 4-73

If you want to specify an extent size of 32 kilobytes, use a statement such as the one in the following example:

```
ALTER TABLE customer MODIFY NEXT SIZE 32
```

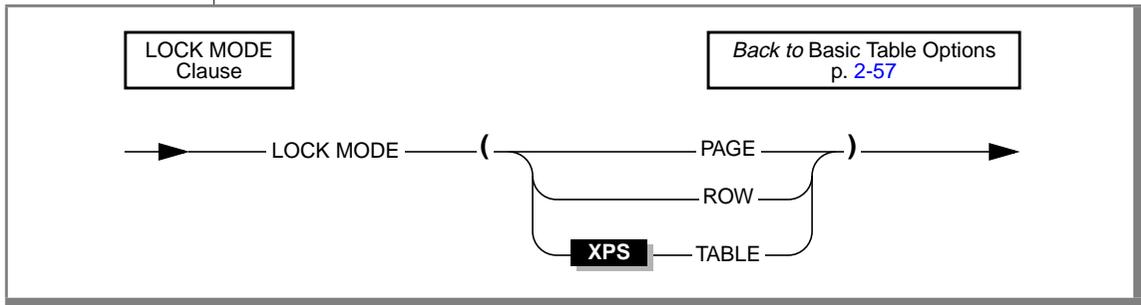
When you use this clause, the size of existing extents does not change. You cannot change the size of existing extents without unloading all of the data.

Changing the Size of Existing Extents

To change the size of existing extents, you must unload all of the data, modify the extent and next-extent sizes in the CREATE TABLE statement of the database schema, re-create the database, and reload the data. For information about optimizing extents, see your [Administrator's Guide](#).

LOCK MODE Clause

Use the LOCK MODE keywords to change the locking granularity of a table.



The following table describes the locking-granularity options available.

Locking Granularity Option	Purpose
ROW	Obtains and releases one lock per row. Row-level locking provides the highest level of concurrency. However, if you are using many rows at one time, the lock-management overhead can become significant. You can also exceed the maximum number of locks available, depending on the configuration of your database-server.
PAGE	Obtains and releases one lock on a whole page of rows. This is the default locking granularity. Page-level locking is especially useful when you know that the rows are grouped into pages in the same order that you are using to process all the rows. For example, if you are processing the contents of a table in the same order as its cluster index, page locking is especially appropriate.
TABLE (XPS only)	Places a lock on the entire table. This type of lock reduces update concurrency in comparison to row and page locks. A table lock reduces the lock-management overhead for the table Multiple read-only transactions can still access the table.

ADD TYPE Clause

Use the ADD TYPE clause to convert a table that is not based on a named-row type into a typed table.

ADD TYPE
Clause

Back to Basic Table Options
p. [2-57](#)

→ ADD TYPE → *row_type_name* →

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>row_type_name</i>	Name of the row type being added to the table	The field types of this row type must match the column types of the table.	Data Type, p. 4-53

When you use the ADD TYPE clause, you assign a named-row type to a table whose columns match the fields of the row type.

You cannot add a type to a fragmented table that has rowids.

You cannot combine the ADD TYPE clause with any clause that changes the structure of the table. That is, you cannot use an ADD, DROP, or MODIFY clause in the same statement as the ADD TYPE clause.



Tip: To change the data type of a column, use the MODIFY clause. The ADD TYPE clause does not allow you to change column data types.

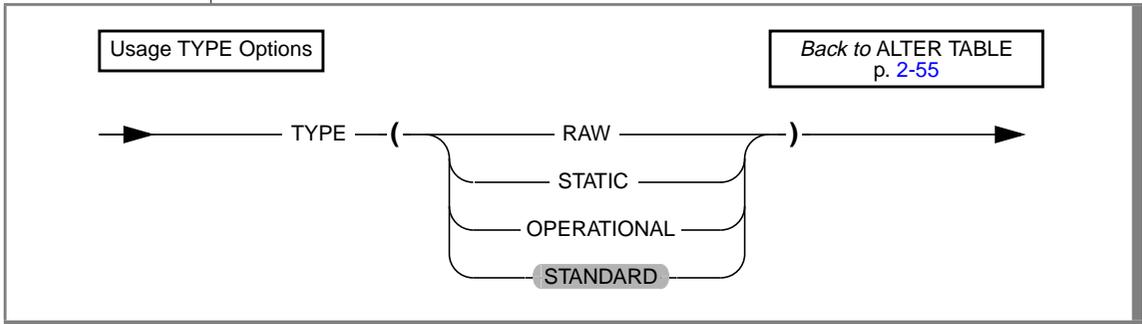
When you add a named-row type to a table, be sure that:

- the type already exists.
- the fields in the named-row type match the column types in the table.

You must have the Usage privilege to add a type to a table.

Usage-TYPE Options

In Extended Parallel Server, use the Usage-TYPE options to specify that the table have particular characteristics that can improve various bulk operations on it.



Other than the default option (STANDARD) that is used for OLTP databases, these Usage-TYPE options are used primarily to improve performance in data warehousing databases.

A table can have any of the following usage characteristics.

Option	Purpose
RAW	Non-logging table that cannot have indexes or referential constraints but can be updated Use this type for quickly loading data. With this type you take advantage of light appends and avoid the overhead of logging, checking constraints, and building indexes.

Option	Purpose
STATIC	<p>Non-logging table that can contain index and referential constraints but cannot be updated</p> <p>Use this type for read-only operations because there is no logging or locking overhead.</p>
OPERATIONAL	<p>Logging table that uses light appends and cannot be restored from archive</p> <p>Use this type on tables that are refreshed frequently because light appends allow the quick addition of many rows.</p>
STANDARD	<p>Logging table that allows rollback, recovery, and restoration from archives</p> <p>This type is the default.</p> <p>Use this type for all the recovery and constraints functionality that you want on your OLTP databases.</p>

For a more detailed description, refer to your [Administrator's Guide](#).

Restrictions on the Usage-TYPE Options

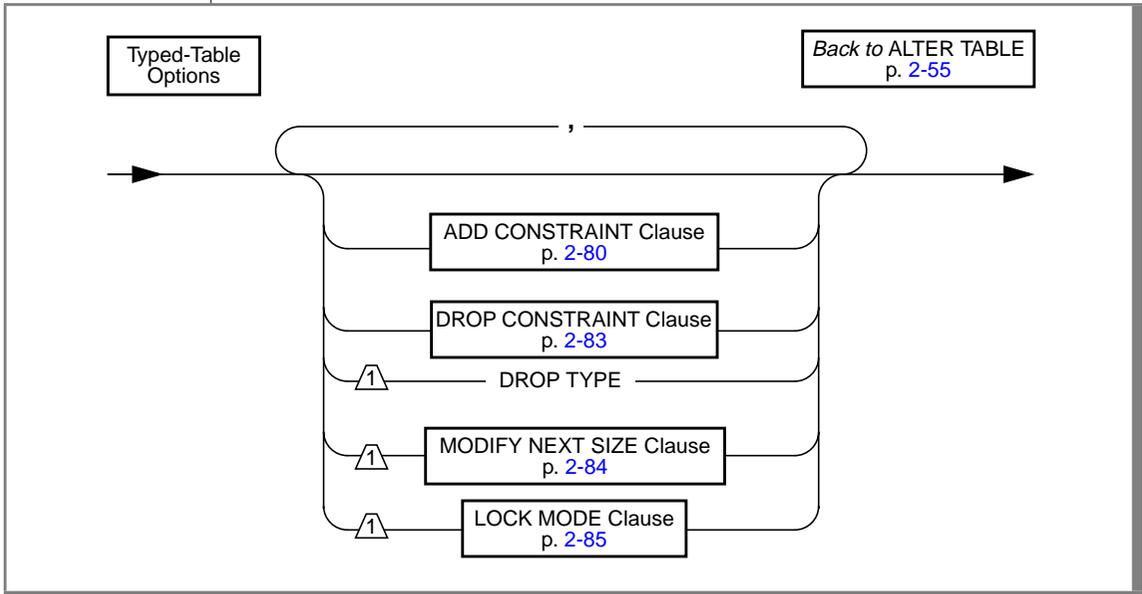
The usage-TYPE options have the following restrictions:

- You cannot change the usage type if the table has a dependent GK index.
 - You must perform a level-0 archive before the usage type of a table can be altered to STANDARD from any other type.
 - If you want to change the usage type of a table to RAW, you must drop all indexes on the table before you do so.
 - If you have triggers defined on the table, you cannot change the usage type to RAW or STATIC.
- That is, raw and static tables do not support triggers.
- You cannot use this clause with SCRATCH or TEMP tables.

That is, you cannot change any of these types of tables to either a SCRATCH or TEMP table. Similarly, you cannot change a SCRATCH or TEMP table to any of these types of tables.

Typed Tables Options

In Dynamic Server, the database server performs the actions in the ALTER TABLE statement in the order that you specify. If any of the actions fails, the entire operation is cancelled.



Altering Subtables and Supertables

The following considerations apply to tables that are part of inheritance hierarchies:

- For subtables, ADD CONSTRAINT and DROP CONSTRAINT are not allowed on inherited constraints.
- For supertables, ADD CONSTRAINT and DROP CONSTRAINT propagate to all subtables.

DROP TYPE Option

Use the DROP TYPE option to drop the type from a table. DROP TYPE removes the association between a table and a named-row type. You must drop the type from a typed table before you can modify, drop, or change the data type of a column in the table.

If a table is part of a table hierarchy, you cannot drop its type unless it is the last subtype in the hierarchy. That is, you can only drop a type from a table if that table has no subtables. When you drop the type of a subtable, it is automatically removed from the hierarchy. The table rows are deleted from all indexes defined by its supertables.

Related Information

Related statements: [CREATE TABLE](#), [DROP TABLE](#), [LOCK TABLE](#), and [SET Database Object Mode](#)

For discussions of data-integrity constraints and the ON DELETE CASCADE option, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For a discussion of database and table creation, see the [Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation](#).

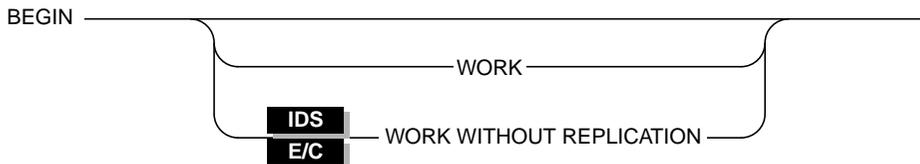
For information on how to maximize performance when you make table modifications, see your [Performance Guide](#).

+

BEGIN WORK

Use the `BEGIN WORK` statement to start a transaction (a sequence of database operations that the `COMMIT WORK` or `ROLLBACK WORK` statement terminates). Use the `BEGIN WORK WITHOUT REPLICATION` statement to start a transaction that does not replicate to other database servers.

Syntax



Usage

Each row that an `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, or `INSERT` statement affects during a transaction is locked and remains locked throughout the transaction. A transaction that contains many such statements or that contains statements affecting many rows can exceed the limits that your operating system or the database server configuration imposes on the maximum number of simultaneous locks. If no other user is accessing the table, you can avoid locking limits and reduce locking overhead by locking the table with the `LOCK TABLE` statement after you begin the transaction. Like other locks, this table lock is released when the transaction terminates. The example of a transaction on “[Example of BEGIN WORK](#)” on page 2-93 includes a `LOCK TABLE` statement.

Important: You can issue the `BEGIN WORK` statement only if a transaction is not in progress. If you issue a `BEGIN WORK` statement while you are in a transaction, the database server returns an error.



E/C

In `ESQL/C`, if you use the `BEGIN WORK` statement within a UDR called by a `WHENEVER` statement, specify `WHENEVER SQLERROR CONTINUE` and `WHENEVER SQLWARNING CONTINUE` before the `ROLLBACK WORK` statement. These statements prevent the program from looping if the `ROLLBACK WORK` statement encounters an error or a warning. ♦

ANSI

WORK Keyword

The WORK keyword is optional in a BEGIN WORK statement. The following two statements are equivalent:

```
BEGIN;
```

```
BEGIN WORK;
```

BEGIN WORK and ANSI-Compliant Databases

In an ANSI-compliant database, you do not need the BEGIN WORK statement because transactions are implicit. A warning is generated if you use a BEGIN WORK statement immediately after one of the following statements:

- DATABASE
- COMMIT WORK
- CREATE DATABASE
- ROLLBACK WORK

An error is generated if you use a BEGIN WORK statement after any other statement.

IDS

E/C

BEGIN WORK WITHOUT REPLICATION

When you use Enterprise Replication for data replication, you can use the BEGIN WORK WITHOUT REPLICATION statement to start a transaction that does not replicate to other database servers.

You cannot execute the BEGIN WORK WITHOUT REPLICATION statement as a stand-alone embedded statement within an ESQL/C application. Instead you must execute this statement indirectly. You can use either of the following methods:

- You can use a combination of the PREPARE and EXECUTE statements to prepare and execute the BEGIN WORK WITHOUT REPLICATION statement.
- You can use the EXECUTE IMMEDIATE statement to prepare and execute the BEGIN WORK WITHOUT REPLICATION statement in a single step.

You cannot use the DECLARE cursor CURSOR WITH HOLD with the BEGIN WORK WITHOUT REPLICATION statement.

For more information about data replication, see the [Guide to Informix Enterprise Replication](#).

Example of BEGIN WORK

The following code fragment shows how you might place statements within a transaction. The transaction is made up of the statements that occur between the BEGIN WORK and COMMIT WORK statements. The transaction locks the **stock** table (LOCK TABLE), updates rows in the **stock** table (UPDATE), deletes rows from the **stock** table (DELETE), and inserts a row into the **manufact** table (INSERT). The database server must perform this sequence of operations either completely or not at all. The database server guarantees that all the statements are completely and perfectly committed to disk, or the database is restored to the same state as before the transaction began.

```
BEGIN WORK;
  LOCK TABLE stock;
  UPDATE stock SET unit_price = unit_price * 1.10
    WHERE manu_code = 'KAR';
  DELETE FROM stock WHERE description = 'baseball bat';
  INSERT INTO manufact (manu_code, manu_name, lead_time)
    VALUES ('LYM', 'LYMAN', 14);
COMMIT WORK;
```

Related Information

Related statements: [COMMIT WORK](#), [ROLLBACK WORK](#)

For discussions of transactions and locking, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

E/C

CLOSE

Use the CLOSE statement when you no longer need to refer to the rows that a select or function cursor produced or when you want to flush and close an insert cursor.

Use this statement with ESQL/C.

Syntax

```
CLOSE cursor_id | cursor_id_var ;
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>cursor_id</i>	Name of the cursor to close	The DECLARE statement must have previously declared the cursor.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>cursor_id_var</i>	Host variable that holds the value of <i>cursor_id</i>	Host variable must be a character data type. The cursor must be declared. In ANSI-compliant databases, before you can close a cursor, the cursor must be open.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

Usage

Closing a cursor makes the cursor unusable for any statements except OPEN or FREE and releases resources that the database server had allocated to the cursor. A CLOSE statement treats a cursor that is associated with an INSERT statement differently than one that is associated with a SELECT or EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement.

You can close a cursor that was never opened or that has already been closed. No action is taken in these cases.

ANSI

In an ANSI-compliant database, the database server returns an error if you close a cursor that was not open. ♦

Closing a Select or Function Cursor

When a cursor identifier is associated with a `SELECT` or `EXECUTE FUNCTION` (or `EXECUTE PROCEDURE`) statement, closing the cursor terminates the `SELECT` or `EXECUTE FUNCTION` (or `EXECUTE PROCEDURE`) statement. The database server releases all resources that it might have allocated to the active set of rows, for example, a temporary table that it used to hold an ordered set. The database server also releases any locks that it might have held on rows that were selected through the cursor. If a transaction contains the `CLOSE` statement, the database server does not release the locks until you execute `COMMIT WORK` or `ROLLBACK WORK`.

After you close a select or function cursor, you cannot execute a `FETCH` statement that names that cursor until you have reopened it.

Closing an Insert Cursor

When a cursor identifier is associated with an `INSERT` statement, the `CLOSE` statement writes any remaining buffered rows into the database. The number of rows that were successfully inserted into the database is returned in the third element of the `sqlerrd` array, `sqlca.sqlerrd[2]`, in the `sqlca` structure. For information on using `SQLERRD` to count the total number of rows that were inserted, see [“Error Checking” on page 2-601](#).

The `SQLCODE` field of the `sqlca` structure, `sqlca.sqlcode`, indicates the result of the `CLOSE` statement for an insert cursor. If all buffered rows are successfully inserted, `SQLCODE` is set to zero. If an error is encountered, the `sqlca.sqlcode` field in the `SQLCODE` is set to a negative error message number.

When `SQLCODE` is zero, the row buffer space is released, and the cursor is closed; that is, you cannot execute a `PUT` or `FLUSH` statement that names the cursor until you reopen it.



***Tip:** When you encounter an `SQLCODE` error, a corresponding `SQLSTATE` error value also exists. For information about how to get the message text, check the `GET DIAGNOSTICS` statement.*

If the insert is not successful, the number of successfully inserted rows is stored in `sqlerrd`. Any buffered rows that follow the last successfully inserted row are discarded. Because the insert fails, the CLOSE statement fails also, and the cursor is not closed. For example, a CLOSE statement can fail if insufficient disk space prevents some of the rows from being inserted. In this case, a second CLOSE statement can be successful because no buffered rows exist. An OPEN statement can also be successful because the OPEN statement performs an implicit close.

IDS

Closing a Collection Cursor

You can declare both select and insert cursors on collection variables. Such cursors are called collection cursors. Use the CLOSE statement to deallocate resources that have been allocated for the collection cursor.

For more information on how to use a collection cursor, see the following sections: [“Fetching From a Collection Cursor” on page 2-466](#) and [“Inserting into a Collection Cursor” on page 2-599](#).

Using End of Transaction to Close a Cursor

The COMMIT WORK and ROLLBACK WORK statements close all cursors except those that are declared with hold. It is better to close all cursors explicitly, however. For select or function cursors, this action simply makes the intent of the program clear. It also helps to avoid a logic error if the WITH HOLD clause is later added to the declaration of a cursor.

For an insert cursor, it is important to use the CLOSE statement explicitly so that you can test the error code. Following the COMMIT WORK statement, SQLCODE reflects the result of the COMMIT statement, not the result of closing cursors. If you use a COMMIT WORK statement without first using a CLOSE statement, and if an error occurs while the last buffered rows are being written to the database, the transaction is still committed.

For how to use insert cursors and the WITH HOLD clause, see [“DECLARE” on page 2-349](#).

ANSI

In an ANSI-compliant database, a cursor cannot be closed implicitly. You must issue a CLOSE statement. ♦

Related Information

Related statements: [DECLARE](#), [FETCH](#), [FLUSH](#), [FREE](#), [OPEN](#), [PUT](#), and [SET AUTOFREE](#)

For an introductory discussion of cursors, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For a more advanced discussion of cursors, see the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

+

CLOSE DATABASE

Use the CLOSE DATABASE statement to close the current database.

Syntax

```
CLOSE DATABASE _____
```

Usage

When you issue a CLOSE DATABASE statement, you can issue only the following SQL statements immediately after it:

- CONNECT
- CREATE DATABASE
- DATABASE
- DROP DATABASE
- DISCONNECT

This statement is valid only if an explicit connection existed before you issued the CLOSE DATABASE statement.

Issue the CLOSE DATABASE statement before you drop the current database.

If your database has transactions, and if you have started a transaction, you must issue a COMMIT WORK statement before you use the CLOSE DATABASE statement.

The following example shows how to use the CLOSE DATABASE statement to drop the current database:

```
DATABASE stores_demo
.
.
.
CLOSE DATABASE
DROP DATABASE stores_demo
```

E/C

In ESQ/C, the CLOSE DATABASE statement cannot appear in a multi-statement PREPARE operation.

If you use the `CLOSE DATABASE` statement within a UDR called by a `WHENEVER` statement, specify `WHENEVER SQLERROR CONTINUE` and `WHENEVER SQLWARNING CONTINUE` before the `ROLLBACK WORK` statement. This action prevents the program from looping if the `ROLLBACK WORK` statement encounters an error or a warning.

When you issue the `CLOSE DATABASE` statement, declared cursors are no longer valid. You must re-declare any cursors that you want to use. ♦

Related Information

Related statements: [CONNECT](#), [CREATE DATABASE](#), [DATABASE](#), [DISCONNECT](#), and [DROP DATABASE](#)

COMMIT WORK

Use the `COMMIT WORK` statement to commit all modifications made to the database from the beginning of a transaction. This statement informs the database server that you reached the end of a series of statements that must succeed as a single unit. The database server takes the required steps to make sure that all modifications made by the transaction are completed correctly and committed to disk.

Syntax

```
COMMIT
```

```
WORK
```

Usage

Use the `COMMIT WORK` statement when you are sure you want to keep changes that are made to the database from the beginning of a transaction. Use the `COMMIT WORK` statement only at the end of a multistatement operation.

The `COMMIT WORK` statement releases all row and table locks.

In `ESQL/C`, the `COMMIT WORK` statement closes all open cursors except those declared with `hold`. ♦

WORK Keyword

The `WORK` keyword is optional in a `COMMIT WORK` statement. The following two statements are equivalent:

```
COMMIT;
```

```
COMMIT WORK;
```

E/C

Example

The following example shows a transaction bounded by `BEGIN WORK` and `COMMIT WORK` statements. In this example, the user first deletes the row from the `call_type` table where the value of the `call_code` column is 0. The user then inserts a new row in the `call_type` table where the value of the `call_code` column is S. The database server guarantees that both operations succeed or else neither succeeds.

```
BEGIN WORK;  
    DELETE FROM call_type WHERE call_code = '0';  
    INSERT INTO call_type VALUES ('S', 'order status');  
COMMIT WORK;
```

Issuing COMMIT WORK in a Database That Is Not ANSI Compliant

In a database that is not ANSI compliant, if you initiate a transaction with a `BEGIN WORK` statement, you must issue a `COMMIT WORK` statement at the end of the transaction. If you fail to issue a `COMMIT WORK` statement in this case, the database server rolls back the modifications to the database that the transaction made.

However, if you do not issue a `BEGIN WORK` statement, the database server executes each statement within its own transaction. These single-statement transactions do not require either a `BEGIN WORK` statement or a `COMMIT WORK` statement.

ANSI

Issuing COMMIT WORK in an ANSI-Compliant Database

In an ANSI-compliant database, you do not need to mark the beginning of a transaction. You only need to mark the end of each transaction. An implicit transaction is always in effect. A new transaction starts automatically after each `COMMIT WORK` or `ROLLBACK WORK` statement.

You must issue an explicit `COMMIT WORK` statement to mark the end of each transaction. If you fail to do so, the database server rolls back the modifications to the database that the transaction made.

Related Information

Related statements: [BEGIN WORK](#), [ROLLBACK WORK](#), and [DECLARE](#)

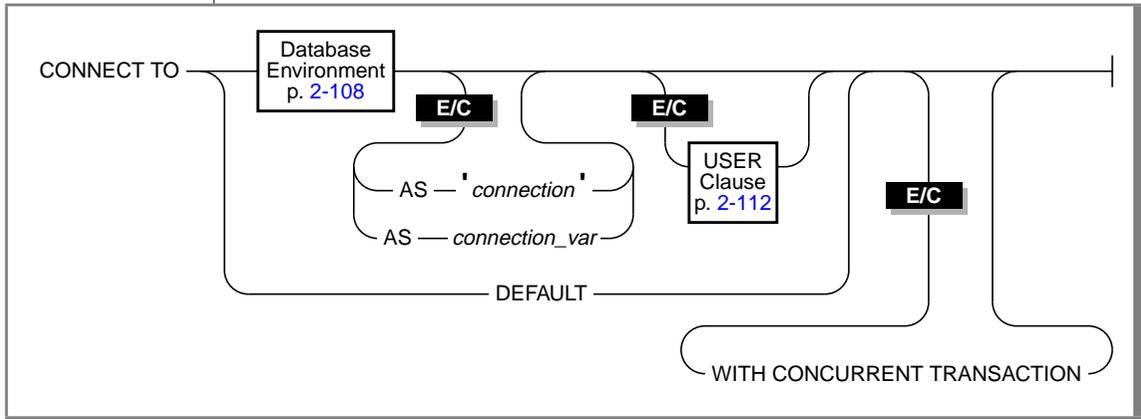
For a discussion of concepts related to transactions, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

+

CONNECT

Use the CONNECT statement to connect to a database environment.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>connection</i>	Quoted string that assigns a name to the connection	Each connection name must be unique.	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>connection_var</i>	Host variable that holds the value of connection	Variable must be a fixed-length character data type.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

Usage

The CONNECT statement connects an application to a *database environment*. The database environment can be a database, a database server, or a database and a database server. If the application successfully connects to the specified database environment, the connection becomes the current connection for the application. SQL statements fail if no current connection exists between an application and a database server. If you specify a database name, the database server opens the database. You cannot use the CONNECT statement in a PREPARE statement.

UNIX

An application can connect to several database environments at the same time, and it can establish multiple connections to the same database environment, provided each connection has a unique connection name.

On UNIX, the only restriction on establishing multiple connections to the same database environment is that an application can establish only one connection to each local server that uses the shared-memory connection mechanism. To find out whether a local server uses the shared-memory connection mechanism or the local-loopback connection mechanism, examine the `$INFORMIXDIR/etc/sqlhosts` file. For more information on the `sqlhosts` file, refer to your *Administrator's Guide*. ♦

WIN NT

On Windows NT, the local connection mechanism is named pipes. Multiple connections to the local server from one client can exist. ♦

Only one connection is current at any time; other connections are dormant. The application cannot interact with a database through a dormant connection. When an application establishes a new connection, that connection becomes current, and the previous current transaction becomes dormant. You can make a dormant connection current with the `SET CONNECTION` statement. For more information, see [“SET CONNECTION” on page 2-694](#).

Privileges for Executing the CONNECT Statement

The current user, or PUBLIC, must have the Connect database privilege on the database specified in the `CONNECT` statement.

The user who executes the `CONNECT` statement cannot have the same user name as an existing role in the database.

For information on using the `USER` clause to specify an alternate user name when the `CONNECT` statement connects to a database server on a remote host, see [“USER Clause” on page 2-112](#).

Connection Identifiers

The optional connection name is a unique identifier that an application can use to refer to a connection in subsequent SET CONNECTION and DISCONNECT statements. If the application does not provide a connection name (or a connection-host variable), it can refer to the connection using the database environment. If the application makes more than one connection to the same database environment, however, each connection must have a unique connection name.

After you associate a connection name with a connection, you can refer to the connection using only that connection name.

The value of a connection name is case sensitive.

Connection Context

Each connection encompasses a set of information that is called the *connection context*. The connection context includes the name of the current user, the information that the database environment associates with this name, and information on the state of the connection (such as whether an active transaction is associated with the connection). The connection context is saved when an application becomes dormant, and this context is restored when the application becomes current again. (For more information on dormant connections, see [“Making a Dormant Connection the Current Connection” on page 2-695.](#))

DEFAULT Option

Use the DEFAULT option to request a connection to a default database server, called a *default connection*. The default database server can be either local or remote. To designate the default database server, set its name in the environment variable **INFORMIXSERVER**. This form of the CONNECT statement does not open a database.

If you select the DEFAULT option for the CONNECT statement, you must use the DATABASE statement or the CREATE DATABASE statement to open or create a database in the default database environment.

The Implicit Connection with DATABASE Statements

If you do not execute a CONNECT statement in your application, the first SQL statement must be one of the following database statements (or a single statement PREPARE for one of the following statements):

- DATABASE
- CREATE DATABASE
- DROP DATABASE

If one of these database statements is the first SQL statement in an application, the statement establishes a connection to a database server, which is known as an *implicit* connection. If the database statement specifies only a database name, the database server name is obtained from the **DBPATH** environment variable. This situation is described in [“Locating the Database” on page 2-110](#).

An application that makes an implicit connection can establish other connections explicitly (using the CONNECT statement) but cannot establish another implicit connection unless the original implicit connection is disconnected. An application can terminate an implicit connection using the DISCONNECT statement.

After *any* implicit connection is made, that connection is considered to be the default connection, regardless of whether the database server is the default specified by the **INFORMIXSERVER** environment variable. This default allows the application to refer to the implicit connection if additional explicit connections are made, because the implicit connection does not have an identifier. For example, if you establish an implicit connection followed by an explicit connection, you can make the implicit connection current by issuing the SET CONNECTION DEFAULT statement. This means, however, that once you establish an implicit connection, you cannot use the CONNECT DEFAULT command because the implicit connection is considered to be the default connection.

The database statements can always be used to open a database or create a new database on the current database server.

WITH CONCURRENT TRANSACTION Option

The WITH CONCURRENT TRANSACTION clause lets you switch to a different connection while a transaction is active in the current connection. If the current connection was *not* established using the WITH CONCURRENT TRANSACTION clause, you cannot switch to a different connection if a transaction is active; the CONNECT or SET CONNECTION statement fails, returning an error, and the transaction in the current connection continues to be active. In this case, the application must commit or roll back the active transaction in the current connection before it switches to a different connection.

The WITH CONCURRENT TRANSACTION clause supports the concept of multiple concurrent transactions, where each connection can have its own transaction and the COMMIT WORK and ROLLBACK WORK statements affect only the current connection. The WITH CONCURRENT TRANSACTION clause does not support global transactions in which a single transaction spans databases over multiple connections. The COMMIT WORK and ROLLBACK WORK statements do not act on databases across multiple connections.

The following example illustrates how to use the WITH CONCURRENT TRANSACTION clause:

```

main()
{
EXEC SQL connect to 'a@srv1' as 'A';
EXEC SQL connect to 'b@srv2' as 'B' with concurrent transaction;
EXEC SQL connect to 'c@srv3' as 'C' with concurrent transaction;

/*
   Execute SQL statements in connection 'C' , starting a
   transaction
*/

EXEC SQL set connection 'B'; -- switch to connection 'B'

/*
   Execute SQL statements starting a transaction in 'B'.
   Now there are two active transactions, one each in 'B'
   and 'C'.
*/

EXEC SQL set connection 'A'; -- switch to connection 'A'

/*
   Execute SQL statements starting a transaction in 'A'.
   Now there are three active transactions, one each in 'A',
   'B' and 'C'.
*/

EXEC SQL set connection 'C'; -- ERROR, transaction active in 'A'

```

```

/*
  SET CONNECTION 'C' fails (current connection is still 'A')
  The transaction in 'A' must be committed/rolled back since
  connection 'A' was started without the CONCURRENT TRANSACTION
  clause.
*/

EXEC SQL commit work;-- commit tx in current connection ('A')

/*
  Now, there are two active transactions, in 'B' and in 'C',
  which must be committed/rolled back separately
*/

EXEC SQL set connection 'B'; -- switch to connection 'B'
EXEC SQL commit work;       -- commit tx in current connection ('B')

EXEC SQL set connection 'C'; -- go back to connection 'C'
EXEC SQL commit work;       -- commit tx in current connection ('C')

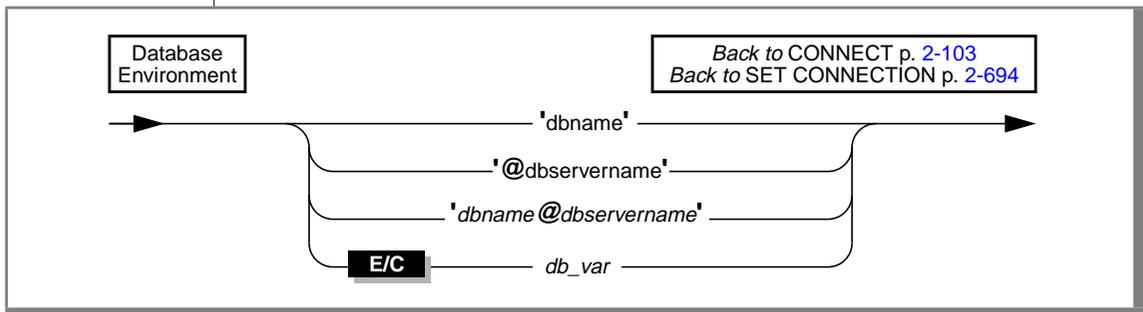
EXEC SQL disconnect all;
}

```



Warning: *When an application uses the WITH CONCURRENT TRANSACTION clause to establish multiple connections to the same database environment, a deadlock condition can occur.*

Database Environment



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>db_var</i>	Host variable that contains a value representing a database environment	Variable must be a fixed-length character data type. The value stored in this host variable must have one of the database-environment formats listed in the syntax diagram.	Variable name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>dbname</i>	Name of the database to which a connection is made	The specified database must already exist.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>dbservername</i>	Name of the database server to which a connection is made	The specified database server must exist. You cannot put a space between the @ symbol and <i>dbservername</i> .	Identifier, p. 4-205

Using Quote Marks in the Database Environment

If the **DELIMIDENT** environment variable is set, the quote marks in the database environment must be single. If the **DELIMIDENT** environment variable is not set, surrounding quotes can be single or double.

Restrictions on the *dbservername* Parameter

When the *dbservername* parameter appears in the specification of a database environment, you must observe the following restrictions.

On UNIX, the database server that you specify in *dbservername* must match the name of a database server in the **sqlhosts** file. ♦

On Windows NT, the database server that you specify in *dbservername* must match the name of a database server in the **sqlhosts** subkey in the registry. Informix recommends that you use the **setnet32** utility to update the registry. ♦

UNIX

WIN NT

Specifying the Database Environment

Using the options in the syntax diagram, you can specify either a server and a database, a database server only, or a database only.

Specifying a Database Server Only

The *@dbservername* option establishes a connection to the named database server only; it does not open a database. When you use this option, you must subsequently use the DATABASE or CREATE DATABASE (or a PREPARE statement for one of these statements and an EXECUTE statement) to open a database.

Specifying a Database Only

The *dbname* option establishes a connection to the default database server or to another database server in the **DBPATH** variable. It also locates and opens the named database. The same is true of the *db_var* option if it specifies only a database name. For the order in which an application connects to different database servers to locate a database, see [“Locating the Database” on page 2-110](#).

Locating the Database

How a database is located and opened depends on whether you specify a database server name in the database environment expression.

Database Server and Database Specified

If you specify both a database server and a database in the CONNECT statement, your application connects to the database server, which locates and opens the database.

If the database server that you specify is not on-line, you receive an error.

Only Database Specified

If you specify only a database in your **CONNECT** statement, the application obtains the name of a database server from the **DBPATH** environment variable. The database server in the **INFORMIXSERVER** environment variable is always added before the **DBPATH** value.

UNIX

On UNIX, set the **INFORMIXSERVER** and **DBPATH** environment variables as the following example shows:

```
setenv INFORMIXSERVER srvA
setenv DBPATH //srvB://srvC
```

**WIN NT**

On Windows NT, choose **Start→Programs→Informix→setnet32** from the Task Bar and set the **INFORMIXSERVER** and **DBPATH** environment variables, as the following example shows:

```
set INFORMIXSERVER = srvA
set DBPATH = //srvA://srvB://srvC
```



The resulting **DBPATH** that your application uses is shown in the following example:

```
//srvA://srvB://srvC
```

The application first establishes a connection to the database server specified by **INFORMIXSERVER**. The database server uses parameters that are specified in the configuration file to locate the database.

If the database does not reside on the default database server, or if the default database server is not on-line, the application connects to the next database server in **DBPATH**. In the previous example, that server would be **srvB**.

UNIX

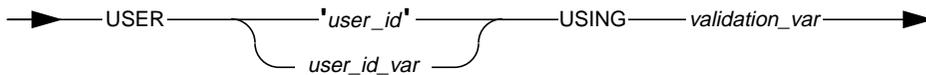
If a directory in **DBPATH** is an NFS-mounted directory, it is expanded to contain the host name of the NFS computer and the complete pathname of the directory on the NFS host. In this case, the host name must be listed in your **sqlhosts** file as a **dbservername**, and an **sqlxecd** daemon must be running on the NFS host. ◆

USER Clause

The USER clause specifies information that is used to determine whether the application can access the target computer when the CONNECT statement connects to the database server on a remote host. Subsequent to the CONNECT statement, all database operations on the remote host use the specified user name.

USER
Clause

[Back to CONNECT](#)
p. 2-103



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>user_id</i>	Quoted string that is a valid login name for the application	The specified login name must be a valid login name. For additional restrictions see “Restrictions on the User Identifier Parameter” on page 2-113.	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>user_id_var</i>	Host variable that holds the value of <i>user_id</i>	Variable must be a fixed-length character data type. The login name stored in this variable is subject to the same restrictions as <i>user_id</i> .	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>validation_var</i>	Host variable that holds the valid password for the login name specified in <i>user_id</i> or <i>user_id_var</i>	Variable must be a fixed-length character data type. The password stored in this variable must be a valid password. For additional restrictions see “Restrictions on the Validation Variable Parameter” on page 2-113.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

UNIX

Restrictions on the Validation Variable Parameter

On UNIX, the password stored in *validation_var* must be a valid password and must exist in the `/etc/passwd` file. If the application connects to a remote database server, the password must exist in this file on both the local and remote database servers. ♦

WIN NT

On Windows NT, the password stored in *validation_var* must be a valid password and must be the one entered in **User Manager**. If the application connects to a remote database server, the password must exist in the domain of both the client and the server. ♦

UNIX

Restrictions on the User Identifier Parameter

On UNIX, the login name you specify in *user_id* must be a valid login name and must exist in the `/etc/passwd` file. If the application connects to a remote server, the login name must exist in this file on both the local and remote database servers. ♦

WIN NT

On Windows NT, the login name you specify in *user_id* must be a valid login name and must exist in **User Manager**. If the application connects to a remote server, the login name must exist in the domain of both the client and the server. ♦

Rejection of the Connection

The connection is rejected if the following conditions occur:

- The specified user lacks the privileges to access the database named in the database environment.
- The specified user does not have the required permissions to connect to the remote host.
- You supply a `USER` clause but do not include the `USING validation_var` phrase.

E/C

X/O

In compliance with the X/Open specification for the CONNECT statement, the ESQL/C preprocessor allows a CONNECT statement that has a USER clause without the USING *validation_var* phrase. However, if the *validation_var* is not present, the database server rejects the connection at runtime. ♦

Use of the Default User ID

If you do not supply the USER clause, the default user ID is used to attempt the connection. The default Informix user ID is the login name of the user running the application. In this case, you obtain network permissions with the standard authorization procedures. For example, on UNIX, the default user ID must match a user ID in the `/etc/hosts.equiv` file. On Windows NT, you must be a member of the domain, or if the database server is installed locally, you must be a valid user on the computer where it is installed.

Related Information

Related Statements: [DISCONNECT](#), [SET CONNECTION](#), [DATABASE](#), and [CREATE DATABASE](#)

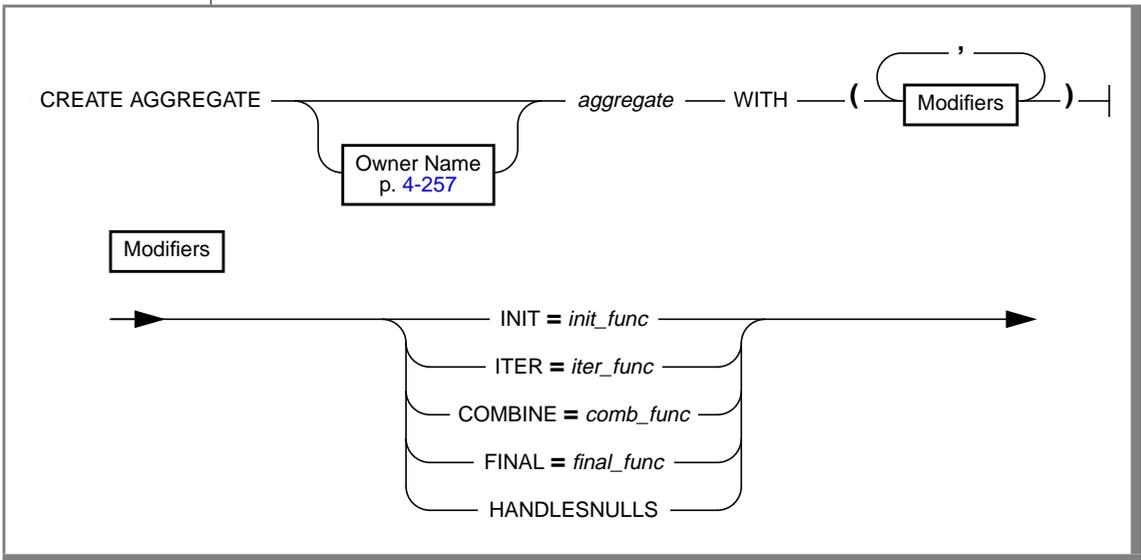
For more information about `sqlhosts`, refer to your [Administrator's Guide](#).



CREATE AGGREGATE

Use the CREATE AGGREGATE statement to create a new aggregate function. User-defined aggregates extend the functionality of the database server because they can perform any kind of aggregate computation that the user wants to implement.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>aggregate</i>	Name of the new aggregate	The name cannot be the same as the name of any built-in aggregate or the name of any UDR.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>comb_func</i>	Function that merges one partial result into the other and returns the updated partial result	You must specify the combine function both for parallel queries and for sequential queries.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

(1 of 2)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>final_func</i>	Function that converts a partial result into the result type	If the final function is omitted, the database server returns the final result of the iterator function.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>init_func</i>	Function that initializes the data structures required for the aggregate computation	The initialization function must be able to handle null arguments.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>iter_func</i>	Function that merges a single value with a partial result and returns the updated partial result	You must specify a value for the iterator function. If the initialization function is omitted, the iterator function must be able to handle null arguments.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

(2 of 2)

Usage

You can specify the INIT, ITER, COMBINE, FINAL, and HANDLESNULLS modifiers in any order.



Important: You must specify the ITER and COMBINE modifiers in a CREATE AGGREGATE statement. You do not have to specify the INIT, FINAL, and HANDLESNULLS modifiers in a CREATE AGGREGATE statement.

The ITER, COMBINE, FINAL, and INIT modifiers specify the support functions for a user-defined aggregate. These support functions do not have to exist at the time you create the user-defined aggregate.

If you omit the HANDLESNULLS modifier, rows with null aggregate argument values do not contribute to the aggregate computation. If you include the HANDLESNULLS modifier, you must declare all the support functions to handle null values as well.

Extending the Functionality of Aggregates

The database server provides two ways to extend the functionality of aggregates. You use the CREATE AGGREGATE statement only for the second method.

- Extensions of built-in aggregates

A built-in aggregate is an aggregate that the database server provides, such as COUNT, SUM, or AVG. These aggregates work only with built-in data types. You can extend these aggregates to work with extended data types. To extend a built-in aggregate, you must create user-defined routines that overload the binary operators for that aggregate. For further information on extending built-in aggregates, see the *Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000* manual.

- Creation of user-defined aggregates

A user-defined aggregate is an aggregate that you define to perform an aggregate computation that is not provided by the database server. You can use user-defined aggregates with built-in data types, extended data types, or both. To create a user-defined aggregate, you use the CREATE AGGREGATE statement. In this statement, you name the new aggregate and specify the support functions that compute the aggregate result. These support functions perform initialization, sequential aggregation, combination of results, and type conversion

Example of Creating a User-Defined Aggregate

In the following example, you create a user-defined aggregate named **average**:

```
CREATE AGGREGATE average
  WITH (
    INIT = average_init,
    ITER = average_iter,
    COMBINE = average_combine,
    FINAL = average_final
  )
```

Before you use the average aggregate in a query, you must also use CREATE FUNCTION statements to create the support functions specified in the CREATE AGGREGATE statement. The following table gives an example of the task that each support function might perform for **average**.

Keyword	Support Function	Purpose
INIT	average_init	Allocates and initializes an extended data type that stores the current sum and the current row count.
ITER	average_iter	For each row, adds the value of the expression to the current sum and increments the current row count by one.
COMBINE	average_combine	Adds the current sum and the current row count of one partial result to the other and returns the updated result.
FINAL	average_final	Returns the ratio of the current sum to the current row count and converts this ratio to the result type.

Parallel Execution

The database server can break up an aggregate computation into several pieces and compute them in parallel. The database server uses the INIT and ITER support functions to compute each piece sequentially. Then the database server uses the COMBINE function to combine the partial results from all the pieces into a single result value. Whether an aggregate is parallel is an optimization decision that is transparent to the user.

Related Information

Related statements: [DROP AGGREGATE](#)

For information about how to invoke a user-defined aggregate, see the discussion of user-defined aggregates in the Expression segment.

For a description of the **sysaggregates** system catalog table that holds information about user-defined aggregates, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

For a discussion of user-defined aggregates, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

+

IDS

CREATE CAST

Use the CREATE CAST statement to register a cast that converts data from one data type to another.

Syntax

```
CREATE IMPLICIT CAST ( source_type AS target_type ) WITH function
EXPLICIT
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>function</i>	Name of the user-defined function that you register to implement the cast	See “WITH Clause” on page 2-122 .	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>source_type</i>	Data type to be converted	The type must exist in the database at the time the cast is registered. Either the <i>source_type</i> or the <i>target_type</i> , but not both, can be a built-in type. Neither type can be a distinct type of the other.	Data Type, p. 4-53
<i>target_type</i>	Data type that results from the conversion	The type must exist in the database at the time the cast is registered. Either the <i>source_type</i> or the <i>target_type</i> , but not both, can be a built-in type. Neither type can be a distinct type of the other. The type cannot be a collection data type.	Data Type, p. 4-53

Usage

A cast is a mechanism that the database server uses to convert one data type to another. The database server uses casts to perform the following tasks:

- To compare two values in the WHERE clause of a SELECT, UPDATE, or DELETE statement
- To pass values as arguments to a user-defined routines
- To return values from user-defined routines

To create a cast, you must have the necessary privileges on both the *source data type* and the *target data type*. All users have permission to use the built-in data types. However, to create a cast to or from an opaque type, distinct type, or named-row type requires the Usage privilege on that type.

The CREATE CAST statement registers a cast in the **syscasts** system catalog table. For more information on **syscasts**, see the chapter on system catalog tables in the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

Source and Target Data Types

The CREATE CAST statement defines a cast that converts a *source data type* to a *target data type*. Both the *source data type* and *target data type* must exist in the database when you execute the CREATE CAST statement to register the cast. The *source data type* and the *target data type* have the following restrictions:

- Either the *source data type* or the *target data type*, but not both, can be a built-in type.
- Neither the *source data type* nor the *target data type* can be a distinct type of the other.
- Neither the *source data type* nor the *target data type* can be a collection data type.

Explicit and Implicit Casts

To process queries with multiple data types often requires casts that convert data from one data type to another. You can use the CREATE CAST statement to create the following kinds of casts:

- Use the CREATE EXPLICIT CAST statement to define an *explicit* cast.
- Use the CREATE IMPLICIT CAST statement to define an *implicit* cast.

Explicit Casts

An explicit cast is a cast that you must specifically invoke, with either the CAST AS keywords or with the cast operator (::). The database server does *not* automatically invoke an explicit cast to resolve data type conversions. The EXPLICIT keyword is optional; by default, the CREATE CAST statement creates an explicit cast.

The following CREATE CAST statement defines an explicit cast from the **rate_of_return** opaque data type to the **percent** distinct data type:

```
CREATE EXPLICIT CAST (rate_of_return AS percent
    WITH rate_to_prct)
```

The following SELECT statement explicitly invokes this explicit cast in its WHERE clause to compare the **bond_rate** column (of type **rate_of_return**) to the **initial_APR** column (of type **percent**):

```
SELECT bond_rate FROM bond
WHERE bond_rate::percent > initial_APR
```

Implicit Casts

The database server invokes built-in casts to convert from one built-in data type to another built-in type that is not directly substitutable. For example, the database server performs conversion of a character type such as CHAR to a numeric type such as INTEGER through a built-in cast.

An implicit cast is a cast that the database server can invoke automatically when it encounters data types that cannot be compared with built-in casts. This type of cast enables the database server to automatically handle conversions between other data types.

To define an implicit cast, specify the IMPLICIT keyword in the CREATE CAST statement. For example, the following CREATE CAST statement specifies that the database server should automatically use the **prcnt_to_char()** function when it needs to convert from the CHAR data type to a distinct data type, **percent**:

```
CREATE IMPLICIT CAST (CHAR AS percent WITH prcnt_to_char)
```

This cast provides the database server with only the ability to automatically convert *from* the CHAR data type *to* percent. For the database server to convert *from* percent *to* CHAR, you need to define another implicit cast, as follows:

```
CREATE IMPLICIT CAST (percent AS CHAR WITH char_to_prcnt)
```

The database server would automatically invoke the `char_to_prcnt()` function to evaluate the WHERE clause of the following SELECT statement:

```
SELECT commission FROM sales_rep  
WHERE commission > "25%"
```

Users can also invoke implicit casts explicitly. For more information on how to explicitly invoke a cast function, see [“Explicit Casts” on page 2-121](#).

When a built-in cast does not exist for conversion between data types, you can create user-defined casts to make the necessary conversion.

WITH Clause

The WITH clause of the CREATE CAST statement specifies the name of the user-defined function to invoke to perform the cast. This function is called the cast function. You must specify a *function name* unless the *source data type* and the *target data type* have identical representations. Two data types have identical representations when the following conditions are met:

- Both data types have the same length and alignment
- Both data types are passed by reference or both are passed by value

The cast function must be registered in the same database as the cast at the time the cast is invoked, but need not exist when the cast is created. The CREATE CAST statement does not check permissions on the specified *function name*, or even verify that the cast function exists. Each time a user invokes the cast explicitly or implicitly, the database server verifies that the user has Execute privilege on the cast function.

Related Information

Related statements: [CREATE FUNCTION](#), [CREATE DISTINCT TYPE](#), [CREATE OPAQUE TYPE](#), [CREATE ROW TYPE](#) and [DROP CAST](#)

For more information about data types, casting, and conversion, see the Data Types segment in this manual and the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

For examples that show how to create and use casts, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).



CREATE DATABASE

Use the CREATE DATABASE statement to create a new database.

Syntax

```
CREATE DATABASE — database
                |
                | IN - dbspace
                |
                | WITH
                |
                |   |
                |   | BUFFERED
                |   |
                |   | LOG
                |   |
                |   | LOG MODE ANSI
                |   |
                |   |
                |   |
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>database</i>	Name of the database to create	The database name must be unique on the server.	Database Name, p. 4-47
<i>dbspace</i>	Name of the dbspace where you want to store the data for this database; default is the root dbspace	The dbspace must already exist.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Usage

This statement is an extension to ANSI-standard syntax. The ANSI standard does not provide any syntax for the construction of a database, that is how a database comes into existence.

The database that you create becomes the current database.

The database name that you use must be unique within the database server environment in which you are working. The database server creates the system catalog tables that describe the structure of the database.

When you create a database, you alone have access to it. The database remains inaccessible to other users until you, as DBA, grant database privileges. For information on how to grant database privileges, see [“GRANT” on page 2-500](#).

E/C

In ESQ/C, the CREATE DATABASE statement cannot appear in a multistatement PREPARE operation. ♦

If you do not specify the dbspace, the database server creates the system catalog tables in the **root** dbspace. The following statement creates the **vehicles** database in the **root** dbspace:

```
CREATE DATABASE vehicles
```

The following statement creates the **vehicles** database in the **research** dbspace:

```
CREATE DATABASE vehicles IN research
```

Logging Options

The logging options of the CREATE DATABASE statement determine the type of logging that is done for the database.

In the event of a failure, the database server uses the log to re-create all committed transactions in your database.

If you do not specify the WITH LOG option, you cannot use transactions or the statements that are associated with databases that have logging (BEGIN WORK, COMMIT WORK, ROLLBACK WORK, SET LOG, and SET ISOLATION).

XPS

If you are using Extended Parallel Server, the CREATE DATABASE statement always creates a database with unbuffered logging. The database server ignores any logging specifications included in a CREATE DATABASE statement. ♦

Designating Buffered Logging

The following example creates a database that uses a buffered log:

```
CREATE DATABASE vehicles WITH BUFFERED LOG
```

If you use a buffered log, you marginally enhance the performance of logging at the risk of not being able to re-create the last few transactions after a failure. (See the discussion of buffered logging in the [Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation](#).)

ANSI-Compliant Databases

When you use the LOG MODE ANSI option in the CREATE DATABASE statement, the database that you create is an ANSI-compliant database. The following example creates an ANSI-compliant database:

```
CREATE DATABASE employees WITH LOG MODE ANSI
```

ANSI-compliant databases are set apart from databases that are not ANSI-compliant by the following features:

- All statements are automatically contained in transactions.
All databases use unbuffered logging.
- Owner-naming is enforced.
You must use the owner name when you refer to each table, view, synonym, index, or constraint unless you are the owner.
- For databases, the default isolation level is repeatable read.
- Default privileges on objects differ from those in databases that are not ANSI-compliant.
Users do not receive PUBLIC privilege to tables and synonyms by default.

Other slight differences exist between databases that are ANSI-compliant and those that are not. These differences are noted as appropriate with the related SQL statement. For a detailed discussion of the differences between ANSI-compliant databases and databases that are not ANSI-compliant, see the [Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation](#).

Creating an ANSI-compliant database does not mean that you get ANSI warnings when you run the database. You must use the **-ansi** flag or the **DBANSIWARN** environment variable to receive warnings.

For additional information about **-ansi** and **DBANSIWARN**, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

Related Information

Related statements: [CLOSE DATABASE](#), [CONNECT](#), [DATABASE](#), [DROP DATABASE](#)

For discussions of how to create a database and of ANSI-compliant databases, see the [Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation](#).

+

IDS

CREATE DISTINCT TYPE

Use the CREATE DISTINCT TYPE statement to create a new distinct type. A *distinct type* is a data type based on a built-in type or an existing opaque type, a named-row type, or another distinct type. Distinct types are strongly typed. Although the distinct type has the same physical representation as data of its source type, the two types cannot be compared without an explicit cast from one type to the other.

Syntax

```
CREATE DISTINCT TYPE distinct_type AS source_type |
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>distinct_type</i>	Name of the new data type	In an ANSI-compliant database, the combination of the owner and data type must be unique within the database. In a database that is not ANSI compliant, the name of the data type must be unique within the database.	Data Type, p. 4-53
<i>source_type</i>	Name of an existing data type on which the new type is based	The type must be either a built-in type or a type created with the CREATE DISTINCT TYPE, CREATE OPAQUE TYPE, or CREATE ROW TYPE statement.	Data Type, p. 4-53

Usage

To create a distinct type in a database, you must have the Resource privilege. Any user with the Resource privilege can create a distinct type from one of the built-in data types, which are owned by user **informix**.

Important: You cannot create a distinct type on the SERIAL or SERIAL8 data type.



To create a distinct type from an opaque type, a named-row type, or another distinct type, you must be the owner of the type or have the Usage privilege on the type.

Once a distinct type is defined, only the type owner and the DBA can use it. The owner of the type can grant other users the Usage privilege on the type.

A distinct type has the same storage structure as its source type. The following statement creates the distinct type **birthday**, based on the built-in data type, DATE:

```
CREATE DISTINCT TYPE birthday AS DATE
```

Dynamic Server uses the same storage method for the distinct type as it does for the source type of the distinct type. However, a distinct type and its source type cannot be compared in an operation unless one type is explicitly cast to the other type.

Privileges on Distinct Types

To create a distinct type, you must have the Resource privilege on the database. When you create the distinct type, only you, the owner, have Usage privilege on this type. Use the GRANT or REVOKE statements to grant or revoke Usage privilege to other database users.

To find out what privileges exist on a particular type, check the **sysxdtypes** system catalog table for the owner name and the **sysxdtypeauth** system catalog table for additional type privileges that might have been granted. For more information on system catalog tables, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

The DB-Access utility can also display privileges on distinct types. ♦

Support Functions and Casts

When you create a distinct type, Dynamic Server automatically defines two explicit casts:

- A cast from the distinct type to its source type
- A cast from the source type to the distinct type

DB

Because the two types have the same representation (the same length and alignment), no support functions are required to implement the casts.

You can create an implicit cast between a distinct type and its source type. However, to create an implicit cast, you must first drop the default explicit cast between the distinct type and its source type.

All support functions and casts that are defined on the source type can be used on the distinct type. However, casts and support functions that are defined on the distinct type are not available to the source type.

Manipulating Distinct Types

When you compare or manipulate data of a distinct type and its source type, you must explicitly cast one type to the other.

You must explicitly cast one type to the other in the following situations:

- To insert or update a column of one type with values of the other type
- To use a relational operator to add, subtract, multiply, divide, compare, or otherwise manipulate two values, one of the source type and one of the distinct type

For example, suppose you create a distinct type, `dist_type`, that is based on the `NUMERIC` data type. You then create a table with two columns, one of type `dist_type` and one of type `NUMERIC`.

```
CREATE DISTINCT TYPE dist_type AS NUMERIC;
CREATE TABLE t(col1 dist_type, col2 NUMERIC);
```

To directly compare the distinct type and its source type or assign a value of the source type to a column of the distinct type, you must cast one type to the other, as the following examples show:

```
INSERT INTO tab (col1) VALUES (3.5::dist_type);

SELECT col1, col2
   FROM t WHERE (col1::NUMERIC) > col2;

SELECT col1, col2, (col1 + col2::dist_type) sum_col
   FROM tab;
```

Related Information

Related statements: [CREATE CAST](#), [CREATE FUNCTION](#), [CREATE OPAQUE TYPE](#), [CREATE ROW TYPE](#), [DROP TYPE](#) and [DROP ROW TYPE](#)

For information and examples that show how to use and cast distinct types, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For more information on when you might create a distinct type, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

+

XPS

CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE

Use the CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement to define an external source that is not part of your database so you can use that external source to load and unload data for your database.

Syntax

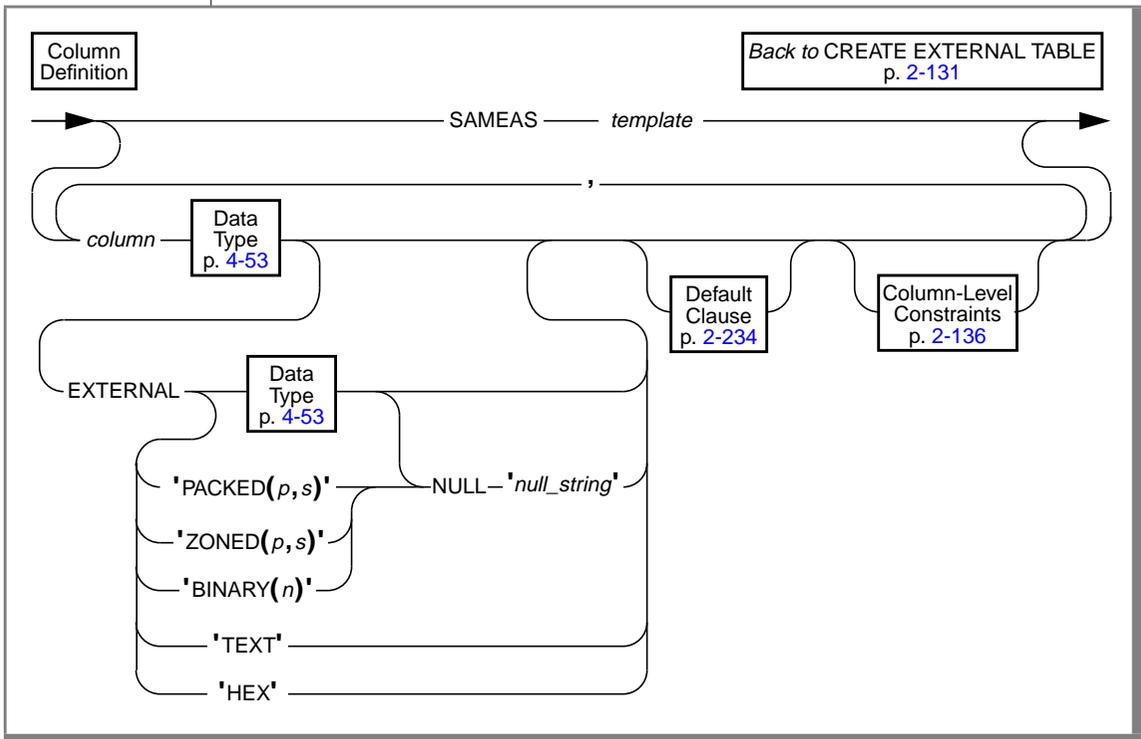
```
CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE table Column Definition  
p. 2-132 USING ( DATAFILES Clause  
p.2-137 Table Options  
p. 2-139 , Table Options  
p. 2-139 )
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>table</i>	Name of the external table that describes the external data	The name must be different from any existing table, view, or synonym name in the current database.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

After you create a table with the CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement, you can move data to and from the external source with an INSERT INTO...SELECT statement.

Column Definition



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	One column name for each column of the external table	For each column, you must specify an Informix data type.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>n</i>	Number of 8-bit bytes to represent the integer	For <code>FIXED</code> format binary integers; <i>big-endian</i> byte order.	$n=2$ for 16-bit integers; $n=4$ for 32-bit integers
<i>p</i>	Precision (total number of digits)	For <code>FIXED</code> -format files only.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>s</i>	Scale (number of digits after the decimal point)	For <code>FIXED</code> -format files only.	Literal Number, p. 4-237

(1 of 2)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>null_string</i>	Value that is to be interpreted as a null	For restriction information, refer to “Defining Null Values.”	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>template</i>	Name of a table with the exact column names and definitions for your external table	You cannot skip columns or put data of a different type into any column.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

(2 of 2)

Using the SAME AS Clause

When you create a table with the SAMEAS keyword, the column names from the original table are used in the new table. You cannot use indexes in the external table definition.

You cannot use the SAMEAS keyword for FIXED-format files.

Using the EXTERNAL Keyword

Use the EXTERNAL keyword to specify a data type for each column of your external table that has a data type different from the internal table. For example, you might have a VARCHAR column in the internal table that you want to map to a CHAR column in the external table.

You must specify an external type for every column that is in fixed format. You cannot specify an external type for delimited format columns except for BYTE and TEXT columns where your specification is optional. For more information, see [“TEXT and HEX External Types”](#) on page 2-135.

Integer Data Types

Besides valid Informix integer data types, you can specify packed decimal, zoned decimal, and IBM-format binary representation of integers.

For packed or zoned decimal, you specify precision (total number of digits in the number) and scale (number of digits that are to the right of the decimal point). Packed decimal representation can store two digits, or a digit and a sign, in each byte. Zoned decimal requires ($p + 1$) bytes to store p digits and the sign.

Big-Endian Format

The database server also supports two IBM-format binary representations of integers: `BINARY(2)` for 16-bit integer storage and `BINARY(4)` for 32-bit integer storage. The most significant byte of each number has the lowest address; that is, binary-format integers are stored big-end first (big-endian format) in the manner of IBM and Motorola processors. Intel processors and some others store binary-format integers little-end first, a storage method that the database server does not support for external data.

Defining Null Values

The packed decimal, zoned decimal, and binary data types do not have a natural null value, so you must define a value that can be interpreted as a null when the database server loads or unloads data from an external file. You can define the *null_string* as a number that will not be used in the set of numbers stored in the data file (for example, -9999.99). You can also define a bit pattern in the field as a hexadecimal pattern, such as `0xffff`, that is to be interpreted as a null.

The database server uses the null representation for a fixed-format external table to both interpret values as the data is loaded into the database and to format null values into the appropriate data type when data is unloaded to an external table.

The following examples are of column definitions with null values for a fixed-format external table:

```
i smallint external "binary (2)" null "-32767"  
li integer external "binary (4)" null "-99999"  
d decimal (5,2) external "packed (5,2)" null "0xffffffff"  
z decimal (4,2) external "zoned (4,2)" null "0x0f0f0f0f"  
zl decimal (3,2) external "zoned (3,2)" null "-1.00"
```

If the packed decimal or zoned decimal is stored with all bits cleared to represent a null value, the *null_string* can be defined as `"0x0"`. The following rules apply to the value assigned to a *null_string*:

- The null representation must fit into the length of the external field.
- If a bit pattern is defined, the *null_string* is not case sensitive.
- If a bit pattern is defined, the *null_string* must begin with `"0x"`.



- For numeric fields, the left-most fields are assigned zeros by the database server if the bit pattern does not fill the entire field.
- If the null representation is not a bit pattern, the null value must be a valid number for that field.

Warning: *If a row that contains a null value is unloaded into an external table and the column that receives the null value has no null value defined, the database server inserts a zero into the column.*

TEXT and HEX External Types

An Informix BYTE or TEXT column can be encoded in either the TEXT or HEX external type. You can use only delimited BYTE and TEXT formats with these external types. Fixed formats are not allowed. In addition, you cannot use these external types with any other type of delimited-format columns (such as character columns).

You do not need to specify these external types. If you do not define an external column specifically, Informix TEXT columns default to TEXT and Informix BYTE columns default to HEX.

The database server interprets two adjacent field delimiters as a null value.

During unloading, the database server escapes delimiters and backslashes (\). During loading, any character that follows a backslash is taken literally. Nonprintable characters are directly embedded in the data file if you choose TEXT format.

User-defined delimiters are limited to one byte each. For information about delimiters if you are using a multibyte locale, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

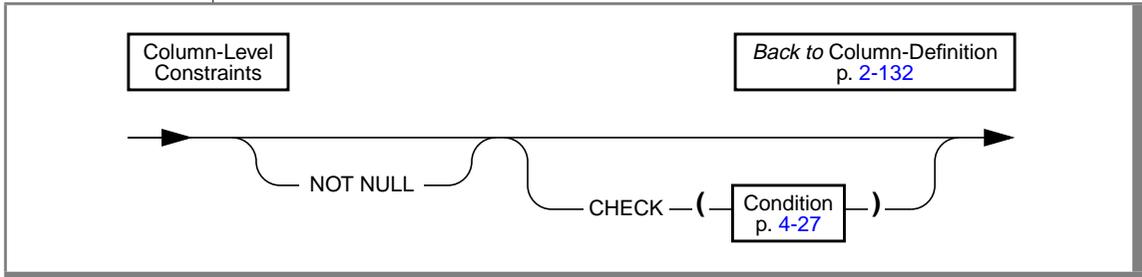
For more information on BYTE and TEXT data, see your [Administrator's Guide](#).

Manipulating Data in Fixed Format Files

For files in FIXED format, you must declare the column name and the EXTERNAL item for each column to set the name and number of characters. For FIXED-format files, the only data type allowed is CHAR. You can use the keyword NULL to specify what string to interpret as a null value.

Column-Level Constraints

Use column-level constraints to limit the type of data that is allowed in a column. Constraints at the column level are limited to a single column.



Using the Not-Null Constraint

If you do not indicate a default value for a column, the default is null *unless* you place a not-null constraint on the column. In that case, no default value exists for the column.

If you place a not-null constraint on a column (and no default value is specified), the data in the external table must have a value set for the column when loading through the external table. When no reject file exists and no value is encountered, the database server returns an error and the loading stops. When a reject file exists and no value is encountered, the error is reported in the reject file and the load continues.

Using the CHECK Constraint

Check constraints allow you to designate conditions that must be met *before* data can be assigned to a column during an INSERT or UPDATE statement. When a reject file does not exist and a row evaluates to *false* for any check constraint defined on a table during an insert or update, the database server returns an error. When there is a reject file and a row evaluates to *false* for a check constraint defined on the table, the error is reported in the reject file and the statement continues to execute.

Check constraints are defined with *search conditions*. The search condition cannot contain subqueries, aggregates, host variables, or SPL routines. In addition, it cannot include the following built-in functions: CURRENT, USER, SITENAME, DBSERVERNAME, or TODAY.

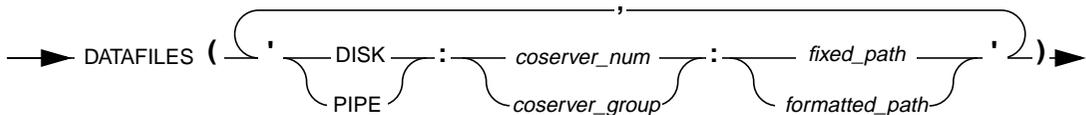
When you define a check constraint at the column level, the only column that the check constraint can check against is the column itself. In other words, the check constraint cannot depend upon values in other columns of the table.

DATAFILES Clause

The DATAFILES clause names the external files that are opened when you use external tables.

DATAFILES
Clause

[Back to CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE p. 2-131](#)
[Back to INTO EXTERNAL Clause p. 2-683](#)



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>coserver_group</i>	Name of the coserver group that contains the external data	The coserver group must exist.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>coserver_num</i>	Numeric ID of the coserver that contains the external data	The coserver must exist.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>fixed_path</i>	Pathname for describing the input or output files in the external table definition	The specified path must exist.	The pathname must conform to the conventions of your operating system.
<i>formatted_path</i>	Formatted pathname that uses pattern-matching characters	The specified path must exist.	The pathname must conform to the conventions of your operating system.

You can use cogroup names and coserver numbers when you describe the input or output files for the external table definition. You can identify the DATAFILES either by coserver number or by cogroup name. A coserver number contains only digits. A cogroup name is a valid identifier that begins with a letter but otherwise contains any combination of letters, digits, and underscores.

If you use only some of the available coservers for reading or writing files, you can designate these coservers as a cogroup using **onutil** and then use the cogroup name rather than explicitly naming each coserver and file separately. Whenever you use all coservers to manage external files, you can use the predefined *coserver_group*.

For examples of the DATAFILES clause, see the section, “[Examples](#)” on [page 2-144](#).

Using Formatting Characters

You can use a formatted pathname to designate a filename. If you use a formatted pathname, you can take advantage of the substitution characters *%c*, *%n*, and *%r(first...last)*.

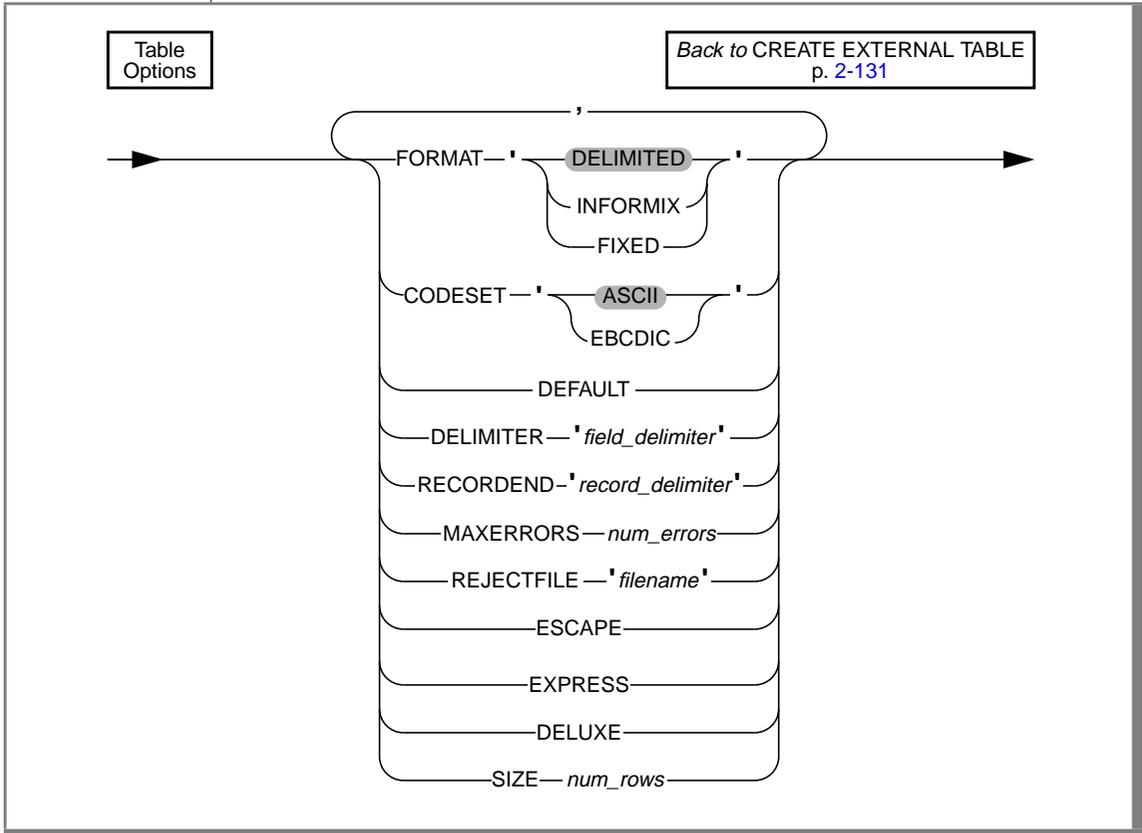
Formatting String	Purpose
<i>%c</i>	Replaced with the number of the coserver that manages the file
<i>%n</i>	Replaced with the name of the node on which the coserver that manages the file resides
<i>%r(first...last)</i>	Names multiple files on a single coserver



Important: The formatted pathname option does not support the *%o* formatting string.

Table Options

The optional table parameters include additional characteristics that define the table.



CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>filename</i>	Full directory path and filename that you want all coservers to use as a destination when they write conversion error messages	If you do not specify REJECTFILE, no reject files are created, and if errors occur, the load task will fail.	Filename must conform to the conventions of your operating system.
<i>field_delimiter</i>	Character to separate fields The default value is the pipe (|) character.	If you use a non-printing character as a delimiter, you must encode it as the octal representation of the ASCII character. For example, '\006' can represent CTRL-F.	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>num_errors</i>	Number of errors allowed per coserver before the database server stops the load	If you do not set the MAXERRORS environment variable, the database server processes all data regardless of the number of errors. This parameter is ignored during an unload task.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>num_rows</i>	Approximate number of rows contained in the external table	None.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>quoted_string</i>	ASCII character that represents the escape	Only one character is valid.	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>record_delimiter</i>	Character to separate records If you do not set the RECORDEND environment variable, the default value is the newline character (\n).	If you use a non-printing character as a delimiter, you must encode it as the octal representation of the ASCII character. For example, '\006' can represent CTRL-F.	Quoted String, p. 4-260

Use the table options keywords as the following table describes. You can use each keyword whenever you plan to load or unload data unless only one of the two modes is specified.

Keyword	Purpose
CODESET	Specifies the type of code set of the data
DEFAULT (load only)	Specifies that the database server should replace missing values in delimited input files with column defaults (if they are defined) instead of inserting nulls This option allows input files to be sparsely populated. The input files do not need to have an entry for every column in the file where a default is the value to be loaded.
DELIMITER	Specifies the character that separates fields in a delimited text file
DELUXE (load only)	Sets a flag that causes the database server to load data in deluxe mode Deluxe mode is required for loading into STANDARD tables.
ESCAPE	Directs the database server to recognize ASCII special characters embedded in ASCII-text-based data files If you do not specify ESCAPE when you load data, the database server does not check the character fields in text data files for embedded special characters. If you do not specify ESCAPE when you unload data, the database server does not create embedded hexadecimal characters in text fields.
EXPRESS	Sets a flag that causes the database server to attempt to load data in express mode If you request express mode but indexes or unique constraints exist on the table or the table contains BYTE or TEXT data, or the target table is not RAW or OPERATIONAL, the load stops with an error message reporting the problem.
FORMAT	Specifies the format of the data in the data files
MAXERRORS	Sets the number of errors that are allowed per coserver before the database server stops the load

(1 of 2)

Keyword	Purpose
RECORDEND	Specifies the character that separates records in a delimited text file
REJECTFILE	Sets the full pathname for all coservers to the area where reject files are written for data-conversion errors If conversion errors occur and you have not specified REJECTFILE or the reject files cannot be opened, the load job ends abnormally. For information on reject-file naming and use of formatting characters, see “Reject Files” on page 2-142 .
SIZE	Specifies the approximate number of rows that are contained in the external table This option can improve performance if you use the external table in a join query.

(2 of 2)



Important: Check constraints on external tables are designed to be evaluated only when loading data. The database server cannot enforce check constraints on external tables because the data can be freely altered outside the control of the server. If you want to restrict rows that are written to an external table during unload, use a WHERE clause to filter the rows.

Reject Files

Rows that have conversion errors during a load or rows that violate check constraints defined on the external table are written to a reject file on the coserver that performs the conversion. Each coserver manages its own reject file. The REJECTFILE keyword determines the name given to the reject file on each coserver.

You can use the formatting characters %c and %n (but not %r) in the filename format. Use the %c formatting characters to make the filenames unique. For more information on formatting characters, see the section [“Using Formatting Characters” on page 2-138](#).

If you perform another load to the same table during the same session, any earlier reject file of the same name is overwritten.

Reject file entries have the following format:

```
coserver-number, filename, record, reason-code,
field-name: bad-line
```

Element	Purpose
<i>coserver-number</i>	Number of the coserver from which the file is read
<i>filename</i>	Name of the input file
<i>record</i>	Record number in the input file where the error was detected
<i>reason-code</i>	Description of the error
<i>field-name</i>	External field name where the first error in the line occurred, or '<none>' if the rejection is not specific to a particular column
<i>bad-line</i>	Line that caused the error (delimited or fixed-position character files only): up to 80 characters

The reject file writes the *coserver-number*, *filename*, *record*, *field-name* and *reason-code* in ASCII. The bad line information varies with the type of input file. For delimited files or fixed-position character files, up to 80 characters of the bad line are copied directly into the reject file. For Informix internal data files, the bad line is not placed in the reject file, because you cannot edit the binary representation in a file. However, *coserver-number*, *filename*, *record*, *reason-code*, and *field-name* are still reported in the reject file so you can isolate the problem.

The types of errors that cause a row to be rejected are as follows.

Error Text	Explanation
CONSTRAINT <i>constraint name</i>	This constraint was violated.
CONVERT_ERR	Any field encounters a conversion error.
MISSING_DELIMITER	No delimiter was found.

(1 of 2)

Error Text	Explanation
MISSING_RECORDEND	No recordend was found.
NOT NULL	A null was found in <i>field-name</i> .
ROW_TOO_LONG	The input record is longer than 32 kilobytes.

(2 of 2)

Examples

The examples in this section show how you can name files to use in the DATAFILES field.

Assume that the database server is running on four nodes, and one file is to be read from each node. All files have the same name. The DATAFILES item can then be as follows:

```
DATAFILES ("DISK:cogroup_all:/work2/unload.dir/mytbl")
```

Now, consider a system with 16 coservers where only three coservers have tape drives attached (for example, coservers 2, 5, and 9). If you define a cogroup for these coservers before you run load and unload commands, you can use the cogroup name rather than a list of individual coservers when you execute the commands. To set up the cogroup, run **onutil**.

```
% onutil
1> create cogroup tape_group
2> from coserver.2, coserver.5, coserver.9;
Cogroup successfully created.
```

Then define the file locations for named pipes:

```
DATAFILES ("PIPE:tape_group:/usr/local/TAPE.%c")
```

The filenames expand as follows:

```
DATAFILES ("pipe:2:/usr/local/TAPE.2",
           "pipe:5:/usr/local/TAPE.5",
           "pipe:9:/usr/local/TAPE.9")
```

If, instead, you want to process three files on each of two coservers, define the files as follows:

```
DATAFILES ("DISK:1:/work2/extern.dir/mytbl.%r(1..3)",
           "DISK:2:/work2/extern.dir/mytbl.%r(4..6)")
```

The expanded list is as follows:

```
DATAFILES ("disk:1:/work2/extern.dir/mytbl.1",  
           "disk:1:/work2/extern.dir/mytbl.2",  
           "disk:1:/work2/extern.dir/mytbl.3",  
           "disk:2:/work2/extern.dir/mytbl.4",  
           "disk:2:/work2/extern.dir/mytbl.5",  
           "disk:2:/work2/extern.dir/mytbl.6")
```

Related Information

Related statements: [INSERT](#), [SELECT](#), and [SET PLOAD FILE](#)

For more information on external tables, refer to your [Administrator's Reference](#).

+

IDS

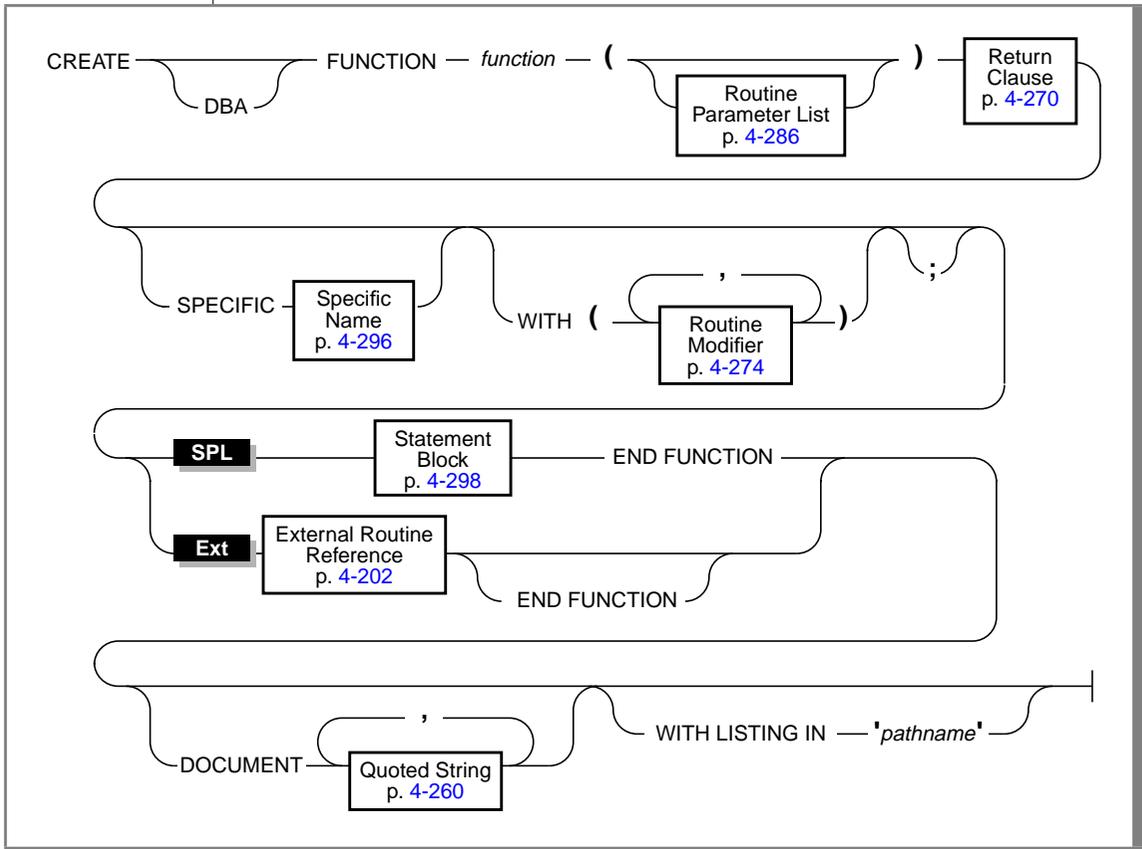


CREATE FUNCTION

Use the CREATE FUNCTION statement to create a user-defined function. With this statement, you can register an external function or write and register an SPL function.

Tip: If you are trying to create a function from text that is in a separate file, use the CREATE FUNCTION FROM statement.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>function</i>	Name of the function to create	You must have the appropriate language privileges. For more information, see “GRANT” on page 2-500 . Also see, “Naming a Function” on page 2-148 .	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>pathname</i>	Pathname to a file in which compile-time warnings are stored	The specified pathname must exist on the computer where the database resides.	Pathname and filename must conform to the conventions of your operating system.

Usage

The database server supports user-defined functions written in the following languages:

- **Stored Procedure Language (*SPL functions*)**
An SPL function can return one or more values.
- **One of the external languages (C or Java) that Dynamic Server supports (*external functions*)**
An external function must return exactly one value.

For information on how the manual uses the terms UDR, function, and procedure as well as recommended usage, see [“Relationship Between Routines, Functions and Procedures” on page 2-201](#) and [“Using CREATE PROCEDURE Versus CREATE FUNCTION” on page 2-199](#), respectively.

The entire length of a CREATE FUNCTION statement must be less than 64 kilobytes. This length is the literal length of the statement, including blank space and tabs.

You can use a CREATE FUNCTION statement only within a PREPARE statement. If you want to create a user-defined function for which the text is known at compile time, you must put the text in a file and specify this file with the CREATE FUNCTION FROM statement. ♦

E/C

Ext

Privileges Necessary for Using CREATE FUNCTION

You must have the Resource privilege on a database to create a function within that database.

Before you can create an external function, you must also have the Usage privilege on the language in which you will write the function. For more information, see [“GRANT” on page 2-500](#). ♦

SPL

By default, the Usage privilege on SPL is granted to PUBLIC. You must also have at least the Resource privilege on a database to create an SPL function within that database. ♦

DBA Keyword and Privileges on the Created Function

The level of privilege necessary to execute a UDR depends on whether the UDR is created with the DBA keyword.

If you create a UDR with the DBA keyword, it is known as a DBA-privileged UDR. You need the DBA privilege to create or execute a DBA-privileged UDR.

If you do not use the DBA keyword, the UDR is known as an owner-privileged UDR.

ANSI

If you create an owner-privileged UDR in an ANSI-compliant database, anyone can execute the UDR. ♦

If you create an owner-privileged UDR in a database that is not ANSI compliant, the `NODEFDAC` environment variable prevents privileges on that UDR from being granted to PUBLIC. If this environment variable is set, the owner of a UDR must grant the Execute privilege for that UDR to other users.

Ext

If an external function has a negator function, you must grant the Execute privilege on both the external function and its negator function before users can execute the external function. ♦

Naming a Function

Because Dynamic Server offers *routine overloading*, you can define more than one function with the same name, but different parameter lists. You might want to overload functions in the following situations:

- You create a user-defined function with the same name as a built-in function (such as `equal()`) to process a new user-defined data type.
- You create *type hierarchies*, in which subtypes inherit data representation and functions from supertypes.
- You create *distinct types*, which are data types that have the same internal storage representation as an existing data type, but have different names and cannot be compared to the source type without casting. Distinct types inherit support functions from their source types.

For a brief description of the routine signature which uniquely identifies each user-defined function, see [“Routine Overloading and Naming UDRs with a Routine Signature”](#) on page 4-52.

Using the SPECIFIC Clause to Specify a Specific Name

You can specify a specific name for a user-defined function. A specific name is a name that is unique in the database. A specific name is useful when you are overloading a function.

DOCUMENT Clause

The quoted string in the DOCUMENT clause provides a synopsis and description of the UDR. The string is stored in the **sysprocbody** system catalog table and is intended for the user of the UDR.

Anyone with access to the database can query the **sysprocbody** system catalog table to obtain a description of one or all of the UDRs stored in the database.

For example, the following query obtains a description of the SPL function **update_by_pct**, shown in [“SPL Functions”](#) on page 2-150:

```
SELECT data FROM sysprocbody b, sysprocedures p
WHERE b.procid = p.procid
      --join between the two catalog tables
AND p.procname = 'update_by_pct'
      -- look for procedure named update_by_pct
AND b.datakey = 'D'-- want user document;
```

The preceding query returns the following text:

```
USAGE: Update a price by a percentage
Enter an integer percentage from 1 - 100
and a part id number
```

A UDR or application program can query the system catalog tables to fetch the DOCUMENT clause and display it for a user.

Ext

You can use a DOCUMENT clause at the end of the CREATE FUNCTION statement, whether or not you use the END FUNCTION keywords. ♦

WITH LISTING IN Clause

The WITH LISTING IN clause specifies a filename where compile time warnings are sent. After you compile a UDR, this file holds one or more warning messages.

If you do not use the WITH LISTING IN clause, the compiler does not generate a list of warnings.

UNIX

If you specify a filename but not a directory, this listing file is created in your home directory on the computer where the database resides. If you do not have a home directory on this computer, the file is created in the root directory (the directory named “/”). ♦

Windows

If you specify a filename but not a directory, this listing file is created in your current working directory if the database is on the local machine. Otherwise, the default directory is %INFORMIXDIR%\bin. ♦

SPL

SPL Functions

SPL functions are UDRs written in Stored Procedure Language (SPL) that return one or more values.

To write and register an SPL function, use a CREATE FUNCTION statement. Embed appropriate SQL and SPL statements between the CREATE FUNCTION and END FUNCTION keywords. You can also follow the function with the DOCUMENT and WITH FILE IN options.

SPL functions are parsed, optimized (as far as possible), and stored in the system catalog tables in executable format. The body of an SPL function is stored in the **sysprocbody** system catalog table. Other information about the function is stored in other system catalog tables, including **sysprocedures**, **sysprocplan**, and **sysprocauth**. For more information about these system catalog tables, see the discussion of the system catalog in the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

You must use the END FUNCTION keywords with an SPL function.

Place a semicolon after the clause that immediately precedes the statement block.

Example of an SPL Function

The following example creates an SPL function:

```
CREATE FUNCTION update_by_pct ( pct INT, pid CHAR(10))
  RETURNING INT;

  DEFINE n INT;

  UPDATE inventory SET price = price + price * (pct/100)
    WHERE part_id = pid;
  LET n = price;
  RETURN price;

END FUNCTION
DOCUMENT "USAGE: Update a price by a percentage",
        "Enter an integer percentage from 1 - 100",
        "and a part id number"
WITH LISTING IN '/tmp/warn_file'
```

For more information on writing SPL functions, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#). ♦

External Functions

External functions are functions you write in an external language that Dynamic Server supports.

To create a C user-defined function, follow these steps:

1. Write the C function.
2. Compile the function and store the compiled code in a shared library (the shared-object file for C).
3. Register the function in the database server with the CREATE FUNCTION statement.

To create a user-defined function written in Java, follow these steps:

1. Write a Java static method, which can use the JDBC functions to interact with the database server.
2. Compile the Java source file and create a jar file (the shared-object file for Java).
3. Execute the **install_jar()** procedure with the EXECUTE PROCEDURE statement to install the jar file in the current database.
4. If the UDR uses user-defined types, create a map between SQL data types and Java classes.

Use the **setUDTextName()** procedure that is explained in [“EXECUTE PROCEDURE” on page 2-444](#).

5. Register the UDR with the CREATE FUNCTION statement.

Rather than storing the body of an external routine directly in the database, the database server stores only the pathname of the shared-object file that contains the compiled version of the routine. When the database server executes the external routine, the database server invokes the external object code.

The database server stores information about an external function in several system catalog tables, including **sysprocbody** and **sysprocauth**. For more information on these system catalog tables, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

C

Example of Registering a C User-Defined Function

The following example registers an external C user-defined function named **equal()** in the database. This function takes two arguments of the type **basetype1** and returns a single Boolean value. The external routine reference name specifies the path to the C shared library where the function object code is actually stored. This library contains a C function **basetype1_equal()**, which is invoked during execution of the **equal()** function:

```
CREATE FUNCTION equal ( arg1 basetype1, arg2 basetype1)
RETURNING BOOLEAN;
EXTERNAL NAME
"/usr/lib/basetype1/lib/libbtype1.so(basetype1_equal)"
LANGUAGE C
END FUNCTION
```

Java

Example of Registering a User-Defined Function Written in Java

The following CREATE FUNCTION statement registers the user-defined function, **sql_explosive_reaction()**. This function is discussed in [“sqlj.install_jar” on page 2-447](#):

```
CREATE FUNCTION sql_explosive_reaction(int) RETURNS int
WITH (class="jvp")
EXTERNAL NAME "course_jar:Chemistry.explosiveReaction"
LANGUAGE JAVA
```

This function returns a single value of type INTEGER. The EXTERNAL NAME clause specifies that the Java implementation of the **sql_explosive_reaction()** function is a method called **explosiveReaction()**, which resides in the **Chemistry** Java class that resides in the **course_jar** jar file.

Ownership of Created Database Objects

The user who creates an owner-privileged UDR owns any database objects that are created by the UDR when the UDR is executed, unless another owner is specified for the created database object. In other words, the UDR owner, not the user who executes the UDR, is the owner of any database objects created by the UDR unless another owner is specified in the statement that creates the database object.

For example, assume that user **mike** creates the following user-defined function:

```
CREATE FUNCTION func1 () RETURNING INT;  
  CREATE TABLE tab1 (colx INT);  
  RETURN 1;  
END FUNCTION
```

If user **joan** now executes function **func1**, user **mike**, not user **joan**, is the owner of the newly created table **tab1**.

However, in the case of a DBA-privileged UDR, the user who executes the UDR—not the UDR owner—owns any database objects created by the UDR, unless another owner is specified for the database object within the UDR.

For example, assume that user **mike** creates the following user-defined function:

```
CREATE DBA FUNCTION func2 () RETURNING INT;  
  CREATE TABLE tab2 (coly INT);  
  RETURN 1;  
END FUNCTION
```

If user **joan** now executes function **func2**, user **joan**, not user **mike**, is the owner of the newly created table **tab2**.

Related Information

Related statements: [ALTER FUNCTION](#), [ALTER ROUTINE](#), [CREATE PROCEDURE](#), [CREATE FUNCTION FROM](#), [DROP FUNCTION](#), [DROP ROUTINE](#), [GRANT](#), [EXECUTE FUNCTION](#), [PREPARE](#), [REVOKE](#), and [UPDATE STATISTICS](#)

For a discussion on creating and using SPL routines, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For a discussion of how to create and use external routines, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

For information about how to create C UDRs, see the [DataBlade API Programmer's Manual](#).

For more information on the `NODEFDAC` environment variable and the relative system catalog tables (**sysprocedures**, **sysprocplan**, **sysprocbody** and **sysprocauth**), see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

For example, suppose that the following CREATE FUNCTION statement is in a separate file, called **del_ord.sql**:

```
CREATE FUNCTION delete_order( p_order_num int )
  RETURNING int, int;
  DEFINE item_count int;
  SELECT count(*) INTO item_count FROM items
    WHERE order_num = p_order_num;
  DELETE FROM orders
    WHERE order_num = p_order_num;
  RETURN p_order_num, item_count;
END FUNCTION;
```

In the ESQL/C program, you can access the **delete_order()** SPL function with the following CREATE FUNCTION FROM statement:

```
EXEC SQL create function from 'del_ord.sql';
```

If you are not sure whether the UDR in the file is a user-defined function or a user-defined procedure, use the CREATE ROUTINE FROM statement.

The filename that you provide is relative. If you provide a simple filename (as in the preceding example), the client application looks for the file in the current directory.



Important: *The ESQL/C preprocessor does not process the contents of the file that you specify. It just sends the contents to the database server for execution. Therefore, there is no syntactic check that the file that you specify in CREATE FUNCTION FROM actually contains a CREATE FUNCTION statement. However, to improve readability of the code, Informix recommends that you match these two statements.*

Related Information

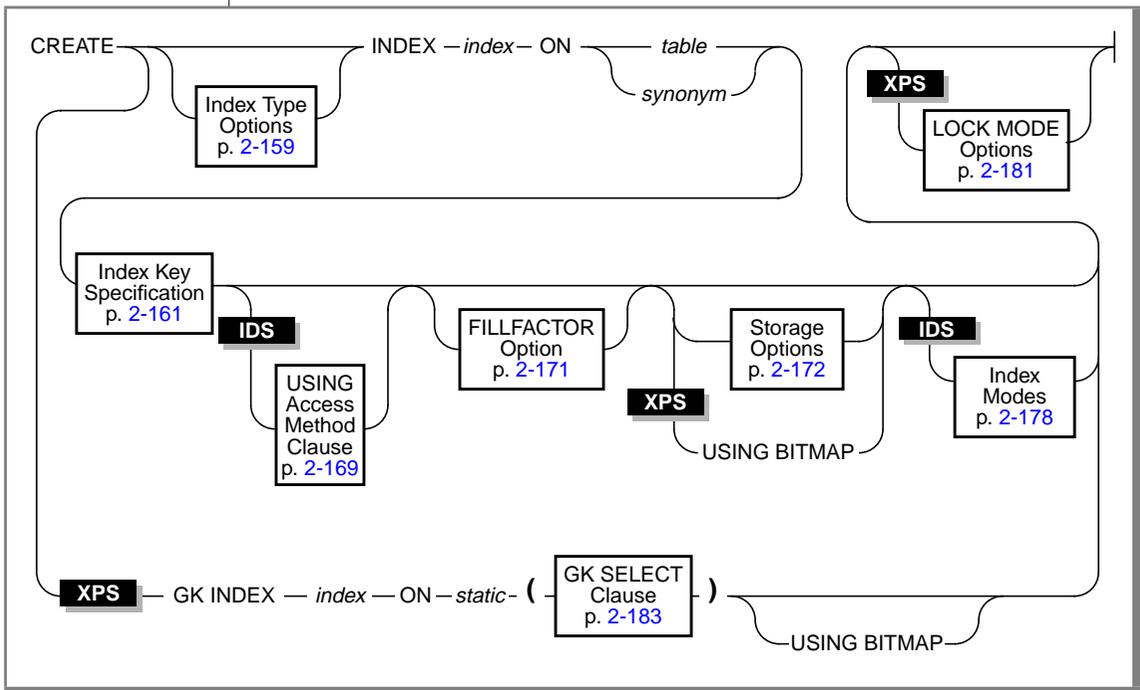
Related statements: [CREATE FUNCTION](#), [CREATE PROCEDURE](#), [CREATE PROCEDURE FROM](#), and [CREATE ROUTINE FROM](#)

+

CREATE INDEX

Use the CREATE INDEX statement to create an index for one or more columns in a table, to specify whether or not it allows only unique values, to cluster the physical table in the order of the index, and to designate where the index should be stored.

Syntax



CREATE INDEX

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>index</i>	Name of the index to create	The name must be unique within the database. The first byte of the name cannot be a leading ASCII blank (hex 20).	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>synonym</i>	Synonym for the name of the table on which the index is created	The synonym and the table to which the synonym points must already exist. (IDS) This table cannot be a virtual table.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>static</i>	Name of the table on which a GK index is created	The table must exist. It must be a static table.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of the table on which the index is created	The table must exist. The table can be a regular database table or a temporary table. (IDS) This table cannot be a virtual table.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

A *secondary access method* (sometimes referred to as an *index access method*) is a set of database server functions that build, access, and manipulate an index structure such as a B-tree, R-tree, or an index structure that a DataBlade module provides. Typically, a secondary access method speeds up the retrieval of data.

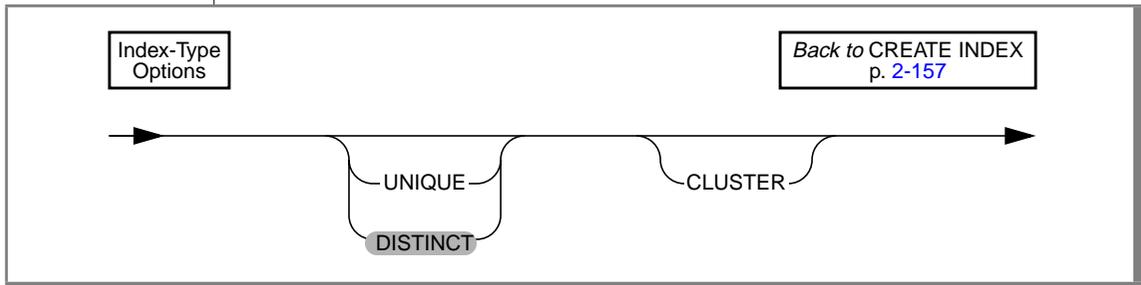
When you issue the CREATE INDEX statement, the table is locked in exclusive mode. If another process is using the table, the database server cannot execute the CREATE INDEX statement and returns an error.

XPS

If you are using Extended Parallel Server, use the USING BITMAP keywords to store the list of records in each key of the index as a compressed bitmap. The storage option is not compatible with a bitmap index because bitmap indexes must be fragmented in the same way as the table. ♦

Index-Type Options

The index-type options let you specify the characteristics of the index.



UNIQUE or DISTINCT Option

Use the **UNIQUE** or **DISTINCT** keywords to require that the column or set of columns on which the index is based accepts only unique data.

The following example creates a unique index:

```
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX c_num_ix ON customer (customer_num)
```

A unique index prevents duplicates in the **customer_num** column. A column with a unique index can have, at most, one null value. The **DISTINCT** keyword is a synonym for the keyword **UNIQUE**, so the following statement accomplishes the same task:

```
CREATE DISTINCT INDEX c_num_ix ON customer (customer_num)
```

The index in either example is maintained in ascending order, which is the default order.

If you do not specify the **UNIQUE** or **DISTINCT** keywords in a **CREATE INDEX** statement, the database server allows duplicate values in the indexed column.

You can also prevent duplicates in a column or set of columns by creating a unique constraint with the CREATE TABLE or ALTER TABLE statement. For more information on creating unique constraints, see the CREATE TABLE or ALTER TABLE statements.

How Indexes Affect Primary-Key, Unique, and Referential Constraints

The database server creates internal B-tree indexes for primary-key, unique, and referential constraints. If a primary-key, unique, or referential constraint is added after the table is created, any user-created indexes on the constrained columns are used, if appropriate. An appropriate index is one that indexes the same columns that are used in the primary-key, referential or unique constraint. If an appropriate user-created index is not available, the database server creates a nonfragmented internal index on the constrained column or columns.

CLUSTER Option

Use the CLUSTER option to reorder the physical table in the order that the index designates. The CREATE CLUSTER INDEX statement fails if a CLUSTER index already exists.

```
CREATE CLUSTER INDEX c_clust_ix ON customer (zipcode)
```

This statement creates an index on the **customer** table that physically orders the table by zip code.

If the CLUSTER option is specified in addition to fragments on an index, the data is clustered only within the context of the fragment and not globally across the entire table.

XPS

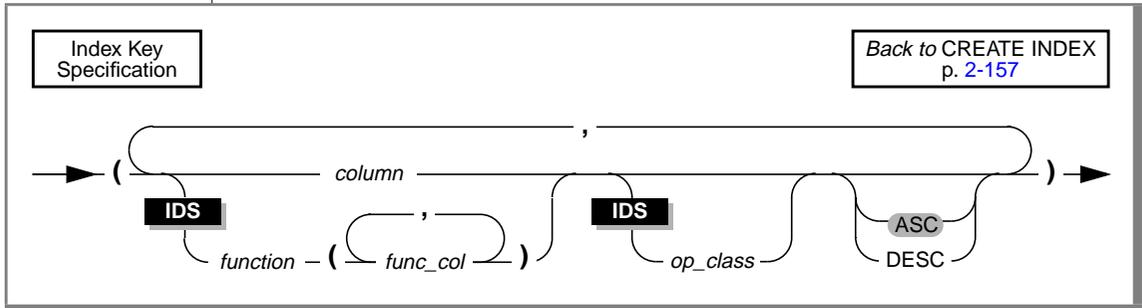
If you are using Extended Parallel Server, you cannot use the CLUSTER option on STANDARD tables. In addition, you cannot use the CLUSTER option and storage options in the same CREATE INDEX statement (see [“Storage Options” on page 2-172](#)). When you create a clustered index the **constrid** of any unique or referential constraints on the associated table changes. The **constrid** is stored in the **sysconstraints** system catalog table. ♦

IDS

Some secondary access methods (such as R-tree) do not support clustering. Before you specify CLUSTER for your index, be sure that it uses an access method that supports clustering. ♦

Index-Key Specification

Use the Index-Key Specification portion of the CREATE INDEX statement to specify the key value for the index, an operator class, and whether the index will be sorted in ascending or descending order.



Index Key Specification

Back to CREATE INDEX
p. 2-157

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of the column or columns used as a key to this index	You must observe restrictions on the location of the columns, the maximum number of columns, the total width of the columns, existing constraints on the columns, and the number of indexes allowed on the same columns. See “Using a Column as the Index Key” on page 2-163.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>function</i>	Name of the user-defined function used as a key to this index	This must be a nonvariant function. The return type of the function cannot be BYTE or TEXT. You cannot create an index on built-in algebraic, exponential, log, or hex functions.	DataBase Object Name, p. 4-50

(1 of 2)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>func_col</i>	Name of the column or columns on which the user-defined function acts	See “Using a Column as the Index Key” on page 2-163.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>op_class</i>	Operator class associated with this column or function of the index	<p>If you specify a secondary access method in the USING clause that does not have a default operator class, you must specify an operator class here.</p> <p>If you use an alternative access method, and if the access method has a default operator class, you can omit the operator class here.</p> <p>If you do not specify an operator class and the secondary access method does not have a default operator class, the database server returns an error.</p> <p>For more information, see “Using an Operator Class” on page 2-168.</p>	Identifier, p. 4-205

(2 of 2)

The index-key value can be one or more columns that contain built-in data types. When multiple columns are listed, the concatenation of the set of columns is treated as a single composite column for indexing.

In addition, the index-key value can be one of the following types:

- One or more columns that contain user-defined data types
- One or more values that a user-defined function returns (referred to as a functional index)
- A combination of columns and functions ♦

IDS

Using a Column as the Index Key

Observe the following restrictions when you specify a column or columns as the index key:

- All the columns you specify must exist and must belong to the table being indexed.
- The maximum number of columns and the total width of all columns vary with the database server. See [“Creating Composite Indexes” on page 2-164](#).
- You cannot add an ascending index to a column or column list that already has a unique constraint on it. See [“Using the ASC and DESC Sort-Order Options” on page 2-164](#).
- You cannot add a unique index to a column or column list that has a primary-key constraint on it. The reason is that defining the column or column list as the primary key causes the database server to create a unique internal index on the column or column list. So you cannot create another unique index on this column or column list with the CREATE INDEX statement.
- The number of indexes you can create on the same column or same sequence of columns is restricted. See [“Restrictions on the Number of Indexes on a Single Column” on page 2-167](#) and [“Restrictions on the Number of Indexes on a Sequence of Columns” on page 2-167](#).
- You cannot create an index on a column that belongs to an external table.
- The column you specify cannot be a column whose data type is a collection. ♦

IDS

IDS

Using a Function as an Index Key

You can create an index on a user-defined function. You can also create functional indexes within an SPL routine.

A functional index can be a B-tree index, an R-tree index, or a user-defined secondary access method.

Functional indexes are indexed on the value returned by the specified function rather than on the value of a column.

For example, the following statement creates a functional index on table **zones** using the value returned by the function **Area()** as the key:

```
CREATE INDEX zone_func_ind ON zones (Area(length,width));
```

Creating Composite Indexes

Place columns in a composite index in the order from most-frequently used to least-frequently used.

The following example creates a composite index using the **stock_num** and **manu_code** columns of the **stock** table:

```
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX st_man_ix ON stock (stock_num, manu_code)
```

The index prevents any duplicates of a given combination of **stock_num** and **manu_code**. The index is in ascending order by default.

You can include up to 16 columns in a composite index. The total width of all indexed columns in a single CREATE INDEX statement cannot exceed 255 bytes. ♦

A composite index can have up to 16 key parts. An *index key part* is either a table column or the result of a user-defined function on one or more table columns. A composite index can have any of the following items as an index key:

- One or more columns
- One or more values that a user-defined function returns (referred to as a functional index)
- A combination of columns and user-defined functions

The total width of all indexed columns in a single CREATE INDEX statement cannot exceed 390 bytes. ♦

Using the ASC and DESC Sort-Order Options

Use the ASC option to specify an index that is maintained in ascending order. The ASC option is the default ordering scheme. Use the DESC option to specify an index that is maintained in descending order.

You can use these options with B-trees only.

XPS

IDS

Effects of Unique Constraints on Sort Order Options

When a column or list of columns is defined as unique in a CREATE TABLE or ALTER TABLE statement, the database server implements that UNIQUE CONSTRAINT by creating a unique ascending index. Thus, you cannot use the CREATE INDEX statement to add an ascending index to a column or column list that is already defined as unique.

However, you can create a descending index on such columns, and you can include such columns in composite ascending indexes in different combinations. For example, the following sequence of statements is allowed:

```
CREATE TABLE customer (
  customer_num      SERIAL(101) UNIQUE,
  fname             CHAR(15),
  lname            CHAR(15),
  company           CHAR(20),
  address1          CHAR(20),
  address2          CHAR(20),
  city              CHAR(15),
  state             CHAR(2),
  zipcode           CHAR(5),
  phone            CHAR(18)
)

CREATE INDEX c_temp1 ON customer (customer_num DESC)
CREATE INDEX c_temp2 ON customer (customer_num, zipcode)
```

In this example, the **customer_num** column has a unique constraint placed on it. The first CREATE INDEX example places an index sorted in descending order on the **customer_num** column. The second CREATE INDEX example includes the **customer_num** column as part of a composite index. For more information on composite indexes, see [“Creating Composite Indexes” on page 2-164](#).

Bidirectional Traversal of Indexes

When you create an index on a column but do not specify the ASC or DESC keywords, the database server stores the key values in ascending order by default.

However, the bidirectional-traversal capability of the database server lets you create just one index on a column and use that index for queries that specify sorting of results in either ascending or descending order of the sort column.

Because of this capability, it does not matter whether you create a single-column index as an ascending or descending index. Whichever storage order you choose for an index, the database server can traverse that index in ascending or descending order when it processes queries.

However, if you create a composite index on a table, the `ASC` and `DESC` keywords might be required. For example, if you want to enter a `SELECT` statement whose `ORDER BY` clause sorts on multiple columns and sorts each column in a different order and you want to use an index for this query, you need to create a composite index that corresponds to the `ORDER BY` columns.

For example, suppose that you want to enter the following query:

```
SELECT stock_num, manu_code, description, unit_price
FROM stock
ORDER BY manu_code ASC, unit_price DESC
```

This query sorts first in ascending order by the value of the **manu_code** column and then in descending order by the value of the **unit_price** column. To use an index for this query, you need to issue a `CREATE INDEX` statement that corresponds to the requirements of the `ORDER BY` clause. For example, you can enter either of the following statements to create the index:

```
CREATE INDEX stock_idx1 ON stock
    (manu_code ASC, unit_price DESC);

CREATE INDEX stock_idx2 ON stock
    (manu_code DESC, unit_price ASC);
```

The composite index that was used for this query (**stock_idx1** or **stock_idx2**) cannot be used for queries in which you specify the same sort direction for the two columns in the `ORDER BY` clause. For example, suppose that you want to enter the following queries:

```
SELECT stock_num, manu_code, description, unit_price
FROM stock
ORDER BY manu_code ASC, unit_price ASC;

SELECT stock_num, manu_code, description, unit_price
FROM stock
ORDER BY manu_code DESC, unit_price DESC;
```

If you want to use a composite index to improve the performance of these queries, you need to enter one of the following CREATE INDEX statements. You can use either one of the created indexes (**stock_idx3** or **stock_idx4**) to improve the performance of the preceding queries.

```
CREATE INDEX stock_idx3 ON stock
    (manu_code ASC, unit_price ASC);

CREATE INDEX stock_idx4 ON stock
    (manu_code DESC, unit_price DESC);
```

Restrictions on the Number of Indexes on a Single Column

You can create only one ascending index and one descending index on a single column.

Because of the bidirectional traversal capability of the database server, you do not need to create both indexes in practice. You only need to create one of the indexes. Both of these indexes would achieve exactly the same results for an ascending or descending sort on the **stock_num** column.

Restrictions on the Number of Indexes on a Sequence of Columns

You can create multiple indexes on a sequence of columns, provided that each index has a unique combination of ascending and descending columns. For example, to create all possible indexes on the **stock_num** and **manu_code** columns of the **stock** table, you could create the following indexes:

- The **ix1** index on both columns in ascending order
- The **ix2** index on both columns in descending order
- The **ix3** index on **stock_num** in ascending order and on **manu_code** in descending order
- The **ix4** index on **stock_num** in descending order and on **manu_code** in ascending order

Because of the bidirectional-traversal capability of the database server, you do not need to create these four indexes. You only need to create two indexes:

- The **ix1** and **ix2** indexes achieve exactly the same results for sorts in which the user specifies the same sort direction (ascending or descending) for both columns. Therefore, you only need to create one index of this pair.
- The **ix3** and **ix4** indexes achieve exactly the same results for sorts in which the user specifies different sort directions for the two columns (ascending on the first column and descending on the second column or vice versa). Therefore, you only need to create one index of this pair.

For further information on the bidirectional-traversal capability of the database server, see [“Bidirectional Traversal of Indexes” on page 2-165](#).

IDS

Using an Operator Class

An *operator class* is the set of operators the database server associates with a secondary access method for query optimization and building the index.

Specify an operator class when you create an index if you have one of the following situations:

- A default operator class for the secondary access method does not exist. For example, some of the user-defined access methods do not provide a default operator class.
- You want to use an operator class that is different from the default operator class that the secondary access method provides.

For more information, see [“Default Operator Classes” on page 2-197](#). The following CREATE INDEX statement creates a B-tree index on the **cust_tab** table that uses the **abs_btree_ops** operator class for the **cust_num** key:

```
CREATE INDEX c_num1_ix ON cust_tab (cust_num abs_btree_ops);
```

IDS

USING Access Method Clause

Use the USING clause to specify the secondary access method to use for the new index.

USING Access Method Clause

[Back to CREATE INDEX](#)
 p. 2-157

USING *sec_acc_method* (*parameter = value*)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>parameter</i>	Name of the secondary access-method parameter used with this index	The parameter name must be one of the strings allowed for this secondary access method. For more information, refer to the user documentation for your user-defined access method.	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>sec_acc_method</i>	Name of the secondary access method used with the index you are creating	The access method can be a B-tree, R-tree, or user-defined access method, such as one that was defined by a DataBlade module. The access method must be a valid access method in the sysams system catalog table. The default secondary access method is B-tree. If the access method is B-tree, you can create only one index for each unique combination of ascending and descending columnar or functional keys with operator classes. This restriction does not apply to other secondary access methods.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>value</i>	Value of the specified parameter	The parameter value must be one of the quoted strings or literal numbers allowed for this secondary access method.	Quoted String, p. 4-260 or Literal Number, p. 4-237

A *secondary access method* is a set of routines that perform all of the operations needed to make an index available to a server, such as create, drop, insert, delete, update, and scan.

The database server provides the following secondary access methods:

- The generic B-tree index is the built-in secondary access method. A B-tree index is good for a query that retrieves a range of data values. The database server implements this secondary access method and registers it as **btree** in the system catalog tables of a database.
- The R-tree secondary access method is a registered secondary access method.

An R-tree index is good for searches on multi-dimensional data (such as box, circle, and so forth). The database server registers this secondary access method as **rtree** in the system catalog tables of a database. For more information on R-tree indexes, see the [Informix R-Tree Index User's Guide](#).

Some user-defined access methods are packaged as DataBlades. For more information about user-defined access methods, refer to your access-method or DataBlade user guides.

By default, the CREATE INDEX statement creates a generic B-tree index. If you want to create an index with a secondary access method other than B-tree, you must specify the name of the secondary access method in the USING clause.

The following example assumes that the database implements the R-tree index. It creates an R-tree index on the **location** column that contains an opaque data type, **point**.

```
CREATE INDEX loc_ix ON TABLE emp (location)
  USING rtree;
SELECT name FROM emp
  WHERE location N_equator_equals point('500, 0');
```

The sample query has a filter on the **location** column.

Some DataBlade modules provide indexes that require specific parameters when you create them.

Example of an Index with Parameters

The following CREATE INDEX statement creates an index that uses the secondary access method **fulltext**, which takes two parameters: WORD_SUPPORT and PHRASE_SUPPORT. It indexes a table **t**, which has two columns: **i**, an integer column, and **data**, a TEXT column.

```
CREATE INDEX tx ON t(data)
  USING fulltext (WORD_SUPPORT='PATTERN',
  PHRASE_SUPPORT='MAXIMUM');
```

FILLFACTOR Option

Use the FILLFACTOR option to provide for expansion of an index at a later date or to create compacted indexes.

FILLFACTOR
Option

Back to CREATE INDEX
p. 2-157

→ FILLFACTOR *percent* →

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>percent</i>	Percentage of each index page that is filled by index data when the index is created The default value is 90.	Value must be in the range 1 to 100.	Literal Number, p. 4-237

When the index is created, the database server initially fills only that percentage of the nodes specified with the FILLFACTOR value.

The FILLFACTOR option takes effect only when you build an index on a table that contains more than 5,000 rows and uses more than 100 table pages, when you create an index on a fragmented table, or when you create a fragmented index on a nonfragmented table.

The FILLFACTOR can also be set as a parameter in the ONCONFIG file. The FILLFACTOR clause on the CREATE INDEX statement overrides the setting in the ONCONFIG file.

For more information about the ONCONFIG file and the parameters you can use with ONCONFIG, see your [Administrator's Guide](#).

Providing a Low Percentage Value

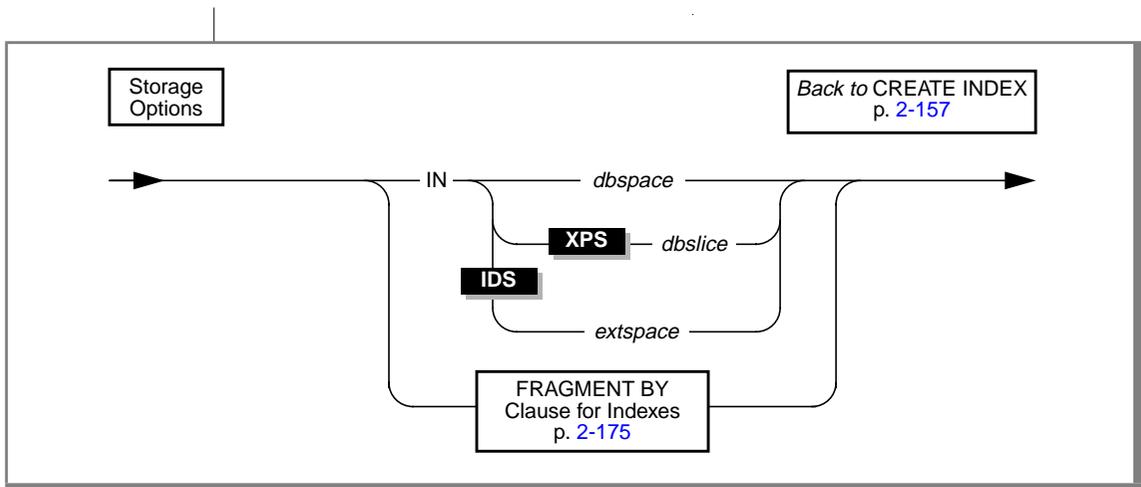
If you provide a low percentage value, such as 50, you allow room for growth in your index. The nodes of the index initially fill to a certain percentage and contain space for inserts. The amount of available space depends on the number of keys in each page as well as the percentage value. For example, with a 50-percent FILLFACTOR value, the page would be half full and could accommodate doubling in size. A low percentage value can result in faster inserts and can be used for indexes that you expect to grow.

Providing a High Percentage Value

If you provide a high percentage value, such as 99, your indexes are compacted, and any new index inserts result in splitting nodes. The maximum density is achieved with 100 percent. With a 100-percent FILLFACTOR value, the index has no room available for growth; any additions to the index result in splitting the nodes. A 99-percent FILLFACTOR value allows room for at least one insertion per node. A high percentage value can result in faster selects and can be used for indexes that you do not expect to grow or for mostly read-only indexes.

Storage Options

The storage options let you specify the distribution scheme of an index. You can use the IN clause to specify a storage space to hold the entire index, or you can use the FRAGMENT BY clause to fragment the index across multiple storage spaces



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>dbslice</i>	Name of the <i>dbslice</i> that contains all of the index fragments	The <i>dbslice</i> must exist when you execute the statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>dbspace</i>	Name of the <i>dbspace</i> in which you want to place the index	The <i>dbspace</i> must exist when you execute the statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>extspace</i>	Name assigned with the onspaces command to a storage area outside the database server	The specified <i>extspace</i> must already exist.	Refer to the user documentation for your custom access method for more information.

If you do not use the storage options (that is, if you do not specify a distribution scheme), by default the index inherits the distribution scheme as of the table on which it is built. Such an index is called an *attached index*.

An attached index is created in the same *dbspace* (or *dbspaces* if the table is fragmented) as the table on which it is built. If the distribution scheme of a table changes, all attached indexes start using the new distribution scheme.

When you specify one of the storage options, you create a *detached index*. Detached indexes are indexes that are created with a specified distribution scheme. Even if the distribution scheme specified for the index is identical to that specified for the table, the index is still considered to be detached. If the distribution scheme of a table changes, all detached indexes continue to use their own distribution scheme.

For information on locally-detached and globally-detached indexes, see [“FRAGMENT BY Clause for Indexes” on page 2-175](#).

If you are using Extended Parallel Server, you cannot use the CLUSTER option and storage options in the same CREATE INDEX statement. See [“CLUSTER Option” on page 2-160](#). ♦

IN Clause

Use the IN clause to specify a storage space to hold the entire index. The storage space that you specify must already exist.

Storing an Index in a dbspace

Use the IN *dbspace* clause to specify the dbspace where you want your index to reside. When you use this clause, you create a detached index.

The IN *dbspace* clause allows you to isolate an index. For example, if the **customer** table is created in the **custdata** dbspace, but you want to create an index in a separate dbspace called **custind**, use the following statements:

```
CREATE TABLE customer
:
:
:
IN custdata EXTENT SIZE 16

CREATE INDEX idx_cust ON customer (customer_num)
IN custind
```

Storing an Index in a dbslice

If you are using Extended Parallel Server, the IN *dbslice* clause allows you to fragment an index across multiple dbspaces. The database server fragments the table by round-robin in the dbspaces that make up the dbslice at the time the table is created.

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of the column on which you want to fragment your index	All specified columns must be in the current table. If you specify a serial column, you cannot specify any other column.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>dbslice</i>	Name of the dbslice that contains all of the index fragments	The dbslice must exist when you execute the statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>dbspace</i>	Name of the dbspace that will contain an index fragment that expr defines	The dbspaces must exist at the time you execute the statement. You can specify a maximum of 2,048 dbspaces.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>expr</i>	Expression that defines which index keys are stored in a fragment	Each fragment expression can contain only columns from the current table and only data values from a single row. The columns contained in a fragment expression must be the same as the indexed columns, or a subset of the indexed columns. No subqueries, user-defined routines, aggregates, or references to the fields of a row-type column are allowed. In addition, no built-in current, date and/or time functions are allowed.	Expression, p. 4-73, and Condition, p. 4-27

When you use this clause, you create a detached index.

XPS

You can fragment indexes on any column of a table, even if the table spans multiple coservers. The columns that you specify in the FRAGMENT BY clause do not have to be part of the index key.

Detached indexes can be either locally detached or globally detached. A *locally detached index* is an index in which, for each data tuple in a table, the corresponding index tuple is guaranteed to be on the same coserver. The table and index fragmentation strategies do not have to be identical as long as colocality can be guaranteed. If the data tuple and index tuple colocality does not exist, then the index is a *globally detached index*. For performance implications of globally-detached indexes, see your [Performance Guide](#).

For more information on the expression, hash, and hybrid distribution schemes, see [“Fragmenting by EXPRESSION” on page 2-262](#); [“Fragmenting by HASH” on page 2-263](#); and [“Fragmenting by HYBRID” on page 2-264](#), respectively in the CREATE TABLE statement. ♦

Fragmentation of System Indexes

System indexes (such as those used in referential constraints and unique constraints) utilize user indexes if they exist. If no user indexes can be utilized, system indexes remain nonfragmented and are moved to the dbspace where the database was created. To fragment a system index, create the fragmented index on the constraint columns, and then add the constraint using the ALTER TABLE statement.

IDS

Fragmentation of Unique Indexes

You can fragment unique indexes only with a table that uses an expression-based distribution scheme. The columns referenced in the fragment expression must be part of the indexed columns. If your CREATE INDEX statement fails to meet either of these restrictions, the CREATE INDEX fails, and work is rolled back.

Fragmentation of Indexes on Temporary Tables

You can fragment a unique index on a temporary table only if the underlying table uses an expression-based distribution scheme. That is, the CREATE Temporary TABLE statement that defines the temporary table must specify an explicit expression-based distribution scheme.

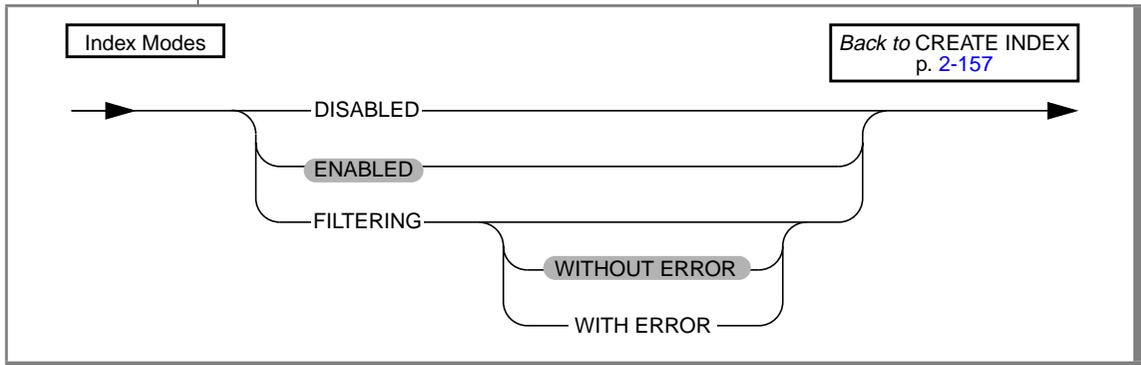
If you try to create a fragmented, unique index on a temporary table for which you did not specify a fragmentation strategy when you created it, the database server creates the index in the first dbspace that the **DBSPACETEMP** environment variable specifies.

For more information on the default storage characteristics of temporary tables, see [“Where Temporary Tables are Stored” on page 2-293](#).

For more information on the **DBSPACETEMP** environment variable, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

Index Modes

Use the index modes to control the behavior of the index during insert, delete, and update operations.



The following table explains the index modes

Mode	Purpose
DISABLED	The database server does not update the index after insert, delete, and update operations that modify the base table. The optimizer does not use the index during the execution of queries.
ENABLED	The database server updates the index after insert, delete, and update operations that modify the base table. The optimizer uses the index during query execution. If an insert or update operation causes a duplicate key value to be added to a unique index, the statement fails.

(1 of 2)

Mode	Purpose
FILTERING	<p>The database server updates a unique index after insert, delete, and update operations that modify the base table. (This option is not available with duplicate indexes.)</p> <p>The optimizer uses the index during query execution.</p> <p>If an insert or update operation causes a duplicate key value to be added to a unique index in filtering mode, the statement continues processing, but the bad row is written to the violations table associated with the base table. Diagnostic information about the unique-index violation is written to the diagnostics table associated with the base table.</p>

(2 of 2)

If you specify filtering for a unique index, you can also specify one of the following error options.

Error Option	Purpose
WITHOUT ERROR	When a unique-index violation occurs during an insert or update operation, no integrity-violation error is returned to the user.
WITH ERROR	When a unique-index violation occurs during an insert or update operation, an integrity-violation error is returned to the user.

Specifying Modes for Unique Indexes

You must observe the following rules when you specify modes for unique indexes in CREATE INDEX statements:

- You can set the mode of a unique index to enabled, disabled, or filtering.
- If you do not specify a mode, by default the index is enabled.
- For an index set to filtering mode, if you do not specify an error option, the default is WITHOUT ERROR.
- When you add a new unique index to an existing base table and specify the disabled mode for the index, your CREATE INDEX statement succeeds even if duplicate values in the indexed column would cause a unique-index violation.

- When you add a new unique index to an existing base table and specify the enabled or filtering mode for the index, your CREATE INDEX statement succeeds provided that no duplicate values exist in the indexed column that would cause a unique-index violation. However, if any duplicate values exist in the indexed column, your CREATE INDEX statement fails and returns an error.
- When you add a new unique index to an existing base table in the enabled or filtering mode, and duplicate values exist in the indexed column, erroneous rows in the base table are not filtered to the violations table. Thus, you cannot use a violations table to detect the erroneous rows in the base table.

Adding a Unique Index When Duplicate Values Exist in the Column

If you attempt to add a unique index in the enabled mode but receive an error message because duplicate values are in the indexed column, take the following steps to add the index successfully:

1. Add the index in the disabled mode. Issue the CREATE INDEX statement again, but this time specify the DISABLED keyword.
2. Start a violations and diagnostics table for the target table with the START VIOLATIONS TABLE statement.
3. Issue a SET Database Object Mode statement to switch the mode of the index to enabled. When you issue this statement, existing rows in the target table that violate the unique-index requirement are duplicated in the violations table. However, you receive an integrity-violation error message, and the index remains disabled.
4. Issue a SELECT statement on the violations table to retrieve the nonconforming rows that are duplicated from the target table. You might need to join the violations and diagnostics tables to get all the necessary information.
5. Take corrective action on the rows in the target table that violate the unique-index requirement.
6. After you fix all the nonconforming rows in the target table, issue the SET Database Object Mode statement again to switch the disabled index to the enabled mode. This time the index is enabled, and no integrity violation error message is returned because all rows in the target table now satisfy the new unique-index requirement.

Specifying Modes for Duplicate Indexes

You must observe the following rules when you specify modes for duplicate indexes in CREATE INDEX statements:

- You can set a duplicate index to enabled or disabled mode. Filtering mode is available only for unique indexes.
- If you do not specify the mode of a duplicate index, by default the index is enabled.

IDS

How the Database Server Treats Disabled Indexes

Whether a disabled index is a unique or duplicate index, the database server effectively ignores the index during data-manipulation operations.

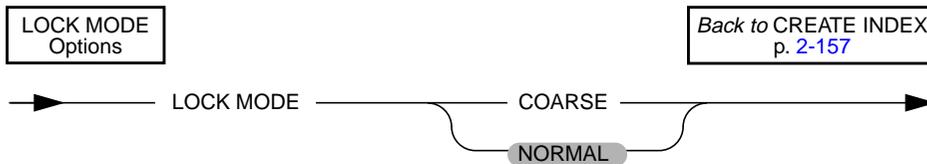
When an index is disabled, the database server stops updating it and stops using it during queries, but the catalog information about the disabled index is retained. So you cannot create a new index on a column or set of columns if a disabled index on that column or set of columns already exists.

Similarly, you cannot create an active (enabled) unique, foreign-key, or primary-key constraint on a column or set of columns if the indexes on which the active constraint depends are disabled.

XPS

LOCK MODE Options

Use the lock modes to specify the locking granularity of the index.



When you use the coarse-lock mode, index-level locks are acquired on the index instead of item-level or page-level locks. This mode reduces the number of lock calls on an index.

Use the coarse-lock mode when you know the index is not going to change, that is, when read-only operations are performed on the index.

If you do not specify a lock mode, the default is normal. That is, the database server places item-level or page-level locks on the index as necessary.

Generalized-Key Indexes

If you are using Extended Parallel Server, you can create generalized-key (GK) indexes. Keys in a conventional index consist of one or more columns of the table being indexed. A GK index stores information about the records in a table based on the results of a query. Only tables created with the `STATIC` type can be used in a GK index.

GK indexes provide a form of pre-computed index capability that allows faster query processing, especially in data-warehousing environments. The optimizer can use the GK index to increase performance.

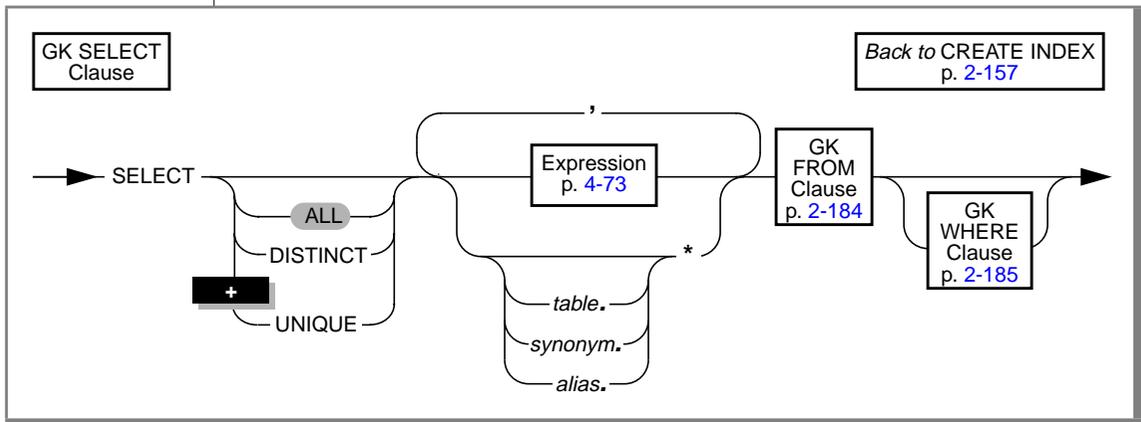
A GK index is *defined on* a table when that table is the one being indexed. A GK index *depends on* a table when the table appears in the `FROM` clause of the index. Before you create a GK index, keep the following issues in mind:

- All tables used in a GK index must be static tables. If you try to change the type of a table to non-static while a GK index depends on that table, the database server returns an error.
- Since any table involved in a GK index needs to be a static type, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `INSERT`, and `LOAD` operations may not be performed on such a table until the dependent GK index is dropped and the table type changes.

Key-only index scans are not available with GK indexes.

SELECT Clause for Generalized-Key Index

If you are using Extended Parallel Server, the options of the GK SELECT clause are a subset of the options of the SELECT statement. The syntax of the GK SELECT clause has the same format as the syntax for “SELECT” on [page 2-634](#).

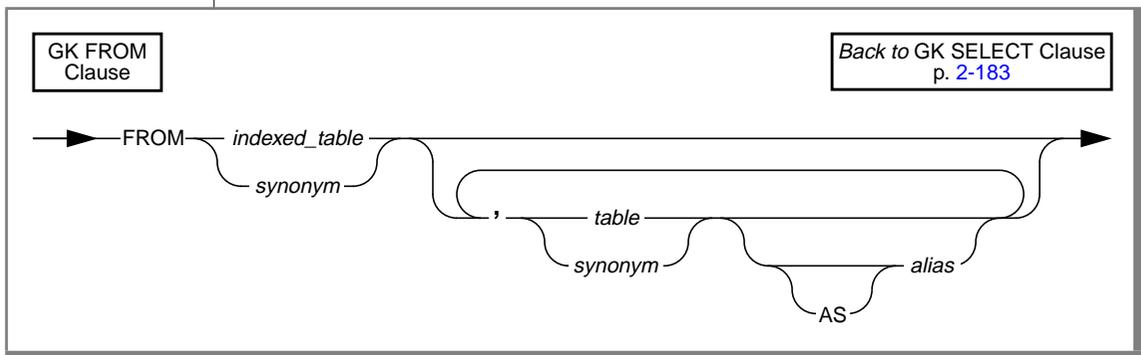


Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>alias</i>	Temporary name assigned to the table in the FROM clause	You cannot use an alias for a select clause unless you assign the alias to the table in the FROM clause. You cannot use an alias for the table on which the index is being built.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>synonym</i>	Name of the synonym from which you want to retrieve data	The synonym and the table to which the synonym points must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of the table from which you want to retrieve data	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

The following limitations apply to the expression in the GK SELECT clause:

- The expression cannot refer to any SPL routine.
- The expression cannot include the USER, TODAY, CURRENT, DBINFO built-in functions or any function that refers to a time or a time interval.

FROM Clause for Generalized-Key Index

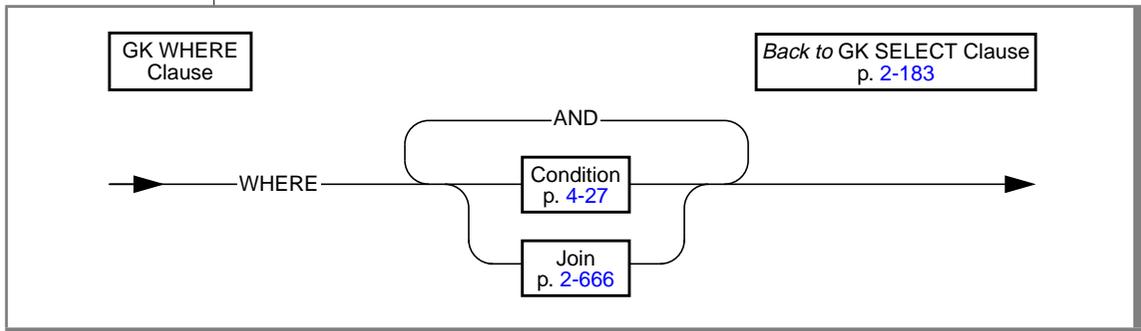


Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>alias</i>	Temporary name for a table	You cannot use an alias with <i>indexed_table</i> .	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>indexed_table</i>	Name of the table on which the index is being built	The FROM clause must include the indexed table.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>synonym</i>	Synonym for the table from which you want to retrieve data	The synonym and the table to which the synonym points must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of the table from which you want to retrieve data	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

All tables that appear in the FROM clause must be local static tables. That is, no views, non-static, or remote tables are allowed.

The tables that are mentioned in the FROM clause must be *transitively joined on key* to the indexed table. Table **A** is transitively joined on key to table **B** if **A** and **B** are joined with equal joins on the unique-key columns of **A**. For example, suppose tables **A**, **B**, and **C** each have **col1** as a primary key. In the following example, **B** is joined on key to **A** and **C** is joined on key to **B**. **C** is transitively joined on key to **A**.

```
CREATE GK INDEX gki
(SELECT A.col1, A.col2 FROM A, B, C
WHERE A.col1 = B.col1 AND B.col1 = C.col1)
```

WHERE Clause for Generalized-Key Index

The WHERE clause for a GK index has the following limitations:

- The clause cannot include USER, TODAY, CURRENT, DBINFO built-in functions or any functions that refer to time or a time interval.
- The clause cannot refer to any SPL routine.
- The clause cannot have any subqueries.
- The clause cannot use any aggregate function.
- The clause cannot have any IN, LIKE, or MATCH clauses.

Related Information

Related statements: [ALTER INDEX](#), [CREATE OPCLASS](#), [CREATE TABLE](#), [DROP INDEX](#), and [SET Database Object Mode](#)

For a discussion of the structure of indexes, see your [Administrator's Reference](#).

For a discussion on the different types of indexes and information about performance issues with indexes, see your [Performance Guide](#).

For a discussion of the GLS aspects of the CREATE INDEX statement, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#). ♦

For information about operator classes, refer to the CREATE OPCLASS statement and [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

For information about the indexes provided by DataBlade modules, refer to your DataBlade module user's guide.

GLS

+

IDS

CREATE OPAQUE TYPE

Use the CREATE OPAQUE TYPE statement to create an opaque data type.

Syntax

```
CREATE OPAQUE TYPE — type — ( — INTERNALLENGTH = length — ) — |
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>length</i>	Number of bytes needed by the database server to store a value of this data type	The number must match the positive integer reported when the C language <code>sizeof()</code> directive is applied to the type structure.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>type</i>	Name of the new opaque data type	The name you specify must follow the conventions of SQL identifiers. The <i>type</i> must be unique within the database. In an ANSI-compliant database, the combination <code>owner.type</code> must be unique within the database.	Identifier, p. 4-205 Data Type, p. 4-53

Usage

The CREATE OPAQUE TYPE statement registers a new opaque type in the database. Dynamic Server stores information on extended data types, including opaque types, in the **sysxdtypes** system catalog table.

Privileges on Opaque Types

To create an opaque type, you must have the Resource privilege on the database. When you create the opaque type, only you, the owner, have the Usage privilege on this type. Use the GRANT or REVOKE statements to grant or revoke the Usage privilege to other database users.

To find out what privileges exist on a particular type, check the **sysxdtypes** system catalog table for the owner name and the **sysxdtypeauth** system catalog table for additional type privileges that might have been granted. For more information on system catalog tables, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

DB

The DB-Access utility can also display privileges on opaque types. ♦

Naming an Opaque Type

The actual name of an opaque type is an SQL identifier. When you create an opaque type, the name must be unique within a database.

ANSI

When you create an opaque type in an ANSI-compliant database, *owner.type_name* must be unique within the database.

The owner name is case sensitive. If you do not put quotes around the owner name, the name of the opaque-type owner is stored in uppercase letters. ♦

INTERNALLENGTH Modifier

The INTERNALLENGTH modifier specifies the size of an opaque type. The way you specify the internal length defines whether the opaque type is fixed length or varying length.

Fixed-Length Opaque Types

A fixed-length opaque type has an internal structure that has a fixed size. To create a fixed-length opaque type, specify the size of the internal structure, in bytes, for the INTERNALLENGTH modifier. The following statement creates a fixed-length opaque type called **fixlen_typ**. The database server allocates 8 bytes for this type.

```
CREATE OPAQUE TYPE fixlen_typ(INTERNALLENGTH=8, CANNOTHASH)
```

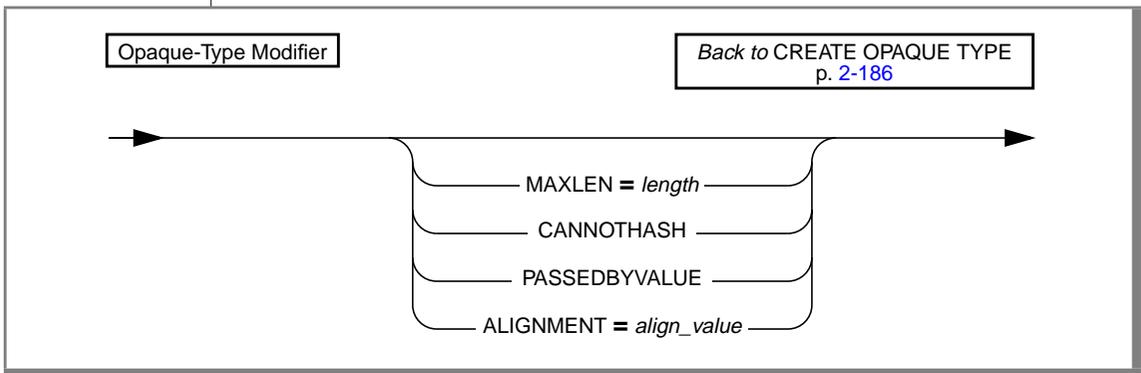
Varying-Length Opaque Types

A varying-length opaque type has an internal structure whose size might vary from one instance of the opaque type to another. For example, the internal structure of an opaque type might hold the actual value of a string up to a certain size but beyond this size it might use an LO-pointer to a CLOB to hold the value.

To create a varying-length opaque type, use the VARIABLE keyword for the INTERNALLENGTH modifier. The following statement creates a variable-length opaque type called **varlen_typ**:

```
CREATE OPAQUE TYPE varlen_typ(INTERNALLENGTH=VARIABLE,  
MAXLEN=1024)
```

Opaque-Type Modifier



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>align_value</i>	Byte boundary on which the database server aligns the opaque type when passing it to a user-defined routine	The alignment must be 1, 2, 4, or 8, depending on the C definition of the opaque type and the hardware and compiler used to build the object file for the type. If alignment is not specified, the system default is 4 bytes.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>length</i>	Maximum length in bytes to allocate for instances of the type in varying-length opaque types If maximum length is not specified for a variable-length type, the default is 2 kilobytes.	The length must be a positive integer less than or equal to 32 kilobytes. Do not specify for fixed-length types. Values that exceed this length return errors.	Literal Number, p. 4-237

Use modifiers to specify the following optional information:

- **MAXLEN** specifies the maximum length for varying-length opaque types.
- **CANNOTHASH** specifies that the database server cannot use a hash function on the opaque type.
You must provide an appropriate hash function for the database server to evaluate GROUP BY clauses on the type.
- **PASSEDBYVALUE** specifies that an opaque type of 4 bytes or fewer is passed by value.
By default, opaque types are passed to user-defined routines by reference.
- **ALIGNMENT** specifies the byte boundary on which the database server aligns the opaque type.

Defining an Opaque Type

To define the opaque type to the database server, you must provide the following information in the C language:

- A data structure that serves as the internal storage of the opaque type
The internal storage details of the data type are hidden, or opaque. Once you define a new opaque type, the database server can manipulate it without knowledge of the C structure in which it is stored.
- Support functions that allow the database server to interact with this internal structure
The support functions tell the database server how to interact with the internal structure of the type. These support functions must be written in the C programming language.
- Additional user-defined functions that can be called by other support functions or by end users to operate on the opaque type (optional)

Possible support functions include operator functions and cast functions. Before you can use these functions in SQL statements, they must be registered with the appropriate `DEFINE CAST`, `CREATE PROCEDURE`, or `CREATE FUNCTION` statement.

The following table summarizes the support functions for an opaque type.

Function	Purpose	Invoked
input	Converts the opaque type from its external LVARCHAR representation to its internal representation	When a client application sends a character representation of the opaque type in an <code>INSERT</code> , <code>UPDATE</code> , or <code>LOAD</code> statement
output	Converts the opaque type from its internal representation to its external LVARCHAR representation	When the database server sends a character representation of the opaque type as a result of a <code>SELECT</code> or <code>FETCH</code> statement
receive	Converts the opaque type from its internal representation on the client computer to its internal representation on the server computer Provides platform-independent results regardless of differences between client and server computer types.	When a client application sends an internal representation of the opaque type in an <code>INSERT</code> , <code>UPDATE</code> , or <code>LOAD</code> statement

(1 of 2)

Function	Purpose	Invoked
send	<p>Converts the opaque type from its internal representation on the server computer to its internal representation on the client computer</p> <p>Provides platform-independent results regardless of differences between client and database server computer types.</p>	When the database server sends an internal representation of the opaque type as a result of a SELECT or FETCH statement
import	Performs any tasks need to convert from the external (character) representation of an opaque type to the internal representation for a bulk copy	When DB-Access (LOAD) or the High Performance Loader initiates a bulk copy from a text file to a database
export	Performs any tasks need to convert from the internal representation of an opaque type to the external (character) representation for a bulk copy	When DB-Access (UNLOAD) or the High Performance Loader initiates a bulk copy from a database to a text file
importbinary	Performs any tasks need to convert from the internal representation of an opaque type on the client computer to the internal representation on the server computer for a bulk copy	When DB-Access (LOAD) or the High Performance Loader initiates a bulk copy from a binary file to a database
exportbinary	Performs any tasks need to convert from the internal representation of an opaque type on the server computer to the internal representation on the client computer for a bulk copy	When DB-Access (UNLOAD) or the High Performance Loader initiates a bulk copy from a database to a binary file
assign()	<p>Performs any processing required before storing the opaque type to disk</p> <p>This support function must be named assign().</p>	When the database server executes an INSERT, UPDATE, and LOAD statement, before it stores the opaque type to disk
destroy()	<p>Performs any processing necessary before removing a row that contains the opaque type</p> <p>This support function must be named destroy().</p>	When the database server executes the DELETE and DROP TABLE statements, before it removes the opaque type from disk
lohandles()	Returns a list of the LO-pointer structures (pointers to smart large objects) in an opaque type	Whenever the database server must search opaque types for references to smart large objects: when the oncheck utility runs, when an archive is performed
compare()	Compares two values of the opaque type and returns an integer value to indicate whether the first value is less than, equal to, or greater than the second value	When the database server encounters an ORDER BY, UNIQUE, DISTINCT, or UNION clause in a SELECT statement, or when it executes the CREATE INDEX statement to create a B-tree index

(2 of 2)

Once you write the necessary support functions for the opaque type, use the CREATE FUNCTION statement to register these support functions in the same database as the opaque type. Certain support functions convert other data types to or from the new opaque type. After you create and register these support functions, use the CREATE CAST statement to associate each function with a particular cast. The cast must be registered in the same database as the support function.

When you have written the necessary source code to define the opaque type, you then use the CREATE OPAQUE TYPE statement to register the opaque type in the database.

Related Information

Related statements: [CREATE CAST](#), [CREATE DISTINCT TYPE](#), [CREATE FUNCTION](#), [CREATE ROW TYPE](#), [CREATE TABLE](#), and [DROP TYPE](#)

For a summary of an opaque type, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

For information on how to define an opaque type, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

For information about the GLS aspects of the CREATE OPAQUE TYPE statement, refer to the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

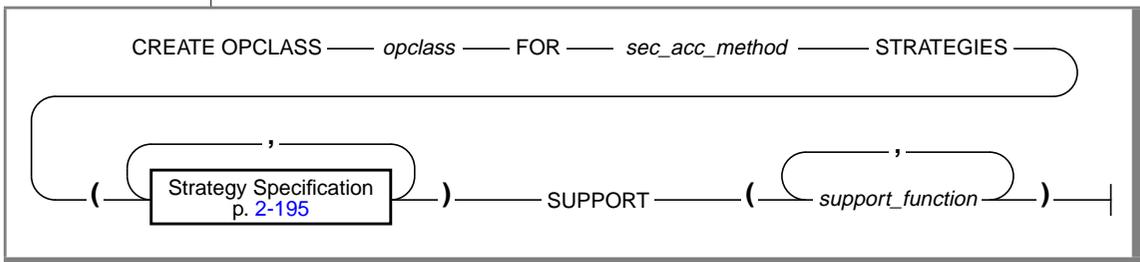
+

IDS

CREATE OPCLASS

Use the CREATE OPCLASS statement to create an *operator class* for a *secondary access method*.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>opclass</i>	Name of the operator class being created	The operator class name must be unique within the database.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>sec_acc_method</i>	Name of the secondary access method with which the specified operator class is being associated	The secondary access method must already exist and must be registered in the sysams system catalog table. The database server provides the B-tree and R-tree secondary access method.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>support_function</i>	Name of a support function required by the specified secondary access method	The support functions must be listed in the order expected by the specified access method.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Usage

An *operator class* is the set of operators that Dynamic Server associates with the specified secondary access method for query optimization and building the index. A secondary access method (sometimes referred to as an *index access method*) is a set of database server functions that build, access, and manipulate an index structure such as a B-tree, R-tree, or an index structure that a DataBlade module provides.

You define a new operator class when you want:

- an index to use a different order for the data than the sequence provided by the default operator class.
- a set of operators that is different from any existing operator classes that are associated with a particular secondary access method.

You must have the Resource privilege or be the DBA to create an operator class. The actual name of an operator class is an SQL identifier. When you create an operator class, *opclass name* must be unique within a database.

When you create an operator class in an ANSI-compliant database, *owner.opclass_name* must be unique within the database.

The owner name is case sensitive. If you do not put quotes around the owner name, the name of the operator-class owner is stored in uppercase letters. ♦

The following CREATE OPCLASS statement creates a new operator class called **abs_btree_ops** for the **btree** secondary access method:

```
CREATE OPCLASS abs_btree_ops FOR btree
  STRATEGIES (abs_lt, abs_lte, abs_eq, abs_gte,
             abs_gt)
  SUPPORT (abs_cmp)
```

For more information on the **btree** secondary access method, see [“Default Operator Classes” on page 2-197](#).

An operator class has two kinds of operator-class functions:

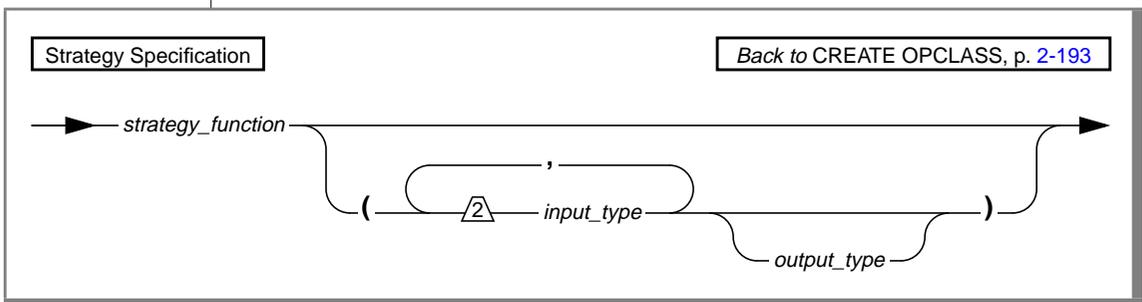
- **Strategy functions**
Specify strategy functions of an operator class in the STRATEGY clause of the CREATE OPCLASS statement. In the preceding CREATE OPCLASS statement, the **abs_btree_ops** operator class has five strategy functions.
- **Support functions**
Specify support functions of an operator class in the SUPPORT clause of the CREATE OPCLASS statement. In the preceding CREATE OPCLASS statement, the **abs_btree_ops** operator class has one support function.

STRATEGIES Clause

Strategy functions are functions that end users can invoke within an SQL statement to operate on a data type. The query optimizer uses the strategy functions to determine if a particular index can be used to process a query. If an index exists on a column or user-defined function in a query, and the qualifying operator in the query matches one of the strategy functions in the Strategy Specification list, the optimizer considers using the index for the query. For more information on query plans, see your [Performance Guide](#).

When you create a new operator class, you specify the strategy functions for the secondary access method in the STRATEGIES clause. The Strategy Specification lists the name of each strategy function. List these functions in the order that the secondary access method expects. For the specific order of strategy operators for the default operator classes for a B-tree index and an R-tree index, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

Strategy Specification



CREATE OPCLASS

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>input_type</i>	Data type of the input argument for the strategy function	This is the data type for which you want to use a specific secondary access method. A strategy function takes two input arguments and one optional output argument.	Data Type, p. 4-53
<i>output_type</i>	Data type of the optional output argument for the strategy function	This is an optional output argument for side effect indexes.	Data Type, p. 4-53
<i>strategy_function</i>	Name of a strategy function to associate with the specified operator class	The operators must be listed in the order expected by the specified secondary access method.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

The *strategy_function* is an external function. The CREATE OPCLASS statement does not verify that a user-defined function of the name you specify exists. However, for the secondary access method to use the strategy function, the external function must be:

- compiled in a shared library.
- registered in the database with the CREATE FUNCTION statement.

Optionally, you can specify the signature of a strategy function in addition to its name. A strategy function requires two input parameters and an optional output parameter. To specify the function signature, you specify:

- an *input data type* for each of the two input parameters of the strategy function, in the order that the strategy function uses them.
- optionally, one *output data type* for an output parameter of the strategy function.

You can specify user-defined data types as well as built-in types. If you do not specify the function signature, the database server assumes that each strategy function takes two arguments of the same data type and returns a boolean value.

Side-Effect Indexes

Side-effect data is additional data that a strategy function returns when Dynamic Server executes a query containing the strategy function. For example, an image DataBlade module might use a *fuzzy* index to search image data. The index ranks the images according to how closely they match the search criteria. The database server returns the rank value as the side-effect data, along with the qualifying images.

SUPPORT Clause

Support functions are functions that the secondary access method uses internally to build and search the index. You specify the support functions for the secondary access method in the SUPPORT clause of the CREATE OPCLASS statement.

You must list the names of the support functions in the order that the secondary access method expects. For the specific order of support operators for the default operator classes for a B-tree index and an R-tree index, refer to [“Default Operator Classes” on page 2-197](#).

The support function is an external function. The CREATE OPCLASS statement does not verify that a named support function exists. However, for the secondary access method to use a support function, the support function must be:

- compiled in a shared library.
- registered in the database with the CREATE FUNCTION statement.

Default Operator Classes

Each secondary access method has a default operator class that is associated with it. By default, the CREATE INDEX statement creates associates the default operator class with an index. For example, the following CREATE INDEX statement creates a B-tree index on the **zipcode** column and automatically associates the default B-tree operator class with this column:

```
CREATE INDEX zip_ix ON customer(zipcode)
```

For each of the secondary access methods that Dynamic Server provides, it provides a *default operator class*, as follows:

- The default B-tree operator class is a built-in operator class.
The database server implements the operator-class functions for this operator class and registers it as **btree_ops** in the system catalog tables of a database.
- The default R-tree operator class is a registered operator class.
The database server registers this operator class as **rtree_ops** in the system catalog tables of a database. The database server does *not* implement the operator-class functions for the default R-tree operator class.



Important: To use an R-tree index, you must install a spatial DataBlade module such as the Geodetic DataBlade module or any other third-party DataBlade module that implements the R-tree index. These DataBlade modules implement the R-tree operator-class functions.

For information on the operator-class functions of these operator classes, refer to the chapter on operator classes in [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

DataBlade modules can provide other types of secondary access methods. If a DataBlade module provides a secondary access method, it might also provide a default operator class. For more information, refer to your DataBlade module user guide.

Related Information

Related statements: [CREATE FUNCTION](#), [CREATE INDEX](#), and [DROP OPCLASS](#)

For information on how to create and extend an operator class, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

For information about the R-tree index, see the [Informix R-Tree Index User's Guide](#).

For information about the GLS aspects of the CREATE OPCLASS statement, refer to the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

+



XPS

IDS

CREATE PROCEDURE

Use the CREATE PROCEDURE statement to create a user-defined procedure.

Tip: If you are trying to create a procedure from text that is in a separate file, use the CREATE PROCEDURE FROM statement.

Using CREATE PROCEDURE Versus CREATE FUNCTION

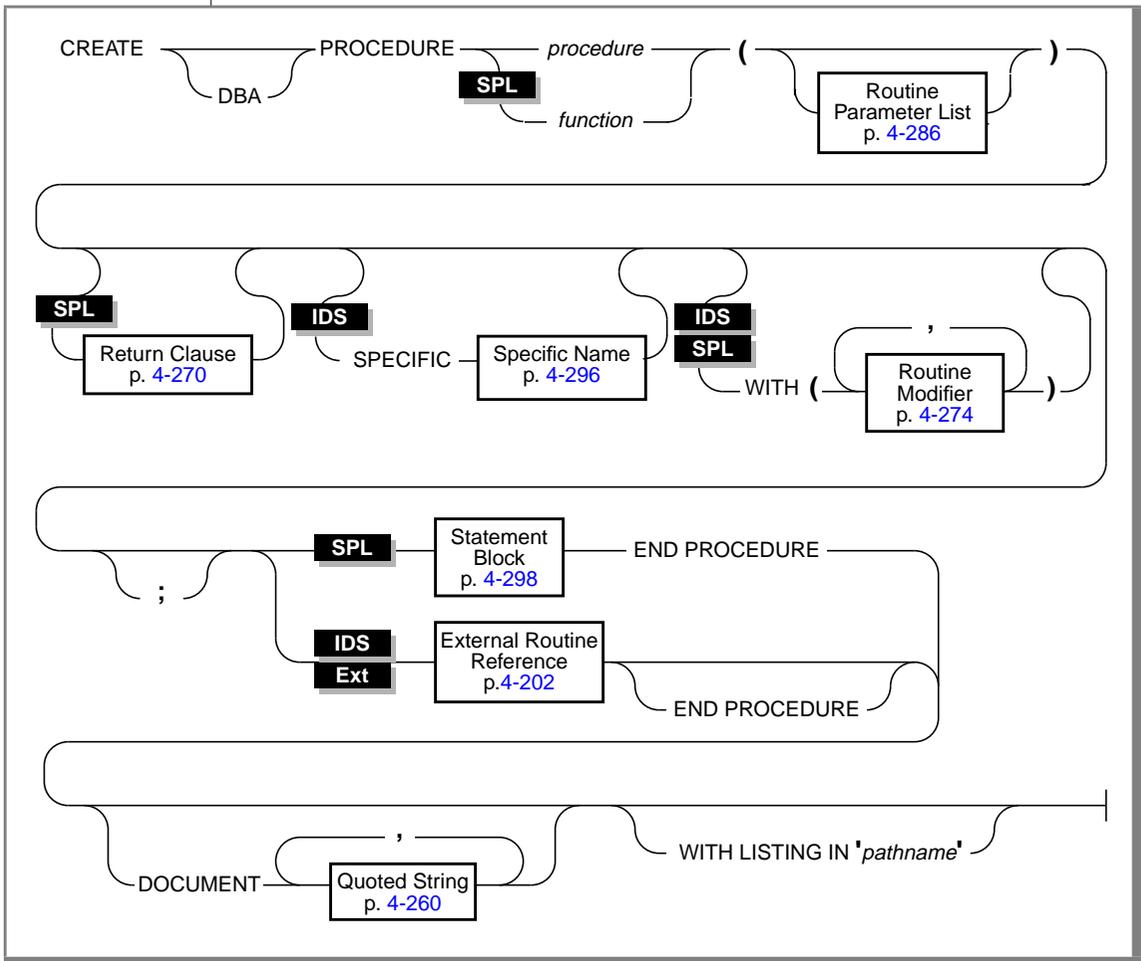
In Extended Parallel Server, in addition to using this statement to create an SPL procedure, you must use the CREATE PROCEDURE statement to write and register an SPL routine that returns one or more values (that is, an SPL function). Extended Parallel Server does not support the CREATE FUNCTION statement. ♦

In Dynamic Server, although you can use the CREATE PROCEDURE statement to write and register an SPL routine that returns one or more values (that is, an SPL function), Informix recommends that you use the CREATE FUNCTION statement. To register an external function, you must use the CREATE FUNCTION statement.

Use the CREATE PROCEDURE statement to write and register an SPL procedure or to register an external procedure. ♦

For information on how terms such as user-defined procedures and user-defined functions are used in this manual, see [“Relationship Between Routines, Functions and Procedures”](#) on page 2-201.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>function</i>	Name of the SPL function to create	(XPS) The name must be unique among all SPL routines in the database. (IDS) See “Naming a Procedure in Dynamic Server” on page 2-203 .	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>pathname</i>	Pathname to a file in which compile-time warnings are stored	The specified pathname must exist on the computer where the database resides.	The pathname and filename must conform to the conventions of your operating system.
<i>procedure</i>	Name of the user-defined procedure to create	(XPS) The name must be unique among all SPL routines in the database. (IDS) See “Naming a Procedure in Dynamic Server” on page 2-203 .	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

The entire length of a CREATE PROCEDURE statement must be less than 64 kilobytes. This length is the literal length of the CREATE PROCEDURE statement, including blank space and tabs.

E/C

In ESQ/C, you can use a CREATE PROCEDURE statement only within a PREPARE statement. If you want to create a procedure for which the text is known at compile time, you must use a CREATE PROCEDURE FROM statement. ♦

Relationship Between Routines, Functions and Procedures

A *procedure* is a routine that can accept arguments but does not return any values. A *function* is a routine that can accept arguments and returns one or more values.

User-defined routine (UDR) is a generic term that includes both user-defined procedures and user-defined functions.

You can write a UDR in SPL (*SPL routine*) or in an external language (*external routine*) that the database server supports. Consequently, anywhere the term UDR appears in the manual, its significance applies to both SPL routines and external routines. Likewise, the term user-defined procedure applies to SPL procedures and external procedures. Similarly, the term user-defined function applies to SPL functions and external functions.

SPL

In earlier Informix products, the term *stored procedure* was used for both SPL procedures and SPL functions. In this manual, the term *SPL routine* replaces the term *stored procedure*. When it is necessary to distinguish between an SPL function and an SPL procedure, the manual does so. ♦

IDS

The term *external routine* applies to an external procedure or an external function. When it is necessary to distinguish between an external function and an external procedure, the manual does so. ♦

XPS

Extended Parallel Server does not support external routines. However, the term user-defined routine (UDR) encompasses both the terms SPL routine and external routine. Therefore, wherever the term UDR appears it is applicable to SPL routines. ♦

Privileges Necessary for Using CREATE PROCEDURE

You must have the Resource privilege on a database to create a user-defined procedure within that database.

Ext

Before you can create an external procedure, you must also have the Usage privilege on the language in which you will write the procedure. For more information, see [“GRANT” on page 2-500](#). ♦

SPL

By default, the Usage privilege on SPL is granted to PUBLIC. You must also have at least the Resource privilege on a database to create an SPL procedure within that database. ♦

DBA Keyword and Privileges on the Created Procedure

The level of privilege necessary to execute a UDR depends on whether the UDR is created with the DBA keyword.

If you create a UDR with the DBA keyword, it is known as a DBA-privileged UDR. You need the DBA privilege to create or execute a DBA-privileged UDR.

ANSI

If you do not use the DBA keyword, the UDR is known as an owner-privileged UDR.

If you create an owner-privileged UDR in an ANSI-compliant database, anyone can execute the UDR. ♦

If you create an owner-privileged UDR in a database that is not ANSI compliant, the **NODEFDAC** environment variable prevents privileges on that UDR from being granted to PUBLIC. If this environment variable is set, the owner of a UDR must grant the Execute privilege for that UDR to other users.

XPS

Naming a Procedure in Extended Parallel Server

In Extended Parallel Server, you must specify a unique name for the SPL routine that you create. The name must be unique among all SPL routines in the database.

IDS

Naming a Procedure in Dynamic Server

Because Dynamic Server offers *routine overloading*, you can define more than one user-defined routine (UDR) with the same name, but different parameter lists. You might want to overload UDRs in the following situations:

- You create a UDR with the same name as a built-in routine (such as **equal()**) to process a new user-defined data type.
- You create *type hierarchies*, in which subtypes inherit data representation and UDRs from supertypes.
- You create *distinct types*, which are data types that have the same internal storage representation as an existing data type, but have different names and cannot be compared to the source type without casting. Distinct types inherit UDRs from their source types.

For a brief description of the routine signature that uniquely identifies each UDR, see [“Routine Overloading and Naming UDRs with a Routine Signature”](#) on page 4-52.

Using the SPECIFIC Clause to Specify a Specific Name

You can specify a specific name for a user-defined procedure. A specific name is a name that is unique in the database. A specific name is useful when you are overloading a procedure.

DOCUMENT Clause

The quoted string in the DOCUMENT clause provides a synopsis and description of a UDR. The string is stored in the **sysprocbody** system catalog table and is intended for the user of the UDR.

Anyone with access to the database can query the **sysprocbody** system catalog table to obtain a description of one or all the UDRs stored in the database.

For example, to find the description of the SPL procedure **raise_prices**, shown in [“SPL Procedures” on page 2-205](#), enter a query such as the following example:

```
SELECT data FROM sysprocbody b, sysprocedures p
WHERE b.procid = p.procid
      --join between the two catalog tables
AND p.procname = 'raise_prices'
      -- look for procedure named raise_prices
AND b.datakey = 'D';-- want user document
```

The preceding query returns the following text:

```
USAGE: EXECUTE PROCEDURE raise_prices( xxx )
xxx = percentage from 1 - 100
```

A UDR or application program can query the system catalog tables to fetch the DOCUMENT clause and display it for a user.

Ext

You can use a DOCUMENT clause at the end of the CREATE PROCEDURE statement, whether or not you use the END PROCEDURE keywords. ♦

Using the WITH LISTING IN Option

The WITH LISTING IN clause specifies a filename where compile time warnings are sent. After you compile a UDR, this file holds one or more warning messages.

If you do not use the WITH LISTING IN clause, the compiler does not generate a list of warnings.

This listing file is created on the computer where the database resides.

UNIX

If you specify a filename but not a directory, this listing file is created in your home directory on the computer where the database resides. If you do not have a home directory on this computer, the file is created in the root directory (the directory named “/”). ♦

Windows

If you specify a filename but not a directory, this listing file is created in your current working directory if the database is on the local computer. Otherwise, the default directory is %INFORMIXDIR%\bin. ♦

SPL

SPL Procedures

SPL procedures are UDRs written in Stored Procedure Language (SPL) that do not return a value.

To write and register an SPL procedure, use a CREATE PROCEDURE statement. Embed appropriate SQL and SPL statements between the CREATE PROCEDURE and END PROCEDURE keywords. You can also follow the procedure with the DOCUMENT and WITH FILE IN options.

SPL procedures are parsed, optimized (as far as possible), and stored in the system catalog tables in executable format. The body of an SPL procedure is stored in the **sysprocbody** system catalog table. Other information about the procedure is stored in other system catalog tables, including **sysprocedures**, **sysprocplan**, and **sysprocauth**.

If the statement block portion of the CREATE PROCEDURE statement is empty, no operation takes place when you call the procedure. You might use such a procedure in the development stage when you want to establish the existence of a procedure but have not yet coded it.

If you specify an optional clause after the parameter list, you must place a semicolon after the clause that immediately precedes the Statement Block.

Example

The following example creates an SPL procedure:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE raise_prices ( per_cent INT )
    UPDATE stock SET unit_price =
        unit_price + (unit_price * (per_cent/100) );
END PROCEDURE
DOCUMENT "USAGE: EXECUTE PROCEDURE raise_prices( xxx )",
"xxx = percentage from 1 - 100 "
WITH LISTING IN '/tmp/warn_file'
```

IDS

Ext

External Procedures

External procedures are procedures you write in an external language that the database server supports.

To create a C user-defined procedure, follow these steps:

1. Write a C function that does not return a value.
2. Compile the C function and store the compiled code in a shared library (the shared-object file for C).
3. Register the C function in the database server with the CREATE PROCEDURE statement.

To create a user-defined procedure written in Java, follow these steps:

1. Write a Java static method, which can use the JDBC functions to interact with the database server.
2. Compile the Java source file and create a jar file (the shared-object file for Java).
3. Execute the **install_jar()** procedure with the EXECUTE PROCEDURE statement to install the jar file in the current database.
4. If the UDR uses user-defined types, create a mapping between SQL data types and Java classes.

Use the **setUDTextName()** procedure that is explained in [“EXECUTE PROCEDURE” on page 2-444](#).

5. Register the UDR with the CREATE PROCEDURE statement.

Rather than storing the body of an external routine directly in the database, the database server stores only the pathname of the shared-object file that contains the compiled version of the routine. When the database server executes an external routine, the database server invokes the external object code.

The database server stores information about an external function in several system catalog tables, including **sysprocbody** and **sysprocauth**. For more information on these system catalog tables, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

If an external routine returns a value, you must register it with the CREATE FUNCTION statement.

C

Example of Registering a C User-Defined Procedure

The following example registers a C user-defined procedure named **check_owner()** in the database. This procedure takes one argument of the type **lvarchar**. The external routine reference specifies the path to the C shared library where the procedure object code is stored. This library contains a C function **unix_owner()**, which is invoked during execution of the **check_owner()** procedure.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE check_owner ( owner lvarchar )
EXTERNAL NAME "/usr/lib/ext_lib/genlib.so(unix_owner)"
LANGUAGE C
END PROCEDURE
```

Java

Example of Registering a User-Defined Procedure Written in Java

The following example registers a user-defined procedure named **showusers()**:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE showusers()
WITH (CLASS = "jvp")
EXTERNAL NAME 'admin_jar:admin.showusers'
LANGUAGE JAVA
```

The EXTERNAL NAME clause specifies that the Java implementation of the **showusers()** procedure is a method called **showusers()**, which resides in the **admin** Java class that resides in the **admin_jar** jar file.

Ownership of Created Database Objects

The user who creates an owner-privileged UDR owns any database objects that are created by the UDR when the UDR is executed, unless another owner is specified for the created database object. In other words, the UDR owner, not the user who executes the UDR, is the owner of any database objects created by the UDR unless another owner is specified in the statement that creates the database object.

However, in the case of a DBA-privileged UDR, the user who executes the UDR, not the UDR owner, owns any database objects created by the UDR unless another owner is specified for the database object within the UDR.

For examples of these situations, see the similar section, “[Ownership of Created Database Objects](#)” on page 2-153, in the CREATE FUNCTION statement.

Related Information

Related statements: [ALTER FUNCTION](#), [ALTER PROCEDURE](#), [ALTER ROUTINE](#), [CREATE FUNCTION](#), [CREATE FUNCTION FROM](#), [CREATE PROCEDURE FROM](#), [DROP FUNCTION](#), [DROP PROCEDURE](#), [DROP ROUTINE](#), [EXECUTE FUNCTION](#), [EXECUTE PROCEDURE](#), [GRANT](#), [EXECUTE PROCEDURE](#), [PREPARE](#), [REVOKE](#), and [UPDATE STATISTICS](#)

For a discussion of how to create and use SPL routines, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For a discussion of how to create and use external routines, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

For information about how to create C UDRs, see the [DataBlade API Programmer's Manual](#).

For more information on the NODEFDAC environment variable and the relative system catalog tables ([sysprocedures](#), [sysprocplan](#), [sysprocbody](#) and [sysprocauth](#)), see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

Usage

You cannot create a user-defined procedure directly in an ESQL/C program. That is, the program cannot contain the CREATE PROCEDURE statement. The following steps describe how you can use a user-defined procedure in an ESQL/C program:

1. Create a source file with the CREATE PROCEDURE statement.
2. Use the CREATE PROCEDURE FROM statement to send the contents of this source file to the database server for execution.

The file that you specify in the *file* parameter can contain only one CREATE PROCEDURE statement.

For example, suppose that the following CREATE PROCEDURE statement is in a separate file, called **raise_pr.sql**:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE raise_prices( per_cent int )
  UPDATE stock -- increase by percentage;
  SET unit_price = unit_price +
    ( unit_price * (per_cent / 100) );
END PROCEDURE;
```

In the ESQL/C program, you can access the **raise_prices()** SPL procedure with the following CREATE PROCEDURE FROM statement:

```
EXEC SQL create procedure from 'raise_pr.sql';
```

If you are not sure whether the UDR in the file is a user-defined function or a user-defined procedure, use the CREATE ROUTINE FROM statement. ♦

Default Directory That Holds the File

The filename that you provide is relative.

On UNIX, if you specify a simple filename instead of a full pathname in the *file* parameter, the client application looks for the file in your home directory on the computer where the database resides. If you do not have a home directory on this computer, the default directory is the root directory. ♦

IDS

UNIX

WIN NT



On Windows NT, if you specify a filename but not a directory in the *file* parameter, the client application looks for the file in your current working directory if the database is on the local computer. Otherwise, the default directory is %INFORMIXDIR%\bin. ♦

Important: *The ESQL/C preprocessor does not process the contents of the file that you specify. It just sends the contents to the database server for execution. Therefore, there is no syntactic check that the file that you specify in CREATE PROCEDURE FROM actually contains a CREATE PROCEDURE statement. However, to improve readability of the code, Informix recommends that you match these two statements.*

Related Information

Related statements: [CREATE PROCEDURE](#), [CREATE FUNCTION FROM](#), and [CREATE ROUTINE FROM](#)

+

IDS

CREATE ROLE

Use the CREATE ROLE statement to create a new role.

Syntax

```
CREATE ROLE role | 'role'
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>role</i>	Name assigned to a role created by the DBA	<p>In Dynamic Server, the maximum number of bytes in <i>role</i> is 32. In Extended Parallel Server, the maximum number of bytes in <i>role</i> is 8.</p> <p>A role name cannot be a user name known to the database server or the operating system of the database server. A role name cannot be in the username column of the sysusers system catalog table or in the grantor or grantee columns of the sysabauth, syscolauth, sysprocauth, sysfragauth, and sysroleauth system catalog tables.</p> <p>When a role name is enclosed in quotation marks, the role name is case sensitive.</p>	Identifier, p. 4-205

Usage

The database administrator (DBA) uses the CREATE ROLE statement to create a new role. A role can be considered as a classification, with privileges on database objects granted to the role. The DBA can assign the privileges of a related work task, such as **engineer**, to a role and then grant that role to users, instead of granting the same set of privileges to every user.

After a role is created, the DBA can use the GRANT statement to grant the role to users or to other roles. When a role is granted to a user, the user must use the SET ROLE statement to enable the role. Only then can the user use the privileges of the role.

The CREATE ROLE statement, when used with the GRANT and SET ROLE statements, allows a DBA to create one set of privileges for a role and then grant the role to many users, instead of granting the same set of privileges to many users.

A role exists until either the DBA or a user to whom the role was granted with the WITH GRANT OPTION uses the DROP ROLE statement to drop the role.

To create the role **engineer**, enter the following statement:

```
CREATE ROLE engineer
```

Related Information

Related statements: [DROP ROLE](#), [GRANT](#), [REVOKE](#), and [SET ROLE](#)

For a discussion of how to use roles, see the [Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation](#).

Usage

An Informix ESQL/C program cannot directly define a UDR. That is, it cannot contain the CREATE FUNCTION or CREATE PROCEDURE statement. The following steps describe how you can use a UDR in an ESQL/C program:

1. Create a source file with the CREATE FUNCTION or CREATE PROCEDURE statement.
2. Use the CREATE ROUTINE FROM statement to send the contents of this source file to the database server for execution.

The file that you specify in the *file* parameter can contain only one CREATE FUNCTION or CREATE PROCEDURE statement.

The filename that you provide is relative. If you provide a simple filename, the client application looks for the file in the current directory.

If you do not know at compile time whether the UDR in the file is a function or a procedure, use the CREATE ROUTINE FROM statement in the ESQL/C program. However, if you do know if the UDR is a function or procedure, Informix recommends that you use the matching statement to access the source file:

- To access user-defined functions, use CREATE FUNCTION FROM
- To access user-defined procedures, use CREATE PROCEDURE FROM

Use of the matching statements improves the readability of the code.

Related Information

Related statements: [CREATE FUNCTION](#), [CREATE FUNCTION FROM](#), [CREATE PROCEDURE](#), and [CREATE PROCEDURE FROM](#)

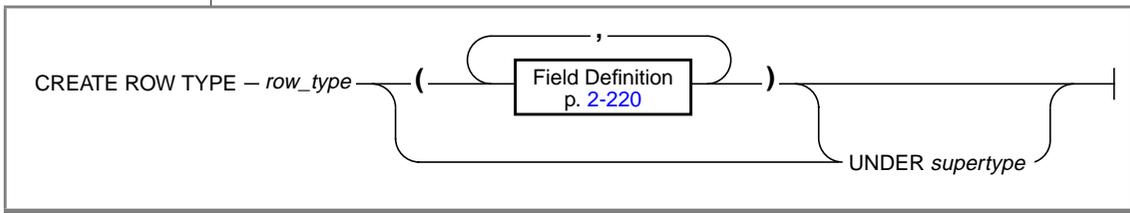
+

IDS

CREATE ROW TYPE

Use the CREATE ROW TYPE statement to create a named-row type.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>row_type</i>	Name of the named-row type that you create If you create a named-row type under an existing supertype, this is the name of the subtype.	The name you specify for the named-row type must follow the conventions for SQL identifiers. In an ANSI-compliant database, the combination owner. type must be unique within the database. In a database that is not ANSI compliant, the type name must be unique within the database.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>supertype</i>	Name of the supertype in an inheritance hierarchy	The supertype must already exist as a named-row type.	Data type, p. 4-53

Usage

The CREATE ROW TYPE statement creates a named-row type. You can assign a named-row type to a table or view to create a typed table or typed view. You can also assign a named-row type to a column. Although you can assign a row type to a table to define the structure of the table, row types are not the same as table rows. Table rows consist of one or more columns; row types consist of one or more fields, which are defined using the Field Definition syntax.

You can use a named-row type anywhere you can use any other data type. Named-row types are strongly typed. Any two named-row types are not considered equivalent even if they are structurally equivalent. Row types without names are called *unnamed-row types*. Any two unnamed-row types are considered equivalent if they are structurally equivalent. For more information on unnamed-row types, see [“Unnamed Row Types” on page 4-68](#).

Privileges on Named-Row Types

The following table indicates which privileges you must have to create a row type.

Task	Privileges Required
Create a named-row type	Resource privilege on the database
Create a named-row type as a subtype under a supertype	Under privilege on the supertype, as well as the Resource privilege

To find out what privileges exist on a particular type, check the **sysxdtypes** system catalog table for the owner name and the **sysxdtpeauth** system catalog table for additional type privileges that might have been granted. For more information on system catalog tables, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

For information about the RESOURCE, UNDER, and ALL privileges, see [GRANT](#).

Privileges on a typed table (a table that is assigned a named-row type) are the same as privileges on any table. For more information, see [“Table-Level Privileges” on page 2-505](#).

To find out what privileges you have on a particular table, check the **sysstabauth** system catalog table.

Privileges on Named -ow Type Columns

Privileges on named-row type columns are the same as privileges on any column. For more information, see [“Table-Level Privileges” on page 2-505](#).

To find out what privileges you have on a particular column, check the **syscolauth** system catalog table. This table is described in the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

Inheritance and Named-Row Types

A named-row type can belong to an inheritance hierarchy, as either a subtype or a supertype. You use the **UNDER** clause in the **CREATE ROW TYPE** statement to create a named-row type as a subtype. The supertype must also be a named-row type.

When you create a named-row type as a subtype, the subtype inherits all fields of the supertype. In addition, you can add new fields to the subtype that you create. The new fields are specific to the subtype alone.

You cannot substitute a row type in an inheritance hierarchy for its supertype or its subtype. For example, suppose you define a type hierarchy in which **person_t** is the supertype and **employee_t** is the subtype. If a column is of type **person_t**, the column can only contain **person_t** data. It cannot contain **employee_t** data. Likewise, if a column is of type **employee_t**, the column can only contain **employee_t** data. It cannot contain **person_t** data.

Creating a Subtype

In most cases, you add new fields when you create a named-row type as a subtype of another named-row type (supertype). To create the fields of a named-row type, you use the field definition clause (see [“Field Definition” on page 2-220](#)).

When you create a subtype, you must use the **UNDER** keyword to associate the supertype with the named-row type that you want to create. The following statement creates the **employee_t** type under the **person_t** type:

```
CREATE ROW TYPE employee_t
(salary NUMERIC(10,2), bonus NUMERIC(10,2))
UNDER person_t;
```

The **employee_t** type inherits all the fields of **person_t** and has two additional fields: **salary** and **bonus**. However, the **person_t** type is not altered.

Type Hierarchies

When you create a subtype, you create a type hierarchy. In a type hierarchy, each subtype that you create inherits its properties from a single supertype. If you create a named-row type **customer_t** under **person_t**, **customer_t** inherits all the fields of **person_t**. If you create another named-row type, **salesrep_t** under **customer_t**, **salesrep_t** inherits all the fields of **customer_t**. More specifically, **salesrep_t** inherits all the fields that **customer_t** inherited from **person_t** as well as all the fields defined specifically for **customer_t**. For a full discussion of type inheritance, refer to the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

Procedure for Creating a Subtype

Before you create a named-row type as a subtype in an inheritance hierarchy, check the following information:

- Verify that you are authorized to create new data types.
You must have the Resource privilege on the database. You can find this information in the **sysusers** system catalog table.
- Verify that the supertype exists.
You can find this information in the **sysxdtypes** system catalog table.
- Verify that you are authorized to create subtypes to that supertype.
You must have the Under privilege on the supertype. You can find this information in the **sysusers** system catalog table.
- Verify that the name that you assign to the named-row type is unique within the schema.
To verify whether the name you want to assign to a new data type is unique within the schema, check the **sysxdtypes** system catalog table. The name you want to use must not be the name of an existing data type.
- If you are defining fields for the row type, check that no duplicate field names exist in both new and inherited fields.



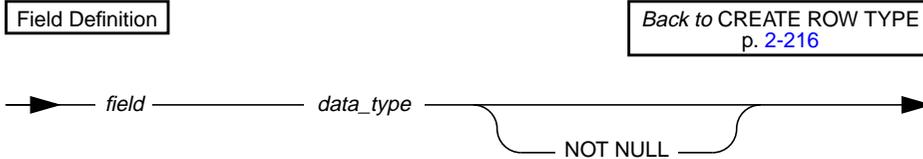
Important: When you create a subtype, do not redefine fields that the subtype inherited for its supertype. If you attempt to redefine these fields, the database server returns an error.

Constraints on Named-Row Types

You cannot apply constraints to named-row types directly. Specify the constraints for the tables that use named-row types when you create or alter the table.

Field Definition

Use the field definition portion of CREATE ROW TYPE to define a new field in a named-row type.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>data_type</i>	Data type of the field	See “Limitations With Serial and Simple-Large-Object Data Types” on page 2-221.	Data type, p. 4-53
<i>field</i>	Name of a field in the row	Name must be unique within the row type and its supertype.	Identifier, p. 4-205

The NOT NULL constraint that you specify on a field of a named-row type also applies to corresponding columns of a table when the named-row type is used to create a typed table.

Limitations With Serial and Simple-Large-Object Data Types

Serial and simple-large-object data types cannot be nested within a table. Therefore, if a row type contains a `BYTE`, `TEXT`, `SERIAL`, or `SERIAL8` field, you cannot use the row type to define a column in a table that is not based on a row type. For example, the following code example produces an error:

```
CREATE ROW TYPE serialtype (s serial, s8 serial8);
CREATE TABLE tab1 (col1 serialtype) --INVALID CODE
```

You cannot create a row type that has a `BYTE` or `TEXT` value that is stored in a separate storage space. That is, you cannot use the `IN` clause to specify the storage location. For example, the following example produces an error:

```
CREATE ROW TYPE row1 (field1 byte IN blobspace1) --INVALID
CODE
```

Across a table hierarchy, you can use only one `SERIAL` and one `SERIAL8`. That is, if a supertable table contains a `SERIAL` column, no subtable can contain a `SERIAL` column. However, a subtable can have a `SERIAL8` column (as long as no other subtables contain a `SERIAL8` column). Consequently, when you create the named-row types on which the table hierarchy is to be based, they can contain at most one `SERIAL` and one `SERIAL8` field among them.

You cannot set the starting serial value with `CREATE ROW TYPE`.

To modify the value for a serial field, you must use either the `MODIFY` clause of the `ALTER TABLE` statement or the `INSERT` statement to insert a value that is larger than the current maximum (or default) serial value.

When you use serial fields in row types, you create performance implications across a table hierarchy. When you insert data into a subtable whose supertable (or its supertable) contains the serial counter, the database server must also open the supertable, update the serial value, and close the supertable, thus adding extra overhead.

Related Information

Related statements: [DROP ROW TYPE](#), [CREATE TABLE](#), [CREATE CAST](#), [GRANT](#), and [REVOKE](#)

For a discussion of named-row types, see the *Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation* and the *Informix Guide to SQL: Reference*.

DB

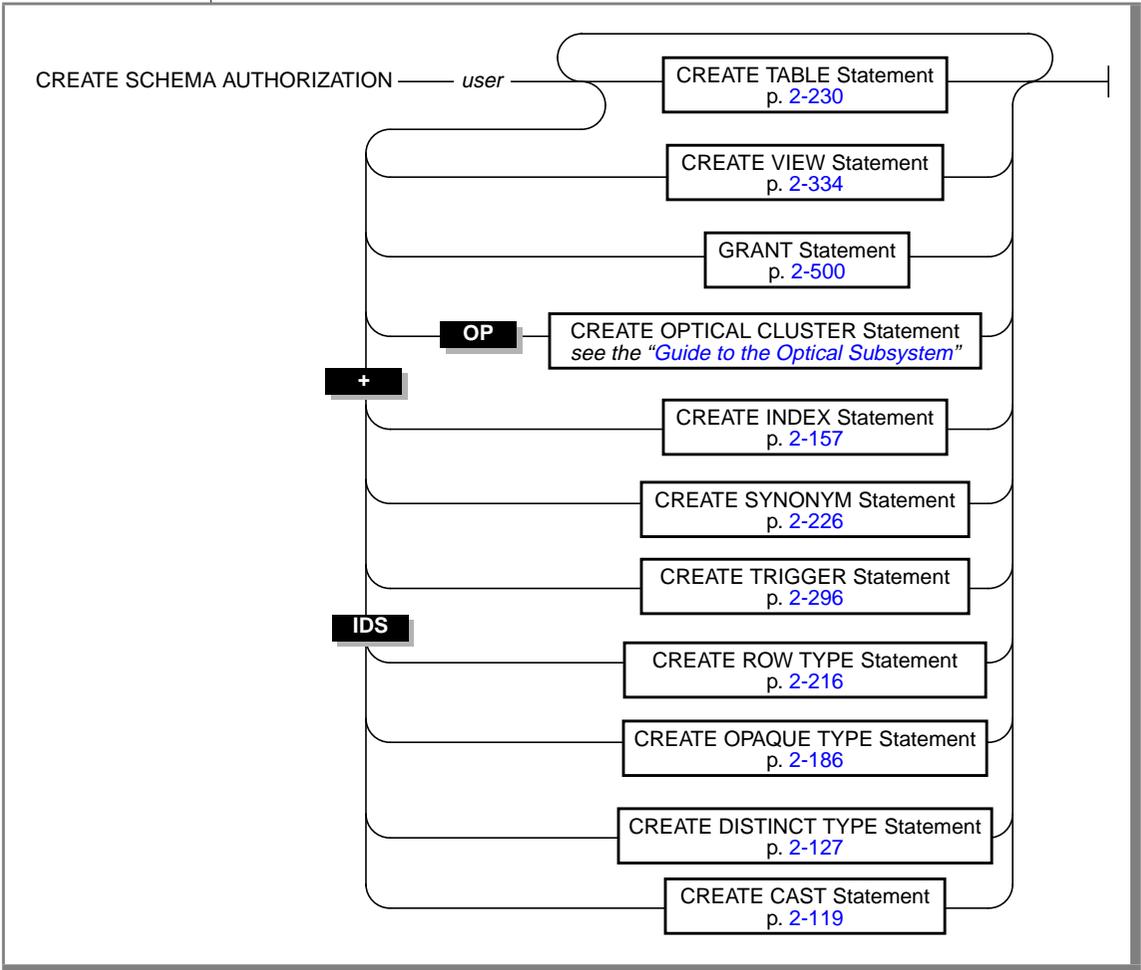
SQLE

CREATE SCHEMA

Use the CREATE SCHEMA statement to issue a block of CREATE and GRANT statements as a unit. The CREATE SCHEMA statement allows you to specify an owner of your choice for all database objects that the CREATE SCHEMA statement creates.

Use this statement with DB-Access and the SQL Editor.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>user</i>	Name of the user who owns the database objects that the CREATE SCHEMA statement creates	If the user who issues the CREATE SCHEMA statement has the Resource privilege, user must be the name of this user. If the user who issues the CREATE SCHEMA statement has the DBA privilege, user can be the name of this user or another user.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Usage

You cannot issue the CREATE SCHEMA statement until you create the affected database.

Users with the Resource privilege can create a schema for themselves. In this case, *user* must be the name of the person with the Resource privilege who is running the CREATE SCHEMA statement. Anyone with the DBA privilege can also create a schema for someone else. In this case, *user* can identify a user other than the person who is running the CREATE SCHEMA statement.

You can put CREATE and GRANT statements in any logical order within the statement, as the following example shows. Statements are considered part of the CREATE SCHEMA statement until a semicolon or an end-of-file symbol is reached.

```
CREATE SCHEMA AUTHORIZATION sarah
  CREATE TABLE mytable (mytime DATE, mytext TEXT)
  GRANT SELECT, UPDATE, DELETE ON mytable TO rick
  CREATE VIEW myview AS
    SELECT * FROM mytable WHERE mytime > '12/31/1997'
  CREATE INDEX idxtime ON mytable (mytime);
```

Creating Database Objects Within CREATE SCHEMA

All database objects that a CREATE SCHEMA statement creates are owned by *user*, even if you do not explicitly name each database object. If you are the DBA, you can create database objects for another user. If you are not the DBA, and you try to create a database object for an owner other than yourself, you receive an error message.

Granting Privileges Within CREATE SCHEMA

You can only grant privileges with the CREATE SCHEMA statement; you cannot revoke or drop privileges.

Creating Database Objects or Granting Privileges Outside CREATE SCHEMA

If you create a database object or use the GRANT statement outside a CREATE SCHEMA statement, you receive warnings if you use the **-ansi** flag or set **DBANSIWARN**.

Related Information

Related statements: [CREATE INDEX](#), [CREATE SYNONYM](#), [CREATE TABLE](#), [CREATE VIEW](#), and [GRANT](#)

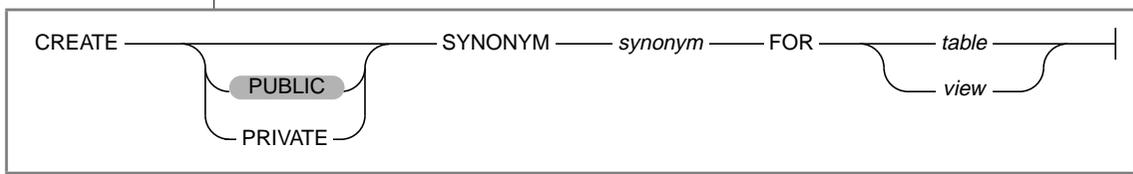
For a discussion of how to create a database, see the [Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation](#).

+

CREATE SYNONYM

Use the CREATE SYNONYM statement to provide an alternative name for a table or view.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>synonym</i>	Name of the synonym to be created	The synonym name must be unique in the database.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of the table for which the synonym is created	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>view</i>	Name of the view for which the synonym is created	The view must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

Users have the same privileges for a synonym that they have for the table to which the synonym applies.

The synonym name must be unique; that is, the synonym name cannot be the same as another database object, such as a table, view, or temporary table.

Once a synonym is created, it persists until the owner executes the DROP SYNONYM statement. This property distinguishes a synonym from an alias that you can use in the FROM clause of a SELECT statement. The alias persists for the existence of the SELECT statement. If a synonym refers to a table or view in the same database, the synonym is automatically dropped if you drop the referenced table or view.

You cannot create a synonym for a synonym in the same database.

ANSI

In an ANSI-compliant database, the owner of the synonym (*owner.synonym*) qualifies the name of a synonym. The identifier *owner.synonym* must be unique among all the synonyms, tables, temporary tables, and views in the database. You must specify *owner* when you refer to a synonym that another user owns. The following example shows this convention:

```
CREATE SYNONYM emp FOR accting.employee
```



You can create a synonym for any table or view in any database on your database server. Use the *owner* convention if the table is part of an ANSI-compliant database. The following example shows a synonym for a table outside the current database. It assumes that you are working on the same database server that contains the **payables** database.

```
CREATE SYNONYM mysum FOR payables:jean.summary
```

Creating a Synonym on a Table in a Remote Database

You can create a synonym for a table or view that exists on any networked database server as well as on the database server that contains your current database. The database server that holds the table must be on-line when you create the synonym. In a network, the database server verifies that the database object referred to by the synonym exists when you create the synonym.

The following example shows how to create a synonym for a database object that is not in the current database:

```
CREATE SYNONYM mysum FOR payables@phoenix:jean.summary
```

The identifier **mysum** now refers to the table **jean.summary**, which is in the **payables** database on the **phoenix** database server. Note that if the **summary** table is dropped from the **payables** database, the **mysum** synonym is left intact. Subsequent attempts to use **mysum** return the error `Table not found`.

IDS

Restrictions

You cannot create synonyms on the following types of remote tables:

- Typed tables (including any table that is part of a table hierarchy)
- Tables that contain any extended data types

PUBLIC and PRIVATE Synonyms

If you use the PUBLIC keyword (or no keyword at all), anyone who has access to the database can use your synonym. If a synonym is public, a user does not need to know the name of the owner of the synonym. Any synonym in a database that is not ANSI compliant *and* was created in an Informix database server earlier than Version 5.0 is a public synonym.

In an ANSI-compliant database, synonyms are always private. If you use the PUBLIC or PRIVATE keywords, you receive a syntax error. ♦

If you use the PRIVATE keyword, the synonym can be used only by the owner of the synonym or if the name of the owner is specified explicitly with the synonym. More than one private synonym with the same name can exist in the same database. However, a different user must own each synonym with that name.

You can own only one synonym with a given name; you cannot create both private and public synonyms with the same name. For example, the following code generates an error:

```
CREATE SYNONYM our_custs FOR customer;  
CREATE PRIVATE SYNONYM our_custs FOR cust_calls;-- ERROR!!!
```

Synonyms with the Same Name

If you own a private synonym, and a public synonym exists with the same name, when you use the synonym by its unqualified name, the private synonym is used.

If you use DROP SYNONYM with a synonym, and multiple synonyms exist with the same name, the private synonym is dropped. If you issue the DROP SYNONYM statement again, the public synonym is dropped.

Chaining Synonyms

If you create a synonym for a table that is not in the current database, and this table is dropped, the synonym stays in place. You can create a new synonym for the dropped table, with the name of the dropped table as the synonym name, which points to another external or remote table. In this way, you can move a table to a new location and chain synonyms together so that the original synonyms remain valid. (You can chain as many as 16 synonyms in this manner.)

The following steps chain two synonyms together for the **customer** table, which will ultimately reside on the **zoo** database server (the CREATE TABLE statements are not complete):

1. In the **stores_demo** database on the database server that is called **training**, issue the following statement:


```
CREATE TABLE customer (lname CHAR(15)...)
```
2. On the database server called **acctng**, issue the following statement:


```
CREATE SYNONYM cust FOR stores_demo@training:customer
```
3. On the database server called **zoo**, issue the following statement:


```
CREATE TABLE customer (lname CHAR(15)...)
```
4. On the database server called **training**, issue the following statement:


```
DROP TABLE customer
CREATE SYNONYM customer FOR stores_demo@zoo:customer
```

The synonym **cust** on the **acctng** database server now points to the **customer** table on the **zoo** database server.

The following steps show an example of chaining two synonyms together and changing the table to which a synonym points:

1. On the database server called **training**, issue the following statement:


```
CREATE TABLE customer (lname CHAR(15)...)
```
2. On the database server called **acctng**, issue the following statement:


```
CREATE SYNONYM cust FOR stores_demo@training:customer
```
3. On the database server called **training**, issue the following statement:


```
DROP TABLE customer
CREATE TABLE customer (lastname CHAR(20)...)
```

The synonym **cust** on the **acctng** database server now points to a new version of the **customer** table on the **training** database server.

Related Information

Related statement: [DROP SYNONYM](#)

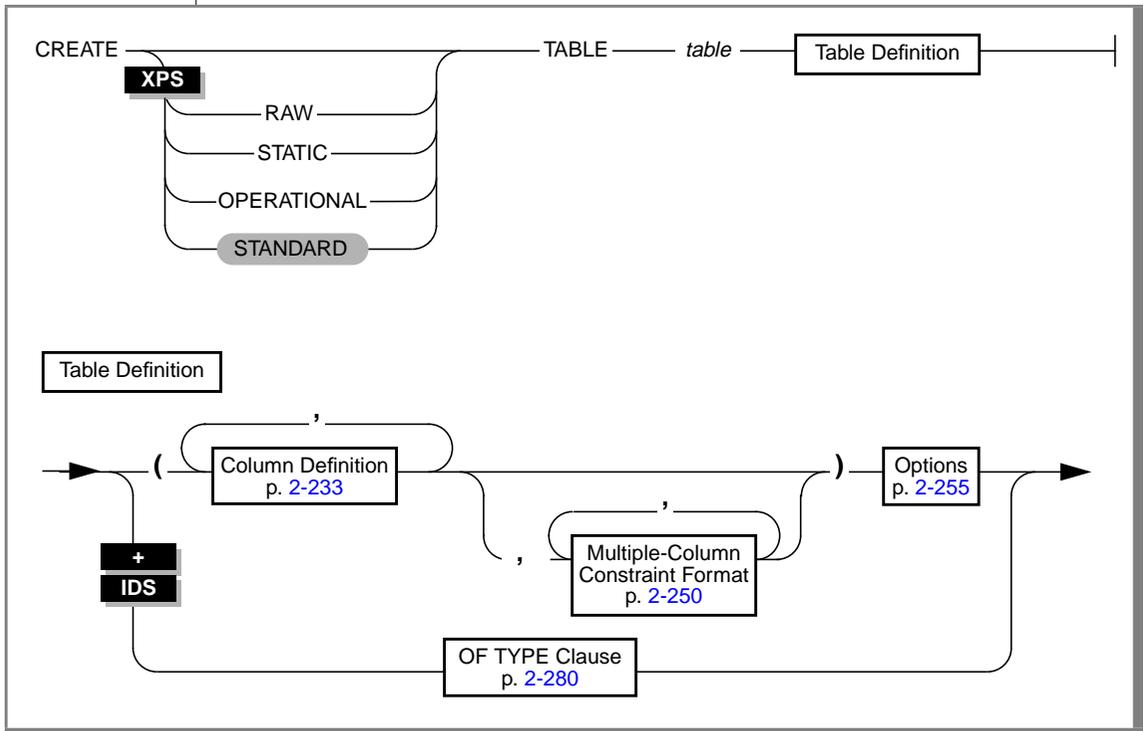
For a discussion of concepts related to synonyms, see the [Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation](#).

CREATE TABLE

Use the CREATE TABLE statement to create a new table in the current database, place data-integrity constraints on columns, designate where the table should be stored, indicate the size of its initial and subsequent extents, and specify how to lock it.

You can use the CREATE TABLE statement to create relational-database tables or *typed tables* (object-relational tables). For information on how to create temporary tables, see [“CREATE Temporary TABLE” on page 2-286](#).

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>table</i>	Name assigned to the table Every table must have a name.	The name must be unique within a database. It must not be used for any other tables or for any views or synonyms within the current database.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

When you create a table, the table and columns within that table must have unique names and every table column must have a data type associated with it.

ANSI

In an ANSI-compliant database, the combination *owner.table* must be unique within the database. ♦

DB

In DB-Access, using the CREATE TABLE statement outside the CREATE SCHEMA statement generates warnings if you use the **-ansi** flag or set **DBANSIWARN**. ♦

E/C

In ESQL/C, using the CREATE TABLE statement generates warnings if you use the **-ansi** flag or set **DBANSIWARN**. ♦

For information about the **DBANSIWARN** environment variable, refer to the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

XPS

Usage-Type Options

In Extended Parallel Server, use the Usage-TYPE Options to specify that the table has particular characteristics that can improve various bulk operations on it. Other than the default option (STANDARD) that is used for OLTP databases, these usage-type options are used primarily to improve performance in data warehousing databases.

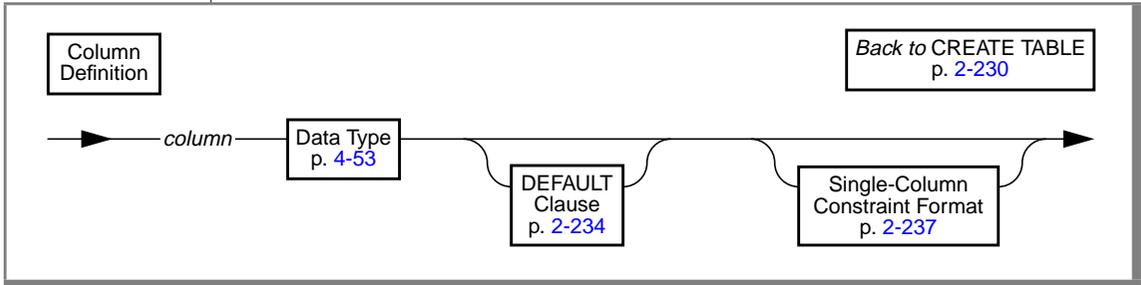
A table can have any of the following usage characteristics.

Option	Purpose
RAW	<p>Non-logging table that cannot have indexes or referential constraints but can be updated</p> <p>Use this type for quickly loading data. With this type you take advantage of light appends and avoid the overhead of logging, checking constraints, and building indexes.</p>
STATIC	<p>Non-logging table that can contain index and referential constraints but cannot be updated</p> <p>Use this type for read-only operations because no logging or locking overhead occurs.</p>
OPERATIONAL	<p>Logging table that uses light appends and cannot be restored from archive</p> <p>Use this type on tables that are refreshed frequently because light appends allow the quick addition of many rows.</p>
STANDARD	<p>Logging table that allows rollback, recovery, and restoration from archives</p> <p>This type is the default.</p> <p>Use this type for all the recovery and constraints functionality that you want on your OLTP databases.</p>

For a more detailed description of these table types, refer to your [Administrator's Guide](#).

Column Definition

Use the column definition portion of CREATE TABLE to list the name, data type, default values, and constraints of a *single column*.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of a column in the table	The name must be unique in a table, but you can use the same names in different tables in the same database.	Identifier, p. 4-205

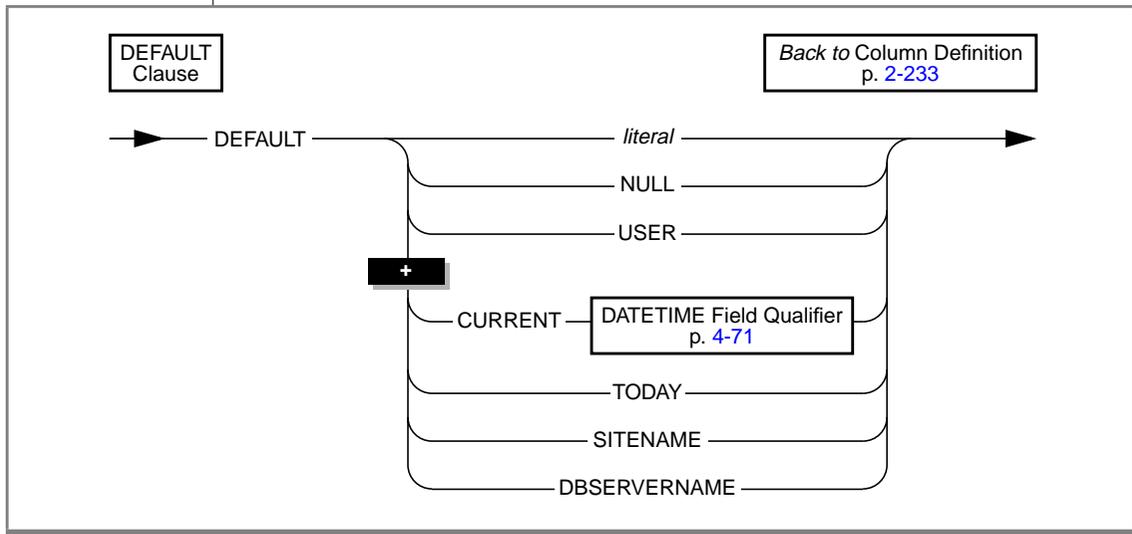
When you name a column, as with any SQL identifier, you can use a reserved word, but syntactic ambiguities can occur. For more information on reserved words for Dynamic Server, see [Appendix A, “Reserved Words for Dynamic Server.”](#) For more information on reserved words for Extended Parallel Server, see [Appendix B, “Reserved Words for Extended Parallel Server.”](#) For more information on the ambiguities that can occur, see [“Using Keywords as Column Names” on page 4-212.](#)

IDS

If you define a column of a table to be of a named-row type, the table does not adopt any constraints of the named row. ♦

DEFAULT Clause

Use the DEFAULT clause to specify the default value that the database server should insert in a column when an explicit value for the column is not specified.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>literal</i>	String of alphabetic or numeric characters	The string must be an appropriate type for the column. See “Using a Literal as a Default Value” on page 2-235	Expression, p. 4-73

If you do not indicate a default value for a column, the default is null *unless* you place a not-null constraint on the column. In that case, no default value exists for the column.

You cannot specify default values for serial columns.

Using a Literal as a Default Value

You can designate a *literal* value as a default value. A literal value is a string of alphabetic or numeric characters. To use a literal value as a default value, you must adhere to the syntax restrictions in the following table.

For Columns of Data Type	Format of Default Value	Syntax Restrictions
BOOLEAN	CHARACTER	't' or 'f' representing true or false The literal must be specified as a quoted string.
CHAR, VARCHAR, NCHAR, NVARCHAR, CHARACTER VARYING, DATE	CHARACTER	Quoted String, p. 4-260
DATETIME	DATETIME	Literal DATETIME, p. 4-231
DECIMAL, MONEY, FLOAT, SMALLFLOAT	DECIMAL	Literal Number, p. 4-237
INTEGER, SMALLINT, DECIMAL, MONEY, FLOAT, SMALLFLOAT, INT8	INTEGER	Literal Number, p. 4-237
INTERVAL	INTERVAL	Literal INTERVAL, p. 4-234
Opaque data types (IDS only)	CHARACTER	Quoted String, p. 4-260 You must use the single-column constraint format to specify the default value.

Date literals must be of the format that the **DBDATE** environment variable specifies. If **DBDATE** is not set, the date literals must be of the *mm/dd/yyyy* format.

Using NULL as a Default Value

If you do not indicate a default value for a column, the default is null *unless* you place a not-null constraint on the column. In this case, no default value exists for the column.

If you specify NULL as the default value for a column, you cannot specify a not-null constraint as part of the column definition.

You cannot designate null as the default value for a column that is part of a primary key.

If the column is BYTE or TEXT data type, null is the only default value that you can designate.

If the column is BLOB or CLOB data type, null is the only default value that you can designate.

Using a Built-in Function as a Default Value

You can specify a built-in function as the default value for a column. The following table indicates the built-in functions that you can specify, the data type requirements, and the recommended size for their corresponding columns.

Built-In Function Name	Data Type Requirement	Recommended Size of Column
CURRENT	DATETIME column with matching qualifier	Byte value that accommodates the largest DATETIME value for your locale.
DBSERVERNAME	CHAR, VARCHAR, NCHAR, NVARCHAR, or CHARACTER VARYING column	At least 128 bytes (IDS) At least 18 bytes (XPS)
SITENAME	CHAR, VARCHAR, NCHAR, NVARCHAR, or CHARACTER VARYING column	At least 128 bytes (IDS) At least 18 bytes (XPS)
TODAY	DATE column	Byte value that accommodates the largest DATE value for your locale.
USER	CHAR, VARCHAR, NCHAR, NVARCHAR, or CHARACTER VARYING column	At least 32 bytes (IDS) At least 8 bytes (XPS)

Informix recommends a column size because if the column length is too small to store the default value during INSERT and ALTER TABLE operations, the database server returns an error.

You cannot designate a built-in function (that is, CURRENT, USER, TODAY, SITENAME, or DBSERVERNAME) as the default value for a column that holds opaque or distinct data types. ♦

For more information on these built-in functions, see [“Constant Expressions” on page 4-108](#).

Examples of Default Values in Column Definitions

The following example creates a table called **accounts**. In **accounts**, the **acc_num**, **acc_type**, and **acc_descr** columns have literal default values. The **acc_id** column defaults to the login name of the user.

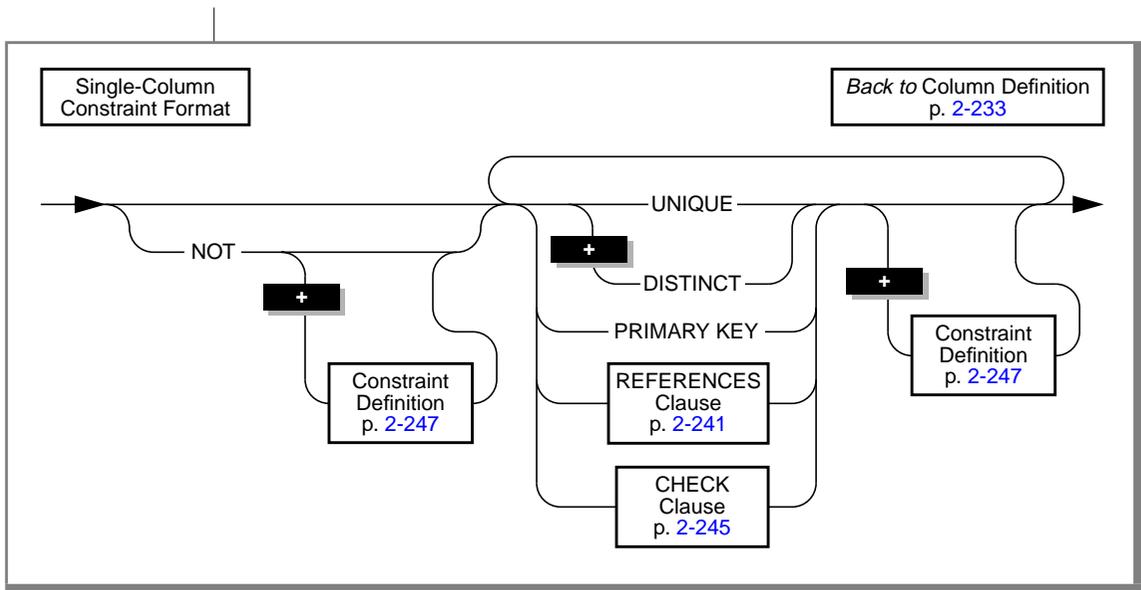
```
CREATE TABLE accounts (  
    acc_num INTEGER DEFAULT 1,  
    acc_type CHAR(1) DEFAULT 'A',  
    acc_descr CHAR(20) DEFAULT 'New Account',  
    acc_id CHAR(32) DEFAULT USER)
```

Single-Column Constraint Format

Use the Single-Column Constraint Format to associate one or more constraints with a particular column. You can use this portion of CREATE TABLE to perform the following tasks:

- Create one or more data-integrity constraints for a column
- Specify a meaningful name for a constraint
- Specify the constraint-mode that controls the behavior of a constraint during insert, delete, and update operations

CREATE TABLE



The following example creates a simple table with two constraints, a primary-key constraint named **num** on the **acc_num** column and a unique constraint named **code** on the **acc_code** column:

```
CREATE TABLE accounts (  
    acc_num    INTEGER PRIMARY KEY CONSTRAINT num,  
    acc_code   INTEGER UNIQUE CONSTRAINT code,  
    acc_descr  CHAR(30))
```

The constraints used in this example are defined in the following sections.

Restrictions on Using the Single-Column Constraint Format

When you use the single-column constraint format, you cannot use constraints that involve more than one column. For example, you cannot use the single-column constraint format to define a composite key. For information on multiple-column constraints, see [“Multiple-Column Constraint Format” on page 2-250](#).

Using Large-Object Types in Constraints

You cannot place unique, primary-key, or referential constraints on BYTE or TEXT columns. However, you can check for null or non-null values with a check constraint.

You cannot place unique, primary-key, or referential constraints on BLOB or CLOB columns. ♦

Using the NOT NULL Constraint

Use the NOT NULL keywords to require that a column receive a value during insert or update operations. If you place a NOT NULL constraint on a column (and no default value is specified), you *must* enter a value into this column when you insert a row or update that column in a row. If you do not enter a value, the database server returns an error.

The following example creates the **newitems** table. In **newitems**, the column **manucode** does not have a default value nor does it allow nulls.

```
CREATE TABLE newitems (  
    newitem_num INTEGER,  
    manucode CHAR(3) NOT NULL,  
    promotype INTEGER,  
    descrip CHAR(20))
```

Relationship Between the Default Value and the NOT NULL Constraint

If you do not indicate a default value for a column, the default is null *unless* you place a NOT NULL constraint on the column. In this case, no default value exists for the column.

You cannot specify NULL as the default value for a column and also specify the NOT NULL constraint.

Using the UNIQUE or DISTINCT Constraints

Use the UNIQUE or DISTINCT keyword to require that a column or set of columns accepts only unique data. You cannot insert duplicate values in a column that has a unique constraint. When you create a UNIQUE or DISTINCT constraint, the database server automatically creates an internal index on the constrained column or columns.

Restrictions on Defining Unique Constraints

You cannot place a unique constraint on a column on which you have already placed a primary-key constraint.

You cannot place a unique constraint on a BYTE or TEXT column.

You cannot place a unique or primary-key constraint on a BLOB or CLOB column.

Opaque types support a unique constraint only where a secondary access method supports uniqueness for that type. The default secondary access method is a generic B-tree, which supports the **equal()** function. Therefore, if the definition of the opaque type includes the **equal()** function, a column of that opaque type can have a unique constraint. ♦

Example That Uses the Single-Column Constraint Format

The following example creates a simple table that has a unique constraint on one of its columns:

```
CREATE TABLE accounts
  (acc_name  CHAR(12),
   acc_num   SERIAL UNIQUE CONSTRAINT acc_num)
```

For an explanation of the constraint name, refer to [“Choosing a Constraint Name” on page 2-247](#).

Using the PRIMARY KEY Constraint

A *primary key* is a column or a set of columns (available when you use the multiple-column constraint format) that contains a non-null, unique value for each row in a table. When you create a PRIMARY KEY constraint, the database server automatically creates an internal index on the column or columns that make up the primary key.

Restrictions for Primary-Key Constraints

You can designate only one primary key for a table. If you define a single column as the primary key, it is unique by definition; you cannot explicitly give the same column a unique constraint.

IDS

You cannot place a primary-key constraint on a BYTE or TEXT column.

You cannot place a unique or primary-key constraint on a BLOB or CLOB column.

Opaque types support a primary key constraint only where a secondary access method supports the uniqueness for that type. The default secondary access method is a generic B-tree, which supports the **equal()** function. Therefore, if the definition of the opaque type includes the **equal()** function, a column of that opaque type can have a primary-key constraint. ♦

Example That Uses the Single-Column Constraint Format

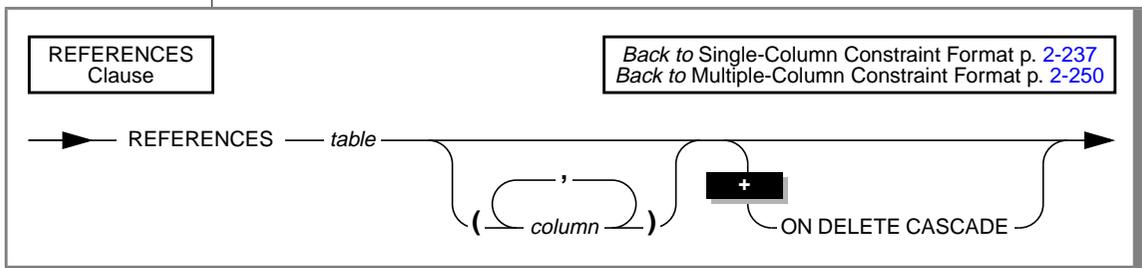
In the previous two examples, a unique constraint was placed on the column **acc_num**. The following example creates this column as the primary key for the **accounts** table:

```
CREATE TABLE accounts
  (acc_name CHAR(12),
   acc_num SERIAL PRIMARY KEY CONSTRAINT acc_num)
```

REFERENCES Clause

Use the REFERENCES clause to establish a referential relationship:

- within a table (that is, between two columns of the same table).
- between two tables (in other words, create a foreign key).



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of the referenced column or columns	See “Restrictions on Referential Constraints” on page 2-242 .	Identifier, p.4-205
<i>table</i>	Name of the referenced table	The referenced table must reside in the same database as the referencing table.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

The *referencing* column (the column being defined) is the column or set of columns that refers to the referenced column or set of columns. The referencing column or set of columns can contain null and duplicate values. However, the values in the referenced column or set of columns must be unique.

The relationship between referenced and referencing columns is called a *parent-child* relationship, where the parent is the referenced column (primary key) and the child is the referencing column (foreign key). The referential constraint establishes this parent-child relationship.

When you create a referential constraint, the database server automatically creates an internal index on the constrained column or columns.

Restrictions on Referential Constraints

You must have the References privilege to create a referential constraint.

When you use the REFERENCES clause, you must observe the following restrictions:

- The referenced and referencing tables must be in the same database.
- The referenced column (or set of columns when you use the multiple-column constraint format) must have a unique or primary-key constraint.
- The data types of the referencing and referenced columns must be identical.

The only exception is that a referencing column must be an integer data type if the referenced column is a serial.

- You cannot place a referential constraint on a BYTE or TEXT column.
- When you use the single-column constraint format, you can reference only one column.

XPS

IDS

- When you use the multiple-column constraint format, the maximum number of columns in the REFERENCES clause is 16, and the total length of the columns cannot exceed 255 bytes. ♦
- When you use the multiple-column constraint format, the maximum number of columns in the REFERENCES clause is 16, and the total length of the columns cannot exceed 390 bytes.
- You cannot place a referential constraint on a BLOB or CLOB column. ♦

Default Values for the Referenced Column

If the referenced table is different from the referencing table, you do not need to specify the referenced column; the default column is the primary-key column (or columns) of the referenced table. If the referenced table is the same as the referencing table, you must specify the referenced column.

Referential Relationships Within a Table

You can establish a referential relationship between two columns of the same table. In the following example, the **emp_num** column in the **employee** table uniquely identifies every employee through an employee number. The **mgr_num** column in that table contains the employee number of the manager who manages that employee. In this case, **mgr_num** references **emp_num**. Duplicate values appear in the **mgr_num** column because managers manage more than one employee.

```
CREATE TABLE employee
(
  emp_num INTEGER PRIMARY KEY,
  mgr_num INTEGER REFERENCES employee (emp_num)
)
```

Locking Implications of Creating a Referential Constraint

When you create a referential constraint, an exclusive lock is placed on the referenced table. The lock is released when the CREATE TABLE statement is finished. If you are creating a table in a database with transactions, and you are using transactions, the lock is released at the end of the transaction.

Example That Uses the Single-Column Constraint Format

The following example uses the single-column constraint format to create a referential relationship between the **sub_accounts** and **accounts** tables. The **ref_num** column in the **sub_accounts** table references the **acc_num** column (the primary key) in the **accounts** table.

```
CREATE TABLE accounts (  
    acc_num INTEGER PRIMARY KEY,  
    acc_type INTEGER,  
    acc_descr CHAR(20))  
  
CREATE TABLE sub_accounts (  
    sub_acc INTEGER PRIMARY KEY,  
    ref_num INTEGER REFERENCES accounts (acc_num),  
    sub_descr CHAR(20))
```

When you use the single-column constraint format, you do not explicitly specify the **ref_num** column as a foreign key. To use the FOREIGN KEY keyword, use the [“Multiple-Column Constraint Format” on page 2-250](#).

Using the ON DELETE CASCADE Option

Use the ON DELETE CASCADE option to specify whether you want rows deleted in a child table when corresponding rows are deleted in the parent table. If you do not specify cascading deletes, the default behavior of the database server prevents you from deleting data in a table if other tables reference it.

If you specify this option, later when you delete a row in the parent table, the database server also deletes any rows associated with that row (foreign keys) in a child table. The principal advantage to the cascading-deletes feature is that it allows you to reduce the quantity of SQL statements you need to perform delete actions.

For example, the **all_candy** table contains the **candy_num** column as a primary key. The **hard_candy** table refers to the **candy_num** column as a foreign key. The following CREATE TABLE statement creates the **hard_candy** table with the cascading-delete option on the foreign key:

```
CREATE TABLE all_candy
(candy_num SERIAL PRIMARY KEY,
 candy_maker CHAR(25));

CREATE TABLE hard_candy
(candy_num INT,
 candy_flavor CHAR(20),
 FOREIGN KEY (candy_num) REFERENCES all_candy
 ON DELETE CASCADE)
```

Because the ON DELETE CASCADE option is specified for the child table, when an item from the **all_candy** table is deleted, the delete cascades to the corresponding rows of the **hard_candy** table.

For information about syntax restrictions and locking implications when you delete rows from tables that have cascading deletes, see [“Considerations When Tables Have Cascading Deletes”](#) on page 2-375.

CHECK Clause

Use the CHECK clause to designate conditions that must be met *before* data can be assigned to a column during an INSERT or UPDATE statement.

CHECK
Clause

[Back to Single-Column Constraint Format p. 2-237](#)
[Back to Multiple-Column Constraint Format p. 2-250](#)

→ CHECK (Condition p. 4-27) →

During an insert or update, if a row evaluates to *false* for any check constraint defined on a table, the database server returns an error. The database server does not return an error if a row evaluates to null for a check constraint. In some cases, you might wish to use both a check constraint and a NOT NULL constraint.



IDS

You use *search conditions* to define check constraints. The search condition cannot contain the following items: subqueries, aggregates, host variables, rowids, or user-defined routines. In addition, the search condition cannot contain the following built-in functions: CURRENT, USER, SITENAME, DBSERVERNAME, or TODAY.

*When you specify a date value in a search condition, make sure you specify 4 digits instead of 2 digits for the year. When you specify a 4-digit year, the **DBCENTURY** environment variable has no effect on the distribution scheme. When you specify a 2-digit year, the **DBCENTURY** environment variable can affect the distribution scheme and can produce unpredictable results. See the “[Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#)” for more information on the **DBCENTURY** environment variable.*

With a BYTE or TEXT column, you can check for null or not-null values. This constraint is the only constraint allowed on a BYTE or TEXT columns.

With a BLOB or CLOB column, you can check for null or not-null values. This constraint is the only constraint allowed on a BLOB or CLOB columns.

Restrictions When Using the Single-Column Constraint Format

When you use the single-column constraint format to define a check constraint, the only column that the check constraint can check against is the column itself. In other words, the check constraint cannot depend on values in other columns of the table.

Example

The following example creates the **my_accounts** table which has two columns with check constraints:

```
CREATE TABLE my_accounts (
  chk_id      SERIAL PRIMARY KEY,
  acct1      MONEY CHECK (acct1 BETWEEN 0 AND 99999),
  acct2      MONEY CHECK (acct2 BETWEEN 0 AND 99999))
```

Both **acct1** and **acct2** are columns of MONEY data type whose values must be between 0 and 99999.

If, however, you want to test that **acct1** has a larger balance than **acct2**, you cannot use the single-column constraint format. To create a constraint that checks values in more than one column, you must use the “[Multiple-Column Constraint Format](#)” on page 2-250.

Constraint Definition

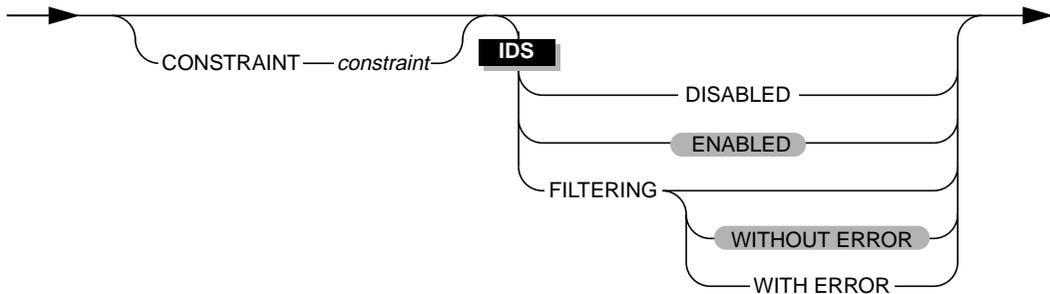
Use the constraint definition portion of CREATE TABLE for the following purposes:

- To assign a name to a constraint
- To set a constraint to disabled, enabled, or filtering mode ♦

IDS

Constraint
Definition

[Back to Single-Column Constraint Format p. 2-237](#)
[Back to Multiple-Column Constraint Format p. 2-250](#)



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>constraint</i>	Name of the constraint	The constraint name must be unique in the database.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Choosing a Constraint Name

Whenever you use the single- or multiple-column constraint format to place a data restriction on a column, the database server creates a constraint and adds a row for that constraint to the **sysconstraints** system catalog table. The database server also generates an identifier and adds a row to the **sysindexes** system catalog table for each new primary-key, unique, or referential constraint that does not share an index with an existing constraint. Even if you assign a name to a constraint, the database server generates the name that appears in the **sysindexes** table.

IDS

ANSI

IDS

If you wish, you can specify a meaningful name for the constraint. The name of a constraint must be unique within the database.

Constraint names appear in error messages having to do with constraint violations. You can use this name when you use the DROP CONSTRAINT clause of the ALTER TABLE statement.

In addition, you specify a constraint name when you change the mode of constraint with the SET Database Object Mode statement or the SET Transaction Mode statement. ♦

When you create a constraint of any type, the *owner.constraint* (the combination of the owner name and constraint name) must be unique within the database. ♦

The system catalog table that holds information about indexes is the **sysindices** table. ♦

Constraint Names Generated by the Database Server

If you do not specify a constraint name, the database server generates a constraint name using the following template:

```
<constraint_type><tabid>_<constraintid>
```

In this template, *constraint_type* is the letter **u** for unique or primary-key constraints, **r** for referential constraints, **c** for check constraints, and **n** for not-null constraints. In the template, *tabid* and *constraintid* are values from the **tabid** and **constrid** columns of the **sysables** and **sysconstraints** system catalog tables, respectively. For example, the constraint name for a unique constraint might look like: **u111_14**.

If the generated name conflicts with an existing identifier, the database server returns an error, and you must then supply a constraint name.

The index name in **sysindexes** (or **sysindices**) is created with the following format:

```
[space]<tabid>_<constraintid>
```

For example, the index name might be something like: " **111_14**" (quotation marks are used to show the space).

Choosing a Constraint-Mode Option

Use the constraint-mode options to control the behavior of constraints during insert, delete, and update operations. The following list explains these options.

Mode	Purpose
DISABLED	Does not enforce the constraint during insert, delete, and update operations.
ENABLED	Enforces the constraint during insert, delete, and update operations. If a target row causes a violation of the constraint, the statement fails. This is the default mode.
FILTERING	Enforces the constraint during insert, delete, and update operations. If a target row causes a violation of the constraint, the statement continues processing. The database server writes the row in question to the violations table associated with the target table and writes diagnostic information about the constraint violation to the diagnostics table associated with the target table.

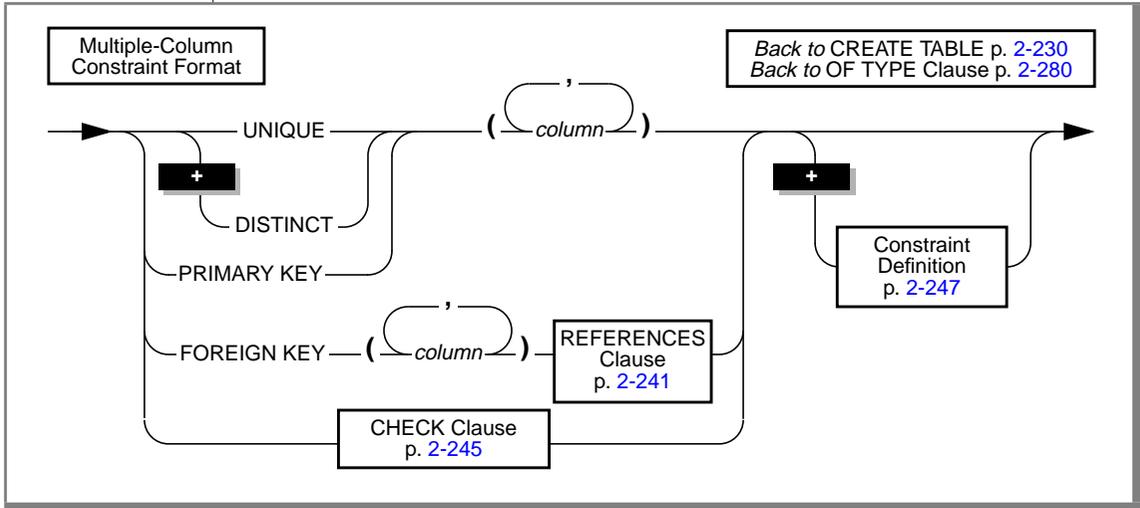
If you choose filtering mode, you can specify the WITHOUT ERROR or WITH ERROR options. The following list explains these options.

Error Option	Purpose
WITHOUT ERROR	Does not return an integrity-violation error when a filtering-mode constraint is violated during an insert, delete, or update operation. This is the default error option.
WITH ERROR	Returns an integrity-violation error when a filtering-mode constraint is violated during an insert, delete, or update operation.

For how to set the constraint mode after the table exists, see [“SET Database Object Mode” on page 2-700](#). For information about where the database server stores data that violates a constraint set to filtering, see [“START VIOLATIONS TABLE” on page 2-778](#).

Multiple-Column Constraint Format

Use the multiple-column constraint format to associate one or more columns with a constraint. This alternative to the single-column constraint format allows you to associate multiple columns with a constraint.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of the column or columns on which the constraint is placed	<p>The column must be defined.</p> <p>The column cannot be a BYTE or TEXT, BLOB or CLOB column.</p> <p>You can include a maximum of 16 columns in a constraint list.</p> <p>The total length of all columns cannot exceed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 255 bytes (XPS) ■ 390 bytes (IDS) <p>When you define a unique constraint (UNIQUE or DISTINCT keywords), a column cannot appear in the constraint list more than once.</p>	Identifier, p.4-205

When you use the multiple-column constraint format, you can perform the following tasks:

- Create one or more data-integrity constraints for a single column or set of columns
- Specify a meaningful name for a constraint
- Specify the constraint-mode option that controls the behavior of a constraint during insert, delete, and update operations

When you use this format, you can create composite primary and foreign keys. You can also define check constraints that involve comparing data in different columns.

Restrictions with the Multiple-Column Constraint Format

When you use the multiple-column constraint format, you cannot define any default values for columns. In addition, you cannot establish a referential relationship between two columns of the same table.

To define a default value for a column or establish a referential relationship between two columns of the same table, refer to [“Single-Column Constraint Format” on page 2-237](#) and [“Referential Relationships Within a Table” on page 2-243](#) respectively.

Using Large-Object Types in Constraints

You cannot place unique, primary-key, or referential (FOREIGN KEY) constraints on BYTE or TEXT columns. However, you can check for null or non-null values with a check constraint.

You cannot place unique or primary-key constraints on BLOB or CLOB columns. ♦

Location of Information Regarding Specific Constraints

The following table indicates where you can find detailed discussions of specific constraints

Constraint	For more information, see	For an Example, see
CHECK	“CHECK Clause” on page 2-245	“Defining Check Constraints Across Columns” on page 2-253
DISTINCT	“Using the UNIQUE or DISTINCT Constraints” on page 2-239	“Examples that Use the Multiple-Column Constraint Format” on page 2-253
FOREIGN KEY	“Using the FOREIGN KEY Constraint” on page 2-252	“Defining Composite Primary and Foreign Keys” on page 2-254
PRIMARY KEY	“Using the PRIMARY KEY Constraint” on page 2-240	“Defining Composite Primary and Foreign Keys” on page 2-254
UNIQUE	“Using the UNIQUE or DISTINCT Constraints” on page 2-239	“Examples that Use the Multiple-Column Constraint Format” on page 2-253

Using the FOREIGN KEY Constraint

A foreign key *joins* and establishes dependencies between tables, that is, it creates a referential constraint.

A foreign key references a unique or primary key in a table. For every entry in the foreign-key columns, a matching entry must exist in the unique or primary-key columns if all foreign-key columns contain non-null values.

You cannot make BYTE or TEXT columns be foreign keys.

You cannot make BLOB or CLOB columns be foreign keys. ♦

For more information on referential constraints, see the [“REFERENCES Clause” on page 2-241](#).

Examples that Use the Multiple-Column Constraint Format

The following example creates a simple table with a unique constraint. The example uses the multiple-column constraint format. However, nothing in this example would prohibit you from using the single-column constraint format to define this constraint.

```
CREATE TABLE accounts
  (acc_name  CHAR(12),
   acc_num   SERIAL,
   UNIQUE    (acc_num) CONSTRAINT acc_num)
```

For an explanation of the constraint name, refer to [“Choosing a Constraint Name” on page 2-247](#).

Defining Check Constraints Across Columns

When you use the multiple-column constraint format to define check constraints, a check constraint can apply to more than one column in the table. (However, you cannot create a check constraint for columns across tables.)

The following example includes a comparison of **acct1** and **acct2** two columns in the table.

```
CREATE TABLE my_accounts
  (
   chk_id      SERIAL PRIMARY KEY,
   acct1       MONEY,
   acct2       MONEY,
   CHECK (0 < acct1 AND acct1 < 99999),
   CHECK (0 < acct2 AND acct2 < 99999),
   CHECK (acct1 > acct2)
  )
```

In this example, the **acct1** column must be greater than the **acct2** column, or the insert or update fails.

Defining Composite Primary and Foreign Keys

When you use the multiple-column constraint format, you can create a composite key (that is, you can specify multiple columns for a primary key or foreign key constraint).

The following example creates two tables. The first table has a composite key that acts as a primary key, and the second table has a composite key that acts as a foreign key.

```
CREATE TABLE accounts (
    acc_num INTEGER,
    acc_type INTEGER,
    acc_descr CHAR(20),
    PRIMARY KEY (acc_num, acc_type))

CREATE TABLE sub_accounts (
    sub_acc INTEGER PRIMARY KEY,
    ref_num INTEGER NOT NULL,
    ref_type INTEGER NOT NULL,
    sub_descr CHAR(20),
    FOREIGN KEY (ref_num, ref_type) REFERENCES accounts
        (acc_num, acc_type))
```

In this example, the foreign key of the **sub_accounts** table, **ref_num** and **ref_type**, references the composite key, **acc_num** and **acc_type**, in the **accounts** table. If, during an insert or update, you tried to insert a row into the **sub_accounts** table whose value for **ref_num** and **ref_type** did not exactly correspond to the values for **acc_num** and **acc_type** in an existing row in the **accounts** table, the database server would return an error.

A referential constraint must have a one-to-one relationship between referencing and referenced columns. In other words, if the primary key is a set of columns (a composite key), then the foreign key also must be a set of columns that corresponds to the composite key.

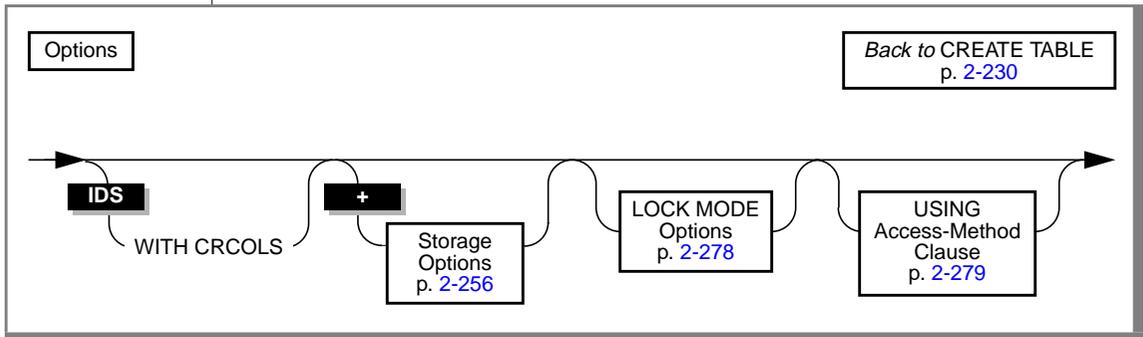
Because of the default behavior of the database server, when you create the foreign key reference, you do not have to reference the composite key columns (**acc_num** and **acc_type**) explicitly.

You can rewrite the references section of the previous example as follows:

```
... FOREIGN KEY (ref_num, ref_type) REFERENCES accounts
...
```

Options

The CREATE TABLE options let you specify storage locations, extent size, locking modes, and user-defined access methods.



IDS

Using the WITH CRCOLS Option

Use the WITH CRCOLS keywords to create two shadow columns that Enterprise Replication uses for conflict resolution. The first column, **cdrserver**, contains the identity of the database server where the last modification occurred. The second column, **cdftime**, contains the time stamp of the last modification. You must add these columns before you can use time-stamp or user-defined routine conflict resolution.

For most database operations, the **cdrserver** and **cdftime** columns are hidden. For example, if you include the WITH CRCOLS keywords when you create a table, the **cdrserver** and **cdftime** columns:

- do not appear when you issue the statement


```
SELECT * from tablename
```
- do not appear in DB-Access when you ask for information about the columns of the table.
- are not included in the number of columns (**ncols**) in the **sytables** system catalog table entry for *tablename*.

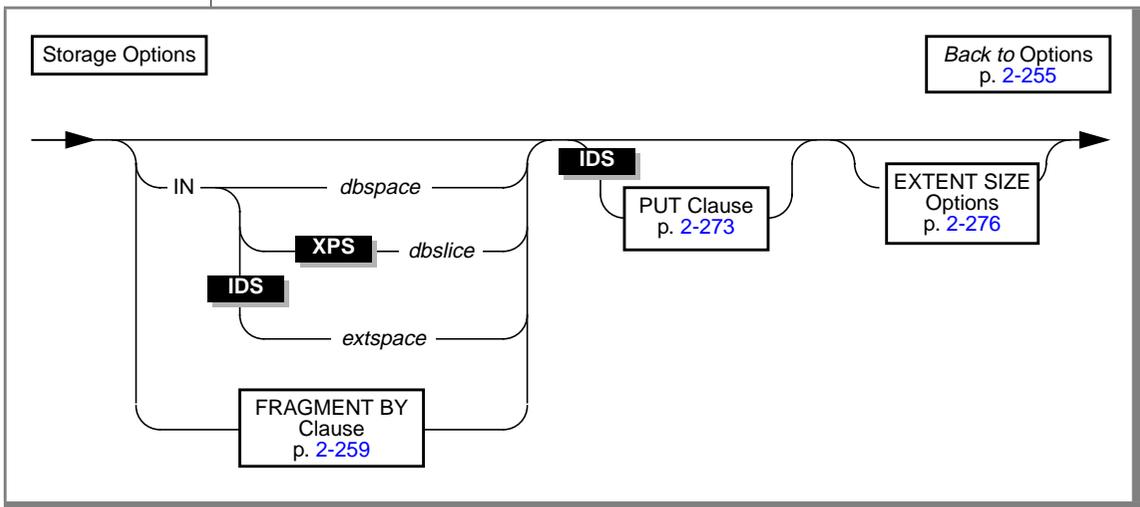
To view the contents of **cdrserver** and **cdftime**, explicitly name the columns in a SELECT statement, as the following example shows:

```
SELECT cdrserver, cdftime from tablename
```

For more information about using this option, refer to the [Guide to Informix Enterprise Replication](#).

Storage Options

Use the storage option portion of CREATE TABLE to specify the storage space and the size of the extents for the table.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>dbslice</i>	Name of the dbslice in which to store the table	The specified dbslice must already exist.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>dbspace</i>	Name of the dbspace in which to store the table If you do not specify a location with either the IN <i>dbspace</i> clause or a fragmentation scheme, the default is the dbspace where the current database resides.	The specified dbspace must already exist.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>extspace</i>	Name assigned with the onspaces command to a storage area outside the database server	The specified <i>extspace</i> must already exist.	Refer to the user documentation for your custom access method for more information.

IDS



If you use the [“USING Access-Method Clause” on page 2-279](#) to specify an access method, the storage space named must be supported by that access method.

You can specify a dbspace for the table that is different from the storage location specified for the database, or fragment the table into several dbspaces. If you do not specify the IN clause or a fragmentation scheme, the database server stores the table in the dbspace where the current database resides.

You can use the PUT clause to specify storage options for smart large objects. For more information, see [“PUT Clause” on page 2-273](#).

Tip: If your table has columns that contain simple large objects (TEXT or BYTE), you can specify a separate blobspace for each object. For information on storing simple large objects, refer to [“Large-Object Data Types” on page 4-62](#). ♦

Using the IN Clause

Use the IN clause to specify a storage space for a table. The storage space that you specify must already exist.

Storing Data in a dbspace

You can use the IN clause to isolate a table. For example, if the **history** database is in the **db1** dbspace, but you want the **family** data placed in a separate dbspace called **famdata**, use the following statements:

```
CREATE DATABASE history IN db1

CREATE TABLE family
(
  id_num          SERIAL(101) UNIQUE,
  name            CHAR(40),
  nickname        CHAR(20),
  mother          CHAR(40),
  father          CHAR(40)
)
IN famdata
```

For more information about how to store and manage your tables in separate dbspaces, see your [Administrator’s Guide](#).

XPS

Storing Data in a dbslice

If you are using Extended Parallel Server, the IN *dbslice* clause allows you to fragment a table across a group of dbspaces that share the same naming convention. The database server fragments the table by round-robin in the dbspaces that make up the *dbslice* at the time the table is created.

To fragment a table across a *dbslice*, you can use either the IN *dbslice* syntax or the FRAGMENT BY ROUND ROBIN IN *dbslice* syntax.

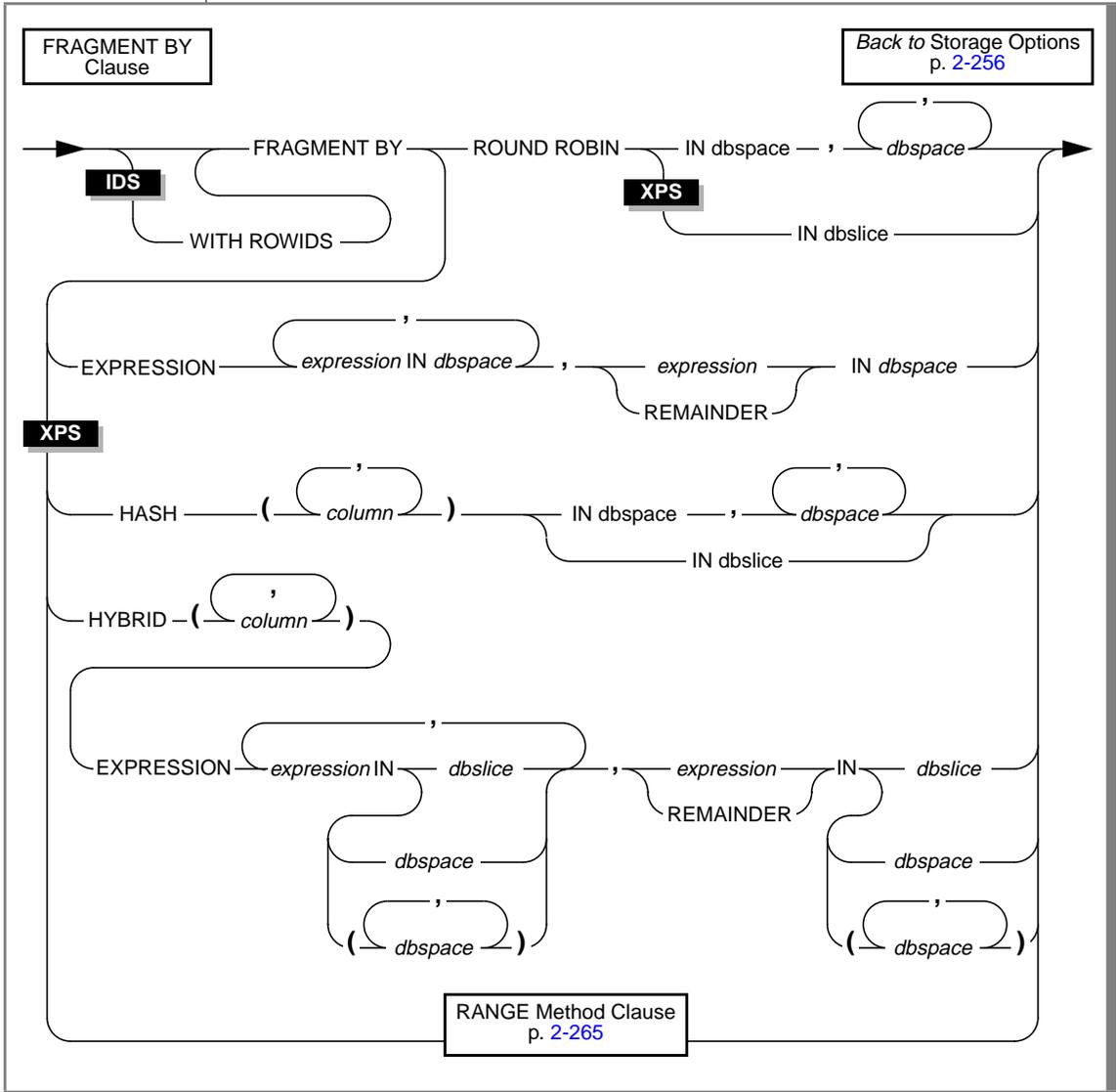
IDS

Storing Data in an extspace

In general, you use this option in conjunction with the [“USING Access-Method Clause” on page 2-279](#). Refer to the user documentation for your custom-access method for more information.

FRAGMENT BY Clause

Use the FRAGMENT BY clause to create fragmented tables and specify the distribution scheme.



CREATE TABLE

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Element
<i>column</i>	Name of the column or columns on which you want to apply the fragmentation strategy In the HYBRID clause, column identifies the column or columns on which you want to apply the hash portion of the hybrid table fragmentation strategy.	All specified columns must be in the current table. If you specify a serial column, you cannot specify any other column.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>dbslice</i>	Name of the dbslice that contains the dbspaces in which the table fragments reside	The dbslice must exist when you execute the statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>dbspace</i>	Name of the dbspace that contains the table fragment If you do not specify a location with either the IN <i>dbspace</i> clause or a fragmentation scheme, the default is the dbspace where the current database resides.	The dbspace must exist when you execute the statement. The minimum number of dbspaces that you can specify is two. The maximum number of dbspaces that you can specify is 2,048.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>expression</i>	Expression that defines which rows are stored in a fragment	Each expression can contain only columns from the current table and only data values from a single row. No subqueries, user-defined routines, serial columns, aggregates, or references to the fields of a row-type column are allowed. In addition, the built-in current, date and/or time functions are not allowed.	Expression, p. 4-73

When you fragment a table, the IN keyword introduces the storage space where a table fragment is to be stored.

IDS

Using the *WITH ROWIDS* Option

Nonfragmented tables contain a hidden column called the **rowid** column. However, fragmented tables do not contain this column. If a table is fragmented, you can use the *WITH ROWIDS* keywords to add the **rowid** column to the table. The database server assigns to each row in the **rowid** column a unique number that remains stable for the life of the row. The database server uses an index to find the physical location of the row. After you add the **rowid** column, each row contains an additional 4 bytes to store the **rowid**.



Important: Informix recommends that you use primary keys as an access method rather than the **rowid** column.

You cannot use the *WITH ROWIDS* clause with typed tables.

Fragmenting by *ROUND ROBIN*

In a round-robin distribution scheme, specify at least two dbspaces where you want the fragments to be placed. As records are inserted into the table, they are placed in the first available dbspace. The database server balances the load between the specified dbspaces as you insert records and distributes the rows in such a way that the fragments always maintain approximately the same number of rows. In this distribution scheme, the database server must scan all fragments when it searches for a row.

XPS

If you are using Extended Parallel Server, you can specify the name of a dbslice to fragment a table across a group of dbspaces that share the same naming convention. For a syntax alternative to *FRAGMENT BY ROUND ROBIN IN dbslice* that achieves the same results, see [“Storing Data in a dbslice” on page 2-258](#). ♦

IDS

Use the *PUT* clause to specify round-robin fragmentation for smart large objects. For more information, see [“PUT Clause” on page 2-273](#). ♦

Fragmenting by *EXPRESSION*

In an *expression-based* distribution scheme, each fragment expression in a rule specifies a storage space. Each fragment expression in the rule isolates data and aids the database server in searching for rows. Specify one of the following rules:

- Range rule

A range rule specifies fragment expressions that use a range to specify which rows are placed in a fragment, as the following example shows:

```
...
FRAGMENT BY EXPRESSION
c1 < 100 IN dbsp1,
c1 >= 100 AND c1 < 200 IN dbsp2,
c1 >= 200 IN dbsp3
```

- Arbitrary rule

An arbitrary rule specifies fragment expressions based on a predefined SQL expression that typically uses OR clauses to group data, as the following example shows:

```
...
FRAGMENT BY EXPRESSION
zip_num = 95228 OR zip_num = 95443 IN dbsp2,
zip_num = 91120 OR zip_num = 92310 IN dbsp4,
REMAINDER IN dbsp5
```



Warning: When you specify a date value in a fragment expression, make sure you specify 4 digits instead of 2 digits for the year. When you specify a 4-digit year, the **DBCENTURY** environment variable has no effect on the distribution scheme. When you specify a 2-digit year, the **DBCENTURY** environment variable can affect the distribution scheme and can produce unpredictable results. See the “[Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#)” for more information on the **DBCENTURY** environment variable.

Using the *REMAINDER* Keyword

Use the **REMAINDER** keyword to specify the storage space in which to store valid values that fall outside the specified expression or expressions.

If you do not specify a remainder and a row is inserted or updated such that it no longer belongs to any dbspace, the database server returns an error.

Fragmenting by HASH

If you use a hash-distribution scheme, the database server distributes the rows as you insert them so that the fragments maintain approximately the same number of rows. In this distribution scheme, the database server can eliminate fragments when it searches for a row because the hash is known internally.

For example, if you have a very large database, as in a data-warehousing environment, you can fragment your tables across disks that belong to different coservers. If you expect to perform a lot of queries that scan most of the data, you can use a system-defined hash-distribution scheme to balance the I/O processing as follows:

```
CREATE TABLE customer
(
  cust_id integer,
  descr char(45),
  level char(15),
  sale_type char(10),
  channel char(30),
  corp char(45),
  cust char(45),
  vert_mkt char(30),
  state_prov char(20),
  country char(15),
  org_cust_id char(20)
)
FRAGMENT BY HASH (cust_id) IN
    customer1_spc,
    customer2_spc,
    customer3_spc,
    customer4_spc,
    customer5_spc,
    customer6_spc,
    customer7_spc,
    customer8_spc
EXTENT SIZE 20 NEXT SIZE 16
.
.
.
```

This example uses eight coservers with one dbspace defined on each coserver.

You can also specify a *dbslice*. When you specify a *dbslice*, the database server fragments the table across the *dbspaces* that make up the *dbslice*.

Serial Columns in Hash-Distribution Schemes

If you choose to fragment on a serial column, the only distribution scheme that you can use is a hash-distribution scheme. In addition, the serial column must be the only column in the hashing key.

The following excerpt is a sample CREATE TABLE statement:

```
CREATE TABLE customer
(
  cust_id serial,
  .
  .
)
FRAGMENT BY HASH (cust_id) IN
  customer1_spc,
  customer2_spc
.
.
```

You might notice a difference between serial-column values in fragmented and nonfragmented tables. The database server assigns serial values round-robin across fragments so a fragment might contain values from noncontiguous ranges. For example, if there are two fragments, the first serial value is placed in the first fragment, the second serial value is placed in the second fragment, the third value is placed in the first fragment, and so on.

XPS

Fragmenting by HYBRID

The HYBRID clause allows you to apply two distribution schemes to the same table. You can use a combination of hash- and expression-distribution schemes or a combination of range distribution schemes on a table. This section discusses the hash and expression form of hybrid fragmentation. For more information on range fragmentation, see [“RANGE Method Clause” on page 2-265](#).

When you specify hybrid fragmentation, the `EXPRESSION` clause determines the base fragmentation strategy of the table. In this clause, you associate an expression with a set of dbspaces (`dbspace`, `dbslice`, or `dbspacelist` format) to designate where the data is stored. The hash column (or columns) determines the dbspace within the specified set of dbspaces.

When you specify a `dbslice`, the database server fragments the table across the dbspaces that make up the `dbslice`. Similarly, if you specify a `dbspacelist`, the database server fragments the table across the dbspaces specified in that list.

For example, the following table, **my_hybrid**, distributes rows based on two columns of the table. The value of `col1` determines in which `dbslice` the row belongs. The hash value of `col2` determines in which dbspace (within the previously determined `dbslice`) to insert into.

```
CREATE TABLE my_hybrid
  (col1 INT,
   col2 DATE,
   col3 CHAR(10)
  )
  HYBRID (col2)
  EXPRESSION
  col1 < 100 IN dbslice1,
  col1 >= 100 and col1 < 200 IN dbslice2,
  REMAINDER IN dbslice3
```

For more information on an expression-based distribution scheme, see [“Fragmenting by EXPRESSION” on page 2-262](#).

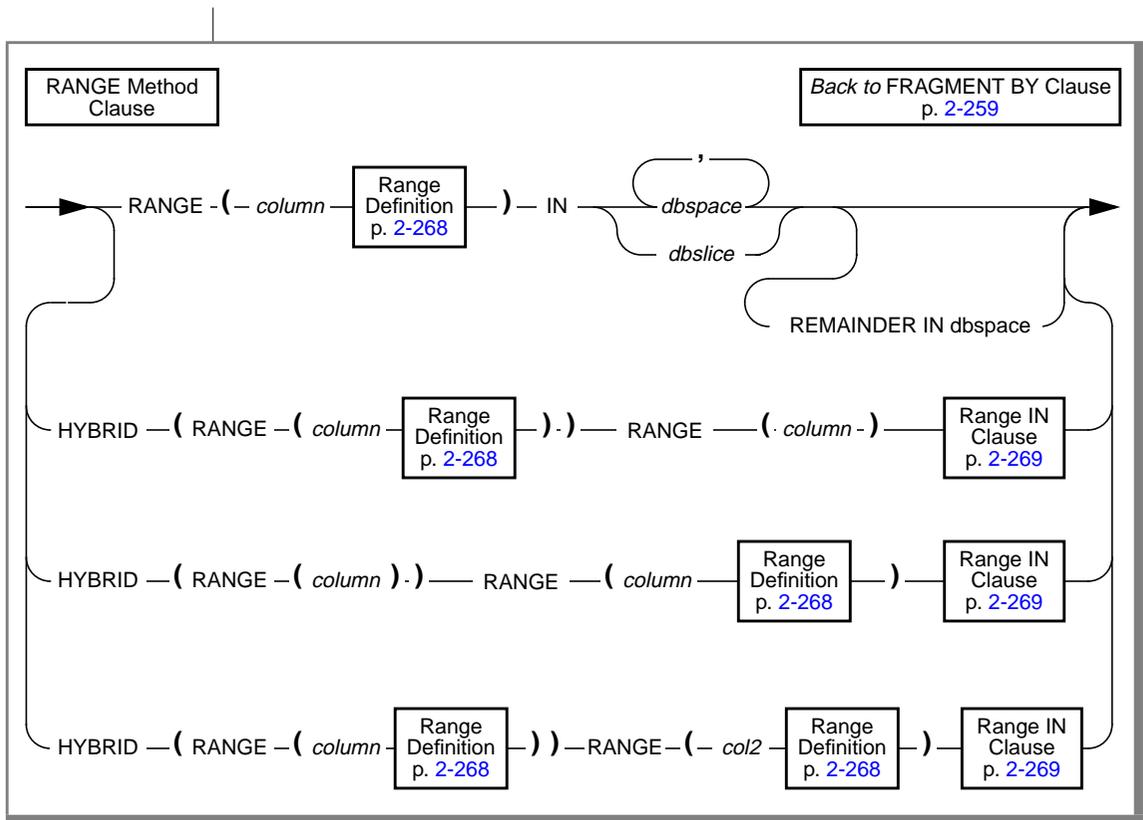
XPS

RANGE Method Clause

You can use a range-fragmentation method as a convenient alternative to fragmenting by the `EXPRESSION` or `HYBRID` clauses. This method provides a method to implicitly and uniformly distribute data whose fragmentation column values are dense or naturally uniform.

In a range-fragmented table, the database server assigns each dbspace a contiguous, completely bound and non-overlapping range of integer values over one or two columns. In other words, the database server implicitly clusters rows within the fragments based on the range of the values in the fragmentation column.

CREATE TABLE



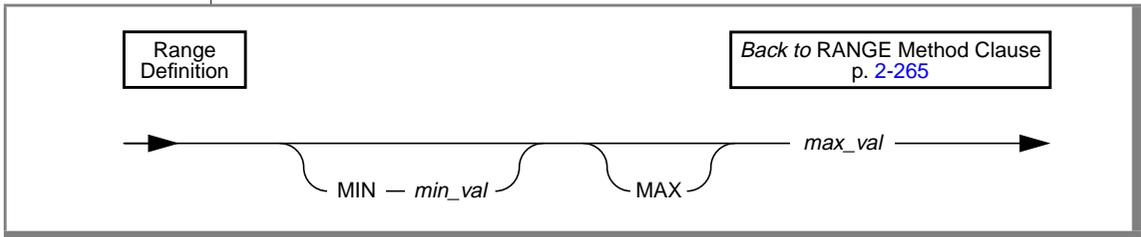
Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Element
<i>column</i>	Name of the column on which you want to apply the fragmentation strategy	<p>The column must be in the current table.</p> <p>The column must be of type INT or SMALL INT.</p> <p>If you use one of the hybrid-range fragmentation strategies in which <i>column</i> appears twice, both occurrences of <i>column</i> must be the same column.</p>	Identifier, p. 4-205

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Element
<i>col2</i>	Name of the column on which you want to apply the second fragmentation strategy	<p>The column must be of type INT or SMALL INT.</p> <p>The column must be in the current table.</p> <p>This column must be a different column from that specified in <i>column</i>.</p>	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>dbslice</i>	Name of the dbslice that contains the dbspaces in which the table fragments reside	<p>The dbslice must exist when you execute the statement.</p> <p>If you list more than one dbslice, including a remainder dbslice, each dbslice must contain the same number of dbspaces.</p>	Identifier, p.4-205
<i>dbspace</i>	Name of the dbspace that contains the table fragment	<p>The dbspace must exist when you execute the statement.</p> <p>Unless you are specifying the dbspace in the REMAINDER option, the minimum number of dbspaces that you can specify is two.</p> <p>The maximum number of dbspaces that you can specify is 2,048.</p>	Identifier, p. 4-205

(2 of 2)

Range Definition

Use the range definition to specify the minimum and maximum values of the entire range.



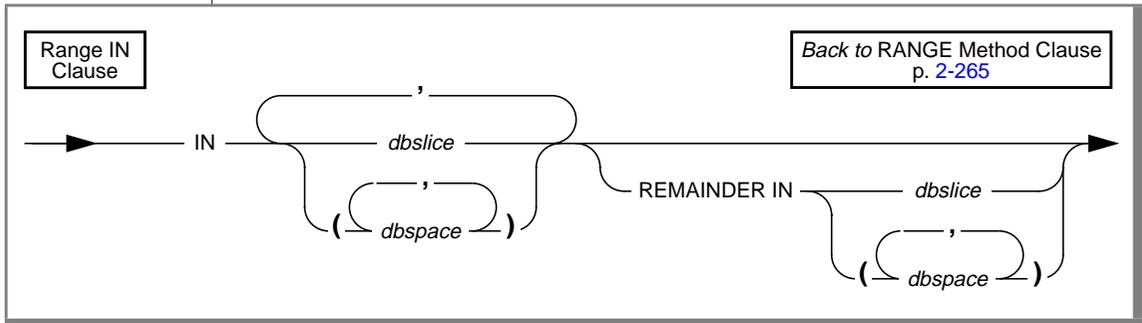
Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Element
<i>max_val</i>	Maximum value in the range	The value must be an INT or SMALLINT. The <i>max_val</i> must be greater than or equal to the <i>min_val</i> if <i>min_val</i> is supplied.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>min_val</i>	Minimum value in the range The default is 0.	The value must be an INT or SMALLINT. The <i>min_val</i> must be less than or equal to the <i>max_val</i> .	Literal Number, p. 4-237

You do not have to specify a minimum value.

The database server uses the minimum and maximum values to determine the exact range of values to allocate for each storage space.

Range IN Clause

Use the IN clause to specify the storage spaces across which to distribute the data.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Element
<i>dbslice</i>	Name of the dbslice that contains the dbspaces in which the table fragments reside	The dbslice must exist when you execute the statement. If you list more than one dbslice, including a remainder dbslice, each dbslice must contain the same number of dbspaces.	Identifier, p.4-205
<i>dbspace</i>	Name of the dbspace that contains the table fragment	The dbspace must exist when you execute the statement. Unless you are specifying the dbspace in the REMAINDER option, the minimum number of dbspaces that you can specify is two. The maximum number of dbspaces that you can specify is 2,048.	Identifier, p. 4-205

When you use a range fragmentation method, the number of integral values between the minimum and maximum specified values must be equal to or greater than the number of storage spaces specified so that the database server can allocate non-overlapping contiguous ranges across the dbspaces.

For example, the following code returns an error because the allocations for the range cannot be distributed across all specified dbspaces:

```
CREATE TABLE Tab1 (Col1 INT...)
    FRAGMENT BY RANGE (Col1 MIN 5 MAX 7)
    IN db1, db2, db3, db4, db5, db6 -- code returns an
error
```

The error for this example occurs because the specified range contains three values (5, 6, and 7), but six dbspaces are specified; three values cannot be distributed across six dbspaces.

Using the REMAINDER Keyword

Use the REMAINDER keyword to specify the storage space in which to store valid values that fall outside the specified expression or expressions.

If you do not specify a remainder and a row is inserted or updated such that it no longer belongs to any storage space, the database server returns an error.

Restrictions

If you fragment a table with range fragmentation, you cannot perform the following operations on it once it is created:

- You cannot change the fragmentation strategy (ALTER FRAGMENT).
- You cannot rename the columns of the table (RENAME COLUMN).
- You cannot duplicate the table locally (COPY TABLE).
- You cannot alter the table in any way except to change the table type or to change the lock mode.

That is, the Usage-TYPE Options and the Lock Mode Clause are the only options of the ALTER TABLE statement that you can use on a table that has range fragmentation.

Examples

The following examples illustrate range fragmentation in its simple and hybrid forms.

Simple Range Fragmentation Strategy

The following example shows a simple range fragmentation strategy:

```
CREATE TABLE Tab1 (Col1 INT...)
  FRAGMENT BY RANGE (Col1 MIN 100 MAX 200)
  IN db1, db2, db3, db4
```

In this example, the database server fragments the table according to the following allocations.

Storage Space	Holds Values
db1	100 <= Col1 < 125
db2	125 <= Col1 < 150
db3	150 <= Col1 < 175
db4	175 <= Col1 < 200

The previous table shows allocations that can also be made with an expression-based fragmentation scheme:

```
... FRAGMENT BY EXPRESSION
  Col1 >= 100 AND Col1 < 125 IN db1
  Col1 >= 125 AND Col1 < 150 IN db2
  Col1 >= 150 AND Col1 < 175 IN db3
  Col1 >= 175 AND Col1 < 200 IN db4
```

However, as the examples show, the range-fragmentation example requires much less coding to achieve the same results. The same is true for the hybrid-range fragmentation methods in relation to hybrid-expression fragmentation methods.

Column-Major-Range Allocation

The following example demonstrates the syntax for column-major-range allocation, a hybrid-range fragmentation strategy:

```
CREATE TABLE tab2 (col2 INT, colx char (5))
  FRAGMENT BY HYBRID
  ( RANGE (col2 MIN 100 MAX 220))
  RANGE (col2)
  IN dbs11, dbs12, dbs13
```

This type of fragmentation creates a distribution across dbslices and provides a further subdivision within each dbslice (across the dbspaces in the dbslice) such that when a query specifies a value for col1 (for example, WHERE col1 = 127), the query uniquely identifies a dbspace. To take advantage of the additional subdivision, you must specify more than one dbslice.

Row-Major-Range Allocation

The following example demonstrates the syntax for row-major-range allocation, a hybrid-range fragmentation strategy:

```
CREATE TABLE tab3 (col3 INT, colx char (5))
  FRAGMENT BY HYBRID
    ( RANGE (col3) )
    RANGE (col3 MIN 100 MAX 220)
    IN dbs11, dbs12, dbs13
```

This fragmentation strategy is the counterpart to the column-major-range allocation. The advantages and restrictions are equivalent.

Independent-Range Allocation

The following example demonstrates the syntax for an independent-range allocation, a hybrid-range fragmentation strategy:

```
CREATE TABLE tab4 (col4 INT, colx char (5), col5 INT)
  FRAGMENT BY HYBRID
    ( RANGE (col4 MIN 100 MAX 200) )
    RANGE (col5 MIN 500 MAX 800)
    IN dbs11, dbs12, dbs13
```

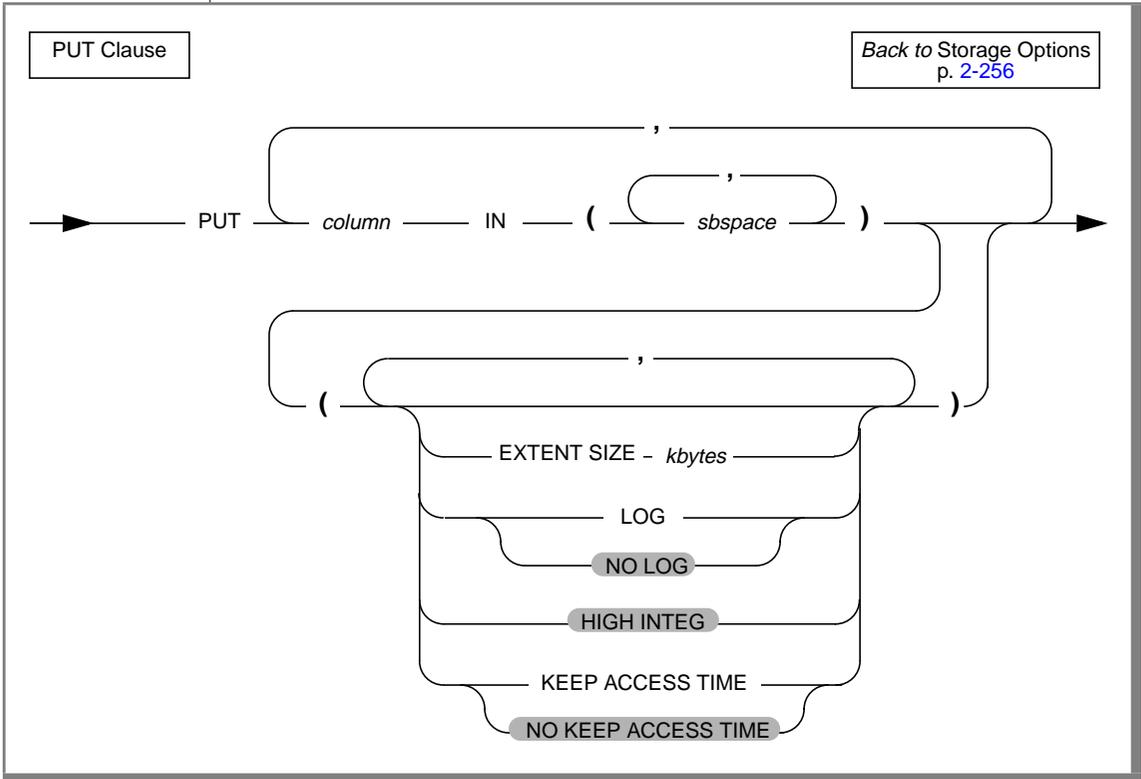
In this type of range fragmentation, the two columns are independent, and therefore the range allocations are independent. The range allocation for a dbspace on both columns is the conjunctive combination of the range allocation on each of the two independent columns. This type of fragmentation does not provide subdivisions within either column.

With this type of fragmentation, a query that specifies values for both columns (such as, WHERE col4 = 128 and col5 = 650) uniquely identifies the dbspace at the intersection of the two dbslices identified by the columns independently.

IDS

PUT Clause

Use the PUT clause to specify the storage spaces and characteristics for each column that will contain smart large objects.



CREATE TABLE

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of the column to store in the specified sbspace	Column must contain a user-defined type, complex type, BLOB, or CLOB data type. The column cannot be in the form <i>column.field</i> . That is, the smart large object that you are storing cannot be one field of a row type.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>kbytes</i>	Number of kilobytes to allocate for the extent size	The number must be an integer value.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>sbspace</i>	Name of an area of storage used for smart large objects	The sbspace must exist.	Identifier, p. 4-205

A smart large object is contained in a single sbspace. The SBSPACENAME configuration parameter specifies the system default in which smart large objects are created unless you specify another area.

When you specify more than one sbspace, the database server distributes the smart large objects in a round-robin distribution scheme so that the number of smart large objects in each space is approximately equal. The fragmentation scheme is stored in the **syscolattribs** system catalog table.

When you fragment smart large objects across different sbspaces you can work with smaller sbspaces. If you limit the size of an sbspace, backup and archive operations can perform more quickly. For an example that uses the PUT clause, see “[Storage Options](#)” on page 2-256.



Important: The PUT clause does not affect the storage of simple-large-object data types (BYTE and TEXT). For information on how to store BYTE and TEXT data, see “[Large-Object Data Types](#)” on page 4-62.

Using Options in the PUT Clause

The following table describes the storage options available when you store BLOB and CLOB data.

Option	Purpose
EXTENT SIZE	<p>Specifies the number of kilobytes in a smart-large-object extent.</p> <p>The database server might round the EXTENT SIZE up so that the extents are multiples of the sbspace page size.</p>
HIGH INTEG	<p>Produces user-data pages that contain a page header and a page trailer to detect incomplete writes and data corruption.</p> <p>This is the default data-integrity behavior.</p>
KEEP ACCESS TIME	<p>Records, in the smart-large-object metadata, the system time at which the corresponding smart large object was last read or written.</p> <p>This capability is provided for compatibility with the Illustra interface.</p>
LOG	<p>Follows the logging procedure used with the current database log for the corresponding smart large object.</p> <p>This option can generate large amounts of log traffic and increase the risk that the logical log fills up. For an alternative, see “Alternative to Full Logging” on page 2-276.</p>
NO LOG	<p>Turns off logging.</p> <p>The NO LOG option is the default logging behavior.</p>
NO KEEP ACCESS TIME	<p>Do not record the system time at which the corresponding smart large object was last read or written.</p> <p>This option provides better performance than the KEEP ACCESS TIME option.</p> <p>This option is the default tracking behavior.</p>

If a user-defined type or complex type contains more than one large object, the specified large-object storage options apply to all large objects in the type unless the storage options are overridden when the large object is created.

Alternative to Full Logging

Instead of full logging, you might turn off logging when you load the smart large object initially, and then turn logging back on once the smart large object is loaded.

Use the NO LOG option to turn off logging. If you use NO LOG, you can restore the smart-large-object metadata later to a state in which no structural inconsistencies exist. In most cases, no transaction inconsistencies will exist either, but that result is not guaranteed.

Example of Using the PUT Clause

The following statement creates the **greek** table. The data for the table is fragmented into the **db1** and **db2** dbspaces. However, the PUT clause assigns the smart-large-object data in the **gamma** and **delta** columns to the **sb1** and **sb2** sbspaces, respectively. The TEXT data in the **eps** column is assigned to the **blb1** blobspace.

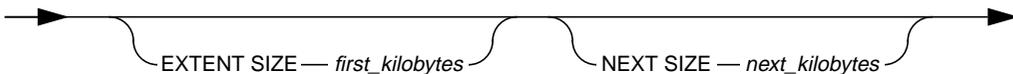
```
CREATE TABLE greek
(alpha      INTEGER,
 beta      VARCHAR(150),
 gamma     CLOB,
 delta     BLOB,
 eps       TEXT IN blb1)
FRAGMENT BY EXPRESSION
alpha <= 5 IN db1,
alpha > 5 IN db2
PUT gamma IN (sb1), delta IN (sb2)
```

EXTENT SIZE Options

Use the extent size options to define the size of the extents assigned to the table.

EXTENT SIZE Option

Back to Storage Options
p. 2-256



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>first_kilobytes</i>	Length in kilobytes of the first extent for the table The default is 16 kilobytes.	The minimum length is four times the disk-page size on your system. For example, if you have a 2-kilobyte page system, the minimum length is 8 kilobytes. The maximum length is equal to the chunk size.	Expression, p.4-73
<i>next_kilobytes</i>	Length in kilobytes for the subsequent extents The default is 16 kilobytes.	The minimum length is four times the disk-page size on your system. For example, if you have a 2-kilobyte page system, the minimum length is 8 kilobytes. The maximum length is equal to the chunk size.	Expression, p.4-73

The following example specifies a first extent of 20 kilobytes and allows the rest of the extents to use the default size:

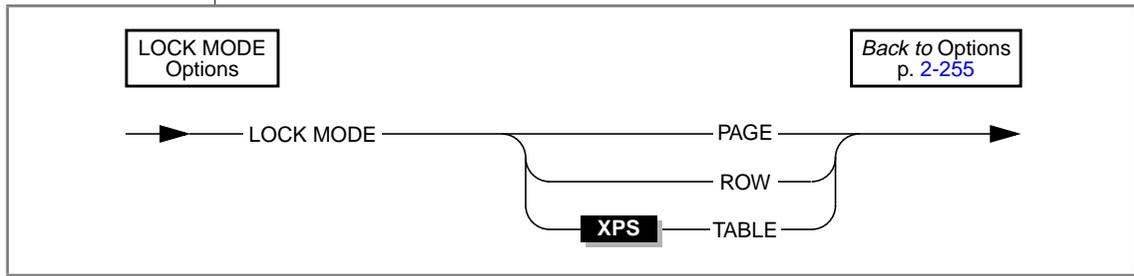
```
CREATE TABLE emp_info
(
  f_name      CHAR(20),
  l_name      CHAR(20),
  position    CHAR(20),
  start_date  DATETIME YEAR TO DAY,
  comments    VARCHAR(255)
)
EXTENT SIZE 20
```

Revising Extent Sizes

If you need to revise the extent sizes of a table, you can modify the extent and next-extent sizes in the generated schema files of an unloaded table. For example, to make a database more efficient, you might unload a table, modify the extent sizes in the schema files and then create and load a new table. For information about optimizing extents, see your [Administrator's Guide](#).

LOCK MODE Options

Use the LOCK MODE options to specify the locking granularity of the table.



The following table describes the locking-granularity options available.

Locking-Granularity Option	Purpose
ROW	Obtains and releases one lock per row Row-level locking provides the highest level of concurrency. However, if you are using many rows at one time, the lock-management overhead can become significant. You can also exceed the maximum number of locks available, depending on the configuration of your database server.
PAGE	Obtains and releases one lock on a whole page of rows This is the default locking granularity. Page-level locking is especially useful when you know that the rows are grouped into pages in the same order that you are using to process all the rows. For example, if you are processing the contents of a table in the same order as its cluster index, page locking is appropriate.
TABLE (XPS only)	Places a lock on the entire table This type of lock reduces update concurrency compared to row and page locks. A table lock reduces the lock-management overhead for the table With table locking, multiple read-only transactions can still access the table.

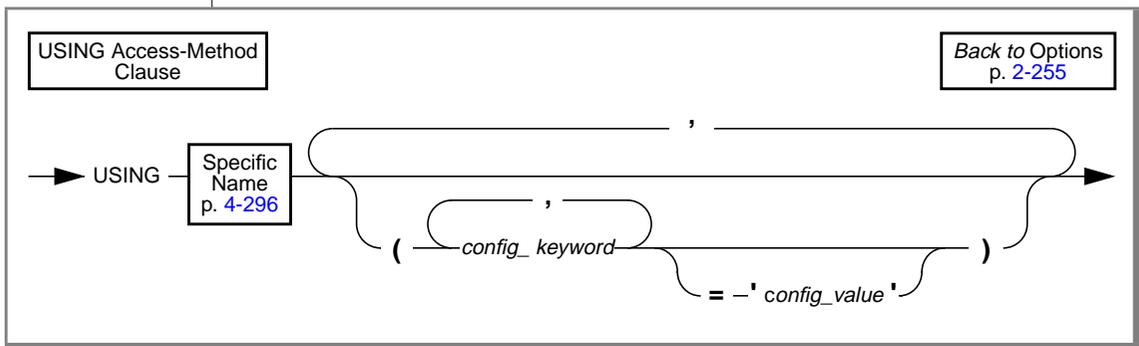
You can change the lock mode of an existing table with the ALTER TABLE statement.

USING Access-Method Clause

A primary access method is a set of routines that perform all of the operations you need to make a table available to a server, such as create, drop, insert, delete, update, and scan. The database server provides a built-in primary access method.

You store and manage a virtual table either outside of the database server in an extspace or inside the database server in an sbospace. (See [“Storage Options” on page 2-256.](#)) You can access a virtual table with SQL statements. Access to a virtual table requires a user-defined primary access method.

DataBlade modules can provide other primary access methods to access virtual tables. When you access a virtual table, the database server calls the routines associated with that access method rather than the built-in table routines. For more information on these other primary access methods, refer to your access method documentation.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<code>config_keyword</code>	Configuration keyword associated with the specified access method name	The maximum length is 18 bytes.	
<code>config_value</code>	Value of the specified configuration keyword You can retrieve a list of configuration values for an access method from a table descriptor (<code>mi_am_table_desc</code>) using the <code>MI_TAB_AMPARAM</code> macro.	The value must be defined by the access method. Not all keywords require configuration values. The maximum length is 236 bytes.	Quoted String, p. 4-260

For example, if an access method called **textfile** exists, you can specify that access method with the following syntax:

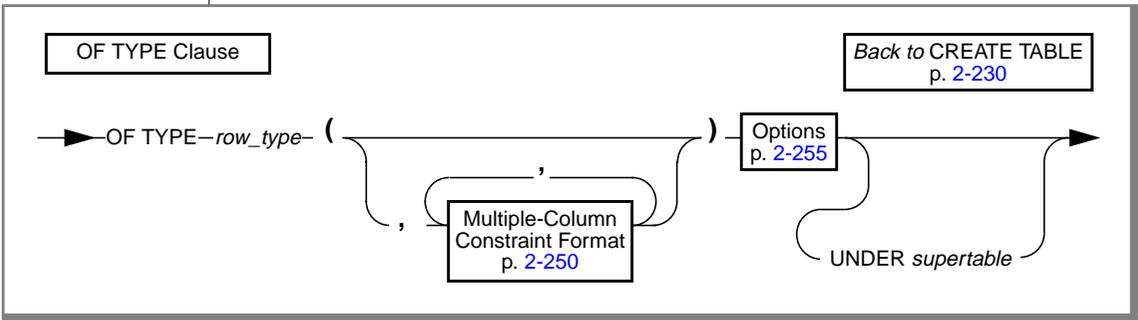
```
create table mybook
(... )
IN myextspace
USING textfile (delimiter=':')
```

The access method must already exist.

IDS

OF TYPE Clause

Use the OF TYPE clause to create a *typed table* for an object-relational database. A typed table is a table that has a named-row type assigned to it.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>row_type</i>	Name of the row type on which this table is based	This type must already exist and must be a named-row type. If you are using the UNDER clause, the row_type must be derived from the row type of the supertable.	Data Type, p. 4-53 Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>supertable</i>	Name of the table from which this table inherits its properties	The supertable must already exist as a typed table. A type hierarchy must already exist in which the named-row type of this table is a subtype of the named-row type of the supertable.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

When you create a typed table, the columns of the table are not named in the CREATE TABLE statement. Instead, the columns are specified when you create the row type. The columns of a typed table correspond to the fields of the named-row type. You cannot add additional columns to a typed table.

For example, suppose you create a named-row type, **student_t**, as follows:

```
CREATE ROW TYPE student_t
  (name      VARCHAR(30),
   average   REAL,
   birthdate DATETIME YEAR TO DAY)
```

If a table is assigned the type **student_t**, the table is a typed table whose columns are of the same name and data type (and in the same order) as the fields of the type **student_t**.

The following CREATE TABLE statement creates a typed table named **students** whose type is **student_t**:

```
CREATE TABLE students OF TYPE student_t
```

The **students** table has the following columns:

```
name      VARCHAR(30)
average   REAL
birthdate DATETIME
```

For more information about row types, refer to the CREATE ROW TYPE statement on page 1-194.

Using Large-Object Data in Typed Tables

Informix recommends that you use the BLOB or CLOB data types instead of the BYTE or TEXT data types when you create a typed table that contains columns for large objects. For backward compatibility, you can create a named-row type that contains BYTE or TEXT fields and use that type to recreate an existing (untyped) table as a typed table. However, although you can use a row type that contains BYTE or TEXT fields to create a typed table, you cannot use such a row type as a column. You can use a row type that contains BLOB or CLOB fields in both typed tables and columns.

Using the UNDER Clause

Use the UNDER clause to specify inheritance (that is, define the table as a subtable.) The subtable inherits properties from the supertable which it is under. In addition, you can define new properties specific to the subtable.

Continuing the example shown in “OF TYPE Clause” on page 2-280, the following statements create a typed table, **grad_students**, that inherits all of the columns of the **students** table. In addition, the **grad_students** table has columns for **adviser** and **field_of_study** that correspond to their respective fields in the **grad_student_t** row type:

```
CREATE ROW TYPE grad_student_t
(adviser          CHAR(25),
 field_of_study  CHAR(40))
UNDER student_t;

CREATE TABLE grad_students OF TYPE grad_student_t
UNDER students;
```

Properties That a Subtable Inherits

When you use the UNDER clause, the subtable inherits the following properties:

- All columns in the supertable
- All constraints defined on the supertable
- All indexes defined on the supertable
- Referential integrity
- The access method
- The storage option (including fragmentation strategy)

If a subtable does not define fragments, and if its supertable has fragments defined, then the subtable inherits the fragments of the supertable.
- All triggers defined on the supertable

Tip: Any heritable attributes that are added to a supertable after subtables have been created will automatically be inherited by existing subtables. You do not need to add all heritable attributes to a supertable before you create its subtables.



Inheritance occurs in one direction only—from supertable to subtable. Properties of subtables are *not* inherited by supertables.

Restrictions on the Inheritance Hierarchy

No two tables in a table hierarchy can have the same type. For example, the final line of the following code sample is illegal because the tables **tab2** and **tab3** cannot have the same row type (**rowtype2**):

```

create row type rowtype1 (...);
create row type rowtype2 (...) under rowtype1;
create table tab1 of type rowtype1;
create table tab2 of type rowtype2 under tab1;
Illegal --> create table tab3 of type rowtype2 under tab1;

```

Recording Properties in the System Catalog Tables

Constraints, indexes, and triggers are recorded in the system catalog for the supertable, but not for subtables that inherit them. Fragmentation information is recorded for both supertables and subtables.

For more information about inheritance, refer to the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

Privileges on Tables

The privileges on a table describe both who can access the information in the table and who can create new tables. For more information about privileges, see “GRANT” on page 2-500.

ANSI

In an ANSI-compliant database, no default table-level privileges exist. You must grant these privileges explicitly. ♦

When set to *yes*, the environment variable **NODEFDAC** prevents default privileges from being granted to **PUBLIC** on a new table in a database that is not ANSI compliant.

For information about how to prevent privileges from being granted to **PUBLIC**, see the **NODEFDAC** environment variable in the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#). For additional information about privileges, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

Default Index Creation Strategy for Constraints

When you create a table with unique or primary-key constraints, the database server creates an internal, unique, ascending index for each constraint.

When you create a table with a referential constraint, the database server creates an internal, nonunique, ascending index for each column specified in the referential constraint.

The database server stores this internal index in the same location that the table uses. If you fragment the table, the database server stores the index fragments in the same dbspaces as the table fragments or in some cases, the database dbspace.

If you require an index fragmentation strategy that is independent of the underlying table fragmentation, do not include the constraint when you create the table. Instead, use the CREATE INDEX statement to create a unique index with the desired fragmentation strategy. Then use the ALTER TABLE statement to add the constraint. The new constraint will use the previously defined index.



Important: *In a database without logging, detached checking is the only kind of constraint checking available. Detached checking means that constraint checking is performed on a row-by-row basis.*

System Catalog Information

When you create a table, the database server adds basic information about the table to the **systables** system catalog table and column information to **syscolumns** table. The **sysblobs** table contains information about the location of dbspaces and simple large objects. The **syschunks** table in the **sysmaster** database contains information about the location of smart large objects.

The **systabauth**, **syscolauth**, **sysfragauth**, **sysprocauth**, **sysusers**, and **sysxtdtypeauth** tables contain information about the privileges that various CREATE TABLE options require. The **systables**, **sysxdtypes**, and **sysinherits** system catalog tables provide information about table types.

Related Information

Related statements: [ALTER TABLE](#), [CREATE INDEX](#), [CREATE DATABASE](#), [CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE](#), [CREATE ROW TYPE](#), [CREATE Temporary TABLE](#), [DROP TABLE](#), [SET Database Object Mode](#), and [SET Transaction Mode](#)

For discussions of database and table creation, including discussions on data types, data-integrity constraints, and tables in hierarchies, see the [Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation](#).

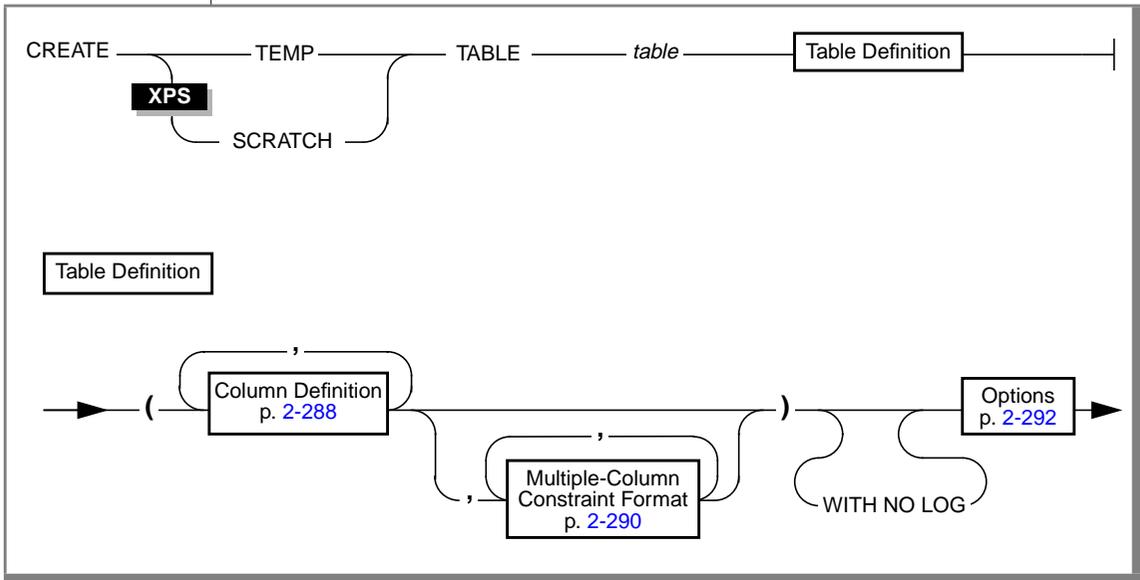
For information about the system catalog tables that store information about objects in the database, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

For information about the **syschunks** table (in the **sysmaster** database) that contains information about the location of smart large objects, see your [Administrator's Reference](#).

CREATE Temporary TABLE

Use the CREATE Temporary TABLE statement to create a temporary table in the current database.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>table</i>	Name assigned to the table	The name must be unique in the database.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

If you have the Connect privilege on a database, you can create a temporary table. However, you are the only user who can see the temporary table.

In DB-Access, using the CREATE Temporary TABLE statement outside the CREATE SCHEMA statement generates warnings if you set `DBANSIWARN`. ♦

DB

E/C

The CREATE TABLE statement generates warnings if you use the **-ansi** flag or set the **DBANSIWARN** environment variable. ♦

Using the TEMP Option

Once a TEMP table is created, you can build indexes on the table.

IDS

If your database does not have logging, the table behaves in the same way as a table that uses the WITH NO LOG option. ♦

XPS

Using the SCRATCH Option

Use the INTO SCRATCH clause to reduce the overhead of transaction logging. A scratch table is a nonlogging temporary table that does not support indexes or referential constraints. A scratch table is identical to a TEMP table created with the WITH NO LOG option. Operations on scratch tables are not included in transaction-log operations.

Naming a Temporary Table

A temporary table is associated with a session, not a database. Therefore, when you create a temporary table, you cannot create another temporary table with the same name (even for another database) until you drop the first temporary table or end the session.

The name must be different from existing table, view, or synonym names in the current database; however, it need not be different from other temporary table names used by other users.

ANSI

In an ANSI-compliant database, the combination *owner.table* must be unique in the database. ♦

Using the WITH NO LOG Option

XPS

Informix recommends that you use a scratch table rather than a TEMP...WITH NO LOG table. The behavior of a temporary table that you create with the WITH NO LOG option is the same as that of a scratch table. ♦

Use the WITH NO LOG option to reduce the overhead of transaction logging. If you use the WITH NO LOG option, operations on the temporary table are not included in the transaction-log operations.

IDS

You must use the WITH NO LOG option on temporary tables you create in temporary dbspaces.

If you use the WITH NO LOG option in a database that does not use logging, the WITH NO LOG option is ignored. ♦

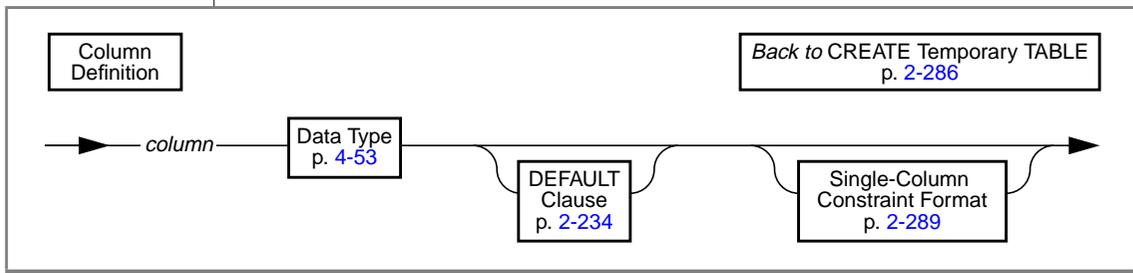
Once you turn off logging on a temporary table, you cannot turn it back on; a temporary table is, therefore, always logged or never logged.

The following example shows how to prevent logging temporary tables in a database that uses logging:

```
CREATE TEMP TABLE tab2
    (fname CHAR(15),
     lname CHAR(15))
WITH NO LOG
```

Column Definition

Use the column definition portion of CREATE Temporary TABLE to list the name, data type, default value, and constraints of a *single column*.

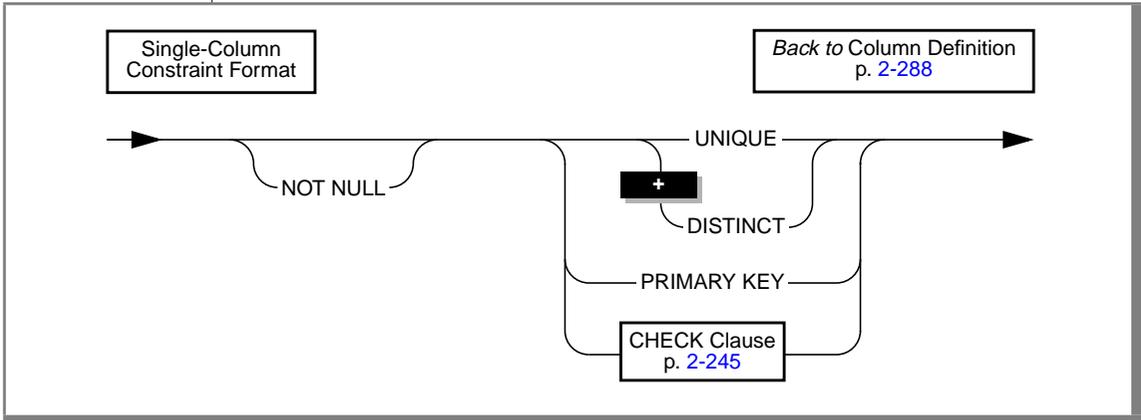


Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of a column in the table	The name must be unique in a table, but you can use the same names in different tables in the same database.	Identifier, p. 4-205

This portion of the CREATE Temporary TABLE statement is almost identical to the corresponding section in the CREATE TABLE statement. The difference is that fewer types of constraints are allowed in a temporary table.

Single-Column Constraint Format

Use the single column constraint format to create one or more data-integrity constraints for a single column in a temporary table.



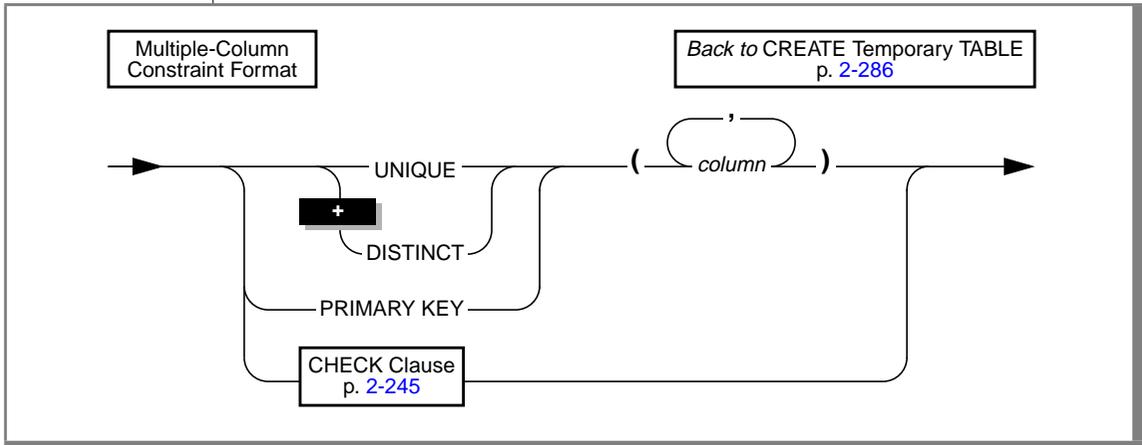
The following table indicates where you can find detailed discussions of specific constraints.

Constraint	For more information, see
CHECK	“CHECK Clause” on page 2-245
DISTINCT	“Using the UNIQUE or DISTINCT Constraints” on page 2-239
NOT NULL	“Using the NOT NULL Constraint” on page 2-239.
PRIMARY KEY	“Using the PRIMARY KEY Constraint” on page 2-240
UNIQUE	“Using the UNIQUE or DISTINCT Constraints” on page 2-239

Constraints you define on temporary tables are always enabled.

Multiple-Column Constraint Format

Use the multiple-column constraint format to associate one or more columns with a constraint. This alternative to the single-column constraint format allows you to associate multiple columns with a constraint.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of the column or columns on which the constraint is placed	The name must be unique in a table, but you can use the same names in different tables in the same database.	Identifier, p. 4-205

This alternative to the column-level constraints portion of the CREATE TABLE statement allows you to associate multiple columns with a constraint.

Constraints you define on temporary tables are always enabled.

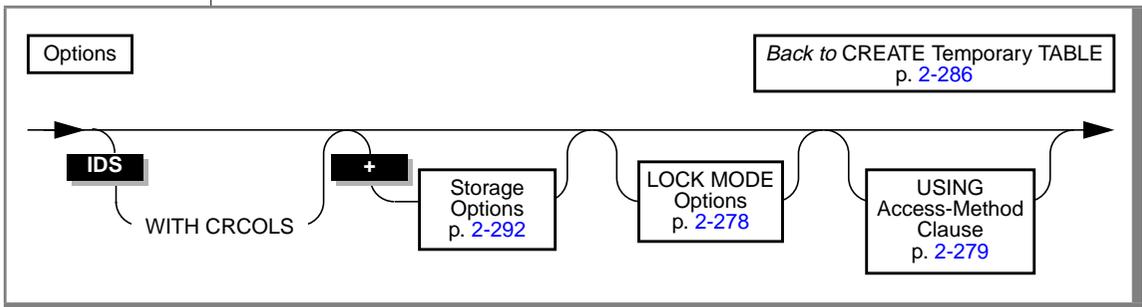
The following table indicates where you can find detailed discussions of specific constraints.

Constraint	For more information, see	For an Example, see
CHECK	“CHECK Clause” on page 2-245	“Defining Check Constraints Across Columns” on page 2-253
DISTINCT	“Using the UNIQUE or DISTINCT Constraints” on page 2-239	“Examples that Use the Multiple-Column Constraint Format” on page 2-253
PRIMARY KEY	“Using the PRIMARY KEY Constraint” on page 2-240	“Defining Composite Primary and Foreign Keys” on page 2-254
UNIQUE	“Using the UNIQUE or DISTINCT Constraints” on page 2-239	“Examples that Use the Multiple-Column Constraint Format” on page 2-253

Options

The CREATE TABLE options let you specify storage locations, locking modes, and user-defined access methods

You cannot specify initial and next extents for a temporary table. Extents for a temporary table are always eight pages.

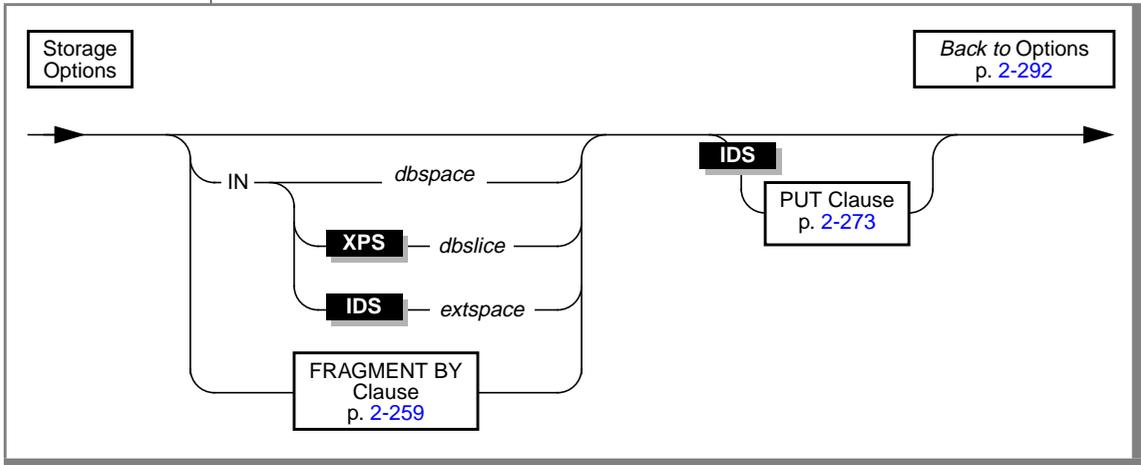


Storage Options

Use the storage-option portion of the CREATE Temporary Table statement to specify the distribution scheme for the table.

XPS

If you are using Extended Parallel Server, you can fragment a temporary table across multiple dbspaces that different coservers manage. ♦



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>dbspace</i>	Name of the dbspace in which to store the table The default for database tables is the dbspace in which the current database resides.	Specified dbspace must already exist.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>dbslice</i>	Name of the dbslice in which to store the table	The specified dbslice must already exist.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>extspace</i>	Name assigned with the onspaces command to a storage area outside the database server	Specified <i>extspace</i> must already exist.	Refer to the user documentation for your custom access method for more information.

If you plan to create a fragmented, unique index on a temporary table, you must specify an explicit expression-based distribution scheme for a temporary table in the CREATE Temporary TABLE statement.

Where Temporary Tables are Stored

The distribution scheme that you specify with the CREATE Temporary TABLE statement (either with the IN clause or the FRAGMENT BY clause) takes precedence over the information specified in the **DBSPACETEMP** environment variable and the DBSPCETEMP configuration parameter.

For temporary tables for which you do not specify an explicit distribution scheme, each temporary table that you create round-robins to a dbspace specified by the **DBSPACETEMP** environment variable or the DBSPACETEMP configuration parameter if the environment variable is not set. For example, if you create three temporary tables, the first one goes into the dbspace called **tempspc1**, the second one goes into **tempspc2**, and the third one goes into **tempspc3**.

This behavior also applies temporary tables that you create with SELECT...INTO TEMP or SELECT...INTO SCRATCH.

For more information on the **DBSPACETEMP** environment variable, see [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

For more information on the DBSPACETEMP configuration parameter, see your [Administrator's Reference](#).

Example

The following example shows how to insert data into a temporary table called **result_tmp** to output to a file the results of a user-defined function (**f_one**) that returns multiple rows.

```
CREATE TEMP TABLE result_tmp( ... );
INSERT INTO result_tmp EXECUTE FUNCTION f_one();
UNLOAD TO 'file' SELECT * FROM temp1;
```

In Extended Parallel Server, to recreate this example use the CREATE PROCEDURE statement instead of the CREATE FUNCTION statement. ♦

Differences between Temporary Tables and Permanent Tables

Temporary tables differ from permanent tables in a number of ways. Temporary tables:

- have fewer types of constraints available.
- have fewer options that you can specify.
- are not preserved.

For more information, see [“Duration of Temporary Tables” on page 2-294](#).

- are not visible to other users or sessions.
- do not appear in the system catalogs.

XPS

You can use the following data definition statements on a temporary table from a secondary coserver: CREATE Temporary TABLE, CREATE INDEX, CREATE SCHEMA, DROP TABLE, and DROP INDEX.

DB

You cannot use the INFO statement and the Info Menu option with temporary tables. ♦

Duration of Temporary Tables

The duration of a temporary table depends on whether or not that table is logged.

Logged Temporary Tables

A logged, temporary table exists until one of the following situations occurs:

- The application disconnects.
- A DROP TABLE statement is issued on the temporary table.
- The database is closed.

When any of these events occur, the temporary table is deleted.

Nonlogging Temporary Tables

Nonlogging temporary tables include temp tables created with the WITH NO LOG option and SCRATCH tables.

A nonlogging, temporary table exists until one of the following situations occurs:

- The application disconnects.
- A DROP TABLE statement is issued on the temporary table.

Because these tables do not disappear when the database is closed, you can use a nonlogging temporary table to transfer data from one database to another while the application remains connected.

Related Information

Related statements: [ALTER TABLE](#), [CREATE TABLE](#), [CREATE DATABASE](#), [DROP TABLE](#), and [SELECT](#)

For additional information about the **DBANSIWARN** and **DBSPACETEMP** environment variables, refer to the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

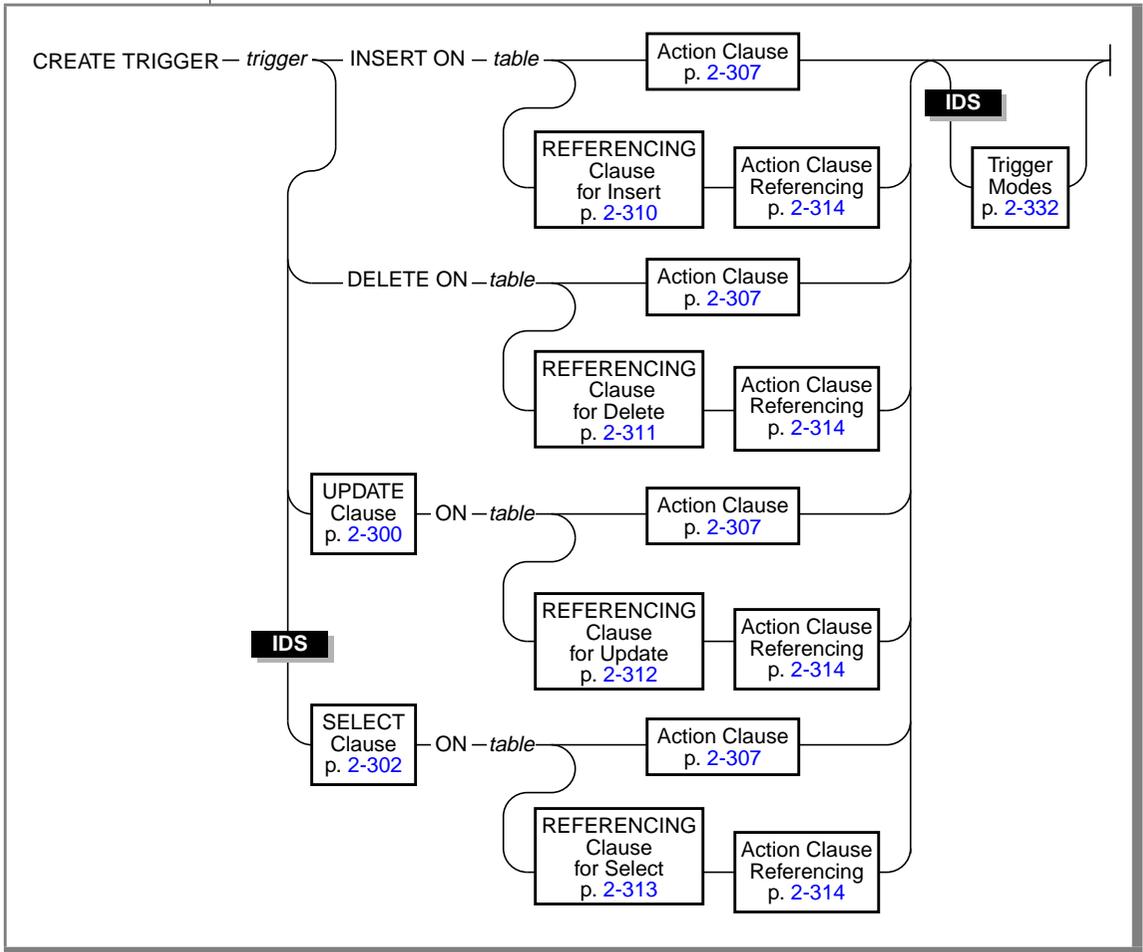
For additional information about the ONCONFIG parameter DBSPACETEMP, see your [Administrator's Guide](#).



CREATE TRIGGER

Use the CREATE TRIGGER statement to create a trigger on a table.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>table</i>	Name of the table that the trigger affects	The name must be different from any existing table, view, or synonym name in the current database.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>trigger</i>	Name of the trigger	You can specify a trigger for the current database only. The name of the trigger must be unique.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

You can use the CREATE TRIGGER statement to define a trigger on a table. A trigger is a database object that automatically sets off a specified set of SQL statements when a specified event occurs.

XPS

You cannot create a trigger on a raw or static table. When you create a trigger on an operational table, the table cannot use light appends. For more information on light appends, see your [Administrator's Guide](#).

Information in this statement that discusses nonlogging databases does not apply to Extended Parallel Server. In Extended Parallel Server, all databases are logging databases. ♦

Rules for Triggers

You must be either the owner of the table or have the DBA status to create a trigger on a table.

For information about the relationship between the privileges of the trigger owner and the privileges of other users, see “[Privileges to Execute Triggered Actions](#)” on page 2-326.

IDS

You can use roles with triggers. Role-related statements (CREATE ROLE, DROP ROLE, and SET ROLE) and SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION statements can be triggered inside a trigger. Privileges that a user has acquired through enabling a role or through a SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION statement are not relinquished when a trigger is executed. ♦

When you create a trigger, the name of the trigger must be unique within a database.

You can create a trigger only on a table in the current database. You cannot create a trigger on a temporary table, a view, or a system catalog table.

You cannot create a trigger inside an SPL routine if the routine is called inside a data manipulation statement. For example, in the following INSERT statement, if the `sp_items` procedure contains a trigger, the database server returns an error:

```
INSERT INTO items EXECUTE PROCEDURE sp_items
```

For a list of data manipulation statements, see [“Data Manipulation Statements” on page 1-10](#).

You cannot use an SPL variable in a CREATE TRIGGER statement.

In DB-Access, if you want to define a trigger as part of a schema, place the CREATE TRIGGER statement inside a CREATE SCHEMA statement. ♦

If you are embedding the CREATE TRIGGER statement in an ESQL/C program, you cannot use a host variable in the trigger specification. ♦

Trigger Events

The trigger event specifies the type of statement that activates a trigger. The trigger event can be an INSERT, DELETE, UPDATE, or SELECT statement. Each trigger can have only one trigger event. The occurrence of the trigger event is the *triggering statement*.

For each table, you can define only one trigger that is activated by an INSERT statement and only one trigger that is activated by a DELETE statement. For each table, you can define multiple triggers that are activated by UPDATE statements or SELECT statements. For more information about multiple update or select triggers on the same table, see [“UPDATE Clause” on page 2-300](#) and [“SELECT Clause” on page 2-302](#).

You cannot define a DELETE trigger event on a table with a referential constraint that specifies ON DELETE CASCADE.

You are responsible for guaranteeing that the triggering statement returns the same result with and without the triggered actions. For more information on the behavior of triggered actions, see [“Action Clause” on page 2-307](#) and [“Triggered Action List” on page 2-315](#).

DB

E/C

A triggering statement from an external database server can activate the trigger. As shown in the following example, an insert trigger on **newtab**, managed by **dbserver1**, is activated by an INSERT statement from **dbserver2**. The trigger executes as if the insert originated on **dbserver1**.

```
-- Trigger on stores_demo@dbserver1:newtab

CREATE TRIGGER ins_tr INSERT ON newtab
REFERENCING new AS post_ins
FOR EACH ROW(EXECUTE PROCEDURE nt_pct (post_ins.mc));

-- Triggering statement from dbserver2

INSERT INTO stores_demo@dbserver1:newtab
  SELECT item_num, order_num, quantity, stock_num,
  manu_code,
  total_price FROM items;
```

Trigger Events with Cursors

If the triggering statement uses a cursor, the complete trigger is activated each time the statement executes. That is, each part of the trigger (BEFORE, FOR EACH ROW, and AFTER) is activated for each row that the cursor processes.

This behavior is different from what occurs when a triggering statement does not use a cursor and updates multiple rows. In this case, the set of triggered actions executes only once. For more information on the execution of triggered actions, see [“Action Clause” on page 2-307](#).

Privileges on the Trigger Event

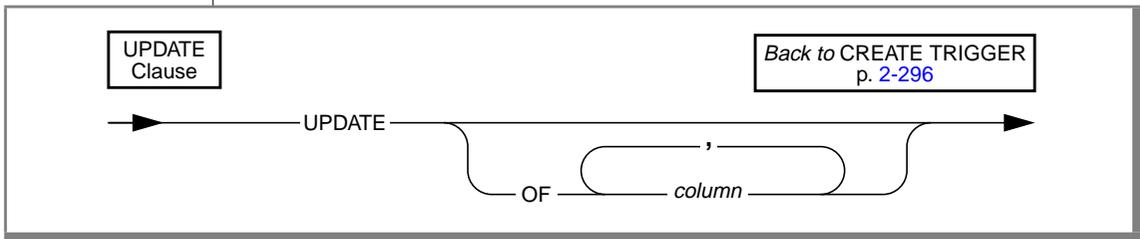
You must have the appropriate Insert, Delete, Update, or Select privilege on the triggering table to execute the INSERT, DELETE, UPDATE, or SELECT statement that is the trigger event. The triggering statement might still fail, however, if you do not have the privileges necessary to execute one of the SQL statements in the action clause. When the triggered actions are executed, the database server checks your privileges for each SQL statement in the trigger definition as if the statement were being executed independently of the trigger. For information on the privileges you need to execute a trigger, see [“Privileges to Execute Triggered Actions” on page 2-326](#).

Performance Impact of Triggers

The INSERT, DELETE, UPDATE, and SELECT statements that initiate triggers might appear to execute slowly because they activate additional SQL statements, and the user might not know that other actions are occurring.

The execution time for a triggering data manipulation statement depends on the complexity of the triggered action and whether it initiates other triggers. Obviously, the elapsed time for the triggering data manipulation statement increases as the number of cascading triggers increases. For more information on triggers that initiate other triggers, see [“Cascading Triggers” on page 2-327](#).

UPDATE Clause



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of a column or columns that activate the trigger The default is all the columns in the table on which you create the trigger.	The specified columns must belong to the table on which you create the trigger. If you define more than one update trigger on a table, the column lists of the triggering statements must be mutually exclusive.	Identifier, p. 4-205

If the trigger event is an UPDATE statement, the trigger executes when any column in the triggering column list is updated.

If the trigger event is an UPDATE statement and you do not specify the OF *column* option in the definition of the trigger event, the trigger executes when any column in the triggering table is updated.

If the triggering UPDATE statement updates more than one of the triggering columns in a trigger, the trigger executes only once.

Defining Multiple Update Triggers

If you define more than one update trigger event on a table, the column lists of the triggers must be mutually exclusive. The following example shows that **trig3** is illegal on the **items** table because its column list includes **stock_num**, which is a triggering column in **trig1**. Multiple update triggers on a table cannot include the same columns.

```
CREATE TRIGGER trig1 UPDATE OF item_num, stock_num ON items
REFERENCING OLD AS pre NEW AS post
FOR EACH ROW(EXECUTE PROCEDURE proc1());

CREATE TRIGGER trig2 UPDATE OF manu_code ON items
BEFORE(EXECUTE PROCEDURE proc2());

-- Illegal trigger: stock_num occurs in trig1
CREATE TRIGGER trig3 UPDATE OF order_num, stock_num ON items
BEFORE(EXECUTE PROCEDURE proc3());
```

When an UPDATE Statement Activates Multiple Triggers

When an UPDATE statement updates multiple columns that have different triggers, the column numbers of the triggering columns determine the order of trigger execution. Execution begins with the smallest triggering column number and proceeds in order to the largest triggering column number. The following example shows that table **taba** has four columns (**a**, **b**, **c**, **d**):

```
CREATE TABLE taba (a int, b int, c int, d int)
```

Define **trig1** as an update on columns **a** and **c**, and define **trig2** as an update on columns **b** and **d**, as shown in the following example:

```
CREATE TRIGGER trig1 UPDATE OF a, c ON taba
AFTER (UPDATE tabb SET y = y + 1);

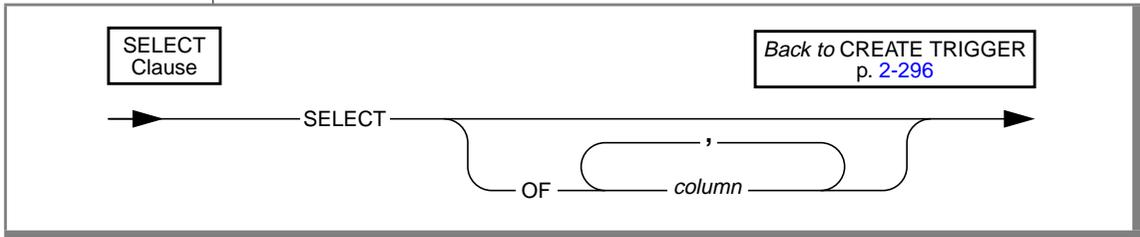
CREATE TRIGGER trig2 UPDATE OF b, d ON taba
AFTER (UPDATE tabb SET z = z + 1);
```

The triggering statement is shown in the following example:

```
UPDATE taba SET (b, c) = (b + 1, c + 1)
```

Then **trig1** for columns **a** and **c** executes first, and **trig2** for columns **b** and **d** executes next. In this case, the smallest column number in the two triggers is column 1 (**a**), and the next is column 2 (**b**).

SELECT Clause



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of a column or columns that activate the trigger The default is all the columns in the table on which you create the trigger.	The specified columns must belong to the table on which you create the trigger. If you define more than one select trigger on a table, the column lists of the triggering statements must be mutually exclusive.	Identifier, p. 4-205

If the trigger event is a SELECT statement, the trigger executes when any column in the triggering column list is selected.

If the trigger event is a SELECT statement and you do not specify the *OF column* option in the definition of the trigger event, the trigger executes when any column in the triggering table is selected.

If the triggering SELECT statement selects more than one of the triggering columns in a trigger, the trigger executes only once.

The triggered action of a select trigger cannot include UPDATE, INSERT, or DELETE actions on the triggering table. However, the triggered action of a select trigger can include UPDATE, INSERT, and DELETE actions on tables other than the triggering table.

The following example shows how a select trigger is defined within a CREATE TRIGGER statement:

```
CREATE TRIGGER mytrig
  SELECT OF cola ON mytab
  REFERENCING OLD AS pre
  FOR EACH ROW (INSERT INTO newtab('for each action'))
```

XPS

IDS

Circumstances When a Select Trigger is Activated

A SELECT statement on the triggering table activates a select trigger in the following circumstances:

- The SELECT statement is a standalone SELECT statement.
- The SELECT statement occurs within a UDR called in a select list.
- The SELECT statement is a subquery in a select list.
- The SELECT statement occurs within a UDR called by EXECUTE PROCEDURE. ♦
- The SELECT statement occurs within a UDR called by EXECUTE PROCEDURE or EXECUTE FUNCTION.
- The SELECT statement selects data from a supertable in a table hierarchy. In this case the SELECT statement activates select triggers for the supertable and all the subtables in the hierarchy. ♦

For information on the conditions when a SELECT statement on the triggering table does not activate a select trigger, see [“Circumstances When a Select Trigger is Not Activated” on page 2-305](#).

Standalone SELECT Statements

A select trigger is activated if the triggering column appears in the select list of a standalone SELECT statement. For example, assume that a select trigger was defined such that it will execute whenever column **col1** of table **tab1** is selected. Both of the following standalone SELECT statements will activate the select trigger:

```
SELECT * FROM tab1;
SELECT col1 FROM tab1;
```

SELECT Statements within UDRs in the Select List

A select trigger is activated by a UDR if the UDR contains a SELECT statement within its statement block and if the UDR appears in the select list of a SELECT statement. For example, assume that a UDR named **my_rtn** contains the following SELECT statement in its statement block:

```
SELECT col1 FROM tab1
```

CREATE TRIGGER

Now suppose that the following SELECT statement invokes the **my_rtn** UDR in its select list:

```
SELECT my_rtn() FROM tab2
```

This SELECT statement activates the select trigger defined on column **col1** of table **tab1** when the **my_rtn** UDR is executed.

UDRs Called by EXECUTE PROCEDURE and EXECUTE FUNCTION

A select trigger is activated by a UDR if the UDR contains a SELECT statement within its statement block and the UDR is called by an EXECUTE PROCEDURE or EXECUTE FUNCTION statement. For example, assume that the user-defined procedure named **my_rtn** contains the following SELECT statement in its statement block:

```
SELECT col1 FROM tab1
```

Now suppose that the following EXECUTE PROCEDURE statement invokes the **my_rtn** procedure:

```
EXECUTE PROCEDURE my_rtn()
```

This EXECUTE PROCEDURE statement activates the select trigger defined on column **col1** of table **tab1** when the SELECT statement within the statement block is executed.

Subqueries in the Select List

A select trigger is activated by a subquery if the subquery appears in the select list of a SELECT statement. For example, if a select trigger was defined on **col1** of **tab1**, the subquery in the following SELECT statement activates the select trigger:

```
SELECT (SELECT col1 FROM tab1 WHERE col1=1),  
       colx, col y  
FROM tabz
```

Select Triggers in Table Hierarchies

A subtable inherits the select triggers that are defined on its supertable. When you select from a supertable, the SELECT statement activates the select triggers on the supertable and the inherited select triggers on the subtables in the table hierarchy. For example, assume that table **tab1** is the supertable and table **tab2** is the subtable in a table hierarchy. If the select trigger **trig1** is defined on table **tab1**, a SELECT statement on table **tab1** activates the select trigger **trig1** for the rows in table **tab1** and the inherited select trigger **trig1** for the rows in table **tab2**.

If you add a select trigger to a subtable, this select trigger can override the select trigger that the subtable inherits from its supertable. For example, if the select trigger **trig1** is defined on column **col1** in supertable **tab1**, the subtable **tab2** inherits this trigger. But if you define a select trigger named **trig2** on column **col1** in subtable **tab2**, and a SELECT statement selects from **col1** in supertable **tab1**, this SELECT statement activates trigger **trig1** for the rows in table **tab1** and trigger **trig2** (not trigger **trig1**) for the rows in table **tab2**. In other words, the trigger that you add to the subtable overrides the trigger that the subtable inherits from the supertable.

Circumstances When a Select Trigger is Not Activated

A SELECT statement on the triggering table does not activate a select trigger in certain circumstances:

- If a subquery or UDR containing the triggering SELECT statement appears in any clause of a SELECT statement other than the select list, the select trigger is not activated.

For example, if the subquery or UDR appears in the WHERE clause or HAVING clause of a SELECT statement, the SELECT statement within the subquery or UDR does not activate the select trigger.

- If a SELECT statement contains a built-in aggregate or user-defined aggregate in its select list, the select trigger is not activated. For example, the following SELECT statement does not activate a select trigger defined on **col1** of **tab1**:

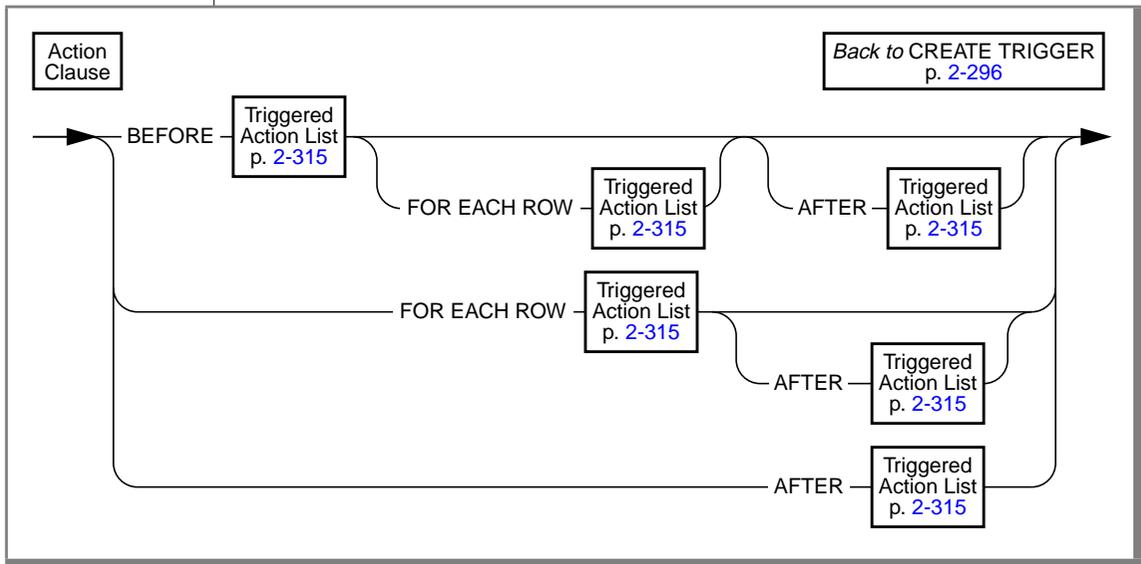
```
SELECT MIN(col1) FROM tab1
```

- If the triggered action of a select trigger executes a UDR that has a triggering SELECT statement, the select trigger on this SELECT statement is not activated. Cascading select triggers are not supported.
- If a SELECT statement includes the UNION or UNION ALL operator, this statement does not activate a select trigger.
- The SELECT clause of an INSERT statement does not activate a select trigger.
- If the select list of a SELECT statement includes the DISTINCT or UNIQUE keywords, the SELECT statement does not activate a select trigger.
- Select triggers are not supported on scroll cursors.

Select Triggers and FOR EACH ROW Actions

If the triggered action of a select trigger is a FOR EACH ROW action, and a row appears more than once in the result of the triggering SELECT statement, the database server executes the FOR EACH ROW action for each instance of the row. For example, the same row can appear more than once in the result of a SELECT statement that joins two tables. For more information on FOR EACH ROW actions, see [“FOR EACH ROW Actions” on page 2-308](#).

Action Clause



The action clause defines the characteristics of triggered actions and specifies the time when these actions occur. You must define at least one triggered action, using the keywords **BEFORE**, **FOR EACH ROW**, or **AFTER** to indicate when the action occurs relative to the triggering statement. You can specify triggered actions for all three options on a single trigger, but you must order them in the following sequence: **BEFORE**, **FOR EACH ROW**, and **AFTER**. You cannot follow a **FOR EACH ROW** triggered action list with a **BEFORE** triggered action list. If the first triggered action list is **FOR EACH ROW**, an **AFTER** action list is the only option that can follow it. For more information on the action clause when a **REFERENCING** clause is present, see [“Action Clause Referencing”](#) on page 2-314.

BEFORE Actions

The **BEFORE** triggered action or actions execute once before the triggering statement executes. If the triggering statement does not process any rows, the **BEFORE** triggered actions still execute because the database server does not yet know whether any row is affected.

FOR EACH ROW Actions

The FOR EACH ROW triggered action or actions execute once for each row that the triggering statement affects. The triggered SQL statement executes after the triggering statement processes each row.

If the triggering statement does not insert, delete, update, or select any rows, the FOR EACH ROW triggered actions do not execute.

You cannot have FOR EACH ROW actions on tables that have globally-detached indexes. ♦

AFTER Actions

An AFTER triggered action or actions execute once after the action of the triggering statement is complete. If the triggering statement does not process any rows, the AFTER triggered actions still execute.

Actions of Multiple Triggers

When an UPDATE statement activates multiple triggers, the triggered actions merge. Assume that **taba** has columns **a**, **b**, **c**, and **d**, as shown in the following example:

```
CREATE TABLE taba (a int, b int, c int, d int)
```

Next, assume that you define **trig1** on columns **a** and **c**, and **trig2** on columns **b** and **d**. If both triggers have triggered actions that are executed BEFORE, FOR EACH ROW, and AFTER, then the triggered actions are executed in the following sequence:

1. BEFORE action list for trigger (**a**, **c**)
2. BEFORE action list for trigger (**b**, **d**)
3. FOR EACH ROW action list for trigger (**a**, **c**)
4. FOR EACH ROW action list for trigger (**b**, **d**)
5. AFTER action list for trigger (**a**, **c**)
6. AFTER action list for trigger (**b**, **d**)

The database server treats the triggers as a single trigger, and the triggered action is the merged-action list. All the rules governing a triggered action apply to the merged list as one list, and no distinction is made between the two original triggers.

Guaranteeing Row-Order Independence

In a FOR EACH ROW triggered-action list, the result might depend on the order of the rows being processed. You can ensure that the result is independent of row order by following these suggestions:

- Avoid selecting the triggering table in the FOR EACH ROW section.
If the triggering statement affects multiple rows in the triggering table, the result of the SELECT statement in the FOR EACH ROW section varies as each row is processed. This condition also applies to any cascading triggers. See [“Cascading Triggers” on page 2-327](#).
- In the FOR EACH ROW section, avoid updating a table with values derived from the current row of the triggering table.
If the triggered actions modify any row in the table more than once, the final result for that row depends on the order in which rows from the triggering table are processed.
- Avoid modifying a table in the FOR EACH ROW section that is selected by another triggered statement in the same FOR EACH ROW section, including any cascading triggered actions.
If you modify a table in this section and refer to it later, the changes to the table might not be complete when you refer to it. Consequently, the result might differ, depending on the order in which rows are processed.

The database server does not enforce rules to prevent these situations because doing so would restrict the set of tables from which a triggered action can select. Furthermore, the result of most triggered actions is independent of row order. Consequently, you are responsible for ensuring that the results of the triggered actions are independent of row order.

REFERENCING Clause for Insert

REFERENCING
Clause for Insert

Back to CREATE TRIGGER
p. 2-296



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>correlation</i>	Name that you assign to a new column value so that you can refer to it within the triggered action The new column value in the triggering table is the value of the column after execution of the triggering statement.	The correlation name must be unique within the CREATE TRIGGER statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Once you assign a correlation name, you can use it only inside the FOR EACH ROW triggered action. See [“Action Clause Referencing”](#) on page 2-314.

To use the correlation name, precede the column name with the correlation name, followed by a period. For example, if the new correlation name is **post**, refer to the new value for the column **fname** as **post.fname**.

If the trigger event is an INSERT statement, using the old correlation name as a qualifier causes an error because no value exists before the row is inserted. For the rules that govern how to use correlation names, see [“Using Correlation Names in Triggered Actions”](#) on page 2-319.

You can use the INSERT REFERENCING clause only if you define a FOR EACH ROW triggered action.

The following example illustrates the use of the INSERT REFERENCING clause. This example inserts a row into **backup_table1** for every row that is inserted into **table1**. The values that are inserted into **col1** and **col2** of **backup_table1** are an exact copy of the values that were just inserted into **table1**.

```
CREATE TABLE table1 (col1 INT, col2 INT);
CREATE TABLE backup_table1 (col1 INT, col2 INT);
CREATE TRIGGER before_trig
  INSERT ON table1
  REFERENCING NEW as new
  FOR EACH ROW
  (
  INSERT INTO backup_table1 (col1, col2)
  VALUES (new.col1, new.col2)
  );
```

As the preceding example shows, the advantage of the INSERT REFERENCING clause is that it allows you to refer to the data values that the trigger event in your triggered action produces.

REFERENCING Clause for Delete

REFERENCING
Clause for Delete

Back to CREATE TRIGGER
p. 2-296



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>correlation</i>	Name that you assign to an old column value so that you can refer to it within the triggered action The old column value in the triggering table is the value of the column before execution of the triggering statement.	The correlation name must be unique within the CREATE TRIGGER statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Once you assign a correlation name, you can use it only inside the FOR EACH ROW triggered action. See “[Action Clause Referencing](#)” on page 2-314.

You use the correlation name to refer to an old column value by preceding the column name with the correlation name and a period (.). For example, if the old correlation name is **pre**, refer to the old value for the column **fname** as **pre.fname**.

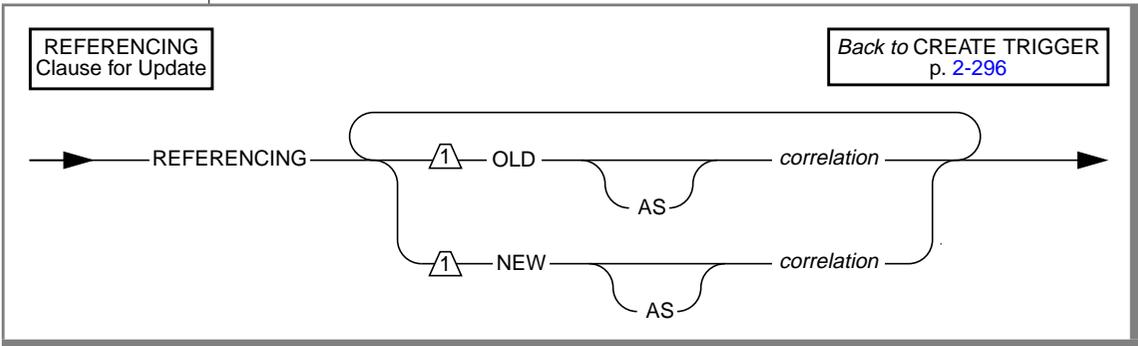
If the trigger event is a DELETE statement, using the new correlation name as a qualifier causes an error because the column has no value after the row is deleted. For the rules governing the use of correlation names, see [“Using Correlation Names in Triggered Actions”](#) on page 2-319.

You can use the DELETE REFERENCING clause only if you define a FOR EACH ROW triggered action.

The OLD correlation value cannot be a byte or text value. That is, you cannot refer to a byte or text column. ♦

XPS

REFERENCING Clause for Update



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>correlation</i>	Name that you assign to an old or new column value so that you can refer to it within the triggered action The old column value in the triggering table is the value of the column before execution of the triggering statement. The new column value in the triggering table is the value of the column after executing the triggering statement.	You can specify a correlation name for an old column value only (OLD option), for a new column value only (NEW option), or for both the old and new column values. Each correlation name you specify must be unique within the CREATE TRIGGER statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Once you assign a correlation name, you can use it only inside the FOR EACH ROW triggered action. See [“Action Clause Referencing” on page 2-314](#).

Use the correlation name to refer to an old or new column value by preceding the column name with the correlation name and a period (.). For example, if the new correlation name is **post**, you refer to the new value for the column **fname** as **post.fname**.

If the trigger event is an UPDATE statement, you can define both old and new correlation names to refer to column values before and after the triggering update. For the rules that govern the use of correlation names, see [“Using Correlation Names in Triggered Actions” on page 2-319](#).

You can use the UPDATE REFERENCING clause only if you define a FOR EACH ROW triggered action.

The OLD correlation value cannot be a byte or text value. That is, you cannot refer to a byte or text column. ♦

XPS

IDS

REFERENCING CLAUSE FOR Select

REFERENCING
Clause for Select

[Back to CREATE TRIGGER](#)
p. 2-296



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>correlation</i>	Name that you assign to an old column value so that you can refer to it within the triggered action	The correlation name must be unique within the CREATE TRIGGER statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Once you assign a correlation name, you can use it only inside the FOR EACH ROW triggered action. See [“Action Clause Referencing” on page 2-314](#).

You use the correlation name to refer to an old column value by preceding the column name with the correlation name and a period (.). For example, if the old correlation name is **pre**, refer to the old value for the column **fname** as **pre.fname**.

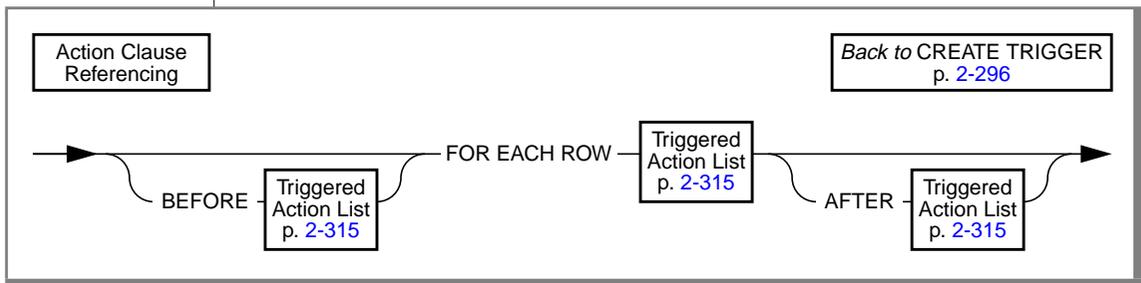
If the trigger event is a SELECT statement, using the new correlation name as a qualifier causes an error because the column does not have a new value after the column is selected. For the rules governing the use of correlation names, see [“Using Correlation Names in Triggered Actions” on page 2-319](#).

You can use the SELECT REFERENCING clause only if you define a FOR EACH ROW triggered action.

The OLD correlation value cannot be a byte or text value. That is, you cannot refer to a byte or text column. ♦

XPS

Action Clause Referencing

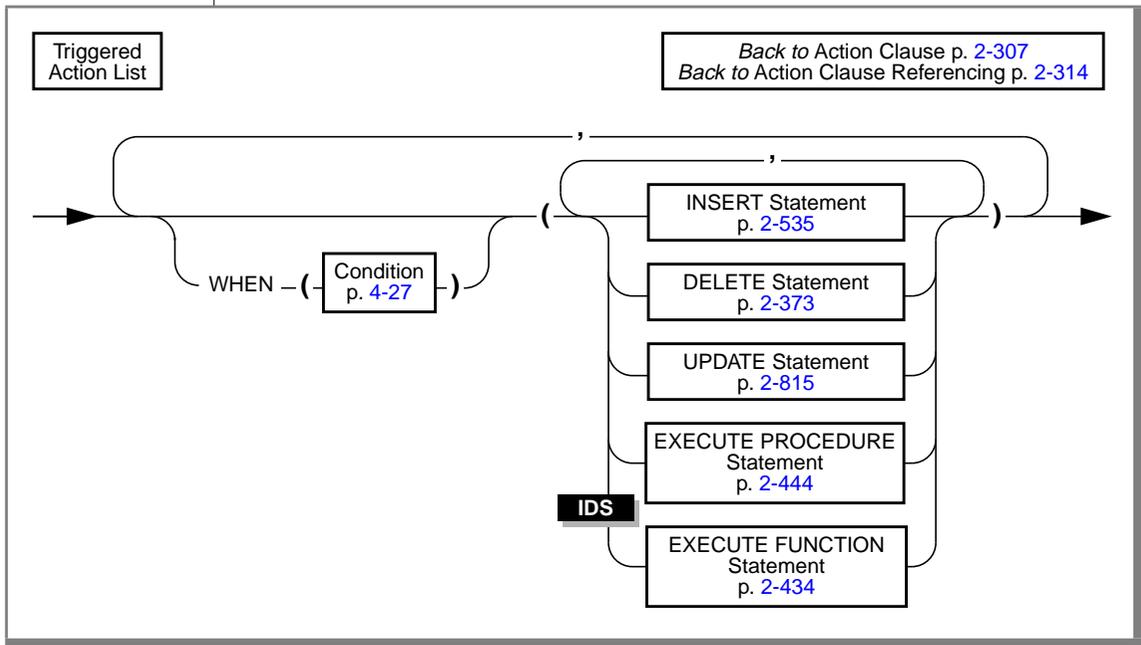


If the CREATE TRIGGER statement contains an INSERT REFERENCING clause, a DELETE REFERENCING clause, an UPDATE REFERENCING clause, or a SELECT REFERENCING clause, you *must* include a FOR EACH ROW triggered-action list in the action clause. You can also include BEFORE and AFTER triggered-action lists, but they are optional. For information on the BEFORE, FOR EACH ROW, and AFTER triggered-action lists, see [“Action Clause” on page 2-307](#).

XPS

You cannot have FOR EACH ROW actions on tables that have globally-detached indexes. ♦

Triggered Action List



The triggered action consists of an optional WHEN condition and the action statements. Database objects that are referenced in the triggered action, that is, tables, columns, and UDRs, must exist when the CREATE TRIGGER statement is executed. This rule applies only to database objects that are referenced directly in the trigger definition.



Warning: When you specify a date expression in the WHEN condition or in an action statement, make sure to specify 4 digits instead of 2 digits for the year. When you specify a 4-digit year, the **DBCENTURY** environment variable has no effect on how the database server interprets the date expression. When you specify a 2-digit year, the **DBCENTURY** environment variable can affect how the database server interprets the date expression, so the triggered action might produce unpredictable results. See the “[Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#)” for more information on the **DBCENTURY** environment variable.

WHEN Condition

The WHEN condition lets you make the triggered action dependent on the outcome of a test. When you include a WHEN condition in a triggered action, if the triggered action evaluates to `true`, the actions in the triggered action list execute in the order in which they appear. If the WHEN condition evaluates to `false` or `unknown`, the actions in the triggered action list are not executed. If the triggered action is in a FOR EACH ROW section, its search condition is evaluated for each row.

For example, the triggered action in the following trigger executes only if the condition in the WHEN clause is true:

```
CREATE TRIGGER up_price
UPDATE OF unit_price ON stock
REFERENCING OLD AS pre NEW AS post
FOR EACH ROW WHEN(post.unit_price > pre.unit_price * 2)
  (INSERT INTO warn_tab VALUES(pre.stock_num,
    pre.order_num, pre.unit_price, post.unit_price,
    CURRENT))
```

An SPL routine that executes inside the WHEN condition carries the same restrictions as a UDR that is called in a data-manipulation statement. That is, the called SPL routine cannot contain certain SQL statements. For information on which statements are restricted, see [“Restrictions on an SPL Routine Called in a Data Manipulation Statement”](#) on page 4-302. ♦

Action Statements

The triggered-action statements can be INSERT, DELETE, UPDATE, EXECUTE FUNCTION, or EXECUTE PROCEDURE statements. If a triggered-action list contains multiple statements, these statements execute in the order in which they appear in the list.

UDRs as Triggered Actions

You can use both user-defined functions and user-defined procedures as triggered actions.

IDS

Use the EXECUTE FUNCTION statement to execute any user-defined function. Use the EXECUTE PROCEDURE statement to execute any user-defined procedure. ♦

Use the EXECUTE PROCEDURE statement to execute any SPL routine. ♦

For restrictions that apply to using SPL routines as triggered actions, see [“Rules for SPL Routines” on page 326](#).

Achieving a Consistent Result

To guarantee that the triggering statement returns the same result with and without the triggered actions, make sure that the triggered actions in the BEFORE and FOR EACH ROW sections do not modify any table referenced in the following clauses:

- WHERE clause
- SET clause in the UPDATE statement
- SELECT clause
- EXECUTE PROCEDURE clause or EXECUTE FUNCTION clause in a multiple-row INSERT statement

Using Reserved Words

If you use the INSERT, DELETE, UPDATE, or EXECUTE reserved words as an identifier in any of the following clauses inside a triggered action list, you must qualify them by the owner name, the table name, or both:

- FROM clause of a SELECT statement
- INTO clause of the EXECUTE PROCEDURE or EXECUTE FUNCTION statement
- GROUP BY clause
- SET clause of the UPDATE statement

You get a syntax error if these keywords are *not* qualified when you use these clauses inside a triggered action.

If you use the keyword as a column name, it must be qualified by the table name—for example, **table.update**. If both the table name and the column name are keywords, they must be qualified by the owner name—for example, **owner.insert.update**. If the owner name, table name, and column name are all keywords, the owner name must be in quotes—for example, **'delete'.insert.update**. The only exception is when these keywords are the first table or column name in the list, and you do not have to qualify them. For example, **delete** in the following statement does not need to be qualified because it is the first column listed in the INTO clause:

```
CREATE TRIGGER t1 UPDATE OF b ON tab1
  FOR EACH ROW (EXECUTE PROCEDURE p2()
  INTO delete, d)
```

The following statements show examples in which you must qualify the column name or the table name:

- **FROM clause of a SELECT statement**

```
CREATE TRIGGER t1 INSERT ON tab1
  BEFORE (INSERT INTO tab2 SELECT * FROM tab3,
  'owner1'.update)
```

- **INTO clause of an EXECUTE PROCEDURE statement**

```
CREATE TRIGGER t3 UPDATE OF b ON tab1
  FOR EACH ROW (EXECUTE PROCEDURE p2() INTO
  d, tab1.delete)
```

- **GROUP BY clause of a SELECT statement**

```
CREATE TRIGGER t4 DELETE ON tab1
  BEFORE (INSERT INTO tab3 SELECT deptno, SUM(exp)
  FROM budget GROUP BY deptno, budget.update)
```

- **SET clause of an UPDATE statement**

```
CREATE TRIGGER t2 UPDATE OF a ON tab1
  BEFORE (UPDATE tab2 SET a = 10, tab2.insert = 5)
```

Using Correlation Names in Triggered Actions

The following rules apply when you use correlation names in triggered actions:

- You can use the correlation names for the old and new column values only in statements in the FOR EACH ROW triggered-action list. You can use the old and new correlation names to qualify any column in the triggering table in either the WHEN condition or the triggered SQL statements.
- The old and new correlation names refer to all rows affected by the triggering statement.
- You cannot use the correlation name to qualify a column name in the GROUP BY, the SET, or the COUNT DISTINCT clause.
- The scope of the correlation names is the entire trigger definition. This scope is statically determined, meaning that it is limited to the trigger definition; it does not encompass cascading triggers or columns that are qualified by a table name in a UDR that is a triggered action.

When to Use Correlation Names

In an SQL statement in a FOR EACH ROW triggered action, you must qualify all references to columns in the triggering table with either the old or new correlation name, unless the statement is valid independent of the triggered action.

In other words, if a column name inside a FOR EACH ROW triggered action list is not qualified by a correlation name, even if it is qualified by the triggering table name, it is interpreted as if the statement is independent of the triggered action. No special effort is made to search the definition of the triggering table for the non-qualified column name.

For example, assume that the following DELETE statement is a triggered action inside the FOR EACH ROW section of a trigger:

```
DELETE FROM tab1 WHERE col_c = col_c2
```

CREATE TRIGGER

For the statement to be valid, both **col_c** and **col_c2** must be columns from **tab1**. If **col_c2** is intended to be a correlation reference to a column in the triggering table, it must be qualified by either the old or the new correlation name. If **col_c2** is not a column in **tab1** and is not qualified by either the old or new correlation name, you get an error.

When a column is not qualified by a correlation name, and the statement is valid independent of the triggered action, the column name refers to the current value in the database. In the triggered action for trigger **t1** in the following example, **mgr** in the WHERE clause of the correlated subquery is an unqualified column from the triggering table. In this case, **mgr** refers to the current column value in **empsal** because the INSERT statement is valid independent of the triggered action.

```
CREATE DATABASE db1;
CREATE TABLE empsal (empno INT, salary INT, mgr INT);
CREATE TABLE mgr (eno INT, bonus INT);
CREATE TABLE biggap (empno INT, salary INT, mgr INT);

CREATE TRIGGER t1 UPDATE OF salary ON empsal
AFTER (INSERT INTO biggap SELECT * FROM empsal WHERE salary <
      (SELECT bonus FROM mgr WHERE eno = mgr));
```

In a triggered action, an unqualified column name from the triggering table refers to the current column value, but only when the triggered statement is valid independent of the triggered action.

Qualified Versus Unqualified Value

The following table summarizes the value retrieved when you use the column name qualified by the old correlation name and the column name qualified by the new correlation name.

Trigger Event	old.col	new.col
INSERT	No value (error)	Inserted value
UPDATE (column updated)	Original value	Current value (N)
UPDATE (column not updated)	Original value	Current value (U)
DELETE	Original value	No value (error)

Refer to the following key when you read the table.

Term	Purpose
Original value	Value before the triggering statement
Current value	Value after the triggering statement
(N)	Cannot be changed by triggered action
(U)	Can be updated by triggered statements; value may be different from original value because of preceding triggered actions

Outside a FOR EACH ROW triggered-action list, you cannot qualify a column from the triggering table with either the old correlation name or the new correlation name; it always refers to the current value in the database.

Reentrancy of Triggers

In some cases a trigger can be reentrant. In these cases the triggered action can reference the triggering table. In other words, both the trigger event and the triggered action can operate on the same table. The following list summarizes the situations in which triggers can be reentrant and the situations in which triggers cannot be reentrant:

- If the trigger event is an UPDATE statement, the triggered action cannot be an INSERT or DELETE statement that references the table that was updated by the trigger event.
- If the trigger event is an UPDATE statement, the triggered action cannot be an UPDATE statement that references a column that was updated by the trigger event.

However, if the trigger event is an UPDATE statement, and the triggered action is also an UPDATE statement, the triggered action can update a column that was not updated by the trigger event.

For example, assume that the following UPDATE statement, which updates columns **a** and **b** of **tab1**, is the triggering statement:

```
UPDATE tab1 SET (a, b) = (a + 1, b + 1)
```

Now consider the 1vbtriggered actions in the following example. The first UPDATE statement is a valid triggered action, but the second one is not because it updates column **b** again.

```
UPDATE tab1 SET c = c + 1; -- OK
UPDATE tab1 SET b = b + 1;-- ILLEGAL
```

- If the trigger event is an UPDATE statement, the triggered action can be an EXECUTE PROCEDURE or EXECUTE FUNCTION statement with an INTO clause that references a column that was updated by the trigger event or any other column in the triggering table.

When an EXECUTE PROCEDURE or EXECUTE FUNCTION statement is the triggered action, you can specify the INTO clause for an UPDATE trigger only when the triggered action occurs in the FOR EACH ROW section. In this case, the INTO clause can contain only column names from the triggering table. The following statement illustrates the appropriate use of the INTO clause:

```
CREATE TRIGGER upd_totpr UPDATE OF quantity ON items
REFERENCING OLD AS pre_upd NEW AS post_upd
FOR EACH ROW(EXECUTE PROCEDURE
  calc_totpr(pre_upd.quantity,
  post_upd.quantity, pre_upd.total_price)
  INTO total_price)
```

The column that follows the INTO keyword can be a column in the triggering table that was updated by the trigger event, or a column in the triggering table that was not updated by the trigger event.

When the INTO clause appears in the EXECUTE PROCEDURE or EXECUTE FUNCTION statement, the database server updates the columns named there with the values returned from the UDR. The database server performs the update immediately upon returning from the UDR.

- If the trigger event is an INSERT statement, the triggered action cannot be an INSERT or DELETE statement that references the triggering table.

- If the trigger event is an INSERT statement, the triggered action can be an UPDATE statement that references a column in the triggering table. However, this column cannot be a column for which a value was supplied by the trigger event.

If the trigger event is an INSERT, and the triggered action is an UPDATE on the triggering table, the columns in both statements must be mutually exclusive. For example, assume that the trigger event is an INSERT statement that inserts values for columns **cola** and **colb** of table **tab1**:

```
INSERT INTO tab1 (cola, colb) VALUES (1,10)
```

Now consider the triggered actions. The first UPDATE statement is valid, but the second one is not because it updates column **colb** even though the trigger event already supplied a value for column **colb**:

```
UPDATE tab1 SET colc=100; --OK
UPDATE tab1 SET colb=100; --ILLEGAL
```

- If the trigger event is an INSERT statement, the triggered action can be an EXECUTE PROCEDURE or EXECUTE FUNCTION statement with an INTO clause that references a column that was supplied by the trigger event or a column that was not supplied by the trigger event.

When an EXECUTE PROCEDURE or EXECUTE FUNCTION statement is the triggered action, you can specify the INTO clause for an INSERT trigger only when the triggered action occurs in the FOR EACH ROW section. In this case, the INTO clause can contain only column names from the triggering table. The following statement illustrates the appropriate use of the INTO clause:

```
CREATE TRIGGER ins_totpr INSERT ON items
REFERENCING NEW as new_ins
FOR EACH ROW (EXECUTE PROCEDURE
  calc_totpr(0, new_ins.quantity, 0)
  INTO total_price).
```

The column that follows the INTO keyword can be a column in the triggering table that was supplied by the trigger event, or a column in the triggering table that was not supplied by the trigger event.

When the INTO clause appears in the EXECUTE PROCEDURE or EXECUTE FUNCTION statement, the database server updates the columns named there with the values returned from the UDR. The database server performs the update immediately upon returning from the UDR.

- If the triggered action is a SELECT statement, the SELECT statement can reference the triggering table. The SELECT statement can be a triggered statement in the following instances:
 - The SELECT statement appears in a subquery in the WHEN clause or a triggered-action statement.
 - The triggered action is a UDR, and the SELECT statement appears inside the UDR.

Reentrancy and Cascading Triggers

The cases when a trigger cannot be reentrant apply recursively to all cascading triggers, which are considered part of the initial trigger. In particular, this rule means that a cascading trigger cannot update any columns in the triggering table that were updated by the original triggering statement, including any nontriggering columns affected by that statement. For example, assume the following UPDATE statement is the triggering statement:

```
UPDATE tab1 SET (a, b) = (a + 1, b + 1)
```

Then in the cascading triggers shown in the following example, **trig2** fails at runtime because it references column **b**, which is updated by the triggering UPDATE statement:

```
CREATE TRIGGER trig1 UPDATE OF a ON tab1-- Valid
  AFTER (UPDATE tab2 set e = e + 1);

CREATE TRIGGER trig2 UPDATE of e ON tab2-- Invalid
  AFTER (UPDATE tab1 set b = b + 1);
```

Now consider the following SQL statements. When the final UPDATE statement is executed, column **a** is updated and the trigger **trig1** is activated. The triggered action again updates column **a** with an EXECUTE PROCEDURE INTO statement.

```
CREATE TABLE temp1 (a int, b int, e int);
INSERT INTO temp1 VALUES (10, 20, 30);

CREATE PROCEDURE proc(val int)
RETURNING int,int;
RETURN val+10, val+20;
END PROCEDURE;
```

```
CREATE TRIGGER trig1 UPDATE OF a ON temp1
FOR EACH ROW (EXECUTE PROCEDURE proc(50) INTO a, e);

CREATE TRIGGER trig2 UPDATE OF e ON temp1
FOR EACH ROW (EXECUTE PROCEDURE proc(100) INTO a, e);

UPDATE temp1 SET (a,b) = (40,50);
```

XPS

In Extended Parallel Server, to recreate this example use the CREATE PROCEDURE statement instead of the CREATE FUNCTION statement. ♦

Several questions arise from this example of cascading triggers. First, should the update of column **a** activate trigger **trig1** again? The answer is no. Because the trigger was activated, it is stopped from being activated a second time. Whenever the triggered action is an EXECUTE PROCEDURE INTO statement or EXECUTE FUNCTION INTO statement, the only triggers that are activated are those that are defined on columns that are mutually exclusive from the columns in that table updated until then (in the cascade of triggers). Other triggers are ignored.

Another question that arises from the example is whether trigger **trig2** should be activated. The answer is yes. The trigger **trig2** is defined on column **e**. Until now, column **e** in table **temp1** has not been modified. Trigger **trig2** is activated.

A final question that arises from the example is whether triggers **trig1** and **trig2** should be activated after the triggered action in **trig2** is performed. The answer is no. Neither trigger is activated. By this time columns **a** and **e** have been updated once, and triggers **trig1** and **trig2** have been executed once. The database server ignores these triggers instead of firing them.

For more information about cascading triggers, see [“Cascading Triggers” on page 2-327](#).

Rules for SPL Routines

In addition to the rules listed in [“Reentrancy of Triggers” on page 2-321](#), the following rules apply to an SPL routine that is used as a triggered action:

- The SPL routine cannot be a cursor function (that is, a function that returns more than one row) in a place where only one row is expected.
- You cannot use the old or new correlation name inside the SPL routine.

If you need to use the corresponding values in the routine, you must pass them as parameters. The routine should be independent of triggers, and the old or new correlation name do not have any meaning outside the trigger.

When you use an SPL routine as a triggered action, the database objects that the routine references are not checked until the routine is executed.

Privileges to Execute Triggered Actions

If you are not the trigger owner, but the privileges of the trigger owner include the WITH GRANT OPTION privilege, you inherit the privileges of the owner as well as the WITH GRANT OPTION privilege for each triggered SQL statement. You have these privileges in addition to your privileges.

If the triggered action is a UDR you must have the Execute privilege on the UDR or the owner of the trigger must have the Execute privilege and the WITH GRANT OPTION privilege.

While executing the UDR, you do not carry the privileges of the trigger owner; instead you receive the privileges granted with the UDR, as follows:

1. Privileges for a DBA UDR

When a UDR is registered with the CREATE DBA keywords and you are granted the Execute privilege on the UDR, the database server automatically grants you temporary DBA privileges while the UDR executes. These DBA privileges are available only when you are executing the UDR.

2. Privileges for a UDR without DBA restrictions

If the UDR owner has the WITH GRANT OPTION right for the necessary privileges on the underlying database objects, you inherit these privileges when you are granted the Execute privilege. In this case, all the non-qualified database objects that the UDR references are qualified by the name of the UDR owner.

If the UDR owner does not have the WITH GRANT OPTION right, you have your original privileges on the underlying database objects when the UDR executes.

For more information on privileges on SPL routines, refer to the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

Creating a Triggered Action That Anyone Can Use

To create a trigger that is executable by anyone who has the privileges to execute the triggering statement, you can ask the DBA to create a DBA-privileged UDR and grant you the Execute privilege with the WITH GRANT OPTION right. You then use the DBA-privileged UDR as the triggered action. Anyone can execute the triggered action because the DBA-privileged UDR carries the WITH GRANT OPTION right. When you activate the UDR, the database server applies privilege-checking rules for a DBA.

Cascading Triggers

The database server allows triggers other than select triggers to cascade, meaning that the triggered actions of one trigger can activate another trigger. For further information on the restriction against cascading select triggers, see [“Circumstances When a Select Trigger is Not Activated”](#) on page 2-305.

The maximum number of triggers in a cascading sequence is 61; the initial trigger plus a maximum of 60 cascading triggers. When the number of cascading triggers in a series exceeds the maximum, the database server returns error number -748, as the following example shows:

```
Exceeded limit on maximum number of cascaded triggers.
```

CREATE TRIGGER

The following example illustrates a series of cascading triggers that enforce referential integrity on the **manufact**, **stock**, and **items** tables in the **stores_demo** database. When a manufacturer is deleted from the **manufact** table, the first trigger, **del_manu**, deletes all the items from that manufacturer from the **stock** table. Each delete in the **stock** table activates a second trigger, **del_items**, that deletes all the **items** from that manufacturer from the **items** table. Finally, each delete in the **items** table triggers the SPL routine **log_order**, which creates a record of any orders in the **orders** table that can no longer be filled.

```
CREATE TRIGGER del_manu
DELETE ON manufact
REFERENCING OLD AS pre_del
FOR EACH ROW(DELETE FROM stock
              WHERE manu_code = pre_del.manu_code);

CREATE TRIGGER del_stock
DELETE ON stock
REFERENCING OLD AS pre_del
FOR EACH ROW(DELETE FROM items
              WHERE manu_code = pre_del.manu_code);

CREATE TRIGGER del_items
DELETE ON items
REFERENCING OLD AS pre_del
FOR EACH ROW(EXECUTE PROCEDURE log_order(pre_del.order_num));
```

When you are not using logging, referential integrity constraints on both the **manufact** and **stock** tables prohibit the triggers in this example from executing. When you use logging, however, the triggers execute successfully because constraint checking is deferred until all the triggered actions are complete, including the actions of cascading triggers. For more information about how constraints are handled when triggers execute, see [“Constraint Checking” on page 2-329](#).

The database server prevents loops of cascading triggers by not allowing you to modify the triggering table in any cascading triggered action, except an UPDATE statement, which does not modify any column that the triggering UPDATE statement updated, or an INSERT statement. INSERT trigger statements can have UPDATE triggered actions on the same table.

Constraint Checking

When you use logging, the database server defers constraint checking on the triggering statement until after the statements in the triggered-action list execute. The database server effectively executes a `SET CONSTRAINTS ALL DEFERRED` statement before it executes the triggering statement. After the triggered action is completed, it effectively executes a `SET CONSTRAINTS constraint IMMEDIATE` statement to check the constraints that were deferred. This action allows you to write triggers so that the triggered action can resolve any constraint violations that the triggering statement creates. For more information, see [“SET Database Object Mode” on page 2-700](#).

Consider the following example, in which the table **child** has constraint **r1**, which references the table **parent**. You define trigger **trig1** and activate it with an `INSERT` statement. In the triggered action, **trig1** checks to see if **parent** has a row with the value of the current **cola** in **child**; if not, it inserts it.

```
CREATE TABLE parent (cola INT PRIMARY KEY);
CREATE TABLE child (cola INT REFERENCES parent CONSTRAINT r1);
CREATE TRIGGER trig1 INSERT ON child
  REFERENCING NEW AS new
  FOR EACH ROW
  WHEN((SELECT COUNT (*) FROM parent
        WHERE cola = new.cola) = 0)
  -- parent row does not exist
  (INSERT INTO parent VALUES (new.cola));
```

When you insert a row into a table that is the child table in a referential constraint, the row might not exist in the parent table. The database server does not immediately return this error on a triggering statement. Instead, it allows the triggered action to resolve the constraint violation by inserting the corresponding row into the parent table. As the previous example shows, you can check within the triggered action to see whether the parent row exists, and if so, bypass the insert.

For a database without logging, the database server does *not* defer constraint checking on the triggering statement. In this case, it immediately returns an error if the triggering statement violates a constraint.

You cannot use the `SET Transaction Mode` statement in a triggered action. The database server checks this restriction when you activate a trigger, because the statement could occur inside a UDR.

Rows that cause constraint violations might appear in the violations table even if a later trigger action corrects the violation. ♦

Preventing Triggers from Overriding Each Other

When you activate multiple triggers with an UPDATE statement, a trigger can possibly override the changes that an earlier trigger made. If you do not want the triggered actions to interact, you can split the UPDATE statement into multiple UPDATE statements, each of which updates an individual column. As another alternative, you can create a single update trigger for all columns that require a triggered action. Then, inside the triggered action, you can test for the column being updated and apply the actions in the desired order. This approach, however, is different than having the database server apply the actions of individual triggers, and it has the following disadvantages:

- If the trigger has a BEFORE action, it applies to all columns because you cannot yet detect whether a column has changed.
- If the triggering UPDATE statement sets a column to the current value, you cannot detect the update, so the triggered action is skipped. You might want to execute the triggered action even though the value of the column has not changed.

Client/Server Environment

The statements inside the triggered action can affect tables in external databases. The following example shows an update trigger on **dbserver1**, which triggers an update to **items** on **dbserver2**:

```
CREATE TRIGGER upd_nt UPDATE ON newtab
REFERENCING new AS post
FOR EACH ROW(UPDATE stores_demo@dbserver2:items
    SET quantity = post.qty WHERE stock_num = post.stock
    AND manu_code = post.mc)
```

If a statement from an external database server initiates the trigger, however, and the triggered action affects tables in an external database, the triggered actions fail. For example, the following combination of triggered action and triggering statement results in an error when the triggering statement executes:

```
-- Triggered action from dbserver1 to dbserver3:

CREATE TRIGGER upd_nt UPDATE ON newtab
REFERENCING new AS post
FOR EACH ROW(UPDATE stores_demo@dbserver3:items
  SET quantity = post.qty WHERE stock_num = post.stock
  AND manu_code = post.mc);

-- Triggering statement from dbserver2:

UPDATE stores_demo@dbserver1:newtab
  SET qty = qty * 2 WHERE s_num = 5
  AND mc = 'ANZ';
```

Logging and Recovery

You can create triggers for databases, with and without logging. However, when the database does not have logging, you cannot roll back when the triggering statement fails. In this case, you are responsible for maintaining data integrity in the database.

If the trigger fails and the database has transactions, all triggered actions and the triggering statement are rolled back because the triggered actions are an extension of the triggering statement. The rest of the transaction, however, is not rolled back.

The row action of the triggering statement occurs before the triggered actions in the FOR EACH ROW section. If the triggered action fails for a database without logging, the application must restore the row that was changed by the triggering statement to its previous value.

When you use a UDR as a triggered action, if you terminate the UDR in an exception-handling section, any actions that modify data inside that section are rolled back along with the triggering statement. In the following partial example, when the exception handler traps an error, it inserts a row into the table **logtab**:

```
ON EXCEPTION IN (-201)
    INSERT INTO logtab values (errno, errstr);
    RAISE EXCEPTION -201
END EXCEPTION
```

When the RAISE EXCEPTION statement returns the error, however, the database server rolls back this insert because it is part of the triggered actions. If the UDR is executed outside a triggered action, the insert is not rolled back.

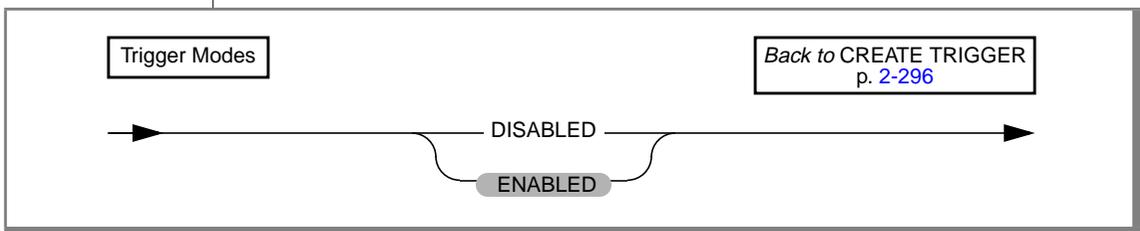
The UDR that implements a triggered action cannot contain any BEGIN WORK, COMMIT WORK, or ROLLBACK WORK statements. If the database has logging, you must either begin an explicit transaction before the triggering statement, or the statement itself must be an implicit transaction. In any case, another transaction-related statement cannot appear inside the UDR.

You can use triggers to enforce referential actions that the database server does not currently support. For any database without logging, you are responsible for maintaining data integrity when the triggering statement fails.

IDS

Trigger Modes

Use the trigger-modes to enable or disable a trigger when you create it.



You can create triggers in the following modes.

Mode	Purpose
DISABLED	When a trigger is created in disabled mode, the database server does not execute the triggered action when the trigger event (an insert, delete, select, or update operation) takes place. In effect, the database server ignores the trigger even though its catalog information is maintained.
ENABLED	When a trigger is created in enabled mode, the database server executes the triggered action when the trigger event (an insert, delete, select, or update operation) takes place.

Specifying Modes for Triggers

You must observe the following rules when you specify the mode for a trigger in the CREATE TRIGGER statement:

- If you do not specify a mode, the trigger is enabled by default.
- You can use the SET Database Object Mode statement to switch the mode of a disabled trigger to the enabled mode. Once the trigger is re-enabled, the database server executes the triggered action whenever the trigger event takes place. However, the re-enabled trigger does not perform retroactively. The database server does not attempt to execute the trigger for rows that were inserted, deleted, or updated after the trigger was disabled and before it was enabled; therefore, be cautious about disabling a trigger. If disabling a trigger will eventually destroy the semantic integrity of the database, do not disable the trigger.
- You cannot create a trigger on a violations table or a diagnostics table.

Related Information

Related statements: [DROP TRIGGER](#), [CREATE PROCEDURE](#), [EXECUTE PROCEDURE](#), and [SET Database Object Mode](#)

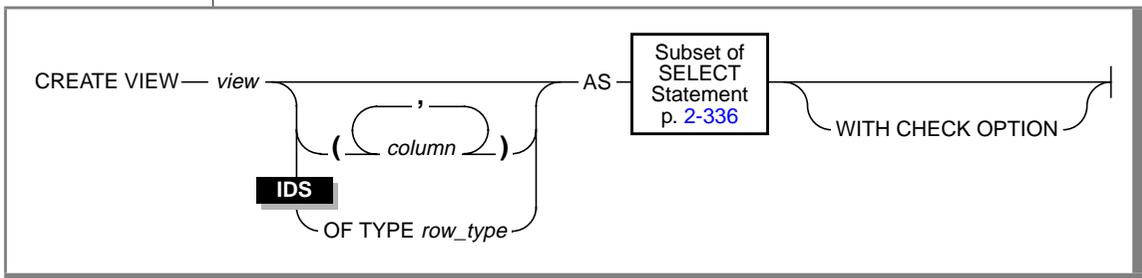
For a task-oriented discussion of triggers, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For performance implications of triggers, see your [Performance Guide](#).

CREATE VIEW

Use the CREATE VIEW statement to create a new view that is based on existing tables and views in the database.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of a column in the view	See “Naming View Columns” on page 2-337 .	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>row_type</i>	Name of a named-row type that you use to specify the type of a typed view	You must have Usage privileges on the named-row type or be its owner or the DBA. The named-row type must exist before you can assign it to a view.	Data Type, p. 4-53
<i>view</i>	Name of the view	The name must be unique in the database.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

You can create typed or untyped views. If you omit the OF TYPE clause, the rows in the view are considered to be untyped and default to an unnamed-row type. The following statement creates a view that is based on the **person** table. When you create a view without an OF TYPE clause, the view is referred to as an *untyped view*.

```
CREATE VIEW v1 AS SELECT *
FROM person
```

Typed views, like typed tables, are based on a named-row type. Each column in the view corresponds to a field in the named-row type. The following statement creates a typed view that is based on the table **person**. To create a typed view, you must include an **OF TYPE** clause. When you create a typed view, the named-row type that you specify immediately after the **OF TYPE** keywords must already exist.

```
CREATE VIEW v2 OF TYPE person_t AS SELECT *  
FROM person
```

Except for the statements in the following list, you can use a view in any SQL statement where you can use a table:

ALTER FRAGMENT	DROP INDEX
ALTER INDEX	DROP TABLE
ALTER TABLE	DROP TRIGGER
CREATE INDEX	LOCK TABLE
CREATE TABLE	RENAME TABLE
CREATE TRIGGER	UNLOCK TABLE

The view behaves like a table that is called *view*. It consists of the set of rows and columns that the **SELECT** statement returns each time the **SELECT** statement is executed by using the view. The view reflects changes to the underlying tables with one exception. If a **SELECT *** clause defines the view, the view has only the columns in the underlying tables at the time the view is created. New columns that are subsequently added to the underlying tables with the **ALTER TABLE** statement do not appear in the view.

The view name must be unique; that is, a view name cannot have the same name as another database object, such as a table, synonym, or temporary table.

The view inherits the data types of the columns in the tables from which the view is derived. The database server determines data types of virtual columns from the nature of the expression.

To create a view, you must have the **Select** privilege on all columns from which the view is derived.

DB

The **SELECT** statement is stored in the **sysviews** system catalog table. When you subsequently refer to a view in another statement, the database server performs the defining **SELECT** statement while it executes the new statement.

In DB-Access, if you create a view outside the **CREATE SCHEMA** statement, you receive warnings if you use the **-ansi** flag or set **DBANSIWARN**. ♦

Restrictions

You cannot create a view on a temporary table.

You cannot create a view on the following types of tables in a remote database:

- Typed tables (including any table that is part of a table hierarchy)
- Tables that contain any extended data types

♦

Subset of SELECT Statement Allowed in CREATE VIEW

In **CREATE VIEW**, the **FROM** clause of the **SELECT** statement cannot contain the name of a temporary table.

Do not use display labels in the select list. Display labels in the select list are interpreted as column names.

The **SELECT** statement in **CREATE VIEW** cannot include the following clauses:

- **FIRST**
- **INTO TEMP**
- **ORDER BY**

For a complete description of **SELECT** syntax and usage, see [“SELECT” on page 2-634](#).

IDS

Union Views

The SELECT statement in CREATE VIEW can contain a UNION or UNION ALL operator. A view that contains a UNION or UNION ALL operator in its SELECT statement is known as a union view. Observe the following restrictions on union views:

- If a CREATE VIEW statement defines a union view, you cannot specify the WITH CHECK OPTION keywords in the CREATE VIEW statement.
- All restrictions that apply to UNION or UNION ALL operations in standalone SELECT statements also apply to UNION and UNION ALL operations in the SELECT statement of a union view. For a list of these restrictions, see [“Restrictions on a Combined SELECT”](#) on page 2-689.

For an example of a CREATE VIEW statement that defines a union view, see [“Naming View Columns.”](#)

Naming View Columns

The number of columns that you specify in the *column* parameter must match the number of columns returned by the SELECT statement that defines the view.

If you do not specify a list of columns, the view inherits the column names of the underlying tables. In the following example, the view **herostock** has the same column names as the ones in the SELECT statement:

```
CREATE VIEW herostock AS
  SELECT stock_num, description, unit_price, unit,
         unit_descr
  FROM stock WHERE manu_code = 'HR0'
```

If the SELECT statement returns an expression, the corresponding column in the view is called a *virtual* column. You must provide a name for virtual columns. In the following example, the user must specify the *column* parameter because the select list of the SELECT statement contains an aggregate expression.

```
CREATE VIEW newview (firstcol, secondcol) AS
  SELECT sum(cola), colb
  FROM oldtab
```

You must also provide a column name in cases where the selected columns have duplicate column names when the table prefixes are stripped. For example, when both **orders.order_num** and **items.order_num** appear in the SELECT statement, you must provide two separate column names to label them in the CREATE VIEW statement, as the following example shows:

```
CREATE VIEW someorders (custnum,ocustnum,newprice) AS
  SELECT orders.order_num,items.order_num,
         items.total_price*1.5
  FROM orders, items
  WHERE orders.order_num = items.order_num
  AND items.total_price > 100.00
```

You must also provide column names in the *column* parameter when the SELECT statement includes a UNION or UNION ALL operator and the names of the corresponding columns in the SELECT statements are not identical. In the following example, the user must specify the *column* parameter since the second column in the first SELECT statement has a different name from the second column in the second SELECT statement.

```
CREATE VIEW myview (cola, colb) AS
  SELECT colx, coly from firsttab
  UNION
  SELECT colx, colz from secondtab
```

If you must provide names for some of the columns in a view, then you must provide names for all the columns; that is, the column list must contain an entry for every column that appears in the view.

Using a View in the SELECT Statement

You can define a view in terms of other views, but you must abide by the restrictions on creating views that are discussed in the [Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation](#). For further information, see that manual.

WITH CHECK OPTION Keywords

The WITH CHECK OPTION keywords instruct the database server to ensure that all modifications that are made through the view to the underlying tables satisfy the definition of the view.

The following example creates a view that is named **palo_alto**, which uses all the information in the **customer** table for customers in the city of Palo Alto. The database server checks any modifications made to the **customer** table through **palo_alto** because the **WITH CHECK OPTION** is specified.

```
CREATE VIEW palo_alto AS
  SELECT * FROM customer
     WHERE city = 'Palo Alto'
     WITH CHECK OPTION
```

You can insert into a view a row that does not satisfy the conditions of the view (that is, a row that is not visible through the view). You can also update a row of a view so that it no longer satisfies the conditions of the view. For example, if the view was created without the **WITH CHECK OPTION** keywords, you could insert a row through the view where the city is Los Altos, or you could update a row through the view by changing the city from Palo Alto to Los Altos.

To prevent such inserts and updates, you can add the **WITH CHECK OPTION** keywords when you create the view. These keywords ask the database server to test every inserted or updated row to ensure that it meets the conditions that are set by the **WHERE** clause of the view. The database server rejects the operation with an error if the row does not meet the conditions.

However, even if the view was created with the **WITH CHECK OPTION** keywords, you can perform inserts and updates through the view to change columns that are not part of the view definition. A column is not part of the view definition if it does not appear in the **WHERE** clause of the **SELECT** statement that defines the view.

Updating Through Views

If a view is built on a single table, the view is *updatable* if the **SELECT** statement that defined it did not contain any of the following items:

- Columns in the select list that are aggregate values
- Columns in the select list that use the **UNIQUE** or **DISTINCT** keyword
- A **GROUP BY** clause
- A **UNION** operator

In an updatable view, you can update the values in the underlying table by inserting values into the view.



In addition, if a view is built on a table that has a derived value for a column, that column is not updatable through the view. However, other columns in the view can be updated.

Important: You cannot update or insert rows in a remote table through views with check options.

Related Information

Related statements: [CREATE TABLE](#), [DROP VIEW](#), [GRANT](#), [SELECT](#), and [SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION](#)

For a discussion of views, see the [Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation](#).

+

DATABASE

Use the DATABASE statement to select an accessible database as the current database.

Syntax

```
DATABASE database [EXCLUSIVE]
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>database</i>	Name of the database to select	The database must exist.	Database Name, p. 4-47

Usage

You can use the DATABASE statement to select any database on your database server. To select a database on another database server, specify the name of the database server with the database name.

If you specify the name of the current database server or another database server with the database name, the database server name cannot be uppercase.

Issuing a DATABASE statement when a database is already open closes the current database before opening the new one. Closing the current database releases any cursor resources held by the database server, which invalidates any cursors you have declared up to that point. If the user identity was changed through a SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION statement, the original user name is restored.

The current user (or PUBLIC) must have the Connect privilege on the database specified in the DATABASE statement. The current user cannot have the same user name as an existing role in the database.

E/C

Using the DATABASE Statement with ESQL/C

In ESQ/C, you cannot include the DATABASE statement in a multistatement PREPARE operation.

You can determine the characteristics of a database a user selects by checking the warning flag after a DATABASE statement in the **sqlca** structure.

If the database has transactions, the second element of the **sqlwarn** structure (the **sqlca.sqlwarn.sqlwarn1** field) contains a W after the DATABASE statement executes.

In an ANSI-compliant database, the third element of the **sqlwarn** structure (the **sqlca.sqlwarn.sqlwarn2** field) contains the letter W after the DATABASE statement executes. ♦

The fourth element of the **sqlwarn** structure (the **sqlca.sqlwarn.sqlwarn3** field) contains the letter W after the DATABASE statement executes.

If the database is running in secondary mode, the seventh element of the **sqlwarn** structure (the **sqlca.sqlwarn.sqlwarn6** field) contains the letter W after the DATABASE statement executes. ♦

ANSI

IDS

EXCLUSIVE Keyword

The EXCLUSIVE keyword opens the database in exclusive mode and prevents access by anyone but the current user. To allow others access to the database, you must execute the CLOSE DATABASE statement and then reopen the database without the EXCLUSIVE keyword.

The following statement opens the **stores_demo** database on the **training** database server in exclusive mode:

```
DATABASE stores_demo@training EXCLUSIVE
```

If another user has already opened the database, exclusive access is denied, an error is returned, and no database is opened.

Related Information

Related statements: [CLOSE DATABASE](#) and [CONNECT](#)

For discussions of how to use different data models to design and implement a database, see the [Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation](#).

+

IDS

E/C

DEALLOCATE COLLECTION

Use the DEALLOCATE COLLECTION statement to release memory for a collection variable that was previously allocated with the ALLOCATE COLLECTION statement.

Use this statement with ESQL/C.

Syntax

```
DEALLOCATE COLLECTION _____ : variable _____ |
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>variable</i>	Name that identifies a typed or untyped collection variable for which to deallocate memory	The variable must be the name of an ESQL/C collection variable that has already been allocated.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

Usage

The DEALLOCATE COLLECTION statement frees all the memory that is associated with the ESQL/C collection variable that *variable* identifies. You must explicitly release memory resources for a collection variable with DEALLOCATE COLLECTION. Otherwise, deallocation occurs automatically at the end of the program.

The DEALLOCATE COLLECTION statement releases resources for both typed and untyped collection variables.

Tip: The DEALLOCATE COLLECTION statement deallocates memory for an ESQL/C collection variable only. To deallocate memory for an ESQL/C row variable, use the DEALLOCATE ROW statement.

If you deallocate a nonexistent collection variable or a variable that is not an ESQL/C collection variable, an error results. Once you deallocate a collection variable, you can use the ALLOCATE COLLECTION to reallocate resources and you can then reuse a collection variable.



Example

The following example shows how to deallocate resources with the `DEALLOCATE COLLECTION` statement for the untyped collection variable, `a_set`:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
      client collection a_set;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
.
.
EXEC SQL allocate collection :a_set;
.
.
EXEC SQL deallocate collection :a_set;
```

Related Information

Related example: refer to the collection variable example in [PUT](#).

Related statements: [ALLOCATE COLLECTION](#) and [DEALLOCATE ROW](#)

For a discussion of collection data types, see the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

+

E/C

DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR

Use the DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement to free a previously allocated, system-descriptor area.

Use this statement with ESQL/C.

Syntax

```
DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR descriptor | descriptor_var ;
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>descriptor</i>	Quoted string that identifies a system-descriptor area	System-descriptor area must already be allocated. The surrounding quotes must be single.	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>descriptor_var</i>	Host variable name that identifies a system-descriptor area	System-descriptor area must already be allocated.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

Usage

The DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement frees all the memory that is associated with the system-descriptor area that *descriptor* or *descriptor_var* identifies. It also frees all the item descriptors (including memory for data items in the item descriptors).

You can reuse a descriptor or descriptor variable after it is deallocated. Deallocation occurs automatically at the end of the program.

If you deallocate a nonexistent descriptor or descriptor variable, an error results.

You cannot use the DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement to deallocate an **sqllda** structure. You can use it only to free the memory that is allocated for a system-descriptor area.

DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR

The following examples show valid DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statements. The first line uses an embedded-variable name, and the second line uses a quoted string to identify the allocated system-descriptor area.

```
EXEC SQL deallocate descriptor :descname;  
EXEC SQL deallocate descriptor 'desc1';
```

Related Information

Related statements: [ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR](#), [DECLARE](#), [DESCRIBE](#), [EXECUTE](#), [FETCH](#), [GET DESCRIPTOR](#), [OPEN](#), [PREPARE](#), [PUT](#), and [SET DESCRIPTOR](#)

For more information on system-descriptor areas, refer to the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

+

IDS

E/C

DEALLOCATE ROW

Use the DEALLOCATE ROW statement to release memory for a row variable that was previously allocated with the ALLOCATE ROW statement.

Use this statement with ESQL/C.

Syntax

```
DEALLOCATE ROW _____ : variable _____ |
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>variable</i>	Name that identifies a typed or untyped row variable for which to deallocate memory	The variable must be an ESQL/C row variable that has already been allocated.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

Usage

The DEALLOCATE ROW statement frees all the memory that is associated with the ESQL/C row variable that *variable* identifies. You must explicitly release memory resources for a row variable with DEALLOCATE ROW. Otherwise, deallocation occurs automatically at the end of the program.

The DEALLOCATE COLLECTION statement releases resources for both typed and untyped **row** variables.



Tip: The DEALLOCATE ROW statement deallocates memory for an ESQL/C row variable only. To deallocate memory for an ESQL/C collection variable, use the DEALLOCATE COLLECTION statement.

If you deallocate a nonexistent row variable or a variable that is not an ESQL/C **row** variable, an error results. Once you deallocate a row variable, you can use the ALLOCATE ROW statement to reallocate resources, and you can then reuse a **row** variable.

Example

The following example shows how to deallocate resources for the row variable, **a_row**, with the DEALLOCATE ROW statement:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
      row (a int, b int) a_row;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
.
.
EXEC SQL allocate row :a_row;
.
.
EXEC SQL deallocate row :a_row;
```

Related Information

Related statements: [ALLOCATE ROW](#) and [DEALLOCATE COLLECTION](#)

For a discussion of row types, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For a discussion of complex data types, see the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

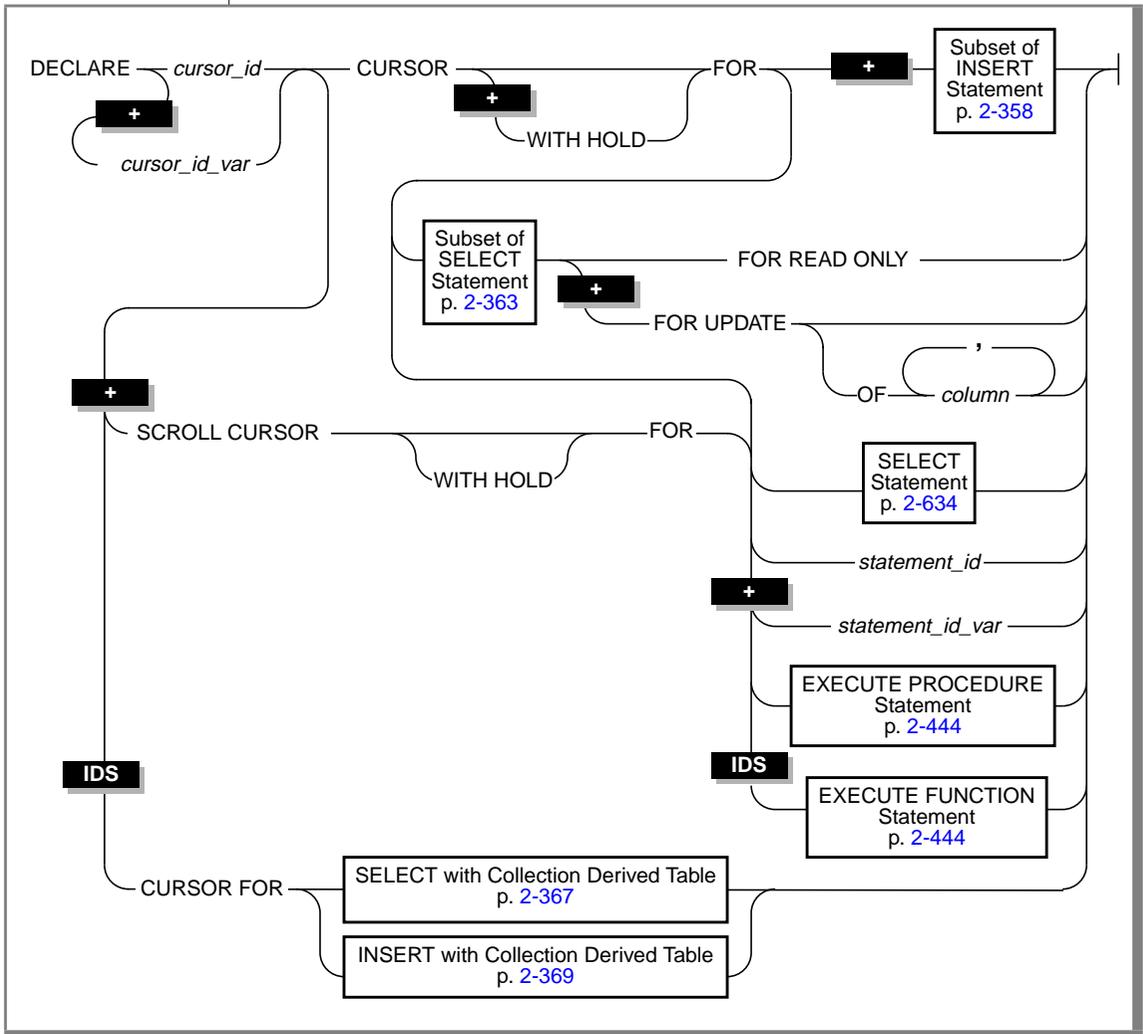
E/C

DECLARE

Use the DECLARE statement to associate a cursor with a group of rows.

Use this statement with ESQL/C.

Syntax



DECLARE

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of the column to update through the cursor	The specified column must exist, but it does not have to be in the select list of the SELECT clause.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>cursor_id</i>	Name that the DECLARE statement assigns to the cursor and that refers to the cursor in other statements	You cannot specify a cursor name that a previous DECLARE statement in the same program has specified.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>cursor_id_var</i>	Embedded variable that holds the value of <i>cursor_id</i>	Variable must be a character data type.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>statement_id</i>	Statement identifier that is a data structure that represents the text of a prepared statement	The <i>statement_id</i> must have already been specified in a PREPARE statement in the same program.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>statement_id_var</i>	Embedded variable that holds the value of <i>statement_id</i>	Variable must be a character data type.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

Usage

A *cursor* is an identifier that you associate with a group of rows. The DECLARE statement associates the cursor with one of the following database objects:

- With an SQL statement, such as SELECT, EXECUTE FUNCTION (OR EXECUTE PROCEDURE), or INSERT
Each of these SQL statements creates a different type of cursor. For more information, see Overview of Cursor Types, page 2-352.
- With the statement identifier (*statement id* or *statement id variable*) of a prepared statement.
You can prepare one of the previous SQL statements and associate the prepared statement with a cursor. For more information, see [“Associating a Cursor With a Prepared Statement” on page 2-366](#).
- With a collection variable in an ESQL/C program
The name of the collection variable appears in the FROM clause of a SELECT or the INTO clause of an INSERT. For more information, see [“Associating a Cursor With a Collection Variable” on page 2-367](#). ♦

The DECLARE statement assigns an identifier to the cursor, specifies its uses, and directs the preprocessor to allocate storage to hold the cursor.

The DECLARE statement must precede any other statement that refers to the cursor during the execution of the program.

The maximum length of a DECLARE statement is 64 kilobytes.

The number of prepared items in a single program is limited by the available memory. These items include both statement identifiers that are named in PREPARE statements (*statement_id* or *statement_id_var*) and declared cursors. To avoid exceeding the limit, use a FREE statement to release some statements or cursors.

A program can consist of one or more source-code files. By default, the scope of a cursor is global to a program, so a cursor declared in one file can be referenced from another file. In a multiple-file program, if you want to limit the scope of cursors to the files in which they are declared, you must preprocess all the files with the **-local** command-line option.

To declare multiple cursors, use a single statement identifier. For instance, the following ESQL/C example does not return an error:

```
EXEC SQL prepare id1 from 'select * from customer';
EXEC SQL declare x cursor for id1;
EXEC SQL declare y scroll cursor for id1;
EXEC SQL declare z cursor with hold for id1;
```

If you include the **-ansi** compilation flag (or if **DBANSIWARN** is set), warnings are generated for statements that use dynamic cursor names or dynamic statement identifier names and statements that use derived table names. Some error checking is performed at runtime. The following list indicates the typical checks:

- Illegal use of cursors (that is, normal cursors used as scroll cursors)
- Use of undeclared cursors
- Bad cursor or statement names (empty)

Checks for multiple declarations of a cursor of the same name are performed at compile time only if the cursor or statement is an identifier. The following example uses a host variable to hold the cursor name.

```
EXEC SQL declare x cursor for
    select * from customer;
. . .
stcopy("x", s);
EXEC SQL declare :s cursor for
    select * from customer;
```

Overview of Cursor Types

Functionally, you can declare the following types of cursors with the DECLARE statement:

- A *select cursor* is a cursor that is associated with A SELECT statement.
- A *function cursor* is a cursor that is associated with an EXECUTE FUNCTION (OR EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement
- An *insert cursor* is a cursor that is associated with an INSERT statement.

Any of these cursor types can have cursor characteristics: sequential, scroll, and hold. These characteristics determine the structure of the cursor. For more information, see [“Cursor Characteristics” on page 2-360](#). In addition, a select or function cursor can have a cursor mode: read-only or update. For more information, see [“Select Cursor or Function Cursor” on page 2-353](#).

The following table summarizes types of cursors that are available.

Cursor Type	Cursor Mode		Cursor Characteristic		
	Read-Only	Update	Sequential	Scroll	Hold
Select and Function	✓		✓		
	✓		✓		✓
		✓	✓		
		✓	✓		✓
	✓			✓	
	✓			✓	✓
Insert			✓		
			✓		✓

A cursor can also be associated with a statement identifier, enabling you to use a cursor with an INSERT, SELECT, EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement that is prepared dynamically and to use different statements with the same cursor at different times. In this case, the type of cursor depends on the statement that is prepared at the time the cursor is opened. For more information, see [“Associating a Cursor With a Prepared Statement” on page 2-366](#).

The following sections describe each of these cursor types.



Tip: Cursors for functions behave the same as select cursors that are enabled as update cursors.

Select Cursor or Function Cursor

When an SQL statement returns more than one group of values to an ESQL/C program, you must declare a cursor to save the multiple groups, or rows, of data and to access these rows one at a time. You must associate the following SQL statements with cursors:

- When you associate a SELECT statement with a cursor, the cursor is called a *select cursor*.

A select cursor is a data structure that represents a specific location within the active set of rows that the SELECT statement retrieved.

- When you associate an EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement with a cursor, the cursor is called a *function cursor*.

The function cursor represents the columns or values that a user-defined function returns. Function cursors behave the same as select cursors, which are enabled as update cursors.

XPS

In Extended Parallel Server, to create a function cursor, you must use the EXECUTE PROCEDURE statement. Extended Parallel Server does not support the EXECUTE FUNCTION statement. ♦

IDS

In Dynamic Server, for backward compatibility, if an SPL function was created with the CREATE PROCEDURE statement, you can create a function cursor with the EXECUTE PROCEDURE statement. With external functions, you must use the EXECUTE FUNCTION statement. ♦

When you associate a SELECT or EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement with a cursor, the statement can include an INTO clause. However, if you prepare the SELECT or EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement, you must omit the INTO clause in the PREPARE statement and use the INTO clause of the FETCH statement to retrieve the values from the collection cursor.

A select or function cursor enables you to scan returned rows of data and to move data row by row into a set of receiving variables, as the following steps describe:

1. **DECLARE**
Use a DECLARE statement to define a cursor and associate it with a statement.
2. **OPEN**
Use the OPEN statement to open the cursor. The database server processes the query until it locates or constructs the first row of the active set.
3. **FETCH**
Use the FETCH statement to retrieve successive rows of data from the cursor.
4. **CLOSE**
Use the CLOSE statement to close the cursor when the active set is no longer needed.
5. **FREE**
Use the FREE statement to release the resources that are allocated for the declared cursor.

Using the FOR READ ONLY Option

Use the FOR READ ONLY keywords to define a cursor as a read-only cursor. A cursor declared to be read-only cannot be used to update (or delete) any row that it fetches.

The need for the FOR READ ONLY keywords depends on whether your database is an ANSI-compliant database or a database that is not ANSI compliant.

ANSI

In a database that is not ANSI compliant, the cursor that the DECLARE statement defines is a read-only cursor by default. So you do not need to specify the FOR READ ONLY keywords if you want the cursor to be a read-only cursor. The only advantage of specifying the FOR READ ONLY keywords explicitly is for better program documentation.

In an ANSI-compliant database, the cursor associated with a SELECT statement through the DECLARE statement is an update cursor by default, provided that the SELECT statement conforms to all of the restrictions for update cursors listed in [“Subset of SELECT Statement Associated with Cursors” on page 2-363](#). If you want a select cursor to be read only, you must use the FOR READ ONLY keywords when you declare the cursor. ♦

The database server can use less stringent locking for a read-only cursor than for an update cursor.

The following example creates a read-only cursor:

```
EXEC SQL declare z_curs cursor for
select * from customer_ansi
for read only;
```

Using the FOR UPDATE Option

Use the FOR UPDATE option to declare an update cursor. You can use the update cursor to modify (update or delete) the current row.

ANSI

In an ANSI-compliant database, you can use a select cursor to update or delete data as long as the cursor was not declared with the FOR READ ONLY keywords and it follows the restrictions on update cursors that are described in [“Subset of SELECT Statement Associated with Cursors” on page 2-363](#). You do not need to use the FOR UPDATE keywords when you declare the cursor. ♦

The following example declares an update cursor:

```
EXEC SQL declare new_curs cursor for
select * from customer_notansi
for update;
```

In an update cursor, you can update or delete rows in the active set. After you create an update cursor, you can update or delete the currently selected row by using an UPDATE or DELETE statement with the WHERE CURRENT OF clause. The words CURRENT OF refer to the row that was most recently fetched; they take the place of the usual test expressions in the WHERE clause.

An update cursor lets you perform updates that are not possible with the UPDATE statement because the decision to update and the values of the new data items can be based on the original contents of the row. Your program can evaluate or manipulate the selected data before it decides whether to update. The UPDATE statement cannot interrogate the table that is being updated.

You can specify particular columns that can be updated.

Using FOR UPDATE with a List of Columns

When you declare an update cursor, you can limit the update to specific columns by including the OF keyword and a list of columns. You can modify only those named columns in subsequent UPDATE statements. The columns need not be in the select list of the SELECT clause.

The following example declares an update cursor and specifies that this cursor can update only the **fname** and **lname** columns in the **customer_notansi** table:

```
EXEC SQL declare name_curs cursor for
select * from customer_notansi
for update of fname, lname;
```

ANSI

By default, a select cursor in a database that is ANSI compliant is an update cursor. Therefore, the FOR UPDATE keywords are optional. However, if you want an update cursor to be able to modify only some of the columns in a table, you must specify these columns in the FOR UPDATE option. ♦

The principal advantage to specifying columns is documentation and preventing programming errors. (The database server refuses to update any other columns.) An additional advantage is speed, when the SELECT statement meets the following criteria:

- The SELECT statement can be processed using an index.
- The columns that are listed are not part of the index that is used to process the SELECT statement.

If the columns that you intend to update are part of the index that is used to process the SELECT statement, the database server must keep a list of each row that is updated to ensure that no row is updated twice. When you use the OF keyword to specify the columns that can be updated, the database server determines whether to keep the list of updated rows. If the database server determines that the list is unnecessary, then eliminating the work of keeping the list results in a performance benefit. If you do not use the OF keyword, the database server keeps the list of updated rows, although it might be unnecessary.

The following example contains ESQL/C code that uses an update cursor with a DELETE statement to delete the current row. Whenever the row is deleted, the cursor remains between rows. After you delete data, you must use a FETCH statement to advance the cursor to the next row before you can refer to the cursor in a DELETE or UPDATE statement.

```
EXEC SQL declare q_curs cursor for
    select * from customer where lname matches :last_name
    for update;

EXEC SQL open q_curs;
for (;;)
{
    EXEC SQL fetch q_curs into :cust_rec;
    if (strncmp(SQLSTATE, "00", 2) != 0)
        break;

    /* Display customer values and prompt for answer */
    printf("\n%s %s", cust_rec.fname, cust_rec.lname);
    printf("\nDelete this customer? ");
    scanf("%s", answer);

    if (answer[0] == 'y')
        EXEC SQL delete from customer where current of q_curs;
    if (strncmp(SQLSTATE, "00", 2) != 0)
        break;
}
printf("\n");
EXEC SQL close q_curs;
```

Locking with an Update Cursor

When you use the FOR UPDATE keywords you notify the database server that updating is possible and cause it to use more stringent locking than with a select cursor. You declare an update cursor to let the database server know that the program might update (or delete) any row that it fetches as part of the SELECT statement. The update cursor employs *promotable* locks for rows that the program fetches. Other programs can read the locked row, but no other program can place a promotable or write lock. Before the program modifies the row, the row lock is promoted to an exclusive lock.

Although it is possible to declare an update cursor with the WITH HOLD keywords, the only reason to do so is to break a long series of updates into smaller transactions. You must fetch and update a particular row in the same transaction.

If an operation involves fetching and updating a very large number of rows, the lock table that the database server maintains can overflow. The usual way to prevent this overflow is to lock the entire table that is being updated. If this action is impossible, an alternative is to update through a hold cursor and to execute COMMIT WORK at frequent intervals. However, you must plan such an application very carefully because COMMIT WORK releases all locks, even those that are placed through a hold cursor.

Subset of INSERT Statement Associated with a Sequential Cursor

As indicated in the diagram for “[DECLARE](#)” on page 349, to create an insert cursor, you associate a sequential cursor with a restricted form of the INSERT statement. The INSERT statement must include a VALUES clause; it cannot contain an embedded SELECT statement.

The following example contains ESQL/C code that declares an insert cursor:

```
EXEC SQL declare ins_cur cursor for
      insert into stock values
      (:stock_no, :manu_code, :descr, :u_price, :unit, :u_desc);
```

The insert cursor simply inserts rows of data; it cannot be used to fetch data. When an insert cursor is opened, a buffer is created in memory to hold a block of rows. The buffer receives rows of data as the program executes PUT statements. The rows are written to disk only when the buffer is full. You can use the CLOSE, FLUSH, or COMMIT WORK statement to flush the buffer when it is less than full. This topic is discussed further under the PUT and CLOSE statements. You must close an insert cursor to insert any buffered rows into the database before the program ends. You can lose data if you do not close the cursor properly.

For a complete description of INSERT syntax and usage, see [“INSERT” on page 535](#).

Insert Cursor

When you associate an INSERT statement with a cursor, the cursor is called an *insert cursor*. An insert cursor is a data structure that represents the rows that the INSERT statement is to add to the database. The insert cursor simply inserts rows of data; it cannot be used to fetch data. To create an insert cursor, you associate a cursor with a restricted form of the INSERT statement. The INSERT statement must include a VALUES clause; it cannot contain an embedded SELECT statement.

Create an insert cursor if you want to add multiple rows to the database in an INSERT operation. An insert cursor allows bulk insert data to be buffered in memory and written to disk when the buffer is full, as the following steps describe:

1. Use a DECLARE statement to define an insert cursor for the INSERT statement.
2. Open the cursor with the OPEN statement. The database server creates the insert buffer in memory and positions the cursor at the first row of the insert buffer.
3. Put successive rows of data into the insert buffer with the PUT statement.
4. The database server writes the rows to disk only when the buffer is full. You can use the CLOSE, FLUSH, or COMMIT WORK statement to flush the buffer when it is less than full. This topic is discussed further under the PUT and CLOSE statements.

5. Close the cursor with the CLOSE statement when the insert cursor is no longer needed. You must close an insert cursor to insert any buffered rows into the database before the program ends. You can lose data if you do not close the cursor properly.
6. Free the cursor with the FREE statement. The FREE statement releases the resources that are allocated for an insert cursor.

An insert cursor increases processing efficiency (compared with embedding the INSERT statement directly). This process reduces communication between the program and the database server and also increases the speed of the insertions.

In addition to select and function cursors, insert cursors can also have the sequential cursor characteristic. To create an insert cursor, you associate a sequential cursor with a restricted form of the INSERT statement. (For more information, see [“Insert Cursor” on page 2-359](#).) The following example contains Informix ESQL/C code that declares a sequential insert cursor:

```
EXEC SQL declare ins_cur cursor for
insert into stock values
(:stock_no, :manu_code, :descr, :u_price, :unit, :u_desc);
```

Cursor Characteristics

Structurally, you can declare a cursor as a *sequential* cursor (the default condition), a *scroll* cursor (using the SCROLL keyword), or a *hold* cursor (using the WITH HOLD keywords). The following sections explain these structural characteristics.

A select or function cursor can be either a sequential or a scroll cursor. An insert cursor can only be a sequential cursor. Select, function, and insert cursors can optionally be hold cursors. For a graphical representation of this information, see [“Overview of Cursor Types” on page 2-352](#).

Creating a Sequential Cursor by Default

If you use only the CURSOR keyword, you create a sequential cursor, which can fetch only the next row in sequence from the active set. The sequential cursor can read through the active set only once each time it is opened. If you are using a sequential cursor for a select cursor, on each execution of the FETCH statement, the database server returns the contents of the current row and locates the next row in the active set.

The following example creates a read-only sequential cursor in a database that is not ANSI compliant and an update sequential cursor in an ANSI-compliant database:

```
EXEC SQL declare s_cur cursor for
      select fname, lname into :st_fname, :st_lname
      from orders where customer_num = 114;
```

In addition to select and function cursors, insert cursors can also have the sequential cursor characteristic. To create an insert cursor, you associate a sequential cursor with a restricted form of the INSERT statement. (For more information, see [“Insert Cursor” on page 2-359](#).) The following example declares a sequential insert cursor:

```
EXEC SQL declare ins_cur cursor for
      insert into stock values
      (:stock_no, :manu_code, :descr, :u_price, :unit, :u_desc);
```

Using the SCROLL Keyword to Create a Scroll Cursor

Use the SCROLL keyword to create a scroll cursor, which can fetch rows of the active set in any sequence.

The database server retains the active set of the cursor as a temporary table until the cursor is closed. You can fetch the first, last, or any intermediate rows of the active set as well as fetch rows repeatedly without having to close and reopen the cursor. (See FETCH.)

On a multiuser system, the rows in the tables from which the active-set rows were derived might change after the cursor is opened and a copy is made in the temporary table. If you use a scroll cursor within a transaction, you can prevent copied rows from changing either by setting the isolation level to Repeatable Read or by locking the entire table in share mode during the transaction. (See SET ISOLATION and LOCK TABLE.)

The following example creates a scroll cursor for a SELECT:

```
DECLARE sc_cur SCROLL CURSOR FOR
      SELECT * FROM orders
```

Restrictions

You can create scroll cursors for select and function cursors but *not* for insert cursors. Scroll cursors cannot be declared as FOR UPDATE.

Using the WITH HOLD Keywords to Create a Hold Cursor

Use the WITH HOLD keywords to create a hold cursor. A hold cursor allows uninterrupted access to a set of rows across multiple transactions. Ordinarily, all cursors close at the end of a transaction. A hold cursor does not close; it remains open after a transaction ends.

A hold cursor can be either a sequential cursor or a scroll cursor.

You can use the WITH HOLD keywords to declare select and function cursors (sequential and scroll), and insert cursors. These keywords follow the CURSOR keyword in the DECLARE statement. The following example creates a sequential hold cursor for a SELECT:

```
DECLARE hld_cur CURSOR WITH HOLD FOR
    SELECT customer_num, lname, city FROM customer
```

You can use a select hold cursor as the following ESQL/C code example shows. This code fragment uses a hold cursor as a *master* cursor to scan one set of records and a sequential cursor as a *detail* cursor to point to records that are located in a different table. The records that the master cursor scans are the basis for updating the records to which the detail cursor points. The COMMIT WORK statement at the end of each iteration of the first WHILE loop leaves the hold cursor **c_master** open but closes the sequential cursor **c_detail** and releases all locks. This technique minimizes the resources that the database server must devote to locks and unfinished transactions, and it gives other users immediate access to updated rows.

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    int p_custnum,
    int save_status;
    long p_orddate;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL prepare st_1 from
    'select order_date
     from orders where customer_num = ? for update';
EXEC SQL declare c_detail cursor for st_1;

EXEC SQL declare c_master cursor with hold for
    select customer_num
     from customer where city = 'Pittsburgh';

EXEC SQL open c_master;
if(SQLCODE==0) /* the open worked */
    EXEC SQL fetch c_master into :p_custnum; /* discover first customer */
while(SQLCODE==0) /* while no errors and not end of pittsburgh customers */
    {
        EXEC SQL begin work; /* start transaction for customer p_custnum */
        EXEC SQL open c_detail using :p_custnum;
        if(SQLCODE==0) /* detail open succeeded */
```

```

EXEC SQL fetch c_detail into :p_orddate; /* get first order */
while(SQLCODE==0) /* while no errors and not end of orders */
{
EXEC SQL update orders set order_date = '08/15/94'
  where current of c_detail;
if(status==0) /* update was ok */
  EXEC SQL fetch c_detail into :p_orddate; /* next order */
}
if(SQLCODE==SQLNOTFOUND) /* correctly updated all found orders */
EXEC SQL commit work; /* make updates permanent, set status */
else /* some failure in an update */
{
save_status = SQLCODE; /* save error for loop control */
EXEC SQL rollback work;
SQLCODE = save_status; /* force loop to end */
}
if(SQLCODE==0) /* all updates, and the commit, worked ok */
EXEC SQL fetch c_master into :p_custnum; /* next customer? */
}
EXEC SQL close c_master;

```

Use either the **CLOSE** statement to close the hold cursor explicitly or the **CLOSE DATABASE** or **DISCONNECT** statements to close it implicitly. The **CLOSE DATABASE** statement closes all cursors.

Using an Insert Cursor with Hold

If you associate a hold cursor with an **INSERT** statement, you can use transactions to break a long series of **PUT** statements into smaller sets of **PUT** statements. Instead of waiting for the **PUT** statements to fill the buffer and trigger an automatic write to the database, you can execute a **COMMIT WORK** statement to flush the row buffer. If you use a hold cursor, the **COMMIT WORK** statement commits the inserted rows but leaves the cursor open for further inserts. This method can be desirable when you are inserting a large number of rows, because pending uncommitted work consumes database server resources.

Subset of SELECT Statement Associated with Cursors

As indicated in the diagram for **“DECLARE”** on page 349, not all **SELECT** statements can be associated with a read-only or update cursor. If the **DECLARE** statement includes one of these options, you must observe certain restrictions on the **SELECT** statement that is included in the **DECLARE** statement (either directly or as a prepared statement).

If the DECLARE statement includes the FOR READ ONLY option, the SELECT statement must conform to the following restrictions:

- The SELECT statement cannot have a FOR READ ONLY option.
- The SELECT statement cannot have a FOR UPDATE option.

For a complete description of SELECT syntax and usage, see [“SELECT” on page 634](#).

If the DECLARE statement includes the FOR UPDATE option, the SELECT statement must conform to the following restrictions:

- The statement can select data from only one table.
- The statement cannot include any aggregate functions.
- The statement cannot include any of the following clauses or keywords: DISTINCT, FOR READ ONLY, FOR UPDATE, GROUP BY, INTO TEMP, ORDER BY, UNION, or UNIQUE.
- In Extended Parallel Server, the statement cannot include the INTO EXTERNAL and INTO SCRATCH clauses. ♦

Examples of Cursors in Non-ANSI Databases

In a database that is not ANSI compliant, a cursor associated with a SELECT statement is a read-only cursor by default. The following example declares a read-only cursor in a non-ANSI database:

```
EXEC SQL declare cust_curs cursor for
select * from customer_notansi;
```

If you want to make it clear in the program code that this cursor is a read-only cursor, you can specify the FOR READ ONLY option as shown in the following example:

```
EXEC SQL declare cust_curs cursor for
select * from customer_notansi
for read only;
```

If you want this cursor to be an update cursor, you need to specify the FOR UPDATE option in your DECLARE statement. The following example declares an update cursor:

```
EXEC SQL declare new_curs cursor for
select * from customer_notansi
for update;
```

If you want an update cursor to be able to modify only some of the columns in a table, you need to specify these columns in the FOR UPDATE option. The following example declares an update cursor and specifies that this cursor can update only the **fname** and **lname** columns in the **customer_notansi** table:

```
EXEC SQL declare name_curs cursor for
select * from customer_notansi
for update of fname, lname;
```

ANSI

Examples of Cursors in ANSI-compliant Databases

In an ANSI-compliant database, a cursor associated with a SELECT statement is an update cursor by default. The following example declares an update cursor in an ANSI-compliant database:

```
EXEC SQL declare x_curs cursor for
select * from customer_ansi;
```

If you want to make it clear in the program documentation that this cursor is an update cursor, you can specify the FOR UPDATE option as shown in the following example:

```
EXEC SQL declare x_curs cursor for
select * from customer_ansi
for update;
```

If you want an update cursor to be able to modify only some of the columns in a table, you must specify these columns in the FOR UPDATE option. The following example declares an update cursor and specifies that this cursor can update only the **fname** and **lname** columns in the **customer_ansi** table:

```
EXEC SQL declare y_curs cursor for
select * from customer_ansi
for update of fname, lname;
```

If you want a cursor to be a read-only cursor, you must override the default behavior of the DECLARE statement by specifying the FOR READ ONLY option in your DECLARE statement. The following example declares a read-only cursor:

```
EXEC SQL declare z_curs cursor for
select * from customer_ansi
for read only;
```

Associating a Cursor With a Prepared Statement

The PREPARE statement lets you assemble the text of an SQL statement at runtime and pass the statement text to the database server for execution. If you anticipate that a dynamically prepared SELECT, EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement that returns values could produce more than one row of data, the prepared statement must be associated with a cursor. (See PREPARE.)

The result of a PREPARE statement is a statement identifier (*statement id* or *id variable*), which is a data structure that represents the prepared statement text. To declare a cursor for the statement text, associate a cursor with the statement identifier.

You can associate a sequential cursor with any prepared SELECT or EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement. You cannot associate a scroll cursor with a prepared INSERT statement or with a SELECT statement that was prepared to include a FOR UPDATE clause.

After a cursor is opened, used, and closed, a different statement can be prepared under the same statement identifier. In this way, it is possible to use a single cursor with different statements at different times. The cursor must be redeclared before you use it again.

The following example contains ESQL/C code that prepares a SELECT statement and declares a sequential cursor for the prepared statement text. The statement identifier **st_1** is first prepared from a SELECT statement that returns values; then the cursor **c_detail** is declared for **st_1**.

```
EXEC SQL prepare st_1 from
    'select order_date
      from orders where customer_num = ?';
EXEC SQL declare c_detail cursor for st_1;
```

If you want to use a prepared SELECT statement to modify data, add a FOR UPDATE clause to the statement text that you wish to prepare, as the following ESQL/C example shows:

```
EXEC SQL prepare sel_1 from
    'select * from customer for update';
EXEC SQL declare sel_curs cursor for sel_1;
```

Associating a Cursor With a Collection Variable

The DECLARE statement allows you to declare a cursor for an ESQL/C collection variable. Such a cursor is called a *collection cursor*. You use a collection variable to access the elements of a collection (SET, MULTISSET, LIST) column. Use a cursor when you want to access one or more elements in a collection variable.

The Collection Derived Table segment identifies the collection variable for which to declare the cursor. For more information, see “[Collection Derived Table](#)” on page 4-9.

Select With Collection Derived Table

The diagram for “[DECLARE](#)” on page 349 refers to this section.

To declare a select cursor for a collection variable, include the Collection Derived Table segment with the SELECT statement that you associate with the collection cursor. A select cursor allows you to select one or more elements *from* the collection variable.

For a complete description of SELECT syntax and usage, see “[SELECT](#)” on page 634.

Restrictions

When you declare a select cursor for a collection variable, the DECLARE statement has the following restrictions:

- It can not include the FOR READ ONLY keywords that specify the read-only cursor mode.
The select cursor is an update cursor.
- It cannot include the SCROLL or WITH HOLD keywords.
The select cursor must be a sequential cursor.

In addition, the SELECT statement that you associate with the collection cursor has the following restrictions:

- It cannot include the following clauses or options: WHERE, GROUP BY, ORDER BY, HAVING, INTO TEMP, and WITH REOPTIMIZATION.
- It cannot contain expressions in the select list.

- If the collection contains elements of opaque, distinct, built-in, or other collection data types, the select list must be an asterisk (*).

- Column names in the select list must be simple column names.

These columns cannot use the following syntax:

```
database@server:table.column --INVALID SYNTAX
```

- It *must* contain the name of the collection variable in the FROM clause.

You cannot specify an input parameter (the question-mark (?) symbol) for the collection variable. Likewise you cannot use the virtual table format of the Collection Derived Table segment.

Using a SELECT Cursor with a Collection Variable

A collection cursor that includes a SELECT statement with the Collection Derived Table clause allows you to access the elements in a collection variable.

To select more than one element, follow these general steps:

1. Create a client collection variable in your ESQL/C program.
2. Declare the collection cursor for the SELECT statement with the DECLARE statement.

If you want to modify the elements of the collection variable, declare the select cursor as an update cursor with the FOR UPDATE keywords. You can then use the WHERE CURRENT OF clause of the DELETE and UPDATE statements to delete or update elements of the collection.

3. Open this cursor with the OPEN statement.
4. Fetch the elements from the collection cursor with the FETCH statement and the INTO clause.
5. If necessary, perform any updates or deletes on the fetched data and save the modified collection variable in the collection column.

Once the collection variable contains the correct elements, use the UPDATE or INSERT statement to save the contents of the collection variable in the actual collection column (SET, MULTISSET, or LIST).

6. Close the collection cursor with the CLOSE statement.

Example

The following DECLARE statement declares a select cursor for a collection variable:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
      client collection set(integer not null) a_set;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
...
EXEC SQL declare set_curs cursor for
      select * from table(:a_set);
```

For an extended code example that uses a collection cursor for a SELECT statement, see [“Fetching From a Collection Cursor” on page 2-466](#).

Insert With a Collection Derived Table

The diagram for [“DECLARE” on page 349](#) refers to this section.

To declare an insert cursor for a collection variable, include the Collection Derived Table segment with the INSERT statement that you associate with the collection cursor. An insert cursor allows you to insert one or more elements in the collection.

For a complete description of INSERT syntax and usage, see [“INSERT” on page 535](#).

Restrictions

The insert cursor must be a sequential cursor, that is the DECLARE statement cannot contain the WITH HOLD keywords.

When you declare an insert cursor for a collection variable, the Collection-Derived Table clause of the INSERT statement *must* contain the name of the collection variable. You cannot specify an input parameter (the question-mark (?) symbol) for the collection variable. However, you can use an input parameter in the VALUES clause of the INSERT statement. This parameter indicates that the collection element is to be provided later by the FROM clause of the PUT statement.

Using an INSERT Cursor with a Collection Variable

A collection cursor that includes an INSERT statement with the Collection-Derived Table clause allows you to insert more than one element into a collection variable.

To insert more than one element, follow these general steps:

1. Create a client collection variable in your ESQL/C program.
2. Declare the collection cursor for the INSERT statement with the DECLARE statement.
3. Open the cursor with the OPEN statement.
4. Put the elements into the collection cursor with the PUT statement and the FROM clause.
5. Once the collection variable contains all the elements, you then use the UPDATE statement or the INSERT statement on a table name to save the contents of the collection variable in a collection column (SET, MULTISSET, or LIST).
6. Close the collection cursor with the CLOSE statement.

Example

For example, the following DECLARE statement declares an insert cursor for the **a_set** collection variable:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    client collection multiset(smallint not null) a_mset;
    int an_element;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
...
EXEC SQL declare mset_curs cursor for
    insert into table(:a_mset)
    values (?);
EXEC SQL open mset_curs;
while (1)
{
    ... EXEC SQL put mset_curs from :an_element;
    ...
}
```

To insert the elements into the collection variable, use the PUT statement with the FROM clause. For a code example that uses a collection cursor for an INSERT statement, see [“Inserting into a Collection Cursor” on page 2-599](#).

Using Cursors with Transactions

To roll back a modification, you must perform the modification within a transaction. A transaction in a database that is not ANSI compliant begins only when the `BEGIN WORK` statement is executed.

In an ANSI-compliant database, transactions are always in effect. ♦

The database server enforces the following guidelines for select and update cursors. These guidelines ensure that modifications can be committed or rolled back properly:

- Open an insert or update cursor within a transaction.
- Include `PUT` and `FLUSH` statements within one transaction.
- Modify data (update, insert, or delete) within one transaction.

The database server lets you open and close a hold cursor for an update outside a transaction; however, you should fetch all the rows that pertain to a given modification and then perform the modification all within a single transaction. You cannot open and close hold or update cursors outside a transaction.

The following example uses an update cursor within a transaction:

```
EXEC SQL declare q_curs cursor for
      select customer_num, fname, lname from customer
      where lname matches :last_name
      for update;
EXEC SQL open q_curs;
EXEC SQL begin work;
EXEC SQL fetch q_curs into :cust_rec; /* fetch after begin */
EXEC SQL update customer set lname = 'Smith'
      where current of q_curs;
/* no error */
EXEC SQL commit work;
```

When you update a row within a transaction, the row remains locked until the cursor is closed or the transaction is committed or rolled back. If you update a row when no transaction is in effect, the row lock is released when the modified row is written to disk.

If you update or delete a row outside a transaction, you cannot roll back the operation.

In a database that uses transactions, you cannot open an insert cursor outside a transaction unless it was also declared with the `WITH HOLD` keywords.

Related Information

Related statements: [CLOSE](#), [DELETE](#), [EXECUTE PROCEDURE](#), [FETCH](#), [FREE](#), [INSERT](#), [OPEN](#), [PREPARE](#), [PUT](#), [SELECT](#), and [UPDATE](#)

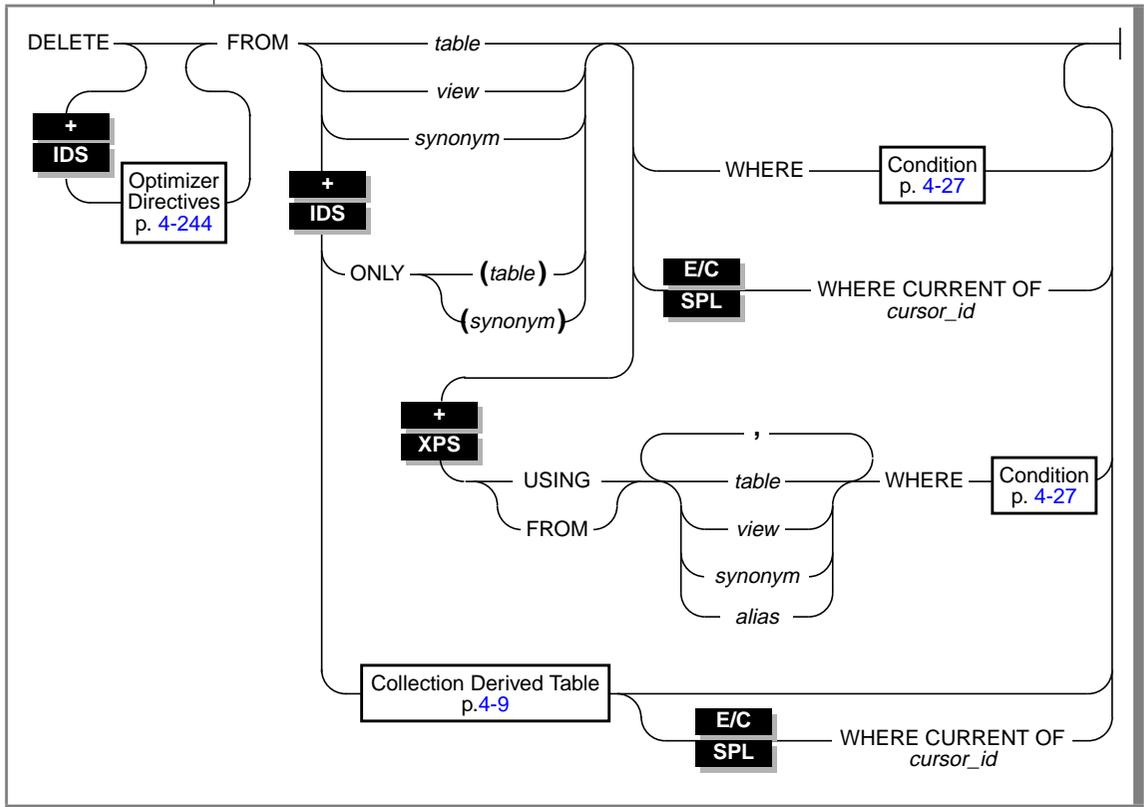
For discussions of cursors and data modification, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For more advanced issues related to cursors or information about using cursors with collection variables, see the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

DELETE

Use the DELETE statement to delete one or more rows from a table, or one or more elements in an SPL or ESQL/C collection variable.

Syntax



DELETE

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>alias</i>	Temporary name for a table	You cannot use an alias with <code>indexed_table</code> .	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>cursor_id</i>	Name of the cursor whose current row is to be deleted	The cursor must have been previously declared in a <code>DECLARE</code> statement with a <code>FOR UPDATE</code> clause.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>synonym</i>	Name of the synonym that contains the row or rows to be deleted	The synonym and the table to which the synonym points must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of the table that contains the row or rows to be deleted	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>view</i>	Name of the view that contains the row or rows to be deleted	The view must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

If you use the `DELETE` statement without a `WHERE` clause (either to introduce a condition or to indicate the active set of the cursor), the database server deletes all the rows in the table.

If you use the `DELETE` statement outside a transaction in a database that uses transactions, each `DELETE` statement that you execute is treated as a single transaction.

The database server locks each row affected by a `DELETE` statement within a transaction for the duration of the transaction. The type of lock that the database server uses is determined by the lock mode of the table, as set by a `CREATE TABLE` or `ALTER TABLE` statement, as follows:

- If the lock mode is `ROW`, the database server acquires one lock for each row affected by the delete.
- In Extended Parallel Server, if the lock mode is `PAGE`, the database server acquires one lock for each page affected by the delete. ♦

If the number of rows affected is very large and the lock mode is `ROW`, you might exceed the limits your operating system places on the maximum number of simultaneous locks. If this occurs, you can either reduce the scope of the `DELETE` statement or lock the table in exclusive mode before you execute the statement.

DB

If you specify a view name, the view must be updatable. For an explanation of an updatable view, see [“Updating Through Views” on page 2-339](#).

If you omit the WHERE clause while you are working within the SQL menu, DB-Access prompts you to verify that you want to delete all rows from a table. You do not receive a prompt if you run the DELETE statement within a command file. ♦

ANSI

In an ANSI-compliant database, statements are always in an implicit transaction. Therefore, you cannot have a DELETE statement outside a transaction. ♦

IDS

Using the ONLY Keyword

If you use the DELETE statement to remove rows of a supertable, rows from both the supertable and its subtables can be deleted. To delete rows from the supertable only, you must use the ONLY keyword prior to the table name, as the following example shows:

```
DELETE FROM ONLY(super_tab)
WHERE name = "johnson"
```



Warning: *If you use the DELETE statement on a supertable without the ONLY keyword and without a WHERE clause, all rows of the supertable and its subtables are deleted.*

You cannot specify the ONLY keyword if you plan to use the WHERE CURRENT OF clause to delete the current row of the active set of a cursor.

Considerations When Tables Have Cascading Deletes

When you use the ON DELETE CASCADE option of the REFERENCES clause on either the CREATE TABLE or ALTER TABLE statement, you specify that you want deletes to cascade from one table to another. For example, in the **stores_demo** database, the **stock** table contains the column **stock_num** as a primary key. The **catalog** and **items** tables each contain the column **stock_num** as foreign keys with the ON DELETE CASCADE option specified. When a delete is performed from the **stock** table, rows are also deleted in the **catalog** and **items** tables, which are referred through the foreign keys.

To have deletes cascade to a table that has a referential constraint on a parent table, you need the DELETE privilege only on the parent table that you mention in the DELETE statement.

If a delete without a WHERE clause is performed on a table that one or more child tables reference with cascading deletes, the database server deletes all rows from that table and from any affected child tables.

For an example of how to create a referential constraint that uses cascading deletes, see [“Using the ON DELETE CASCADE Option” on page 2-244](#).

Restrictions on DELETE When Tables Have Cascading Deletes

If you have a parent table with two child tables that reference it, one child with cascading deletes specified and one child without cascading deletes, and you attempt to delete a row from the parent table that applies to both child tables, the delete statement fails, and no rows are deleted from either the parent or child tables.

You cannot use a child table in a correlated subquery to delete a row from a parent table.

Locking and Logging Implications of Cascading Deletes

During deletes, the database server places locks on all qualifying rows of the referenced and referencing tables.

IDS

You must turn logging on when you perform the deletes. If logging is turned off in a database, even temporarily, deletes do not cascade because if logging is turned off, you cannot roll back any actions. For example, if a parent row is deleted, and the system fails before the child rows are deleted, the database will have dangling child records, which violates referential integrity. However, when logging is turned back on, subsequent deletes cascade. ♦

Using the WHERE Keyword to Introduce a Condition

Use the WHERE keyword to introduce a condition that separates from the table one or more rows that you want to delete. The WHERE conditions are the same as the conditions in the SELECT statement. For example, the following statement deletes all the rows of the **items** table where the order number is less than 1034:

```
DELETE FROM items
WHERE order_num < 1034
```

DB

If you include a WHERE clause that selects all rows in the table, DB-Access gives no prompt and deletes all rows. ♦

IDS

If you are deleting from a supertable in a table hierarchy, a subquery in the WHERE clause cannot reference a subtable.

If you are deleting from a subtable in a table hierarchy, a subquery in the WHERE clause can reference the supertable if it references only the supertable. That is, the subquery must use the SELECT...FROM ONLY (*supertable*)... syntax. ♦

E/C

Using the WHERE CURRENT OF Keywords

SPL

Use the WHERE CURRENT OF clause to delete the current row of the active set of a cursor.

When you use the WHERE CURRENT OF clause, THE DELETE statement removes the row of the active set at the current position of the cursor. After the deletion, no current row exists; you cannot use the cursor to delete or update a row until you reposition the cursor with a FETCH statement.

You access the current row of the active set of a cursor with an update cursor. Before you can use the THIS clause, you must create a cursor with the FOREACH statement (SPL) or the DECLARE statement with the FOR UPDATE clause (ESQL/C). ♦

ANSI

All select cursors are potentially update cursors in an ANSI-compliant database. You can use this clause with any select cursor. ♦

IDS

You cannot use this clause if you are selecting from only one table in a table hierarchy. That is, you cannot use this option if you use the ONLY keyword.

You use this clause to delete an element from a collection. However, you actually delete the current row of the collection derived table that a collection variable holds. For more information, see [“Collection Derived Table” on page 4-9](#). ♦

+

XPS

E/C

Using the USING or FROM Keyword to Introduce a Join Condition

If you want to delete information from a table based on information contained in one or more other tables, use the USING keyword or a second FROM keyword to introduce the list of tables that you want to join in the WHERE clause.

When you use this syntax, the WHERE clause can include any complex join.

If you do not list a join in the WHERE clause, the database server ignores the tables listed after the introductory keyword (either USING or FROM). That is, the query performs as if the list of tables was not included.

Although you can use a second FROM keyword to introduce the list of tables, Informix recommends that you use the USING keyword for more readable code.

When you use a delete join, the entire operation occurs as a single transaction. For example if a delete join query is supposed to delete 100 rows and an error occurs after the 50th row, the first 50 rows that are already deleted will reappear in the table. ♦

Restrictions

When you introduce a list of tables that you want to join in the WHERE clause, the following restrictions for the DELETE statement exist:

- You must list the target table (the one from which rows are to be deleted) and any table that will be part of a join after the USING (or second FROM) keyword.
- The WHERE clause cannot contain outer joins.
- The target table cannot be a static or external table.
- The statement cannot contain cursors.

- If the target table is a view, the view must be updatable.
That is, the `SELECT` statement that defines the view cannot contain any of the following syntax:
 - Aggregate expressions
 - `UNIQUE` or `DISTINCT`
 - `UNION`
 - `GROUP BY`

Example

The following example deletes those rows from the `lineitem` table whose corresponding rows in the `order` table show that nothing was ordered (that is, a `qty` of less than one).

```
DELETE FROM lineitem
USING order o, lineitem l
WHERE o.qty < 1 AND o.order_num = l.order_num
```

When to Use

A delete join makes it easier to incorporate new data into a database. For example, you can:

1. Store new values in a temporary table.
2. Use a delete join (`DELETE...USING` statement) to remove any records from the temporary table that already exist in the table into which you want to insert the new records.
3. Insert the remaining records into the table.

In addition, you can use this syntax instead of deleting from the results of a `SELECT` statement that includes a join.

Deleting Rows That Contain Opaque Data Types

Some opaque data types require special processing when they are deleted. For example, if an opaque data type contains spatial or multirepresentational data, it might provide a choice of how to store the data: inside the internal structure or, for very large objects, in a smart large object.

This processing is accomplished by calling a user-defined support function called **destroy()**. When you use the DELETE statement to delete a row that contains one of these opaque types, the database server automatically invokes the **destroy()** function for the type. The **destroy()** support function can decide how to remove the data, regardless of where it is stored. For more information on the **destroy()** support function, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

Deleting Rows That Contain Collection Data Types

When a row contains a column that is a collection data type (LIST, MULTISSET, or SET), you can search for a particular element in the collection, and delete the row or rows in which the element is found. For example, the following statement deletes any rows from the **new_tab** table in which the **set_col** column contains the element `jimmy smith`:

```
DELETE FROM new_tab
WHERE 'jimmy smith' IN set_col
```

You can also use a collection variable to delete values in a collection column. With a collection variable you can delete one or more individual elements in a collection. For more information, see [“Collection Derived Table” on page 4-9](#). ♦

E/C

SPL

ANSI

SQLSTATE VALUES When Deleting from an ANSI Database

If you delete from a table in an ANSI-compliant database with a DELETE statement that contains a WHERE clause and no rows are found, that database server issues a warning. You can detect this warning condition in either of the following ways:

- The GET DIAGNOSTICS statement sets the **RETURNED_SQLSTATE** field to the value `02000`. In an SQL API application, the **SQLSTATE** variable contains this same value.
- In an SQL API application, the **sqlca.sqlcode** and **SQLCODE** variables contain the value `100`.

The database server also sets **SQLSTATE** and **SQLCODE** to these values if the DELETE... WHERE... is a part of a multistatement prepare and the database server returns no rows. ♦

SQLSTATE VALUES When Deleting from a Non-ANSI Database

In a database that is not ANSI compliant, the database server does not return a warning when it finds no matching rows for a WHERE clause in a DELETE statement. The **SQLSTATE** code is 00000 and the **SQLCODE** code is zero (0). However, if the DELETE...WHERE... is a part of a multistatement prepare, and no rows are returned, the database server does issue a warning. It sets **SQLSTATE** to 02000 and **SQLCODE** value to 100.

Related Information

Related Statements: [DECLARE](#), [FETCH](#), [GET DIAGNOSTICS](#), [INSERT](#), [OPEN](#), [SELECT](#), and [UPDATE](#)

For discussions of the DELETE statement, SPL routines, statement modification, cursors, and the SQLCODE code, see the *[Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#)*.

For information on how to access row and collections with ESQL/C host variables, see the chapter on complex data types in the *[Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#)*.

For a discussion of the GLS aspects of the DELETE statement, see the *[Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#)*.

+

E/C

DESCRIBE

Use the DESCRIBE statement to obtain information about a prepared statement before you execute it.

Use this statement with ESQL/C.

Syntax

```
DESCRIBE statement_id USING SQL DESCRIPTOR 'descriptor' INTO sqlda_pointer
         statement_id_var                               descriptor_var
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>descriptor</i>	Quoted string that identifies a system-descriptor area	System-descriptor area must already be allocated.	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>descriptor_var</i>	Host variable that identifies a system-descriptor area	Variable must contain the name of an allocated system-descriptor area.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>sqlda_pointer</i>	Pointer to an sqlda structure	You cannot begin an sqlda pointer with a dollar sign (\$) or a colon (:). You must use an sqlda structure if you are using dynamic SQL statements.	See the discussion of sqlda structure in the Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual .
<i>statement_id</i>	Statement identifier for a prepared SQL statement	The statement identifier must be defined in a previous PREPARE statement.	PREPARE, p. 2-579
<i>statement_id_var</i>	Host variable that contains a statement identifier for a prepared SQL statement	The statement identifier must be defined in a previous PREPARE statement. The variable must be a character data type.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

Usage

The DESCRIBE statement allows you to determine, at runtime, the following information about a prepared statement:

- The DESCRIBE statement returns the prepared statement type.
- The DESCRIBE statement can determine whether an UPDATE or DELETE statement contains a WHERE clause.
- For a SELECT, EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE), INSERT, or UPDATE statement, the DESCRIBE statement also returns the number, data types and size of the values, and the name of the column or expression that the query returns. ♦
- For a SELECT, EXECUTE PROCEDURE, or INSERT statement, the DESCRIBE statement also returns the number, data types and size of the values, and the name of the column or expression that the query returns. ♦

With this information, you can write code to allocate memory to hold retrieved values and display or process them after they are fetched.

Describing the Statement Type

The DESCRIBE statement takes a statement identifier from a PREPARE statement as input. When the DESCRIBE statement executes, the database server sets the value of the SQLCODE field of the **sqlca** to indicate the statement type (that is, the keyword with which the statement begins). If the prepared statement text contains more than one SQL statement, the DESCRIBE statement returns the type of the first statement in the text.

SQLCODE is set to zero to indicate a SELECT statement *without* an INTO TEMP clause. This situation is the most common. For any other SQL statement, SQLCODE is set to a positive integer.

You can test the number against the constant names that are defined. In ESQL/C, the constant names are defined in the **sqltype.h** header file.

The DESCRIBE statement uses the SQLCODE field differently from any other statement, possibly returning a nonzero value when it executes successfully. You can revise standard error-checking routines to accommodate this behavior, if desired.

IDS

XPS

Checking for Existence of a WHERE Clause

If the DESCRIBE statement detects that a prepared statement contains an UPDATE or DELETE statement without a WHERE clause, the DESCRIBE statement sets the `sqlca.sqlwarn.sqlwarn4` variable to `w`.

When you do not specify a WHERE clause in either a DELETE or UPDATE statement, the database server performs the delete or update action on the entire table. Check the `sqlca.sqlwarn.sqlwarn4` variable to avoid unintended global changes to your table.

Describing a Statement with Runtime Parameters

If the prepared statement contains parameters for which the number of parameters or parameter data types is to be supplied at runtime, you can describe these input values. If the prepared statement text includes one of the following statements, the DESCRIBE statement returns a description of each column or expression that is included in the list:

- EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE)
- INSERT
- SELECT (without an INTO TEMP clause)
- UPDATE

The `IFX_UPDDESC` environment variable must be set before you can DESCRIBE an UPDATE statement. For more information, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#). ♦

The description includes the following information:

- The data type of the column, as defined in the table
- The length of the column, in bytes
- The name of the column or expression

If the prepared statement is an INSERT or an UPDATE statement, the DESCRIBE statement returns only the dynamic parameters in that statement, that is, only those parameters that are expressed with a question mark (?).

You can store descriptions in a system-descriptor area or in a pointer to an `sqllda` structure.

X/O

Using the USING SQL DESCRIPTOR Clause

Use the USING SQL DESCRIPTOR clause to store the description of a statement list in a previously allocated system-descriptor area.

A system-descriptor area conforms to the X/Open standards. ♦

When you describe one of the previously mentioned statements into a system descriptor area, the database server updates the system-descriptor area in the following ways:

- It sets the COUNT field in the system-descriptor area to the number of values in the statement list. If COUNT is greater than the number of item descriptors in the system-descriptor area, the system returns an error.
- It sets the TYPE, LENGTH, NAME, SCALE, PRECISION, and NULLABLE fields in system-descriptor area.

If the column has an opaque data type, the database server sets the EXTTYPEID, EXTYPENAME, EXTYPELENGTH, EXTYPEOWNER-LENGTH, and EXTYPEOWNERNAME fields of the item descriptor. ♦

- It allocates memory for the DATA field for each item descriptor, based on the TYPE and LENGTH information.

After a DESCRIBE statement is executed, the SCALE and PRECISION fields contain the scale and precision of the column, respectively. If SCALE and PRECISION are set in the SET DESCRIPTOR statement, and TYPE is set to DECIMAL or MONEY, the LENGTH field is modified to adjust for the scale and precision of the decimal value. If TYPE is not set to DECIMAL or MONEY, the values for SCALE and PRECISION are not set, and LENGTH is unaffected.

You can modify the system-descriptor-area information with the SET DESCRIPTOR statement. You must modify the system-descriptor area to show the address in memory that is to receive the described value. You can change the data type to another compatible type. This change causes data conversion to take place when the data is fetched.

You can use the system-descriptor area in statements that support a USING SQL DESCRIPTOR clause, such as EXECUTE, FETCH, OPEN, and PUT.

IDS

The following examples show the use of a system descriptor in a DESCRIBE statement. In the first example, the descriptor is a quoted string; in the second example, it is an embedded variable name.

```
main()
{
    .
    .
    EXEC SQL allocate descriptor 'desc1' with max 3;
    EXEC SQL prepare curs1 FROM 'select * from tab';
    EXEC SQL describe curs1 using sql descriptor 'desc1';
}

EXEC SQL describe curs1 using sql descriptor :desc1var;
```

Using the INTO sqlda pointer Clause

Use the INTO *sqlda_pointer* clause to allocate memory for an **sqlda** structure, and store its address in an **sqlda** pointer. The DESCRIBE statement fills in the allocated memory with descriptive information.

The DESCRIBE statement sets the **sqlda.sqlld** field to the number of values in the statement list. The **sqlda** structure also contains an array of data descriptors (**sqlvar** structures), one for each value in the statement list. After a DESCRIBE statement is executed, the **sqlda.sqlvar** structure has the **sqltype**, **sqlllen**, and **sqlname** fields set.

If the column has an opaque data type, DESCRIBE...INTO sets the **sqlxid**, **sqltypename**, **sqltypelen**, **sqlownerlen**, and **sqlownername** fields of the item descriptor. ♦

The DESCRIBE statement allocates memory for an **sqlda** pointer once it is declared in a program. However, the application program must designate the storage area of the **sqlda.sqlvar.sqldata** fields.

IDS

Describing a Collection Variable

The DESCRIBE statement can provide information about a collection variable when you use the USING SQL DESCRIPTOR or INTO clause.

You must perform the DESCRIBE statement *after* you open the select or insert cursor. Otherwise, DESCRIBE cannot get information about the collection variable because it is the OPEN...USING statement that specifies the name of the collection variable to use.

IDS

The following ESQL/C code fragment shows how to dynamically select the elements of the **:a_set** collection variable into a system-descriptor area called **desc1**:

```

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    client collection a_set;
    int i, set_count;
    int element_type, element_value;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL allocate collection :a_set;
EXEC SQL allocate descriptor 'desc1';

EXEC SQL select set_col into :a_set from table1;

EXEC SQL prepare set_id from
    'select * from table(?)'
EXEC SQL declare set_curs cursor for set_id;
EXEC SQL open set_curs using :a_set;
EXEC SQL describe set_id using sql descriptor 'desc1';

do
{
    EXEC SQL fetch set_curs using sql descriptor
'desc1';
    ...
    EXEC SQL get descriptor 'desc1' :set_count =
count;
    for (i = 1; i <= set_count; i++)
    {
        EXEC SQL get descriptor 'desc1' value :i
            :element_type = TYPE;
        switch
        {
            case SQLINTEGER:
                EXEC SQL get descriptor 'desc1' value
:i
                    :element_value = data;
                ...
        } /* end switch */
    } /* end for */
} while (SQLCODE == 0);

EXEC SQL close set_curs;
EXEC SQL free set_curs;
EXEC SQL free set_id;
EXEC SQL deallocate collection :a_set;
EXEC SQL deallocate descriptor 'desc1';

```

Related Information

Related statements: [ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR](#), [DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR](#), [DECLARE](#), [EXECUTE](#), [FETCH](#), [GET DESCRIPTOR](#), [OPEN](#), [PREPARE](#), [PUT](#), and [SET DESCRIPTOR](#)

For a task-oriented discussion of the DESCRIBE statement, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For more information about how to use a system-descriptor area and `sqlda`, refer to the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

In ESQL/C, if you disconnect a specific connection with *connection* or *connection_var*, DISCONNECT generates an error if the specified connection is not a current or dormant connection.

A DISCONNECT statement that does not terminate the current connection does not change the context of the current environment (the connection context). ♦

DEFAULT Option

Use the DEFAULT option to identify the default connection for a DISCONNECT statement. The default connection is one of the following connections:

- An explicit default connection (a connection established with the CONNECT TO DEFAULT statement)
- An implicit default connection (any connection made with the DATABASE or CREATE DATABASE statements)

You can use DISCONNECT to disconnect the default connection. For more information, see [“DEFAULT Option” on page 2-105](#) and [“The Implicit Connection with DATABASE Statements” on page 2-106](#).

If the DATABASE statement does not specify a database server, as shown in the following example, the default connection is made to the default database server:

```
EXEC SQL database 'stores_demo';  
.  
.  
EXEC SQL disconnect default;
```

If the DATABASE statement specifies a database server, as shown in the following example, the default connection is made to that database server:

```
EXEC SQL database 'stores_demo@mydbsrvr';  
.  
.  
EXEC SQL disconnect default;
```

In either case, the `DEFAULT` option of `DISCONNECT` disconnects this default connection. See [“DEFAULT Option” on page 2-105](#) and [“The Implicit Connection with DATABASE Statements” on page 2-106](#) for more information about the default database server and implicit connections.

CURRENT Keyword

Use the `CURRENT` keyword with the `DISCONNECT` statement as a shorthand form of identifying the current connection. The `CURRENT` keyword replaces the current connection name. For example, the `DISCONNECT` statement in the following excerpt terminates the current connection to the database server `mydbsrvr`:

```
CONNECT TO 'stores_demo@mydbsrvr'
.
.
DISCONNECT CURRENT
```

When a Transaction is Active

When a transaction is active, the `DISCONNECT` statement generates an error. The transaction remains active, and the application must explicitly commit it or roll it back. If an application terminates without issuing a `DISCONNECT` statement (because of a system failure or program error, for example), active transactions are rolled back.

E/C

Disconnecting in a Thread-Safe Environment

If you issue the `DISCONNECT` statement in a thread-safe ESQL/C application, keep in mind that an active connection can only be disconnected from within the thread in which it is active. Therefore, one thread cannot disconnect the active connection of another thread. The `DISCONNECT` statement generates an error if such an attempt is made.

However, once a connection becomes dormant, any other thread can disconnect this connection unless an ongoing transaction is associated with the dormant connection (the connection was established with the `WITH CONCURRENT TRANSACTION` clause of `CONNECT`). If the dormant connection was not established with the `WITH CONCURRENT TRANSACTION` clause, `DISCONNECT` generates an error when it tries to disconnect it.

For an explanation of connections in a thread-safe ESQL/C application, see [“SET CONNECTION” on page 2-694](#). ♦

Specifying the ALL Option

Use the keyword ALL to terminate all connections established by the application up to that time. For example, the following DISCONNECT statement disconnects the current connection as well as all dormant connections:

```
DISCONNECT ALL
```

E/C

In ESQL/C, the ALL keyword has the same effect on multithreaded applications that it has on single-threaded applications. Execution of the DISCONNECT ALL statement causes all connections in all threads to be terminated. However, the DISCONNECT ALL statement fails if any of the connections is in use or has an ongoing transaction associated with it. If either of these conditions is true, none of the connections is disconnected. ♦

Related Information

Related statements: [CONNECT](#), [DATABASE](#), and [SET CONNECTION](#)

For information on multithreaded applications, see the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

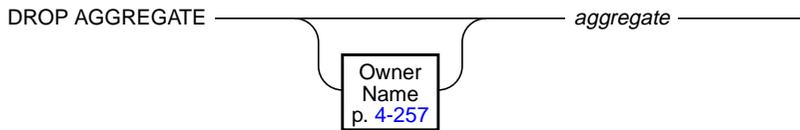
+

IDS

DROP AGGREGATE

Use the DROP AGGREGATE statement to drop a user-defined aggregate that you created with the CREATE AGGREGATE statement.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>aggregate</i>	Name of the user-defined aggregate to be dropped	The user-defined aggregate must have been previously created with the CREATE AGGREGATE statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Usage

The support functions defined for a user-defined aggregate do not depend on the aggregate for their existence. When you drop a user-defined aggregate, you do not drop the support functions that you defined for the aggregate in the CREATE AGGREGATE statement.

The database server does not track dependency of SQL statements on user-defined aggregates that you use in the statements. For example, you can drop a user-defined aggregate that is used in an SPL routine.

In the following example, the user drops the aggregate named **my_avg**.

```
DROP AGGREGATE my_avg
```

Related Information

Related statements: [CREATE AGGREGATE](#)

For information about how to invoke a user-defined aggregate, see the discussion of user-defined aggregates in the Expression segment.

For a description of the **sysaggregates** system catalog table that holds information about user-defined aggregates, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

For a discussion of user-defined aggregates, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

+

IDS

DROP CAST

Use the DROP CAST statement to remove a previously defined cast from the database.

Syntax

```
DROP CAST ( — source_type — AS — target_type — )
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>source_type</i>	Data type on which the cast operates	The type must exist at the time the cast is dropped.	Data Type, p. 4-53
<i>target_type</i>	Data type that results when the cast is invoked	The type must exist at the time the cast is dropped.	Data Type, p. 4-53

Usage

You must be the owner of the cast or have the DBA privilege to use the DROP CAST statement.

What Happens When You Drop a Cast

When you drop a cast, the cast definition is removed from the database. Once you drop a cast, it cannot be invoked either explicitly or implicitly. Dropping a cast has no effect on the user-defined function associated with the cast. Use the DROP FUNCTION statement to remove the user-defined function from the database.

Warning: Do not drop the built-in casts, which are owned by user **informix**. The database server uses built-in casts for automatic conversions between built-in data types.



A cast that is defined on a particular data type can also be used on any distinct types created from that type. When you drop the cast, you can no longer invoke it for the distinct types. Dropping a cast that is defined for a distinct type has no effect on casts for its source type.

When you create a distinct type, the database server automatically defines an explicit cast from the distinct type to its source type and another explicit cast from the source type to the distinct type. When you drop the distinct type, the database server automatically drops these two casts.

Related Information

Related statements: [CREATE CAST](#) and [DROP FUNCTION](#)

For more information about data types, refer to the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

+

DROP DATABASE

Use the DROP DATABASE statement to delete an entire database, including all system catalog tables, indexes, and data.

Syntax

DROP DATABASE

Database Name p. 4-47

Usage

This statement is an extension to ANSI-standard syntax. The ANSI standard does not provide any syntax for the destruction of a database.

You must have the DBA privilege or be user **informix** to run the DROP DATABASE statement successfully. Otherwise, the database server issues an error message and does not drop the database.

You cannot drop the current database or a database that is being used by another user. All the database users must first execute the CLOSE DATABASE statement.

The DROP DATABASE statement cannot appear in a multistatement PREPARE statement.

During a DROP DATABASE operation, the database server acquires a lock on each table in the database and holds the locks until the entire operation is complete. Configure your database server with enough locks to accommodate this fact. For example, if the database to be dropped has 2500 tables, but less than 2500 locks were configured for your server, your DROP DATABASE statement will fail. For further information on how to configure the number of locks available to the database server, see the discussion of the LOCKS configuration parameter in your [Administrator's Reference](#).

DB

E/C

The following statement drops the **stores_demo** database:

```
DROP DATABASE stores_demo
```

In DB-Access, use this statement with caution. DB-Access does not prompt you to verify that you want to delete the entire database. ♦

You can use a simple database name in a program or host variable, or you can use the full database server and database name. See [“Database Name” on page 4-47](#) for more information. ♦

Related Information

Related statements: [CLOSE DATABASE](#), [CREATE DATABASE](#), and [CONNECT](#)

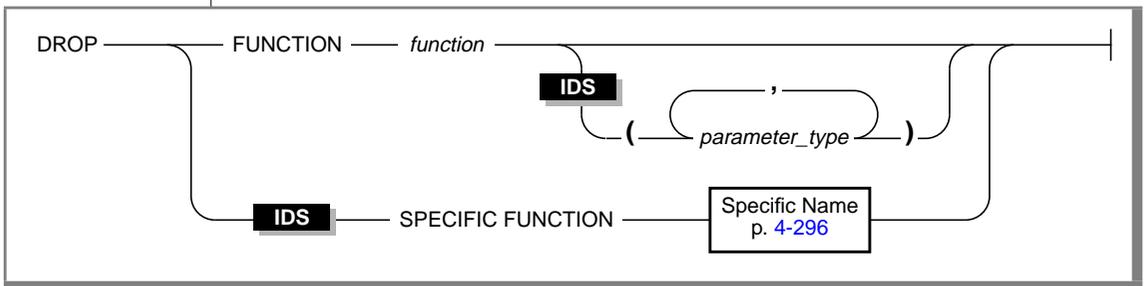
+

IDS

DROP FUNCTION

Use the DROP FUNCTION statement to remove a user-defined function from the database.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>function</i>	Name of the user-defined function to drop	The function must exist (that is, be registered) in the database. If the name does not uniquely identify a function, you must enter one or more appropriate values for <i>parameter_type</i> .	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>parameter_type</i>	Data type of the parameter	The data type (or list of data types) must be the same types (and specified in the same order) as those specified in the CREATE FUNCTION statement when the function was created.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Usage

Dropping a user-defined function removes the text and executable versions of the function from the database.

If you do not know if a UDR is a user-defined function or a user-defined procedure, you can drop the UDR by using the DROP ROUTINE statement.

To use the DROP FUNCTION statement, you must be the owner of the user-defined function or have the DBA privilege.

Examples

If you use parameter data types to identify a user-defined function, they follow the function name, as in the following example:

```
DROP FUNCTION compare(int, int)
```

If you use the specific name for the user-defined function, you must use the keyword SPECIFIC, as in the following example:

```
DROP SPECIFIC FUNCTION compare_point
```

SPL

Dropping SPL Functions

Because you cannot change the text of an SPL function, you must drop it and then re-create it. Make sure that you have a copy of the SPL function text somewhere outside the database, in case you want to re-create it after it is dropped.

You cannot drop an SPL function from within the same SPL function.

Related Information

Related statements: [ALTER FUNCTION](#), [CREATE FUNCTION](#), [CREATE FUNCTION FROM](#), [DROP FUNCTION](#), [DROP ROUTINE](#), and [EXECUTE FUNCTION](#)

+

DROP INDEX

Use the DROP INDEX statement to remove an index.

Syntax

```
DROP INDEX _____ index _____ |
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>index</i>	Name of the index to drop	The index must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

You must be the owner of the index or have the DBA privilege to use the DROP INDEX statement.

The following example drops the index **o_num_ix** that **joed** owns. The **stores_demo** database must be the current database.

```
DROP INDEX stores_demo:joed.o_num_ix
```

Effect of DROP INDEX on Constraints

You cannot use the DROP INDEX statement on a column or columns to drop a unique constraint that is created with a CREATE TABLE statement; you must use the ALTER TABLE statement to remove indexes that are created as constraints with a CREATE TABLE or ALTER TABLE statement.

The index is not actually dropped if it is shared by constraints. Instead, it is renamed in the **sysindexes** system catalog table with the following format:

```
[space]<tabid>_<constraint id>
```

In this example, *tabid* and *constraint_id* are from the **systables** and **sysconstraints** system catalog tables, respectively. The **idxname** (index name) column in the **sysconstraints** table is then updated to reflect this change. For example, the renamed index name might be something like: "121_13" (quotes used to show the spaces).

If this index is a unique index with only referential constraints sharing it, the index is downgraded to a duplicate index after it is renamed.

Related Information

Related statements: [ALTER TABLE](#), [CREATE INDEX](#), and [CREATE TABLE](#)

For information on the performance characteristics of indexes, see your [Performance Guide](#).

+

IDS

DROP OPCLASS

Use the DROP OPCLASS statement to remove an existing operator class from the database.

Syntax

```
DROP OPCLASS _____ opclass _____ RESTRICT _____|
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>opclass</i>	Name of the operator class being dropped	The operator class must have been created with the CREATE OPCLASS statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Usage

You must be the owner of the operator class or have the DBA privilege to use the DROP OPCLASS statement.

The RESTRICT keyword causes DROP OPCLASS to fail if the database contains indexes defined on the operator class you plan to drop. Therefore, before you drop the operator class, you must use DROP INDEX to drop dependent indexes.

The following DROP OPCLASS statement drops an operator class called **abs_btree_ops**:

```
DROP OPCLASS abs_btree_ops RESTRICT
```

Related Information

Related statement: [CREATE OPCLASS](#)

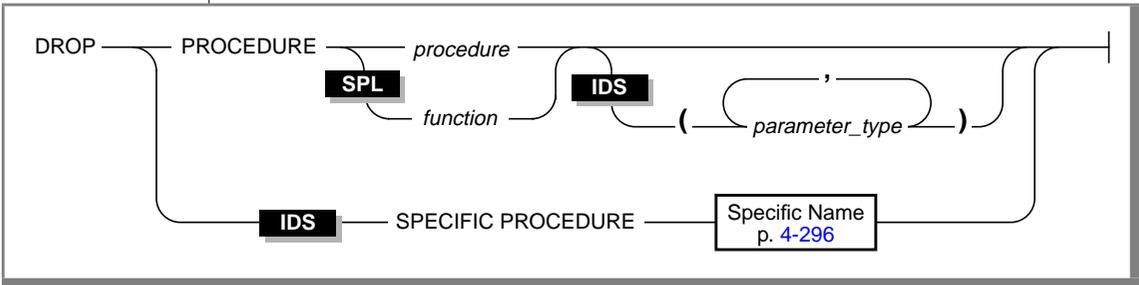
For information on how to create or extend an operator class, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).



DROP PROCEDURE

Use the DROP PROCEDURE statement to remove a user-defined procedure from the database.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>function</i>	Name of the SPL function to drop	The SPL function must exist (that is, be registered) in the database. (IDS) If the name does not uniquely identify an SPL function, you must enter one or more appropriate values for <i>parameter_type</i> .	Database Object Name, p.4-50
<i>parameter_type</i>	The data type of the parameter	The data type (or list of data types) must be the same types (and specified in the same order) as those specified in the CREATE PROCEDURE statement when the procedure was created.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>procedure</i>	Name of the user-defined procedure to drop	The procedure must exist (that is, be registered) in the database. (IDS) If the name does not uniquely identify a procedure, you must enter one or more appropriate values for <i>parameter_type</i> .	Database Object Name, p.4-50

Usage

Dropping a user-defined procedure removes the text and executable versions of the procedure.

To use the DROP PROCEDURE statement, you must be the owner of the procedure or have the DBA privilege.

XPS

In Extended Parallel Server, use the DROP PROCEDURE statement to drop any SPL routine. Extended Parallel Server does not support the DROP FUNCTION statement. ♦

IDS

In Dynamic Server, for backward compatibility, you can use the DROP PROCEDURE statement to drop an SPL function that was created with the CREATE PROCEDURE statement.

If you do not know whether a UDR is a user-defined procedure or a user-defined function, you can use the DROP ROUTINE statement. For more information, see [“DROP ROUTINE” on page 2-408](#). ♦

Examples

If you use parameter data types to identify a user-defined procedure, they follow the procedure name, as in the following example:

```
DROP PROCEDURE compare(int, int)
```

If you use the specific name for the user-defined procedure, you must use the keyword SPECIFIC, as in the following example:

```
DROP SPECIFIC PROCEDURE compare_point
```

SPL

Dropping SPL Procedures

Because you cannot change the text of an SPL procedure, you must drop it and then recreate it. Make sure that you have a copy of the SPL procedure text somewhere outside the database, in case you want to re-create it after it is dropped.

You cannot drop an SPL procedure from within the same SPL procedure.

IDS

For backward compatibility, you can use this statement to drop an SPL function that was created with the `CREATE PROCEDURE` statement. ♦

Related Information

Related statements: [CREATE PROCEDURE](#), [CREATE PROCEDURE FROM](#), [DROP FUNCTION](#), [DROP ROUTINE](#), and [EXECUTE PROCEDURE](#)

+

IDS

DROP ROLE

Use the DROP ROLE statement to remove a previously created role.

Syntax

```
DROP ROLE role | 'role'
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>role</i>	Name of the role to drop	The role name must have been created with the CREATE ROLE statement. When a role name is enclosed in quotation marks, the role name is case sensitive.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Usage

Either the DBA or a user to whom the role was granted with the WITH GRANT OPTION can issue the DROP ROLE statement.

After a role is dropped, the privileges associated with that role, such as table-level privileges or fragment-level privileges, are dropped, and a user cannot grant or enable a role. If a user is using the privileges of a role when the role is dropped, the user automatically loses those privileges.

The following statement drops the role **engineer**:

```
DROP ROLE engineer
```

Related Information

Related statements: [CREATE ROLE](#), [GRANT](#), [REVOKE](#), and [SET ROLE](#)

For a discussion of how to use roles, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

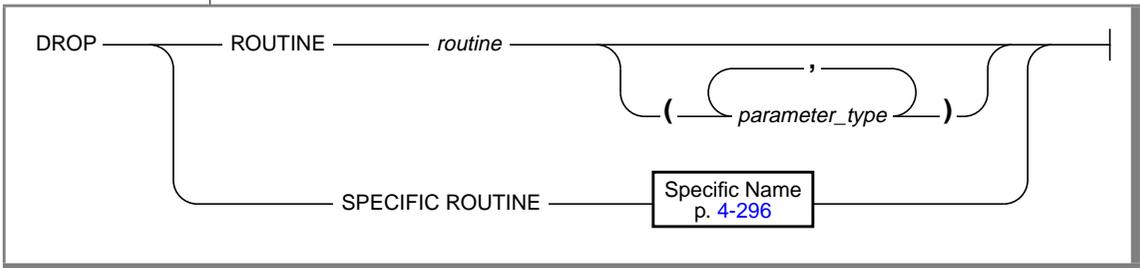
+

IDS

DROP ROUTINE

Use the DROP ROUTINE statement to remove a user-defined routine (UDR) from the database.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>parameter_type</i>	Data type of the parameter	The data type (or list of data types) must be the same types (and specified in the same order) as those specified when the UDR was created.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>routine</i>	Name of the UDR to drop	The UDR must exist (that is, be registered) in the database. If the name does not uniquely identify a UDR, you must enter one or more appropriate values for <i>parameter_type</i> .	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

Dropping a UDR removes the text and executable versions of the UDR from the database.

This statement is useful when you do not know whether a UDR is a user-defined function or a user-defined procedure. When you use this statement, the database server drops the appropriate user-defined function or user-defined procedure.

To use the DROP ROUTINE statement, you must be the owner of the UDR or have the DBA privilege.

Restrictions

When you use this statement, the type of UDR cannot be ambiguous. The UDR that you specify must refer to either a user-defined function or a user-defined procedure. If either of the following conditions exist, the database server returns an error:

- The name (and parameters) that you specify apply to both a user-defined procedure and a user-defined function
- The specific name that you specify applies to both a user-defined function and a user-defined procedure

Examples

If you use parameter data types to identify a UDR, they follow the UDR name, as in the following example:

```
DROP ROUTINE compare(int, int)
```

If you use the specific name for the UDR, you must use the keyword SPECIFIC, as in the following example:

```
DROP SPECIFIC ROUTINE compare_point
```

SPL

Dropping SPL Routines

Because you cannot change the text of an SPL routine, you must drop it and then re-create it. Make sure that you have a copy of the SPL function text somewhere outside the database, in case you want to re-create it after it is dropped.

You cannot drop an SPL routine from within the same SPL routine.

Related Information

Related statements: [CREATE FUNCTION](#), [CREATE PROCEDURE](#), [DROP FUNCTION](#), [DROP PROCEDURE](#), [EXECUTE FUNCTION](#), and [EXECUTE PROCEDURE](#)

+

IDS

DROP ROW TYPE

Use the DROP ROW TYPE statement to remove an existing named-row type from the database.

Syntax

```
DROP ROW TYPE row_type RESTRICT
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>row_type</i>	Name of the named-row type to be dropped	<p>The type must have been created with the CREATE ROW TYPE statement. The named-row type must already exist.</p> <p>The named-row type cannot be dropped if it is currently used in any columns, tables or inheritance hierarchies.</p>	<p>Data Type, p. 4-53</p> <p>Identifier, p. 4-205</p> <p>The named-row type can be of the form <i>owner.type</i>.</p>

Usage

You must be the owner of the row type or have the DBA privilege to use the DROP ROW TYPE statement.

You cannot drop a named-row type if the row type name is in use. You cannot drop a named-row type when any of the following conditions are true:

- Any existing tables or columns are using the row type.
- The row type is a supertype in an inheritance hierarchy.
- A view is defined on the row type.

To drop a named-row type column from a table, use ALTER TABLE.

The DROP ROW TYPE statement does *not* drop unnamed-row types.

The Restrict Keyword

The RESTRICT keyword is required with the DROP ROW TYPE statement. RESTRICT causes DROP ROW TYPE to fail if dependencies on that named-row type exist.

The DROP ROW TYPE statement fails and returns an error message if:

- the named-row type is used for an existing table or column.
Check the **systables** and **syscolumns** system catalog tables to find out whether any tables or types use the named-row type.
- the named-row type is the supertype in an inheritance hierarchy.
Look in the **sysinherits** system catalog table to see which types have child types.

Example

The following statement drops the row type named **employee_t**:

```
DROP ROW TYPE employee_t RESTRICT
```

Related Information

Related statement: [CREATE ROW TYPE](#)

For a description of the system catalog tables, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

For a discussion of named-row types, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

+

DROP SYNONYM

Use the DROP SYNONYM statement to remove a previously defined synonym.

Syntax

```
DROP SYNONYM synonym
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>synonym</i>	Name of the synonym to drop	The synonym and the table to which the synonym points must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

You must be the owner of the synonym or have the DBA privilege to use the DROP SYNONYM statement.

The following statement drops the synonym **nj_cust**, which **cathyg** owns:

```
DROP SYNONYM cathyg.nj_cust
```

If a table is dropped, any synonyms that are in the same database as the table and that refer to the table are also dropped.

If a synonym refers to an external table, and the table is dropped, the synonym remains in place until you explicitly drop it using DROP SYNONYM. You can create another table or synonym in place of the dropped table and give the new database object the name of the dropped table. The old synonym then refers to the new database object. For a complete discussion of synonym chaining, see the CREATE SYNONYM statement.

Related Information

Related statement: [CREATE SYNONYM](#)

For a discussion of synonyms, see the *Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial*.

+

DROP TABLE

Use the DROP TABLE statement to remove a table, along with its associated indexes and data.

Syntax

```

DROP TABLE table | synonym [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
  
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>synonym</i>	Name of the synonym to drop	The synonym and the table to which the synonym points must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of the table to drop	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

You must be the owner of the table or have the DBA privilege to use the DROP TABLE statement.

If you are using Extended Parallel Server, you cannot drop a table that includes a dependent GK index unless the dependent index is entirely dependent on the affected table. ♦

If you issue a DROP TABLE statement, DB-Access does not prompt you to verify that you want to delete an entire table. ♦

XPS

DB

Effects of the DROP TABLE Statement

Use the DROP TABLE statement with caution. When you remove a table, you also delete the data stored in it, the indexes or constraints on the columns (including all the referential constraints placed on its columns), any local synonyms assigned to it, any triggers created for it, and any authorizations you have granted on the table. You also drop all views based on the table and any violations and diagnostics tables associated with the table.

When you drop a table, you do not remove any synonyms for the table that were created in an external database. If you want to remove external synonyms to the dropped table, you must do so manually with the DROP SYNONYM statement.

Specifying CASCADE Mode

The CASCADE mode means that a DROP TABLE statement removes related database objects, including referential constraints built on the table, views defined on the table, and any violations and diagnostics tables associated with the table.

If the table is the supertable in an inheritance hierarchy, CASCADE drops all of the subtables as well as the supertable. ♦

The CASCADE mode is the default mode of the DROP TABLE statement. You can also specify this mode explicitly with the CASCADE keyword.

Specifying RESTRICT Mode

With the RESTRICT keyword, you can control the success or failure of the drop operation for supertables, for tables that have referential constraints and views defined on them, or for tables that have violations and diagnostics tables associated them. Using the RESTRICT option causes the drop operation to fail and an error message to be returned if any of the following conditions are true:

- Existing referential constraints reference *table name*.
- Existing views are defined on *table name*.
- Any violations and diagnostics tables are associated with table name.
- The table name is the supertable in an inheritance hierarchy. ♦

IDS

IDS

Dropping a Table with Rows That Contain Opaque Data Types

Some opaque data types require special processing when they are deleted. For example, if an opaque data type contains spatial or multi-representational data, it might provide a choice of how to store the data: inside the internal structure or, for very large objects, in a smart large object.

The database server removes opaque types by calling a user-defined support function called **destroy()**. When you execute the DROP TABLE statement on a table whose rows contain an opaque type, the database server automatically invokes the **destroy()** function for the type. The **destroy()** function can perform certain operations on columns of the opaque data type before the table is dropped. For more information about the **destroy()** support function, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

Tables That Cannot Be Dropped

Observe the following restrictions on the types of tables that you can drop:

- You cannot drop any system catalog tables.
- You cannot drop a table that is not in the current database.
- You cannot drop a violations or diagnostics table. Before you can drop such a table, you must first issue a STOP VIOLATIONS TABLE statement on the base table with which the violations and diagnostics tables are associated.
- If you are using Extended Parallel Server, you cannot drop a table that appears in the FROM clause of a GK index. ♦

Examples of Dropping a Table

The following example deletes two tables. Both tables are within the current database and are owned by the current user. Neither table has a violations or diagnostics table associated with it. Neither table has a referential constraint or view defined on it.

```
DROP TABLE customer;  
DROP TABLE stores_demo@acctng:joed.state;
```

Related Information

Related statements: [CREATE TABLE](#) and [DROP DATABASE](#)

For a discussion of the data integrity of tables, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For a discussion of how to create a table, see the [Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation](#).

+

DROP TRIGGER

Use the DROP TRIGGER statement to remove a trigger definition from a database.

Syntax

```
DROP TRIGGER _____ trigger _____ |
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>trigger</i>	Name of the trigger to drop	The trigger must exist.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Usage

You must be the owner of the trigger or have the DBA privilege to drop the trigger.

Dropping a trigger removes the text of the trigger definition and the executable trigger from the database.

The following statement drops the **items_pct** trigger:

```
DROP TRIGGER items_pct
```

If a DROP TRIGGER statement appears inside an SPL routine that is called by a data manipulation statement, the database server returns an error.

Related Information

Related statements: [CREATE TRIGGER](#)

+

IDS

DROP TYPE

Use the DROP TYPE statement to remove an existing distinct or opaque data type from the database.

Syntax

```
DROP TYPE _____ data_type _____ RESTRICT _____|
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>data_type</i>	Distinct or opaque data type to be removed from the database	The type must have been created with the CREATE DISTINCT TYPE or CREATE OPAQUE TYPE statement. Do not remove built-in types.	Data Type, p. 4-53 The distinct type or opaque type can be of the form <i>owner.type</i> .

Usage

To drop a distinct or opaque type with the DROP TYPE statement, you must be the owner of the data type or have the DBA privilege.

When you use the DROP TYPE statement, you remove the type definition from the database (in the **sysxdtypes** system catalog table). In general, this statement does not remove any definitions for casts or support functions associated with that data type.



Important: When you drop a distinct type, the database server automatically drops the two explicit casts between the distinct type and the type on which it is based.

You cannot drop a distinct or opaque type if the database contains any casts, columns, or user-defined functions whose definitions reference the type.

The following statement drops the **new_type** type:

```
DROP TYPE new_type RESTRICT
```

Related Information

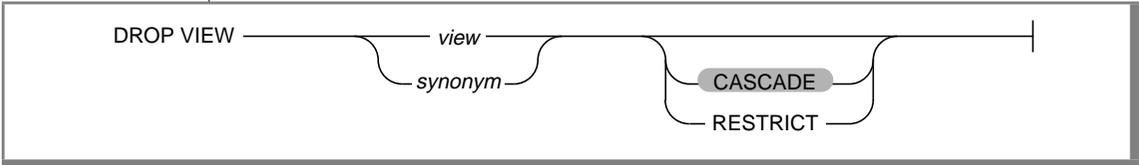
Related statements: [CREATE DISTINCT TYPE](#), [CREATE OPAQUE TYPE](#), [CREATE ROW TYPE](#), [DROP ROW TYPE](#), and [CREATE TABLE](#)



DROP VIEW

Use the DROP VIEW statement to remove a view from a database.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>synonym</i>	Name of the synonym to drop	The synonym and the view to which the synonym points must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>view</i>	Name of the view to drop	The view must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

You must be the owner of the view or have the DBA privilege to drop the view.

When you drop a view or its synonym, you also drop all views that were defined in terms of that view. You can also specify this default condition with the CASCADE keyword.

When you use the RESTRICT keyword in the DROP VIEW statement, the drop operation fails if any existing views are defined on *view*, which would be abandoned in the drop operation.

You can query the **sysdepend** system catalog table to determine which views, if any, depend on another view.

The following statement drops the view that is named **cust1**:

```
DROP VIEW cust1
```

Related Information

Related statements: [CREATE VIEW](#) and [DROP TABLE](#)

For a discussion of views, see the *[Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#)*.

Usage

The EXECUTE statement passes a prepared SQL statement to the database server for execution. The following example shows an EXECUTE statement within an ESQL/C program:

```
EXEC SQL prepare del_1 from
    'delete from customer
      where customer_num = 119';
EXEC SQL execute del_1;
```

Once prepared, an SQL statement can be executed as often as needed.

If the statement contained question mark (?) placeholders, you use the USING clause to provide specific values for them before execution. For more information, see the [“USING Clause” on page 2-430](#).

You can execute any prepared statement except those in the following list:

- A prepared SELECT statement that returns more than one row
When you use a prepared SELECT statement to return multiple rows of data, you must use a cursor to retrieve the data rows. As an alternative, you can EXECUTE a prepared SELECT INTO TEMP statement to achieve the same result.
For more information on cursors, see [“DECLARE” on page 2-349](#).
- A prepared EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement for an SPL function that returns more than one row
When you prepare an EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement for an SPL function that returns multiple rows, you must use a cursor to retrieve the data rows.
For more information on how to execute a SELECT or an EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement, see [“PREPARE” on page 2-579](#).

If you create or drop a trigger after you prepared a triggering INSERT, DELETE, or UPDATE statement, the prepared statement returns an error when you execute it.

Scope of Statement Identifiers

A program can consist of one or more source-code files. By default, the scope of a statement identifier is global to the program, so a statement identifier created in one file can be referenced from another file.

In a multiple-file program, if you want to limit the scope of a statement identifier to the file in which it is executed, you can preprocess all the files with the **-local** command-line option.

The sqlca Record and EXECUTE

Following an EXECUTE statement, the **sqlca** can reflect two results:

- The **sqlca** can reflect an error within the EXECUTE statement. For example, when an UPDATE ... WHERE... statement within a prepared statement processes zero rows, the database server sets **sqlca** to 100.
- The **sqlca** can reflect the success or failure of the executed statement.

Error Conditions with EXECUTE

If a prepared statement fails to access any rows, the database server returns zero (0). In a multistatement prepare, if any statement in the following list fails to access rows, the database server returns SQLNOTFOUND (100):

- INSERT INTO *table* SELECT...WHERE...
- SELECT INTO TEMP...WHERE...
- DELETE...WHERE
- UPDATE...WHERE...

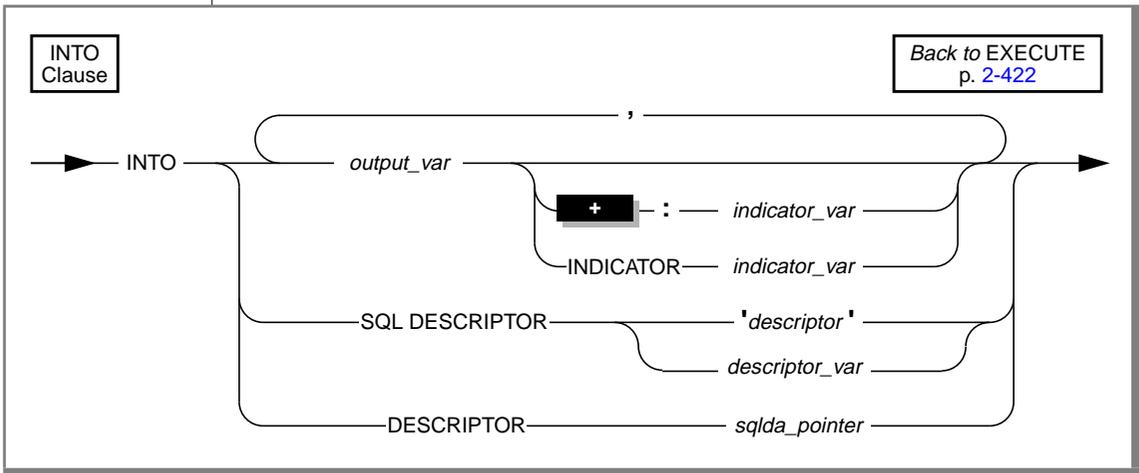
ANSI

In an ANSI-compliant database, if you prepare and execute any of the statements in the preceding list, and no rows are returned, the database server returns SQLNOTFOUND (100). ♦

INTO Clause

Use the INTO clause to save the return values of the following SQL statements:

- A prepared singleton SELECT statement that returns only one row of column values for the columns in the select list
- A prepared EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement for an SPL function that returns only one group of values



[Back to EXECUTE](#)
p. 2-422

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>descriptor</i>	Quoted string that identifies a system-descriptor area	System-descriptor area must already be allocated.	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>descriptor_var</i>	Host variable that identifies the system-descriptor area	System-descriptor area must already be allocated.	Quoted String, p. 4-260

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>indicator_var</i>	Host variable that receives a return code if null data is placed in the corresponding output <i>_var</i>	Variable cannot be DATETIME or INTERVAL data type.	Variable name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>output_var</i>	Host variable whose contents replace a question-mark (?) placeholder in a prepared statement	Variable must be a character data type.	Variable name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>sqlda_pointer</i>	Pointer to an sqlda structure that defines the data type and memory location of values that correspond to the question-mark (?) placeholder in a prepared statement	You cannot begin <i>sqlda_pointer</i> with a dollar sign (\$) or a colon (:). You must use an sqlda structure if you are using dynamic SQL statements.	DESCRIBE, p. 2-382

The INTO clause provides a concise and efficient alternative to more complicated and lengthy syntax. In addition, by placing values into variables that can be displayed, the INTO clause simplifies and enhances your ability to retrieve and display data values. For example, if you use the INTO clause, you do not have to use a cursor to retrieve values from a table.

You can store the returned values into output variables, output SQL descriptors, or output **sqlda** pointers.

Restrictions with the INTO Clause

If you execute a prepared SELECT statement that returns more than one row of data or a prepared EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement for an SPL function that returns more than one group of return values, you receive an error message. In addition, if you prepare and declare a statement, and then attempt to execute that statement, you receive an error message.

You cannot select a null value from a table column and place that value into an output variable. If you know in advance that a table column contains a null value, after you select the data, check the indicator variable that is associated with the column to determine if the value is null.

The following list describes the procedure for how to use the INTO clause with the EXECUTE statement:

1. Declare the output variables that the EXECUTE statement uses.
2. Use the PREPARE statement to prepare your SELECT statement or to prepare your EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement.
3. Use the EXECUTE statement, with the INTO clause, to execute your SELECT statement or to execute your EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement.

Storage Location for Returned Values

You can specify any of the following items to replace the question-mark placeholders in a statement before you execute it:

- A host variable name (if the number and data type of the question marks are known at compile time)
- A system descriptor that identifies a system
- A descriptor that is a pointer to an `sqllda` structure

Saving Values In Host or Program Variables

If you know the number of return values to be supplied at runtime and their data types, you can define the values that the SELECT or EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement returns as host variables in your program. You use these host variables with the INTO keyword, followed by the names of the variables. These variables are matched with the return values in a one-to-one correspondence, from left to right.

You must supply one variable name for each value that the SELECT or EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) returns. The data type of each variable must be compatible with the corresponding return value of the prepared statement.

Saving Values in a System-Descriptor Area

If you do not know the number of return values to be supplied at runtime or their data types, you can associate output values with a system-descriptor area. A system-descriptor area describes the data type and memory location of one or more values.

X/O

A system-descriptor area conforms to the X/Open standards. ♦

To specify a system-descriptor area as the location of output values, use the INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR clause of the EXECUTE statement. Each time that the EXECUTE statement is run, the values that the system-descriptor area describes are stored in the system-descriptor area.

The following example shows how to use the system-descriptor area to execute prepared statements in Informix ESQL/C:

```
EXEC SQL allocate descriptor 'desc1';
...
sprintf(sel_stmt, "%s %s %s",
        "select fname, lname from customer",
        "where customer_num =",
        cust_num);
EXEC SQL prepare sell from :sel_stmt;
EXEC SQL execute sell into sql descriptor 'desc1';
```

The COUNT field corresponds to the number of values that the prepared statement returns. The value of COUNT must be less than or equal to the value of the occurrences that were specified when the system-descriptor area was allocated with the ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement. You can obtain the value of a field with the GET DESCRIPTOR statement and set the value with the SET DESCRIPTOR statement.

For further information, refer to the discussion of the system-descriptor area in the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

E/C

Saving Values in an sqlda Structure

If you do not know the number of output values to be returned at runtime or their data types, you can associate output values from an **sqlda** structure. An **sqlda** structure lists the data type and memory location of one or more return values. To specify an **sqlda** structure as the location of return values, use the INTO DESCRIPTOR clause of the EXECUTE statement. Each time the EXECUTE statement is run, the database server places the returns values that the **sqlda** structure describes into the **sqlda** structure.

The following example shows how to use an **sqllda** structure to execute a prepared statement in Informix ESQL/C:

```

struct sqllda *pointer2;
...
sprintf(sel_stmt, "%s %s %s",
        "select fname, lname from customer",
        "where customer_num =",
        cust_num);
EXEC SQL prepare sell from :sel_stmt;
EXEC SQL describe sell into pointer2;
EXEC SQL execute sell into descriptor pointer2;

```

The **sqld** value specifies the number of output values that are described in occurrences of **sqlvar**. This number must correspond to the number of values that the SELECT or EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement returns.

For more information, refer to the **sqllda** discussion in the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

Examples

The following example shows how to use the INTO clause with an EXECUTE statement in ESQL/C:

```

EXEC SQL prepare sell from 'select fname, lname from customer
    where customer_num =123';
EXEC SQL execute sell into :fname, :lname using :cust_num;

```

The following example shows how to use the INTO clause to return multiple rows of data:

```

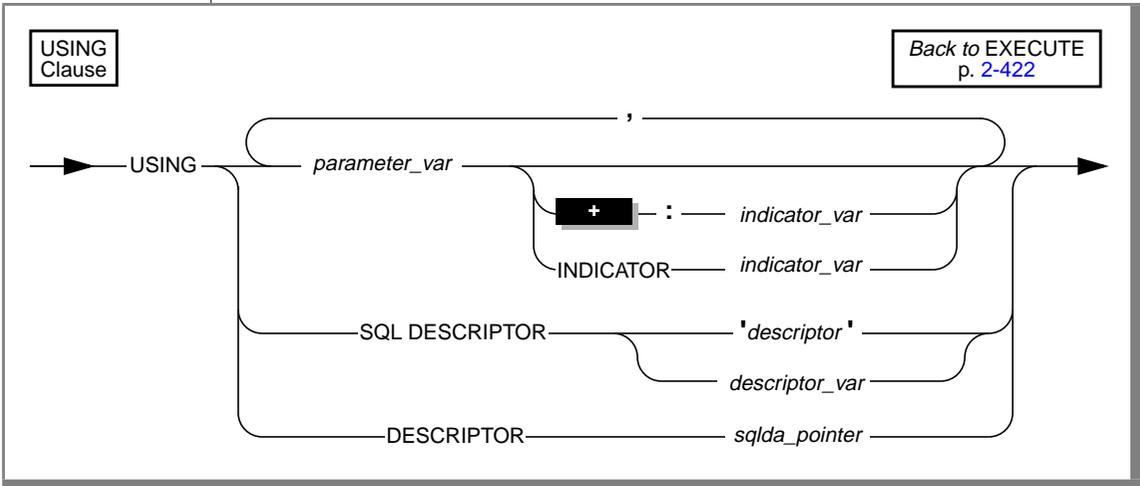
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
int customer_num =100;
char fname[25];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL prepare sell from 'select fname from customer
    where customer_num=?';
for ( ;customer_num < 200; customer_num++)
{
    EXEC SQL execute sell into :fname using customer_num;
    printf("Customer number is %d\n", customer_num);
    printf("Customer first name is %s\n\n", fname);
}

```

USING Clause

Use the USING clause to specify the values that are to replace question-mark (?) placeholders in the prepared statement. Providing values in the EXECUTE statement that replace the question-mark placeholders in the prepared statement is sometimes called *parameterizing* the prepared statement.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>descriptor</i>	Quoted string that identifies a system-descriptor area	System-descriptor area must already be allocated	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>descriptor_var</i>	Host variable that identifies a system-descriptor area	System-descriptor area must already be allocated	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

(1 of 2)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>indicator_var</i>	Host variable that receives a return code if null data is placed in the corresponding <i>parameter_var</i> This variable receives truncation information if truncation occurs.	Variable cannot be DATETIME or INTERVAL data type	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>parameter_var</i>	Host variable whose contents replace a question-mark (?) placeholder in a prepared statement	Variable must be a character data type	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>sqlda_pointer</i>	Pointer to an sqlda structure that defines the data type and memory location of values that correspond to the question-mark (?) placeholder in a prepared statement	You cannot begin <i>sqlda_pointer</i> with a dollar sign (\$) or a colon (:). You must use an sqlda structure if you are using dynamic SQL statements.	DESCRIBE, p. 2-382

(2 of 2)

If you know the number of parameters to be supplied at runtime and their data types, you can define the parameters that are needed by the statement as host variables in your program.

If you do not know the number of parameters to be supplied at runtime or their data types, you can associate input values from a system-descriptor area or an **sqlda** structure. Both of these descriptor structures describe the data type and memory location of one or more values to replace question-mark (?) placeholders.

Supplying Parameters Through Host or Program Variables

You pass parameters to the database server by opening the cursor with the USING keyword, followed by the names of the variables. These variables are matched with prepared statement question-mark (?) placeholders in a one-to-one correspondence, from left to right. You must supply one storage parameter variable for each placeholder. The data type of each variable must be compatible with the corresponding value that the prepared statement requires.

The following example executes the prepared UPDATE statement in ESQL/C:

```
stcopy ("update orders set order_date = ? where po_num = ?", stm1);
EXEC SQL prepare statement_1 from :stm1;
EXEC SQL execute statement_1 using :order_date, :po_num;
```

Supplying Parameters Through a System Descriptor

You can create a system-descriptor area that describes the data type and memory location of one or more values and then specify the descriptor in the USING SQL DESCRIPTOR clause of the EXECUTE statement.

Each time that the EXECUTE statement is run, the values that the system-descriptor area describes are used to replace question-mark (?) placeholders in the PREPARE statement.

The COUNT field corresponds to the number of dynamic parameters in the prepared statement. The value of COUNT must be less than or equal to the number of item descriptors that were specified when the system-descriptor area was allocated with the ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement.

The following example shows how to use system descriptors to execute a prepared statement in ESQL/C:

```
EXEC SQL execute prep_stmt using sql descriptor 'desc1';
```

E/C

Supplying Parameters Through an sqlda Structure

You can specify the **sqlda** pointer in the USING DESCRIPTOR clause of the EXECUTE statement.

Each time the EXECUTE statement is run, the values that the descriptor structure describes are used to replace question-mark (?) placeholders in the PREPARE statement.

The **sqld** value specifies the number of input values that are described in occurrences of **sqlvar**. This number must correspond to the number of dynamic parameters in the prepared statement.

The following example shows how to use an **sqlda** structure to execute a prepared statement in ESQL/C:

```
EXEC SQL execute prep_stmt using descriptor pointer2
```

Related Information

Related statements: ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR, DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR, DECLARE, EXECUTE IMMEDIATE, FETCH, GET DESCRIPTOR, PREPARE, PUT, and SET DESCRIPTOR

For a task-oriented discussion of the EXECUTE statement, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

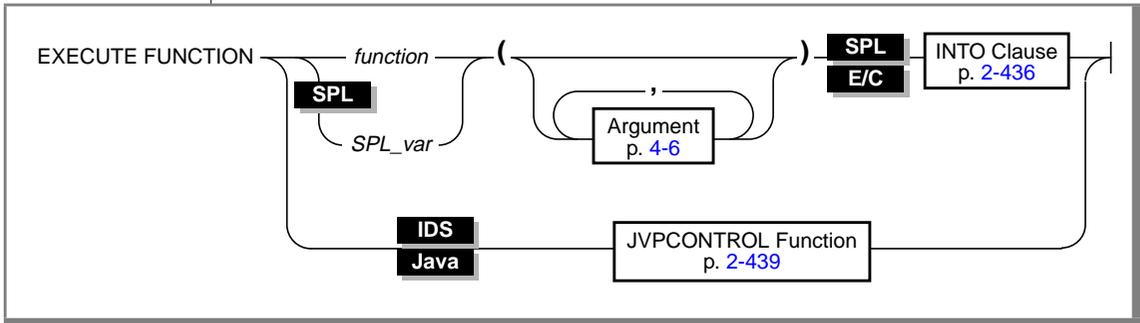
For more information about concepts relating to the EXECUTE statement, refer to the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

+

EXECUTE FUNCTION

Use the EXECUTE FUNCTION statement to execute a user-defined function.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>function</i>	Name of the user-defined function to execute	The function must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>SPL_var</i>	Variable created with the DEFINE statement that contains the name of an SPL routine to be executed	The SPL variable must be CHAR, VARCHAR, NCHAR, or NVARCHAR data type. The name assigned to <i>SPL_var</i> must be non-null and the name of an existing SPL function.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Usage

The EXECUTE FUNCTION statement invokes the named user-defined function, specifies its arguments, and determines where the results are returned.

An external function returns exactly one value.

An SPL function can return one or more values.

You cannot use EXECUTE FUNCTION to execute any type of user-defined procedure. Instead, use the EXECUTE PROCEDURE statement to execute procedures.

Privileges

You must have the Execute privilege on the user-defined function.

If a user-defined function has a companion function, any user who executes the function must have the Execute privilege on both the function and its companion. For example, if a function has a negator function, any user who executes the function must have the Execute privilege on both the function and its negator.

For more information, see [“GRANT” on page 2-500](#).

How EXECUTE FUNCTION Works

For a user-defined function to be executed with the EXECUTE FUNCTION statement, the following conditions must exist:

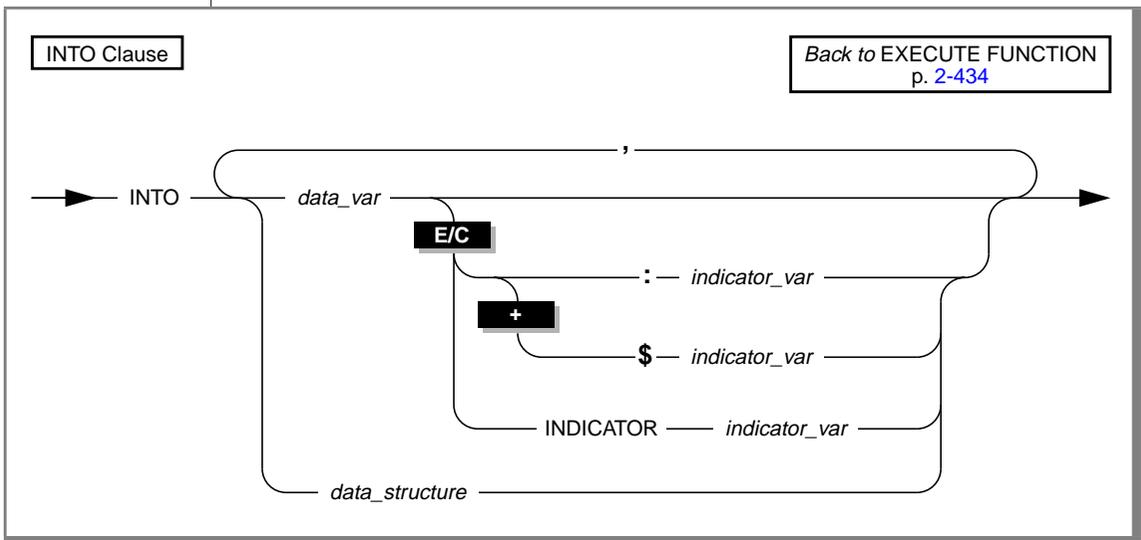
- The qualified function name or the function signature (the function name with its parameter list) must be unique within the name space or database.
- The function must exist.
- The function must not have any OUT parameters.

If an EXECUTE FUNCTION statement specifies fewer arguments than the called user-defined function expects, the unspecified arguments are said to be *missing*. Missing arguments are initialized to their corresponding parameter default values, if you specified default values. The syntax of specifying default values for parameters is described in [“Routine Parameter List” on page 4-286](#).

The EXECUTE FUNCTION statement returns an error under the following conditions:

- It specifies more arguments than the called user-defined function expects.
- One or more arguments are missing and do not have default values. In this case, the arguments are initialized to the value of UNDEFINED.
- The fully qualified function name or the signature is not unique.
- No function with the specified name or signature that you specify is found.
- You use it to try to execute a user-defined procedure.

INTO Clause



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>data_structure</i>	Structure that was declared as a host variable	The individual elements of the structure must be matched appropriately to the data type of values being selected.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>data_var</i>	Variable that receives the value returned by a user-defined function	<p>If you issue this statement within an ESQL/C program, <i>data_var</i> must be a host variable.</p> <p>If you issue this statement within an SPL routine, <i>data_var</i> must be an SPL variable.</p> <p>If you issue this statement within a CREATE TRIGGER statement, <i>data_var</i> must be column names within the triggering table or another table.</p>	<p>Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.</p> <p>For the syntax of SPL variables, see Identifier, p. 4-205.</p> <p>For the syntax of column names, see Identifier, p. 4-205.</p>
<i>indicator_var</i>	Program variable that receives a return code if null data is placed in the corresponding <i>data_var</i>	This parameter is optional, but you should use an indicator variable if the possibility exists that the value of the corresponding <i>data_var</i> is null.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

You must specify an INTO clause with EXECUTE FUNCTION to name the variables that receive the values that a user-defined function returns. If the function returns more than one value, the values are returned into the list of variables in the order in which you specify them.

If the EXECUTE FUNCTION statement stands alone (that is, it is not part of a DECLARE statement and does not use the INTO clause), it must execute a noncursor function. A noncursor function returns only one row of values. The following example shows a SELECT statement in Informix ESQL/C:

```
EXEC SQL execute function cust_num(fname, lname,
    company_name)
    into :c_num;
```

E/C

INTO Clause with Indicator Variables

You should use an indicator variable if the possibility exists that data returned from the user-defined function statement is null. See the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#) for more information about indicator variables.

Ext

SPL

E/C

INTO Clause with Cursors

If the EXECUTE FUNCTION statement executes a user-defined function that returns more than one row of values, it must execute a cursor function. A cursor function can return one or more rows of values and must be associated with a function cursor to execute.

If the SPL function returns more than one row or a collection data type, you must access the rows or collection elements with a cursor.

To return more than one row of values, an external function must be defined as an iterator function. For more information on how to write iterator functions, see the [DataBlade API Programmer's Manual](#). ♦

To return more than one row of values, an SPL function must include the WITH RESUME keywords in its RETURN statement. For more information on how to write SPL functions, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#). ♦

In an Informix ESQL/C program, use the DECLARE statement to declare the function cursor and the FETCH statement to fetch the rows individually from the function cursor. You can put the INTO clause in the FETCH statement rather than in the EXECUTE FUNCTION statement, but you cannot put it in both. The following Informix ESQL/C code examples show different ways you can use the INTO clause:

- **Using the INTO clause in the EXECUTE FUNCTION statement**

```
EXEC SQL declare f_curs cursor for
    execute function get_orders(customer_num)
    into :ord_num, :ord_date;
EXEC SQL open f_curs;
while (SQLCODE == 0)
    EXEC SQL fetch f_curs;
EXEC SQL close f_curs;
```

- **Using the INTO clause in the FETCH statement**

```
EXEC SQL declare f_curs cursor for
    execute function get_orders(customer_num);
EXEC SQL open f_curs;
while (SQLCODE == 0)
    EXEC SQL fetch f_curs into :ord_num, :ord_date;
EXEC SQL close f_curs;
```

♦

SPL

In an SPL routine, if a SELECT returns more than one row, you must use the FOREACH statement to access the rows individually. The INTO clause of the SELECT statement holds the fetched values. For more information, see [“FOREACH” on page 3-30](#). ♦

E/C

Alternatives to Preparing an EXECUTE FUNCTION...INTO Statement

You cannot prepare an EXECUTE FUNCTION statement that has an INTO clause. You can prepare the EXECUTE FUNCTION without the INTO clause, declare a function cursor for the prepared statement, open the cursor, and then use the FETCH statement with an INTO clause to fetch the return values into the program variables.

Alternatively, you can declare a cursor for the EXECUTE FUNCTION statement without first preparing the statement and include the INTO clause in the EXECUTE FUNCTION when you declare the cursor. Then open the cursor, and fetch the return values from the cursor without using the INTO clause of the FETCH statement.

SPL

Dynamic Routine-Name Specification of SPL Functions

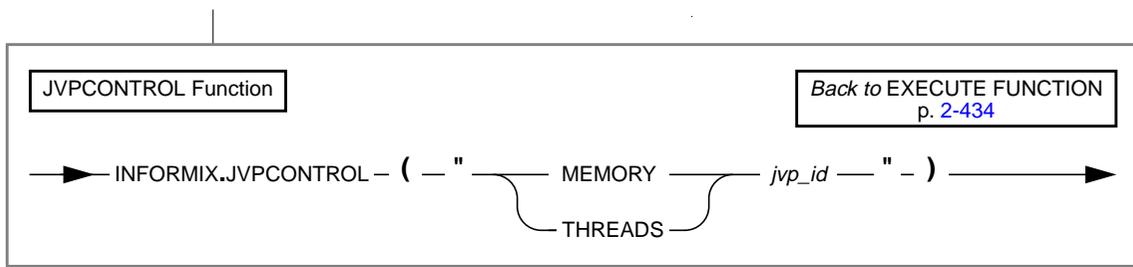
Dynamic routine-name specification simplifies the writing of an SPL function that calls another SPL routine whose name is not known until runtime. To specify the name of an SPL routine in the EXECUTE FUNCTION statement, instead of listing the explicit name of an SPL routine, you can use an SPL variable to hold the routine name.

For more information about how to execute SPL functions dynamically, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

Java

The jvpcontrol Function

The `jvpcontrol()` function is a built-in iterative function that you use to obtain information about a Java VP class.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>jvp_id</i>	Name of the Java virtual processor (JVP) class for which you want information	The named Java virtual processor class must exist.	Identifier, p. 4-205

You must associate this function with the equivalent of a cursor in the Java language.

Using the Memory Keyword

When you specify the **MEMORY** keyword, the **jvpcontrol** function returns the memory usage on the JVP class that you specify. The following example requests information about the memory usage of the JVP class named **4**.

```
EXECUTE FUNCTION INFORMIX.JVPCONTROL ("MEMORY 4");
```

Using the Threads Keyword

When you specify the **THREADS** keyword, the **jvpcontrol** function returns a list of the threads running on the JVP class that you specify. The following example requests information about the threads running on the JVP class named **4**.

```
EXECUTE FUNCTION INFORMIX.JVPCONTROL ("THREADS 4");
```

Related Information

Related statements: **CALL**, **CREATE FUNCTION**, **CREATE FUNCTION FROM**, **DROP FUNCTION**, **DROP ROUTINE**, **EXECUTE PROCEDURE**, and **FOREACH**

+

E/C

EXECUTE IMMEDIATE

Use the EXECUTE IMMEDIATE statement to perform the functions of the PREPARE, EXECUTE, and FREE statements.

Use this statement with ESQL/C.

Syntax

EXECUTE IMMEDIATE

Quoted
String
p. 4-260

statement_var

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>statement_var</i>	Host variable whose value is a character string that consists of one or more SQL statements	<p>The host variable must have been defined within the program.</p> <p>The variable must be character data type.</p> <p>For additional restrictions, see “EXECUTE IMMEDIATE and Restricted Statements” on page 2-442 and “Restrictions on Allowed Statements” on page 2-443.</p>	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

Usage

The EXECUTE IMMEDIATE statement makes it easy to execute dynamically a single simple SQL statement that is constructed during program execution. For example, you can obtain the name of a database from program input, construct the DATABASE statement as a program variable, and then use EXECUTE IMMEDIATE to execute the statement, which opens the database.

The quoted string is a character string that includes one or more SQL statements. The string, or the contents of *statement_var*, is parsed and executed if correct; then all data structures and memory resources are released immediately. In the usual method of dynamic execution, these functions are distributed among the PREPARE, EXECUTE, and FREE statements.

The maximum length of an EXECUTE IMMEDIATE statement is 64 kilobytes.

EXECUTE IMMEDIATE and Restricted Statements

You cannot use the EXECUTE IMMEDIATE statement to execute the following SQL statements. Although the EXECUTE PROCEDURE statement appears on this list, the restriction applies only to EXECUTE PROCEDURE statements that return values.

CLOSE	OPEN
CONNECT	OUTPUT
DECLARE	PREPARE
DISCONNECT	SELECT
EXECUTE	SET AUTOFREE
EXECUTE FUNCTION	SET CONNECTION
EXECUTE PROCEDURE	SET DEFERRED_PREPARE
FETCH	SET DESCRIPTOR
GET DESCRIPTOR	WHENEVER
GET DIAGNOSTICS	

In addition, you cannot use the EXECUTE IMMEDIATE statement to execute the following statements in text that contains multiple statements that are separated by semicolons.

CLOSE DATABASE	DROP DATABASE
CREATE DATABASE	SELECT
DATABASE	(except SELECT INTO TEMP)

Use a PREPARE and either a cursor or the EXECUTE statement to execute a dynamically constructed SELECT statement.

Restrictions on Allowed Statements

The following restrictions apply to the statement that is contained in the quoted string or in the statement variable:

- The statement cannot contain a host-language comment.
- Names of host-language variables are not recognized as such in prepared text. The only identifiers that you can use are names defined in the database, such as table names and columns.
- The statement cannot reference a host variable list or a descriptor; it must not contain any question-mark (?) placeholders, which are allowed with a PREPARE statement.
- The text must not include any embedded SQL statement prefix, such as the dollar sign (\$) or the keywords EXEC SQL. Although it is not required, the SQL statement terminator (;) can be included in the statement text.
- A SELECT or INSERT statement cannot contain a Collection Derived Table clause. EXECUTE IMMEDIATE cannot process input host variables, which are required for a collection variable. Use the EXECUTE statement or a cursor to process prepared accesses to collection variables.

IDS

Examples of the EXECUTE IMMEDIATE Statement

The following examples show EXECUTE IMMEDIATE statements in ESQL/C. Both examples use host variables that contain a CREATE DATABASE statement. The first example uses the SQL statement terminator (;) inside the quoted string.

```
printf(cdb_text1, "create database %s;", usr_db_id);
EXEC SQL execute immediate :cdb_text;
```

```
printf(cdb_text2, "create database %s", usr_db_id);
EXEC SQL execute immediate :cdb_text;
```

Related Information

Related statements: EXECUTE, FREE, and PREPARE

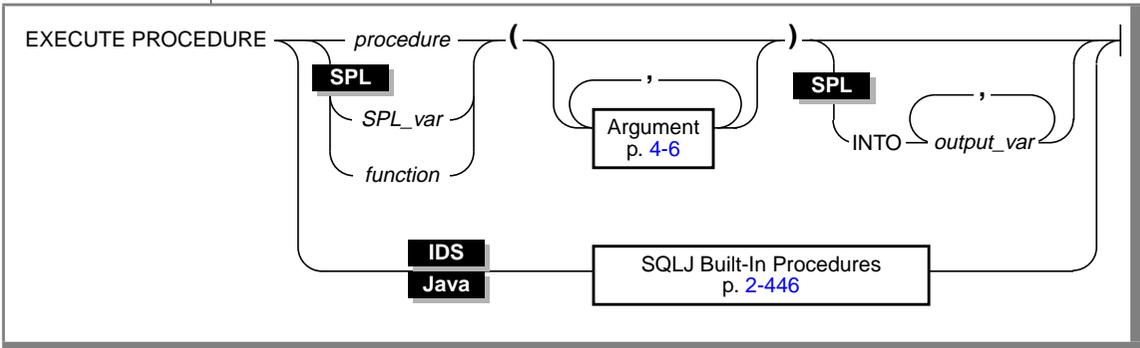
For a discussion of quick execution, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).



EXECUTE PROCEDURE

Use the EXECUTE PROCEDURE statement to execute a user-defined procedure.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>function</i>	Name of the SPL function to execute	The function must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>output_var</i>	Host variable or program variable that receives the value returned by a user-defined function	If you issue this statement within a CREATE TRIGGER statement, the output_var must be column names within the triggering table or another table.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names. For the syntax of SPL variables, see Identifier, p. 4-205. For the syntax of column names, see Identifier, p. 4-205.

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>procedure</i>	Name of the user-defined procedure to execute	The procedure must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>SPL_var</i>	Variable created with the DEFINE statement that contains the name of an SPL routine to be executed	The SPL variable must be CHAR, VARCHAR, NCHAR, or NVARCHAR data type. The name assigned to <i>SPL_var</i> must be non-null and the name of an existing SPL routine.	Identifier, p.4-205

Usage

The EXECUTE PROCEDURE statement invokes the named user-defined procedure and specifies its arguments.

IDS

In Dynamic Server, for backward compatibility, you can use the EXECUTE PROCEDURE statement to execute an SPL function that was created with the CREATE PROCEDURE statement. ♦

XPS

In Extended Parallel Server, use the EXECUTE PROCEDURE statement to execute any SPL routine. Extended Parallel Server does not support the EXECUTE FUNCTION statement. ♦

E/C

In ESQ/C, if the EXECUTE PROCEDURE statement returns more than one row, it must be enclosed within an SPL FOREACH loop or accessed through a cursor. ♦

SPL

Using the INTO Clause

Use the INTO clause to specify where to store the values that the SPL function returns.

If an SPL function returns more than one value, the values are returned into the list of variables in the order in which you specify them. If an SPL function returns more than one row or a collection data type, you must access the rows or collection elements with a cursor.

You cannot prepare an EXECUTE PROCEDURE statement that has an INTO clause. For more information, see [“Alternatives to Preparing an EXECUTE FUNCTION...INTO Statement”](#) on page 2-439.

SPL

Dynamic Routine-Name Specification of SPL Procedures

Dynamic routine-name specification simplifies the writing of an SPL routine that calls another SPL routine whose name is not known until runtime. To specify the name of an SPL routine in the EXECUTE PROCEDURE statement, instead of listing the explicit name of an SPL routine, you can use an SPL variable to hold the routine name.

If the SPL variable names an SPL routine that returns a value (an SPL function), include the INTO clause of EXECUTE PROCEDURE to specify a *receiving variable* (or variables) to hold the value (or values) that the SPL function returns.

For more information on how to execute SPL procedures dynamically, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#). ♦

Causes of Errors

The EXECUTE PROCEDURE statement returns an error under the following conditions:

- It has more arguments than the called procedure expects.
- One or more arguments are missing and do not have default values. In this case the arguments are initialized to the value of UNDEFINED.
- The fully qualified procedure name or the signature is not unique.
- No procedure with the specified name or signature is found.

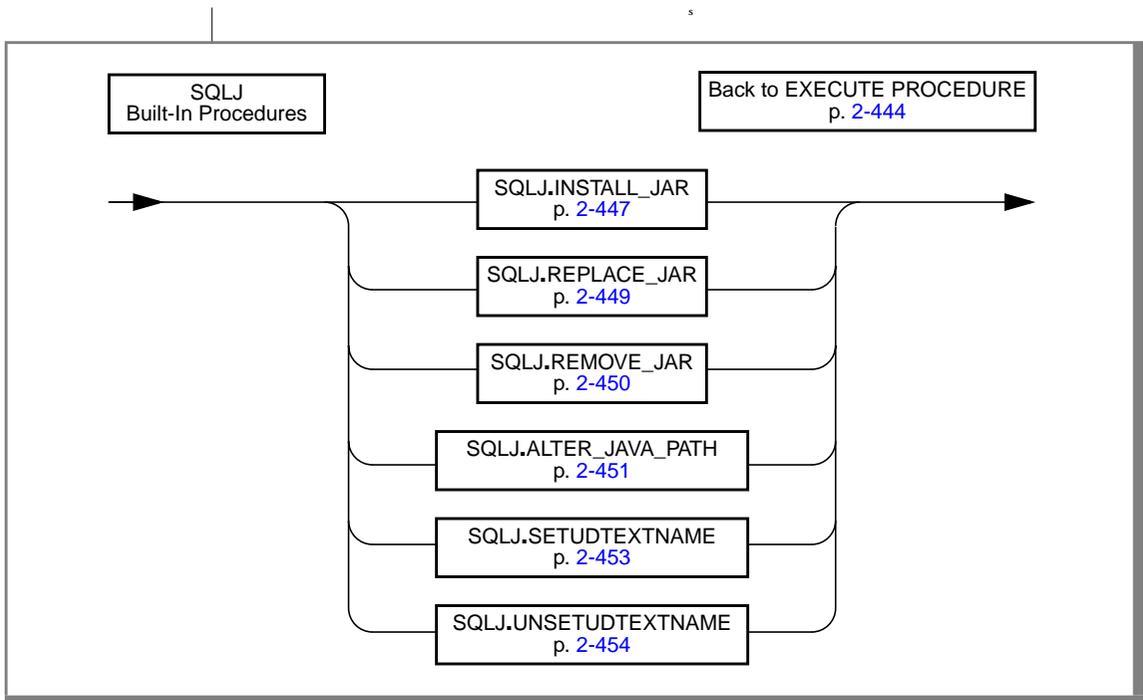
IDS

Java

SQLJ Driver Built-In Procedures

Use the SQLJ Driver built-in procedures for one of the following tasks:

- to install, replace, or remove a set of Java classes
- to specify a path for Java class resolution for Java classes that are included in a Jar file
- to map or remove the mapping between a user-defined type and the Java type to which it corresponds



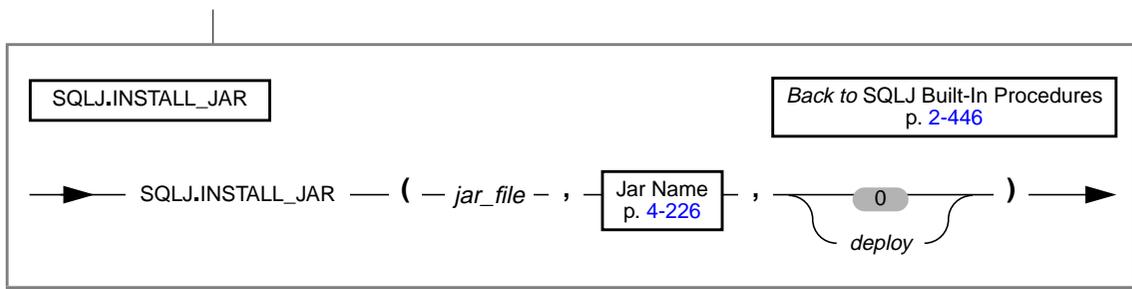
The SQLJ built-in procedures are stored in the **sysprocedures** catalog table. They are grouped under the **sqlj** schema.



Tip: For any Java static method, the first built-in procedure that you execute must be the **install_jar()** procedure. You must install the jar file before you can create a UDR or map a user-defined data type to a Java type. Similarly, you cannot use any of the other SQLJ built-in procedures until you have used **install_jar()**.

sqlj.install_jar

Use the **install_jar()** procedure to install a Java jar file in the current database and assign it a jar identifier.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>deploy</i>	Integer that causes the procedure to search for deployment descriptor files in the jar file	None.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>jar_file</i>	URL of the jar file that contains the UDR written in Java	The maximum length of the URL is 255 bytes.	Quoted String, p. 4-260

For example, consider a Java class **Chemistry** which contains the following static method **explosiveReaction()**:

```
public static int explosiveReaction(int ingredient);
```

Suppose that the **Chemistry** class resides in the following jar file on the server computer:

```
/students/data/Courses.jar
```

You can install all classes in the **Courses.jar** jar file in the current database with the following call to the **install_jar()** procedure:

```
EXECUTE PROCEDURE
  sqlj.install_jar("file://students/data/Courses.jar",
  "course_jar")
```

The **install_jar()** procedure assigns the jar ID, **course_jar**, to the **Courses.jar** file that it has installed in the current database.

After you define jar ID in the database, you can use that jar ID when you create and execute a UDR written in Java.

Using Deployment Descriptor Files

When you specify a nonzero number for the third argument, the database server searches through any included deployment descriptor files. For example, you might want to included descriptor files that include SQL statements to register and grant privileges on UDRs in the jar file.

sqlj.replace_jar

Use the **replace_jar()** procedure to replace a previously installed jar file with a new version. When you use this syntax, you provide only the new jar file and assign it to the jar ID for which you want to replace the file.

SQLJ.REPLACE_JAR

[Back to SQLJ Built-In Procedures](#)
 p. 2-446

SQLJ.REPLACE_JAR (— *jar_file* — , — Jar Name
p. 4-226 —)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>jar_file</i>	URL of the jar file that contains the UDR written in Java	The maximum length of the URL is 255 bytes.	Quoted String, p. 4-260

If you attempt to replace a jar file that is referenced by one or more UDRs, the database server generates an error. You must drop the referencing UDRs before replacing the jar file.

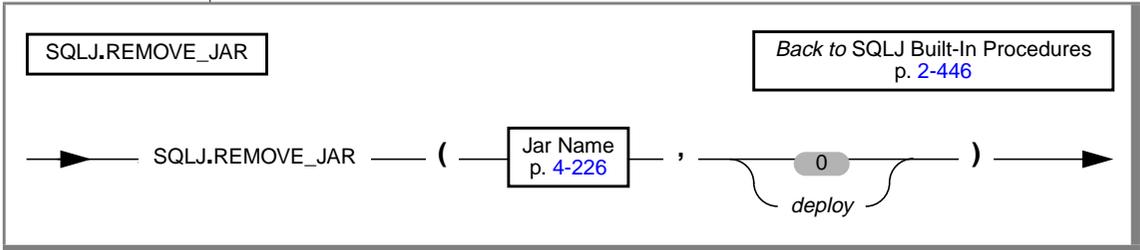
For example, the following call replaces the **Courses.jar** file, which had previously been installed for the **course_jar** identifier, with the **Subjects.jar** file:

```
EXECUTE PROCEDURE
  sqlj.replace_jar("file://students/data/Subjects.jar",
    "course_jar")
```

Before you replace the **Course.jar** file, you must drop the user-defined function **sql_explosive_reaction()** with the DROP FUNCTION (or DROP ROUTINE) statement.

sqlj.remove_jar

Use the **remove_jar()** procedure to remove a previously installed jar file from the current database.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>deploy</i>	Integer that causes the procedure to search for deployment descriptor files in the jar file	None.	Literal Number, p. 4-237

If you attempt to remove a jar file that is referenced by one or more UDRs, the database server generates an error. You must drop the referencing UDRs before replacing the jar file.

For example, the following SQL statements remove the jar file associated with the **course_jar** jar id:

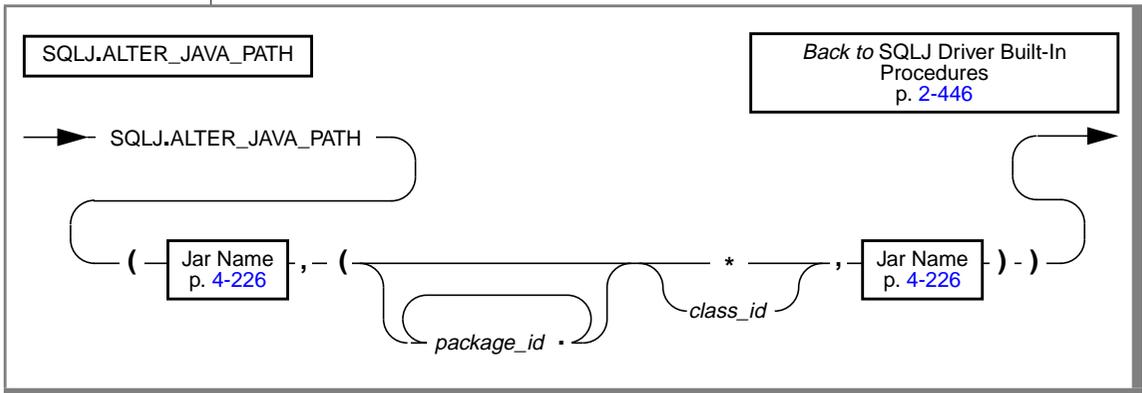
```
DROP FUNCTION sql_explosive_reaction;
EXECUTE PROCEDURE sqlj.remove_jar("course_jar")
```

Using Deployment Descriptor Files

When you specify a nonzero number for the second argument, the database server searches through any included deployment descriptor files. For example, you might want to include descriptor files that include SQL statements that revoke privileges on the UDRs in the associated jar file and to drop them from the database.

sqlj.alter_java_path

Use the **alter_java_path()** procedure to specify the *jar-file path* to use when the routine manager resolves related Java classes for the jar file of a UDR written in Java.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>class_id</i>	Name of the Java class that contains the method to implement the UDR	The Java class must exist in the jar file that <i>jar_id</i> identifies. The fully qualified identifier of <i>package_id.class_id</i> must not exceed 255 bytes.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for Java identifiers.
<i>package_id</i>	Name of the package that contains the Java class	The fully qualified identifier of <i>package_id.class_id</i> must not exceed 255 bytes.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for Java identifiers.

The jar IDs that you specify, (the jar ID for which you are altering the jar-file path and the resolution jar ID) must have been installed with the **sqlj.install_jar** procedure.

When you invoke a UDR written in Java, the routine manager attempts to load the Java class in which the UDR resides. At this time, it must resolve the references that this Java class makes to other Java classes. The three types of such class references are:

1. References to Java classes that the JVPCLASSPATH configuration parameter specifies (such as Java system classes like **java.util.Vector**)
2. References to classes which are in the same jar file as the UDR
3. References to classes which are outside the jar file that contains the UDR

The routine manager implicitly resolves classes of type 1 and 2 in the preceding list. However, to resolve type 3 references, the routine manager examines all the jar files in the jar-file path that the latest call to **alter_java_path()** has specified. The routine manager throws an exception if it cannot resolve a class reference.

The routine manager checks the jar-file path for class references *after* it performs the implicit type 1 and type 2 resolutions. If you want a Java class to be loaded from the jar file that the jar-file path specifies, make sure the Java class is *not* present in the JVPCLASSPATH configuration parameter. Otherwise, the system loader picks up that Java class first, which might result in a different class being loaded than what you expect.

Suppose that the **install_jar()** procedure and the CREATE FUNCTION statement have been executed as described in preceding sections. The following SQL statement invokes **sql_explosive_reaction()** function in the **course_jar** jar file:

```
EXECUTE PROCEDURE alter_java_path("course_jar",
    "(professor/*, prof_jar)");
EXECUTE FUNCTION sql_explosive_reaction(10000)
```

The routine manager attempts to load the class **Chemistry**. It uses the path that the call to **alter_java_path()** specifies to resolve any class references. Therefore, it checks the classes that are in the **professor** package of the jar file that **prof_jar** identifies.

sqlj.setUDTextName

Use the **setUDTextName()** procedure to define the mapping between a user-defined data type and a Java class.

SQLJ.SETUDTEXTNAME

Back to SQLJ Driver Built-In Procedures
p. 2-446

SQLJ.SETUDTEXTNAME ((*data_type* , *package_id* , *class_id*)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>class_id</i>	Name of the Java class that contains the Java data type	The fully qualified identifier of <i>package_id.class_id</i> must not exceed 255 bytes.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for Java identifiers.
<i>data_type</i>	Name of user-defined type for which you want to create a mapping	You must have registered the type of one of the following statements: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ CREATE DISTINCT TYPE ■ CREATE OPAQUE TYPE ■ CREATE ROW TYPE The name must not exceed 255 bytes.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>package_id</i>	Name of the package that contains the Java class	The fully qualified identifier of <i>package_id.class_id</i> must not exceed 255 bytes.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for Java identifiers.

To look up the Java class for a user-defined data type, the database server searches in the jar-file path, which the **alter_java_path()** procedure has specified. For more information on the jar-file path, see [“sqlj.alter_java_path” on page 2-451](#).

On the client side, the driver looks into the CLASSPATH path on the client environment before it asks the database server for the name of the Java class.

The **setUDTextName** procedure is an extension to the *SQLJ:SQL Routines using the Java Programming Language* specification.

sqlj.unsetUDTextName

Use the **remove_jar()** procedure to remove the mapping from a user-defined data type to a Java class.

SQLJ.REMOVE_JAR

Back to SQLJ Built-In Procedures
p. [2-446](#)

—▶ SQLJ.SETUDTEXTNAME (— *data_type* —) —▶

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>data_type</i>	Name of user-defined type for which you want to remove the mapping	The data type must exist.	Identifier, p. 4-205

This procedure removes the SQL-to-Java mapping, and consequently removes any cached copy of the Java class from database server shared memory.

The **unsetUDTextName** procedure is an extension to the *SQLJ:SQL Routines using the Java Programming Language* specification.

Related Information

Related statements: CREATE FUNCTION, CREATE PROCEDURE, EXECUTE FUNCTION, GRANT, CALL, FOREACH, and LET

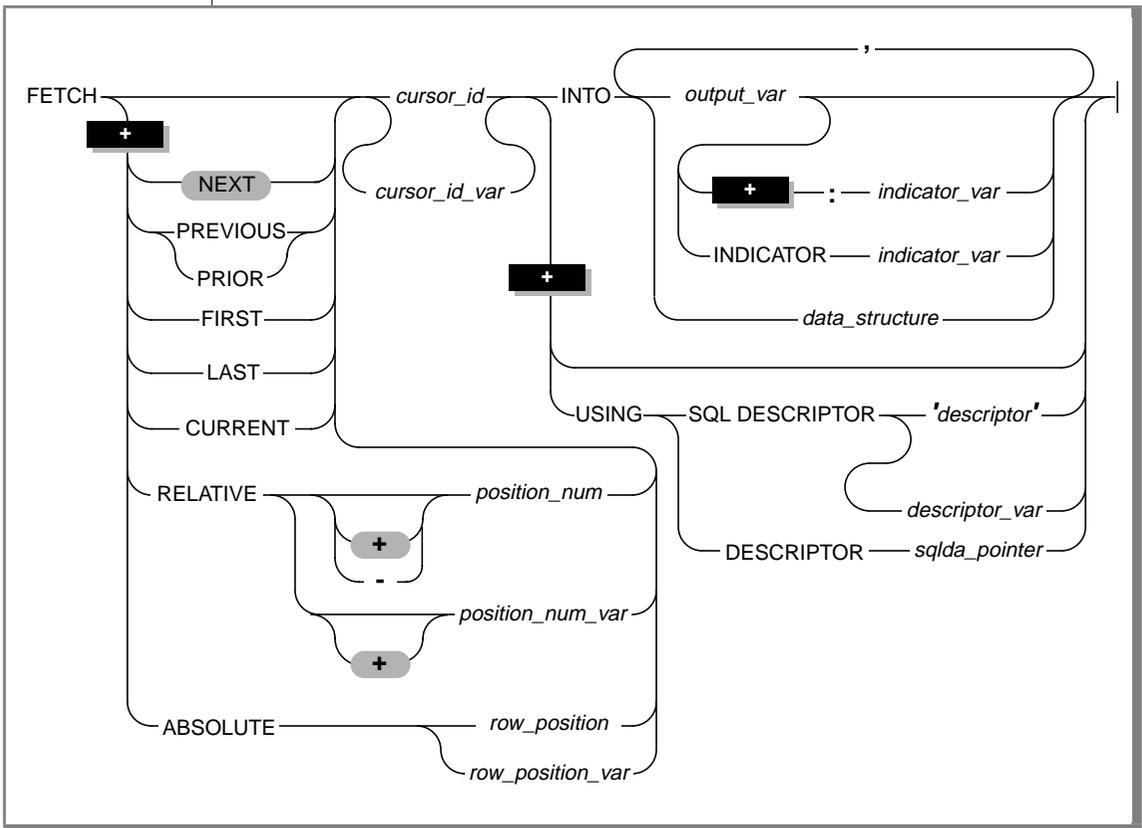
E/C

FETCH

Use the FETCH statement to move a cursor to a new row in the active set and to retrieve the row values from memory.

Use this statement with ESQL/C.

Syntax



FETCH

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>cursor_id</i>	Name of a cursor from which rows are to be retrieved	The cursor must have been created in an earlier DECLARE statement and opened in an earlier OPEN statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>cursor_id_var</i>	Host variable name that holds the value of <i>cursor_id</i>	The identified cursor must have been created in an earlier DECLARE statement and opened in an earlier OPEN statement. The host variable must be a character data type.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>data_structure</i>	Structure that was declared as a host variable	The individual members of the data structure must be matched appropriately to the type of values that are being fetched. If you use a program array, you must list both the array name and a specific element of the array in <i>data_structure</i> .	Name must conform to language-specific rules for data-structure names.
<i>descriptor</i>	String that identifies the system-descriptor area into which you fetch the contents of a row	The system-descriptor area must have been allocated with the ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement.	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>descriptor_var</i>	Host variable name that holds the value of <i>descriptor</i>	The identified system-descriptor area must have been allocated with the ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

(1 of 2)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>indicator_var</i>	Host variable that receives a return code if null data is placed in the corresponding <i>output_var</i>	<p>This parameter is optional, but use an indicator variable if the possibility exists that the value of <i>output_var</i> is null.</p> <p>If you specify the indicator variable without the INDICATOR keyword, you cannot put a space between <i>output_var</i> and <i>indicator_var</i>.</p> <p>For information about rules for placing a prefix before the <i>indicator_var</i>, see the Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual.</p> <p>The host variable cannot be a DATETIME or INTERVAL data type.</p>	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>output_var</i>	Host variable that receives one value from the fetched row	The host variable must have a data type that is appropriate for the value that is fetched into it.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>position_num</i>	Integer value that gives the relative position of the desired row in relation to the current row in the active set of rows	A value of 0 fetches the current row.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>position_num_var</i>	Host variable that contains <i>position_num</i>	A value of 0 fetches the current row.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>row_position</i>	Integer value that gives the position of the desired row in the active set of rows	The value of <i>row_position</i> must be 1 or higher.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>row_position_var</i>	Host variable that contains <i>row_position</i>	The value of <i>row_position</i> must be 1 or higher.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>sqllda_pointer</i>	Pointer to an sqllda structure that receives the values from the fetched row	You cannot begin an sqllda pointer with a dollar sign (\$) or a colon (:).	See the discussion of sqllda structure in the Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual .

(2 of 2)

Usage

The way the database server creates and stores members of the active set and then fetches rows from the active set differs depending on whether the cursor is a sequential cursor or a scroll cursor.

In X/Open mode, if a cursor-direction value (such as `NEXT` or `RELATIVE`) is specified, a warning message is issued, indicating that the statement does not conform to X/Open standards. ♦

FETCH with a Sequential Cursor

A sequential cursor can fetch only the next row in sequence from the active set. The sole cursor-position option that is available to a sequential cursor is the default value, `NEXT`. A sequential cursor can read through a table only once each time it is opened. The following `ESQL/C` example illustrates the `FETCH` statement with a sequential cursor:

```
EXEC SQL FETCH seq_curs into :fname, :lname;  
EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT seq_curs into ;fname, :lname;
```

When the program opens a sequential cursor, the database server processes the query to the point of locating or constructing the first row of data. The goal of the database server is to tie up as few resources as possible.

Because the sequential cursor can retrieve only the next row, the database server can frequently create the active set one row at a time. On each `FETCH` operation, the database server returns the contents of the current row and locates the next row. This one-row-at-a-time strategy is not possible if the database server must create the entire active set to determine which row is the first row (as would be the case if the `SELECT` statement included an `ORDER BY` clause).

FETCH with a Scroll Cursor

A scroll cursor can fetch any row in the active set, either by specifying an absolute row position or a relative offset. Use the following cursor-position options to specify a particular row that you want to retrieve.

Cursor-Position Option	Purpose
NEXT	Retrieves the next row in the active set
PREVIOUS	Retrieves the previous row in the active set
PRIOR	Retrieves the previous row in the active set. (Synonymous with PREVIOUS.)
FIRST	Retrieves the first row in the active set
LAST	Retrieves the last row in the active set
CURRENT	Retrieves the current row in the active set (the same row as returned by the preceding FETCH statement from the scroll cursor)
RELATIVE	Retrieves the <i>n</i> th row, relative to the current cursor position in the active set, where <i>position_num</i> (or <i>position_num_var</i>) supplies <i>n</i> A negative value indicates the <i>n</i> th row prior to the current cursor position. If <i>position_num</i> is 0, the current row is fetched.
ABSOLUTE	Retrieves the <i>n</i> th row in the active set, where <i>row_position</i> (or <i>row_position_var</i>) supplies <i>n</i> Absolute row positions are numbered from 1.

The following ESQL/C examples illustrate the FETCH statement with a scroll cursor:

```
EXEC SQL fetch previous q_curs into :orders;

EXEC SQL fetch last q_curs into :orders;

EXEC SQL fetch relative -10 q_curs into :orders;

printf("Which row? ");
scanf("%d",row_num);
EXEC SQL fetch absolute :row_num q_curs into :orders;
```



***Tip:** Do not confuse row-position values with rowid values. A rowid value is based on the position of a row in its table and remains valid until the table is rebuilt. A row-position value (a value introduced by the **ABSOLUTE** keyword) is based on the position of the row in the active set of the cursor; the next time the cursor is opened, different rows might be selected.*

How the Database Server Stores Rows

The database server must retain all the rows in the active set for a scroll cursor until the cursor closes, because it cannot be sure which row the program asks for next. When a scroll cursor opens, the database server implements the active set as a temporary table although it might not fill this table immediately.

The first time a row is fetched, the database server copies it into the temporary table as well as returning it to the program. When a row is fetched for the second time, it can be taken from the temporary table. This scheme uses the fewest resources in case the program abandons the query before it fetches all the rows. Rows that are never fetched are usually not created or are saved in a temporary table.

Specifying Where Values Go in Memory

Each value from the select list of the query or the output of the executed user-defined function must be returned into a memory location. You can specify these destinations in one of the following ways:

- Use the **INTO** clause of a **SELECT** statement.
- Use the **INTO** clause of an **EXECUTE FUNCTION** (or **EXECUTE PROCEDURE**) statement.
- Use the **INTO** clause of a **FETCH** statement.
- Use a system-descriptor area.
- Use an **sqllda** structure.

Using the INTO Clause of SELECT, EXECUTE FUNCTION, or EXECUTE PROCEDURE

When you associate a SELECT, or EXECUTE FUNCTION (OR EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement with the cursor (a function cursor), the statement can contain an INTO clause to specify the program variables that are to receive the return values.

You can use this method only when you write the SELECT or EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement as part of the cursor declaration (see “[DECLARE](#)” on page 2-349).

In this case, the FETCH statement cannot contain an INTO clause.

The following example uses the INTO clause of the SELECT statement to specify program variables in ESQL/C:

```
EXEC SQL declare ord_date cursor for
      select order_num, order_date, po_num
         into :o_num, :o_date, :o_po;
EXEC SQL open ord_date;
EXEC SQL fetch next ord_date;
```

Use an indicator variable if the returned data might be null.

If you prepare a SELECT statement, the SELECT *cannot* include the INTO clause so you must use the INTO clause of the FETCH statement.

When you create a SELECT statement dynamically, you cannot use an INTO clause because you cannot name host variables in a prepared statement. If you are certain of the number and data type of values in the select list, you can use an INTO clause in the FETCH statement. However, if user input generated the query, you might not be certain of the number and data type of values that are being selected. In this case, you must use a system descriptor or `sqllda` pointer structure

Using the INTO Clause of FETCH

When the SELECT or EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement omits the INTO clause, you must specify the destination of the data whenever a row is fetched. For example, to dynamically execute a SELECT or EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement, the SELECT or EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) cannot include its INTO clause in the PREPARE statement. Therefore, the FETCH statement must include an INTO clause to retrieve data into a set of variables. This method lets you store different rows in different memory locations.

In the following ESQL/C example, a series of complete rows is fetched into a program array. The INTO clause of each FETCH statement specifies an array element as well as the array name.

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char wanted_state[2];
short int row_count = 0;
struct customer_t{
    {
        int    c_no;
        char   fname[15];
        char   lname[15];
    } cust_rec[100];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

main()
{
    EXEC SQL connect to 'stores_demo';
    printf("Enter 2-letter state code: ");
    scanf ("%s", wanted_state);

    EXEC SQL declare cust cursor for
        select * from customer where state = :wanted_state;

    EXEC SQL open cust;

    EXEC SQL fetch cust into :cust_rec[row_count];
    while (SQLCODE == 0)
    {
        printf("\n%s %s", cust_rec[row_count].fname,
            cust_rec[row_count].lname);

        row_count++;
        EXEC SQL fetch cust into :cust_rec[row_count];
    }
    printf ("\n");
    EXEC SQL close cust;
    EXEC SQL free cust;
}
```



X/O

You can fetch into a program-array element only by using an INTO clause in the FETCH statement. When you are declaring a cursor, do not refer to an array element within the SQL statement.

Tip: If you are certain of the number and data type of values in the select list, you can use an INTO clause in the FETCH statement.

Using a System-Descriptor Area

You can use a system-descriptor area to store output values when you do not know the number of return values or their data types that a SELECT or EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement returns at runtime. A system-descriptor area describes the data type and memory location of one or more return values.

The keywords USING SQL DESCRIPTOR introduce the name of the system-descriptor area into which you fetch the contents of a row or the return values of a user-defined function. You can then use the GET DESCRIPTOR statement to transfer the values that the FETCH statement returns from the system-descriptor area into host variables.

The following example shows a valid FETCH...USING SQL DESCRIPTOR statement:

```
EXEC SQL allocate descriptor 'desc';
...
EXEC SQL declare selcurs cursor for
    select * from customer where state = 'CA';
EXEC SQL describe selcurs using sql descriptor 'desc';
EXEC SQL open selcurs;
while (1)
{
    EXEC SQL fetch selcurs using sql descriptor 'desc';
    ...
}
```

You can also use an **sqllda** structure to dynamically supply parameters. However, a system-descriptor area conforms to the X/Open standards.



Using an `sqlda` Structure

You can use a pointer to an `sqlda` structure that stores the output values when you do not know the number of return values or their data types that a `SELECT` or `EXECUTE FUNCTION` (or `EXECUTE PROCEDURE`) statement returns at runtime. This structure contains data descriptors that specify the data type and memory location for one selected value. The keywords `USING DESCRIPTOR` introduce the name of the `sqlda` pointer structure.

Tip: If you are certain of the number and data type of values in the select list, you can use an `INTO` clause in the `FETCH` statement. For more information, see [“Using the INTO Clause of FETCH”](#) on page 2-462.

To specify an `sqlda` structure as the location of parameters, follow these steps:

1. Declare an `sqlda` pointer variable.
2. Use the `DESCRIBE` statement to fill in the `sqlda` structure.
3. Allocate memory to hold the data values.
4. Use the `USING DESCRIPTOR` clause of the `FETCH` statement to name the `sqlda` structure as the location into which you fetch the return values.

The following example shows a `FETCH USING DESCRIPTOR` statement:

```
struct sqlda *sqlda_ptr;
...
EXEC SQL declare selcurs2 cursor for
      select * from customer where state = 'CA';
EXEC SQL describe selcurs2 into sqlda_ptr;
...
EXEC SQL open selcurs2;
while (1)
  {
    EXEC SQL fetch selcurs2 using descriptor sqlda_ptr;
    ...
  }
```

The `sqld` value specifies the number of output values that are described in occurrences of the `sqlvar` structures of the `sqlda` structure. This number must correspond to the number of return values from the prepared statement.

Fetching a Row for Update

The FETCH statement does not ordinarily lock a row that is fetched. Thus, another process can modify (update or delete) the fetched row immediately after your program receives it. A fetched row is locked in the following cases:

- When you set the isolation level to Repeatable Read, each row you fetch is locked with a read lock to keep it from changing until the cursor closes or the current transaction ends. Other programs can also read the locked rows.
- When you set the isolation level to Cursor Stability, the current row is locked.
- In an ANSI-compliant database, an isolation level of Repeatable Read is the default; you can set it to something else. ♦
- When you are fetching through an update cursor (one that is declared FOR UPDATE), each row you fetch is locked with a promotable lock. Other programs can read the locked row, but no other program can place a promotable or write lock; therefore, the row is unchanged if another user tries to modify it using the WHERE CURRENT OF clause of an UPDATE or DELETE statement.

When you modify a row, the lock is upgraded to a write lock and remains until the cursor is closed or the transaction ends. If you do not modify the row, the behavior of the database server depends on the isolation level you have set. The database server releases the lock on an unchanged row as soon as another row is fetched, unless you are using Repeatable Read isolation (see [“SET ISOLATION” on page 2-736](#)).

Important: *You can hold locks on additional rows even when Repeatable Read isolation is not in use or is unavailable. Update the row with unchanged data to hold it locked while your program is reading other rows. You must evaluate the effect of this technique on performance in the context of your application, and you must be aware of the increased potential for deadlock.*

When you use explicit transactions, be sure that a row is both fetched and modified within a single transaction; that is, both the FETCH statement and the subsequent UPDATE or DELETE statement must fall between a BEGIN WORK statement and the next COMMIT WORK statement.

ANSI

Fetching From a Collection Cursor

A collection cursor allows you to access the individual elements of an SQL/C collection variable. To declare a collection cursor, use the DECLARE statement and include the Collection Derived Table segment in the SELECT statement that you associate with the cursor. Once you open the collection cursor with the OPEN statement, the cursor allows you to access the elements of the collection variable.

To fetch elements, one at a time, from a collection cursor, use the FETCH statement and the INTO clause. The FETCH statement identifies the collection cursor that is associated with the collection variable. The INTO clause identifies the host variable that holds the element value that is fetched from the collection cursor. The data type of the host variable in the INTO clause must match the element type of the collection.

Suppose you have a table called **children** with the following structure:

```
CREATE TABLE children
(
    age          SMALLINT,
    name         VARCHAR(30),
    fav_colors   SET(VARCHAR(20) NOT NULL),
)
```

The following ESQL/C code fragment shows how to fetch elements from the **child_colors** collection variable:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    client collection child_colors;
    varchar one_favorite[21];
    char child_name[31] = "marybeth";
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL allocate collection :child_colors;

/* Get structure of fav_colors column for untyped
 * child_colors collection variable */
EXEC SQL select fav_colors into :child_colors
    from children
    where name = :child_name;
/* Declare select cursor for child_colors collection
 * variable */
EXEC SQL declare colors_curs cursor for
    select * from table(:child_colors);
EXEC SQL open colors_curs;

do
{
    EXEC SQL fetch colors_curs into :one_favorite;
    ..
} while (SQLCODE == 0)

EXEC SQL close colors_curs;
EXEC SQL free colors_curs;
EXEC SQL deallocate collection :child_colors;
```

Once you have fetched a collection element, you can modify the element with the UPDATE or DELETE statements. For more information, see the UPDATE and DELETE statements in this manual. You can also insert new elements into the collection variable with an INSERT statement. For more information, see the INSERT statement.

Checking the Result of FETCH

You can use the **SQLSTATE** variable to check the result of each **FETCH** statement. The database server sets the **SQLSTATE** variable after each **SQL** statement. If a row is returned successfully, the **SQLSTATE** variable contains the value 00000. If no row is found, the database server sets the **SQLSTATE** code to 02000, which indicates no data found, and the current row is unchanged. The following conditions set the **SQLSTATE** code to 02000, indicating no data found:

- The active set contains no rows.
- You issue a **FETCH NEXT** statement when the cursor points to the last row in the active set or points past it.
- You issue a **FETCH PRIOR** or **FETCH PREVIOUS** statement when the cursor points to the first row in the active set.
- You issue a **FETCH RELATIVE *n*** statement when no *n*th row exists in the active set.
- You issue a **FETCH ABSOLUTE *n*** statement when no *n*th row exists in the active set.

The database server copies the **SQLSTATE** code from the **RETURNED_SQLSTATE** field of the system-diagnostics area. You can use the **GET DIAGNOSTICS** statement to examine the **RETURNED_SQLSTATE** field directly. The system-diagnostics area can also contain additional error information.

You can also use **SQLCODE** of **sqlca** to determine the same results.

Related Information

Related statements: **ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR**, **CLOSE**, **DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR**, **DECLARE**, **DESCRIBE**, **GET DESCRIPTOR**, **OPEN**, **PREPARE**, **SET DEFERRED_PREPARE**, and **SET DESCRIPTOR**

For a task-oriented discussion of the **FETCH** statement, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For more information about concepts relating to the **FETCH** statement, see the [Informix ESQ/C Programmer's Manual](#).

Error Checking FLUSH Statements

The `sqlca` structure contains information on the success of each FLUSH statement and the number of rows that are inserted successfully. The result of each FLUSH statement is contained in the fields of the `sqlca`: `sqlca.sqlcode`, `SQLCODE` and `sqlca.sqlerrd[2]`.

When you use data buffering with an insert cursor, you do not discover errors until the buffer is flushed. For example, an input value that is incompatible with the data type of the column for which it is intended is discovered only when the buffer is flushed. When an error is discovered, rows in the buffer that are located after the error are *not* inserted; they are lost from memory.

The `SQLCODE` field is set either to an error code or to zero (0) if no error occurs. The third element of the `sqlerrd` array is set to the number of rows that are successfully inserted into the database:

- If a block of rows is successfully inserted into the database, `SQLCODE` is set to zero (0) and `sqlerrd` to the count of rows.
- If an error occurs while the FLUSH statement is inserting a block of rows, `SQLCODE` shows which error, and `sqlerrd` contains the number of rows that were successfully inserted. (Uninserted rows are discarded from the buffer.)



Tip: When you encounter an `SQLCODE` error, a corresponding `SQLSTATE` error value also exists. For information about how to get the message text, check the `GET DIAGNOSTICS` statement.

Counting Total and Pending Rows

To count the number of rows actually inserted into the database as well as the number not yet inserted, perform the following steps:

1. Prepare two integer variables, for example, **total** and **pending**.
2. When the cursor opens, set both variables to 0.
3. Each time a PUT statement executes, increment both **total** and **pending**.
4. Whenever a FLUSH statement executes or the cursor is closed, subtract the third field of the `SQLERRD` array from **pending**.

Related Information

Related statements: CLOSE, DECLARE, OPEN, and PREPARE

For a task-oriented discussion of FLUSH, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For information about the **sqlca** structure, see the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

+

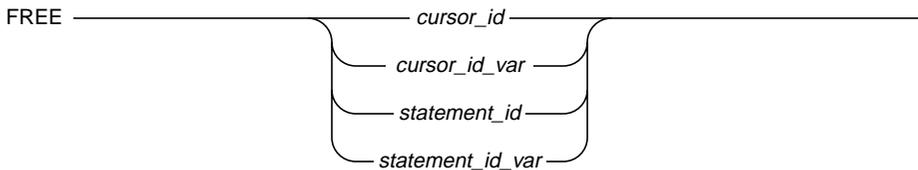
E/C

FREE

Use the FREE statement to release resources that are allocated to a prepared statement or to a cursor.

Use this statement with ESQL/C.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>cursor_id</i>	Name of a cursor	A DECLARE statement must have previously created the cursor.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>cursor_id_var</i>	Host variable that holds the value of <i>cursor_id</i>	Variable must be a character data type. Cursor must have been previously created by a DECLARE statement.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>statement_id</i>	String that identifies an SQL statement	The statement identifier must be defined in a previous PREPARE statement. After you release the database-server resources, you cannot use the statement identifier with a DECLARE cursor or with the EXECUTE statement until you prepare the statement again.	PREPARE, p. 2-579
<i>statement_id_var</i>	Host variable that identifies an SQL statement	The statement identifier must be defined in a previous PREPARE statement. The host variable must be a character data type.	PREPARE, p. 2-579

Usage

The FREE statement releases the resources that the database server and application-development tool allocated for a prepared statement or a declared cursor.

Freeing a Statement

If you prepared a statement (but did not declare a cursor for it), FREE *statement_id* (or *statement_id_var*) releases the resources in both the application development tool and the database server.

If you declared a cursor for a prepared statement, FREE *statement_id* (or *statement_id_var*) releases only the resources in the application development tool; the cursor can still be used. The resources in the database server are released only when you free the cursor.

After you free a statement, you cannot execute it or declare a cursor for it until you prepare it again.

The following ESQL/C example shows the sequence of statements that is used to free an implicitly prepared statement:

```
EXEC SQL prepare sel_stmt from 'select * from orders';
.
.
EXEC SQL free sel_stmt;
```

The following ESQL/C example shows the sequence of statements that are used to release the resources of an explicitly prepared statement. The first FREE statement in this example frees the cursor. The second FREE statement in this example frees the prepared statement.

```
sprintf(demoselect, "%s %s",
        "select * from customer ",
        "where customer_num between 100 and 200");
EXEC SQL prepare sel_stmt from :demoselect;
EXEC SQL declare sel_curs cursor for sel_stmt;
EXEC SQL open sel_curs;
.
.
EXEC SQL close sel_curs;
EXEC SQL free sel_curs;
EXEC SQL free sel_stmt;
```

Freeing a Cursor

If you declared a cursor for a prepared statement, freeing the cursor releases only the resources in the database server. To release the resources for the statement in the application-development tool, use `FREE statement_id` (or `statement_id_var`).

If a cursor is not declared for a prepared statement, freeing the cursor releases the resources in both the application-development tool and the database server.

After a cursor is freed, it cannot be opened until it is declared again. The cursor should be explicitly closed before it is freed.

For an example of a `FREE` statement that frees a cursor, see the second example in [“Freeing a Statement” on page 2-473](#).

Related Information

Related statements: `CLOSE`, `DECLARE`, `EXECUTE`, `EXECUTE IMMEDIATE`, `OPEN`, `PREPARE`, and `SET AUTOFREE`

For a task-oriented discussion of the `FREE` statement, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

+

E/C

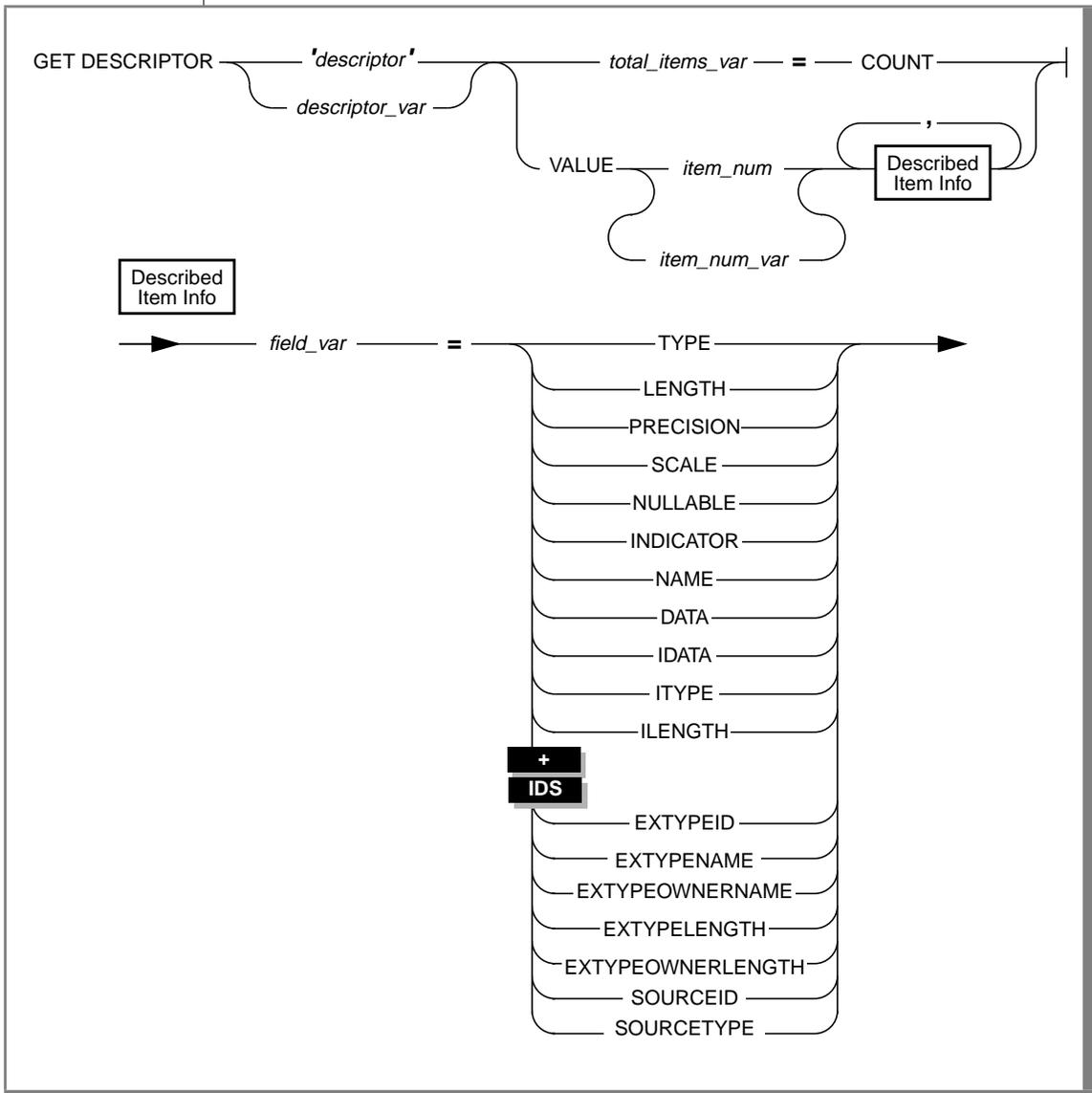
GET DESCRIPTOR

Use the GET DESCRIPTOR statement to accomplish the following separate tasks:

- Determine how many items are described in a system-descriptor area
- Determine the characteristics of each column or expression that is described in the system-descriptor area
- Copy a value from the system-descriptor area into a host variable after a FETCH statement

Use this statement with ESQL/C.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>descriptor</i>	Quoted string that identifies a system-descriptor area from which information is to be obtained	The system-descriptor area must have been allocated in an ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement.	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>descriptor_var</i>	Embedded variable name that holds the value of descriptor	The system-descriptor area identified in <i>descriptor_var</i> must have been allocated in an ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>field_var</i>	Host variable that receives the contents of the specified field from the system-descriptor area	The <i>field_var</i> must be an appropriate type to receive the value of the specified field from the system-descriptor area.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>item_num</i>	Unsigned integer that represents one of the items described in the system-descriptor area	The value of <i>item_num</i> must be greater than zero (0) and less than the number of item descriptors that were specified when the system-descriptor area was allocated with the ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>item_num_var</i>	Host variable that holds the value of <i>item_num</i>	The <i>item_num_var</i> must be an integer data type.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>total_items_var</i>	Host variable that indicates how many items are described in the system-descriptor area	The host variable must be an integer data type.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

Usage

IDS

Use the GET DESCRIPTOR statement after you have described EXECUTE FUNCTION, INSERT, SELECT, or UPDATE statements with the DESCRIBE...USING SQL DESCRIPTOR statement. ♦

XPS

Use the GET DESCRIPTOR statement after you have described EXECUTE PROCEDURE, INSERT, or SELECT statements with the DESCRIBE...USING SQL DESCRIPTOR statement. ♦

The host variables that are used in the GET DESCRIPTOR statement must be declared in the BEGIN DECLARE SECTION of a program.

If an error occurs during the assignment to any identified host variable, the contents of the host variable are undefined.

Using the COUNT Keyword

Use the COUNT keyword to determine how many items are described in the system-descriptor area.

The following ESQ/C example shows how to use a GET DESCRIPTOR statement with a host variable to determine how many items are described in the system-descriptor area called **desc1**:

```
main()
{
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
int h_count;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL allocate descriptor 'desc1' with max 20;

/* This section of program would prepare a SELECT or INSERT
 * statement into the s_id statement id.
 */
EXEC SQL describe s_id using sql descriptor 'desc1';

EXEC SQL get descriptor 'desc1' :h_count = count;
...
}
```

Using the VALUE Clause

Use the VALUE clause to obtain information about a described column or expression or to retrieve values that the database server returns in a system descriptor area.

The *item_num* must be greater than zero (0) and less than the number of item descriptors that were specified when the system-descriptor area was allocated with the ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement.

Using the VALUE Clause After a DESCRIBE

After you describe a SELECT, EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE), INSERT, or UPDATE statement, the characteristics of each column or expression in the select list of the SELECT statement, the characteristics of the values returned by the EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement, or the characteristics of each column in a INSERT or UPDATE statement are returned to the system-descriptor area. Each value in the system-descriptor area describes the characteristics of one returned column or expression.

The following ESQL/C example shows how to use a GET DESCRIPTOR statement to obtain data type information from the **demodesc** system-descriptor area:

```
EXEC SQL get descriptor 'demodesc' value :index
       :type = TYPE,
       :len = LENGTH,
       :name = NAME;
printf("Column %d: type = %d, len = %d, name = %s\n",
       index, type, len, name);
```

The value that the database server returns into the TYPE field is a defined integer. To evaluate the data type that is returned, test for a specific integer value. For additional information about integer data type values, see [“Setting the TYPE or ITYPE Field” on page 2-724](#).

X/O

In X/Open mode, the X/Open code is returned to the TYPE field. You cannot mix the two modes because errors can result. For example, if a particular data type is not defined under X/Open mode but is defined for Informix products, executing a GET DESCRIPTOR statement can result in an error.

In X/Open mode, a warning message appears if ILENGTH, IDATA, or ITYPE is used. It indicates that these fields are not standard X/Open fields for a system-descriptor area. ♦

If the TYPE of a fetched value is DECIMAL or MONEY, the database server returns the precision and scale information for a column into the **PRECISION** and **SCALE** fields after a DESCRIBE statement is executed. If the TYPE is *not* DECIMAL or MONEY, the **SCALE** and **PRECISION** fields are undefined.

Using the VALUE Clause After a FETCH

Each time your program fetches a row, it must copy the fetched value into host variables so that the data can be used. To accomplish this task, use a GET DESCRIPTOR statement after each fetch of each value in the select list. If three values exist in the select list, you need to use three GET DESCRIPTOR statements after each fetch (assuming you want to read all three values). The item numbers for each of the three GET DESCRIPTOR statements are 1, 2, and 3.

The following ESQL/C example shows how you can copy data from the **DATA** field into a host variable (**result**) after a fetch. For this example, it is predetermined that all returned values are the same data type.

```
EXEC SQL get descriptor 'demodesc' :desc_count = count;
.
.
.
EXEC SQL fetch democursor using sql descriptor 'demodesc';
for (i = 1; i <= desc_count; i++)
{
    if (sqlca.sqlcode != 0) break;
    EXEC SQL get descriptor 'demodesc' value :i :result = DATA;
    printf("%s ", result);
}
printf("\n");
```

Fetching a Null Value

When you use GET DESCRIPTOR after a fetch, and the fetched value is null, the **INDICATOR** field is set to -1 (null). The value of **DATA** is undefined if **INDICATOR** indicates a null value. The host variable into which **DATA** is copied has an unpredictable value.

Using LENGTH or ILENGTH

If your **DATA** or **IDATA** field contains a character string, you must specify a value for **LENGTH**. If you specify **LENGTH=0**, **LENGTH** is automatically set to the maximum length of the string. The **DATA** or **IDATA** field might contain a literal character string or a character string that is derived from a character variable of **CHAR** or **VARCHAR** data type. This provides a method to determine the length of a string in the **DATA** or **IDATA** field dynamically.

If a **DESCRIBE** statement precedes a **GET DESCRIPTOR** statement, **LENGTH** is automatically set to the maximum length of the character field that is specified in your table.

This information is identical for **ILENGTH**. Use **ILENGTH** when you create a dynamic program that does not comply with the X/Open standard.

Describing an Opaque-Type Column

The **DESCRIBE** statement sets the following item-descriptor fields when the column to fetch has an opaque type as its data type:

- The **EXTYPEID** field stores the extended ID for the opaque type.
This integer value corresponds to a value in the **extended_id** column of the **sysxdtypes** system catalog table.
- The **EXTYPENAME** field stores the name of the opaque type.
This character value corresponds to a value in the **name** column of the row with the matching **extended_id** value in the **sysxdtypes** system catalog table.
- The **EXTYPELENGTH** field stores the length of the opaque-type name.
This integer value is the length, in bytes, of the name of the opaque type.
- The **EXTYPEOWNERNAME** field stores the name of the opaque-type owner.
This character value corresponds to a value in the **owner** column of the row with the matching **extended_id** value in the **sysxdtypes** system catalog table.
- The **EXTYPEOWNERLENGTH** field stores the length of the value in the **EXTYPEOWNERNAME** field.
This integer value is the length, in bytes, of the owner name for the opaque type.

Use these field names with the **GET DESCRIPTOR** statement to obtain information about an opaque column.

Describing a Distinct-Type Column

The DESCRIBE statement sets the following item-descriptor fields when the column to fetch has a distinct type as its data type:

- The SOURCEID field stores the extended identifier for the source data type.

This integer value corresponds to a value in the **source** column for the row of the **sysxdtypes** system catalog table whose **extended_id** value matches that of the distinct type you are setting. This field is only set if the source data type is an opaque data type.

- The SOURCETYPE field stores the data type constant for the source data type.

This value is the data type constant (from the **sqltypes.h** file) for the data type of the source type for the distinct type. The codes for the SOURCETYPE field are listed in the description of the TYPE field in the SET DESCRIPTOR statement. (For more information, see [“Setting the TYPE or ITYPE Field” on page 2-724](#)). This integer value must correspond to the value in the **type** column for the row of the **sysxdtypes** system catalog table whose **extended_id** value matches that of the distinct type you are setting.

Use these field names with the GET DESCRIPTOR statement to obtain information about a distinct-type column.

Related Information

Related statements: ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR, DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR, DECLARE, DESCRIBE, EXECUTE, FETCH, OPEN, PREPARE, PUT, and SET DESCRIPTOR

For more information on concepts relating to the GET DESCRIPTOR statement, see the [Informix ESQ/C Programmer's Manual](#).

For more information on the **sysxdtypes** system catalog table, see of the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

+

E/C

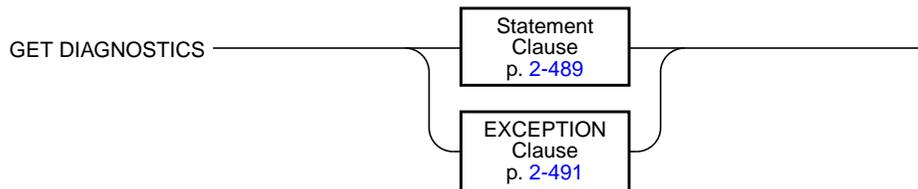
GET DIAGNOSTICS

Use the GET DIAGNOSTICS statement to return diagnostic information about executing an SQL statement. The GET DIAGNOSTICS statement uses one of two clauses, as described in the following list:

- The Statement clause determines count and overflow information about errors and warnings generated by the most recent SQL statement.
- The EXCEPTION clause provides specific information about errors and warnings generated by the most recent SQL statement.

Use this statement with ESQL/C.

Syntax



Usage

The GET DIAGNOSTICS statement retrieves selected status information from the diagnostics area and retrieves either count and overflow information or information on a specific exception.

The GET DIAGNOSTICS statement never changes the contents of the diagnostics area.

Using the SQLSTATE Error Status Code

When an SQL statement executes, an error status code is automatically generated. This code represents success, failure, warning, or no data found. This error status code is stored in a variable called **SQLSTATE**.

Class and Subclass Codes

THE **SQLSTATE** status code is a five-character string that can contain only digits and capital letters.

The first two characters of the **SQLSTATE** status code indicate a class. The last three characters of the **SQLSTATE** code indicate a subclass. [Figure 2-1](#) shows the structure of the **SQLSTATE** code. This example uses the value 08001, where 08 is the class code and 001 is the subclass code. The value 08001 represents the error unable to connect with database environment.

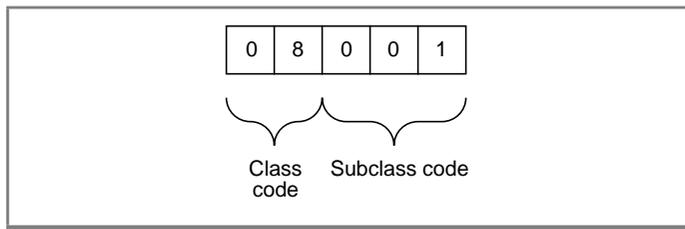


Figure 2-1
Structure of the
SQLSTATE Code

The following table is a quick reference for interpreting class code values.

SQLSTATE Class Code Value	Outcome
00	Success
01	Success with warning
02	No data found
> 02	Error or warning

Support for ANSI Standards

All status codes returned to the **SQLSTATE** variable are ANSI compliant except in the following cases:

- **SQLSTATE** codes with a class code of 01 and a subclass code that begins with an I are Informix-specific warning messages.
- **SQLSTATE** codes with a class code of IX and any subclass code are Informix-specific error messages.
- **SQLSTATE** codes whose class code begins with a digit in the range 5 to 9 or with a capital letter in the range I to Z indicate conditions that are currently undefined by ANSI. The only exception is that **SQLSTATE** codes whose class code is IX are Informix-specific error messages.

List of SQLSTATE Codes

The following table describes the class codes, subclass codes, and the meaning of all valid warning and error codes associated with the **SQLSTATE** error status code.

Class	Subclass	Purpose
00	000	Success
01	000	Success with warning
01	002	Disconnect error. Transaction rolled back
01	003	Null value eliminated in set function
01	004	String data, right truncation
01	005	Insufficient item descriptor areas
01	006	Privilege not revoked
01	007	Privilege not granted

(1 of 4)

Class	Subclass	Purpose
01	I01	Database has transactions
01	I03	ANSI-compliant database selected
01	I04	Informix database server selected
01	I05	Float to decimal conversion was used
01	I06	Informix extension to ANSI-compliant standard syntax
01	I07	UPDATE or DELETE statement does not have a WHERE clause
01	I08	
01	I09	An ANSI keyword was used as a cursor name
01	I10	Number of items in the select list is not equal to the number in the into list
01	I11	Database server running in secondary mode Dataskip is turned on
02	000	No data found
07	000	Dynamic SQL error
07	001	USING clause does not match dynamic parameters
07	002	USING clause does not match target specifications
07	003	Cursor specification cannot be executed
07	004	USING clause is required for dynamic parameters
07	005	Prepared statement is not a cursor specification
07	006	Restricted data type attribute violation
07	008	Invalid descriptor count
07	009	Invalid descriptor index
08	000	Connection exception
08	001	Server rejected the connection
08	002	Connection name in use
08	003	Connection does not exist
08	004	Client unable to establish connection
08	006	Transaction rolled back
08	007	Transaction state unknown
08	S01	Communication failure

(2 of 4)

Class	Subclass	Purpose
0A	000	Feature not supported
0A	001	Multiple server transactions
21	000	Cardinality violation
21	S01	Insert value list does not match column list
21	S02	Degree of derived table does not match column list
22	000	Data exception
22	001	String data, right truncation
22	002	Null value, no indicator parameter
22	003	Numeric value out of range
22	005	Error in assignment
22	027	Data exception trim error
22	012	Division by zero (0)
22	019	Invalid escape character
22	024	Unterminated string
22	025	Invalid escape sequence
23	000	Integrity constraint violation
24	000	Invalid cursor state
25	000	Invalid transaction state
2B	000	Dependent privilege descriptors still exist
2D	000	Invalid transaction termination
26	000	Invalid SQL statement identifier
2E	000	Invalid connection name
28	000	Invalid user-authorization specification
33	000	Invalid SQL descriptor name
34	000	Invalid cursor name
35	000	Invalid exception number

(3 of 4)

Class	Subclass	Purpose
37	000	Syntax error or access violation in PREPARE or EXECUTE IMMEDIATE
3C	000	Duplicate cursor name
40	000	Transaction rollback
40	003	Statement completion unknown
42	000	Syntax error or access violation
S0	000	Invalid name
S0	001	Base table or view table already exists
S0	002	Base table not found
S0	011	Index already exists
S0	021	Column already exists
S1	001	Memory allocation failure
IX	000	Informix reserved error message

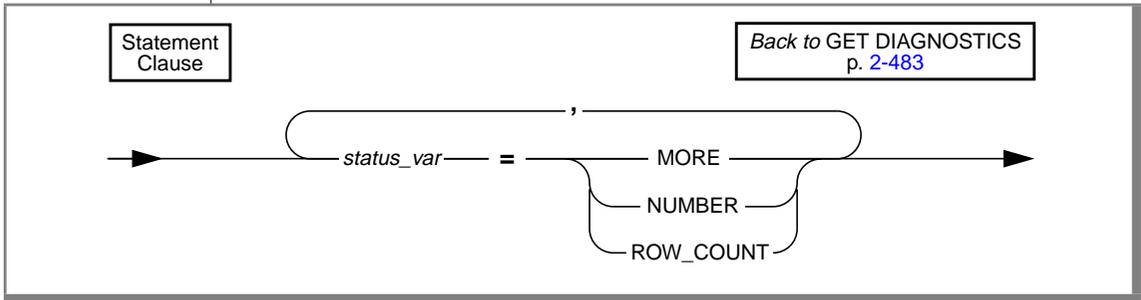
(4 of 4)

Using SQLSTATE in Applications

You can use a variable, called **SQLSTATE**, that you do not have to declare in your program. **SQLSTATE** contains the error code that is essential for error handling, which is generated every time your program executes an SQL statement. **SQLSTATE** is created automatically. You can examine the **SQLSTATE** variable to determine whether an SQL statement was successful. If the **SQLSTATE** variable indicates that the statement failed, you can execute a GET DIAGNOSTICS statement to obtain additional error information.

For an example of how to use an **SQLSTATE** variable in a program, see [“Using GET DIAGNOSTICS for Error Checking”](#) on page 2-498.

Statement Clause



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<code>status_var</code>	Host variable that receives status information about the most recent SQL statement Receives information for the specified status field name.	Data type must match that of the requested field.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

When retrieving count and overflow information, `GET DIAGNOSTICS` can deposit the values of the three statement fields into a corresponding host variable. The host-variable data type must be the same as that of the requested field. These three fields are represented by the following keywords.

Field Name Keyword	Field Data Type	Field Contents	ESQL/C Host Variable Data Type
<code>MORE</code>	Character	Y or N	char[2]
<code>NUMBER</code>	Integer	1 to 35,000	int
<code>ROW_COUNT</code>	Integer	0 to 999,999,999	int

Using the MORE Keyword

Use the MORE keyword to determine if the most recently executed SQL statement performed the following actions:

- Stored all the exceptions it detected in the diagnostics area.
The GET DIAGNOSTICS statement returns a value of *N*.
- Detected more exceptions than it stored in the diagnostics area.
The GET DIAGNOSTICS statement returns a value of *Y*.

The value of MORE is always *N*.

Using the NUMBER Keyword

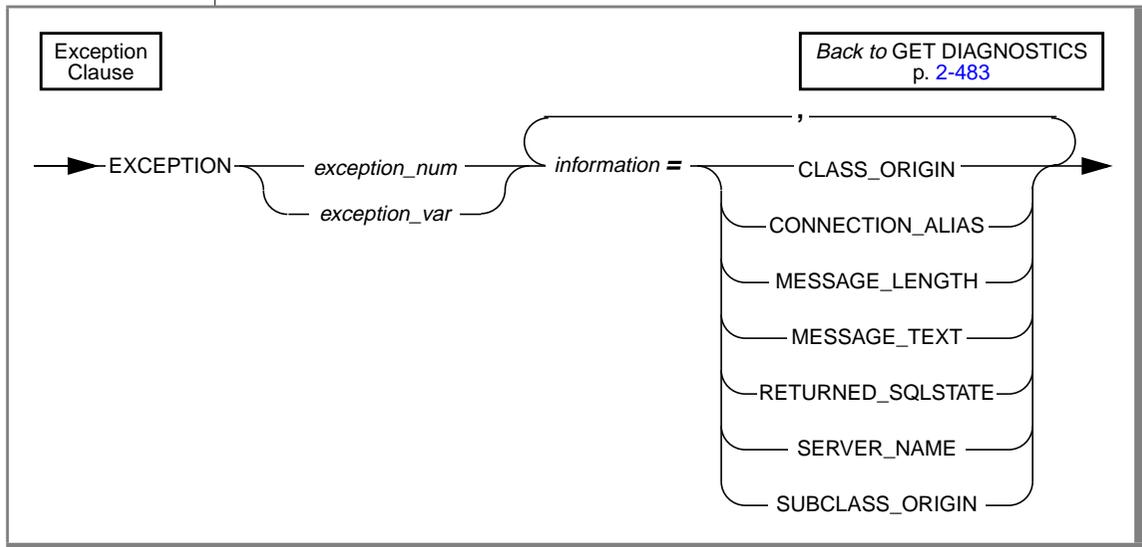
Use the NUMBER keyword to count the number of exceptions that the most recently executed SQL statement placed into the diagnostics area. The NUMBER field can hold a value from 1 to 35,000, depending on how many exceptions are counted.

Using the ROW_COUNT Keyword

Use the ROW_COUNT keyword to count the number of rows the most recently executed statement processed. ROW_COUNT counts the following number of rows:

- Inserted into a table
- Updated in a table
- Deleted from a table

EXCEPTION Clause



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>exception_num</i>	Literal integer value that specifies the exception number for a GET DIAGNOSTICS statement The <i>exception_num</i> literal indicates one of the exception values from the number of exceptions returned by the NUMBER field in the Statement clause.	Integer value is limited to a range from 1 to 35,000.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>exception_var</i>	Host variable that specifies an exception number for a GET DIAGNOSTICS statement	Variable must contain an integer value limited to a range from 1 to 35,000. Variable data type must be INT or SMALLINT.	Variable name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>information</i>	Host variable that receives EXCEPTION information about the most recent SQL statement Receives information for a specified exception field name.	Data type must match that of the requested field.	Variable name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

When retrieving exception information, GET DIAGNOSTICS deposits the values of each of the seven fields into corresponding host variables. These fields are located in the diagnostics area and are derived from an exception raised by the most recent SQL statement.

The host-variable data type must be the same as that of the requested field. The seven exception information fields are represented by the keywords described in the following table.

Field Name Keyword	Field Data Type	Field Contents	ESQL/C Host Variable Data Type
RETURNED_SQLSTATE	Character	SQLSTATE value	char[6]
CLASS_ORIGIN	Character	String	char[255]
SUBCLASS_ORIGIN	Character	String	char[255]
MESSAGE_TEXT	Character	String	char[255]
MESSAGE_LENGTH	Integer	Numeric value	int
SERVER_NAME	Character	String	char[255]
CONNECTION_NAME	Character	String	char[255]

The application specifies the exception by number, using either an unsigned integer or an integer host variable (an exact numeric with a scale of 0). An exception with a value of 1 corresponds to the **SQLSTATE** value set by the most recent SQL statement other than GET DIAGNOSTICS. The association between other exception numbers and other exceptions raised by that SQL statement is undefined. Thus, no set order exists in which the diagnostic area can be filled with exception values. You always get at least one exception, even if the **SQLSTATE** value indicates success.

If an error occurs within the GET DIAGNOSTICS statement (that is, if an illegal exception number is requested), the Informix internal **SQLCODE** and **SQLSTATE** variables are set to the value of that exception. In addition, the GET DIAGNOSTICS fields are undefined.

Using the RETURNED_SQLSTATE Keyword

Use the RETURNED_SQLSTATE keyword to determine the SQLSTATE value that describes the exception.

Using the CLASS_ORIGIN Keyword

Use the CLASS_ORIGIN keyword to retrieve the class portion of the RETURNED_SQLSTATE value. If the International Standards Organization (ISO) standard defines the class, the value of CLASS_ORIGIN is equal to ISO 9075. Otherwise, the value of CLASS_ORIGIN is defined by Informix and cannot be ISO 9075. ANSI SQL and ISO SQL are synonymous.

Using the SUBCLASS_ORIGIN Keyword

Use the SUBCLASS_ORIGIN keyword to define the source of the subclass portion of the RETURNED_SQLSTATE value. If the ISO international standard defines the subclass, the value of SUBCLASS_ORIGIN is equal to ISO 9075.

Using the MESSAGE_TEXT Keyword

Use the MESSAGE_TEXT keyword to determine the message text of the exception (for example, an error message).

Using the MESSAGE_LENGTH Keyword

Use the MESSAGE_LENGTH keyword to determine the length of the current MESSAGE_TEXT string.

Using the SERVER_NAME Keyword

Use the SERVER_NAME keyword to determine the name of the database server associated with the actions of a CONNECT or DATABASE statement.

When the SERVER_NAME Field Is Updated

The GET DIAGNOSTICS statement updates the **SERVER_NAME** field when the following situations occur:

- a CONNECT statement successfully executes.
- a SET CONNECTION statement successfully executes.
- a DISCONNECT statement successfully executes at the current connection.
- a DISCONNECT ALL statement fails.

When the SERVER_NAME Field Is Not Updated

The **SERVER_NAME** field is not updated when:

- a CONNECT statement fails.
- a DISCONNECT statement fails (this does not include the DISCONNECT ALL statement).
- a SET CONNECTION statement fails.

The **SERVER_NAME** field retains the value set in the previous SQL statement. If any of the preceding conditions occur on the first SQL statement that executes, the **SERVER_NAME** field is blank.

The Contents of the SERVER_NAME Field

The **SERVER_NAME** field contains different information after you execute the following statements.

Executed Statement	SERVER_NAME Field Contents
CONNECT	Contains the name of the database server to which you connect or fail to connect Field is blank if you do not have a current connection or if you make a default connection.
SET CONNECTION	Contains the name of the database server to which you switch or fail to switch
DISCONNECT	Contains the name of the database server from which you disconnect or fail to disconnect If you disconnect and then you execute a DISCONNECT statement for a connection that is not current, the SERVER_NAME field remains unchanged.
DISCONNECT ALL	Sets the field to blank if the statement executes successfully If the statement does not execute successfully, the SERVER_NAME field contains the names of all the database servers from which you did not disconnect. However, this information does not mean that the connection still exists.

If the **CONNECT** statement is successful, the **SERVER_NAME** field is set to one of the following values:

- The **INFORMIXSERVER** value if the connection is to a default database server (that is, the **CONNECT** statement does not list a database server).
- The name of the specific database server if the connection is to a specific database server.

The DATABASE Statement

When you execute a DATABASE statement, the **SERVER_NAME** field contains the name of the server on which the database resides.

Using the CONNECTION_NAME Keyword

Use the CONNECTION_NAME keyword to specify a name for the connection used in your CONNECT or DATABASE statements.

When the CONNECTION_NAME Keyword Is Updated

GET DIAGNOSTICS updates the **CONNECTION_NAME** field when the following situations occur:

- a CONNECT statement successfully executes.
- a SET CONNECTION statement successfully executes.
- a DISCONNECT statement successfully executes at the current connection. GET DIAGNOSTICS fills the **CONNECTION_NAME** field with blanks because no current connection exists.
- a DISCONNECT ALL statement fails.

When CONNECTION_NAME Is Not Updated

The **CONNECTION_NAME** field is not updated when the following situations occur:

- a CONNECT statement fails.
- a DISCONNECT statement fails (this does not include the DISCONNECT ALL statement).
- a SET CONNECTION statement fails.

The **CONNECTION_NAME** field retains the value set in the previous SQL statement. If any of the preceding conditions occur on the first SQL statement that executes, the **CONNECTION_NAME** field is blank.

The Contents of the CONNECTION_NAME Field

The **CONNECTION_NAME** field contains different information after you execute the following statements.

Executed Statement	CONNECTION_NAME Field Contents
CONNECT	<p>Contains the name of the connection, specified in the CONNECT statement, to which you connect or fail to connect</p> <p>The field is blank if you do not have a current connection or if you make a default connection.</p>
SET CONNECTION	Contains the name of the connection, specified in the CONNECT statement, to which you switch or fail to switch
DISCONNECT	<p>Contains the name of the connection, specified in the CONNECT statement, from which you disconnect or fail to disconnect</p> <p>If you disconnect, and then you execute a DISCONNECT statement for a connection that is not current, the CONNECTION_NAME field remains unchanged.</p>
DISCONNECT ALL	<p>Contains no information if the statement executes successfully</p> <p>If the statement does not execute successfully, the CONNECTION_NAME field contains the names of all the connections, specified in your CONNECT statement, from which you did not disconnect. However, this information does not mean that the connection still exists.</p>

If the **CONNECT** is successful, the **CONNECTION_NAME** field is set to the following values:

- The name of the database environment as specified in the **CONNECT** statement if the **CONNECT** does not include the **AS** clause
- The name of the connection (identifier after the **AS** keyword) if the **CONNECT** includes the **AS** clause

DATABASE Statement

When you execute a DATABASE statement, the **CONNECTION_NAME** field is blank.

Using GET DIAGNOSTICS for Error Checking

The GET DIAGNOSTICS statement returns information held in various fields of the diagnostic area. For each field in the diagnostic area that you want to access, you must supply a host variable with a compatible data type.

The following example illustrates how to use the GET DIAGNOSTICS statement to display error information. The example shows an ESQ/L/C error display routine called **disp_sqlstate_err()**.

```

void disp_sqlstate_err()
{
    int j;

    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
        int exception_count;
        char overflow[2];
        int exception_num=1;
        char class_id[255];
        char subclass_id[255];
        char message[255];
        int messlen;
        char sqlstate_code[6];
        int i;
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    printf("-----");
    printf("-----\n");
    printf("SQLSTATE: %s\n", SQLSTATE);
    printf("SQLCODE: %d\n", SQLCODE);
    printf("\n");

    EXEC SQL get diagnostics :exception_count = NUMBER,
        :overflow = MORE;
    printf("EXCEPTIONS: Number=%d\t", exception_count);
    printf("More? %s\n", overflow);
    for (i = 1; i <= exception_count; i++)

```

```

{
EXEC SQL get diagnostics exception :i
      :sqlstate_code = RETURNED_SQLSTATE,
      :class_id = CLASS_ORIGIN, :subclass_id = SUBCLASS_ORIGIN,
      :message = MESSAGE_TEXT, :messlen = MESSAGE_LENGTH;
printf("-----\n");
printf("EXCEPTION %d: SQLSTATE=%s\n", i,
      sqlstate_code);
message[messlen-1] = '\0';
printf("MESSAGE TEXT: %s\n", message);

j = stleng(class_id);
while((class_id[j] == '\0') ||
      (class_id[j] == ' '))
  j--;
class_id[j+1] = '\0';
printf("CLASS ORIGIN: %s\n",class_id);

j = stleng(subclass_id);
while((subclass_id[j] == '\0') ||
      (subclass_id[j] == ' '))
  j--;
subclass_id[j+1] = '\0';
printf("SUBCLASS ORIGIN: %s\n",subclass_id);
}

printf("-----");
printf("-----\n");
}

```

Related Information

For a task-oriented discussion of error handling and the `SQLSTATE` variable, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

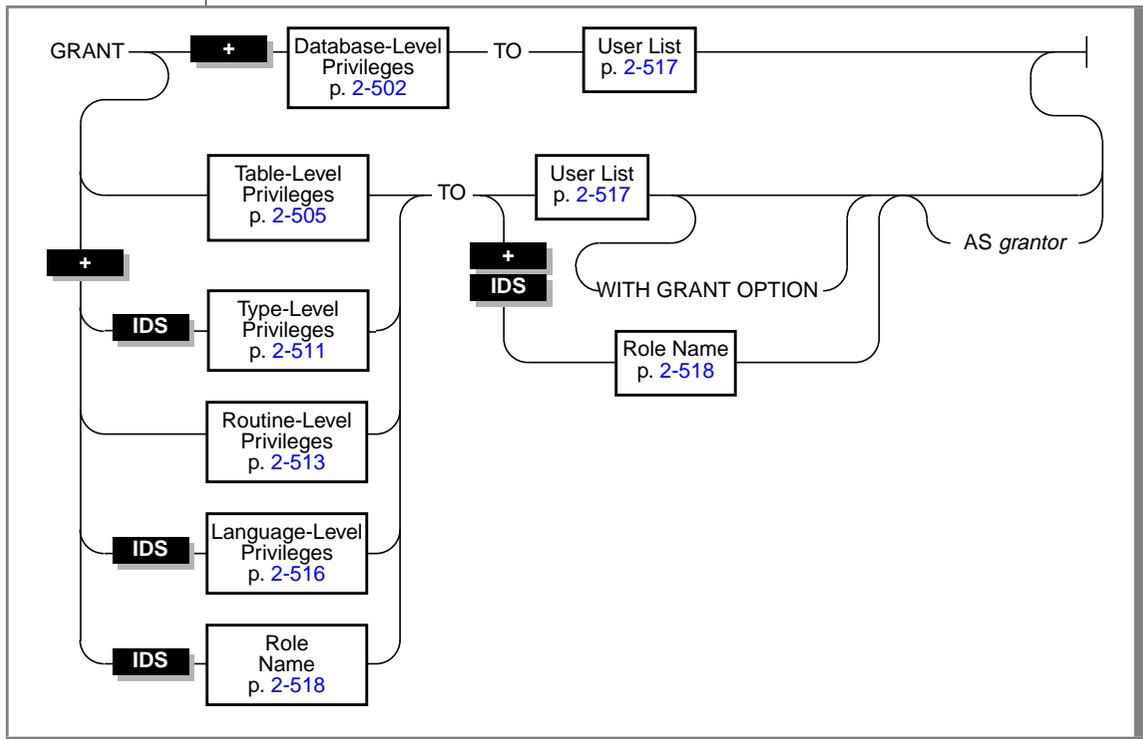
For a discussion of concepts related to the `GET DIAGNOSTICS` statement and the `SQLSTATE` variable, see the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

GRANT

Use the GRANT statement to:

- authorize others to use, develop, or administrate a database that you create.
- allow others to view, alter, or drop a table, synonym, or view that you create.
- allow others to use a data type or execute a user-defined routine (UDR) that you create.
- give a role name and its privileges to one or more users.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>grantor</i>	Name that identifies who can REVOKE the effects of the current GRANT By default, the login of the person who issues the GRANT statement identifies the grantor. To override the default, include the AS keyword followed by the login of your appointed grantor.	If you specify someone else as the grantor of the specified privilege, you cannot later revoke that privilege.	The name must conform to the conventions of your operating system.

Usage

The GRANT statement extends privileges to other users that would normally accrue only to the DBA or to the creator of an object. Later GRANT statements do not affect privileges already granted to a user.

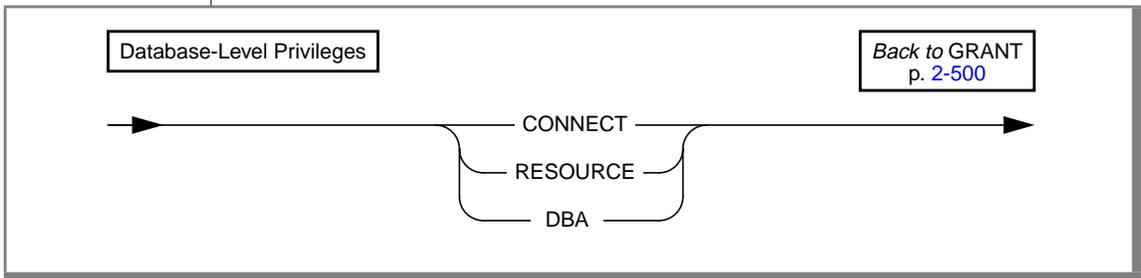
You can grant privileges to a previously created role. You can grant a role to individual users or to another role.

Privileges you grant remain in effect until you cancel them with a REVOKE statement. Only the grantor of a privilege can revoke that privilege. The grantor is normally the person who issues the GRANT statement. To transfer the right to revoke, name another user as grantor when you issue a GRANT statement.

The keyword PUBLIC extends a GRANT to all users. If you want to restrict privileges to a particular user that **public** already has, you must first revoke the right of **public** to those privileges.

When database-level privileges collide with table-level privileges, the more restrictive privileges take precedence.

Database-Level Privileges



When you create a database with the `CREATE DATABASE` statement, you are the owner. As the database owner, you automatically receive all database-level privileges. The database remains inaccessible to other users until you, as DBA, grant database privileges.

As database owner, you also automatically receive table-level privileges on all tables in the database. For more information about table-level privileges, see [“Table-Level Privileges” on page 2-505](#).

Database access levels are, from lowest to highest, Connect, Resource, and DBA. Use the corresponding keyword to grant a level of access privilege.

Privilege	Functions
CONNECT	<p>Lets you query and modify data. You can modify the database schema if you own the database object you want to modify. Any user with the Connect privilege can perform the following functions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Connect to the database with the CONNECT statement or another connection statement ■ Execute SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE statements, provided the user has the necessary table-level privileges ■ Create views, provided the user has the Select privilege on the underlying tables ■ Create synonyms ■ Create temporary tables and create indexes on the temporary tables ■ Alter or drop a table or an index, provided the user owns the table or index (or has Alter, Index, or References privileges on the table) ■ Grant privileges on a table or view, provided the user owns the table (or was given privileges on the table with the WITH GRANT OPTION keyword)
RESOURCE	<p>Lets you extend the structure of the database. In addition to the capabilities of the Connect privilege, the holder of the Resource privilege can perform the following functions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Create new tables ■ Create new indexes ■ Create new UDRs ■ Create new data types

(1 of 2)

Privilege	Functions
DBA	<p>Has all the capabilities of the Resource privilege and can perform the following functions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Grant any database-level privilege, including the DBA privilege, to another user ■ Grant any table-level privilege to another user ■ Grant any table-level privilege to a role ■ Grant a role to a user or to another role ■ Execute the SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION statement ■ Use the NEXT SIZE keywords to alter extent sizes in the system catalog ■ Insert, delete, or update rows of any system catalog table except systables ■ Drop any database object, regardless of its owner ■ Create tables, views, and indexes, and specify another user as owner of the database objects ■ Restrict the Execute privilege to DBAs when registering a UDR ■ Execute the DROP DATABASE statement ■ Execute the DROP DISTRIBUTIONS option of the UPDATE STATISTICS statement

(2 of 2)

User **informix** has the privilege required to alter tables in the system catalog, including the **systables** table.



Warning: Although the user **informix** and DBAs can modify most system catalog tables (only user **informix** can modify **systables**), Informix strongly recommends that you do not update, delete, or alter any rows in them. Modifying the system catalog tables can destroy the integrity of the database.

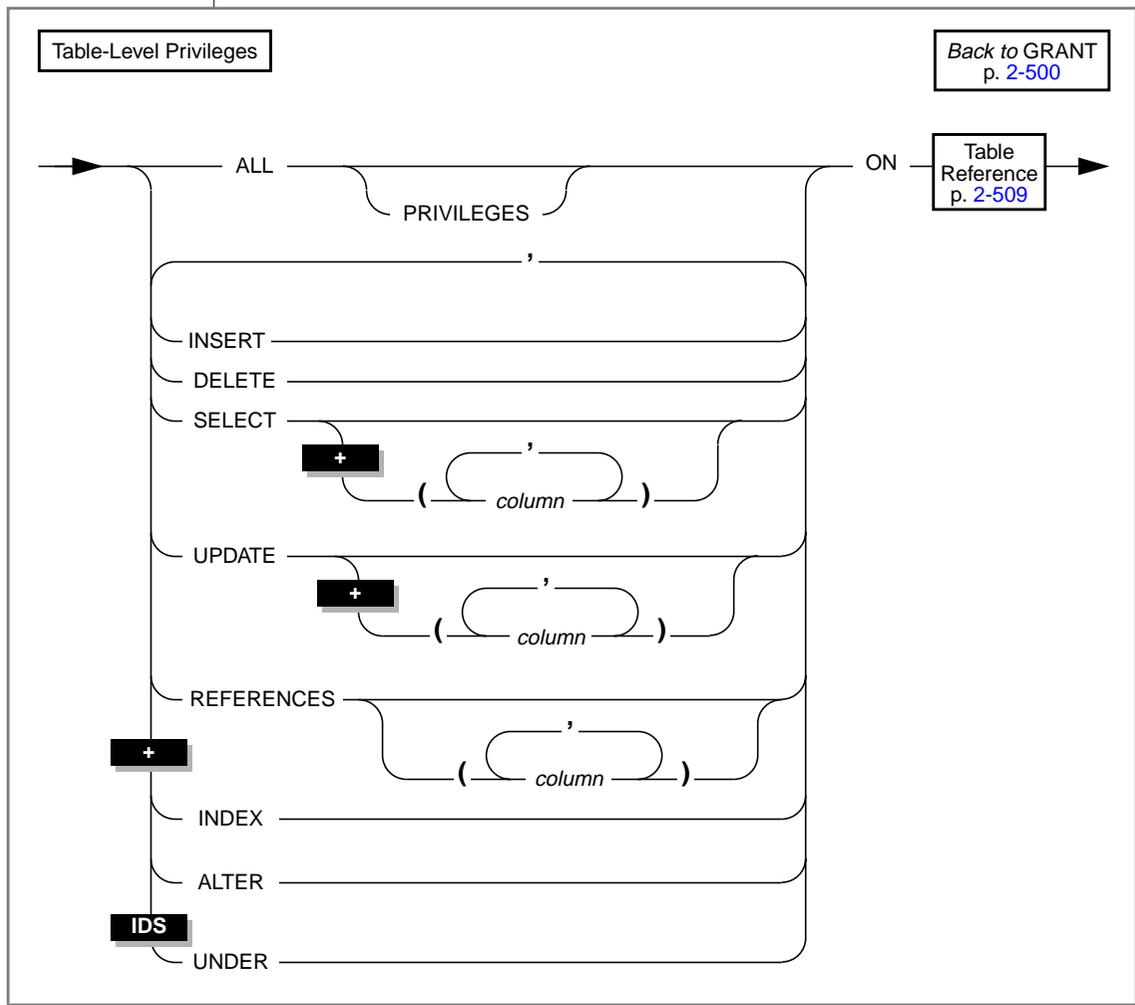
The following example uses the PUBLIC keyword to grant the Connect privilege on the currently active database to all users:

```
GRANT CONNECT TO PUBLIC
```

Table-Level Privileges

When you create a table with the `CREATE TABLE` statement, you are the table owner and automatically receive all table-level privileges. You cannot transfer table ownership to another user, but you can grant table-level privileges to another user or to a role.

A person with the database-level `DBA` privilege automatically receives all table-level privileges on every table in that database.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of the column or columns to which a Select, Update, or References privilege is granted If you omit <i>column name</i> , the privilege applies to all columns in the specified table.	The specified column or columns must exist.	Identifier, p. 4-205

The table that follows lists keywords for granting table-level privileges.

Privilege	Purpose
INSERT	Lets you insert rows
DELETE	Lets you delete rows
SELECT	Lets you name any column in SELECT statements You can restrict the Select privilege to one or more columns by listing them.
UPDATE	Lets you name any column in UPDATE statements You can restrict the Update privilege to one or more columns by listing them.
REFERENCES	Lets you reference columns in referential constraints You must have the Resource privilege to take advantage of the References privilege. (However, you can add a referential constraint during an ALTER TABLE statement. This action does not require that you have the Resource privilege on the database.) You can restrict the References privilege to one or more columns by listing them. You need only the References privilege to indicate cascading deletes. You do not need the Delete privilege to place cascading deletes on a table.
INDEX	Lets you create permanent indexes You must have Resource privilege to use the Index privilege. (Any user with the Connect privilege can create an index on temporary tables.)

(1 of 2)

Privilege	Purpose
ALTER	<p>Lets you add or delete columns, modify column data types, add or delete constraints, change the locking mode of the table from PAGE to ROW, or add or drop a corresponding row type name for your table.</p> <p>Also lets you set the database object mode of unique indexes and constraints to the enabled, disabled, or filtering mode. In addition, this privilege lets you set the database object mode of nonunique indexes and triggers to the enabled or disabled modes.</p> <p>You must have the Resource privilege to use the Alter privilege. In addition, you also need the Usage privilege for any user-defined type affected by the ALTER TABLE statement.</p>
UNDER (IDS only)	Lets you create subtables under a typed table.
ALL	<p>Provides all privileges</p> <p>The PRIVILEGES keyword is optional.</p>

(2 of 2)

You can narrow the scope of a Select, Update, or References privilege by naming the specific columns to which the privilege applies.

Specify keyword PUBLIC as *user* if you want a GRANT statement to apply to all users.

Examples

Some simple examples can help to illustrate how table-level privileges are granted with the GRANT statement.

Examples of Granting Delete, Select, and Update Privileges

The following statement grants the privilege to delete and select values in any column in the table **customer** to users **mary** and **john**. It also grants the Update privilege, but only for columns **customer_num**, **fname**, and **lname**.

```
GRANT DELETE, SELECT, UPDATE (customer_num, fname, lname)
ON customer TO mary, john
```

To grant the same privileges as those above to all authorized users, use the keyword **PUBLIC** as shown in the following example:

```
GRANT DELETE, SELECT, UPDATE (customer_num, fname, lname)
ON customer TO PUBLIC
```

Example of Granting the UNDER Privilege

Suppose a user named **mary** has created a typed table named **tab1**. By default, only user **mary** can create subtables under the **tab1** table. If **mary** wants to grant the ability to create subtables under the **tab1** table to a user named **john**, **mary** must enter the following GRANT statement:

```
GRANT UNDER ON tab1 TO john
```

After receiving the UNDER privilege on table **tab1**, user **john** can create one or more subtables under **tab1**.

Behavior of the ALL Keyword

The ALL keyword grants all table-level privileges to the specified user. If any or all of the table-level privileges do not exist for the grantor, the GRANT statement with the ALL keyword succeeds, but the following SQLSTATE warning is returned:

```
01007 - Privilege not granted.
```

For example, assume that the user **ted** has the Select and Insert privileges on the **customer** table with the authority to grant those privileges to other users. User **ted** wants to grant all table-level privileges to user **tania**. So user **ted** issues the following GRANT statement:

```
GRANT ALL ON customer TO tania
```

This statement executes successfully but returns SQLSTATE code 01007 for the following reasons:

- The statement succeeds in granting the Select and Insert privileges to user **tania** because user **ted** has those privileges and the right to grant those privileges to other users.
- The other privileges implied by the ALL keyword were not grantable by user **ted** and, therefore, were not granted to user **tania**.

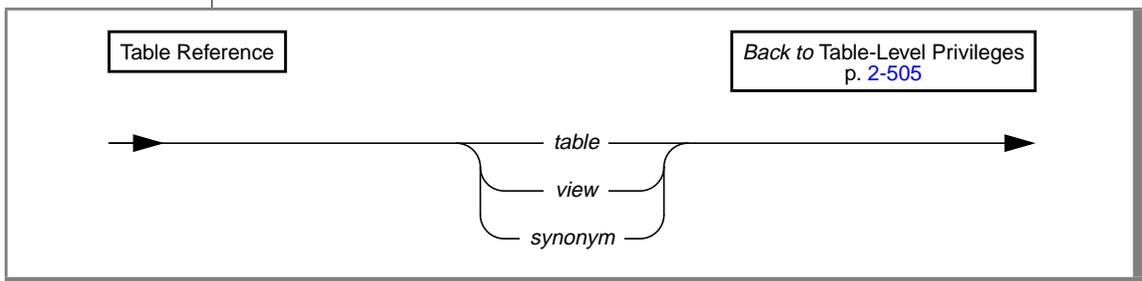
Effect of the All Keyword on the UNDER Privilege

If you grant all table-level privileges with the ALL keyword, the grant includes the Under privilege only if the table is a typed table. The grant of ALL privileges does not include the Under privilege if the table is not based on a row type.

If the table owner grants ALL privileges on a traditional relational table and later changes that table to a typed table, the table owner must explicitly grant the Under privilege to allow other users to create subtables under it.

Table Reference

You grant table-level privileges directly by referencing the table name or an existing synonym. You can also grant table-level privileges on a view.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>synonym</i>	Synonym for the table on which privileges are granted	The synonym must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Table on which privileges are granted	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>view</i>	View on which privileges are granted	The view must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

The table, view, or synonym on which you grant privileges must reside in the current database.

Privileges on Table Name and Synonym Name

Normally, when you create a table in a database that is *not* ANSI compliant, **public** receives Select, Insert, Delete, Under, and Update privileges for that table and its synonyms. (The **NODEFDAC** environment variable, when set to yes, prevents **public** from automatically receiving table-level privileges.)

To allow access to only certain users, explicitly revoke those privileges **public** automatically receives and then grant only those you want, as the following example shows:

```
REVOKE ALL ON customer FROM PUBLIC;  
GRANT ALL ON customer TO john, mary;  
GRANT SELECT (fname, lname, company, city)  
ON customer TO PUBLIC
```

ANSI

If you create a table in an ANSI-compliant database, only you, as table owner, have any table-level privileges until you explicitly grant privileges to others. ♦

As explained in the next section, “[Privileges on a View](#),” **public** does *not* automatically receive any privileges for a view that you create.

Privileges on a View

You must have at least the Select privilege on a table or columns to create a view on that table.

For views that reference only tables in the current database, if the owner of a view loses the Select privilege on any table underlying the view, the view is dropped.

You have the same privileges for the view that you have for the table or tables contributing data to the view. For example, if you create a view from a table to which you have only Select privileges, you can select data from your view but you cannot delete or update data.

For detailed information on how to create a view, see “[CREATE VIEW](#)” on [page 2-334](#).

When you create a view, only you have access to table data through that view. Even users who have privileges on the base table of the view do not automatically receive privileges for the view.

You can grant (or revoke) privileges on a view only if you are the owner of the underlying tables or if you received these privileges on the table with the right to grant them (the `WITH GRANT OPTION` keyword). You must explicitly grant those privileges within your authority; **public** does not automatically receive privileges on a view.

The creator of a view can explicitly grant Select, Insert, Delete, and Update privileges for the view to other users or to a role name. You cannot grant Index, Alter, Under, or References privileges on a view (or the All privilege because All includes Index, References, and Alter).

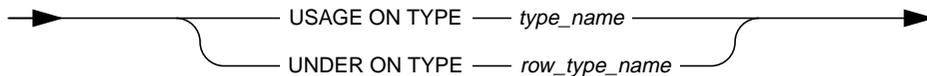
IDS

Type-Level Privileges

You can specify two privileges on data types:

- You can specify the Usage privilege on a user-defined data type.
- You can specify the Under privilege on a named-row type.

Type-Level Privileges

[Back to GRANT
p. 2-500](#)


Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>row_type_name</i>	Name of the named-row type on which the Under privilege is granted	The specified named-row type must exist.	Data Type, p. 4-53
<i>type_name</i>	The name of the user-defined data type on which the Usage privilege is granted	The specified data type must exist.	Data Type, p. 4-53

To find out what privileges exist on a particular type, check the **sysxdtypes** system catalog table for the owner name and the **sysxdtpeauth** system catalog table for additional type privileges that might have been granted. For more information on system catalog tables, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

USAGE Privilege

You own a user-defined data type that you create. As owner, you automatically receive the Usage privilege on that data type and can grant the Usage privilege to others so that they can reference the type name or reference data of that type in SQL statements. DBAs can also grant the Usage privilege for user-defined data types.

If you grant the Usage privilege to a user or role that has Alter privileges, that person can add a column to the table that contains data of your user-defined type.

Without a GRANT statement, any user can create SQL statements that contain built-in data types. By contrast, a user must receive an explicit Usage privilege from a GRANT statement to use a distinct data type, even if the distinct type is based on a built-in type.

For more information about user-defined types, see [“CREATE OPAQUE TYPE” on page 2-186](#), [“CREATE DISTINCT TYPE” on page 2-127](#), the discussion of data types in the *Informix Guide to SQL: Reference*, and the discussion of data types in the *Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation*.

UNDER Privilege

You own a named-row type that you create. If you want other users to be able to create subtypes under this named-row type, you must grant these users the Under privilege on your named-row type.

For example, suppose that you have created a row type named **rtype1**:

```
CREATE ROW TYPE rtype1
  (cola INT, colb INT)
```

If you want another user named **kathy** to be able to create a subtype under this named-row type, you must grant the Under privilege on this named-row type to user **kathy**:

```
GRANT UNDER on rtype1 to kathy
```

Now user **kathy** can create another row type under the **rtype1** row type even though **kathy** is not the owner of the **rtype1** row type:

```
CREATE ROW TYPE rtype2
  (colc INT, cold INT)
  UNDER rtype1
```

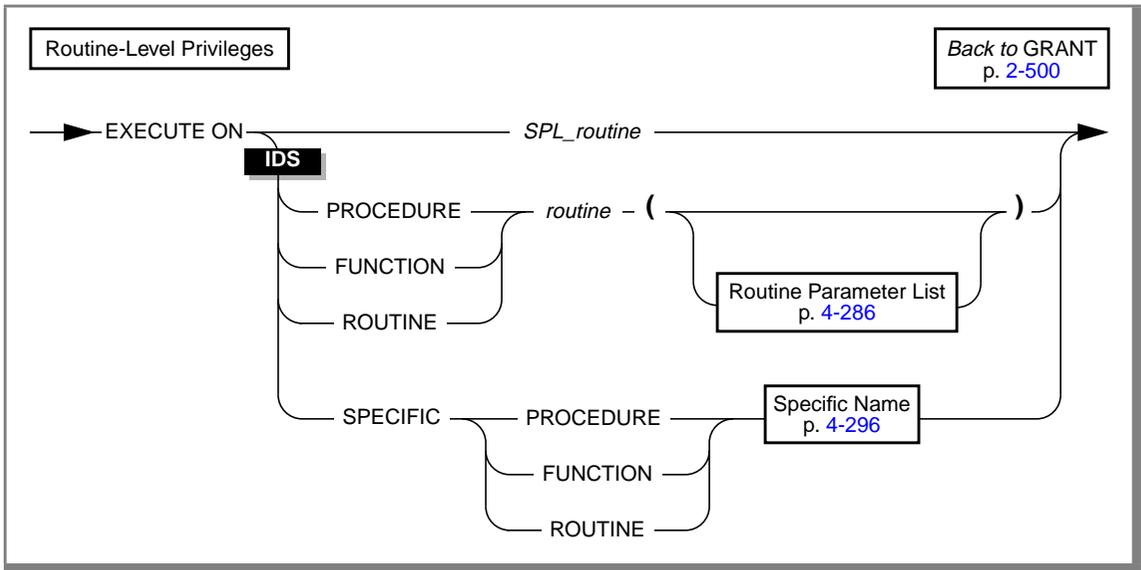
For more information about named-row types, see “[CREATE ROW TYPE](#)” on page 2-216, the discussion of data types in the *Informix Guide to SQL: Reference*, and the discussion of data types in the *Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation*.

Routine-Level Privileges

When you create a user-defined routine (UDR) with the CREATE FUNCTION or CREATE PROCEDURE statement, you own, and automatically receive the Execute privilege on that UDR.

The Execute privilege allows you to invoke the UDR with an EXECUTE FUNCTION or EXECUTE PROCEDURE statement, whichever is appropriate, or with a CALL statement in an SPL routine. The Execute privilege also allows you to use a user-defined function in an expression, as in the following example:

```
SELECT * FROM table WHERE in_stock(partnum) < 20
```



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>routine</i>	Name of a user-defined routine created with the CREATE FUNCTION or CREATE PROCEDURE statement	The identifier must refer to an existing user-defined routine. In an ANSI-compliant database, specify the owner as the prefix to the routine name.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>SPL_routine</i>	Name of an SPL routine that was created with the CREATE PROCEDURE statement	The SPL routine must exist. The SPL routine cannot be overloaded. That is, the name must be unique in the database.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

The requirement to grant the Execute privilege explicitly depends on the following conditions:

- If you have DBA-level privileges, you can use the DBA keyword of CREATE FUNCTION or CREATE PROCEDURE to restrict the default Execute privilege to users with the DBA database-level privilege. You must explicitly grant the Execute privilege on that UDR to users who do not have the DBA privilege.
- If you have the Resource database-level privilege, but not the DBA privilege, you cannot use the DBA keyword when you create a UDR:
 - When you create a UDR in a database that is *not* ANSI compliant, **public** can execute that UDR. You do not need to issue a GRANT statement for the Execute privilege.
 - The NODEFDAC environment variable, when set to *yes*, prevents **public** from executing your UDR until you explicitly grant the Execute privilege.
- In an ANSI-compliant database, the creator of a UDR must explicitly grant the Execute privilege on that UDR. ♦

ANSI

IDS

Because of routine overloading, you can grant the Execute privilege on more than one UDR at a time. The following table explains the purpose of the keywords that you specify.

KEYWORD	Purpose
SPECIFIC	Grants the Execute privilege for the UDR identified by <i>specific name</i>
FUNCTION	Grants the Execute privilege for all user-defined functions with the specified <i>routine name</i> (and parameter types that match <i>routine parameter list</i> , if supplied)
PROCEDURE	Grants the Execute privilege for all user-defined procedures with the specified <i>routine name</i> (and parameter types that match <i>routine parameter list</i> , if supplied)
ROUTINE	Grants the Execution privilege for all user-defined functions and all user-defined procedures with the specified <i>routine name</i> (and parameter types that match <i>routine parameter list</i> , if supplied)

If both a user-defined function and a user-defined procedure have the same name and list of parameter types, you can grant the Execute privilege to both with the keyword `ROUTINE`. To limit the Execute privilege to one version of the same routine name, use the `FUNCTION`, `PROCEDURE`, or `SPECIFIC` keyword.

To limit the Execute privilege to a UDR that accepts particular data types as arguments, include the routine parameter list or use the `SPECIFIC` keyword to introduce the specific name of a particular UDR.



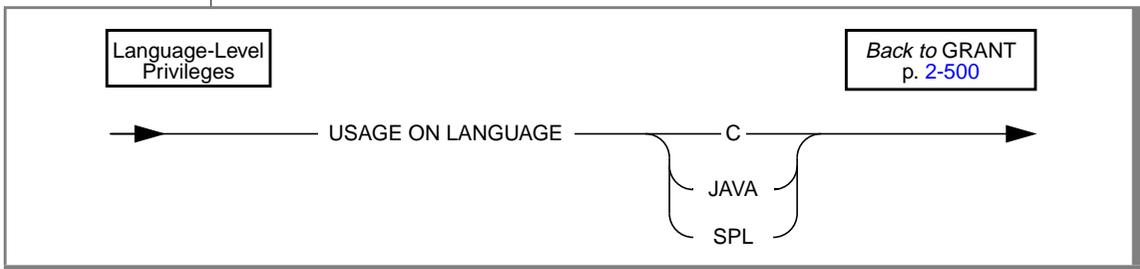
Tip: If an external function has a negator function, you must grant the Execute privilege on both the external function and its negator function before users can execute the external function.



IDS

Language-Level Privileges

A user must have the Usage privilege on a language to register a user-defined routine (UDR) that is written in that language.



When a user executes a `CREATE FUNCTION` or `CREATE PROCEDURE` statement to register a UDR, the database server verifies that the user has the Usage privilege on the language in which the UDR is written. For information on other privileges that these statements require, see [“CREATE FUNCTION” on page 2-146](#) and [“CREATE PROCEDURE” on page 2-199](#).

Usage Privilege on External Languages

Only user **informix** or a user who was granted the Usage privilege WITH GRANT OPTION can grant the Usage privilege on an external language to another user. If user **informix** grants the Usage privilege on an external language to the DBA WITH GRANT OPTION, the DBA can then grant the Usage privilege on the external language to another user.

In the following example, user **informix** grants the Usage privilege on both available external languages (C and Java) to user **joy**:

```
GRANT USAGE ON LANGUAGE C TO joy;
GRANT USAGE ON LANGUAGE JAVA TO joy;
```

Usage Privilege on the Stored Procedure Language

Only user **informix**, the DBA, or a user who was granted the Usage privilege WITH GRANT OPTION can grant the Usage privilege on the Stored Procedure Language (SPL) to another user.

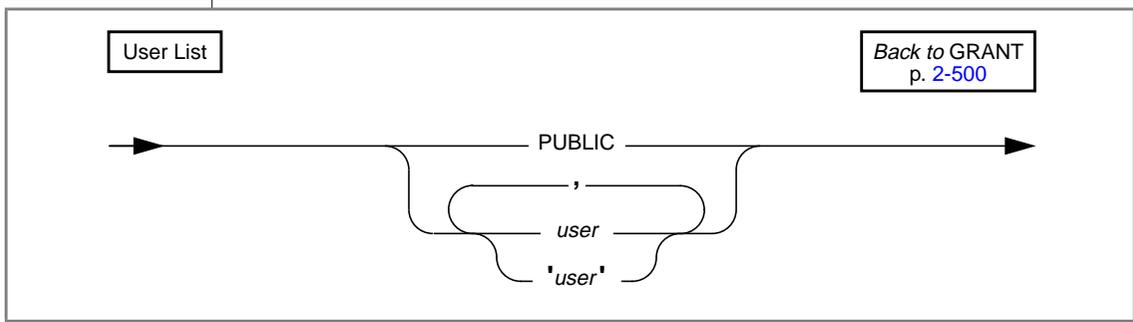
The Usage privilege on SPL is granted to PUBLIC by default.

In the following example, assume that the default Usage privilege on SPL was revoked from PUBLIC and the DBA wants to grant the Usage privilege on SPL to the role named **developers**:

```
GRANT USAGE ON LANGUAGE SPL TO developers
```

User List

You can grant privileges to an individual user or a list of users. You can also use the PUBLIC keyword to grant privileges to all users.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>user</i>	The login name to receive the role or privilege granted	Put quotes around user to ensure that the name of the user is stored exactly as you type it. Use the single keyword PUBLIC for user to grant a role or privilege to all authorized users.	The name must conform to the conventions of your operating system.

The following example grants the table-level privilege Insert on **table1** to the user named **mary** in a database that is not ANSI compliant:

```
GRANT INSERT ON table1 TO mary
```

ANSI

In an ANSI-compliant database, if you do not use quotes around *user*, the name of the user is stored in uppercase letters. ♦

IDS

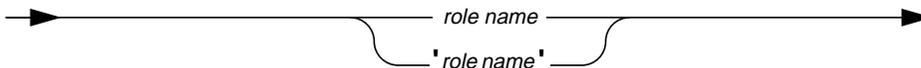
Role Name

You can identify one or more users by a name that describes their function, or *role*. You create the role, then grant the role to one or more users. You can also grant a role to another role.

After you create and grant a role, you can grant certain privileges to the one or more users associated with that role name.

Role Name

[Back to GRANT p. 2-500](#)



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>role name</i>	Name of the role that is granted, or the name of the role to which a privilege or another role is granted	The role must have been created with the CREATE ROLE statement. When a role name is enclosed in quotation marks, the role name is case sensitive.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Granting a Role to a User or Another Role

You must add a role name to the database before anyone can use that role name in a GRANT statement. For more information, see [“CREATE ROLE” on page 2-212](#).

A DBA has the authority to grant a new role to another user. If a user receives a role WITH GRANT OPTION, that user can grant the role to other users or to another role. Users keep a role granted to them until a REVOKE statement breaks the association between their login names and the role name.



Important: *CREATE ROLE and GRANT do not activate the role. A role has no effect until the SET ROLE statement enables it. A role grantor or a role grantee can issue the SET ROLE.*

The following example shows the sequence required to grant and activate the role **payables** to a group of employees who perform account payables functions. First the DBA creates role **payables**, then grants it to **maryf**.

```
CREATE ROLE payables;
GRANT payables TO maryf WITH GRANT OPTION
```

The DBA or **maryf** can activate the role with the following statement:

```
SET ROLE payables
```

User **maryf** has the WITH GRANT OPTION authorization to grant **payables** to other employees who pay accounts.

```
GRANT payables TO charly, gene, marvin, raoul
```

If you grant privileges for one role to another role, the recipient role has a combined set of privileges. The following example grants the role **petty_cash** to the role **payables**:

```
CREATE ROLE petty_cash;
SET ROLE petty_cash;
GRANT petty_cash TO payables
```

If you attempt to grant a role to itself, either directly or indirectly, the database server generates an error.

Granting a Privilege to a Role

You can grant table-, type-, and routine-level privileges to a role if you have the authority to grant these same privileges to login names or PUBLIC. A role cannot have database-level privileges.

When you grant a privilege to a role:

- you can specify the AS *grantor* clause
In this way, the people who have the role can revoke these same privileges. For more information, see [“AS grantor Clause” on page 2-521](#).
- you cannot include the WITH GRANT OPTION clause.
A role cannot, in turn, grant the same table-, type-, or routine-level privileges to another user.

The following example grants the table-level privilege Insert on the **supplier** table to the role **payables**:

```
GRANT INSERT ON supplier TO payables
```

Anyone granted the role of **payables** can now insert into **supplier**.

WITH GRANT OPTION Keywords

Using the WITH GRANT OPTION keyword conveys the specified privilege to *user* along with the right to grant those same privileges to other users. You create a chain of privileges that begins with you and extends to *user* as well as to whomever *user* conveys the right to grant privileges. If you use the WITH GRANT OPTION keyword, you can no longer control the dissemination of privileges.

If you revoke from *user* the privilege that you granted using the WITH GRANT OPTION keyword, you sever the chain of privileges. That is, when you revoke privileges from *user*, you automatically revoke the privileges of all users who received privileges from *user* or from the chain that *user* created (unless *user*, or the users who received privileges from *user*, were granted the same set of privileges by someone else). The following examples illustrate this situation. You, as the owner of the table **items**, issue the following statements to grant access to the user **mary**:

```
REVOKE ALL ON items FROM PUBLIC;
GRANT SELECT, UPDATE ON items TO mary WITH GRANT OPTION
```

The user **mary** uses her new privilege to grant users **cathy** and **paul** access to the table.

```
GRANT SELECT, UPDATE ON items TO cathy;  
GRANT SELECT ON items TO paul
```

Later you issue the following statement to cancel access privileges for the user **mary** on the **items** table:

```
REVOKE SELECT, UPDATE ON items FROM mary
```

This single statement effectively revokes all privileges on the **items** table from the users **mary**, **cathy**, and **paul**.

If you want to create a chain of privileges with another user as the source of the privilege, use the AS *grantor* clause.

AS grantor Clause

When you grant privileges, by default, you are the one who can revoke those privileges. The AS *grantor* clause lets you establish another user as the source of the privileges you are granting. When you use this clause, the login provided in the AS grantor clause replaces your login in the appropriate system catalog table.

You can use this clause only if you have the DBA privilege on the database.

Once you use this clause, only the specified *grantor* can REVOKE the effects of the current GRANT. Even a DBA cannot revoke a privilege unless that DBA is listed in the appropriate system catalog table as the source who granted the privilege.

The following example illustrates this situation. You are the DBA and you grant all privileges on the **items** table to the user **tom**, along with the right to grant all privileges:

```
REVOKE ALL ON items FROM PUBLIC;  
GRANT ALL ON items TO tom WITH GRANT OPTION
```

The following example illustrates a different situation. You also grant Select and Update privileges to the user **jim**, but you specify that the grant is made as the user **tom**. (The records of the database server show that the user **tom** is the grantor of the grant in the **systabauth** system catalog table, rather than you.)

```
GRANT SELECT, UPDATE ON items TO jim AS tom
```

Later, you decide to revoke privileges on the **items** table from the user **tom**, so you issue the following statement:

```
REVOKE ALL ON items FROM tom
```

When you try to revoke privileges from the user **jim** with a similar statement, however, the database server returns an error, as the following example shows:

```
REVOKE SELECT, UPDATE ON items FROM jim
```

```
580: Cannot revoke permission.
```

You get an error because the database server record shows the original grantor as the user **tom**, and you cannot revoke the privilege. Although you are the DBA, you cannot revoke a privilege that another user granted.

Related Information

Related statements: GRANT FRAGMENT, REVOKE, AND REVOKE FRAGMENT

For information about roles, see the following statements: CREATE ROLE, DROP ROLE, and SET ROLE.

In the [Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation](#), see the discussion of privileges.

For a discussion of how to embed GRANT and REVOKE statements in programs, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

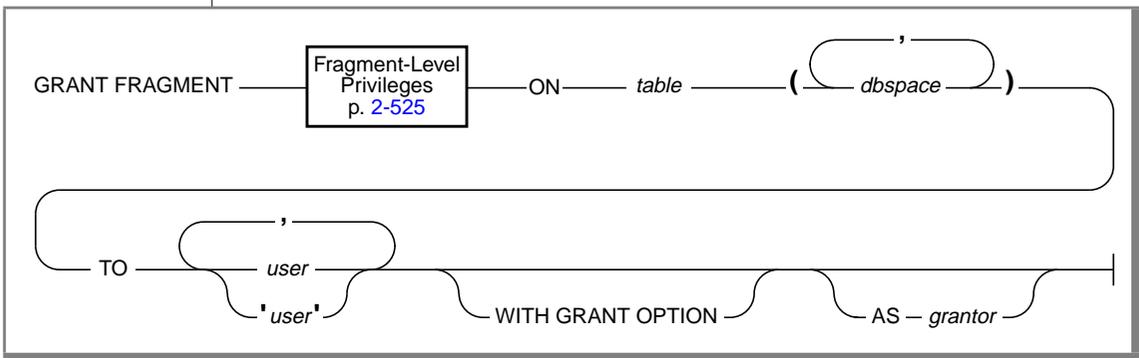
+

IDS

GRANT FRAGMENT

Use the GRANT FRAGMENT statement to grant Insert, Update, and Delete privileges on individual fragments of a fragmented table.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>dbspace</i>	Name of the dbspace where the fragment is stored Use this parameter to specify the fragment or fragments on which privileges are to be granted. No default value exists.	You must specify at least one dbspace. The specified dbspaces must exist.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>grantor</i>	Name of the user who is to be listed as the grantor of the specified privileges in the grantor column of the sysfragauth system catalog table The user who issues the GRANT FRAGMENT statement is the default grantor of the privileges.	The user specified in <i>grantor</i> must be a valid user.	The name must conform to the conventions of your operating system.

(1 of 2)

GRANT FRAGMENT

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>table</i>	Name of the table that contains the fragment or fragments on which privileges are to be granted No default value exists.	The specified table must exist and must be fragmented by expression.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>user</i>	Name of the user or users to whom the specified privileges are to be granted No default value exists.	If you enclose user in quotation marks, the name of the user is stored exactly as you typed it. In an ANSI-compliant database, the name of the user is stored as uppercase letters if you do not use quotes around user.	The name must conform to the conventions of your operating system.

(2 of 2)

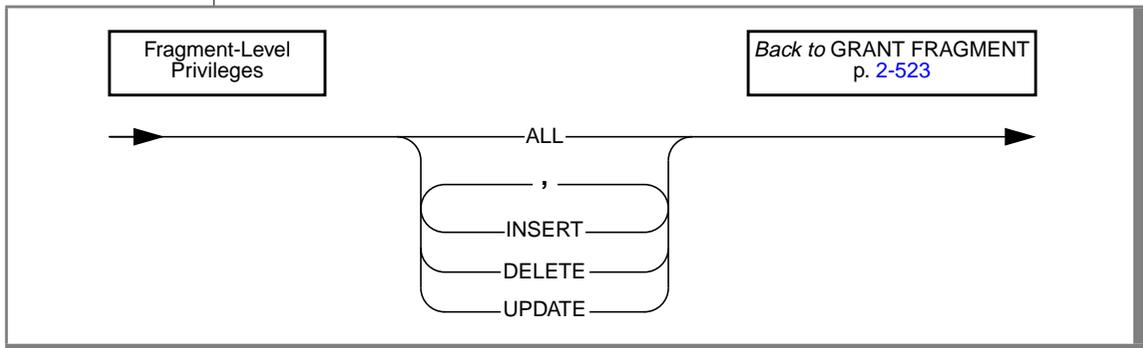
Usage

The GRANT FRAGMENT statement is similar to the GRANT statement. Both statements grant privileges to users. The difference between the two statements is that you use GRANT to grant privileges on a table while you use GRANT FRAGMENT to grant privileges on table fragments.

Use the GRANT FRAGMENT statement to grant the Insert, Update, or Delete privilege on one or more fragments of a table to one or more users.

The GRANT FRAGMENT statement is valid only for tables that are fragmented according to an expression-based distribution scheme. For an explanation of expression-based distribution schemes, see [“Syntax” on page 2-12](#).

Fragment-Level Privileges



The following table defines each of the fragment-level privileges.

Privilege	Purpose
ALL	Provides Insert, Delete, and Update privileges on a fragment
INSERT	Lets you insert rows in the fragment
DELETE	Lets you delete rows in the fragment
UPDATE	Lets you update rows in the fragment and to name any column of the table in an UPDATE statement

Definition of Fragment-Level Authority

When a fragmented table is created in an ANSI-compliant database, the table owner implicitly receives all table-level privileges on the new table, but no other users receive privileges.

When a fragmented table is created in a database that is not ANSI compliant, the table owner implicitly receives all table-level privileges on the new table, and other users (that is, PUBLIC) receive the following default set of privileges on the table: Select, Update, Insert, Delete, and Index. The privileges granted to PUBLIC are explicitly recorded in the **sysstabauth** system catalog table.

A user who has table privileges on a fragmented table has the privileges implicitly on all fragments of the table. These privileges are not recorded in the **sysfragauth** system catalog table.

Whether or not the database is ANSI compliant, you can use the GRANT FRAGMENT statement to grant explicit Insert, Update, and Delete privileges on one or more fragments of a table that is fragmented by expression. The privileges granted by the GRANT FRAGMENT statement are explicitly recorded in the **sysfragauth** system catalog table.

The Insert, Update, and Delete privileges that are conferred on table fragments by the GRANT FRAGMENT statement are collectively known as fragment-level privileges or fragment-level authority.

Role of Fragment-Level Authority in Command Validation

Fragment-level authority lets users execute INSERT, DELETE, and UPDATE statements on table fragments even if they lack Insert, Update, and Delete privileges on the table as a whole. Users who lack privileges at the table level can insert, delete, and update rows in authorized fragments because of the algorithm by which the database server validates commands. This algorithm consists of the following checks:

1. When a user executes an INSERT, DELETE, or UPDATE statement, the database server first checks whether the user has the table authority necessary for the operation attempted. If the table authority exists, the command continues processing.
2. If the table authority does not exist, the database server checks whether the table is fragmented by expression. If the table is not fragmented by expression, the database server returns an error to the user. This error indicates that the user does not have the privilege to execute the command.
3. If the table is fragmented by expression, the database server checks whether the user has the fragment authority necessary for the operation attempted. If the fragment authority exists, the command continues processing. If the fragment authority does not exist, the database server returns an error to the user. This error indicates that the user does not have the privilege to execute the command.

Duration of Fragment-Level Authority

The duration of fragment-level authority is tied to the duration of the fragmentation strategy for the table as a whole.

If you drop a fragmentation strategy by means of a DROP TABLE statement or the INIT, DROP, or DETACH clauses of an ALTER FRAGMENT statement, you also drop any authorities that exist for the affected fragments. Similarly, if you drop a dbspace, you also drop any authorities that exist for the fragment that resides in that dbspace.

Tables that are created as a result of a DETACH or INIT clause of an ALTER FRAGMENT statement do not keep the authorities that the former fragment or fragments had when they were part of the fragmented table. Instead, such tables assume the default table authorities.

If a table with fragment authorities defined on it is changed to a table with a round-robin strategy or some other expression strategy, the fragment authorities are also dropped, and the table assumes the default table authorities.

Granting Privileges on One Fragment or a List of Fragments

You can grant fragment-level privileges on one fragment of a table or on a list of fragments.

Granting Privileges on One Fragment

The following statement grants the Insert, Update, and Delete privileges on the fragment of the **customer** table in **dbbsp1** to the user **larry**:

```
GRANT FRAGMENT ALL ON customer (dbbsp1) TO larry
```

Granting Privileges on More Than One Fragment

The following statement grants the Insert, Update, and Delete privileges on the fragments of the **customer** table in **dbbsp1** and **dbbsp2** to the user **millie**:

```
GRANT FRAGMENT ALL ON customer (dbbsp1, dbbsp2) TO millie
```

Granting Privileges on All Fragments of a Table

If you want to grant privileges on all fragments of a table to the same user or users, you can use the GRANT statement instead of the GRANT FRAGMENT statement. However, you can also use the GRANT FRAGMENT statement for this purpose.

Assume that the **customer** table is fragmented by expression into three fragments, and these fragments reside in the dbspaces named **dbsp1**, **dbsp2**, and **dbsp3**. You can use either of the following statements to grant the Insert privilege on all fragments of the table to the user **helen**:

```
GRANT FRAGMENT INSERT ON customer (dbsp1, dbsp2, dbsp3)
TO helen;
```

```
GRANT INSERT ON customer TO helen;
```

Granting Privileges to One User or a List of Users

You can grant fragment-level privileges to a single user or to a list of users.

Granting Privileges to One User

The following statement grants the Insert, Update, and Delete privileges on the fragment of the **customer** table in **dbsp3** to the user **oswald**:

```
GRANT FRAGMENT ALL ON customer (dbsp3) TO oswald
```

Granting Privileges to a List of Users

The following statement grants the Insert, Update, and Delete privileges on the fragment of the **customer** table in **dbsp3** to the users **jerome** and **hilda**:

```
GRANT FRAGMENT ALL ON customer (dbsp3) TO jerome, hilda
```

Granting One Privilege or a List of Privileges

When you specify fragment-level privileges in a GRANT FRAGMENT statement, you can specify one privilege, a list of privileges, or all privileges.

Granting One Privilege

The following statement grants the Update privilege on the fragment of the **customer** table in **dbsp1** to the user **ed**:

```
GRANT FRAGMENT UPDATE ON customer (dbsp1) TO ed
```

Granting a List of Privileges

The following statement grants the Update and Insert privileges on the fragment of the **customer** table in **dbsp1** to the user **susan**:

```
GRANT FRAGMENT UPDATE, INSERT ON customer (dbsp1) TO susan
```

Granting All Privileges

The following statement grants the Insert, Update, and Delete privileges on the fragment of the **customer** table in **dbsp1** to the user **harry**:

```
GRANT FRAGMENT ALL ON customer (dbsp1) TO harry
```

WITH GRANT OPTION Clause

By including the WITH GRANT OPTION clause in the GRANT FRAGMENT statement, you convey the specified fragment-level privileges to a user and the right to grant those same privileges to other users.

The following statement grants the Update privilege on the fragment of the **customer** table in **dbsp3** to the user **george** and gives this user the right to grant the Update privilege on the same fragment to other users:

```
GRANT FRAGMENT UPDATE ON customer (dbsp3) TO george
  WITH GRANT OPTION
```

AS grantor Clause

The AS *grantor* clause is optional in a GRANT FRAGMENT statement. Use this clause to specify the grantor of the privilege.

Including the AS grantor Clause

When you include the AS *grantor* clause in the GRANT FRAGMENT statement, you specify that the user who is named as *grantor* is listed as the grantor of the privilege in the **grantor** column of the **sysfragauth** system catalog table.

In the following example, the DBA grants the Delete privilege on the fragment of the **customer** table in **dbsp3** to the user **martha**. In the GRANT FRAGMENT statement, the DBA uses the AS *grantor* clause to specify that the user **jack** is listed as the grantor of the privilege in the **sysfragauth** system catalog table.

```
GRANT FRAGMENT DELETE ON customer (dbsp3) TO martha AS jack
```

Omitting the AS grantor Clause

When a GRANT FRAGMENT statement does not include the AS *grantor* clause, the user who issues the statement is the default grantor of the privileges that are specified in the statement.

In the following example, the user grants the Update privilege on the fragment of the **customer** table in **dbsp3** to the user **fred**. Because this statement does not specify the AS *grantor* clause, the user who issues the statement is listed by default as the grantor of the privilege in the **sysfragauth** system catalog table.

```
GRANT FRAGMENT UPDATE ON customer (dbsp3) TO fred
```

Consequences of the AS grantor Clause

If you omit the AS *grantor* clause, or if you specify your own user name in the *grantor* parameter, you can later revoke the privilege that you granted to the specified user. However, if you specify someone other than yourself as the grantor of the specified privilege to the specified user, only that grantor can revoke the privilege from the user.

For example, if you grant the Delete privilege on the fragment of the **customer** table in **dbsp3** to user **martha** but specify user **jack** as the grantor of the privilege, user **jack** can revoke that privilege from user **martha**, but you cannot revoke that privilege from user **martha**.

Related Information

Related statements: GRANT and REVOKE FRAGMENT

For a discussion of fragment-level and table-level privileges, see the [Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation](#).

+

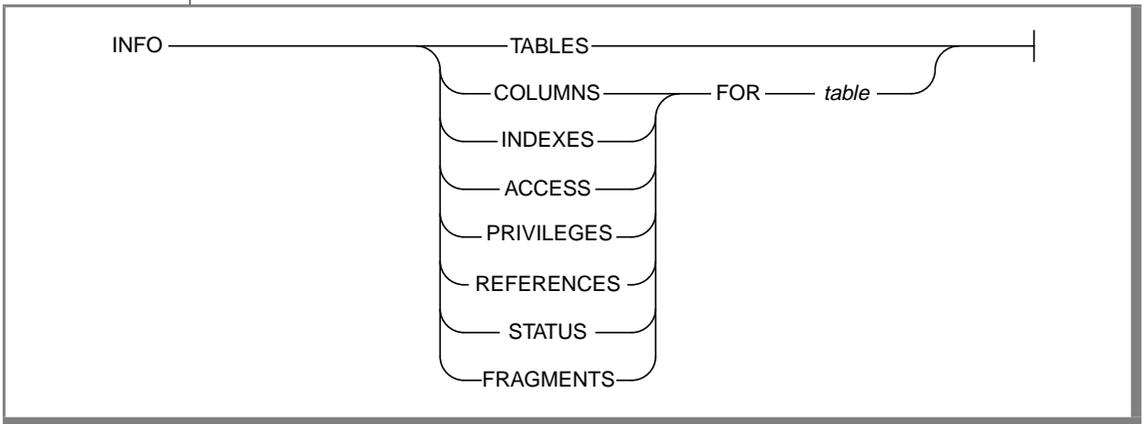
DB

INFO

Use the INFO statement to display a variety of information about databases and tables.

Use this statement with DB-Access.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>table</i>	Name of the table for which you want to find information	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

You can use the keywords of the INFO statement to display the following types of information.

INFO Keyword	Information Displayed
TABLES	Table names in the current database
COLUMNS	Column information for a specified table
INDEXES	Index information for a specified table
FRAGMENTS	Fragmentation strategy for a specified table
ACCESS	Access privileges for a specified table
PRIVILEGES	Access privileges for a specified table
REFERENCES	References privileges for the columns of a specified table
STATUS	Status information for a specified table

TABLES Keyword

Use the TABLES keyword to display a list of the tables in the current database. The TABLES keyword does not display the system catalog tables.

The name of a table can appear in one of the following ways:

- If you are the owner of the **cust_calls** table, it appears as **cust_calls**.
- If you are *not* the owner of the **cust_calls** table, the owner's name precedes the table name, such as **'june'.cust_calls**.

COLUMNS Keyword

Use the COLUMNS keyword to display the names and data types of the columns in a specified table and whether null values are allowed.

INDEXES Keyword

Use the INDEXES keyword to display the name, owner, and type of each index in a specified table, whether the index is clustered, and the names of the columns that are indexed.

FRAGMENTS Keyword

Use the FRAGMENTS keyword to display the dbspace names where fragments are located for a specified table. If the table is fragmented with an expression-based distribution scheme, the INFO statement also shows the expressions.

ACCESS Keyword

Use the ACCESS or PRIVILEGES keywords to display user-access privileges for a specified table.

REFERENCES Keyword

Use the REFERENCES keyword to display the References privilege for users for the columns of a specified table.

If you want information about database-level privileges, you must use a SELECT statement to access the **sysusers** system catalog table.

STATUS Keyword

Use the STATUS keyword to display information about the owner, row length, number of rows and columns, creation date, and status of audit trails for a specified table.

Related Information

Related statements: GRANT and REVOKE

For a description of the Info option on the SQL menu or the TABLE menu in DB-Access, see the [DB-Access User's Manual](#).

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of a column that receives a new column value, or a list of columns that receive new values If you specify a column list, values are inserted into columns in the order in which you list the columns. If you do not specify a column list, values are inserted into columns in the column order that was established when the table was created or last altered.	The number of columns you specify must equal the number of values supplied in the VALUES clause or by the SELECT statement, either implicitly or explicitly. If you omit a column from the column list, and the column does not have a default value associated with it, the database server places a null value in the column when the INSERT statement is executed.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>external_table</i>	Name of the external table on which you want to insert data	The external table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>field</i>	Name of a field of a named or unnamed row type	The row type must already be defined in the database.	“Field Definition” on page 2-220 and “Unnamed Row Types” on page 4-68
<i>position</i>	Position at which you want to insert an element in a LIST	The position can be a literal number or an SPL variable of type INT or SMALLINT.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>synonym</i>	Name of the synonym on which you want to insert data	The synonym and the table to which the synonym points must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of the table on which you want to insert data	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>view</i>	Name of the view on which you want to insert data	The view must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

To insert data into a table, you must either own the table or have the Insert privilege for the table (see [“GRANT” on page 2-500](#)). To insert data into a view, you must have the required Insert privilege, and the view must meet the requirements explained in [“Inserting Rows Through a View.”](#)

If you insert data into a table that has data integrity constraints associated with it, the inserted data must meet the constraint criteria. If it does not, the database server returns an error.

If you are using effective checking, and the checking mode is set to IMMEDIATE, all specified constraints are checked at the end of each INSERT statement. If the checking mode is set to DEFERRED, all specified constraints are *not* checked until the transaction is committed.

Specifying Columns

If you do not explicitly specify one or more columns, data is inserted into columns using the column order that was established when the table was created or last altered. The column order is listed in the **syscolumns** system catalog table.

E/C

In ESQL/C, you can use the DESCRIBE statement with an INSERT statement to determine the column order and the data type of the columns in a table. ♦

The number of columns specified in the INSERT INTO clause must equal the number of values supplied in the VALUES clause or by the SELECT statement, either implicitly or explicitly. If you specify columns, the columns receive data in the order in which you list them. The first value following the VALUES keyword is inserted into the first column listed, the second value is inserted into the second column listed, and so on.

E/C

Using the AT Clause

SPL

Use the AT clause to insert LIST elements at a specified position in a collection variable. By default, Dynamic Server adds a new element at the end of a LIST collection. If you specify a position that is greater than the number of elements in the list, the database server adds the element to the end of the list. You must specify a position value of at least 1 because the first element in the list is at position 1.

The following SPL example shows how you can insert a value at a specific position in a list:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE test3()

    DEFINE a_list LIST(SMALLINT NOT NULL);

    SELECT list_col INTO a_list FROM table1
        WHERE id = 201;
    INSERT AT 3 INTO TABLE(a_list) VALUES( 9 );

    UPDATE table1
        VALUES list_col = a_list
        WHERE id = 201;

END PROCEDURE;
```

Suppose that before this INSERT, **a_list** contained the elements {1, 8, 4, 5, 2}. After this INSERT, **a_list** contains the elements {1, 8, 9, 4, 5, 2}. The new element 9 was inserted at position 3 in the list. For more information on inserting values into collection variables, see [“Collection Derived Table” on page 4-9](#).

Inserting Rows Through a View

You can insert data through a *single-table* view if you have the Insert privilege on the view. To do this, the defining SELECT statement can select from only one table, and it cannot contain any of the following components:

- DISTINCT keyword
- GROUP BY clause
- Derived value (also referred to as a virtual column)
- Aggregate value

Columns in the underlying table that are unspecified in the view receive either a default value or a null value if no default is specified. If one of these columns does not specify a default value, and a null value is not allowed, the insert fails.

You can use data-integrity constraints to prevent users from inserting values into the underlying table that do not fit the view-defining SELECT statement. For further information, see [“WITH CHECK OPTION Keywords” on page 2-338](#).

If several users are entering sensitive information into a single table, the built-in `USER` function can limit their view to only the specific rows that each user inserted. The following example contains a view and an `INSERT` statement that achieve this effect:

```
CREATE VIEW salary_view AS
  SELECT lname, fname, current_salary
     FROM salary
     WHERE entered_by = USER

INSERT INTO salary
  VALUES ('Smith', 'Pat', 75000, USER)
```

E/C

Inserting Rows with a Cursor

In `ESQL/C`, if you associate a cursor with an `INSERT` statement, you must use the `OPEN`, `PUT`, and `CLOSE` statements to carry out the `INSERT` operation. For databases that have transactions but are not ANSI-compliant, you must issue these statements within a transaction.

If you are using a cursor that is associated with an `INSERT` statement, the rows are buffered before they are written to the disk. The insert buffer is flushed under the following conditions:

- The buffer becomes full.
- A `FLUSH` statement executes.
- A `CLOSE` statement closes the cursor.
- In a database that is not ANSI-compliant, an `OPEN` statement implicitly closes and then reopens the cursor.
- A `COMMIT WORK` statement ends the transaction.

When the insert buffer is flushed, the client processor performs appropriate data conversion before it sends the rows to the database server. When the database server receives the buffer, it converts any user-defined data types and then begins to insert the rows one at a time into the database. If an error is encountered while the database server inserts the buffered rows into the database, any buffered rows that follow the last successfully inserted rows are discarded.

Inserting Rows into a Database Without Transactions

If you are inserting rows into a database without transactions, you must take explicit action to restore inserted rows after a failure. For example, if the INSERT statement fails after you insert some rows, the successfully inserted rows remain in the table. You cannot recover automatically from a failed insert.

Inserting Rows into a Database with Transactions

If you are inserting rows into a database with transactions, and you are using explicit transactions, use the ROLLBACK WORK statement to undo the insertion. If you do not execute BEGIN WORK before the insert, and the insert fails, the database server automatically rolls back any database modifications made since the beginning of the insert.

ANSI

If you are inserting rows into an ANSI-compliant database, transactions are implicit, and all database modifications take place within a transaction. In this case, if an INSERT statement fails, use the ROLLBACK WORK statement to undo the insertions.

If you are using an explicit transaction, and the update fails, the database server automatically undoes the effects of the update. ♦

XPS

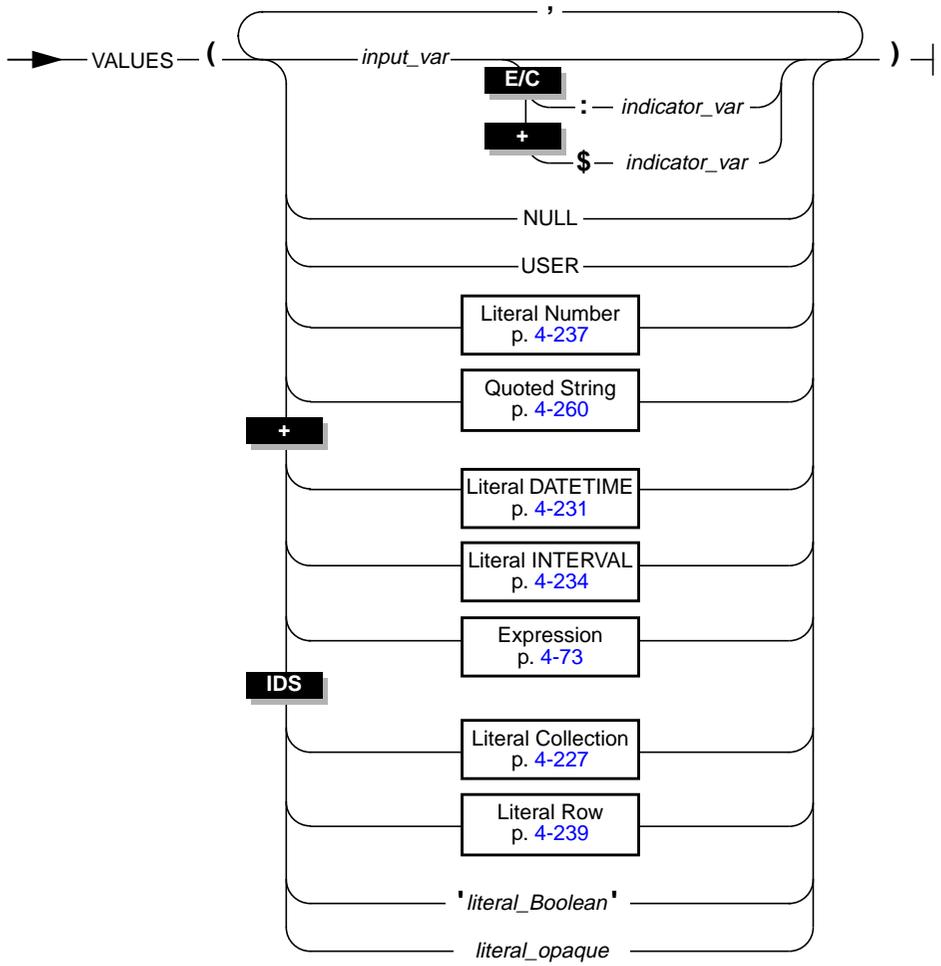
If you are using Extended Parallel Server, tables that you create with the RAW usage type are never logged. Thus, raw tables are not recoverable, even though the database uses logging. For information about raw tables, refer to the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#). ♦

Rows that you insert with a transaction remain locked until the end of the transaction. The end of a transaction is either a COMMIT WORK statement, where all modifications are made to the database, or a ROLLBACK WORK statement, where none of the modifications are made to the database. If many rows are affected by a *single* INSERT statement, you can exceed the maximum number of simultaneous locks permitted. To prevent this situation, either insert fewer rows per transaction or lock the page (or the entire table) before you execute the INSERT statement.

VALUES Clause

VALUES Clause

[Back to INSERT](#)
p. 2-535



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>indicator_var</i>	Program variable that indicates when an SQL statement in an ESQL/C program returns a null value to <i>input_var</i>	For restrictions that apply to indicator variables in ESQL/C, see the Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual .	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>input_var</i>	Host or program variable that specifies a value to be inserted into a column This variable can be a collection variable.	You can specify in <i>input_var</i> any other value option listed in the VALUES clause (NULL, Literal Number, and so on). If you specify a quoted string in <i>input_var</i> , the string can be longer than the 32-kilobyte maximum that applies to your specified quoted strings.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>literal_opaque</i> (IDS only)	Literal representation for an opaque data type	Must be a literal that is recognized by the input support function for the associated opaque type.	The literal representation is defined by the developer of the opaque type.
<i>literal_Boolean</i>	Literal representation of a Boolean value	A literal Boolean value can only be 't' (TRUE) or 'f' (FALSE) and must be specified as a quoted string.	Quoted String, p. 4-260

When you use the VALUES clause, you can insert only one row at a time. Each value that follows the VALUES keyword is assigned to the corresponding column listed in the INSERT INTO clause (or in column order if a list of columns is not specified).

If you are inserting a quoted string into a column, the maximum length of the string is 256 bytes. If you insert a quoted string that is longer than 256 bytes, the database server returns an error.

E/C

In ESQL/C, if you are using variables, you can insert quoted strings longer than 256 bytes into a table. ♦

For discussions on the keywords that you can use in the VALUES clause, refer to [“Constant Expressions” on page 4-108](#).

Considering Data Types

When you use the INSERT statement, the value that you insert into a column does not have to be of the same data type as the column that receives it. However, these two data types must be compatible. Two data types are compatible if the database server has some way to cast one data type to another. A *cast* is the mechanism by which the database server converts one data type to another.

The database server makes every effort to perform data conversion. If the data cannot be converted, the INSERT operation fails.

Data conversion also fails if the target data type cannot hold the value that is specified. For example, you cannot insert the integer 123456 into a column defined as a SMALLINT data type because this data type cannot hold a number that large.

For a summary of the casting that the database server provides, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#). For information on how to create a user-defined cast, see the CREATE CAST statement in this manual and [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

Inserting Values into Serial Columns

You can insert consecutive numbers, explicit values, or explicit values that reset the serial sequence value in a serial column:

- To insert a consecutive serial value
Specify a zero for the serial column in the INSERT statement. When a serial column is set to zero, the database server assigns the next highest value.
- To insert an explicit value
Specify the nonzero value after you first verify that the value does not duplicate one already in the table. If the serial column is uniquely indexed or has a unique constraint, and you try to insert a value that duplicates one already in the table, the database server returns an error.

If the value is greater than the current maximum value, you will create a gap in the sequence.

- To create a gap in the sequence (reset the serial value)

Specify a positive value that is greater than the current maximum value in the column.

As an alternative, you can use the MODIFY clause of the ALTER TABLE statement to reset the next value of a serial column. For more information, see [“Altering the Next Serial Number” on page 2-74](#).

Null values are not allowed in serial columns.

If you are inserting a serial value into a table that is part of a table hierarchy, the database server updates all tables in the hierarchy that contain the serial counter with the value that you insert (either a zero (0) for the next highest value or a specific number). ♦

IDS

IDS

Inserting Values into Opaque-Type Columns

Some opaque data types require special processing when they are inserted. For example, if an opaque data type contains spatial or multirepresentational data, it might provide a choice of how to store the data: inside the internal structure or, for very large objects, in a smart large object.

This processing is accomplished by calling a user-defined support function called **assign()**. When you execute the INSERT statement on a table whose rows contains one of these opaque types, the database server automatically invokes the **assign()** function for the type. The **assign()** function can make the decision of how to store the data. For more information about the **assign()** support function, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

IDS

Inserting Values into Collection Columns

You can use the VALUES clause to insert values into a collection column. For more information, see [“Collection Constructors” on page 4-118](#).

E/C

SPL

You can also use a collection variable to insert values into a collection column. With a collection variable you can insert one or more individual elements in a collection. For more information, see [“Collection Derived Table” on page 4-9](#). ♦

Regardless of what method you use to insert values into a collection column, you cannot insert null elements into the collection column. Thus expressions that you use cannot evaluate to null. If the collection that you are attempting to insert contains a null element, the database server returns an error.

Example

For example, suppose you define the **tab1** table as follows:

```
CREATE TABLE tab1
(
  int1 INTEGER,
  list1 LIST(ROW(a INTEGER, b CHAR(5)) NOT NULL),
  dec1 DECIMAL(5,2)
)
```

The following INSERT statement inserts a row into **tab1**:

```
INSERT INTO tab1 VALUES
(
  10,
  LIST{ROW(1, 'abcde'),
        ROW(POW(3,3), '=27'),
        ROW(ROUND(ROOT(126)), '=11')},
  100
)
```

The collection column, **list1**, in this example has three elements. Each element is an unnamed row type with an INTEGER field and a CHAR(5) field. The first element is composed of two literal values, an integer (1) and a quoted string (abcde). The second and third elements also use a quoted string to indicate the value for the second field. However, they each designate the value for the first field with an expression rather than a literal value.

Inserting Values into Row-Type Columns

You can use the VALUES clause to insert literal and nonliteral values in a named row type or unnamed row type column. For example, suppose you define the following named row type and table:

```
CREATE ROW TYPE address_t
(
    street CHAR(20),
    city CHAR(15),
    state CHAR(2),
    zipcode CHAR(9)
);

CREATE TABLE employee
(
    name ROW ( fname CHAR(20), lname CHAR(20)),
    address address_t
);
```

The following INSERT statement inserts *literal* values in the **name** and **address** columns of the **employee** table:

```
INSERT INTO employee VALUES
(
    ROW('John', 'Williams'),
    ROW('103 Baker St', 'Tracy', 'CA', 94060)::address_t
)
```

The INSERT statement uses ROW constructors to generate values for the **name** column (an unnamed row type) and the **address** column (a named row type). When you specify a value for a named row type, you must use the CAST AS keyword or the double colon (::) operator, in conjunction with the name of the named row type, to cast the value to the named row type.

For more information on the syntax for ROW constructors, see [“Constructor Expressions” on page 4-116](#) in the Expression segment. For information on literal values for named row types and unnamed row types, see [“Literal Row” on page 4-239](#).

You can use ESQL/C host variables to insert *non-literal* values as:

- an entire row type into a column.
Use a **row** variable as a variable name in the VALUES clause to insert values for all fields in a row column at one time.
- individual fields of a row type.
To insert nonliteral values in a row-type column, you can first insert the elements in a **row** variable and then specify the **collection** variable in the SET clause of an UPDATE statement.

When you use a row variable in the VALUES clause, the row variable must contain values for each field value. For information on how to insert values in a row variable, see [“Inserting into a Row Variable” on page 2-551](#). ♦

Using Expressions in the VALUES Clause

You can insert any type of expression except a column expression into a column. For example, you can insert built-in functions that return the current date, date and time, login name of the current user, or database server name where the current database resides.

The TODAY keyword returns the system date. The CURRENT keyword returns the system date and time. The USER keyword returns a string that contains the login account name of the current user. The SITENAME or DBSERVERNAME keyword returns the database server name where the current database resides. The following example shows how to use built-in functions to insert data:

```
INSERT INTO cust_calls (customer_num, call_dtime, user_id,
                       call_code, call_descr)
VALUES (212, CURRENT, USER, 'L', '2 days')
```

For more information, see [“Expression” on page 4-73](#).

Inserting Nulls with the VALUES Clause

When you execute an INSERT statement, a null value is inserted into any column for which you do not provide a value as well as for all columns that do not have default values associated with them, which are not listed explicitly. You also can use the NULL keyword to indicate that a column should be assigned a null value. The following example inserts values into three columns of the **orders** table:

```
INSERT INTO orders (orders_num, order_date, customer_num)
VALUES (0, NULL, 123)
```

In this example, a null value is explicitly entered in the **order_date** column, and all other columns of the **orders** table that are *not* explicitly listed in the INSERT INTO clause are also filled with null values.

Subset of SELECT Statement

As indicated in the diagram for “[INSERT](#)” on page 2-535, not all clauses and options of the SELECT statement are available for you to use in an INSERT statement.

The following SELECT clauses and options are not supported:

- FIRST
- INTO TEMP
- ORDER BY
- UNION ♦

For a complete description of SELECT syntax and usage, see “[SELECT](#)” on page 634.

If this statement has a WHERE clause that does not return rows, **sqlca** returns SQLNOTFOUND (100) for ANSI-compliant databases. In databases that are not ANSI compliant, **sqlca** returns (0). When you insert as a part of a multi-statement prepare, and no rows are inserted, **sqlca** returns SQLNOTFOUND (100) for both ANSI databases and databases that are not ANSI compliant.

IDS

If you are inserting values into a supertable in a table hierarchy, the subquery can reference a subtable.

If you are inserting values into a subtable in a table hierarchy, the subquery can reference the supertable if it references only the supertable. That is, the subquery must use the `SELECT...FROM ONLY (supertable)...` syntax. ♦

XPS

Using External Tables

In Extended Parallel Server, when you create a `SELECT` statement as a part of a load or unload operation that involves an external table, keep the following restrictions in mind:

- Only one external table is allowed in the `FROM` clause.
- The `SELECT` subquery cannot contain an `INTO` clause, but it can include any valid SQL expression.

When you move data from a database into an external table, the `SELECT` statement must define all columns in the external table. The `SELECT` statement must not contain a `FIRST`, `FOR UPDATE`, `INTO`, `INTO SCRATCH`, or `INTO TEMP` clause. However, you can use an `ORDER BY` clause to produce files that are ordered within themselves.

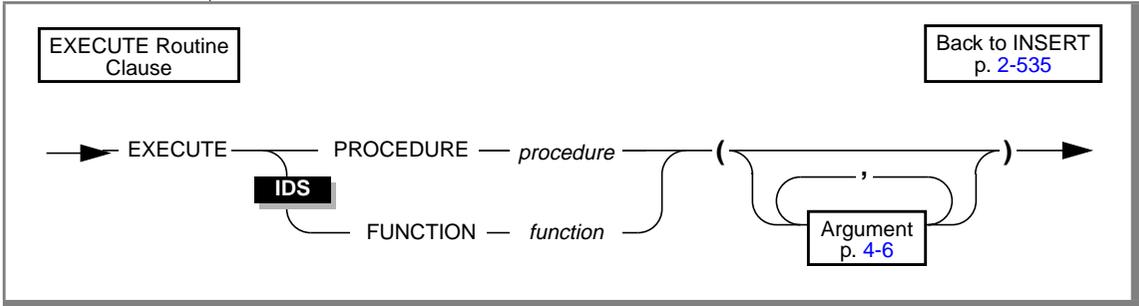
E/C

Using INSERT as a Dynamic Management Statement

In `ESQL/C`, you can use the `INSERT` statement to handle situations where you need to write code that can insert data whose structure is unknown at the time you compile. For more information, refer to the dynamic management section of the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

EXECUTE Routine Clause

You can specify the EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement to insert values that a user-defined function returns.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>function</i>	Name of the user-defined function to use to insert the data	The function must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>procedure</i>	Name of the user-defined procedure to use to insert the data	The procedure must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

When you use a user-defined function to insert column values, the return values of the function must have a one-to-one correspondence with the listed columns. That is, each value that the function returns must be of the data type expected by the corresponding column in the column list.

IDS

For backward compatibility, you can use the EXECUTE PROCEDURE keywords to execute an SPL function that was created with the CREATE PROCEDURE statement. ♦

If the called SPL routine scans or updates the target table of the insert, the database returns an error. That is, the SPL routine cannot select data from the table into which you are inserting rows.

If a called SPL routine contains certain SQL statements, the database server returns an error. For information on which SQL statements cannot be used in an SPL routine that is called within a data manipulation statement, see [“Restrictions on an SPL Routine Called in a Data Manipulation Statement” on page 4-302.](#)

SPL

Number of Allowed Return Values

An SPL function can return one or more values. Make sure that the number of values that the function returns matches the number of columns in the table or the number of columns that you list in the column list of the INSERT statement. The columns into which you insert the values must have compatible data types with the values that the SPL function returns. ♦

Ext

An external function can only return *one* value. Make sure that you specify only one column in the column list of the INSERT statement. This column must have a compatible data type with the value that the external function returns. The external function can be an iterator function. ♦

Example

The following example shows how to insert data into a temporary table called **result_tmp** in order to output to a file the results of a user-defined function (**f_one**) that returns multiple rows.

```
CREATE TEMP TABLE result_tmp( ... );
INSERT INTO result_tmp EXECUTE FUNCTION f_one();
UNLOAD TO 'file' SELECT * FROM foo_tmp;
```

IDS

E/C

SPL

Inserting into a Row Variable

The INSERT statement does not support a row variable in the Collection Derived Table segment. However, you can use the UPDATE statement to insert new field values into a row variable. For example, the following ESQ/L/C code fragment inserts a new row into the **rectangles** table (which [“Inserting Values into Row-Type Columns”](#) on page 2-546 defines):

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
      row (x int, y int, length float, width float) myrect;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

...
EXEC SQL update table(:myrect)
      set x=7, y=3, length=6, width=2;
EXEC SQL insert into rectangles values (12, :myrect);
```

For more information, see [“Updating a Row Variable”](#) on page 2-832.

Related Information

Related statements: CLOSE, CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE, DECLARE, DESCRIBE, EXECUTE, FLUSH, FOREACH, OPEN, PREPARE, PUT, and SELECT

For a task-oriented discussion of inserting data into tables and for information on how to access row and collections with SPL variables, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For a discussion of the GLS aspects of the INSERT statement, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

For information on how to access row and collections with ESQL/C host variables, see the chapter on complex types in the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

+

DB

SQLE

LOAD

Use the LOAD statement to insert data from an operating-system file into an existing table or view.

Use this statement with DB-Access and the SQL Editor.

Syntax

```
LOAD FROM — 'filename' — INSERT INTO — table —
      DELIMITER — 'delimiter' — ( — column — )
```

The diagram shows the syntax of the LOAD statement with labels for its components: 'filename', DELIMITER, 'delimiter', table, view, synonym, and column.

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of a column or columns that receive data values from the load file during the load operation	You must specify the columns that receive data if you are not loading data into all columns. You must also specify columns if the order of the fields in the load file does not match the default order of the columns in the table (the order established when the table was created).	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>delimiter</i>	Quoted string that identifies the character to use to separate the data values in each line of the load file The default delimiter is the character set in the DBDELIMITER environment variable. If DBDELIMITER has not been set, the default delimiter is the pipe (|).	You cannot use any of the following characters as a delimiter: backslash (\), newline character (=CTRL-J), and hexadecimal numbers (0-9, a-f, A-F).	Quoted String, p. 4-260

(1 of 2)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>filename</i>	Quoted string that identifies the pathname and filename of the load file The load file contains the data to be loaded into the specified table or view. The default pathname for the load file is the current directory.	See “LOAD FROM File” on page 2-554 .	Pathname and filename must conform to the naming conventions of your operating system.
<i>synonym</i>	Name of the synonym for the table in which you want to insert data	The synonym and the table to which the synonym points must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of the table in which you want to insert data	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>view</i>	Name of the view in which you want to insert data	The view must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

(2 of 2)

Usage

The LOAD statement appends new rows to the table. It does not overwrite existing data.

You cannot add a row that has the same key as an existing row.

To use the LOAD statement, you must have Insert privileges for the table where you want to insert data. For information on database-level and table-level privileges, see the GRANT statement.

LOAD FROM File

The LOAD FROM file contains the data to add to a table. You can use the file that the UNLOAD statement creates as the LOAD FROM file.

If you do not include a list of columns in the INSERT INTO clause, the fields in the file must match the columns that are specified for the table in number, order, and data type.

Each line of the file must have the same number of fields. You must define field lengths that are less than or equal to the length that is specified for the corresponding column. Specify only values that can convert to the data type of the corresponding column. The following table indicates how the database server expects you to represent the data types in the LOAD FROM file (when you use the default locale, U.S. English).

Type of Data	Input Format
blank	One or more blank characters between delimiters. You can include leading blanks in fields that do not correspond to character columns.
Boolean	A 't' or 'T' indicates a TRUE value, and an 'f' or 'F' indicates a FALSE value.
collections	Collection must have its values surrounded by braces ({} and a field delimiter separating each element. For more information, see “Loading Complex Types” on page 2-559 .
datE	Character string in the following format: <i>mm/dd/year</i> . You must state the month as a two-digit number. You can use a two-digit number for the year if the year is in the 20th century. (You can specify another century algorithm with the DBCENTURY environment variable.) The value must be an actual date; for example, February 30 is illegal. You can use a different date format if you indicate this format with the GL_DATE or DBDATE environment variable. For more information about these environment variables, see the Informix Guide to GLS Functionality .
MONEY	Value that can include currency notation: a leading currency symbol (\$), a comma (,) as the thousands separator, and a period (.) as the decimal separator. You can use a different currency notation if you indicate this notation with the DBMONEY environment variable. For more information on this environment variable, see the Informix Guide to GLS Functionality .
NULL	Nothing between the delimiters.

(1 of 2)

Type of Data	Input Format
row types (named and unnamed)	<p>Row type must have its values surrounded by parentheses and a field delimiter separating each element.</p> <p>For more information, see “Loading Complex Types” on page 2-559.</p>
simple large objects (TEXT, BYTE)	<p>TEXT and BYTE columns are loaded directly from the LOAD TO file.</p> <p>For more information, see “Loading Simple Large Objects” on page 2-558.</p>
smart large objects (CLOB, BLOB)	<p>CLOB and BLOB columns are loaded from a separate operating-system file. The field for the CLOB or BLOB column in the LOAD FROM file contains the name of this separate file.</p> <p>For more information, see “Loading Smart Large Objects” on page 2-559.</p>
time	<p>Character string in the following format: <i>year-month-day hour:minute:second.fraction</i>.</p> <p>You cannot use type specification or qualifiers for DATETIME or INTERVAL values. The year must be a four-digit number, and the month must be a two-digit number. You can specify a different date and time format with the GL_DATETIME or DBTIME environment variable.</p> <p>For more information on these environment variables, see the Informix Guide to GLS Functionality.</p>
user-defined data formats (opaque types)	<p>Associated opaque type must have an import support function defined if special processing is required to copy the data in the LOAD FROM file to the internal format of the opaque type. An import binary support function might also be required if the data is in binary format.</p> <p>The data in the LOAD FROM file must correspond to the format that the import or importbinary support function expects.</p> <p>The associated opaque type must have an assign support function if special processing is required before the data is written in the database.</p> <p>For more information, see “Loading Opaque-Type Columns” on page 2-560.</p>

For more information on DB environment variables, refer to the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#). For more information on GL environment variables, refer to the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

If you are using a nondefault locale, the formats of DATE, DATETIME, MONEY, and numeric column values in the LOAD FROM file must be compatible with the formats that the locale supports for these data types. For more information, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#). ♦

The following example shows the contents of a hypothetical input file named **new_custs**:

```
0|Jeffery|Padgett|Wheel Thrills|3450 El Camino|Suite 10|Palo
Alto|CA|94306||
0|Linda|Lane|Palo Alto Bicycles|2344 University||Palo
Alto|CA|94301|(415)323-6440
```

This data file conveys the following information:

- Indicates a serial field by specifying a zero (0)
- Uses the pipe (|), the default delimiter
- Assigns null values to the **phone** field for the first row and the **address2** field for the second row. The null values are shown by two delimiters with nothing between them.

The following statement loads the values from the **new_custs** file into the **customer** table owned by **jason**:

```
LOAD FROM 'new_custs' INSERT INTO jason.customer
```

If you include any of the following special characters as part of the value of a field, you must precede the character with a backslash (\):

- Backslash
- Delimiter
- Newline character anywhere in the value of a VARCHAR or NVARCHAR column
- Newline character at end of a value for a TEXT value

Do not use the backslash character (\) as a field separator. It serves as an escape character to inform the LOAD statement that the next character is to be interpreted as part of the data.

Loading Character Data

The fields that correspond to character columns can contain more characters than the defined maximum allows for the field. The extra characters are ignored.

If you are loading files that contain VARCHAR data types, note the following information:

- If you give the LOAD statement data in which the character fields (including VARCHAR) are longer than the column size, the excess characters are disregarded.
- Use the backslash (\) to escape embedded delimiter and backslash characters in all character fields, including VARCHAR.
- Do not use the following characters as delimiting characters in the LOAD FROM file: 0 to 9, a to f, A to F, backslash, newline character.

Loading Simple Large Objects

The database server loads simple large objects (BYTE and TEXT columns) directly from the LOAD FROM file. Keep the following restrictions in mind when you load BYTE and TEXT data:

- You cannot have leading and trailing blanks in BYTE fields.
- Use the backslash (\) to escape embedded delimiter and backslash characters in TEXT fields.
- Data being loaded into a BYTE column must be in ASCII-hexadecimal form. BYTE columns cannot contain preceding blanks.
- Do not use the following characters as delimiting characters in the LOAD FROM file: 0 to 9, a to f, A to F, backslash, newline character.

For TEXT columns, the database server handles any required code-set conversions for the data. For more information, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#). ♦

IDS

If you are unloading files that contain simple-large-object data types, objects smaller than 10 kilobytes are stored temporarily in memory. You can adjust the 10-kilobyte setting to a larger setting with the **DBBLOBBUF** environment variable. Simple large objects that are larger than the default or the setting of the **DBBLOBBUF** environment variable are stored in a temporary file. For additional information about the **DBBLOBBUF** environment variable, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

Loading Smart Large Objects

The database server loads smart large objects (BLOB and CLOB columns) from a separate operating-system file on the client computer. For more information on the structure of this file, see “[Unloading Smart Large Objects](#)” on [page 2-809](#).

In a LOAD FROM file, a CLOB or BLOB column value appears as follows:

```
start_off,length,client_path
```

In this format, *start_off* is the starting offset (in hexadecimal) of the smart-large-object value within the client file, *length* is the length (in hexadecimal) of the BLOB or CLOB value, and *client_path* is the pathname for the client file. No spaces can appear between these values.

For example, to load a CLOB value that is 512 bytes long and is at offset 256 in the **/usr/apps/clob9ce7.318** file, the database server expects the CLOB value to appear as follows in the LOAD FROM file:

```
|100,200,/usr/apps/clob9ce7.318|
```

If the whole client file is to be loaded, a CLOB or BLOB column value appears as follows in the LOAD FROM file:

```
client_path
```

For example, to load a CLOB value that occupies the entire file **/usr/apps/clob9ce7.318**, the database server expects the CLOB value to appear as follows in the LOAD FROM file:

```
|/usr/apps/clob9ce7.318|
```

GLS

For CLOB columns, the database server handles any required code-set conversions for the data. For more information, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#). ♦

Loading Complex Types

In a LOAD FROM file, complex types appear as follows:

- Collections are introduced with the appropriate constructor (SET, MULTiset, or LIST), and their elements are enclosed in braces ({}) and separated with a comma, as follows:

```
constructor{val1 , val2 , ... }
```

For example, to load the SET values {1, 3, 4} into a column whose data type is SET(INTEGER NOT NULL), the corresponding field of the LOAD FROM file appears as:

```
|SET{1 , 3 , 4}|
```

- Row types (named and unnamed) are introduced with the ROW constructor and their fields are enclosed with parentheses and separated with a comma, as follows:

```
ROW( val1 , val2 , ... )
```

For example, to load the ROW values (1, 'abc'), the corresponding field of the LOAD FROM file appears as:

```
|ROW(1 , abc)|
```

Loading Opaque-Type Columns

Some opaque data types require special processing when they are inserted. For example, if an opaque data type contains spatial or multirepresentational data, it might provide a choice of how to store the data: inside the internal structure or, for very large objects, in a smart large object.

This processing is accomplished by calling a user-defined support function called **assign()**. When you execute the LOAD statement on a table whose rows contain one of these opaque types, the database server automatically invokes the **assign()** function for the type. The **assign()** function can make the decision of how to store the data. For more information about the **assign()** support function, see the [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#) manual.

DELIMITER Clause

Use the DELIMITER clause to specify the delimiter that separates the data contained in each column in a row in the input file. You can specify TAB (CTRL-I) or <blank> (= ASCII 32) as the delimiter symbol. You cannot use the following items as the delimiter symbol:

- Backslash (\)
- Newline character (CTRL-J)
- Hexadecimal numbers (0 to 9, a to f, A to F)

If you omit this clause, the database server checks the **DBDELIMITER** environment variable. For information about how to set the **DBDELIMITER** environment variable, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

If the **DBDELIMITER** environment variable has not been set, the default delimiter is the pipe (|).

The following example identifies the semicolon (;) as the delimiting character. The example uses Windows NT file-naming conventions.

```
LOAD FROM 'C:\data\loadfile' DELIMITER ';'
      INSERT INTO orders
```

INSERT INTO Clause

Use the INSERT INTO clause to specify the table, synonym, or view in which to load the new data. You must specify the column names only if one of the following conditions is true:

- You are not loading data into all columns.
- The input file does not match the default order of the columns (determined when the table was created).

The following example identifies the **price** and **discount** columns as the only columns in which to add data. The example uses Windows NT file-naming conventions.

```
LOAD FROM 'C:\tmp\prices' DELIMITER ','
      INSERT INTO norman.worktab(price,discount)
```

Related Information

Related statements: UNLOAD and INSERT

For a task-oriented discussion of the LOAD statement and other utilities for moving data, see the [Informix Migration Guide](#).

For a discussion of the GLS aspects of the LOAD statement, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

+

LOCK TABLE

Use the LOCK TABLE statement to control access to a table by other processes.

Syntax

```
LOCK TABLE table | synonym IN SHARE | EXCLUSIVE MODE
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>synonym</i>	Name of the synonym for the table to be locked	The synonym and the table to which the synonym points must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of the table to be locked	The table cannot be locked in exclusive mode by another process before you execute the LOCK TABLE statement. The table cannot be locked in share mode by another process before you execute a LOCK TABLE EXCLUSIVE statement.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

You can lock a table if you own the table or have the Select privilege on the table or on a column in the table, either from a direct grant or from a grant to PUBLIC. The LOCK TABLE statement fails if the table is already locked in exclusive mode by another process, or if an exclusive lock is attempted while another user has locked the table in share mode.

The SHARE keyword locks a table in shared mode. Shared mode allows other processes *read* access to the table but denies *write* access. Other processes cannot update or delete data if a table is locked in shared mode.

The EXCLUSIVE keyword locks a table in exclusive mode. Exclusive mode denies other processes both read and write access to the table.

Exclusive-mode locking automatically occurs when you execute the ALTER INDEX, ALTER TABLE, CREATE INDEX, DROP INDEX, RENAME COLUMN, RENAME TABLE, START VIOLATIONS TABLE, and STOP VIOLATIONS TABLE statements.

Databases with Transactions

If your database was created with transactions, the LOCK TABLE statement succeeds only if it executes within a transaction. You must issue a BEGIN WORK statement before you can execute a LOCK TABLE statement.

Transactions are implicit in an ANSI-compliant database. The LOCK TABLE statement succeeds whenever the specified table is not already locked by another process. ♦

The following guidelines apply to the use of the LOCK TABLE statement within transactions:

- You cannot lock system catalog tables.
- You cannot switch between shared and exclusive table locking within a transaction. For example, once you lock the table in shared mode, you cannot upgrade the lock mode to exclusive.
- If you issue a LOCK TABLE statement before you access a row in the table, no row locks are set for the table. In this way, you can override row-level locking and avoid exceeding the maximum number of locks that are defined in the database server configuration.
- All row and table locks release automatically after a transaction is completed. Note that the UNLOCK TABLE statement fails in a database that uses transactions.

The following example shows how to change the locking mode of a table in a database that was created with transaction logging:

```
BEGIN WORK
LOCK TABLE orders IN EXCLUSIVE MODE
...
COMMIT WORK
BEGIN WORK
LOCK TABLE orders IN SHARE MODE
...
COMMIT WORK
```

Databases Without Transactions

In a database that was created without transactions, table locks set by using the LOCK TABLE statement are released after any of the following occurrences:

- An UNLOCK TABLE statement executes.
- The user closes the database.
- The user exits the application.

To change the lock mode on a table, release the lock with the UNLOCK TABLE statement and then issue a new LOCK TABLE statement.

The following example shows how to change the lock mode of a table in a database that was created without transactions:

```
LOCK TABLE orders IN EXCLUSIVE MODE
.
.
UNLOCK TABLE orders
.
.
LOCK TABLE orders IN SHARE MODE
```

Related Information

Related statements: BEGIN WORK, COMMIT WORK, ROLLBACK WORK, SET ISOLATION, SET LOCK MODE, and UNLOCK TABLE

For a discussion of concurrency and locks, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

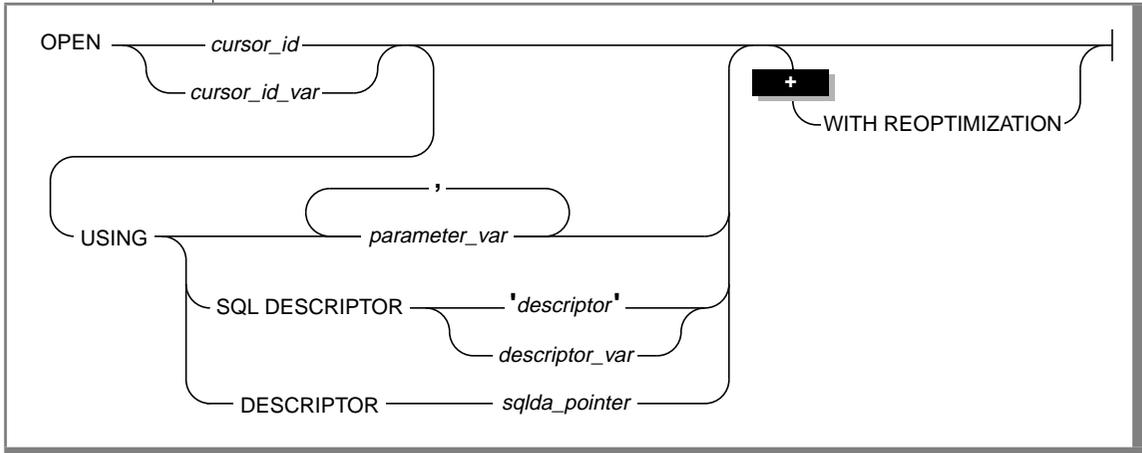
E/C

OPEN

Use the OPEN statement to activate a cursor.

Use this statement with ESQL/C.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>cursor_id</i>	Name of a cursor	Cursor must have been previously created by a DECLARE statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>cursor_id_var</i>	Host variable that holds the value of <i>cursor_id</i>	Host variable must be a character data type. Cursor must have been previously created by a DECLARE statement.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names
<i>descriptor</i>	Quoted string that identifies the system-descriptor area	System-descriptor area must already be allocated.	Quoted String, p. 4-260

(1 of 2)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>descriptor_var</i>	Host variable that identifies the system-descriptor area	System-descriptor area must already be allocated.	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>parameter_var</i>	Host variable whose contents replace a question-mark (?) placeholder in a prepared statement	Variable must be a character or collection data type.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>sqlda_pointer</i>	Pointer to an sqlda structure that defines the type and memory location of values that correspond to the question-mark (?) placeholder in a prepared statement	You cannot begin <i>sqlda_pointer</i> with a dollar sign (\$) or a colon (:). You must use an sqlda structure if you are using dynamic SQL statements.	DESCRIBE, p. 2-382

(2 of 2)

Usage

The OPEN statement activates the following types of cursors:

- A select cursor: a cursor that is associated with a SELECT statement
- A function cursor: a cursor that is associated with the EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement
- An insert cursor: a cursor that is associated with the INSERT statement
- A collection cursor: a select or insert cursor that operates on a collection variable ♦

The specific actions that the database server takes differ, depending on the statement with which the cursor is associated.

When you associate one of the previous statements with a cursor directly (that is, you do not prepare the statement and associate the statement identifier with the cursor) the OPEN statement implicitly prepares the statement.

In an ANSI-compliant database, you receive an error code if you try to open a cursor that is already open. ♦

IDS

ANSI

Opening a Select Cursor

When you open either a select cursor or an update cursor that is created with the `SELECT... FOR UPDATE` syntax, the `SELECT` statement is passed to the database server along with any values that are specified in the `USING` clause. The database server processes the query to the point of locating or constructing the first row of the active set.

Example of Opening a Select Cursor

The following example illustrates a simple `OPEN` statement in `ESQL/C`:

```
EXEC SQL declare s_curs cursor for
      select * from orders;
EXEC SQL open s_curs;
```

Opening an Update Cursor Inside a Transaction

If you are working in a database with explicit transactions, you must open an update cursor within a transaction. This requirement is waived if you declared the cursor using the `WITH HOLD` option.

Opening a Function Cursor

When you open a function cursor, the `EXECUTE FUNCTION` (or `EXECUTE PROCEDURE`) statement is passed to the database server along with any values that are specified in the `USING` Clause. The values in the `USING` Clause are passed as arguments to the user-defined function. This user-defined function must be declared to accept values. (If the statement was previously prepared, the statement was passed to the database server when it was prepared.) The database server executes the function to the point where it returns the first set of values.

Example of Opening a Function Cursor

The following example illustrates a simple `OPEN` statement in `ESQL/C`:

```
EXEC SQL declare s_curs cursor for
      execute function new_func(arg1,arg2)
      into :ret_val1, :ret_val2;
EXEC SQL open s_curs;
```

In Extended Parallel Server, to recreate this example use the `CREATE PROCEDURE` statement instead of the `CREATE FUNCTION` statement. ♦

Reopening a Select or Function Cursor

The database server evaluates the values that are named in the USING clause of the OPEN statement only when it opens the select or function cursor. While the cursor is open, subsequent changes to program variables in the USING clause do not change the active set of the cursor.

In an ANSI-compliant database, you receive an error code if you try to open a cursor that is already open. ♦

In a non-ANSI database, a subsequent OPEN statement closes the cursor and then reopens it. When the database server reopens the cursor, it creates a new active set that is based on the current values of the variables in the USING clause. If the program variables have changed since the previous OPEN statement, reopening the cursor can generate an entirely different active set.

Even if the values of the variables are unchanged, the values in the active set can be different, in the following situations:

- If the user-defined function takes a different execution path from the previous OPEN statement on a function cursor
- If data in the table was modified since the previous OPEN statement on a select cursor

The database server can process most queries dynamically. For these queries, the database server does not pre-fetch all rows when it opens the select or function cursor. Therefore, if other users are modifying the table at the same time that the cursor is being processed, the active set might reflect the results of these actions.

However, for some queries, the database server evaluates the entire active set when it opens the cursor. These queries include those with the following features:

- Queries that require sorting: those with an ORDER BY clause or with the DISTINCT or UNIQUE keyword
- Queries that require hashing: those with a join or with the GROUP BY clause

For these queries, any changes that other users make to the table while the cursor is being processed are not reflected in the active set.

Errors Associated with Select and Function Cursors

Because the database server is seeing the query for the first time, it might detect errors. In this case, the database server does not actually return the first row of data, but it sets a return code in the `sqlca.sqlcode`, `SQLCODE` field of the `sqlca`. The return code value is either negative or zero, as the following table describes.

Return Code Value	Purpose
Negative	Shows an error is detected in the SELECT statement
Zero	Shows the SELECT statement is valid

If the SELECT, SELECT...FOR UPDATE, EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement is valid, but no rows match its criteria, the first FETCH statement returns a value of 100 (SQLNOTFOUND), which means no rows were found.



Tip: When you encounter an `SQLCODE` error, a corresponding `SQLSTATE` error value also exists. For information about how to get the message text, check the `GET DIAGNOSTICS` statement.

Opening an Insert Cursor

When you open an insert cursor, the cursor passes the INSERT statement to the database server, which checks the validity of the keywords and column names. The database server also allocates memory for an insert buffer to hold new data. (See “[DECLARE](#)” on page 2-349.)

An OPEN statement for a cursor that is associated with an INSERT statement cannot include a USING clause.

Example of Opening an Insert Cursor

The following ESQL/C example illustrates an OPEN statement with an insert cursor:

```
EXEC SQL prepare s1 from
    'insert into manufact values ('npr', 'napier)';
EXEC SQL declare in_curs cursor for s1;
EXEC SQL open in_curs;
EXEC SQL put in_curs;
EXEC SQL close in_curs;
```

Reopening an Insert Cursor

When you reopen an insert cursor that is already open, you effectively flush the insert buffer; any rows that are stored in the insert buffer are written into the database table. The database server first closes the cursor, which causes the flush and then reopens the cursor. For information about how to check errors and count inserted rows, see [“Error Checking” on page 2-601](#).

ANSI

In an ANSI-compliant database, you receive an error code if you try to open a cursor that is already open. ♦

IDS

Opening a Collection Cursor

You can declare both select and insert cursors on collection variables. Such cursors are called collection cursors. You must use the OPEN statement to activate these cursors.

Use the name of a collection variable in the USING clause of the OPEN statement. For more information on the use of OPEN...USING with a collection variable, see [“Fetching From a Collection Cursor” on page 2-466](#) and [“Inserting into a Collection Cursor” on page 2-599](#).

USING Clause

The USING clause of the OPEN statement is required when the cursor is associated with a prepared statement that includes question-mark (?) placeholders, as follows:

- A SELECT statement that contains input parameters in its WHERE clause
- An EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement that contains input parameters as arguments of its user-defined function
- An INSERT statement that contains input parameters in its VALUES clause

You can supply values for these parameters in one of the following ways:

- You can specify one or more host variables
- You can specify a system-descriptor area
- You can specify a pointer to an `sqllda` structure

(For more information, see [“PREPARE” on page 2-579.](#))

Specifying Host Variables

If you know the number of parameters to be supplied at runtime and their data types, you can define the parameters that are needed by the statement as host variables in your program. You pass parameters to the database server by opening the cursor with the USING keyword, followed by the names of the variables. These variables are matched with the SELECT or EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement question-mark (?) parameters in a one-to-one correspondence, from left to right.

You cannot include indicator variables in the list of variable names. To use an indicator variable, you must include the SELECT or EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement as part of the DECLARE statement.

You must supply one host variable name for each placeholder. The data type of each variable must be compatible with the corresponding type that the prepared statement requires.

Examples of Specifying Host Variables with Select and Function Cursors

The following example illustrates an ESQL/C code fragment that opens a select cursor and specifies host variables in the USING clause:

```
sprintf (select_1, "%s %s %s %s %s",
        "SELECT o.order_num, sum(total price)",
        "FROM orders o, items i",
        "WHERE o.order_date > ? AND o.customer_num = ?",
        "AND o.order_num = i.order_num",
        "GROUP BY o.order_num");
EXEC SQL prepare statement_1 from :select_1;
EXEC SQL declare q_curs cursor for statement_1;
EXEC SQL open q_curs using :o_date, :o.customer_num;
```

The following example illustrates the USING clause of the OPEN statement with an EXECUTE FUNCTION statement in an ESQL/C code fragment:

```
strcpy ("EXECUTE FUNCTION one_func(?, ?)", exfunc_stmt);
EXEC SQL prepare exfunc_id from :exfunc_stmt;
EXEC SQL declare func_curs cursor for exfunc_id;
EXEC SQL open func_curs using :arg1, :arg2;
```

XPS

In Extended Parallel Server, to recreate this example use the CREATE PROCEDURE statement instead of the CREATE FUNCTION statement. ♦

Specifying a System Descriptor Area

If you do not know the number of parameters to be supplied at runtime or their data types, you can associate input values from a system-descriptor area. A system-descriptor area describes the data type and memory location of one or more values to replace question-mark (?) placeholders.

X/O

A system-descriptor area conforms to the X/Open standards. ♦

Use the SQL DESCRIPTOR keywords to introduce the name of a system descriptor area as the location of the parameters.

The COUNT field in the system-descriptor area corresponds to the number of dynamic parameters in the prepared statement. The value of COUNT must be less than or equal to the number of item descriptors that were specified when the system-descriptor area was allocated with the ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement. You can obtain the value of a field with the GET DESCRIPTOR statement and set the value with the SET DESCRIPTOR statement.

Example of Specifying a System Descriptor Area

The following example shows the OPEN...USING SQL DESCRIPTOR statement:

```
EXEC SQL allocate descriptor 'descl';
...
EXEC SQL open selcurs using sql descriptor 'descl';
```

As the example indicates, the system descriptor area must be allocated before you reference it in the OPEN statement.

E/C

Specifying a Pointer to an sqlda Structure

If you do not know the number of parameters to be supplied at runtime, or their data types, you can associate input values from an **sqlda** structure. An **sqlda** structure lists the data type and memory location of one or more values to replace question-mark (?) placeholders.

Use the DESCRIPTOR keyword to introduce a pointer to the **sqlda** structure as the location of the parameters.

The **sqlda** value specifies the number of input values that are described in occurrences of **sqlvar**. This number must correspond to the number of dynamic parameters in the prepared statement.

Example of Specifying a Pointer to an sqlda Structure

The following example shows an OPEN...USING DESCRIPTOR statement:

```
struct sqlda *sdp;
...
EXEC SQL open selcurs using descriptor sdp;
```

Using the WITH REOPTIMIZATION Option

Use the WITH REOPTIMIZATION option to reoptimize your query-design plan.

When you prepare a SELECT or EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement, the database server uses a query-design plan to optimize that query. If you later modify the data that is associated with the prepared statement, you can compromise the effectiveness of the query-design plan for that statement. In other words, if you change the data, you can deoptimize your query. To ensure optimization of your query, you can prepare the statement again or open the cursor again using the WITH REOPTIMIZATION option.

Informix recommends that you use the WITH REOPTIMIZATION option because it provides the following advantages over preparing a statement again:

- Rebuilds only the query-design plan rather than the entire statement
- Uses fewer resources
- Reduces overhead
- Requires less time

The WITH REOPTIMIZATION option forces the database server to optimize the query-design plan before it processes the OPEN cursor statement.

The following example shows the WITH REOPTIMIZATION option:

```
EXEC SQL open selcurs using descriptor sdp with  
reoptimization;
```

Relationship Between OPEN and FREE

The database server allocates resources to prepared statements and open cursors. If you execute a FREE *statement_id* or FREE *statement_id_var* statement, you can still open the cursor associated with the freed statement ID. However, if you release resources with a FREE *cursor_id* or FREE *cursor_id_var* statement, you cannot use the cursor unless you declare the cursor again.

Similarly, if you use the SET AUTOFREE statement for one or more cursors, when the program closes the specific cursor, the database server automatically frees the cursor-related resources. In this case, you cannot use the cursor unless you declare the cursor again.

Related Information

Related statements: ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR, DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR, DESCRIBE, CLOSE, DECLARE, EXECUTE, FETCH, FLUSH, FREE, GET DESCRIPTOR, PREPARE, PUT, SET AUTOFREE, SET DEFERRED_PREPARE, and SET DESCRIPTOR

For a task-oriented discussion of the OPEN statement, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For more information on system-descriptor areas and the `sqllda` structure, refer to the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

+

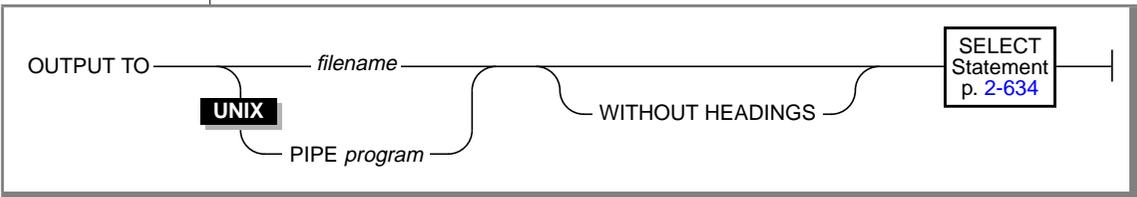
DB

OUTPUT

Use the OUTPUT statement to send query results directly to an operating-system file or to pipe query results to another program.

Use this statement with DB-Access.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>filename</i>	Pathname and filename of an operating-system file where the results of the query are written The default pathname is the current directory.	You can specify a new or existing file in filename. If the specified file exists, the results of the query overwrite the current contents of the file.	The pathname and filename must conform to the conventions of your operating system.
<i>program</i>	Name of a program where the results of the query are sent	The program must exist and must be known to the operating system. The program must be able to read the results of a query.	The name of the program must conform to the conventions of your operating system.

Usage

You can use the OUTPUT statement to direct the results of a query to an operating-system file or to a program. You can also specify whether column headings should be omitted from the query output.

Sending Query Results to a File

You can send the results of a query to an operating-system file by specifying the full pathname for the file. If the file already exists, the output overwrites the current contents.

The following examples show how to send the result of a query to an operating-system file. The example uses UNIX file-naming conventions.

```
OUTPUT TO /usr/april/query1
SELECT * FROM cust_calls WHERE call_code = 'L'
```

Displaying Query Results Without Column Headings

You can display the results of a query without column headings by using the `WITHOUT HEADINGS` keywords.

UNIX

Sending Query Results to Another Program

In the UNIX environment, you can use the keyword `PIPE` to send the query results to another program, as the following example shows:

```
OUTPUT TO PIPE more
SELECT customer_num, call_dtime, call_code
FROM cust_calls
```

Related Information

Related statements: `SELECT` and `UNLOAD`

+

E/C

PREPARE

Use the PREPARE statement to parse, validate, and generate an execution plan for SQL statements at runtime.

Use this statement with ESQL/C.

Syntax

```
PREPARE statement_id FROM statement_var;
```

The diagram shows the syntax of the PREPARE statement. The word "PREPARE" is followed by a bracketed area containing *statement_id* and *statement_id_var*. This is followed by the word "FROM", then another bracketed area containing *statement_var*. A box labeled "Quoted String p. 4-260" is positioned above the *statement_var* bracket. A vertical line at the end of the statement indicates the end of the line.

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>statement_id</i>	Identifier that represents the data structure of an SQL statement or sequence of SQL statements	After you release the database-server resources (using a FREE statement), you cannot use the statement identifier with a DECLARE cursor or with the EXECUTE statement until you prepare the statement again.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>statement_id_var</i>	Host variable that contains the statement identifier	This variable must be a character data type.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>statement_var</i>	Host variable whose value is a character string that consists of one or more SQL statements	This variable must be a character data type. For restrictions on the statements in the character string, see “Restricted Statements in Single-Statement Prepares” on page 2-584 and “Restricted Statements in Multi-Statement Prepares” on page 2-591 . A statement variable name cannot be used if the SQL statement contains the Collection Derived Table segment.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

Usage

The PREPARE statement permits your program to assemble the text of an SQL statement at runtime and make it executable. This dynamic form of SQL is accomplished in three steps:

1. A PREPARE statement accepts statement text as input, either as a quoted string or stored within a character variable. Statement text can contain question-mark (?) placeholders to represent values that are to be defined when the statement is executed.
2. An EXECUTE or OPEN statement can supply the required input values and execute the prepared statement once or many times.
3. Resources allocated to the prepared statement can be released later using the FREE statement.

The number of prepared items in a single program is limited by the available memory. These items include both statement identifiers that are named in PREPARE statements (*statement_id* or *statement_id_var*) and declared cursors. To avoid exceeding the limit, use a FREE statement to release some statements or cursors.

Restrictions

For information on statements that you cannot use in a prepared statement, see [“Restricted Statements in Single-Statement Prepares” on page 2-584](#) and [“Restricted Statements in Multi-Statement Prepares” on page 2-591](#).

The maximum length of a PREPARE statement is 64 kilobytes.

Using a Statement Identifier

A PREPARE statement sends the statement text to the database server. The database server analyzes the statement text. If the text contains no syntax errors, the database server translates it to an internal form. This translated statement is saved for later execution in a data structure that the PREPARE statement allocates. The name of the structure is the value that is assigned to the statement identifier in the PREPARE statement. Subsequent SQL statements refer to the structure by using the same statement identifier that was used in the PREPARE statement.

A subsequent FREE statement releases the resources that were allocated to the statement. After you release the database-server resources, you cannot use the statement identifier with a DECLARE cursor or with the EXECUTE statement until you prepare the statement again.

Scope of Statement Identifiers

A program can consist of one or more source-code files. By default, the scope of a statement identifier is global to the program. Therefore, a statement identifier that is prepared in one file can be referenced from another file.

In a multiple-file program, if you want to limit the scope of a statement identifier to the file in which it is prepared, preprocess all the files with the **-local** command-line option.

Releasing a Statement Identifier

A statement identifier can represent only one SQL statement or sequence of statements at a time. You can execute a new PREPARE statement with an existing statement identifier if you wish to bind a given statement identifier to a different SQL statement text.

The PREPARE statement supports dynamic statement-identifier names, which allow you to prepare a statement identifier as an identifier or as a host character-string variable.

The first example shows a statement identifier that was prepared as a host variable. The second example shows a statement identifier that was prepared as a character-string constant:

```
stcopy ("query2", stmtid);
EXEC SQL prepare :stmtid from
    'select * from customer';

EXEC SQL prepare query2 from
    'select * from customer';
```

A statement-identifier variable must be a character data type. In C, it must be defined as char.

Statement Text

The PREPARE statement can take statement text either as a quoted string or as text that is stored in a program variable. The following restrictions apply to the statement text:

- The text can contain only SQL statements. It cannot contain statements or comments *from* the host programming language.
- The text can contain comments that are preceded by a double dash (--) or enclosed in braces ({ }).

These comment symbols represent SQL comments. For more information on SQL comment symbols, see [“How to Enter SQL Comments” on page 1-6](#).

- The text can contain either a single SQL statement or a sequence of statements that are separated by semicolons.

For more information on how to prepare a single SQL statement, see [“Restricted Statements in Single-Statement Prepares” on page 2-584](#). For more information on how to prepare a sequence of SQL statements, see [“Preparing Sequences of Multiple SQL Statements” on page 2-590](#).

- Names of host-language variables are not recognized as such in prepared text.

Therefore, you cannot prepare a SELECT statement that contains an INTO clause or an EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) that contains an INTO clause because the INTO clause requires a host-language variable.

- The only identifiers that you can use are names that are defined in the database, such as names of tables and columns.

For more information on how to use identifiers in statement text, see [“Preparing Statements with SQL Identifiers” on page 2-587](#).

- Use a question mark (?) as a placeholder to indicate where data is supplied when the statement executes.

For more information on how to use question marks as placeholders, see [“Preparing Statements That Receive Parameters” on page 2-585](#).

- The text cannot include an embedded SQL statement prefix or terminator, such as a dollar sign (\$) or the words EXEC SQL.

The following ESQL/C example shows a PREPARE statement that takes statement text as a quoted string:

```
EXEC SQL prepare new_cust from  
      'insert into customer(fname,lname) values(?,?)';
```

If the prepared statement contains the Collection Derived Table segment on an ESQL/C collection variable, some additional limitations exist on how you can assemble the text for the PREPARE statement. For information about dynamic SQL, see the *Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual*. ♦

Preparing and Executing User-Defined Routines

The way to prepare a user-defined routine (UDR) depends on whether the UDR is a user-defined procedure or a user-defined function:

- To prepare a user-defined procedure, prepare the EXECUTE PROCEDURE statement that executes the procedure.
To execute the prepared procedure, use the EXECUTE statement.
- To prepare a user-defined function, prepare the EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement that executes the function.

You cannot include the INTO clause of EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) in the PREPARE statement.

The way to execute a prepared user-defined function depends on whether the function returns only one group of values or multiple groups of values. Use the EXECUTE statement for user-defined functions that return only one group of values. To execute user-defined functions that return more than one group of return values, you must associate the EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement with a cursor.

IDS

Restricted Statements in Single-Statement Prepares

In general, you can prepare any database manipulation statement.

You can prepare any single SQL statement except the following statements.

ALLOCATE COLLECTION	FLUSH
ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR	FREE
ALLOCATE ROW	GET DESCRIPTOR
CLOSE	GET DIAGNOSTICS
CONNECT	INFO
CREATE FUNCTION FROM	LOAD
CREATE PROCEDURE FROM	OPEN
CREATE ROUTINE FROM	OUTPUT
DEALLOCATE COLLECTION	PREPARE
DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR	PUT
DEALLOCATE ROW	SET AUTOFREE
DECLARE	SET CONNECTION
DESCRIBE	SET DEFERRED_PREPARE
DISCONNECT	SET DESCRIPTOR
EXECUTE	UNLOAD
EXECUTE IMMEDIATE	WHENEVER
FETCH	

◆

XPS

You can prepare any single SQL statement except the following statements

ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR	GET DESCRIPTOR
CLOSE	GET DIAGNOSTICS
CONNECT	INFO
CREATE PROCEDURE FROM	LOAD
DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR	OPEN
DECLARE	OUTPUT
DESCRIBE	PREPARE
DISCONNECT	PUT
EXECUTE	SET CONNECTION
EXECUTE IMMEDIATE	SET DEFERRED_PREPARE
FETCH	SET DESCRIPTOR
FLUSH	UNLOAD
FREE	WHENEVER

◆

You can prepare a `SELECT` statement. If the `SELECT` statement includes the `INTO TEMP` clause, you can execute the prepared statement with an `EXECUTE` statement. If it does not include the `INTO TEMP` clause, the statement returns rows of data. Use `DECLARE`, `OPEN`, and `FETCH` cursor statements to retrieve the rows.

A prepared `SELECT` statement can include a `FOR UPDATE` clause. This clause is used with the `DECLARE` statement to create an update cursor. The following example shows a `SELECT` statement with a `FOR UPDATE` clause in `ESQL/C`:

```

sprintf(up_query, "%s %s %s",
        "select * from customer ",
        "where customer_num between ? and ? ",
        "for update");
EXEC SQL prepare up_sel from :up_query;

EXEC SQL declare up_curs cursor for up_sel;

EXEC SQL open up_curs using :low_cust,:high_cust;

```

Preparing Statements When Parameters Are Known

In some prepared statements, all necessary information is known at the time the statement is prepared. The following example in `ESQL/C` shows two statements that were prepared from constant data:

```

sprintf(redo_st, "%s %s",
        "drop table workt1; ",
        "create table workt1 (wtc serial, wtv float)" );
EXEC SQL prepare redotab from :redo_st;

```

Preparing Statements That Receive Parameters

In some statements, parameters are unknown when the statement is prepared because a different value can be inserted each time the statement is executed. In these statements, you can use a question-mark (?) placeholder where a parameter must be supplied when the statement is executed.

The PREPARE statements in the following ESQL/C examples show some uses of question-mark (?) placeholders:

```
EXEC SQL prepare s3 from
    'select * from customer where state matches ?';

EXEC SQL prepare in1 from
    'insert into manufact values (?, ?, ?)';

sprintf(up_query, "%s %s",
    "update customer set zipcode = ?"
    "where current of zip_cursor");
EXEC SQL prepare update2 from :up_query;

EXEC SQL prepare exfunc from
    'execute function func1 (?, ?)';
```

You can use a placeholder to defer evaluation of a value until runtime only for an expression. You cannot use a question-mark (?) placeholder to represent an SQL identifier except as noted in [“Preparing Statements with SQL Identifiers” on page 2-587](#).

The following example of an ESQL/C code fragment prepares a statement from a variable that is named **demoquery**. The text in the variable includes one question-mark (?) placeholder. The prepared statement is associated with a cursor and, when the cursor is opened, the USING clause of the OPEN statement supplies a value for the placeholder.

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char queryvalue [6];
    char demoquery [80];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL connect to 'stores_demo';
sprintf(demoquery, "%s %s",
    "select fname, lname from customer ",
    "where lname > ? ");
EXEC SQL prepare quid from :demoquery;
EXEC SQL declare democursor cursor for quid;
stcopy("C", queryvalue);
EXEC SQL open democursor using :queryvalue;
```

The USING clause is available in both OPEN (for statements that are associated with a cursor) and EXECUTE (all other prepared statements) statements.

You can use a question-mark (?) placeholder to represent the name of an ESQL/C or SPL collection variable.

Preparing Statements with SQL Identifiers

In general, you cannot use question-mark (?) placeholders for SQL identifiers. You must specify these identifiers in the statement text when you prepare the statement.

However, in a few special cases, you can use the question-mark (?) placeholder for an SQL identifier. These cases are as follows:

- You can use the question-mark (?) placeholder for the database name in the DATABASE statement.
- You can use the question-mark (?) placeholder for the dbspace name in the IN *dbspace* clause of the CREATE DATABASE statement.
- You can use the question-mark (?) placeholder for the cursor name in statements that use cursor names.

Obtaining SQL Identifiers from User Input

If a prepared statement requires identifiers, but the identifiers are unknown when you write the prepared statement, you can construct a statement that receives SQL identifiers from user input.

The following ESQL/C example prompts the user for the name of a table and uses that name in a SELECT statement. Because the table name is unknown until runtime, the number and data types of the table columns are also unknown. Therefore, the program cannot allocate host variables to receive data from each row in advance. Instead, this program fragment describes the statement into an **sqllda** descriptor and fetches each row with the descriptor. The fetch puts each row into memory locations that the program provides dynamically.

If a program retrieves all the rows in the active set, the FETCH statement would be placed in a loop that fetched each row. If the FETCH statement retrieves more than one data value (column), another loop exists after the FETCH, which performs some action on each data value.

```

#include <stdio.h>
EXEC SQL include sqlda;
EXEC SQL include sqltypes;

char *malloc( );

main()
{
    struct sqlda *demodesc;
    char tablename[19];
    int i;
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char demoselect[200];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    /* This program selects all the columns of a given tablename.
       The tablename is supplied interactively. */

EXEC SQL connect to 'stores_demo';

    printf( "This program does a select * on a table\n" );
    printf( "Enter table name: " );
    scanf( "%s", tablename );

    sprintf(demoselect, "select * from %s", tablename );

EXEC SQL prepare iid from :demoselect;
EXEC SQL describe iid into demodesc;

    /* Print what describe returns */

    for ( i = 0; i < demodesc->sqlld; i++ )
        prsqllda (demodesc->sqlvar + i);

    /* Assign the data pointers. */

    for ( i = 0; i < demodesc->sqlld; i++ )
    {
        switch (demodesc->sqlvar[i].sqltype & SQLTYPE)
        {
            case SQLCHAR:
                demodesc->sqlvar[i].sqltype = CCHARTYPE;
                /* make room for null terminator */
                demodesc->sqlvar[i].sqlllen++;
                demodesc->sqlvar[i].sqldata =
                    malloc( demodesc->sqlvar[i].sqlllen );
                break;

            case SQLSMINT:    /* fall through */
            case SQLINT:     /* fall through */
            case SQLSERIAL:
                demodesc->sqlvar[i].sqltype = CINTTYPE;
                demodesc->sqlvar[i].sqldata =
                    malloc( sizeof( int ) );
                break;

            /* And so on for each type. */

        }
    }
}

```

```

/* Declare and open cursor for select . */
EXEC SQL declare d_curs cursor for iid;
EXEC SQL open d_curs;

/* Fetch selected rows one at a time into demodesc. */

for( ; ; )
{
    printf( "\n" );
    EXEC SQL fetch d_curs using descriptor demodesc;
    if ( sqlca.sqlcode != 0 )
        break;
    for ( i = 0; i < demodesc->sqld; i++ )
    {
        switch ( demodesc->sqlvar[i].sqltype)
        {
            case CCHARTYPE:
                printf( "%s: \"%s\n", demodesc->sqlvar[i].sqlname,
                    demodesc->sqlvar[i].sqldata );
                break;
            case CINTTYPE:
                printf( "%s: %d\n", demodesc->sqlvar[i].sqlname,
                    *((int *) demodesc->sqlvar[i].sqldata) );
                break;

            /* And so forth for each type... */

        }
    }
}
EXEC SQL close d_curs;
EXEC SQL free d_curs;

/* Free the data memory. */

for ( i = 0; i < demodesc->sqld; i++ )
    free( demodesc->sqlvar[i].sqldata );
free( demodesc );

printf( "Program Over.\n" );
}

prsqlda(sp)
    struct sqlvar_struct *sp;

{
    printf ( "type = %d\n", sp->sqltype);
    printf ( "len = %d\n", sp->sqllen);
    printf ( "data = %lx\n", sp->sqldata);
    printf ( "ind = %lx\n", sp->sqlind);
    printf ( "name = %s\n", sp->sqlname);
}

```

Preparing Sequences of Multiple SQL Statements

You can execute several SQL statements as one action if you include them in the same PREPARE statement. Multistatement text is processed as a unit; actions are not treated sequentially. Therefore, multistatement text cannot include statements that depend on actions that occur in a previous statement in the text. For example, you cannot create a table and insert values into that table in the same prepared block.

If a statement in a multistatement prepare returns an error, the whole prepared statement stops executing. The database server does not execute any remaining statements.

In most situations, compiled products return error-status information on the error, but do not indicate which statement in the sequence causes an error. You can use the `sqlca.sqlerrd[4]` field in the `sqlca` to find the offset of the errors.

In a multistatement prepare, if no rows are returned from a WHERE clause in the following statements, the database server returns the error,

SQLNOTFOUND (100):

- UPDATE...WHERE...
- SELECT INTO TEMP...WHERE...
- INSERT INTO...WHERE...
- DELETE FROM...WHERE...

In the following example, four SQL statements are prepared into a single ESQL/C string that is called **query**. Individual statements are delimited with semicolons. A single PREPARE statement can prepare the four statements for execution, and a single EXECUTE statement can execute the statements that are associated with the **qid** statement identifier.

```

sprintf (query, "%s %s %s %s %s %s %s",
        "update account set balance = balance + ? ",
        "where acct_number = ?;",
        "update teller set balance = balance + ? ",
        "where teller_number = ?;",
        "update branch set balance = balance + ? ",
        "where branch_number = ?;",
        "insert into history values (?, ?);";
EXEC SQL prepare qid from :query;

EXEC SQL begin work;
EXEC SQL execute qid using
        :delta, :acct_number, :delta, :teller_number,
        :delta, :branch_number, :timestamp, :values;
EXEC SQL commit work;

```

In the preceding code fragment, the semicolons (;) are required as SQL statement-terminator symbols between each SQL statement in the text that query holds.

Restricted Statements in Multi-Statement Prepares

In addition to the statements listed as exceptions in [“Restricted Statements in Single-Statement Prepares” on page 2-584](#), you cannot use the following statements in text that contains multiple statements that are separated by semicolons.

CLOSE DATABASE	DROP DATABASE
CREATE DATABASE	SELECT (with one exception)
DATABASE	

In addition, the following types of statements are not allowed in a multi-statement prepare:

- Statements that can cause the current database to close during the execution of the multistatement sequence
- Statements that include references to TEXT or BYTE host variables

Using the SELECT Statement in a Multistatement Prepare

In general, you cannot use the SELECT statement in a multistatement prepare. The only form of the SELECT statement allowed in a multistatement prepare is a SELECT statement with an INTO temporary table clause.

Using Prepared Statements for Efficiency

To increase performance efficiency, you can use the PREPARE statement and an EXECUTE statement in a loop to eliminate overhead that redundant parsing and optimizing cause. For example, an UPDATE statement that is located within a WHILE loop is parsed each time the loop runs. If you prepare the UPDATE statement outside the loop, the statement is parsed only once, eliminating overhead and speeding statement execution. The following example shows how to prepare an ESQL/C statement to improve performance:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char disc_up[80];
    int cust_num;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

main()
{
    sprintf(disc_up, "%s %s",
        "update customer ",
        "set discount = 0.1 where customer_num = ?");
    EXEC SQL prepare up1 from :disc_up;

    while (1)
    {
        printf("Enter customer number (or 0 to quit): ");
        scanf("%d", cust_num);
        if (cust_num == 0)
            break;
        EXEC SQL execute up1 using :cust_num;
    }
}
```

Related Information

Related statements: CLOSE, DECLARE, DESCRIBE, EXECUTE, FREE, OPEN, SET AUTOFREE, and SET DEFERRED_PREPARE

For information about basic concepts relating to the PREPARE statement, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For information about more advanced concepts relating to the PREPARE statement, see the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

+

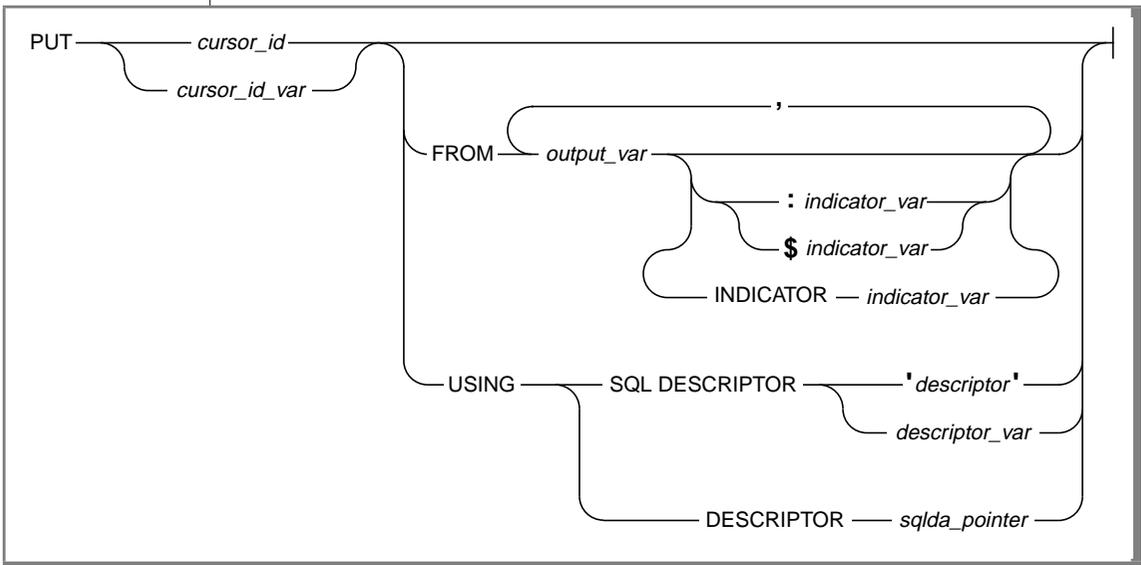
E/C

PUT

Use the PUT statement to store a row in an insert buffer for later insertion into the database.

Use this statement with ESQL/C.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>cursor_id</i>	Name of a cursor	The cursor must be open.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>cursor_id_var</i>	Host variable that holds the value of <i>cursor_id</i>	Host variable must be a character data type. The cursor must be open.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

(1 of 2)

PUT

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>descriptor</i>	Quoted string that identifies the system-descriptor area that defines the type and memory location of values that correspond to the question-mark (?) placeholder in a prepared INSERT statement	System-descriptor area must already be allocated.	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>descriptor_var</i>	Host variable name that identifies the system-descriptor area	System-descriptor area must already be allocated.	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>indicator_var</i>	Host variable that receives a return code if null data is placed in the corresponding <i>output_var</i>	Variable cannot be a DATETIME or INTERVAL data type. This parameter is optional, but use an indicator variable if the possibility exists that <i>output_var</i> might contain null-value data. If you specify the indicator variable without the INDICATOR keyword, you cannot put a space between <i>output_var</i> and <i>indicator_var</i> .	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>output_var</i>	Host variable whose contents replace a question-mark (?) placeholder in a prepared INSERT statement	Variable must be a character data type.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>sqllda_pointer</i>	Pointer to an sqllda structure that defines the type and memory location of values that correspond to the question-mark (?) placeholder in a prepared INSERT statement	You cannot begin an sqllda pointer with a dollar sign (\$) or a colon (:).	DESCRIBE, p. 2-382.

(2 of 2)

Usage

Each PUT statement stores a row in an insert buffer that was created when the cursor was opened. If the buffer has no room for the new row when the statement executes, the buffered rows are written to the database in a block and the buffer is emptied. As a result, some PUT statement executions cause rows to be written to the database, and some do not.

You can use the FLUSH statement to write buffered rows to the database without adding a new row. The CLOSE statement writes any remaining rows before it closes an insert cursor.

If the current database uses explicit transactions, you must execute a PUT statement within a transaction.

The following example uses a PUT statement in ESQL/C:

```
EXEC SQL prepare ins_mcode from
    'insert into manufact values(?,?)';
EXEC SQL declare mcode cursor for ins_mcode;
EXEC SQL open mcode;
EXEC SQL put mcode from :the_code, :the_name;
```

X/O

The PUT statement is not an X/Open SQL statement. Therefore, you get a warning message if you compile a PUT statement in X/Open mode. ♦

Supplying Inserted Values

The values that reside in the inserted row can come from one of the following sources:

- Constant values that are written into the INSERT statement
- Program variables that are named in the INSERT statement
- Program variables that are named in the FROM clause of the PUT statement
- Values that are prepared in memory addressed by an **sqllda** structure or a system-descriptor area and then named in the USING clause of the PUT statement

Using Constant Values in INSERT

The VALUES clause of the INSERT statement lists the values of the inserted columns. One or more of these values might be constants (that is, numbers or character strings).

When *all* the inserted values are constants, the PUT statement has a special effect. Instead of creating a row and putting it in the buffer, the PUT statement merely increments a counter. When you use a FLUSH or CLOSE statement to empty the buffer, one row and a repetition count are sent to the database server, which inserts that number of rows.

In the following ESQL/C example, 99 empty customer records are inserted into the **customer** table. Because all values are constants, no disk output occurs until the cursor closes. (The constant zero for **customer_num** causes generation of a SERIAL value.)

```
int count;
EXEC SQL declare fill_c cursor for
    insert into customer(customer_num) values(0);
EXEC SQL open fill_c;
for (count = 1; count <= 99; ++count)
    EXEC SQL put fill_c;
EXEC SQL close fill_c;
```

Naming Program Variables in INSERT

When you associate the INSERT statement with a cursor (in the DECLARE statement), you create an insert cursor. In the INSERT statement, you can name program variables in the VALUES clause. When each PUT statement is executed, the contents of the program variables at that time are used to populate the row that is inserted into the buffer.

If you are creating an insert cursor (using DECLARE with INSERT), you must use only program variables in the VALUES clause. Variable names are not recognized in the context of a prepared statement; you associate a prepared statement with a cursor through its statement identifier.

The following ESQL/C example illustrates the use of an insert cursor. The code includes the following statements:

- The DECLARE statement associates a cursor called **ins_curs** with an INSERT statement that inserts data into the **customer** table. The VALUES clause names a data structure that is called **cust_rec**; the ESQL/C preprocessor converts **cust_rec** to a list of values, one for each component of the structure.
- The OPEN statement creates a buffer.
- A user-defined function that is not defined in the example obtains customer information from an interactive user and leaves it in **cust_rec**.
- The PUT statement composes a row from the current contents of the **cust_rec** structure and sends it to the row buffer.
- The CLOSE statement inserts into the **customer** table any rows that remain in the row buffer and closes the insert cursor.

```

int keep_going = 1;
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION
    struct cust_row { /* fields of a row of customer table */ } cust_rec;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION

EXEC SQL declare ins_curs cursor for
    insert into customer values (:cust_row);
EXEC SQL open ins_curs;
while ( (sqlca.sqlcode == 0) && (keep_going) )
{
    keep_going = get_user_input(cust_rec); /* ask user for new customer */
    if (keep_going) /* user did supply customer info */
    {
        cust_rec.customer_num = 0; /* request new serial value */
        EXEC SQL put ins_curs;
    }
    if (sqlca.sqlcode == 0) /* no error from PUT */
        keep_going = (prompt_for_y_or_n("another new customer") == 'Y')
    }
EXEC SQL close ins_curs;

```

Use an indicator variable if the data to be inserted by the INSERT statement might be null.

Naming Program Variables in PUT

When the INSERT statement is prepared (see “[PREPARE](#)” on page 2-579), you cannot use program variables in its VALUES clause. However, you can represent values using a question-mark (?) placeholder. List the names of program variables in the FROM clause of the PUT statement to supply the missing values. The following ESQL/C example lists host variables in a PUT statement:

```

char answer [1] = 'y';
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char ins_comp[80];
    char u_company[20];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

main()
{
    EXEC SQL connect to 'stores_demo';
    EXEC SQL prepare ins_comp from
        'insert into customer (customer_num, company) values (0, ?)';
    EXEC SQL declare ins_curs cursor for ins_comp;
    EXEC SQL open ins_curs;

    while (1)
    {
        printf("\nEnter a customer: ");
        gets(u_company);
        EXEC SQL put ins_curs from :u_company;
        printf("Enter another customer (y/n) ? ");
    }
}

```

```

        if (answer = getch() != 'y')
            break;
    }
    EXEC SQL close ins_curs;
    EXEC SQL disconnect all;
}

```

Using the USING Clause

If you do not know the number of parameters to be supplied at runtime or their data types, you can associate input values from a system-descriptor area or an **sqlda** structure. Both of these descriptor structures describe the data type and memory location of one or more values to replace question-mark (?) placeholders.

Each time the PUT statement executes, the values that the descriptor structure describes are used to replace question-mark (?) placeholders in the INSERT statement. This process is similar to using a FROM clause with a list of variables, except that your program has full control over the memory location of the data values.

Specifying a System Descriptor Area

Use the SQL DESCRIPTOR option to introduce the name of a system descriptor area.

The COUNT field in the system-descriptor area corresponds to the number of dynamic parameters in the prepared statement. The value of COUNT must be less than or equal to the number of item descriptors that were specified when the system-descriptor area was allocated with the ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement. You can obtain the value of a field with the GET DESCRIPTOR statement and set the value with the SET DESCRIPTOR statement.

A system-descriptor area conforms to the X/Open standards. ♦

Example of Specifying a System Descriptor Area

The following ESQ/C example shows how to associate values from a system-descriptor area:

```

EXEC SQL allocate descriptor 'desc1';
...
EXEC SQL put selcurs using sql descriptor 'desc1';

```

X/O

Specifying an sqlda Structure

Use the DESCRIPTOR option to introduce the name of a pointer to an **sqlda** structure.

The following ESQL/C example shows how to associate values from an **sqlda** structure:

```
EXEC SQL put selcurs using descriptor pointer2;
```

IDS

Inserting into a Collection Cursor

A collection cursor allows you to access the individual elements of a collection variable. To declare a collection cursor, use the DECLARE statement and include the Collection Derived Table segment in the INSERT statement that you associate with the cursor. Once you open the collection cursor with the OPEN statement, the cursor allows you to put elements in the collection variable.

To put elements, one at a time, into the insert cursor, use the PUT statement and the FROM clause. The PUT statement identifies the collection cursor that is associated with the collection variable. The FROM clause identifies the element value to be inserted into the cursor. The data type of any host variable in the FROM clause must match the element type of the collection.

Important: *The collection variable stores the elements of the collection. However, it has no intrinsic connection with a database column. Once the collection variable contains the correct elements, you must then save the variable into the actual collection column with the INSERT or UPDATE statement.*

Suppose you have a table called **children** with the following structure:

```
CREATE TABLE children
(
  age          SMALLINT,
  name         VARCHAR(30),
  fav_colors   SET(VARCHAR(20)),
)
```



The following ESQ/C code fragment shows how to use an insert cursor to put elements into a collection variable called **child_colors**:

```

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    client collection child_colors;
    char *favorites[]
    (
        "blue",
        "purple",
        "green",
        "white",
        "gold",
        0
    );

    int a = 0;
    char child_name[21];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL allocate collection :child_colors;

/* Get structure of fav_colors column for untyped
 * child_colors collection variable */
EXEC SQL select fav_colors into :child_colors
    from children
    where name = :child_name;

/* Declare insert cursor for child_colors collection
 * variable and open this cursor */
EXEC SQL declare colors_curs cursor for
    insert into table(:child_colors)
    values (?);
EXEC SQL open colors_curs;

/* Use PUT to gather the favorite-color values
 * into a cursor */
while (fav_colors[a])
{
    EXEC SQL put colors_curs from :favorites[:a];
    a++
    ...
}

/* Flush cursor contents to collection variable */
EXEC SQL flush colors_curs;
EXEC SQL update children set fav_colors = :child_colors;

EXEC SQL close colors_curs;
EXEC SQL deallocate collection :child_colors;

```

After the FLUSH statement executes, the collection variable, **child_colors**, contains the elements {"blue", "purple", "green", "white", "gold"}. The UPDATE statement at the end of this code fragment saves the new collection into the **fav_colors** column of the database. Without this UPDATE statement, the collection column never has the new collection added.

Writing Buffered Rows

When the OPEN statement opens an insert cursor, an insert buffer is created. The PUT statement puts a row into this insert buffer. The block of buffered rows is inserted into the database table as a block only when necessary; this process is called *flushing the buffer*. The buffer is flushed after any of the following events:

- The buffer is too full to hold the new row at the start of a PUT statement.
- A FLUSH statement executes.
- A CLOSE statement closes the cursor.
- An OPEN statement executes, naming the cursor.

When the OPEN statement is applied to an open cursor, it closes the cursor before reopening it; this implied CLOSE statement flushes the buffer.

- A COMMIT WORK statement executes.
- The buffer contains BYTE or TEXT data (flushed after a single PUT statement).

If the program terminates without closing an insert cursor, the buffer remains unflushed. Rows that were inserted into the buffer since the last flush are lost. Do not rely on the end of the program to close the cursor and flush the buffer.

Error Checking

The **sqlca** structure contains information on the success of each PUT statement as well as information that lets you count the rows that were inserted. The result of each PUT statement is contained in the following fields of the **sqlca**: **sqlca.sqlcode**, **SQLCODE** and **sqlca.sqlerrd[2]**.

Data buffering with an insert cursor means that errors are not discovered until the buffer is flushed. For example, an input value that is incompatible with the data type of the column for which it is intended is discovered only when the buffer is flushed. When an error is discovered, rows in the buffer that are located after the error are *not* inserted; they are lost from memory.

The `SQLCODE` field is set to 0 if no error occurs; otherwise, it is set to an error code. The third element of the `sqlerrd` array is set to the number of rows that are successfully inserted into the database:

- If a row is put into the insert buffer, and buffered rows are *not* written to the database, `SQLCODE` and `sqlerrd` are set to 0 (`SQLCODE` because no error occurred, and `sqlerrd` because no rows were inserted).
- If a block of buffered rows is written to the database during the execution of a `PUT` statement, `SQLCODE` is set to 0 and `sqlerrd` is set to the number of rows that was successfully inserted into the database.
- If an error occurs while the buffered rows are written to the database, `SQLCODE` indicates the error, and `sqlerrd` contains the number of successfully inserted rows. (The uninserted rows are discarded from the buffer.)



Tip: When you encounter an `SQLCODE` error, a corresponding `SQLSTATE` error value also exists. For information about how to get the message text, check the `GET DIAGNOSTICS` statement.

Counting Total and Pending Rows

To count the number of rows that were actually inserted in the database as well as the number not yet inserted, perform the following steps:

1. Prepare two integer variables (for example, **total** and **pending**).
2. When the cursor is opened, set both variables to 0.
3. Each time a `PUT` statement executes, increment both **total** and **pending**.
4. Whenever a `PUT` or `FLUSH` statement executes, or the cursor closes, subtract the third field of the `SQLERRD` array from **pending**.

At any time, **(total - pending)** represents the number of rows that were actually inserted. If all commands are successful, **pending** contains zero after the cursor is closed. If an error occurs during a PUT, FLUSH, or CLOSE statement, the value that remains in **pending** is the number of uninserted (discarded) rows.

Related Information

Related statements: ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR, CLOSE, DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR, FLUSH, DECLARE, GET DESCRIPTOR, OPEN, PREPARE, and SET DESCRIPTOR

For a task-oriented discussion of the PUT statement, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For further information about error checking, the system-descriptor area, and the **sqllda** structure, see the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

+

RENAME COLUMN

Use the RENAME COLUMN statement to change the name of a column.

Syntax

```
RENAME COLUMN table . old_column TO new_column |
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>new_column</i>	New name to be assigned to the column	If you rename a column that appears within a trigger definition, the new column name replaces the old column name in the trigger definition only if certain conditions are met. For more information on this restriction, see “How Triggers Are Affected” on page 2-605 .	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>old_column</i>	Current name of the column you want to rename	The column must exist within the table.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>table</i>	Name of the table in which the column exists	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

You can rename a column of a table if any of the following conditions are true:

- You own the table.
- You have the DBA privilege on the database.
- You have the Alter privilege on the table.

You cannot rename the columns of a fragmented table if the table is fragmented by range. For more information on tables fragmented by range, see [“RANGE Method Clause” on page 2-265](#). ♦

XPS

How Views and Check Constraints Are Affected

If you rename a column that appears in a view, the text of the view in the **sysviews** system catalog table is updated to reflect the new column name.

If you rename a column that appears in a check constraint, the text of the check constraint in the **syschecks** system catalog table is updated to reflect the new column name.

How Triggers Are Affected

If you rename a column that appears within a trigger, it is replaced with the new name only in the following instances:

- When it appears as part of a correlation name inside the FOR EACH ROW action clause of a trigger
- When it appears as part of a correlation name in the INTO clause of an EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement
- When it appears as a triggering column in the UPDATE clause

When the trigger executes, if the database server encounters a column name that no longer exists in the table, it returns an error.

Example of RENAME COLUMN

The following example assigns the new name of **c_num** to the **customer_num** column in the **customer** table:

```
RENAME COLUMN customer.customer_num TO c_num
```

Related Information

Related statements: ALTER TABLE, CREATE TABLE, and RENAME TABLE



RENAME DATABASE

Use the RENAME DATABASE statement to change the name of a database.

Syntax

```
RENAME DATABASE old_database TO new_database
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>new_database</i>	New name for the database	Name must be unique. You cannot rename the current database. The database to be renamed must not be opened by any users when the RENAME DATABASE command is issued.	Database Name, p. 4-47
<i>old_database</i>	Current name of the database	The database must exist.	Database Name, p. 4-47

Usage

You can rename a database if either of the following statements is true:

- You created the database.
- You have the DBA privilege on the database.

You can only rename local databases. You can rename a local database from inside an SPL routine.

Related Information

Related statement: CREATE DATABASE

+

RENAME TABLE

Use the RENAME TABLE statement to change the name of a table.

Syntax

```
RENAME TABLE old_table TO new_table
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>new_table</i>	New name for the table	You cannot use the <i>owner.</i> convention in the new name of the table.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>old_table</i>	Current name of the table	The table must exist.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Usage

You can rename a table if any of the following statements are true:

- You own the table.
- You have the DBA privilege on the database.
- You have the Alter privilege on the table.

You cannot change the table owner by renaming the table. You can use the *owner.* convention in the old name of the table, but an error occurs during compilation if you try to use the *owner.* convention in the new name of the table.

If you are using Extended Parallel Server, you cannot rename a table that contains a dependent GK index. ♦

In an ANSI-compliant database, you must use the *owner.* convention in the old name of the table if you are referring to a table that you do not own. ♦

XPS

ANSI

You cannot use the RENAME TABLE statement to move a table from the current database to another database or to move a table from another database to the current database. The table that you want to rename must reside in the current database. The renamed table that results from the statement remains in the current database.

Renaming Tables That Views Reference

If a view references the table that was renamed, and the view resides in the same database as the table, the database server updates the text of the view in the `sysviews` system catalog table to reflect the new table name. For further information on the `sysviews` system catalog table, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

Renaming Tables That Have Triggers

If you rename a table that has a trigger, it produces the following results:

- The database server replaces the name of the table in the trigger definition.
- The table name is *not* replaced where it appears inside any triggered actions.
- The database server returns an error if the new table name is the same as a correlation name in the REFERENCING clause of the trigger definition.

When the trigger executes, the database server returns an error if it encounters a table name for which no table exists.

Example of Renaming a Table

The following example reorganizes the **items** table. The intent is to move the **quantity** column from the fifth position to the third. The example illustrates the following steps:

1. Create a new table, **new_table**, that contains the column **quantity** in the third position.
2. Fill the table with data from the current **items** table.
3. Drop the old **items** table.
4. Rename **new_table** with the name **items**.

The following example uses the RENAME TABLE statement as the last step:

```
CREATE TABLE new_table
(
    item_num    SMALLINT,
    order_num   INTEGER,
    quantity    SMALLINT,
    stock_num   SMALLINT,
    manu_code   CHAR(3),
    total_price MONEY(8)
);
INSERT INTO new_table
    SELECT item_num, order_num, quantity, stock_num,
           manu_code, total_price
    FROM items;
DROP TABLE items;
RENAME TABLE new_table TO items;
```

Related Information

Related statements: ALTER TABLE, CREATE TABLE, DROP TABLE, and RENAME COLUMN.

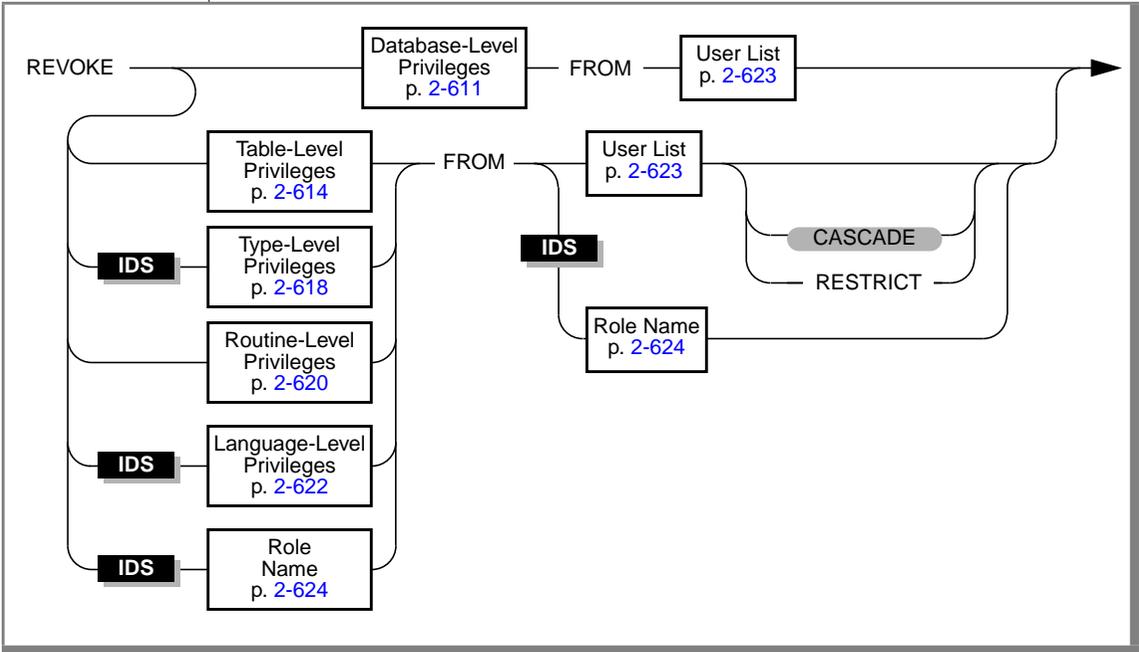


REVOKE

Use the REVOKE statement to cancel any of the following items for specific users or for a role:

- Privileges on a database
- Privileges on a table, synonym, or view
- Privileges on a user-defined data type or user-defined routine (UDR)
- A role name

Syntax



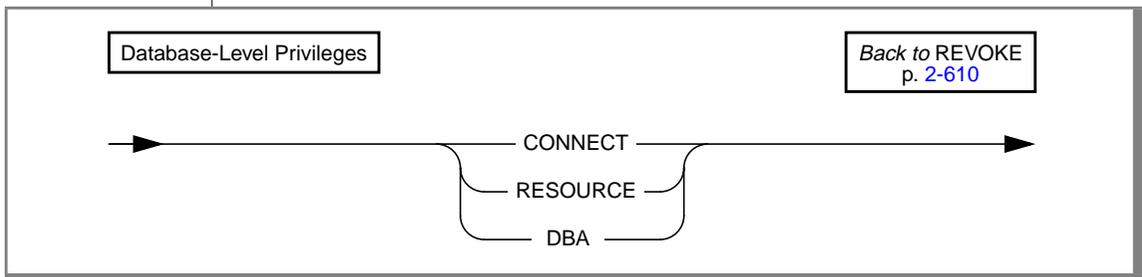
Usage

You can revoke privileges if:

- you granted them and did not name another user as grantor.
- the GRANT statement named you as grantor.
- you own an object on which PUBLIC has privileges by default.
- you have database-level DBA privileges.

You cannot revoke privileges from yourself. You cannot revoke privileges you granted if you named another user as grantor, nor can you revoke the status as grantor from the other user.

Database-Level Privileges



Three concentric layers of privileges, Connect, Resource, and DBA, authorize increasing power over database access and control. Only a user with the DBA privilege can grant or revoke database-level privileges.

Because of the hierarchical organization of the privileges (as outlined in the privilege definitions that are described later in this section), if you revoke either the Resource or the Connect privilege from a user with the DBA privilege, the statement has no effect. If you revoke the DBA privilege from a user who has the DBA privilege, the user retains the Connect privilege on the database. To deny database access to a user with the DBA or Resource privilege, you must first revoke the DBA or the Resource privilege and then revoke the Connect privilege in a separate REVOKE statement.

Similarly, if you revoke the Connect privilege from a user with the Resource privilege, the statement has no effect. If you revoke the Resource privilege from a user, the user retains the Connect privilege on the database.

The following table lists the appropriate keyword for each database-level privilege.

Privilege	Purpose
CONNECT	<p>Lets you query and modify data. You can modify the database schema if you own the database object that you want to modify. Any user with the Connect privilege can perform the following functions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Connect to the database with the CONNECT statement or another connection statement ■ Execute SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE statements, provided that the user has the necessary table-level privileges ■ Create views, provided that the user has the Select privilege on the underlying tables ■ Create synonyms ■ Create temporary tables, and create indexes on the temporary tables ■ Alter or drop a table or an index, provided that the user owns the table or index (or has the Alter, Index, or References privilege on the table) ■ Grant privileges on a table, provided that the user owns the table (or was given privileges on the table with the WITH GRANT OPTION keyword)
RESOURCE	<p>Lets you extend the structure of the database. In addition to the capabilities of the Connect privilege, the holder of the Resource privilege can perform the following functions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Create new tables ■ Create new indexes ■ Create new UDRs ■ Create new data types

(1 of 2)

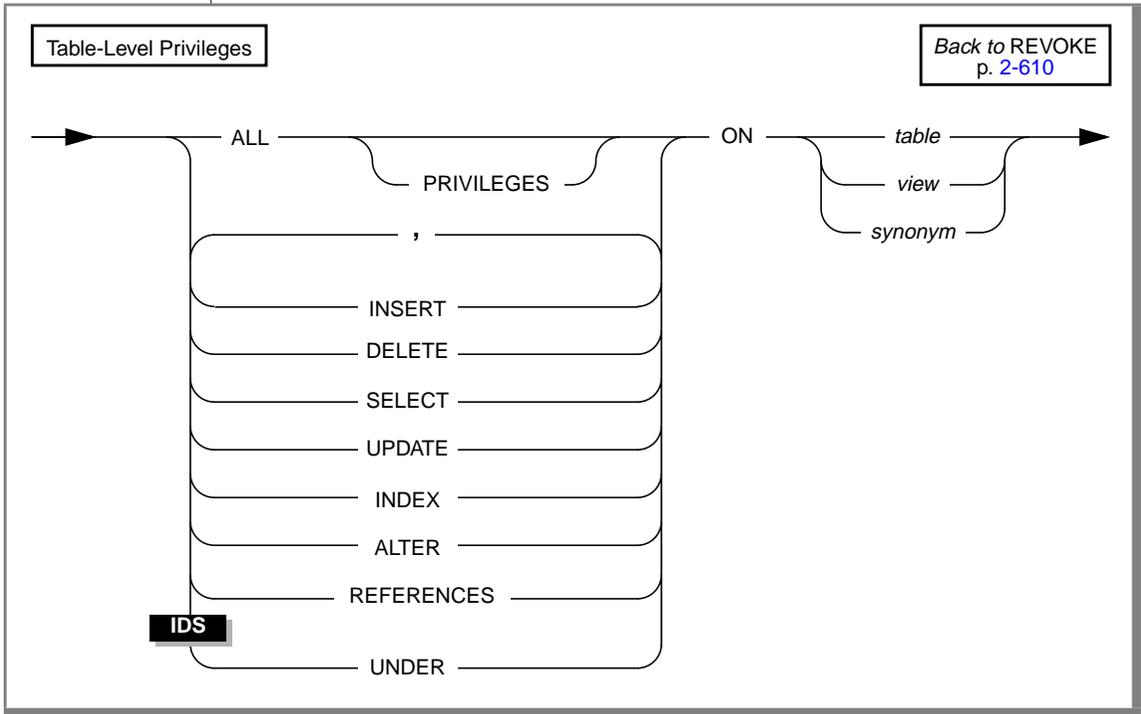
Privilege	Purpose
DBA	<p>Has all the capabilities of the Resource privilege and can perform the following functions in addition to t:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Grant any database-level privilege, including the DBA privilege, to another user ■ Grant any table-level privilege to another user ■ Grant any table-level privilege to a role ■ Grant a role to a user or to another role ■ Restrict the Execute privilege to DBAs when registering a UDR ■ Execute the SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION statement ■ Use the NEXT SIZE keywords to alter extent sizes in the system catalog tables ■ Drop any database object, regardless of who owns it ■ Create tables, views, and indexes as well as specify another user as owner of the database objects ■ Execute the DROP DATABASE statement ■ Insert, delete, or update rows of any system catalog table except systables

(2 of 2)



Warning: Although the user **informix** and DBAs can modify most system catalog tables (only the user **informix** can modify **systables**), Informix strongly recommends that you do not update, delete, or insert any rows in these tables. Modifying the system catalog tables can destroy the integrity of the database. Informix does support use of the ALTER TABLE statement to modify the size of the next extent of system catalog tables.

Table-Level Privileges



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>synonym</i>	Synonym for the table on which privileges are revoked	The synonym must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Table on which privileges are revoked	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>view</i>	View on which privileges are revoked	The view must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

In one REVOKE statement, you can list one or more of the following keywords to specify the privileges you want to revoke from the same users.

Privilege	Purpose
INSERT	Lets you insert rows
DELETE	Lets you delete rows
SELECT	Lets you display data obtained from a SELECT statement
UPDATE	Lets you change column values
INDEX	Lets you create permanent indexes You must have the Resource privilege to take advantage of the Index privilege. (Any user with the Connect privilege can create indexes on temporary tables.)
ALTER	Lets you add or delete columns, modify column data types, add or delete constraints, change the locking mode of a table from PAGE to ROW, or add or drop a corresponding row type name for your table. This privilege also lets you set the database object mode of unique indexes and constraints to the enabled, disabled, or filtering mode. In addition, this privilege lets you set the database object mode of non-unique indexes and triggers to the enabled or disabled modes.
REFERENCES	Lets you reference columns in referential constraints You must have the Resource privilege to take advantage of the References privilege. (However, you can add a referential constraint during an ALTER TABLE statement. This method does not require that you have the Resource privilege on the database.) Revoke the References privilege to disallow cascading deletes.
UNDER (IDS only)	Lets you create subtables under a typed table.
ALL	Provides all the preceding privileges. The PRIVILEGES keyword is optional.

If a user receives the same privilege from two different grantors and one grantor revokes the privilege, the grantee still has the privilege until the second grantor also revokes the privilege. For example, if both you and a DBA grant the Update privilege on your table to **ted**, both you and the DBA must revoke the Update privilege to prevent **ted** from updating your table.

When to Use REVOKE Before GRANT

You can use combinations of REVOKE and GRANT to replace PUBLIC with specific users as the grantees and to remove some columns from table-level privileges.

Replacing PUBLIC With Specified Users

If a table owner grants a privilege to PUBLIC, the owner cannot revoke the same privilege from any particular user. For example, assume PUBLIC has default Select privileges on your **customer** table. You issue the following statement in an attempt to exclude **ted** from accessing your table:

```
REVOKE ALL ON customer FROM ted
```

The REVOKE statement results in ISAM error message 111, No record found, because the system catalog tables (**syscolauth** or **systabauth**) contain no table-level privilege entry for a user named **ted**. The REVOKE does not prevent **ted** from having all the table-level privileges given to PUBLIC on the **customer** table.

To restrict table-level privileges, first revoke the privileges with the PUBLIC keyword, then re-grant them to the appropriate users. The following example revokes the Index and Alter privileges from all users for the **customer** table and grants these privileges specifically to user **mary**:

```
REVOKE INDEX, ALTER ON customer FROM PUBLIC
GRANT INDEX, ALTER ON customer TO mary
```

Restricting Access to Specific Columns

The REVOKE statement has no syntax for revoking privileges on particular column names. When you revoke the Select, Update, or References privilege from a user, you revoke the privilege for all columns in the table. If you want a user to have some access to some, but not all the columns previously granted, issue a new GRANT statement to restore the appropriate privileges.

In the following example, **mary** first receives the ability to reference four columns in **customer**, then the table owner restricts references to two columns:

```
GRANT REFERENCES (fname, lname, company, city) ON
customer TO mary
REVOKE REFERENCES ON customer FROM mary
GRANT REFERENCES (company, city)
ON customer TO mary
```

The following example shows how to restrict Select privileges for PUBLIC to certain columns:

```
REVOKE SELECT ON customer FROM PUBLIC
GRANT SELECT (fname, lname, company, city)
ON customer TO PUBLIC
```

Behavior of the ALL Keyword

The ALL keyword revokes all table-level privileges. If any or all of the table-level privileges do not exist for the revokee, the REVOKE statement with the ALL keyword executes successfully but returns the following SQLSTATE code:

```
01006--Privilege not revoked
```

For example, assume that the user **hal** has the Select and Insert privileges on the **customer** table. User **jocelyn** wants to revoke all seven table-level privileges from user **hal**. So user **jocelyn** issues the following REVOKE statement:

```
REVOKE ALL ON customer FROM hal
```

This statement executes successfully but returns SQLSTATE code 01006. The SQLSTATE warning is returned with a successful statement as follows:

- The statement succeeds in revoking the Select and Insert privileges from user **hal** because user **hal** had those privileges.
- SQLSTATE code 01006 is returned because the other privileges implied by the ALL keyword did not exist for user **hal**; therefore, these privileges were not revoked.

Tip: *The ALL keyword instructs the database server to revoke everything possible, including nothing. If the user from whom privileges are revoked has no privileges on the table, the REVOKE ALL statement still succeeds because it revokes everything possible from the user (in this case, no privileges at all).*



Effect of ALL Keyword on UNDER Privilege

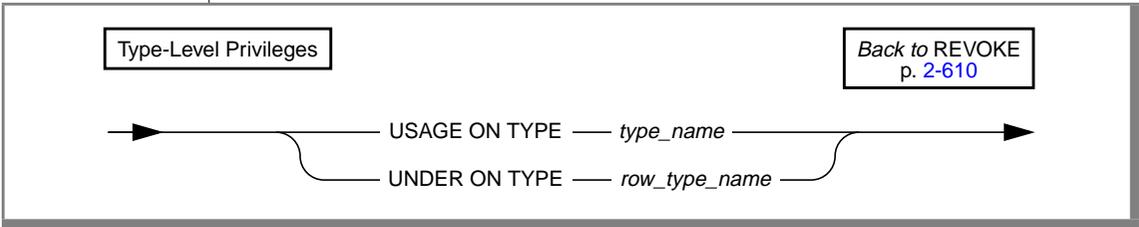
If you revoke ALL privileges on a typed table, the Under privilege is included in the privileges that are revoked. If you revoke ALL privileges on a table that is not based on a row type, the Under privilege is not included in the privileges that are revoked. (The Under privilege cannot be granted on a traditional relational table.)

IDS

Type-Level Privileges

You can revoke two privileges on data types:

- You can revoke the Usage privilege on a user-defined data type.
- You can revoke the Under privilege on a named-row type.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>row_type_name</i>	Name of the named-row type for which the Under privilege is revoked	The specified named-row type must exist.	Data Type, p. 4-53
<i>type_name</i>	Name of the user-defined data type for which the Usage privilege is revoked	The specified data type must exist.	Data Type, p. 4-53

Usage Privilege

Any user can reference a built-in data type in an SQL statement, but not a distinct data type based on a built-in data type. The creator of a user-defined data type or a DBA must explicitly grant the Usage privilege on that new type, including a distinct data type based on a built-in data type.

REVOKE with the USAGE ON TYPE keywords removes the Usage privilege that you granted earlier to another user or role.

Under Privilege

You own a named-row type that you create. If you want other users to be able to create subtypes under this named-row type, you must grant these users the Under privilege on your named-row type. If you later want to remove the ability of these users to create subtypes under the named-row type, you must revoke the Under privilege from these users. A REVOKE statement with the UNDER ON TYPE keywords removes the Under privilege that you granted earlier to these users.

For example, suppose that you have created a row type named **rtype1**:

```
CREATE ROW TYPE rtype1
  (cola INT, colb INT)
```

If you want another user named **kathy** to be able to create a subtype under this named-row type, you must grant the Under privilege on this named-row type to user **kathy**:

```
GRANT UNDER on rtype1 to kathy
```

Now user **kathy** can create another row type under the **rtype1** row type even though **kathy** is not the owner of the **rtype1** row type:

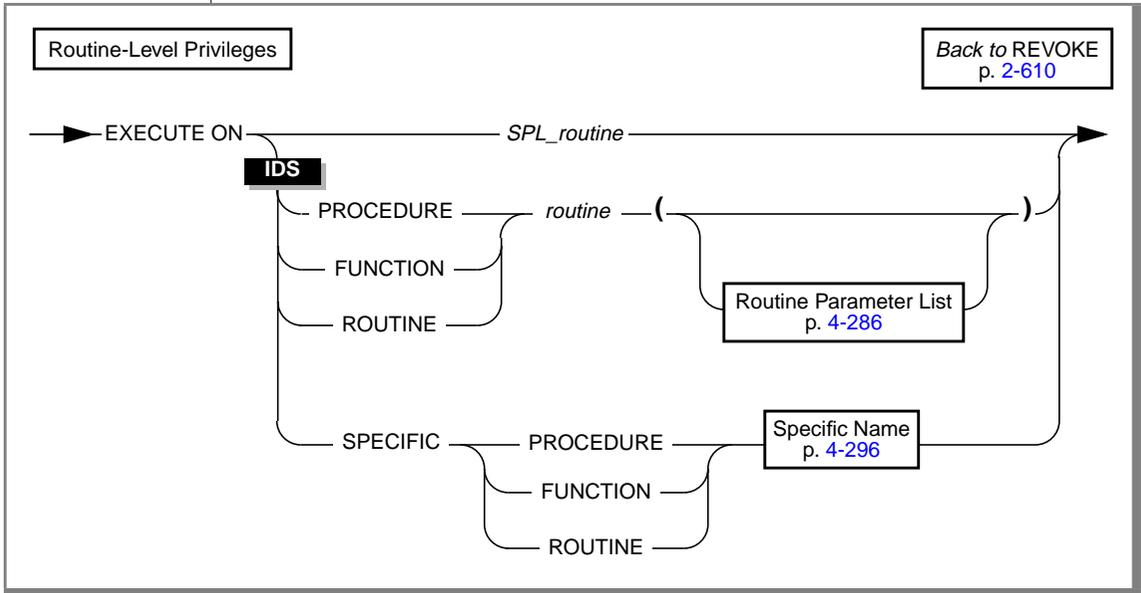
```
CREATE ROW TYPE rtype2
  (colc INT, cold INT)
  UNDER rtype1
```

If you later want to remove the ability of user **kathy** to create subtypes under the **rtype1** row type, enter the following statement:

```
REVOKE UNDER on rtype1 FROM kathy
```

Routine-Level Privileges

If you revoke the EXECUTE privilege on a user-defined routine (UDR) from a user, that user can no longer execute that UDR in any way. For information on the ways a user can execute a UDR, see [“Routine-Level Privileges” on page 2-513](#).



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>routine</i>	Name given to a user-defined routine in a CREATE FUNCTION or CREATE PROCEDURE statement	The identifier must refer to an existing UDR. In an ANSI-compliant database, specify the owner as the prefix to the routine name.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>SPL_routine</i>	Name given to an SPL routine that was created with the CREATE PROCEDURE statement	The SPL routine must exist. The SPL routine cannot be overloaded. That is, the name must be unique in the database.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

ANSI

When you create a UDR under any of the following circumstances, you must explicitly grant the Execute privilege before you can revoke it:

- You create a UDR in an ANSI-compliant database. ♦
- You have DBA-level privileges and use the DBA keyword with CREATE to restrict the Execute privilege to users with the DBA database-level privilege.
- The **NODEFDAC** environment variable is set to *yes* to prevent PUBLIC from receiving any privileges that are not explicitly granted.

IDS

Any negator function for which you grant the Execute privilege requires a separate, explicit REVOKE statement. ♦

When you create a UDR without any of the preceding conditions in effect, PUBLIC can execute your UDR without a GRANT statement. To limit who executes your UDR, revoke the privilege using the keywords FROM PUBLIC and then grant it to a user list (see [“User List” on page 2-623](#)) or role (see [“Role Name” on page 2-624](#)).

IDS

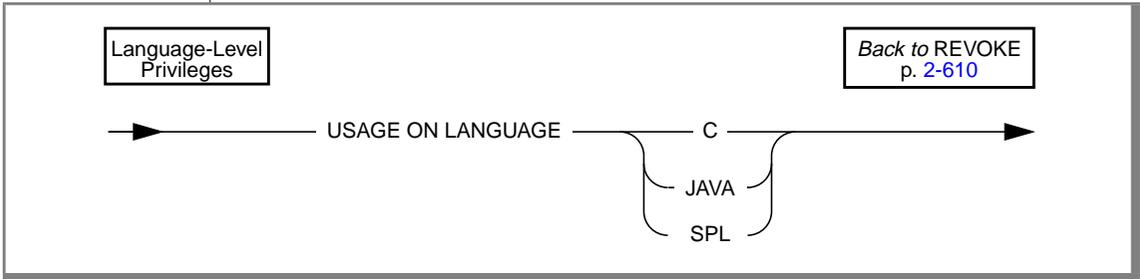
If two or more UDRs have the same name, use the appropriate keyword from the following list to specify which of those UDRs a user can no longer execute.

PRIVILEGE	Purpose
SPECIFIC	Prevents a user from executing the UDR identified by <i>specific name</i> .
FUNCTION	Prevents execution of any function with the specified <i>routine name</i> (and parameter types that match <i>routine parameter list</i> , if supplied).
PROCEDURE	Prevents execution of any procedure with the specified <i>routine name</i> (and parameter types that match <i>routine parameter list</i> , if supplied).
ROUTINE	Prevents execution of both functions and procedures with the specified <i>routine name</i> (and parameter types that match <i>routine parameter list</i> , if supplied).

♦

Language-Level Privileges

A user must have the Usage privilege on a language to register a user-defined routine (UDR) that is written in that language.



When a user executes a `CREATE FUNCTION` or `CREATE PROCEDURE` statement to register a UDR, the database server verifies that the user has the Usage privilege on the language in which the UDR is written. If the user does not have the Usage privilege, the statement fails.

If you want to revoke the Usage privilege on a language from a user or role, issue a `REVOKE USAGE ON LANGUAGE` statement.

The effect of issuing this statement is that the user or role can no longer register UDRs that are written in the specified language. For example, if you revoke the default Usage privilege on the SPL language from `PUBLIC`, the ability to create SPL routines is taken away from all users:

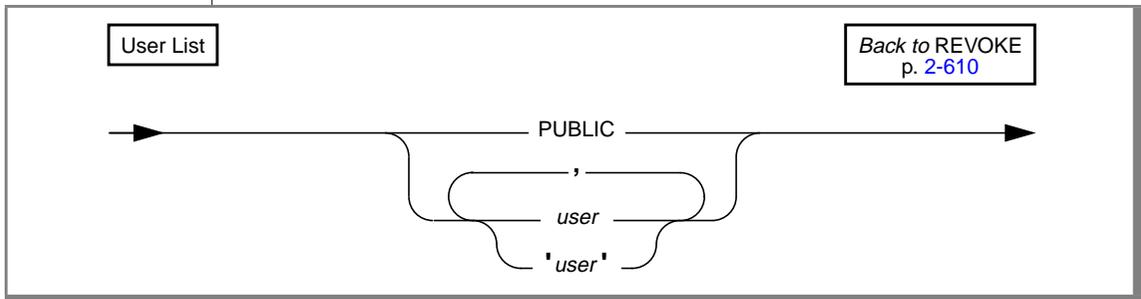
```
REVOKE USAGE ON LANGUAGE SPL FROM PUBLIC
```

You can now issue a `GRANT USAGE ON LANGUAGE` statement to grant Usage privilege on the SPL language to a restricted group such as the role named **developers**:

```
GRANT USAGE ON LANGUAGE SPL TO developers
```

User List

In the user list, you identify who loses the privileges you are revoking. The user list can consist of the logins for a single user or multiple users, separated by commas. If you use the PUBLIC keyword as the user list, the REVOKE statement revokes privileges from all users.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>user</i>	Login name of the user who is to lose the role or privilege that was granted	Put quotes around <i>user</i> to ensure that the name of the user is stored exactly as you type it. Use the single keyword PUBLIC for <i>user</i> to revoke a role or privilege from all authorized users.	The name must conform to the conventions of your operating system.

When the user list contains specific logins, you can combine the REVOKE statement with the GRANT statement to selectively secure tables, columns, UDRs, types, and so forth. For examples, see [“When to Use REVOKE Before GRANT” on page 2-616](#).

Spell the user names in the list exactly as they were spelled in the GRANT statement. In a database that is not ANSI compliant, you can optionally use quotes around each user in the list.

In an ANSI-compliant database, if you do not use quotes around *user*, the name of the user is stored in uppercase letters. ♦

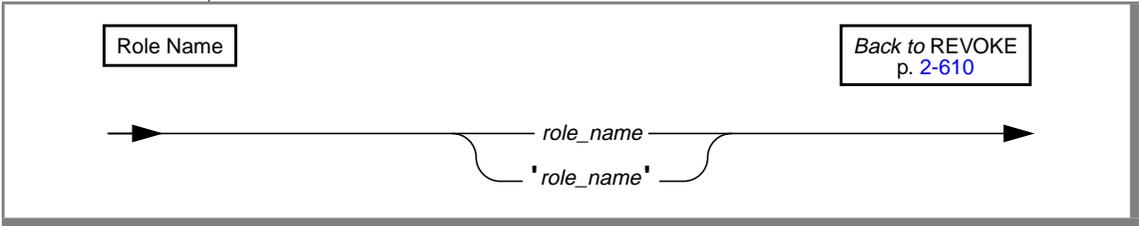
ANSI

IDS

Role Name

Only the DBA or a user granted a role with the WITH GRANT OPTION can revoke a role or its privileges. Users cannot revoke roles from themselves.

When you revoke a role that was granted with the WITH GRANT OPTION, both the role and grant option are revoked. [“Revoking Privileges Granted WITH GRANT OPTION” on page 2-625](#) explains revoking such a role.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>role_name</i>	Name of the role that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ loses a privilege assigned to it ■ loses the use of another role ■ a user or another role loses 	The role must have been created with the CREATE ROLE statement and granted with the GRANT statement. When a role name is enclosed in quotation marks, the role name is case sensitive.	Identifier, p. 4-205

The following examples show the effects of REVOKE with *role name*:

- Remove users or another role name from inclusion in the role

```
REVOKE accounting FROM mary
REVOKE payroll FROM accounting
```

- Remove one or more privileges from a role

```
REVOKE UPDATE ON employee FROM accounting
```

When you revoke table-level privileges from a role, you cannot use the RESTRICT or CASCADE clauses.

Revoking Privileges Granted WITH GRANT OPTION

If you revoke from *user* the privileges that you granted using the WITH GRANT OPTION keywords, you sever the chain of privileges granted by that *user*.

Thus, when you revoke privileges from users or a role, you also revoke the same privilege resulting from GRANT statements:

- issued by your grantee.
- allowed because your grantee used the WITH GRANT OPTION clause.
- allowed because subsequent grantees granted the same privilege using the WITH GRANT OPTION clause.

The following examples illustrate this situation. You, as the owner of the table **items**, issue the following statements to grant access to the user **mary**:

```
REVOKE ALL ON items FROM PUBLIC
GRANT SELECT, UPDATE ON items TO mary WITH GRANT OPTION
```

The user **mary** uses her new privilege to grant users **cathy** and **paul** access to the table.

```
GRANT SELECT, UPDATE ON items TO cathy
GRANT SELECT ON items TO paul
```

Later you revoke privileges on the **items** table to user **mary**.

```
REVOKE SELECT, UPDATE ON items FROM mary
```

This single statement effectively revokes all privileges on the **items** table from the users **mary**, **cathy**, and **paul**.

The CASCADE keyword has the same effect as this default condition.

Effect of CASCADE Keyword on UNDER Privileges

If you revoke the Under privilege on a typed table with the CASCADE option, the Under privilege is removed from the specified user, and any subtables created under the typed table by that user are dropped from the database.

However, if you revoke the Under privilege on a named-row type with the CASCADE option, and the row type is in use, the REVOKE statement fails. This exception to the normal behavior of the CASCADE option results from the fact that the database server supports the DROP ROW TYPE statement with the RESTRICT keyword only.

For example, assume that user **jeff** creates a row type named **rtype1** and grants the Under privilege on that row type to user **mary**. User **mary** now creates a row type named **rtype2** under row type **rtype1** and grants the Under privilege on row type **rtype2** to user **andy**. Then user **andy** creates a row type named **rtype3** under row type **rtype2**. Now user **jeff** tries to revoke the Under privilege on row type **rtype1** from user **mary** with the CASCADE option. The REVOKE statement fails because row type **rtype2** is still in use by row type **rtype3**.

Controlling the Scope of REVOKE with the RESTRICT Option

The RESTRICT keyword causes the REVOKE statement to fail when any of the following dependencies exist:

- A view depends on a Select privilege that you attempt to revoke.
- A foreign-key constraint depends on a References privilege that you attempt to revoke.
- You attempt to revoke a privilege from a user who subsequently granted this privilege to another user or users.

A REVOKE statement does not fail if it pertains to a user who has the right to grant the privilege to any other user but does not exercise that right, as the following example shows:

Assume that the user **clara** uses the WITH GRANT OPTION clause to grant the Select privilege on the **customer** table to the user **ted**.

Assume that user **ted**, in turn, grants the Select privilege on the **customer** table to user **tania**. The following REVOKE statement issued by **clara** fails because **ted** used his authority to grant the Select privilege:

```
REVOKE SELECT ON customer FROM ted RESTRICT
```

By contrast, if user **ted** does not grant the Select privilege to **tania** or any other user, the same REVOKE statement succeeds.

Even if **ted** does grant the Select privilege to another user, either of the following statements succeeds:

```
REVOKE SELECT ON customer FROM ted CASCADE
REVOKE SELECT ON customer FROM ted
```

Effect of Uncommitted Transactions

When a REVOKE statement is executed, an exclusive row lock is placed on the entry in the **systables** system catalog table for the table from which privileges were revoked. This lock is released only after the transaction that contains the REVOKE statement is complete. When another transaction attempts to prepare a SELECT statement against this table, the transaction fails because the entry for this table in **systables** is exclusively locked. The attempt to prepare the SELECT statement will not succeed until the first transaction was committed.

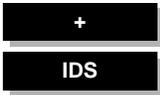
Related Information

Related Statements: GRANT, GRANT FRAGMENT, and REVOKE FRAGMENT

For information about roles, see the following statements: CREATE ROLE, DROP ROLE, and SET ROLE.

In the [Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation](#), see the discussion of privileges.

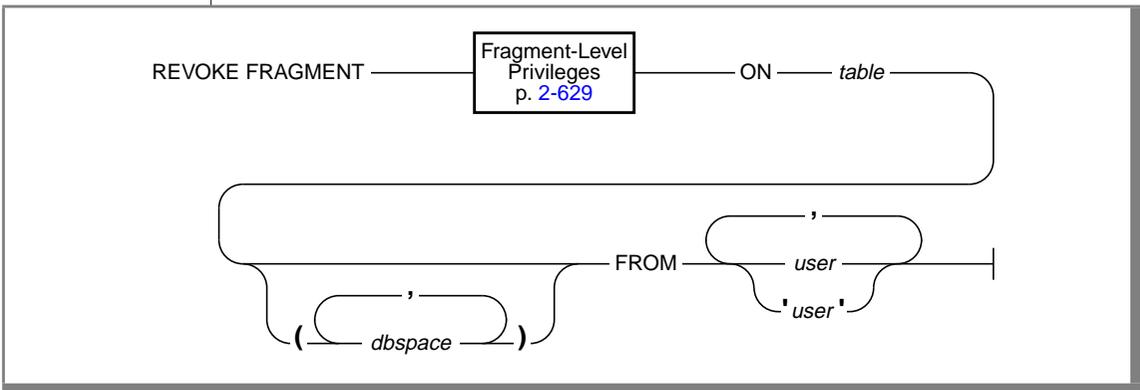
For a discussion of how to embed GRANT and REVOKE statements in programs, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).



REVOKE FRAGMENT

Use the REVOKE FRAGMENT statement to revoke privileges that were granted on individual fragments of a fragmented table. You can use this statement to revoke the Insert, Update, and Delete fragment-level privileges from users.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>dbspace</i>	Name of the dbspace where the fragment is stored Use this parameter to specify the fragment or fragments on which privileges are to be revoked. If you do not specify a fragment, the REVOKE statement applies to all fragments in the specified table that have the specified privileges.	The specified dbspace or dbspaces must exist.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>table</i>	Name of the table that contains the fragment or fragments on which privileges are to be revoked No default value exists.	The specified table must exist and must be fragmented by expression.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>user</i>	Name of the user or users from whom the specified privileges are to be revoked No default value exists.	The user must be a valid user.	The name must conform to the conventions of your operating system.

Usage

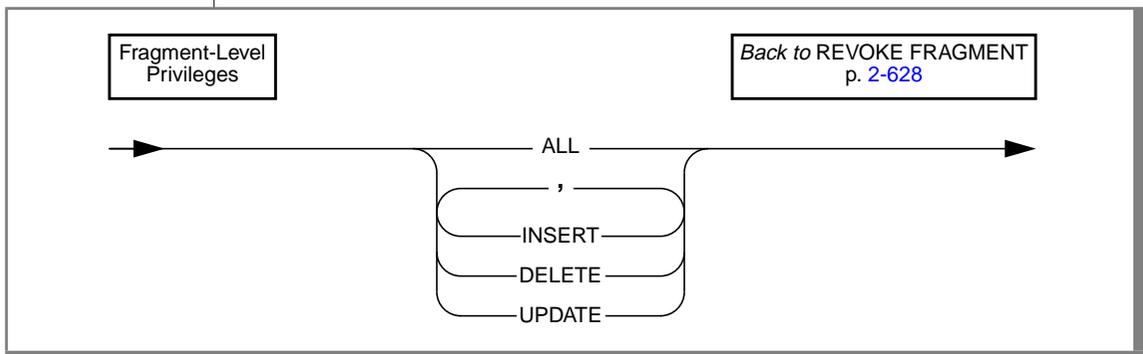
Use the REVOKE FRAGMENT statement to revoke the Insert, Update, or Delete privilege on one or more fragments of a fragmented table from one or more users.

The REVOKE FRAGMENT statement is only valid for tables that are fragmented according to an expression-based distribution scheme. For an explanation of an expression-based distribution scheme, see [“Syntax” on page 2-12](#).

You can specify one fragment or a list of fragments in the REVOKE FRAGMENT statement. To specify a fragment, name the dbspace in which the fragment resides.

You do not have to specify a particular fragment or a list of fragments in the REVOKE FRAGMENT statement. If you do not specify any fragments in the statement, the specified users lose the specified privileges on all fragments for which the users currently have those privileges.

Fragment-Level Privileges



You can revoke fragment-level privileges individually or in combination. List the keywords that correspond to the privileges that you are revoking from *user*. The following table defines each of the fragment-level privileges.

Privilege	Purpose
ALL	Provides insert, delete, and update privileges on a fragment
INSERT	Lets you insert rows in the fragment
DELETE	Lets you delete rows in the fragment
UPDATE	Lets you update rows in the fragment and to name any column of the table in an UPDATE statement

If you specify the ALL keyword in a REVOKE FRAGMENT statement, the specified users lose all fragment-level privileges that they currently have on the specified fragments.

For example, assume that a user currently has the Update privilege on one fragment of a table. If you use the ALL keyword to revoke all current privileges on this fragment from this user, the user loses the Update privilege that he or she had on this fragment.

Examples of the REVOKE FRAGMENT Statement

The examples that follow are based on the **customer** table. All the examples assume that the **customer** table is fragmented by expression into three fragments that reside in the dbspaces that are named **dbsp1**, **dbsp2**, and **dbsp3**.

Revoking One Privilege

The following statement revokes the Update privilege on the fragment of the **customer** table in **dbsp1** from the user **ed**:

```
REVOKE FRAGMENT UPDATE ON customer (dbsp1) FROM ed
```

Revoking More Than One Privilege

The following statement revokes the Update and Insert privileges on the fragment of the **customer** table in **dbsp1** from the user **susan**:

```
REVOKE FRAGMENT UPDATE, INSERT ON customer (dbsp1) FROM susan
```

Revoking All Privileges

The following statement revokes all privileges currently granted to the user **harry** on the fragment of the **customer** table in **dbsp1**:

```
REVOKE FRAGMENT ALL ON customer (dbsp1) FROM harry
```

Revoking Privileges on More Than One Fragment

The following statement revokes all privileges currently granted to the user **millie** on the fragments of the **customer** table in **dbsp1** and **dbsp2**:

```
REVOKE FRAGMENT ALL ON customer (dbsp1, dbsp2) FROM millie
```

Revoking Privileges from More Than One User

The following statement revokes all privileges currently granted to the users **jerome** and **hilda** on the fragment of the **customer** table in **dbsp3**:

```
REVOKE FRAGMENT ALL ON customer (dbsp3) FROM jerome, hilda
```

Revoking Privileges Without Specifying Fragments

The following statement revokes all current privileges from the user **mel** on all fragments for which this user currently has privileges:

```
REVOKE FRAGMENT ALL ON customer FROM mel
```

Related Information

Related statements: GRANT FRAGMENT and REVOKE

For a discussion of fragment-level and table-level privileges, see the [Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation](#).

ROLLBACK WORK

Use the ROLLBACK WORK statement to cancel a transaction deliberately and undo any changes that occurred since the beginning of the transaction. The ROLLBACK WORK statement restores the database to the state that it was in before the transaction began.

Syntax

```
ROLLBACK _____|
                |
                | WORK
```

Usage

The ROLLBACK WORK statement is valid only in databases with transactions.

In a database that is not ANSI-compliant, start a transaction with a BEGIN WORK statement. You can end a transaction with a COMMIT WORK statement or cancel the transaction with a ROLLBACK WORK statement. The ROLLBACK WORK statement restores the database to the state that existed before the transaction began.

Use the ROLLBACK WORK statement only at the end of a multistatement operation.

The ROLLBACK WORK statement releases all row and table locks that the cancelled transaction holds. If you issue a ROLLBACK WORK statement when no transaction is pending, an error occurs.

In an ANSI-compliant database, transactions are implicit. Transactions start after each COMMIT WORK or ROLLBACK WORK statement, so no BEGIN WORK statement is required. If you issue a ROLLBACK WORK statement when no transaction is pending, the statement is accepted but has no effect. ♦

In ESQ/C, the ROLLBACK WORK statement closes all open cursors except those that are declared with hold. Hold cursors remain open after a transaction is committed or rolled back.

ANSI

E/C

If you use the ROLLBACK WORK statement within an SPL routine that a WHENEVER statement calls, specify WHENEVER SQLERROR CONTINUE and WHENEVER SQLWARNING CONTINUE before the ROLLBACK WORK statement. This step prevents the program from looping if the ROLLBACK WORK statement encounters an error or a warning. ♦

WORK Keyword

The WORK keyword is optional in a ROLLBACK WORK statement. The following two statements are equivalent:

```
ROLLBACK;
```

```
ROLLBACK WORK;
```

Related Information

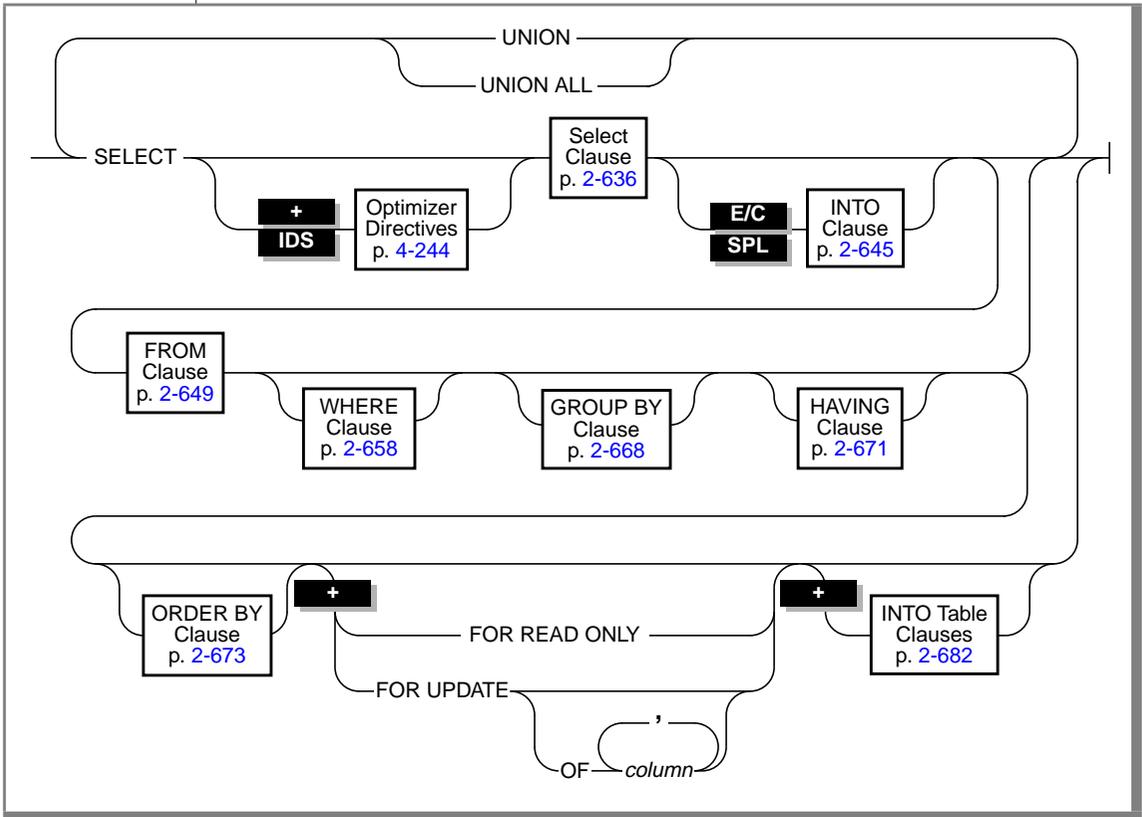
Related statements: BEGIN WORK and COMMIT WORK

For a discussion of transactions and ROLLBACK WORK, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

SELECT

Use the SELECT statement to query a database or the contents of an SPL or ESQL/C collection variable.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of a column that can be updated after a fetch	The specified column must be in the table, but it does not have to be in the select list of the SELECT clause.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Usage

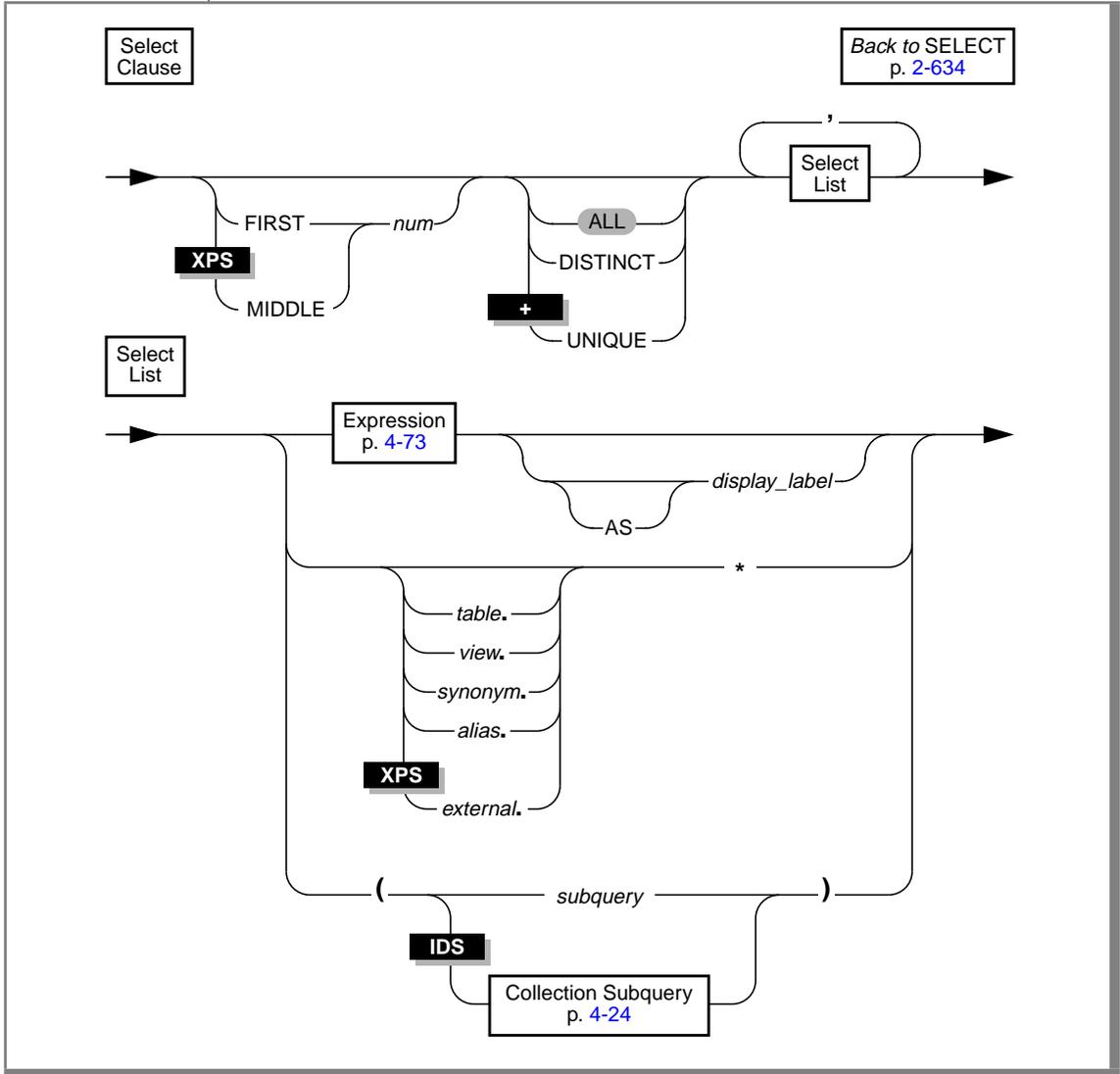
You can query the tables in the current database, a database that is not current, or a database that is on a different database server from your current database.

The SELECT statement includes many basic clauses. Each clause is described in the following list.

Clause	Purpose
SELECT	Names a list of items to be read from the database
INTO	Specifies the program variables or host variables that receive the selected data
FROM	Names the tables that contain the selected columns
WHERE	Sets conditions on the selected rows
GROUP BY	Combines groups of rows into summary results
HAVING	Sets conditions on the summary results
ORDER BY	Orders the selected rows
FOR UPDATE	Specifies that the values returned by the SELECT statement can be updated after a fetch
FOR READ ONLY	Specifies that the values returned by the SELECT statement cannot be updated after a fetch
INTO TEMP	Creates a temporary table in the current database and puts the results of the query into the table
INTO SCRATCH	Creates an unlogging temporary table in the current database and puts the results of the query into the table
INTO EXTERNAL	Loads an external table with the results of the query

SELECT Clause

The SELECT clause contains the list of database objects or expressions to be selected, as shown in the following diagram



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
*	Symbol that signifies that all columns in the specified table or view are to be selected	Use this symbol whenever you want to retrieve all the columns in the table or view in their defined order. If you want to retrieve all the columns in some other order, or if you want to retrieve a subset of the columns, you must specify the columns explicitly in the SELECT list.	The asterisk (*) is a literal value that has a special meaning in this statement.
<i>alias</i>	Temporary alternative name assigned to the table or view in the FROM clause For more information on aliases, see “FROM Clause” on page 2-649 .	You cannot use an alias for a SELECT clause unless you assign the alias to the table or view in the FROM clause.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>display_label</i>	Temporary name that you assign to a column For more information on how the label is displayed, see “Using a Display Label” on page 2-644 .	For restrictions that apply to when you use a display label, see “Using a Display Label” on page 2-644 .	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>external</i>	Name of the external table from which you want to retrieve data	The external table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>num</i>	Integer that indicates the number of rows to return	The value must be greater than zero (0). If the value is greater than the number of rows that match the selection criteria of the query, all matching rows are returned.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>subquery</i>	Embedded query	The subquery cannot contain either the FIRST or the ORDER BY clause.	SELECT, p. 2-634
<i>synonym</i>	Name of the synonym from which you want to retrieve data	The synonym and the table to which the synonym points must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of the table from which you want to retrieve data	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>view</i>	Name of the view from which you want to retrieve data	The view must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

In the `SELECT` clause, specify exactly what data is being selected as well as whether you want to omit duplicate values.

Using the FIRST Option

The `FIRST` option allows you to specify a maximum number of rows to retrieve that match conditions specified in the `SELECT` statement. Rows that match the selection criteria, but fall outside the specified number, are not returned.

The following example retrieves at most 10 rows from a table:

```
SELECT FIRST 10 a, b FROM tab1;
```

When you use this option with an `ORDER BY` clause, you can retrieve the first number of rows according to the order criteria. For example, the following query finds the ten highest-paid employees.

```
SELECT FIRST 10 name, salary
FROM emp
ORDER BY salary DESC
```

If you are using Extended Parallel Server, you can also use the `FIRST` option to select the first rows that result from a union query. In the following example, the `FIRST` option is applied to the result of the `UNION` expression.

```
SELECT FIRST 10 a, b FROM tab1 UNION SELECT a, b FROM tab2
```

◆

Restrictions on the First Option

The `FIRST` option is not allowed in the following situations:

- When you define a view
- In nested `SELECT` statements
- In subqueries
- In the `SELECT` clause of an `INSERT` statement
- When your `SELECT` statement is selecting data and inserting it into another table, such as a temporary, scratch, or external table
- In statements that allow embedded `SELECT` statements to be used as expressions
- As part of a `UNION` query ◆

XPS

IDS

IDS

Using FIRST as a Column Name with Dynamic Server

Although **FIRST** is a keyword, the database server can also interpret it as a column name. If an integer does not follow the keyword, the database server interprets **FIRST** as the name of a column. For example, if a table has columns **first**, **second**, and **third**, the following query would return data from the column named **first**:

```
SELECT first
from T
```

XPS

Using the MIDDLE Option

The **MIDDLE** option, like the **FIRST** option, allows you to specify a maximum number of rows to retrieve that match conditions specified in the **SELECT** statement. However, whereas the **FIRST** option returns the first number of specified rows that match the selection criteria, the **MIDDLE** option returns the middle number of rows.

The syntax and restrictions for this option are the same as those for the **FIRST** option. For more information see [“Using the FIRST Option” on page 2-638](#).

Allowing Duplicates

You can apply the **ALL**, **UNIQUE**, or **DISTINCT** keywords to indicate whether duplicate values are returned, if any exist. If you do not specify any keywords, all the rows are returned by default.

Keyword	Purpose
ALL	Specifies that all selected values are returned, regardless of whether duplicates exist ALL is the default state.
DISTINCT	Eliminates duplicate rows from the query results
UNIQUE	Eliminates duplicate rows from the query results UNIQUE is a synonym for DISTINCT .

For example, the following query lists the **stock_num** and **manu_code** of all items that have been ordered, excluding duplicate items:

```
SELECT DISTINCT stock_num, manu_code FROM items
```

You can use the **DISTINCT** or **UNIQUE** keywords once in each level of a query or subquery. For example, the following query uses **DISTINCT** in both the query and the subquery:

```
SELECT DISTINCT stock_num, manu_code FROM items
WHERE order_num = (SELECT DISTINCT order_num FROM orders
WHERE customer_num = 120)
```

Expressions in the Select List

You can use any basic type of expression (column, constant, built-in function, aggregate function, and user-defined routine), or combination thereof, in the select list. The expression types are described in [“Expression” on page 4-73](#).

The following sections present examples of using each type of simple expression in the select list.

You can combine simple numeric expressions by connecting them with arithmetic operators for addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. However, if you combine a column expression and an aggregate function, you must include the column expression in the **GROUP BY** clause.

You cannot use variable names (for example, a host variable in an ESQL/C application) in the select list by themselves. You can include a variable name in the select list, however, if an arithmetic or concatenation operator connects it to a constant.

Selecting Columns

Column expressions are the most commonly used expressions in a **SELECT** statement. For a complete description of the syntax and use of column expressions, see [“Column Expressions” on page 4-91](#).

The following examples show column expressions within a select list:

```
SELECT orders.order_num, items.price FROM orders, items
SELECT customer.customer_num cnum, company FROM customer
SELECT catalog_num, stock_num, cat_advert [1,15] FROM catalog
SELECT lead_time - 2 UNITS DAY FROM manufact
```

Selecting Constants

If you include a constant expression in the select list, the same value is returned for each row that the query returns. For a complete description of the syntax and use of constant expressions, see [“Constant Expressions” on page 4-108](#).

The following examples show constant expressions within a select list:

```
SELECT 'The first name is', fname FROM customer
SELECT TODAY FROM cust_calls
SELECT SITENAME FROM systables WHERE tabid = 1
SELECT lead_time - 2 UNITS DAY FROM manufact
SELECT customer_num + LENGTH('string') from customer
```

Selecting Built-In Function Expressions

A built-in function expression uses a function that is evaluated for each row in the query. All built-in function expressions require arguments. This set of expressions contains the time functions and the length function when they are used with a column name as an argument.

The following examples show built-in function expressions within a select list:

```
SELECT EXTEND(res_dtime, YEAR TO SECOND) FROM cust_calls
SELECT LENGTH(fname) + LENGTH(lname) FROM customer
SELECT HEX(order_num) FROM orders
SELECT MONTH(order_date) FROM orders
```

Selecting Aggregate Expressions

An aggregate function returns one value for a set of queried rows. The aggregate functions take on values that depend on the set of rows that the WHERE clause of the SELECT statement returns. In the absence of a WHERE clause, the aggregate functions take on values that depend on all the rows that the FROM clause forms.

The following examples show aggregate functions in a select list:

```
SELECT SUM(total_price) FROM items WHERE order_num = 1013
SELECT COUNT(*) FROM orders WHERE order_num = 1001
SELECT MAX(LENGTH(fname) + LENGTH(lname)) FROM customer
```

Selecting User-Defined Function Expressions

User-defined functions extend the range of functions that are available to you and allow you to perform a subquery on each row that you select.

The following example calls the **get_orders** user-defined function for each **customer_num** and displays the output of the function under the **n_orders** label:

```
SELECT customer_num, lname,
       get_orders(customer_num) n_orders
FROM customer
```

SPL

If a called SPL routine contains certain SQL statements, the database server returns an error. For information on which SQL statements cannot be used in an SPL routine that is called within a data manipulation statement, see [“Restrictions on an SPL Routine Called in a Data Manipulation Statement” on page 4-302](#). ♦

For the complete syntax of user-defined function expressions, see [“User-Defined Functions” on page 4-179](#).

Selecting Expressions That Use Arithmetic Operators

You can combine numeric expressions with arithmetic operators to make complex expressions. You cannot combine expressions that contain aggregate functions with column expressions. The following examples show expressions that use arithmetic operators within a select list:

```
SELECT stock_num, quantity*total_price FROM customer
SELECT price*2 doubleprice FROM items
SELECT count(*)+2 FROM customer
SELECT count(*)+LENGTH('ab') FROM customer
```

IDS

Selecting Row Fields

You can select a particular field of a row-type column (named or unnamed row type) with dot notation, which uses a period (.) as a separator between the row and field names. For example, suppose you have the following table structure:

```
CREATE ROW TYPE one (a INTEGER, b FLOAT);
CREATE ROW TYPE two (c one, d CHAR(10));
CREATE ROW TYPE three (e CHAR(10), f two);

CREATE TABLE new_tab OF TYPE two;
CREATE TABLE three_tab OF TYPE three;
```

The following expressions are valid in the select list:

```
SELECT t.c FROM new_tab t;
SELECT f.c.a FROM three_tab;
SELECT f.d FROM three_tab;
```

You can also enter an asterisk in place of a field name to signify that all fields of the row-type column are to be selected. For example, if the **my_tab** table has a row-type column named **rowcol** that contains four fields, the following SELECT statement retrieves all four fields of the **rowcol** column:

```
SELECT rowcol.* FROM my_tab
```

You can also retrieve all fields from a row-type column by specifying the column name without any dot notation. The following SELECT statement has the same effect as the preceding SELECT statement:

```
SELECT rowcol FROM my_tab
```

You can use dot notation not only with row-type columns but with expressions that evaluate to row-type values. For more information on the use of dot notation with row-type columns and expressions, see [“Column Expressions” on page 4-91](#) in the Expression segment.

Using a Display Label

You can assign a display label to any column in your select list.

DB

In DB-Access, a display label appears as the heading for that column in the output of the SELECT statement. ♦

E/C

In ESQL/C, the value of *display_label* is stored in the **sqlname** field of the **sqllda** structure. For more information on the **sqllda** structure, see the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#). ♦

Using the AS Keyword

If your display label is also an SQL reserved word, you can use the AS keyword with the display label to clarify the use of the word. If you want to use the word UNITS, YEAR, MONTH, DAY, HOUR, MINUTE, SECOND, or FRACTION as your display label, you must use the AS keyword with the display label. The following example shows how to use the AS keyword with **minute** as a display label:

```
SELECT call_dtime AS minute FROM cust_calls
```

For a list of SQL reserved words, see [Appendix A, “Reserved Words for Dynamic Server.”](#)

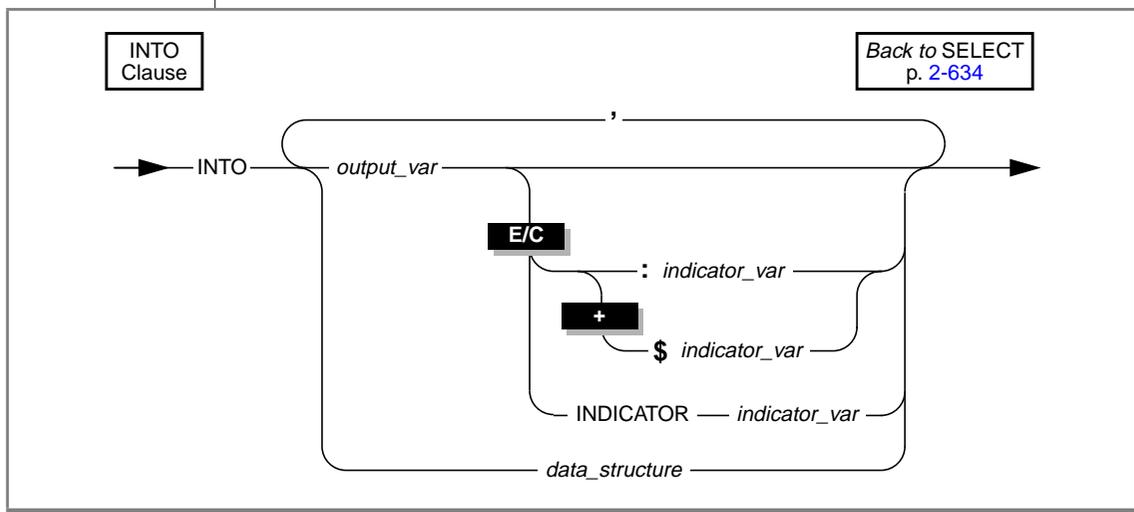
Usage Restrictions with Certain Database Objects

If you are creating a temporary table, you must supply a display label for any columns that are not simple column expressions. The display label is used as the name of the column in the temporary table.

If you are using the SELECT statement in creating a view, do not use display labels. Specify the desired label names in the CREATE VIEW column list instead.

INTO Clause

Use the INTO clause in an SPL routine or an ESQL/C program to specify the program variables or host variables to receive the data that the SELECT statement retrieves. The following diagram shows the syntax of the INTO clause.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>data_structure</i>	Structure that was declared as a host variable	The individual elements of the structure must be matched appropriately to the data type of values being selected.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for data structures.
<i>indicator_var</i>	Program variable that receives a return code if null data is placed in the corresponding <i>output_var</i>	This parameter is optional, but you should use an indicator variable if the possibility exists that the value of the corresponding <i>output_var</i> is null.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

(1 of 2)

SELECT

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>output_var</i>	<p>Program variable or host variable</p> <p>This variable receives the value of the corresponding item in the select list of the SELECT clause.</p> <p>This variable can be a collection variable.</p>	<p>The order of receiving variables in the INTO clause must match the order of the corresponding items in the select list of the SELECT clause.</p> <p>The number of receiving variables must be equal to the number of items in the select list.</p> <p>The data type of each receiving variable should agree with the data type of the corresponding column or expression in the select list.</p> <p>For the actions that the database server takes when the data type of the receiving variable does not match that of the selected item, see “Warnings in ESQL/C” on page 2-649.</p>	<p>Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.</p>

(2 of 2)

You must specify an INTO clause with SELECT to name the variables that receive the values that the query returns. If the query returns more than one value, the values are returned into the list of variables in the order in which you specify them.

If the SELECT statement stands alone (that is, it is not part of a DECLARE statement and does not use the INTO clause), it must be a singleton SELECT statement. A *singleton* SELECT statement returns only one row.

The following example shows a singleton SELECT statement in ESQL/C:

```
EXEC SQL select fname, lname, company_name
into :p_fname, :p_lname, :p_coname
where customer_num = 101;
```

SPL

In an SPL routine, if a SELECT returns more than one row, you must use the FOREACH statement to access the rows individually. The INTO clause of the SELECT statement holds the fetched values. For more information, see [“FOREACH” on page 3-30](#). ♦

INTO Clause with Indicator Variables

In ESQL/C, if the possibility exists that data returned from the SELECT statement is null, use an indicator variable in the INTO clause. For more information about indicator variables, see the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

INTO Clause with Cursors

If the SELECT statement returns more than one row, you must use a cursor in a FETCH statement to fetch the rows individually. You can put the INTO clause in the FETCH statement rather than in the SELECT statement, but you should not put it in both.

The following ESQL/C code examples show different ways you can use the INTO clause. As both examples show, first you must use the DECLARE statement to declare a cursor.

Using the INTO clause in the SELECT statement

```
EXEC SQL declare q_curs cursor for
    select lname, company
        into :p_lname, :p_company
        from customer;
EXEC SQL open q_curs;
while (SQLCODE == 0)
    EXEC SQL fetch q_curs;
EXEC SQL close q_curs;
```

Using the INTO clause in the FETCH statement

```
EXEC SQL declare q_curs cursor for
    select lname, company
        from customer;
EXEC SQL open q_curs;
while (SQLCODE == 0)
    EXEC SQL fetch q_curs into :p_lname, :p_company;
EXEC SQL close q_curs;
```

E/C

Preparing a SELECT...INTO Query

In ESQL/C, you cannot prepare a query that has an INTO clause. You can prepare the query without the INTO clause, declare a cursor for the prepared query, open the cursor, and then use the FETCH statement with an INTO clause to fetch the cursor into the program variable. Alternatively, you can declare a cursor for the query without first preparing the query and include the INTO clause in the query when you declare the cursor. Then open the cursor, and fetch the cursor without using the INTO clause of the FETCH statement.

E/C

Using Array Variables with the INTO Clause

In ESQL/C, if you use a DECLARE statement with a SELECT statement that contains an INTO clause, and the program variable is an array element, you can identify individual elements of the array with integer constants or with variables. The value of the variable that is used as a subscript is determined when the cursor is declared, so afterward the subscript variable acts as a constant.

The following ESQL/C code example declares a cursor for a SELECT...INTO statement using the variables **i** and **j** as subscripts for the array **a**. After you declare the cursor, the INTO clause of the SELECT statement is equivalent to INTO a[5], a[2].

```
i = 5
j = 2
EXEC SQL declare c cursor for
    select order_num, po_num into :a[i], :a[j] from orders
    where order_num =1005 and po_num =2865
```

You can also use program variables in the FETCH statement to specify an element of a program array in the INTO clause. With the FETCH statement, the program variables are evaluated at each fetch rather than when you declare the cursor.

Error Checking

If the data type of the receiving variable does not match that of the selected item, the data type of the selected item is converted, if possible. If the conversion is impossible, an error occurs, and a negative value is returned in the status variable, **sqlca.sqlcode**, **SQLCODE**. In this case, the value in the program variable is unpredictable.

ANSI

In an ANSI-compliant database, if the number of variables that are listed in the INTO clause differs from the number of items in the SELECT clause, you receive an error. ♦

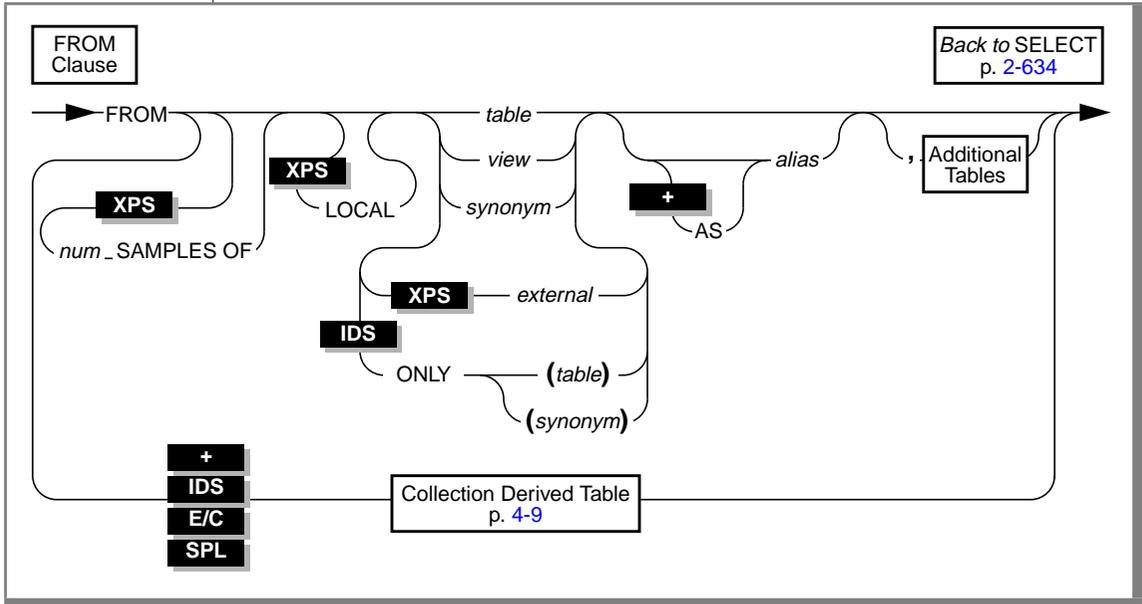
E/C

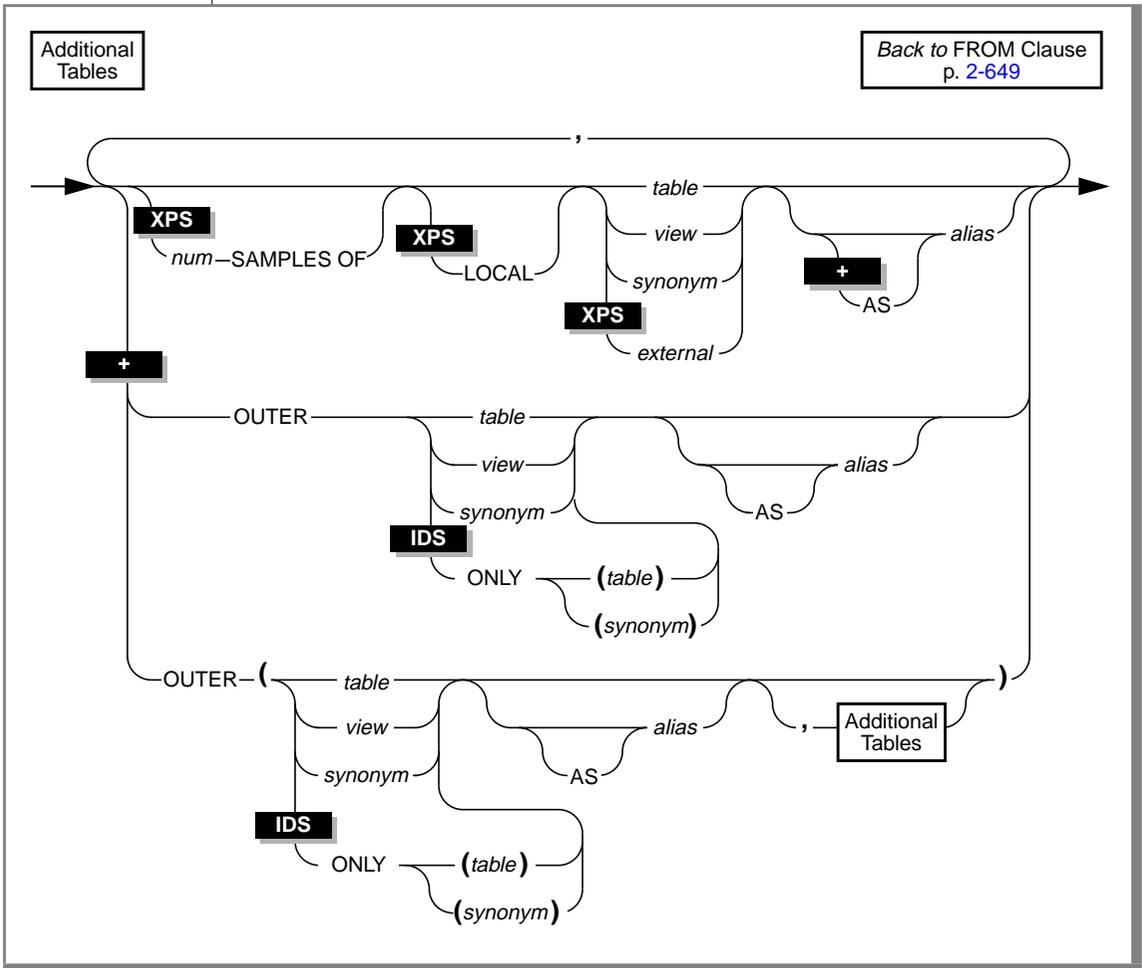
Warnings in ESQL/C

In ESQL/C, if the number of variables that are listed in the INTO clause differs from the number of items in the SELECT clause, a warning is returned in the **sqlwarn** structure: **sqlca.sqlwarn.sqlwarn3**. The actual number of variables that are transferred is the lesser of the two numbers. For information about the **sqlwarn** structure, see the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

FROM Clause

The FROM clause lists the table or tables from which you are selecting the data. The following diagrams show the syntax of the FROM clause.





SELECT

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>alias</i>	Temporary alternative name for a table or view within the scope of a SELECT statement You can use aliases to make a query shorter.	If the SELECT statement is a self-join, you must list the table name twice in the FROM clause and assign a different alias to each occurrence of the table name. If you use a potentially ambiguous word as an alias, you must precede the alias with the keyword AS. For further information on this restriction, see “AS Keyword with Aliases” on page 2-652 .	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>external</i>	Name of the external table from which you want to retrieve data	The external table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>num</i>	Number of sample rows to return	The value must be an unsigned integer greater than 0. If the value specified is greater than the number of rows in the table, the whole table is scanned.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>synonym</i>	Name of the synonym from which you want to retrieve data	The synonym and the table to which the synonym points must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of the table from which you want to retrieve data	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>view</i>	Name of the view from which you want to retrieve data	The view must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Use the keyword OUTER to form outer joins. Outer joins preserve rows that otherwise would be discarded by simple joins. If you have a complex outer join, that is, the query has more than one outer join, you must embed the additional outer join or joins in parentheses as the syntax diagram shows. For more information on outer joins, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

When one of the tables to be joined is a collection, the FROM clause cannot have a join. This restriction applies when you use a collection variable to hold your collection derived table. For more information, see [“Collection Derived Table” on page 4-9](#).

You can supply an alias for a table name or view name in the FROM clause. If you do so, you must use the alias to refer to the table or view in other clauses of the SELECT statement. Aliases are especially useful with a self-join. For more information about self-joins, see [“WHERE Clause” on page 2-658](#).

The following example shows typical uses of the FROM clause. The first query selects all the columns and rows from the **customer** table. The second query uses a join between the **customer** and **orders** table to select all the customers who have placed orders.

```
SELECT * FROM customer

SELECT fname, lname, order_num
   FROM customer, orders
   WHERE customer.customer_num = orders.customer_num
```

The following example is the same as the second query in the preceding example, except that it establishes aliases for the tables in the FROM clause and uses them in the WHERE clause:

```
SELECT fname, lname, order_num
   FROM customer c, orders o
   WHERE c.customer_num = o.customer_num
```

The following example uses the OUTER keyword to create an outer join and produce a list of all customers and their orders, regardless of whether they have placed orders:

```
SELECT c.customer_num, lname, order_num
   FROM customer c, OUTER orders o
   WHERE c.customer_num = o.customer_num
```

AS Keyword with Aliases

To use potentially ambiguous words as an alias for a table or view, you must precede them with the keyword AS. Use the AS keyword if you want to use the words ORDER, FOR, AT, GROUP, HAVING, INTO, UNION, WHERE, WITH, CREATE, or GRANT as an alias for a table or view.

If you do not assign an alias name to a collection derived table, the database server assigns an implementation-dependent name to it.

IDS

Using the ONLY Keyword

If you use the SELECT statement to query a supertable, rows from both the supertable and its subtables are returned. To query rows from the supertable only, you must include the ONLY keyword in the FROM clause, as shown in the following example:

```
SELECT *
FROM ONLY(super_tab)
```

XPS

Restrictions on Using External Tables in Joins and Subqueries

In Extended Parallel Server, when you use external tables in joins or subqueries, the following restrictions apply:

- Only one external table is allowed in a query.
- The external table cannot be the outer table in an outer join.
- For subqueries that cannot be converted to joins, you can use an external table in the main query, but not the subquery.
- You cannot do a self join on an external table.

For more information on subqueries, refer to your [Performance Guide](#).

XPS

LOCAL Keyword

In Extended Parallel Server, the LOCAL table feature allows client applications to read data only from the *local* fragments of a table. In other words, it allows the application to read only the fragments that reside on the coserver to which the client is connected.

This feature provides application partitioning. An application can connect to multiple coservers, execute a LOCAL read on each coserver, and assemble the final result on the client machine.

You qualify the name of a table with the LOCAL keyword to indicate that you want to retrieve rows from fragments only on the local coserver. The LOCAL keyword has no effect on data that is retrieved from nonfragmented tables.

When a query involves a join, you must plan carefully if you want to extract data that the client can aggregate. The simplest way to ensure that a join will retrieve data suitable for aggregation is to limit the number of LOCAL tables to one. The client can then aggregate data with respect to that table.

The following example shows a query that returns data suitable for aggregation by the client:

```
SELECT x.col1, y.col2
       FROM LOCAL tab1 x, tab2 y{can be aggregated by client}
       INTO TEMP t1
       WHERE x.col1 = y.col1;{tab1 is local}
```

The following example shows data that the client cannot aggregate:

```
SELECT x.col1, y.col2
       FROM LOCAL tab1 x, LOCAL tab2 y{cannot be aggregated by
                                     client}
       INTO SCRATCH s4
       WHERE x.col1 = y.col1;{tab1 and tab2 are local}
```

The client must submit exactly the same query to each coserver to retrieve data that can be aggregated.

XPS

Sampled Queries: the SAMPLES OF Option

In Extended Parallel Server, *sampled queries* are supported. Sampled queries are queries that are based on *sampled tables*. A sampled table is the result of randomly selecting a specified number of rows from the table, rather than all rows that match the selection criteria.

You can use a sampled query to gather quickly an approximate profile of data within a large table. If you use a sufficiently large sample size, you can examine trends in the data by sampling the data instead of scanning all the data. In such cases, sampled queries can provide better performance than scanning the data.

To indicate that a table is to be sampled, specify the number of samples to return in the SAMPLES OF option of the FROM clause within the SELECT statement. You can run sampled queries against tables and synonyms, but not against views. Sampled queries are not supported in the INSERT, DELETE, UPDATE, or other SQL statements.

A sampled query has at least one sampled table. You do not need to sample all tables in a sampled query. You can specify the SAMPLES OF option for some tables in the FROM clause but not specify it for other tables.

The sampling method is known as *sampling without replacement*. This term means that a sampled row is not sampled again. The database server applies selection criteria *after* samples are selected. Therefore, the database server uses the selection criteria to restrict the sample set, not the rows from which it takes the sample.

If a table is fragmented, the database server divides the specified number of samples among the fragments. The number of samples from a fragment is proportional to the ratio of the size of a fragment to the size of the table. In other words, the database server takes more samples from larger fragments.



Important: *You must run UPDATE STATISTICS LOW before you run the query with the SAMPLES OF option. If you do not run UPDATE STATISTICS, the SAMPLE clause is ignored, and all data is returned. For better results, Informix recommends that you run UPDATE STATISTICS MEDIUM before you run the query with the SAMPLES OF option.*

The results of a sampled query will contain a certain amount of deviation from a complete scan of all rows. However, you can reduce this expected error to an acceptable level by increasing the proportion of sampled rows to actual rows. When you use sampled queries in joins, the expected error increases dramatically; you must use larger samples in each table to retain an acceptable level of accuracy.

For example, you might want to generate a list of how many of each part is sold from the **parts_sold** table, which is known to contain approximately 100,000,000 rows. The following query provides a sampling ratio of one percent and returns an approximate result:

```
SELECT part_number, COUNT(*) * 100 AS how_many
   FROM 1000000 SAMPLES OF parts_sold
  GROUP BY part_number;
```

IDS

Selecting From a Collection Variable

The SELECT statement in conjunction with the Collection Derived Table segment allows you to select elements from a collection variable.

The Collection Derived Table segment identifies the collection variable from which to select the elements. For more information, see [“Collection Derived Table” on page 4-9](#).

Using Collection Variables with SELECT

When you want to modify the contents of a collection, you can use the SELECT statement with a collection variable in different ways:

- You can select the contents (if any) of a collection column into a collection variable.

You can assign the data type of the column to the collection variable if the collection is of type COLLECTION (that is, an untyped collection variable).

- You can select the contents from a collection variable to determine the data that you might want to update.
- You can select the contents from a collection variable INTO another variable in order to update certain collection elements.

The INTO clause identifies the variable for the element value that is selected from the collection variable. The type of the host variable in the INTO clause must be compatible with the element type of the collection.

- You can use a collection cursor to select one or more elements from an ESQL/C collection variable. For more information, including restrictions on the SELECT statement that you use, see [“Associating a Cursor With a Collection Variable” on page 2-367](#) in the DECLARE statement. ♦
- You can use a collection cursor to select one or more elements from an SPL collection variable. For more information, including restrictions on the SELECT statement that you use, see [“Using a SELECT...INTO Statement” on page 3-33](#) of the FOREACH statement. ♦

For more information, see the Collection Derived Table segment and the INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE statements.

E/C

SPL

Selecting From a Row Variable

The SELECT statement with the Collection Derived Table segment allows you to select fields from a **row** variable. The Collection Derived Table segment identifies the **row** variable from which to select the fields. For more information, see [“Collection Derived Table” on page 4-9](#).

To select fields, follow these steps:

1. Create a **row** variable in your ESQL/C program.
2. Optionally, fill the **row** variable with field values.
You can select a row-type column into the **row** variable with the SELECT statement (without the Collection Derived Table segment). Or you can insert field values into the **row** variable with the UPDATE statement and the Collection Derived Table segment.
3. Select row fields from the **row** variable with the SELECT statement and the Collection Derived Table segment.
4. Once the **row** variable contains the correct field values, you can then use the INSERT or UPDATE statement on a table or view name to save the contents of the **row** variable in a row column (named and unnamed).

The SELECT statement and the Collection Derived Table segment allow you to select a particular field or group of fields in the **row** variable. The INTO clause identifies the variable that holds the field value selected from the **row** variable. The data type of the host variable in the INTO clause must be compatible with the field type.

For example, the following code fragment puts the value of the **width** field into the **rect_width** host variable:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
      row (x int, y int, length float, width float) myrect;
      double rect_width;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
...
EXEC SQL select rect into :myrect from rectangles
      where area = 200;
EXEC SQL select width into :rect_width from table(:myrect);
```

The SELECT statement on a **row** variable has the following restrictions:

- No expressions are allowed in the select list.
- Row columns cannot be specified in a comparison condition in a WHERE clause.
- The select list must be an asterisk (*) if the row-type contains fields of opaque, distinct, or built-in data types.
- Column names in the select list must be simple column names.
These columns cannot use the syntax *database@server:table.column*
- The following SELECT clauses are not allowed: GROUP BY, HAVING, INTO TEMP, ORDER BY, and WHERE.
- The FROM clause has no provisions to do a join.

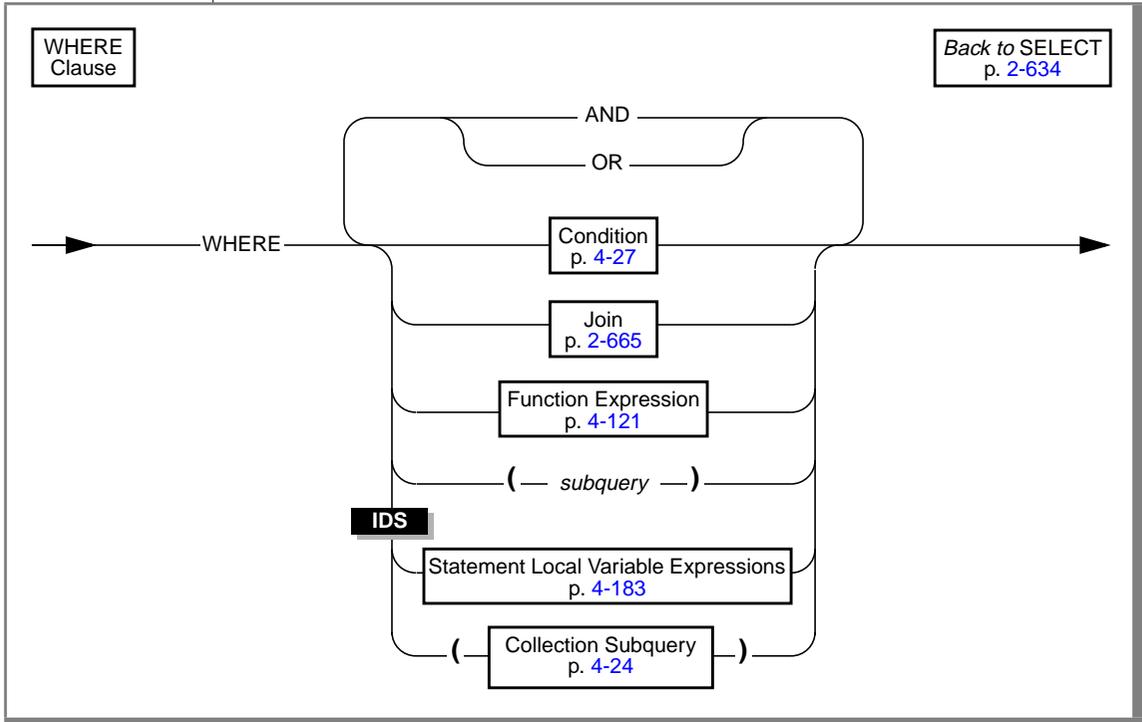
You can modify the **row** variable with the Collection Derived Table segment of the UPDATE statements. (The INSERT and DELETE statements do not support a row variable in the Collection Derived Table segment.) The **row** variable stores the fields of the row. However, it has no intrinsic connection with a database column. Once the **row** variable contains the correct field values, you must then save the variable into the row column with one of the following SQL statements:

- To update the row column in the table with the row variable, use an UPDATE statement on a table or view name and specify the row variable in the SET clause.
For more information, see [“Updating Row-Type Columns” on page 2-826](#).
- To insert a row in a column, use the INSERT statement on a table or view name and specify the row variable in the VALUES clause.
For more information, see [“Inserting Values into Row-Type Columns” on page 2-546](#).

For more information on how to use SPL row variables, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#). For more information on how to use ESQ/C **row** variables, see the discussion of complex data types in the [Informix ESQ/C Programmer’s Manual](#).

WHERE Clause

Use the WHERE clause to specify search criteria and join conditions on the data that you are selecting.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>subquery</i>	Embedded query	The subquery cannot contain either the FIRST or the ORDER BY clause.	SELECT, p. 2-634

Using a Condition in the WHERE Clause

You can use the following kinds of simple conditions or comparisons in the WHERE clause:

- Relational-operator condition
- BETWEEN
- IN
- IS NULL
- LIKE or MATCHES

You also can use a SELECT statement within the WHERE clause; this is called a *subquery*. The following list contains the kinds of subquery WHERE clauses:

- IN
- EXISTS
- ALL, ANY, SOME

Examples of each type of condition are shown in the following sections. For more information about each kind of condition, see [“Condition” on page 27](#).

You cannot use an aggregate function in the WHERE clause unless it is part of a subquery or if the aggregate is on a correlated column originating from a parent query and the WHERE clause is within a subquery that is within a HAVING clause.

Relational-Operator Condition

For a complete description of the relational-operator condition, see [“Relational-Operator Condition” on page 4-32](#).

A relational-operator condition is satisfied when the expressions on either side of the relational operator fulfill the relation that the operator set up. The following SELECT statements use the greater than (>) and equal (=) relational operators:

```
SELECT order_num FROM orders
      WHERE order_date > '6/04/98'
```

```
SELECT fname, lname, company
      FROM customer
      WHERE city[1,3] = 'San'
```

BETWEEN Condition

For a complete description of the BETWEEN condition, see [“BETWEEN Condition” on page 4-33](#).

The BETWEEN condition is satisfied when the value to the left of the BETWEEN keyword lies in the inclusive range of the two values on the right of the BETWEEN keyword. The first two queries in the following example use literal values after the BETWEEN keyword. The third query uses the built-in CURRENT function and a literal interval. It looks for dates between the current day and seven days earlier.

```
SELECT stock_num, manu_code FROM stock
       WHERE unit_price BETWEEN 125.00 AND 200.00

SELECT DISTINCT customer_num, stock_num, manu_code
       FROM orders, items
       WHERE order_date BETWEEN '6/1/97' AND '9/1/97'

SELECT * FROM cust_calls WHERE call_dtime
       BETWEEN (CURRENT - INTERVAL(7) DAY TO DAY) AND CURRENT
```

IN Condition

For a complete description of the IN condition, see [“IN Subquery” on page 4-41](#).

The IN condition is satisfied when the expression to the left of the IN keyword is included in the list of values to the right of the keyword. The following examples show the IN condition:

```
SELECT lname, fname, company
       FROM customer
       WHERE state IN ('CA', 'WA', 'NJ')

SELECT * FROM cust_calls
       WHERE user_id NOT IN (USER )
```

IS NULL Condition

For a complete description of the IS NULL condition, see [“IS NULL Condition” on page 4-36](#).

The IS NULL condition is satisfied if the column contains a null value. If you use the NOT option, the condition is satisfied when the column contains a value that is not null. The following example selects the order numbers and customer numbers for which the order has not been paid:

```
SELECT order_num, customer_num FROM orders
WHERE paid_date IS NULL
```

LIKE or MATCHES Condition

For a complete description of the LIKE or MATCHES condition, see [“LIKE and MATCHES Condition” on page 4-36](#).

The LIKE or MATCHES condition is satisfied when either of the following tests is true:

- The value of the column that precedes the LIKE or MATCHES keyword matches the pattern that the quoted string specifies. You can use wildcard characters in the string.
- The value of the column that precedes the LIKE or MATCHES keyword matches the pattern that is specified by the column that follows the LIKE or MATCHES keyword. The value of the column on the right serves as the matching pattern in the condition.

The following SELECT statement returns all rows in the **customer** table in which the **lname** column begins with the literal string 'Baxter'. Because the string is a literal string, the condition is case sensitive.

```
SELECT * FROM customer WHERE lname LIKE 'Baxter%'
```

The following SELECT statement returns all rows in the **customer** table in which the value of the **lname** column matches the value of the **fname** column:

```
SELECT * FROM customer WHERE lname LIKE fname
```

The following examples use the LIKE condition with a wildcard. The first SELECT statement finds all stock items that are some kind of ball. The second SELECT statement finds all company names that contain a percent sign (%). The backslash (\) is used as the standard escape character for the wildcard percent sign (%). The third SELECT statement uses the ESCAPE option with the LIKE condition to retrieve rows from the **customer** table in which the **company** column includes a percent sign (%). The z is used as an escape character for the wildcard percent sign (%).

```
SELECT stock_num, manu_code FROM stock
    WHERE description LIKE '%ball'

SELECT * FROM customer
    WHERE company LIKE '%\%%'

SELECT * FROM customer
    WHERE company LIKE '%z%%' ESCAPE 'z'
```

The following examples use MATCHES with a wildcard in several SELECT statements. The first SELECT statement finds all stock items that are some kind of ball. The second SELECT statement finds all company names that contain an asterisk (*). The backslash (\) is used as the standard escape character for the wildcard asterisk (*). The third statement uses the ESCAPE option with the MATCHES condition to retrieve rows from the **customer** table where the **company** column includes an asterisk (*). The z character is used as an escape character for the wildcard asterisk (*).

```
SELECT stock_num, manu_code FROM stock
    WHERE description MATCHES '*ball'

SELECT * FROM customer
    WHERE company MATCHES '*\**'

SELECT * FROM customer
    WHERE company MATCHES '*z**' ESCAPE 'z'
```

IN Subquery

For a complete description of the IN subquery, see [“IN Condition” on page 4-34](#).

With the IN subquery, more than one row can be returned, but only one column can be returned. The following example shows the use of an IN subquery in a SELECT statement:

```
SELECT DISTINCT customer_num FROM orders
WHERE order_num NOT IN
  (SELECT order_num FROM items
   WHERE stock_num = 1)
```

EXISTS Subquery

For a complete description of the EXISTS subquery, see [“EXISTS Subquery” on page 4-42](#).

With the EXISTS subquery, one or more columns can be returned.

The following example of a SELECT statement with an EXISTS subquery returns the stock number and manufacturer code for every item that has never been ordered (and is therefore not listed in the **items** table). It is appropriate to use an EXISTS subquery in this SELECT statement because you need the correlated subquery to test both **stock_num** and **manu_code** in the **items** table.

```
SELECT stock_num, manu_code FROM stock
WHERE NOT EXISTS
  (SELECT stock_num, manu_code FROM items
   WHERE stock.stock_num = items.stock_num AND
         stock.manu_code = items.manu_code)
```

The preceding example would work equally well if you use a SELECT * in the subquery in place of the column names because you are testing for the existence of a row or rows.

ALL, ANY, SOME Subquery

For a complete description of the ALL, ANY, SOME subquery, see [“ALL, ANY, SOME Subquery” on page 4-43](#).

In the following example, the `SELECT` statements return the order number of all orders that contain an item whose total price is greater than the total price of every item in order number 1023. The first `SELECT` statement uses the `ALL` subquery, and the second `SELECT` statement produces the same result by using the `MAX` aggregate function.

```
SELECT DISTINCT order_num FROM items
  WHERE total_price > ALL (SELECT total_price FROM items
                          WHERE order_num = 1023)

SELECT DISTINCT order_num FROM items
  WHERE total_price > SELECT MAX(total_price) FROM items
                     WHERE order_num = 1023)
```

The following `SELECT` statements return the order number of all orders that contain an item whose total price is greater than the total price of at least one of the items in order number 1023. The first `SELECT` statement uses the `ANY` keyword, and the second `SELECT` statement uses the `MIN` aggregate function.

```
SELECT DISTINCT order_num FROM items
  WHERE total_price > ANY (SELECT total_price FROM items
                          WHERE order_num = 1023)

SELECT DISTINCT order_num FROM items
  WHERE total_price > (SELECT MIN(total_price) FROM items
                     WHERE order_num = 1023)
```

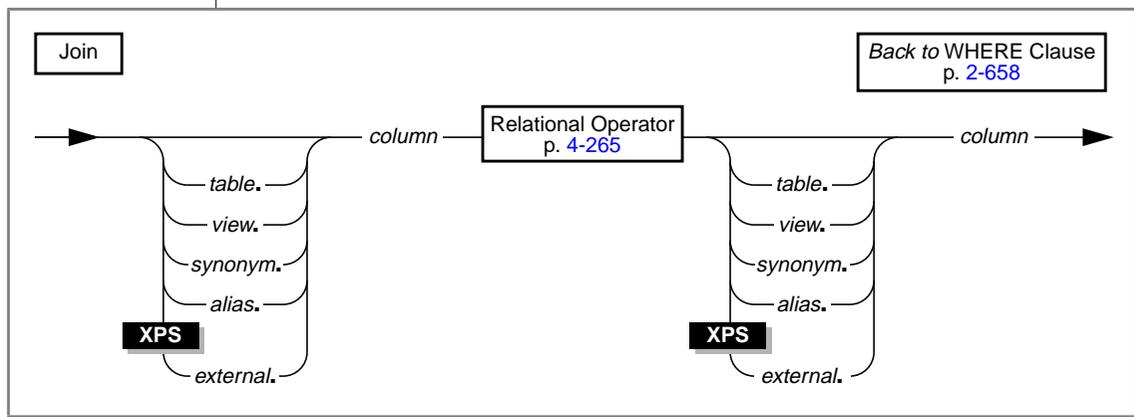
You can omit the keywords `ANY`, `ALL`, or `SOME` in a subquery if you know that the subquery returns exactly one value. If you omit `ANY`, `ALL`, or `SOME`, and the subquery returns more than one value, you receive an error. The subquery in the following example returns only one row because it uses an aggregate function:

```
SELECT order_num FROM items
  WHERE stock_num = 9 AND quantity =
        (SELECT MAX(quantity) FROM items WHERE stock_num = 9)
```

Using a Join in the WHERE Clause

You join two tables when you create a relationship in the `WHERE` clause between at least one column from one table and at least one column from another table. The effect of the join is to create a temporary composite table where each pair of rows (one from each table) that satisfies the join condition is linked to form a single row. You can create two-table joins, multiple-table joins, and self-joins.

The following diagram shows the syntax for a join.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>alias</i>	Temporary alternative name assigned to the table or view in the FROM clause For more information on aliases for tables and views, see “FROM Clause” on page 2-649.	If the tables to be joined are the same table (that is, if the join is a self-join), you must refer to each instance of the table in the WHERE clause by the alias assigned to that table instance in the FROM clause.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>column</i>	Name of a column from one of the tables or views to be joined Rows from the tables or views are joined when there is a match between the values of the specified columns.	When the specified columns have the same name in the tables or views to be joined, you must distinguish the columns by preceding each column name with the name or alias of the table or view in which the column resides.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>external</i>	Name of the external table from which you want to retrieve data	The external table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>synonym</i>	Name of the synonym to be joined	The synonym and the table to which the synonym points must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of the table to be joined	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>view</i>	Name of the view to be joined	The view must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50



Two-Table Joins

The following example shows a two-table join:

```
SELECT order_num, lname, fname
   FROM customer, orders
  WHERE customer.customer_num = orders.customer_num
```

Tip: You do not have to specify the column where the two tables are joined in the *SELECT* list.

Multiple-Table Joins

A multiple-table join is a join of more than two tables. Its structure is similar to the structure of a two-table join, except that you have a join condition for more than one pair of tables in the *WHERE* clause. When columns from different tables have the same name, you must distinguish them by preceding the name with its associated table or table alias, as in *table.column*. For the full syntax of a table name, see “[Database Object Name](#)” on page 4-50.

The following multiple-table join yields the company name of the customer who ordered an item as well as the stock number and manufacturer code of the item:

```
SELECT DISTINCT company, stock_num, manu_code
   FROM customer c, orders o, items i
  WHERE c.customer_num = o.customer_num
        AND o.order_num = i.order_num
```

Self-Joins

You can join a table to itself. To do so, you must list the table name twice in the *FROM* clause and assign it two different table aliases. Use the aliases to refer to each of the *two* tables in the *WHERE* clause.

The following example is a self-join on the **stock** table. It finds pairs of stock items whose unit prices differ by a factor greater than 2.5. The letters *x* and *y* are each aliases for the **stock** table.

```
SELECT x.stock_num, x.manu_code, y.stock_num, y.manu_code
   FROM stock x, stock y
  WHERE x.unit_price > 2.5 * y.unit_price
```

If you are using Extended Parallel Server, you cannot use a self-join with an external table. ♦

Outer Joins

The following outer join lists the company name of the customer and all associated order numbers, if the customer has placed an order. If not, the company name is still listed, and a null value is returned for the order number.

```
SELECT company, order_num
   FROM customer c, OUTER orders o
  WHERE c.customer_num = o.customer_num
```

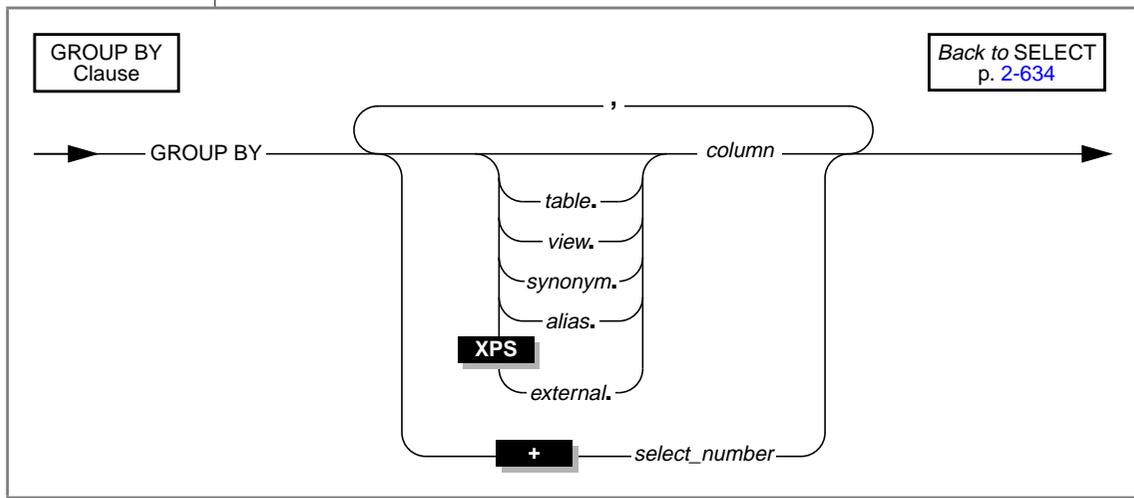
XPS

If you are using Extended Parallel Server, you cannot use an external table as the outer table in an outer join. ♦

For more information about outer joins, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

GROUP BY Clause

Use the GROUP BY clause to produce a single row of results for each group. A group is a set of rows that have the same values for each column listed.



SELECT

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>alias</i>	Temporary alternative name assigned to a table or view in the FROM clause For more information on aliases for tables and views, see “FROM Clause” on page 2-649 .	You cannot use an alias for a table or view in the GROUP BY clause unless you have assigned the alias to the table or view in the FROM clause.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>column</i>	Name of a stand-alone column in the select list of the SELECT clause or the name of one of the columns joined by an arithmetic operator in the select list The SELECT statement returns a single row of results for each group of rows that have the same value in <i>column</i> .	See “Relationship of the GROUP BY Clause to the SELECT Clause” on page 2-670 .	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>external</i>	Name of the external table from which you want to retrieve data	The external table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>select_number</i>	Integer that identifies a column or expression in the select list of the SELECT clause by specifying its order in the select list The SELECT statement returns a single row of results for each group of rows that have the same value in the column or expression identified by <i>select_number</i> .	See “Using Select Numbers” on page 2-671 .	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>synonym</i>	Name of the synonym where the column or columns exist	The synonym and the table to which the synonym points must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of the table where the column or columns exist	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>view</i>	Name of the view where the column or columns exist	The view must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Relationship of the GROUP BY Clause to the SELECT Clause

A GROUP BY clause restricts what you can enter in the SELECT clause. If you use a GROUP BY clause, each column that you select must be in the GROUP BY list. If you use an aggregate function and one or more column expressions in the select list, you must put all the column names that are not used as part of an aggregate or time expression in the GROUP BY clause. Do not put constant expressions or BYTE or TEXT column expressions in the GROUP BY list.

If you are selecting a BYTE or TEXT column, you cannot use the GROUP BY clause. In addition, you cannot use ROWID in a GROUP BY clause.

If your select list includes a column with a user-defined data type, the type must either use the built-in bit-hashing function or have its own user-defined hash function. Otherwise, you cannot use a GROUP BY clause. ♦

The following example names one column that is not in an aggregate expression. The **total_price** column should not be in the GROUP BY list because it appears as the argument of an aggregate function. The COUNT and SUM keywords are applied to each group, not the whole query set.

```
SELECT order_num, COUNT(*), SUM(total_price)
FROM items
GROUP BY order_num
```

If a column stands alone in a column expression in the select list, you must use it in the GROUP BY clause. If a column is combined with another column by an arithmetic operator, you can choose to group by the individual columns or by the combined expression using a specific number.

Using Select Numbers

You can use one or more integers in the GROUP BY clause to stand for column expressions. In the following example, the first SELECT statement uses select numbers for **order_date** and **paid_date - order_date** in the GROUP BY clause. Note that you can group only by a combined expression using the select-number notation. In the second SELECT statement, you cannot replace the 2 with the expression **paid_date - order_date**.

```
SELECT order_date, COUNT(*), paid_date - order_date
   FROM orders
   GROUP BY 1, 3
```

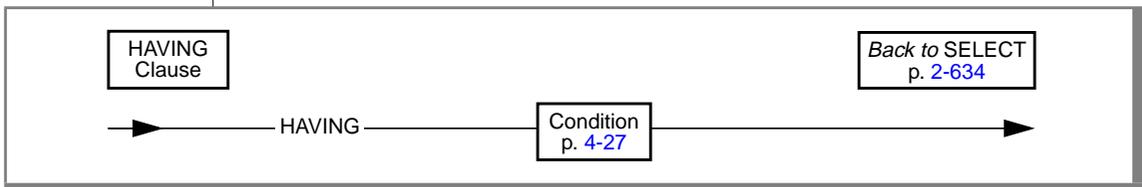
```
SELECT order_date, paid_date - order_date
   FROM orders
   GROUP BY order_date, 2
```

Nulls in the GROUP BY Clause

Each row that contains a null value in a column that is specified by a GROUP BY clause belongs to a single group (that is, all null values are grouped together).

HAVING Clause

Use the HAVING clause to apply one or more qualifying conditions to groups.



In the following examples, each condition compares one calculated property of the group with another calculated property of the group or with a constant. The first SELECT statement uses a HAVING clause that compares the calculated expression COUNT(*) with the constant 2. The query returns the average total price per item on all orders that have more than two items. The second SELECT statement lists customers and the call months if they have made two or more calls in the same month.

```
SELECT order_num, AVG(total_price) FROM items
      GROUP BY order_num
      HAVING COUNT(*) > 2
```

```
SELECT customer_num, EXTEND (call_dtime, MONTH TO MONTH)
      FROM cust_calls
      GROUP BY 1, 2
      HAVING COUNT(*) > 1
```

You can use the HAVING clause to place conditions on the GROUP BY column values as well as on calculated values. The following example returns the **customer_num**, **call_dtime** (in full year-to-fraction format), and **cust_code**, and groups them by **call_code** for all calls that have been received from customers with **customer_num** less than 120:

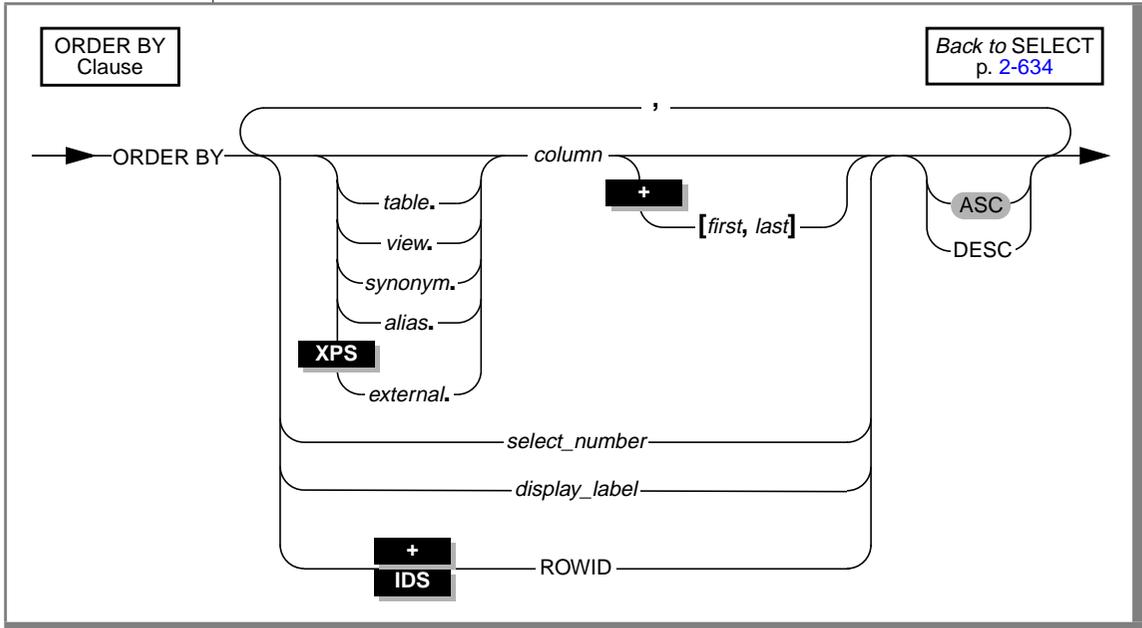
```
SELECT customer_num, EXTEND (call_dtime), call_code
      FROM cust_calls
      GROUP BY call_code, 2, 1
      HAVING customer_num < 120
```

The HAVING clause generally complements a GROUP BY clause. If you use a HAVING clause without a GROUP BY clause, the HAVING clause applies to all rows that satisfy the query. Without a GROUP BY clause, all rows in the table make up a single group. The following example returns the average price of all the values in the table, as long as more than ten rows are in the table:

```
SELECT AVG(total_price) FROM items
      HAVING COUNT(*) > 10
```

ORDER BY Clause

Use THE ORDER BY clause to sort query results by the values that are contained in one or more columns.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>alias</i>	Alias assigned to a table or view in the FROM clause For more information on aliases for tables and views, see “FROM Clause” on page 2-649.	You cannot specify an alias for a table or view in the ORDER BY clause unless you have assigned the alias to the table or view in the FROM clause.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	<p>Name of a column in the specified table or view</p> <p>The query results are sorted by the values contained in this column.</p>	<p>A column specified in the ORDER BY clause must be listed explicitly or implicitly in the select list of the SELECT clause.</p> <p>If you want to order the query results by a derived column, you must supply a display label for the derived column in the select list and specify this label in the ORDER BY clause. Alternatively, you can omit a display label for the derived column in the select list and specify the derived column by means of a select number in the ORDER BY clause.</p> <p>This cannot be a column whose data type is a collection.</p>	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>display_label</i>	<p>Temporary name that you assign to a column in the select list of the SELECT clause</p> <p>You can use a display label in place of the column name in the ORDER BY clause.</p>	You cannot specify a display label in the ORDER BY clause unless you have specified this display label for a column in the select list.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>external</i>	Name of the external table from which you want to retrieve data	The external table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>first</i>	Position of the first character in the portion of the column that is used to sort the query results	The column must be one of the following character types: BYTE, CHAR, NCHAR, NVARCHAR, TEXT, or VARCHAR.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>last</i>	Position of the last character in the portion of the column that is used to sort the query results	The column must be one of the following character types: BYTE, CHAR, NCHAR, NVARCHAR, TEXT, or VARCHAR.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>select_number</i>	<p>Integer that identifies a column in the select list of the SELECT clause by specifying its order in the select list</p> <p>You can use a select number in place of a column name in the ORDER BY clause.</p>	You must specify select numbers in the ORDER BY clause when SELECT statements are joined by UNION or UNION ALL keywords or compatible columns in the same position have different names.	Literal Number, p. 4-237

SELECT

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>synonym</i>	Name of the synonym that contains the specified column	The synonym and the table to which the synonym points must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of the table that contains the specified column	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>view</i>	Name of the view that contains the specified column	The view must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

(3 of 3)

You can perform an ORDER BY operation on a column or on an aggregate expression when you use SELECT * or a display label in your SELECT statement.

The following query explicitly selects the order date and shipping date from the **orders** table and then rearranges the query by the order date. By default, the query results are listed in ascending order.

```
SELECT order_date, ship_date FROM orders
ORDER BY order_date
```

In the following query, the **order_date** column is selected implicitly by the SELECT * statement, so you can use **order_date** in the ORDER BY clause:

```
SELECT * FROM orders
ORDER BY order_date
```

Ordering by a Column Substring

You can order by a column substring instead of ordering by the entire length of the column. The column substring is the portion of the column that the database server uses for the sort. You define the column substring by specifying column subscripts (the *first* and *last* parameters). The column subscripts represent the starting and ending character positions of the column substring.

The following example shows a SELECT statement that queries the **customer** table and specifies a column substring in the ORDER BY column. The column substring instructs the database server to sort the query results by the portion of the **lname** column contained in the sixth through ninth positions of the column:

```
SELECT * from customer
      ORDER BY lname[6,9]
```

Assume that the value of **lname** in one row of the **customer** table is Greenburg. Because of the column substring in the ORDER BY clause, the database server determines the sort position of this row by using the value **burg**, not the value Greenburg.

You can specify column substrings only for columns that have a character data type. If you specify a column substring in the ORDER BY clause, the column must have one of the following data types: BYTE, CHAR, NCHAR, NVARCHAR, TEXT, or VARCHAR.

GLS

For information on the GLS aspects of using column substrings in the ORDER BY clause, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#). ♦

Ordering by a Derived Column

You can order by a derived column by supplying a display label in the SELECT clause, as shown in the following example:

```
SELECT paid_date - ship_date span, customer_num
      FROM orders
      ORDER BY span
```

Ascending and Descending Orders

You can use the ASC and DESC keywords to specify ascending (smallest value first) or descending (largest value first) order. The default order is ascending.

For DATE and DATETIME data types, *smallest* means earliest in time and *largest* means latest in time. For standard character data types, the ASCII collating sequence is used. For a listing of the collating sequence, see [“Collating Order for English Data” on page 4-267](#).

Nulls in the ORDER BY Clause

Nulls are ordered as less than values that are not null. Using the ASC order, the null value comes before the not-null value; using DESC order, the null comes last.

Nested Ordering

If you list more than one column in the ORDER BY clause, your query is ordered by a nested sort. The first level of sort is based on the first column; the second column determines the second level of sort. The following example of a nested sort selects all the rows in the **cust_calls** table and orders them by **call_code** and by **call_dtime** within **call_code**:

```
SELECT * FROM cust_calls
      ORDER BY call_code, call_dtime
```

Using Select Numbers

In place of column names, you can enter one or more integers that refer to the position of items in the SELECT clause. You can use a select number to order by an expression. For instance, the following example orders by the expression **paid_date - order_date** and **customer_num**, using select numbers in a nested sort:

```
SELECT order_num, customer_num, paid_date - order_date
      FROM orders
      ORDER BY 3, 2
```

Select numbers are required in the ORDER BY clause when SELECT statements are joined by the UNION or UNION ALL keywords or compatible columns in the same position have different names.

Ordering by Rowids

You can specify the **rowid** column as a column in the ORDER BY clause. The **rowid** column is a hidden column in nonfragmented tables and in fragmented tables that were created with the WITH ROWIDS clause. The **rowid** column contains a unique internal record number that is associated with a row in a table. Informix recommends, however, that you utilize primary keys as an access method rather than exploiting the **rowid** column.

If you want to specify the **rowid** column in the ORDER BY clause, enter the keyword ROWID in lowercase or uppercase letters.

You cannot specify the **rowid** column in the ORDER BY clause if the table from which you are selecting is a fragmented table that does not have a **rowid** column.

You cannot specify the **rowid** column in the ORDER BY clause unless you have included the **rowid** column in the select list of the SELECT clause.

For further information on how to use the **rowid** column in column expressions, see [“Expression” on page 4-73](#).

E/C

ORDER BY Clause with DECLARE

In ESQ/C, you cannot use a DECLARE statement with a FOR UPDATE clause to associate a cursor with a SELECT statement that has an ORDER BY clause.

Placing Indexes on ORDER BY Columns

When you include an ORDER BY clause in a SELECT statement, you can improve the performance of the query by creating an index on the column or columns that the ORDER BY clause specifies. The database server uses the index that you placed on the ORDER BY columns to sort the query results in the most efficient manner. For more information on how to create indexes that correspond to the columns of an ORDER BY clause, see [“Using the ASC and DESC Sort-Order Options” on page 2-164](#) under the CREATE INDEX statement.

FOR UPDATE Clause

Use the FOR UPDATE clause when you prepare a SELECT statement, and you intend to update the values returned by the SELECT statement when the values are fetched. Preparing a SELECT statement that contains a FOR UPDATE clause is equivalent to preparing the SELECT statement without the FOR UPDATE clause and then declaring a FOR UPDATE cursor for the prepared statement.

The FOR UPDATE keyword notifies the database server that updating is possible, causing it to use more-stringent locking than it would with a select cursor. You cannot modify data through a cursor without this clause. You can specify particular columns that can be updated.

After you declare a cursor for a SELECT... FOR UPDATE statement, you can update or delete the currently selected row using an UPDATE OR DELETE statement with the WHERE CURRENT OF clause. The words CURRENT OF refer to the row that was most recently fetched; they replace the usual test expressions in the WHERE clause.

To update rows with a particular value, your program might contain statements such as the sequence of statements shown in the following example:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char fname[ 16];
char lname[ 16];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

.
.
.

EXEC SQL connect to 'stores_demo';
/* select statement being prepared contains a for update clause */
EXEC SQL prepare x from 'select fname, lname from customer for update';
EXEC SQL declare xc cursor for x;

for (;;)
{
EXEC SQL fetch xc into $fname, $lname;
if (strncmp(SQLSTATE, '00', 2) != 0) break;
printf("%d %s %s\n",cnum, fname, lname );
if (cnum == 999)--update rows with 999 customer_num
EXEC SQL update customer set fname = 'rosey' where current of xc;
}

EXEC SQL close xc;
EXEC SQL disconnect current;
```

A SELECT...FOR UPDATE statement, like an update cursor, allows you to perform updates that are not possible with the UPDATE statement alone, because both the decision to update and the values of the new data items can be based on the original contents of the row. The UPDATE statement cannot interrogate the table that is being updated.

Syntax That is Incompatible with the FOR UPDATE Clause

A SELECT statement that uses a FOR UPDATE clause must conform to the following restrictions:

- The statement can select data from only one table.
- The statement cannot include any aggregate functions.
- The statement cannot include any of the following clauses or keywords: DISTINCT, FOR READ ONLY, GROUP BY, INTO SCRATCH, INTO TEMP, INTO EXTERNAL, ORDER BY, UNION, or UNIQUE.

For information on how to declare an update cursor for a SELECT statement that does not include a FOR UPDATE clause, see [“Using the FOR UPDATE Option” on page 2-355](#).

FOR READ ONLY Clause

Use the FOR READ ONLY clause to specify that the select cursor declared for the SELECT statement is a read-only cursor. A read-only cursor is a cursor that cannot modify data. This section provides the following information about the FOR READ ONLY clause:

- When you must use the FOR READ ONLY clause
- Syntax restrictions on a SELECT statement that uses a FOR READ ONLY clause

Using the FOR READ ONLY Clause in Read-Only Mode

Normally, you do not need to include the FOR READ ONLY clause in a SELECT statement. A SELECT statement is a read-only operation by definition, so the FOR READ ONLY clause is usually unnecessary. However, in certain special circumstances, you must include the FOR READ ONLY clause in a SELECT statement.

ANSI

If you have used the High-Performance Loader (HPL) in express mode to load data into the tables of an ANSI-compliant database, and you have not yet performed a level-0 backup of this data, the database is in read-only mode. When the database is in read-only mode, the database server rejects any attempts by a select cursor to access the data unless the SELECT or the DECLARE includes a FOR READ ONLY clause. This restriction remains in effect until the user has performed a level-0 backup of the data.

When the database is an ANSI-compliant database, select cursors are update cursors by default. An update cursor is a cursor that can be used to modify data. These update cursors are incompatible with the read-only mode of the database. For example, the following SELECT statement against the **customer_ansi** table fails:

```
EXEC SQL declare ansi_curs cursor for
select * from customer_ansi;
```

The solution is to include the FOR READ ONLY clause in your select cursors. The read-only cursor that this clause specifies is compatible with the read-only mode of the database. For example, the following SELECT FOR READ ONLY statement against the **customer_ansi** table succeeds:

```
EXEC SQL declare ansi_read cursor for
select * from customer_ansi for read only;
```

◆

DB

DB-Access executes all SELECT statements with select cursors. Therefore, you must include the FOR READ ONLY clause in all SELECT statements that access data in a read-only ANSI-mode database. The FOR READ ONLY clause causes DB-Access to declare the cursor for the SELECT statement as a read-only cursor. ◆

For more information on level-0 backups, see your *Backup and Restore Guide*. For more information on select cursors, read-only cursors, and update cursors, see [“DECLARE” on page 2-349](#).

IDS

For more information on the express mode of the HPL, see the [Guide to the High-Performance Loader](#). ◆

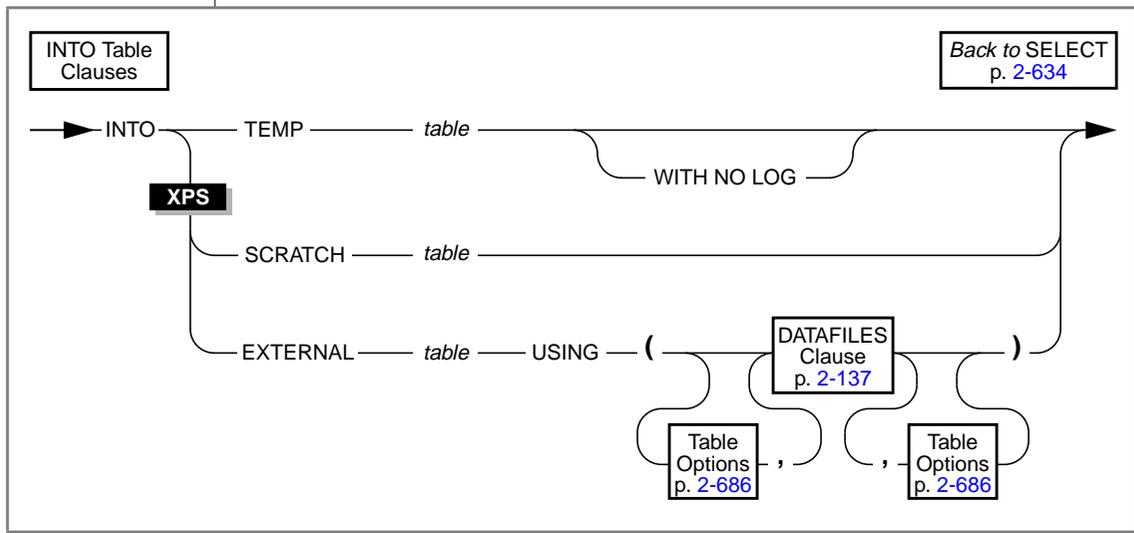
Syntax That Is Incompatible with the FOR READ ONLY Clause

You cannot include both the FOR READ ONLY clause and the FOR UPDATE clause in the same SELECT statement. If you attempt to do so, the SELECT statement fails.

For information on how to declare a read-only cursor for a SELECT statement that does not include a FOR READ ONLY clause, see [“DECLARE” on page 2-349](#).

INTO Table Clauses

Use the INTO Table clauses to specify a table to receive the data that the SELECT statement retrieves.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>table</i>	<p>Name of a table that contains the results of the SELECT statement</p> <p>The column names of the temporary table are those that are named in the select list of the SELECT clause.</p>	<p>The name must be different from any existing table, view, or synonym name in the current database, but it does not have to be different from other temporary table names used by other users.</p> <p>You must have the Connect privilege on a database to create a temporary table in that database.</p> <p>If you use the INTO TEMP clause to create a temporary table, you must supply a display label for all expressions in the select list other than simple column expressions.</p>	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Naming Columns

The column names of the temporary, scratch, or external table are those that are named in the `SELECT` clause. You must supply a display label for all expressions other than simple column expressions. The display label for a column or expression becomes the column name in the temporary, scratch or external table. If you do not provide a display label for a column expression, the table uses the column name from the select list.

The following `INTO TEMP` example creates the **pushdate** table with two columns, **customer_num** and **slowdate**:

```
SELECT customer_num, call_dtime + 5 UNITS DAY slowdate
FROM cust_calls INTO TEMP pushdate
```

Results When No Rows are Returned

When you use an `INTO Table` clause combined with the `WHERE` clause, and no rows are returned, the `SQLNOTFOUND` value is 100 in ANSI-compliant databases and 0 in databases that are not ANSI compliant. If the `SELECT INTO TEMP...WHERE...` statement is a part of a multistatement prepare and no rows are returned, the `SQLNOTFOUND` value is 100 for both ANSI-compliant databases and databases that are not ANSI-compliant.

E/C

Restrictions with INTO Table Clauses in ESQL/C

In `ESQL/C`, do not use the `INTO` clause with an `INTO Table` clause. If you do, no results are returned to the program variables and the `sqlca.sqlcode`, `SQLCODE` variable is set to a negative value.

INTO TEMP Clause

Use the `INTO TEMP` clause to create a temporary table that contains the query results. The initial and next extents for a temporary table are always eight pages. The temporary table must be accessible by the built-in `RSAM` access method of the database server; you cannot specify an alternate access method.

If you use the same query results more than once, using a temporary table saves time. In addition, using an INTO TEMP clause often gives you clearer and more understandable SELECT statements. However, the data in the temporary table is static; data is not updated as changes are made to the tables used to build the temporary table.

You can put indexes on a temporary table.

A logged, temporary table exists until one of the following situations occurs:

- The application disconnects.
- A DROP TABLE statement is issued on the temporary table.
- The database is closed.

If your database does not have logging, the table behaves in the same way as a table that uses the WITH NO LOG option. ♦

IDS

Using the WITH NO LOG Option

Use the WITH NO LOG option to reduce the overhead of transaction logging. (Operations on nonlogging temporary tables are not included in the transaction-log operations.)

A nonlogging, temporary table exists until one of the following situations occurs:

- The application disconnects.
- A DROP TABLE statement is issued on the temporary table.

Because nonlogging temp tables do not disappear when the database is closed, you can use a nonlogging temp table to transfer data from one database to another while the application remains connected.

The behavior of a temporary table that you create with the WITH NO LOG option is the same as that of a scratch table.

For more information about temporary tables, see [“CREATE Temporary TABLE” on page 2-286](#).

XPS

INTO SCRATCH Clause

If you are using Extended Parallel Server, use the INTO SCRATCH clause to reduce the overhead of transaction logging. (Operations on scratch tables are not included in transaction-log operations.)

A scratch table does not support indexes or constraints.

A scratch table exists until one of the following situations occurs:

- The application disconnects.
- A DROP TABLE statement is issued on the temporary table.

Because scratch tables do not disappear when the database is closed, you can use a scratch table to transfer data from one database to another while the application remains connected.

A scratch table is identical to a temporary table that is created with the WITH NO LOG option.

For more information about scratch tables, see [“CREATE Temporary TABLE” on page 2-286](#).

XPS

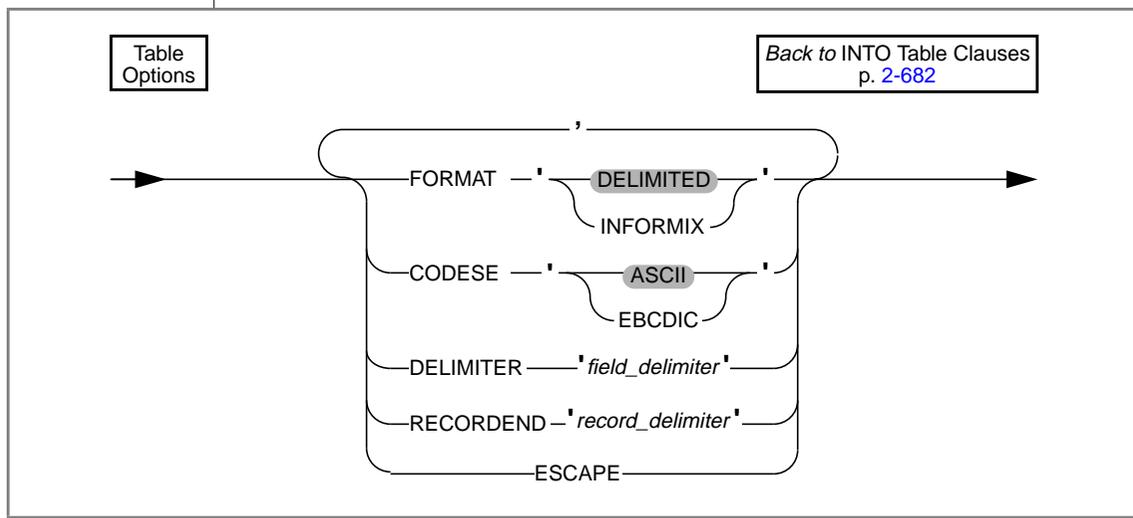
INTO EXTERNAL Clause

If you are using Extended Parallel Server, use the INTO EXTERNAL clause to build a SELECT statement that unloads data from your database into an external table.

When you use the INTO EXTERNAL clause to unload data, you create a default external table description. This clause is especially useful for unloading Informix-internal data files because you can use the external table description when you subsequently reload the files.

To obtain the same effect for text tables, issue a CREATE EXTERNAL...SAMEAS statement. Then issue an INSERT INTO...SELECT statement.

Table Options



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>field_delimiter</i>	Character to separate fields The default value is the pipe (|) character.	If you use a non-printing character as a delimiter, you must encode it as the octal representation of the ASCII character. For example, '\006' can represent CTRL-F.	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>record_delimiter</i>	Character to separate records If you do not set the RECORDEND environment variable, the default value is the newline character (\n).	If you use a non-printing character as a delimiter, you must encode it as the octal representation of the ASCII character. For example, '\006' can represent CTRL-F.	Quoted String, p. 4-260

The following table describes the keywords that apply to unloading data. If you want to specify additional table options in the external-table description for the purpose of reloading the table later, see [“Table Options” on page 2-139](#). In the `SELECT...INTO EXTERNAL` statement, you can specify all table options that are discussed in the `CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE` statement except the fixed-format option.

You can use the INTO EXTERNAL clause when the format type of the created data file is either DELIMITED text or text in Informix internal data format. You cannot use it for a fixed-format unload.

Keyword	Purpose
CODESET	Specifies the type of code set
DELIMITER	Specifies the character that separates fields in a delimited text file
ESCAPE	<p>Directs the database server to recognize ASCII special characters embedded in ASCII-text-based data files</p> <p>If you do not specify ESCAPE when you load data, the database server does not check the character fields in text data files for embedded special characters.</p> <p>If you do not specify ESCAPE when you unload data, the database server does not create embedded hexadecimal characters in text fields.</p>
FORMAT	Specifies the format of the data in the data files
RECORDEND	Specifies the character that separates records in a delimited text file

For more information on external tables, see [“CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE” on page 2-131](#).

UNION Operator

Place the UNION operator between two SELECT statements to combine the queries into a single query. You can string several SELECT statements together using the UNION operator. Corresponding items do not need to have the same name.

Restrictions on a Combined SELECT

Several restrictions apply on the queries that you can connect with a UNION operator, as the following list describes:

E/C

- In ESQL/C, you cannot use an INTO clause in a query unless you are sure that the compound query returns exactly one row, and you are not using a cursor. In this case, the INTO clause must be in the first SELECT statement. ♦
- The number of items in the SELECT clause of each query must be the same, and the corresponding items in each SELECT clause must have compatible data types.
- The columns in the SELECT clause of each query cannot be BYTE or TEXT columns. This restriction does not apply to UNION ALL operations.
- If you use an ORDER BY clause, it must follow the last SELECT clause, and you must refer to the item ordered by integer, not by identifier. Ordering takes place after the set operation is complete.
- You cannot use a UNION operator inside a subquery. ♦

IDS

To put the results of a UNION operator into a temporary table, use an INTO TEMP clause in the final SELECT statement.

Duplicate Rows in a Combined SELECT

If you use the UNION operator alone, the duplicate rows are removed from the complete set of rows. That is, if multiple rows contain identical values in each column, only one row is retained. If you use the UNION ALL operator, all the selected rows are returned (the duplicates are not removed). The following example uses the UNION ALL operator to join two SELECT statements without removing duplicates. The query returns a list of all the calls that were received during the first quarter of 1997 and the first quarter of 1998.

```
SELECT customer_num, call_code FROM cust_calls
    WHERE call_dtime BETWEEN
        DATETIME (1997-1-1) YEAR TO DAY
        AND DATETIME (1997-3-31) YEAR TO DAY

UNION ALL

SELECT customer_num, call_code FROM cust_calls
    WHERE call_dtime BETWEEN
        DATETIME (1998-1-1)YEAR TO DAY
        AND DATETIME (1998-3-31) YEAR TO DAY
```

If you want to remove duplicates, use the UNION operator without the keyword ALL in the query. In the preceding example, if the combination 101 B were returned in both SELECT statements, a UNION operator would cause the combination to be listed once. (If you want to remove duplicates within each SELECT statement, use the DISTINCT keyword in the SELECT clause, as described in “[SELECT Clause](#)” on page 2-636.)

Related Information

For task-oriented discussions of the SELECT statement, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For a discussion of the GLS aspects of the SELECT statement, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

For information on how to access row and collections with ESQL/C host variables, see the discussion of complex data types in the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

+

IDS

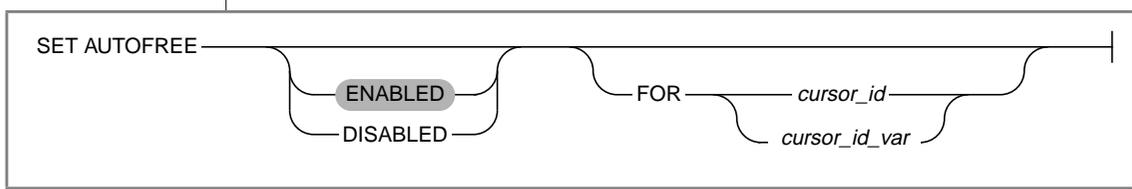
E/C

SET AUTOFREE

Use the SET AUTOFREE statement to specify that the database server will free the memory allocated for a cursor automatically, as soon as the cursor is closed.

Use this statement with ESQL/C.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>cursor_id</i>	Name of a cursor for which the Autofree feature is enabled or disabled	The cursor must be declared within the program.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>cursor_id_var</i>	Host variable that holds the value of <i>cursor_id</i>	The host variable must store the name of a cursor that is declared within the program.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

Usage

When the Autofree feature is enabled for a cursor, you do not need to explicitly use a FREE statement to free the cursor memory in the database server once the cursor is closed.

You can specify the ENABLED or DISABLED options for the SET AUTOFREE statement. If you do not specify either option, the default is ENABLED. The following example shows how to enable the Autofree feature for all subsequent cursors in the program by default:

```
EXEC SQL set autofree;
```

Restrictions

The SET AUTOFREE statement that enables the Autofree feature must appear before the OPEN statement that opens a cursor. If a cursor is already open, the SET AUTOFREE statement does not affect its behavior.

After a cursor is autofree enabled, you cannot open the cursor a second time.

Globally Affecting Cursors with SET AUTOFREE

If you do not specify a *cursor_id* or *cursor_id_var*, the SET AUTOFREE statement affects all subsequent cursors in the program.

The following example shows how to enable the Autofree feature for all subsequent cursors:

```
EXEC SQL set autofree enabled;
```

Using the FOR Clause to Specify a Specific Cursor

If you specify a *cursor_id* or *cursor_id_var*, the SET AUTOFREE statement affects only the cursor that you specify after the FOR keyword.

This option allows you to override a global setting for all cursors. For example, if you issue a SET AUTOFREE ENABLED statement for all cursors in a program, you can issue a subsequent SET AUTOFREE DISABLED FOR statement for a particular cursor.

In the following example, the first statement enables the Autofree feature for all cursors, while the second statement disables the Autofree feature for the cursor named **x1**:

```
EXEC SQL set autofree enabled;  
EXEC SQL set autofree disabled for x1;
```

Associated and Detached Statements

When a cursor is automatically freed, its associated prepared statement (or associated statement) is also freed.

The term *associated statement* has a special meaning in the context of the Autofree feature. A cursor is associated with a prepared statement if it is the first cursor that you declare with the prepared statement, or if it is the first cursor that you declare with the statement after the statement is detached.

The term *detached statement* has a special meaning in the context of the Autofree feature. A prepared statement is detached if you do not declare a cursor with the statement, or if the cursor with which the statement is associated was freed.

If the Autofree feature is enabled for a cursor that has an associated prepared statement, the database server frees memory allocated to the prepared statement as well as the memory allocated for the cursor. Suppose that you enable the Autofree feature for the following cursor:

```
/*Cursor associated with a prepared statement */
EXEC SQL prepare sel_stmt 'select * from customer';
EXEC SQL declare sel_curs2 cursor for sel_stmt;
```

When the database server closes the **sel_curs2** cursor, it automatically performs the equivalent of the following FREE statements:

```
FREE sel_curs2;
FREE sel_stmt;
```

Because the **sel_stmt** statement is freed automatically, you cannot declare a new cursor on it unless you prepare the statement again.

Closing Cursors Implicitly

A potential problem exists with cursors that have the Autofree feature enabled. In a non-ANSI-compliant database, if you do not close a cursor explicitly and then open it again, the cursor is closed implicitly. This implicit closing of the cursor triggers the Autofree feature. The second time the cursor is opened, the database server generates an error message (`cursor not found`) because the cursor is already freed.

Related Information

Related statements: CLOSE, DECLARE, FETCH, FREE, OPEN, and PREPARE

For more information on the Autofree feature, see the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

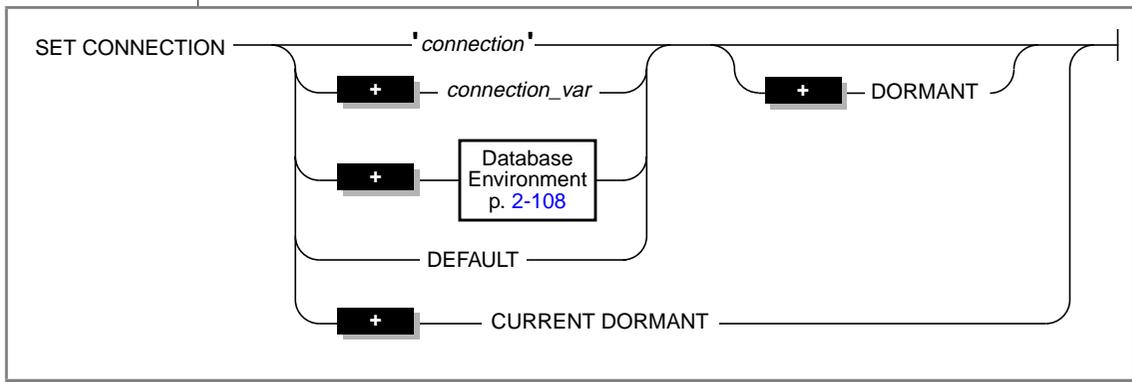
E/C

SET CONNECTION

Use the SET CONNECTION statement to reestablish a connection between an application and a database environment and make the connection current. You can also use the SET CONNECTION statement with the DORMANT option to put the current connection in a dormant state.

Use this statement with ESQL/C.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>connection</i>	Quoted string that identifies the name that you assigned to a specific connection It is the connection assigned by the CONNECT statement when the initial connection was made.	The database must already exist. If you use the SET CONNECTION statement with the DORMANT option, <i>connection</i> must represent the current connection. If you use the SET CONNECTION statement without the DORMANT option, <i>connection</i> must represent a dormant connection.	Quoted String, P. 4-260
<i>connection_var</i>	Host variable that contains the value of connection	Variable must be the character data type.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

Usage

You can use the SET CONNECTION statement to change the state of a connection in the following ways:

- Make a dormant connection current
- Make the current connection dormant

You cannot use the SET CONNECTION statement in the statement text of a prepared statement.

Making a Dormant Connection the Current Connection

The SET CONNECTION statement, with no DORMANT option, makes the specified dormant connection the current one. The connection that the application specifies must be dormant. The connection that is current when the statement executes becomes dormant. A dormant connection is a connection that is established but is not current.

The SET CONNECTION statement in the following example makes connection `con1` the current connection and makes `con2` a dormant connection:

```
CONNECT TO 'stores_demo' AS 'con1'
...
CONNECT TO 'demo' AS 'con2'
...
SET CONNECTION 'con1'
```

A dormant connection has a *connection context* associated with it. When an application makes a dormant connection current, it reestablishes that connection to a database environment and restores its connection context. (For more information on connection context, see the CONNECT statement on [page 2-103](#).) Reestablishing a connection is comparable to establishing the initial connection, except that it typically avoids authenticating the permissions for the user again, and it saves reallocating resources associated with the initial connection. For example, the application does not need to reprepare any statements that have previously been prepared in the connection, nor does it need to redeclare any cursors.

Making a Current Connection Dormant

The SET CONNECTION statement with the DORMANT option makes the specified current connection a dormant connection. For example, the following SET CONNECTION statement makes connection `con1` dormant:

```
SET CONNECTION 'con1' DORMANT
```

The SET CONNECTION statement with the DORMANT option generates an error if you specify a connection that is already dormant. For example, if connection `con1` is current and connection `con2` is dormant, the following SET CONNECTION statement returns an error message:

```
SET CONNECTION 'con2' DORMANT
```

However, the following SET CONNECTION statement executes successfully:

```
SET CONNECTION 'con1' DORMANT
```

Dormant Connections in a Single-Threaded Environment

In a single-threaded ESQL/C application (an application that does not use threads), the DORMANT option makes the current connection dormant. The availability of the DORMANT option makes single-threaded ESQL/C applications upwardly compatible with thread-safe ESQL/C applications. However, a single-threaded environment can have only one active connection while the program executes.

Dormant Connections in a Thread-Safe Environment

In a thread-safe ESQL/C application, the DORMANT option makes an active connection dormant. Another thread can now use the connection by issuing the SET CONNECTION statement without the DORMANT option. A thread-safe environment can have many threads (concurrent pieces of work performing particular tasks) in one ESQL/C application, and each thread can have one active connection.

An active connection is associated with a particular thread. Two threads cannot share the same active connection. Once a thread makes an active connection dormant, that connection is available to other threads. A dormant connection is still established but is not currently associated with any thread. For example, if the connection named `con1` is active in the thread named `thread_1`, the thread named `thread_2` cannot make connection `con1` its active connection until `thread_1` has made connection `con1` dormant.

The following code fragment from a thread-safe ESQL/C program shows how a particular thread within a thread-safe application makes a connection active, performs work on a table through this connection, and then makes the connection dormant so that other threads can use the connection:

```
thread_2()
{
    /* Make con2 an active connection */
    EXEC SQL connect to 'db2' as 'con2';
    /*Do insert on table t2 in db2*/
    EXEC SQL insert into table t2 values(10);
    /* make con2 available to other threads */
    EXEC SQL set connection 'con2' dormant;
}
.
.
.
```

If a connection to a database environment is initiated with the `WITH CONCURRENT TRANSACTION` clause of the `CONNECT` statement, any thread that subsequently connects to that database environment can use an ongoing transaction. In addition, if an open cursor is associated with such a connection, the cursor remains open when the connection is made dormant. Threads within a thread-safe ESQL/C application can use the same cursor by making the associated connection current even though only one thread can use the connection at any given time.

For a detailed discussion of thread-safe ESQL/C applications and the use of the `SET CONNECTION` statement in these applications, see the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

Identifying the Connection

If the application did not use a connection name in the initial CONNECT statement, you must use a database environment (such as a database name or a database pathname) as the connection name. For example, the following SET CONNECTION statement uses a database environment for the connection name because the CONNECT statement does not use a connection name. For information about quoted strings that contain a database environment, see [“Database Environment” on page 2-108](#).

```
CONNECT TO 'stores_demo'  
:  
:  
CONNECT TO 'demo'  
:  
:  
SET CONNECTION 'stores_demo'
```

If a connection to a database server was assigned a connection name, however, you must use the connection name to reconnect to the database server. An error is returned if you use a database environment rather than the connection name when a connection name exists.

DEFAULT Option

Use the DEFAULT option to identify the default connection for a SET CONNECTION statement. The default connection is one of the following connections:

- An explicit default connection (a connection established with the CONNECT TO DEFAULT statement)
- An implicit default connection (any connection established with the DATABASE or CREATE DATABASE statements)

You can use SET CONNECTION without a DORMANT option to reestablish the default connection or with the DORMANT option to make the default connection dormant. For more information, see [“DEFAULT Option” on page 2-105](#) and [“The Implicit Connection with DATABASE Statements” on page 2-106](#).

CURRENT Keyword

Use the CURRENT keyword with the DORMANT option of the SET CONNECTION statement as a shorthand form of identifying the current connection. The CURRENT keyword replaces the current connection name. If the current connection is con1, the following two statements are equivalent:

```
SET CONNECTION 'con1' DORMANT;
```

```
SET CONNECTION CURRENT DORMANT;
```

When a Transaction is Active

When you issue a SET CONNECTION statement without the DORMANT option, the SET CONNECTION statement implicitly puts the current connection in the dormant state. When you issue a SET CONNECTION statement (with the DORMANT option), the SET CONNECTION statement explicitly puts the current connection in the dormant state. In either case, the statement can fail if a connection that becomes dormant has an uncommitted transaction.

If the connection that becomes dormant has an uncommitted transaction, the following conditions apply:

- If the connection was established with the WITH CONCURRENT TRANSACTION clause of the CONNECT statement, the SET CONNECTION statement succeeds and puts the connection in a dormant state.
- If the connection was established without the WITH CONCURRENT TRANSACTION clause of the CONNECT statement, the SET CONNECTION statement fails and cannot set the connection to a dormant state and the transaction in the current connection continues to be active. The statement generates an error and the application must decide whether to commit or roll back the active transaction.

Related Information

Related statements: CONNECT, DISCONNECT, and DATABASE

For a discussion of the SET CONNECTION statement and thread-safe applications, see the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

+

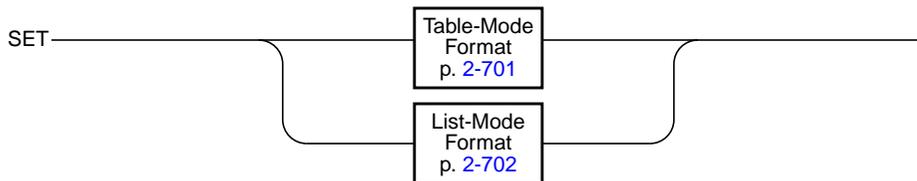
IDS

SET Database Object Mode

Use the SET Database Object Mode statement to change the mode of constraints, indexes, and triggers.

To specify whether constraints are checked at the statement level or at the transaction level, see [“SET Transaction Mode” on page 2-774](#).

Syntax



Usage

When you change the mode of constraints, indexes, or triggers, the change is persistent. The setting remains in effect until you change the mode of the database object again.

The **sysobjstate** system catalog table lists all of the database objects in the database and the current mode of each database object. For information on the **sysobjstate** system catalog table, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

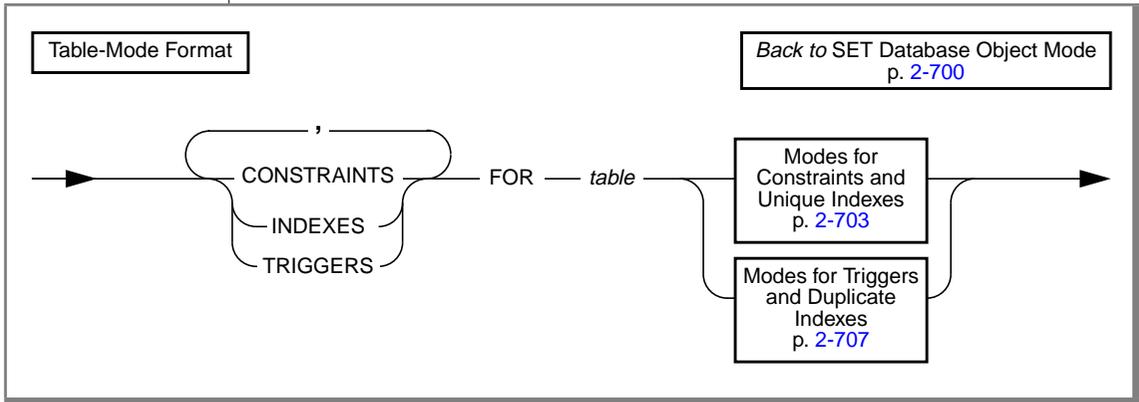
Privileges Required for Changing Database Object Modes

To change the mode of a constraint, index, or trigger, you must have the necessary privileges. Specifically, you must meet one of the following requirements:

- You must have the DBA privilege on the database.
- You must be the owner of the table on which the database object is defined and must have the Resource privilege on the database.
- You must have the Alter privilege on the table on which the database object is defined and the Resource privilege on the database.

Table-Mode Format

Use the table-mode format to change the mode of all database objects of a given type that have been defined on a particular table.



[Back to SET Database Object Mode p. 2-700](#)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>table</i>	Name of the table on which the database objects reside	The table must be a local table. You cannot set database objects defined on a temporary table to disabled or filtering modes.	Database Object Name, p. 4-47

For example, to disable all constraints that are defined on the **cust_subset** table, enter the following statement:

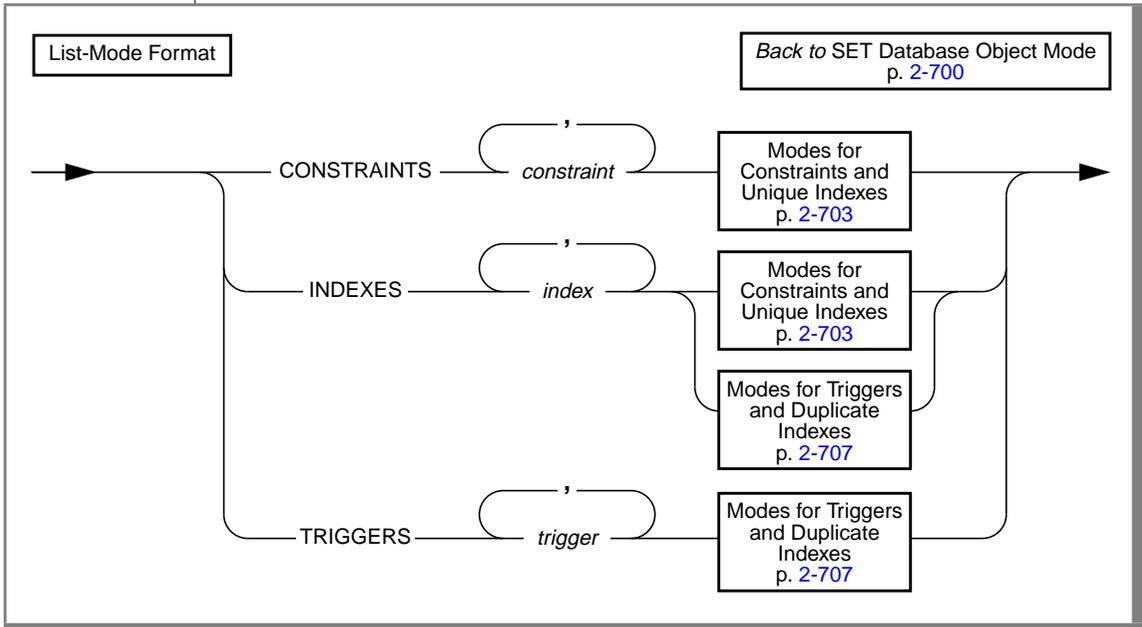
```
SET CONSTRAINTS FOR cust_subset DISABLED
```

When you use the table-mode format, you can change the modes of more than one database object type with a single SET Database Object Mode statement. For example, to enable all constraints, indexes, and triggers that are defined on the **cust_subset** table, enter the following statement:

```
SET CONSTRAINTS, INDEXES, TRIGGERS FOR cust_subset  
ENABLED
```

List-Mode Format

Use the list-mode format to change the mode for a particular constraint, index, or trigger.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>constraint</i>	Name of the constraint whose mode is to be set	Each constraint in the list must be a local constraint. All constraints in the list must be defined on the same table.	Database Object Name, p. 4-47
<i>index</i>	Name of the index whose mode is to be set	Each index in the list must be a local index. All indexes in the list must be defined on the same table.	Database Object Name, p. 4-47
<i>trigger</i>	Name of the trigger whose mode is to be set	Each trigger in the list must be a local trigger. All triggers in the list must be defined on the same table.	Database Object Name, p. 4-47

For example, to change the mode of the unique index **unq_ssn** on the **cust_subset** table to filtering, enter the following statement:

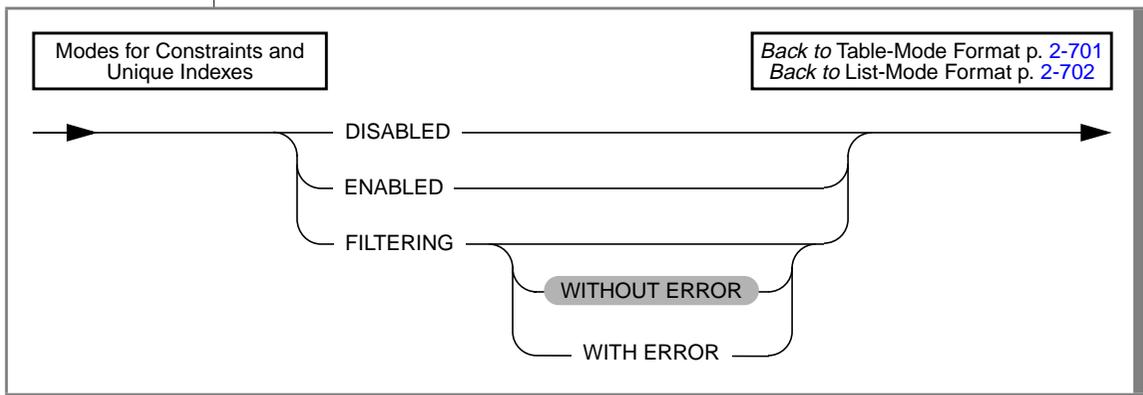
```
SET INDEXES unq_ssn FILTERING
```

You can also use the list-mode format to change the mode for a list of constraints, indexes, or triggers that are defined on the same table. Assume that four triggers are defined on the **cust_subset** table: **insert_trig**, **update_trig**, **delete_trig**, and **execute_trig**. Also assume that all four triggers are enabled. To disable all triggers except **execute_trig**, enter the following statement:

```
SET TRIGGERS insert_trig, update_trig, delete_trig DISABLED
```

Modes for Constraints and Unique Indexes

You can specify a disabled, enabled, or filtering mode for a constraint or a unique index.



If you do not specify the mode for a constraint in a CREATE TABLE, ALTER TABLE, or SET Database Object Mode statement, the constraint is enabled by default.

If you do not specify the mode for an index in the CREATE INDEX or SET Database Object Mode statement, the index is enabled by default.

Definitions of Database Object Modes

You can use database object modes to control the effects of INSERT, DELETE, and UPDATE statements. Your choice of mode affects the tables whose data you are manipulating, the behavior of the database objects defined on those tables, and the behavior of the data manipulation statements themselves.

Enabled Mode

Constraints, indexes, and triggers are enabled by default. The CREATE TABLE, ALTER TABLE, CREATE INDEX, and CREATE TRIGGER statements create database objects in the enabled mode unless you specify another mode in the statement.

When a database object is enabled, the database server recognizes the existence of the database object and takes the database object into consideration while it executes an INSERT, DELETE, OR UPDATE statement. Thus, an enabled constraint is enforced, an enabled index updated, and an enabled trigger is executed when the trigger event takes place. When you enable constraints and unique indexes, if a violating row exists, the data manipulation statement fails (that is no rows change) and the database server returns an error message.

Disabled Mode

When a database object is disabled, the database server does not take it into consideration during the execution of an INSERT, DELETE, OR UPDATE statement. A disabled constraint is not enforced, a disabled index is not updated, and a disabled trigger is not executed when the trigger event takes place. When you disable constraints and unique indexes, any data manipulation statement that violates the restriction of the constraint or unique index succeeds, (that is the target row is changed) and the database server does not return an error message.

You can use the disabled mode to add a new constraint or new unique index to an existing table, even if some rows in the table do not satisfy the new integrity specification. For information on adding a new constraint, see [“Adding a Constraint When Existing Rows Violate the Constraint”](#) in the ALTER TABLE statement. For information on adding a new unique index, see [“Adding a Unique Index When Duplicate Values Exist in the Column”](#) in the CREATE INDEX statement.

Filtering Mode

When a constraint or unique index is in filtering mode, the INSERT, DELETE, OR UPDATE statement succeeds, but the database server enforces the constraint or the unique-index requirement by writing any failed rows to the violations table associated with the target table. Diagnostic information about the constraint violation or unique-index violation is written to the diagnostics table associated with the target table.

How Filtering Mode Affects Data Manipulation Statements

Filtering mode has the following specific effects on INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE statements:

- A constraint violation or unique-index violation during an INSERT statement causes the database server to make a copy of the nonconforming record and write it to the violations table. The database server does not write the nonconforming record to the target table. If the INSERT statement is not a singleton insert, the rest of the insert operation proceeds with the next record.
- A constraint violation or unique-index violation during an UPDATE statement causes the database server to make a copy of the existing record that was to be updated and write it to the violations table. The database server also makes a copy of the new record and writes it to the violations table. The database server does not update the actual record in the target table. If the UPDATE statement is not a singleton update, the rest of the update operation proceeds with the next record.
- A constraint violation or unique-index violation during a DELETE statement causes the database server to make a copy of the record that was to be deleted and write it to the violations table. The database server does not delete the actual record in the target table. If the DELETE statement is not a singleton delete, the rest of the delete operation proceeds with the next record.

In all of these cases, the database server sends diagnostic information about each constraint violation or unique-index violation to the diagnostics table associated with the target table.

For detailed information on the structure of the records that the database server writes to the violations and diagnostics tables, see [“Structure of the Violations Table” on page 2-785](#) and [“Structure of the Diagnostics Table” on page 2-793](#).

Starting and Stopping the Violations and Diagnostics Tables

You must use the `START VIOLATIONS TABLE` statement to start the violations and diagnostics tables for the target table on which the database objects are defined, either before you set any database objects that are defined on the table to the filtering mode, or after you set database objects to filtering, but before any users issue `INSERT`, `DELETE`, or `UPDATE` statements.

If you want to stop the database server from filtering bad records to the violations table and sending diagnostic information about each bad record to the diagnostics table, you must issue a `STOP VIOLATIONS TABLE` statement.

For further information on these statements, see [“START VIOLATIONS TABLE” on page 2-778](#) and [“STOP VIOLATIONS TABLE” on page 2-800](#).

Error Options for Filtering Mode

When you set the mode of a constraint or unique index to filtering, you can specify one of two error options. These error options control whether the database server displays an integrity-violation error message when it encounters bad records during execution of data manipulation statements.

- The `WITHOUT ERROR` option is the default error option. The `WITHOUT ERROR` option signifies that when the database server executes an `INSERT`, `DELETE`, or `UPDATE` statement, and one or more of the target rows causes a constraint violation or unique-index violation, no integrity-violation error message is returned to the user.
- The `WITH ERROR` option signifies that when the database server executes an `INSERT`, `DELETE`, or `UPDATE` statement, and one or more of the target rows causes a constraint violation or unique-index violation, the database server returns an integrity-violation error message.

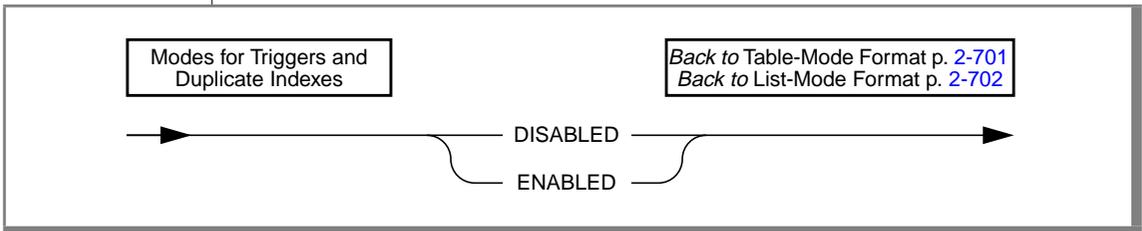
Net Effect of Filtering Mode on the Database

The net effect of the filtering mode is that the contents of the target table always satisfy all constraints on the table and any unique-index requirements on the table. In addition, the database server does not lose any data that violates a constraint or unique-index requirement because bad records are sent to the violations table and diagnostic information about those records is sent to the diagnostics table.

Furthermore, when filtering mode is in effect, insert, delete, and update operations on the target table do not fail when the database server encounters bad records. These operations succeed in adding all the good records to the target table. So filtering mode is especially appropriate for large-scale batch updates of tables. The user can fix records that violate constraints and unique-index requirements after the fact. The user does not have to fix the bad records before the batch update or lose the bad records during the batch update.

Modes for Triggers and Duplicate Indexes

You can specify the disabled or enabled modes for triggers or duplicate indexes.



If you do not specify the mode for a trigger in the CREATE TRIGGER or SET Database Object Mode statement, the trigger is enabled by default.

If you do not specify the mode for an index in the CREATE INDEX or SET Database Object Mode statement, the index is enabled by default.

Related Information

Related statements: ALTER TABLE, CREATE TABLE, CREATE INDEX, CREATE TRIGGER, START VIOLATIONS TABLE and STOP VIOLATIONS TABLE

For a discussion of object modes and violation detection and examples that show how database object modes work when users execute data manipulation statements on target tables or add new constraints and indexes to target tables, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For information on the system catalog tables associated with the SET Database Object Mode statement, see the **sysobjstate** and **sysviolations** tables in the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

When you SET DATASKIP ON *dbspace*, you are telling the database server to skip the specified *dbspace* if it is unavailable.

Use the SET DATASKIP OFF statement to turn off the dataskip feature.

When the setting is DEFAULT, the database server uses the setting for the dataskip feature from the ONCONFIG file. The setting of the dataskip feature can be changed at runtime.

Under What Circumstances Is a Dbspace Skipped?

The database server skips a *dbspace* when SET DATASKIP is set to ON and the *dbspace* is unavailable.

The database server cannot skip a *dbspace* under certain conditions. The following list outlines those conditions:

- **Referential constraint checking**

When you want to delete a parent row, the child rows must also be available for deletion. The child rows must exist in an available fragment.

When you want to insert a new child row, the parent row must be found in the available fragments.

- **Updates**

When you perform an update that moves a record from one fragment to another, both fragments must be available.

- **Inserts**

When you try to insert records in a expression-based fragmentation strategy and the *dbspace* is unavailable, an error is returned. When you try to insert records in a round-robin fragment-based strategy, and a *dbspace* is down, the database server inserts the rows into any available *dbspace*. When no *dbspace* is available, an error is returned.

- Indexing

When you perform updates that affect the index, such as when you insert or delete records, or when you update an indexed field, the index must be available.

When you try to create an index, the dbspace you want to use must be available.

- Serial keys

The first fragment is used to store the current serial-key value internally. This is not visible to you except when the first fragment becomes unavailable and a new serial key value is required, which happens during insert statements.

Related Information

For additional information about the dataskip feature, see your [Administrator's Guide](#).

Usage

This statement indicates that the output of the TRACE statement in the SPL routine goes to the file that *filename* indicates. Each time the TRACE statement is executed, the trace data is added to this output file.

Using the WITH APPEND Option

The output file that you specify in the SET DEBUG TO file statement can be a new file or existing file.

If you specify an existing file, the current contents of the file are purged when you issue the SET DEBUG TO FILE statement. The first execution of a TRACE command sends trace output to the beginning of the file.

However, if you include the WITH APPEND option, the current contents of the file are preserved when you issue the SET DEBUG TO FILE statement. The first execution of a TRACE command adds trace output to the end of the file.

If you specify a new file in the SET DEBUG TO FILE statement, it makes no difference whether you include the WITH APPEND option. The first execution of a TRACE command sends trace output to the beginning of the new file whether you include or omit the WITH APPEND option.

Closing the Output File

To close the file that the SET DEBUG FILE TO statement opened, issue another SET DEBUG FILE TO statement with another filename. You can then edit the contents of the first file.

Redirecting Trace Output

You can use the SET DEBUG FILE TO statement outside an SPL routine to direct the trace output of the SPL routine to a file. You also can use this statement inside an SPL routine to redirect its own output.

Location of the Output File

If you invoke a SET DEBUG FILE TO statement with a simple filename on a local database, the output file is located in your current directory. If your current database is on a remote database server, the output file is located in your home directory on the remote database server. If you provide a full pathname for the debug file, the file is placed in the directory and file that you specify on the remote database server. If you do not have write permissions in the directory, you get an error.

Example of the SET DEBUG FILE TO Statement

The following example sends the output of the SET DEBUG FILE TO statement to a file called **debug.out**:

```
SET DEBUG FILE TO 'debug' || '.out'
```

Related Information

Related statement: TRACE

For a task-oriented discussion of SPL routines, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

ENABLED Option

Use the **ENABLED** option to enable the Deferred-Prepare feature within the application. The following example shows how to use the **ENABLED** option:

```
EXEC SQL set deferred_prepare enabled;
```

When you enter a **SET DEFERRED_PREPARE ENABLED** statement in your application, the Deferred-Prepare feature is enabled for all **PREPARE** statements in the application. The application then exhibits the following behavior:

- The sequence **PREPARE, DECLARE, OPEN** sends the **PREPARE** statement to the database server with the **OPEN** statement.
- If a prepared statement contains syntax errors, the database server does not return error messages to the application until the application declares a cursor for the prepared statement and opens the cursor.
- The sequence **PREPARE, EXECUTE** sends the **PREPARE** statement to the database server with the **EXECUTE** statement. If a prepared statement contains syntax errors, the database server does not return error messages to the application until the application attempts to execute the prepared statement.

DESCRIBE Restriction with the ENABLED Option

If you use the Deferred-Prepare feature in a **PREPARE, DECLARE, OPEN** statement block that contains a **DESCRIBE** statement, the **DESCRIBE** statement must follow the **OPEN** statement rather than the **PREPARE** statement. If the **DESCRIBE** statement follows the **PREPARE** statement, the **DESCRIBE** statement results in an error.

DISABLED Option

Use the **DISABLED** option to disable the Deferred-Prepare feature within the application. The following example shows how to use the **DISABLED** option:

```
EXEC SQL set deferred_prepare disabled;
```

When you disable the Deferred-Prepare feature, the application sends each **PREPARE** statement to the database server when the **PREPARE** statement is executed.

Example of SET DEFERRED_PREPARE

The following code fragment shows a SET DEFERRED PREPARE statement with a PREPARE, EXECUTE statement block. In this case, the database server executes the PREPARE and EXECUTE statements all at once.

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
      int a;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
EXEC SQL allocate descriptor 'desc';
EXEC SQL create database test;
EXEC SQL create table x (a int);

/* Enable Deferred-Prepare feature */
EXEC SQL set deferred_prepare enabled;

/* Prepare an INSERT statement */
EXEC SQL prepare ins_stmt from 'insert into x values(?)';

a = 2;
EXEC SQL EXECUTE ins_stmt using :a;
if (SQLCODE)
    printf("EXECUTE : SQLCODE is %d\n", SQLCODE);
```

Using Deferred-Prepare with OPTOFC

You can use the Deferred-Prepare and Open-Fetch-Close Optimization (OPTOFC) features together in your application. The OPTOFC feature delays sending the OPEN message to the database server until the FETCH message is sent.

The following situations occur if you enable the Deferred-Prepare and OPTOFC features at the same time:

- If the text of a prepared statement contains syntax errors, the error messages are not returned to the application until the first FETCH statement is executed.
- A DESCRIBE statement cannot be executed until after the FETCH statement.
- You must issue an ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement before a DESCRIBE or GET DESCRIPTOR statement can be executed.

The database server performs an internal execution of a SET DESCRIPTOR statement which sets the TYPE, LENGTH, DATA, and other fields in the system descriptor area. You can specify a GET DESCRIPTOR statement after the FETCH statement to see the data that is returned.

Related Information

Related statements: DECLARE, DESCRIBE, EXECUTE, OPEN, and PREPARE

For a task-oriented discussion of the PREPARE statement and dynamic SQL, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For more information about concepts relating to the SET DEFERRED_PREPARE statement, see the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

+

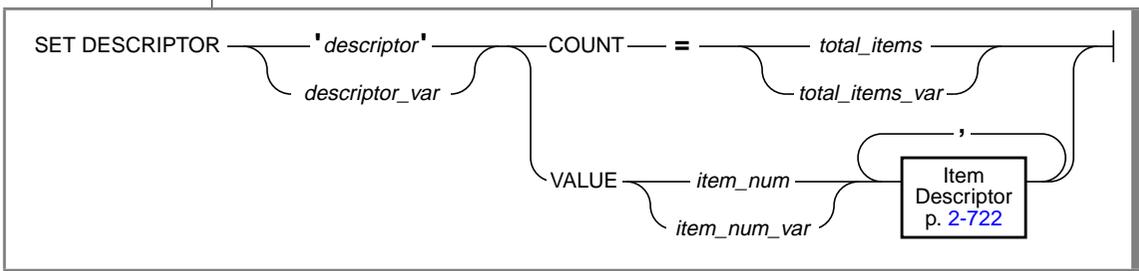
E/C

SET DESCRIPTOR

Use the SET DESCRIPTOR statement to assign values to a system-descriptor area.

Use this statement with ESQL/C.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>descriptor</i>	String that identifies the system-descriptor area to which values are assigned	The system-descriptor area must have been previously allocated with the ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement.	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>descriptor_var</i>	Host variable that holds the value of descriptor	The same restrictions apply to descriptor_var as apply to <i>descriptor</i> .	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>item_num</i>	Unsigned integer that specifies one of the item descriptors in the system-descriptor area	The value must be greater than 0 and less than (or equal to) the number of item descriptors that were specified when the system-descriptor area was allocated with the ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement.	Literal Number, p. 4-237

(1 of 2)

SET DESCRIPTOR

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>item_num_var</i>	Host variable that holds the value of <i>item_num</i>	The same restrictions apply to <i>item_num_var</i> as apply to <i>item_num</i> .	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>total_items</i>	Unsigned integer that specifies how many items are actually described in the system-descriptor area	The value must be greater than 0 and less than (or equal to) the number of item descriptors that were specified when the system-descriptor area was allocated with the ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>total_items_var</i>	Host variable that holds a literal integer that specifies how many items are actually described in the system-descriptor area	The same restrictions apply to <i>total_items_var</i> as apply to <i>total_items</i> .	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

(2 of 2)

Usage

The SET DESCRIPTOR statement can be used after you have described SELECT, EXECUTE FUNCTION (OR EXECUTE PROCEDURE), and INSERT statements with the DESCRIBE...USING SQL DESCRIPTOR statement. The SET DESCRIPTOR statement can assign values to a system-descriptor area in the following instances:

- To set the COUNT field of a system-descriptor area to match the number of items for which you are providing descriptions in the system-descriptor area
- To set the item descriptor for each value for which you are providing descriptions in the system-descriptor area
- To modify the contents of an item-descriptor field

If an error occurs during the assignment to any identified system-descriptor fields, the contents of all identified fields are set to 0 or null, depending on the variable type.

Using the COUNT Clause

Use the COUNT clause to set the number of items that are to be used in the system-descriptor area.

If you allocate a system-descriptor area with more items than you are using, you need to set the COUNT field to the number of items that you are actually using. The following example shows the sequence of statements in ESQL/C that can be used in a program:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    int count;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL allocate descriptor 'desc_100'; /*allocates for 100 items*/

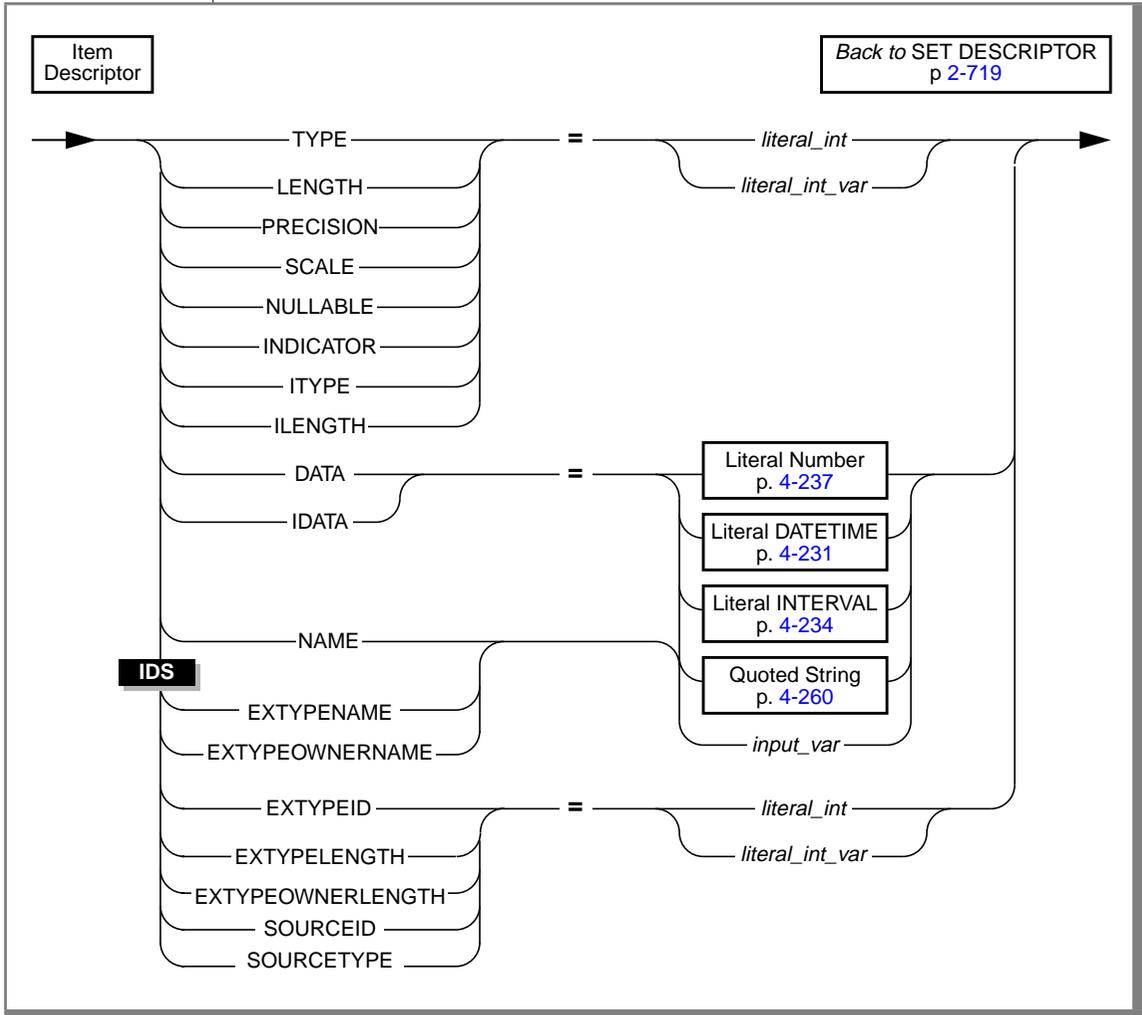
count = 2;
EXEC SQL set descriptor 'desc_100' count = :count;
```

Using the VALUE Clause

Use the VALUE clause to assign values from host variables into fields of a system-descriptor area. You can assign values for items for which you are providing a description (such as parameters in a WHERE clause), or you can modify values for items after you use a DESCRIBE statement to fill the fields for a SELECT or INSERT statement.

Item Descriptor

Use the Item Descriptor portion of the SET DESCRIPTOR statement to set value for a particular field in a system-descriptor area.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>input_var</i>	Host variable that contains the information for the specified field in the specified item descriptor	The information that is contained in <i>input_var</i> must be appropriate for the specified field.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>literal_int</i>	Positive, nonzero integer that assigns a value to the specified field in the specified item descriptor	<p>The restrictions that apply to <i>literal_int</i> vary with the field type (<i>item_descriptor</i>) you specify in the VALUE clause (TYPE, LENGTH, and so on).</p> <p>For information on the codes that are allowed for the TYPE field and their meaning, see “Setting the TYPE or ITYPE Field” on page 2-724.</p> <p>For the restrictions that apply to other field types, see the individual headings for field types under “Using the VALUE Clause” on page 2-721.</p>	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>literal_int_var</i>	Host variable that contains the value of <i>literal_int</i>	The same restrictions apply to <i>literal_int_var</i> as apply to <i>literal_int</i> .	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

Setting the TYPE or ITYPE Field

Use the following integer constants to set the value of TYPE for each item.

SQL Data Type	Integer Value	X-Open Integer Value
CHAR	0	1
SMALLINT	1	4
INTEGER	2	5
FLOAT	3	6
SMALLFLOAT	4	-
DECIMAL	5	3
SERIAL	6	-
DATE	7	-
MONEY	8	-
DATETIME	10	-
BYTE	11	-
TEXT	12	-
VARCHAR	13	-
INTERVAL	14	-
NCHAR	15	-
NVARCHAR	16	-

IDS

The following table includes additional integer constants that represent data types available with Dynamic Server.

SQL Data Type	Integer Value
INT8	17
SERIAL8	18
SET	19
MULTISET	20
LIST	21
ROW	22
COLLECTION	23
Varying-length opaque type	40
Fixed-length opaque type	41
LVARCHAR (client-side only)	43
BOOLEAN	45

These TYPE constants are the same values that appear in the **coltype** column in the **syscolumns** system catalog table.

For code that is easier to maintain, use the predefined constants for these SQL data types instead of their actual integer values. These constants are defined in the **sqltypes.h** header file. However, you cannot use the actual constant name in the SET DESCRIPTOR statement. Instead, assign the constant to an integer host variable and specify the host variable in the SET DESCRIPTOR statement file.

The following example shows how you can set the TYPE field in ESQL/C:

```
main()
{
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    int itemno, type;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
...
EXEC SQL allocate descriptor 'desc1' with max 5;
...
type = SQLINT; itemno = 3;
EXEC SQL set descriptor 'desc1' value :itemno type = :type;
}
```

This information is identical for **ITYPE**. Use **ITYPE** when you create a dynamic program that does not comply with the X/Open standard.

Compiling Without the -xopen Option

If you compile without the **-xopen** option, the regular Informix SQL code is assigned for TYPE. You must be careful not to mix normal and X/Open modes because errors can result. For example, if a particular type is not defined under X/Open mode but is defined under normal mode, executing a SET DESCRIPTOR statement can result in an error.

X/O

Setting the TYPE Field in X/Open Programs

In X/Open mode, you must use the X/Open set of integer codes for the data type in the TYPE field.

If you use the ILENGTH, IDATA, or ITYPE fields in a SET DESCRIPTOR statement, a warning message appears. The warning indicates that these fields are not standard X/Open fields for a system-descriptor area.

For code that is easier to maintain, use the predefined constants for these X/Open SQL data types instead of their actual integer value. These constants are defined in the **sqlxtype.h** header file.

Using DECIMAL or MONEY Data Types

If you set the **TYPE** field for a DECIMAL or MONEY data type, and you want to use a scale or precision other than the default values, set the **SCALE** and **PRECISION** fields. You do not need to set the **LENGTH** field for a DECIMAL or MONEY item; the **LENGTH** field is set accordingly from the **SCALE** and **PRECISION** fields.

Using DATETIME or INTERVAL Data Types

If you set the **TYPE** field for a DATETIME or INTERVAL value, you can set the **DATA** field as a literal DATETIME or INTERVAL or as a character string. If you use a character string, you must set the **LENGTH** field to the encoded qualifier value.

To determine the encoded qualifiers for a DATETIME or INTERVAL character string, use the datetime and interval macros in the **datetime.h** header file.

If you set DATA to a host variable of DATETIME or INTERVAL, you do not need to set **LENGTH** explicitly to the encoded qualifier integer.

Setting the DATA or IDATA Field

When you set the **DATA** or **IDATA** field, you must provide the appropriate type of data (character string for CHAR or VARCHAR, integer for INTEGER, and so on).

When any value other than DATA is set, the value of DATA is undefined. You cannot set the **DATA** or **IDATA** field for an item without setting TYPE for that item. If you set the **TYPE** field for an item to a character type, you must also set the **LENGTH** field. If you do not set the **LENGTH** field for a character item, you receive an error.

Setting the LENGTH or ILENGTH Field

If your **DATA** or **IDATA** field contains a character string, you must specify a value for **LENGTH**. If you specify **LENGTH=0**, **LENGTH** sets automatically to the maximum length of the string. The **DATA** or **IDATA** field can contain a 368-literal character string or a character string derived from a character variable of **CHAR** or **VARCHAR** data type. This provides a method to determine the length of a string in the **DATA** or **IDATA** field dynamically.

If a **DESCRIBE** statement precedes a **SET DESCRIPTOR** statement, **LENGTH** is automatically set to the maximum length of the character field that is specified in your table.

This information is identical for **ILENGTH**. Use **ILENGTH** when you create a dynamic program that does not comply with the X/Open standard.

Setting the INDICATOR Field

If you want to put a null value into the system-descriptor area, set the **INDICATOR** field to **-1**, and do not set the **DATA** field.

If you set the **INDICATOR** field to **0** to indicate that the data is not null, you must set the **DATA** field.

IDS

Setting Opaque-Type Fields

The following item-descriptor fields provide information about a column that has an opaque type as its data type:

- The **EXTYPEID** field stores the extended identifier for the opaque type.
This integer value must correspond to a value in the **extended_id** column of the **sysxdtypes** system catalog table.
- The **EXTYPENAME** field stores the name of the opaque type.
This character value must correspond to a value in the **name** column of the row with the matching **extended_id** value in the **sysxdtypes** system catalog table.

- The **EXTYPELENGTH** field stores the length of the opaque-type name.
This integer value is the length, in bytes, of the string in the **EXTYPENAME** field.
- The **EXTYPEOWNERNAME** field stores the name of the opaque-type owner.
This character value must correspond to a value in the **owner** column of the row with the matching **extended_id** value in the **sysxdtypes** system catalog table.
- The **EXTYPEOWNERLENGTH** field stores the length of the value in the **EXTYPEOWNERNAME** field.
This integer value is the length, in bytes, of the string in the **EXTYPEOWNERNAME** field.

For more information on the **sysxdtypes** system catalog table, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

Setting Distinct-Type Fields

The following item-descriptor fields provide information about a column that has an distinct type as its data type:

- The **SOURCEID** field stores the extended identifier for the source data type.
Set this field if the source type of the distinct type is an opaque data type. This integer value must correspond to a value in the **source** column for the row of the **sysxdtypes** system catalog table whose **extended_id** value matches that of the distinct type you are setting.
- The **SOURCETYPE** field stores the data-type constant for the source data type.
This value is the data-type constant for the built-in data type that is the source type for the distinct type. The codes for the **SOURCETYPE** field are the same as those for the **TYPE** field ([page 2-724](#)). This integer value must correspond to the value in the **type** column for the row of the **sysxdtypes** system catalog table whose **extended_id** value matches that of the distinct type you are setting.

For more information on the **sysxdtypes** system catalog table, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

Modifying Values Set by the DESCRIBE Statement

You can use a DESCRIBE statement to modify the contents of a system-descriptor area after it is set.

After you use a DESCRIBE statement on a SELECT or an INSERT statement, you must check to determine whether the **TYPE** field is set to either 11 or 12 to indicate a TEXT or BYTE data type. If **TYPE** contains an 11 or a 12, you must use the SET DESCRIPTOR statement to reset **TYPE** to 116, which indicates FILE type.

Related Information

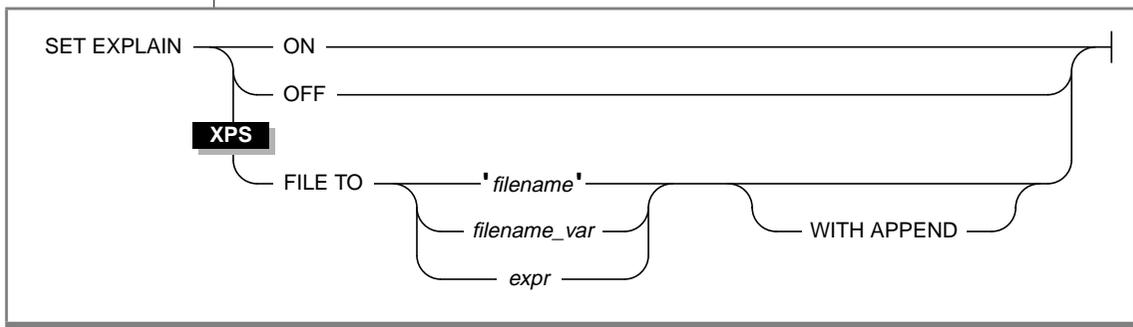
Related statements: ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR, DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR, DECLARE, DESCRIBE, EXECUTE, FETCH, GET DESCRIPTOR, OPEN, PREPARE, and PUT

For more information on system-descriptor areas, refer to the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

SET EXPLAIN

Use the SET EXPLAIN statement to display the query plan the optimizer chooses, an estimate of the number of rows returned, and a relative cost of the query.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>expr</i>	Expression that evaluates to a filename	The filename that is derived from the expression must be usable.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>filename</i>	Quoted string that identifies the path and filename of the file that contains the output of the SET EXPLAIN FILE TO statement For information on the default actions that are taken if you omit the pathname, see “Location of the Output File” on page 2-714.	The same restrictions apply to the derived filename as to the filename parameter. You can specify a new or existing file. If you specify an existing file, you must include the WITH APPEND keywords if you want to preserve the current contents of the file intact. For further information, see “Using the WITH APPEND Option” on page 2-713.	Quoted String, p. 4-260. Name must conform to the naming conventions of your operating system.
<i>filename_var</i>	Host variable that holds the value of filename	The host variable must be a character data type.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

Usage

The SET EXPLAIN statement provides various measurements of the work involved in performing a query.

Option	Purpose
ON	Generates measurements for each subsequent query and writes the results to an output file in the current directory. If the file already exists, new explain output is appended to the existing file.
OFF	Terminates the SET EXPLAIN statement so that measurements for subsequent queries are no longer generated or written to the output file.
FILE TO	Generates measurements for each subsequent query and allows you to specify the location for the explain output file. If the file already exists, new explain output overwrites the contents of the file unless you use the WITH APPEND option.

Persistence and Default Behavior

When you issue a SET EXPLAIN ON statement, the output is directed to the appropriate file until you issue a SET EXPLAIN OFF statement or until the program ends. If you do not enter a SET EXPLAIN statement, the default behavior is OFF. The database server does not generate measurements for queries.

Execution of the SET EXPLAIN Statement

The SET EXPLAIN statement executes during the database server optimization phase, which occurs when you initiate a query. For queries that are associated with a cursor, if the query is prepared and does not have host variables, optimization occurs when you prepare it. Otherwise, optimization occurs when you open the cursor.

Using the FILE TO option

When you execute a SET EXPLAIN FILE TO statement, explain output is implicitly turned on. The default filename for the output is **sqexplain.out** until changed by a SET EXPLAIN FILE TO statement. Once changed, the filename remains set until the end of the session or until changed by another SET EXPLAIN FILE TO statement.

The filename may be any valid combination of optional path and filename. If no path component is specified, the file is placed in your current directory. The permissions for the file are owned by the current user.

Using the WITH APPEND Option

The output file that you specify in the SETEXPLAIN statement can be a new file or an existing file.

If you specify an existing file, the current contents of the file are purged when you issue the SET EXPLAIN FILE TO statement. The first execution of a FILE TO command sends output to the beginning of the file.

However, if you include the WITH APPEND option, the current contents of the file are preserved when you issue the SET EXPLAIN FILE TO statement. The execution of a WITH APPEND command appends output to the end of the file.

If you specify a new file in the SET EXPLAIN FILE TO statement, it makes no difference whether you include the WITH APPEND option. The first execution of the command sends output to the beginning of the new file.

Default Name and Location of the Output File

UNIX

On UNIX, when you issue a SET EXPLAIN ON statement, the plan that the optimizer chooses for each subsequent query is written to the **sqexplain.out** file by default.

If the output file does not exist when you issue the SET EXPLAIN ON statement, the database server creates the output file. If the output file already exists when you issue the SET EXPLAIN ON statement, subsequent output is appended to the file.

WIN NT

If the client application and the database server are on the same computer, the **sqexplain.out** file is stored in your current directory. If you are using a version 5.x or earlier client application and the **sqexplain.out** file does not appear in the current directory, check your home directory for the file. When the current database is on another computer, the **sqexplain.out** file is stored in your home directory on the remote host. ♦

On Windows NT, when you issue a SET EXPLAIN ON statement, the plan that the optimizer chooses for each subsequent query is written to the file %INFORMIXDIR%\sqexpln*username.out* where *username* is the user login. ♦

SET EXPLAIN Output

By examining the SET EXPLAIN output file, you can determine if steps can be taken to improve the performance of the query.

The following table contains terms that can appear in the output file and their significance.

SET EXPLAIN

Term	Significance
Query	<p>Displays the executed query. Indicates whether SET OPTIMIZATION was set to high.</p> <p>If you SET OPTIMIZATION to LOW, the output of SET EXPLAIN displays the following uppercase string as the first line:</p> <pre>QUERY:{LOW}</pre> <p>If you SET OPTIMIZATION to HIGH, the output of SET EXPLAIN displays the following uppercase string as the first line:</p> <pre>QUERY:</pre>
Directives followed	<p>Lists the directives set for the executed query.</p> <p>If the syntax for a directive is incorrect, the query is processed without the directive. In that case, the output will show DIRECTIVES NOT FOLLOWED in addition to DIRECTIVES FOLLOWED.</p> <p>For more information on the directives specified after this term, see the “Optimizer Directives” on page 4-244 or “SET OPTIMIZATION” on page 2-747.</p>
Estimated Cost	<p>An estimate of the amount of work for the query.</p> <p>The optimizer uses an estimate to compare the cost of one path with another. The estimated cost is a number the optimizer assigns to the selected access method. The estimated cost does not translate directly into time, and cannot be used to compare different queries. However, it can be used to compare changes made for the same query. When data distributions are used, a query with a higher estimate generally takes longer to run than one with a smaller estimate.</p> <p>In the case of a query and a subquery, two estimated cost figures are returned; the query figure also contains the subquery cost. The subquery cost is shown only so you can see the cost that is associated with the subquery.</p>
Estimated # of Rows Returned	<p>An estimate of the number of rows to be returned.</p> <p>This number is based on the information in the system catalog tables</p>
Numbered List	<p>The order in which tables are accessed, followed by the access method used (index path or sequential scan).</p> <p>When a query involves table inheritance, all of the tables are listed under the supertable in the order they were accessed.</p>

(1 of 2)

Term	Significance
Index Keys	<p>The columns used as filters or indexes; the column name used for the index path or filter is indicated.</p> <p>The notation (<i>Key Only</i>) indicates that all of the desired columns are part of the index key, so a key-only read of the index could be substituted for a read of the actual table.</p> <p>The <i>Lower Index Filter</i> shows the key value where the index read begins. If the filter condition contains more than one value, an <i>Upper Index Filter</i> would be shown for the key value where the index read stops.</p>
Join Method	<p>When the query involves a join between two tables, the join method the optimizer used (Nested Loop or Dynamic Hash) is shown at the bottom of the output for that query.</p> <p>When the query involves a dynamic join of two tables, if the output contains the words <i>Build Outer</i>, the hash table is built on the first table listed (called the build table).</p> <p>If the words <i>Build Outer</i> do not appear, the hash table is built on the second table listed.</p>

(2 of 2)

Related Information

Related statements: SET OPTIMIZATION and UPDATE STATISTICS

For discussions of SET EXPLAIN and of analyzing the output of the optimizer, see your [Performance Guide](#).

In ESQ/C, cursors that are currently open when you execute the SET ISOLATION statement might or might not use the new isolation level when rows are later retrieved. The isolation level in effect could be any level that was set from the time the cursor was opened until the time the application actually fetches a row. The database server might have read rows into internal buffers and internal temporary tables using the isolation level that was in effect at that time. To ensure consistency and reproducible results, close open cursors before you execute the SET ISOLATION statement. ♦

Informix Isolation Levels

The following definitions explain the critical characteristics of each isolation level, from the lowest level of isolation to the highest.

Using the Dirty Read Option

Use the Dirty Read option to copy rows from the database whether or not there are locks on them. The program that fetches a row places no locks and it respects none. Dirty Read is the only isolation level available to databases that do not have transactions.

This isolation level is most appropriate for static tables that are used for queries, that is, tables where data is not being modified, since it provides no isolation. With Dirty Read, the program might return a phantom row, which is an uncommitted row that was inserted or modified within a transaction that has subsequently rolled back. No other isolation level allows access to a phantom row.

Using the Committed Read Option

Use the Committed Read option to guarantee that every retrieved row is committed in the table at the time that the row is retrieved. This option does not place a lock on the fetched row. Committed Read is the default level of isolation in a database with logging that is not ANSI compliant.

Committed Read is appropriate to use when each row of data is processed as an independent unit, without reference to other rows in the same or other tables.

Using the Cursor Stability Option

Use the Cursor Stability option to place a shared lock on the fetched row, which is released when you fetch another row or close the cursor. Another process can also place a shared lock on the same row, but no process can acquire an exclusive lock to modify data in the row. Such row stability is important when the program updates another table based on the data it reads from the row.

If you set the isolation level to Cursor Stability, but you are not using a transaction, the Cursor Stability isolation level acts like the Committed Read isolation level.

Using the Repeatable Read Option

Use the Repeatable Read option to place a shared lock on every row that is selected during the transaction. Another process can also place a shared lock on a selected row, but no other process can modify any selected row during your transaction or insert a row that meets the search criteria of your query during your transaction. If you repeat the query during the transaction, you reread the same information. The shared locks are released only when the transaction commits or rolls back. Repeatable Read is the default isolation level in an ANSI-compliant database.

Repeatable Read isolation places the largest number of locks and holds them the longest. Therefore, it is the level that reduces concurrency the most.

Default Isolation Levels

The default isolation level for a particular database is established when you create the database according to database type. The following list describes the default isolation level for each database type.

Isolation Level	Database Type
Dirty Read	Default level of isolation in a database without logging
Committed Read	Default level of isolation in a database with logging that is not ANSI compliant
Repeatable Read	Default level of isolation in an ANSI-compliant database

The default level remains in effect until you issue a SET ISOLATION statement. After a SET ISOLATION statement executes, the new isolation level remains in effect until one of the following events occurs:

- You enter another SET ISOLATION statement.
- You open another database that has a default isolation level different from the isolation level that your last SET ISOLATION statement specified.
- The program ends.

Using the RETAIN UPDATE LOCKS Option

Use the RETAIN UPDATE LOCKS option to affect the behavior of the database server when it handles a SELECT... FOR UPDATE statement.

In a database with the isolation level set to Dirty Read, Committed Read, or Cursor Stability, the database server places an update lock on a fetched row of a SELECT... FOR UPDATE statement. When you turn on the RETAIN UPDATE LOCKS option, the database server retains the update lock until the end of the transaction rather than release it at the next subsequent FETCH or when the cursor is closed. This option prevents other users from placing an exclusive lock on the updated row before the current user reaches the end of the transaction.

You can use this option to achieve the same locking effects but avoid the overhead of dummy updates or the repeatable read isolation level.

You can turn this option on or off at any time during the current session.

You can turn the option off by resetting the isolation level without using the RETAIN UPDATE LOCKS keywords.

For more information on update locks, see [“Locking Considerations” on page 2-819](#).

Turning the Option Off In the Middle of a Transaction

If you turn the RETAIN UPDATE LOCKS option off in the middle of a transaction, several update locks might still exist.

Switching off the feature does not directly release any update lock. When you turn this option off, the database server reverts to normal behavior for the three isolation levels. That is, a FETCH statement releases the update lock placed on a row by the immediately preceding FETCH statement, and a closed cursor releases the update lock on the current row.

Update locks placed by earlier FETCH statements are not released unless multiple update cursors are present within the same transaction. In this case, a subsequent FETCH could also release older update locks of other cursors.

Effects of Isolation Levels

You cannot set the database isolation level in a database that does not have logging. Every retrieval in such a database occurs as a Dirty Read.

You can issue a SET ISOLATION statement from a client computer only after a database is opened.

The data obtained during retrieval of a BYTE or TEXT column can vary, depending on the database isolation level. Under Dirty Read or Committed Read levels of isolation, a process is permitted to read a BYTE or TEXT column that is either deleted (if the delete is not yet committed) or in the process of being deleted. Under these isolation levels, an application can read a deleted data when certain conditions exist. For information about these conditions, see the [Administrator's Guide](#).

DB

When you use DB-Access, as you use higher levels of isolation, lock conflicts occur more frequently. For example, if you use Cursor Stability, more lock conflicts occur than if you use Committed Read. ♦

E/C

In ESQL/C, if you use a scroll cursor in a transaction, you can force consistency between your temporary table and the database table either by setting the isolation level to Repeatable Read or by locking the entire table during the transaction.

If you use a scroll cursor with hold in a transaction, you cannot force consistency between your temporary table and the database table. A table-level lock or locks that are set by Repeatable Read are released when the transaction is completed, but the scroll cursor with hold remains open beyond the end of the transaction. You can modify released rows as soon as the transaction ends, but the retrieved data in the temporary table might be inconsistent with the actual data. ♦

Related Information

Related statements: CREATE DATABASE, SET LOCK MODE, and SET TRANSACTION

For a discussion of setting the isolation level, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

Usage

You can direct the response of the database server in the following ways when a process tries to access a locked row or table.

Lock Mode	Effect
NOT WAIT	Database server ends the operation immediately and returns an error code. This condition is the default.
WAIT	Database server suspends the process until the lock releases.
WAIT <i>seconds</i>	Database server suspends the process until the lock releases or until the end of a waiting period, which is specified in seconds. If the lock remains after the waiting period, the database server ends the operation and returns an error code.

In the following example, the user specifies that the process should be suspended until the lock is released:

```
SET LOCK MODE TO WAIT
```

In the following example, the user specifies that if the process requests a locked row the operation should end immediately and an error code should be returned:

```
SET LOCK MODE TO NOT WAIT
```

In the following example, the user places an upper limit of 17 seconds on the length of any wait:

```
SET LOCK MODE TO WAIT 17
```

WAIT Clause

The WAIT clause causes the database server to suspend the process until the lock is released or until a specified number of seconds have passed without the lock being released.

The database server protects against the possibility of a deadlock when you request the WAIT option. Before the database server suspends a process, it checks whether suspending the process could create a deadlock. If the database server discovers that a deadlock could occur, it ends the operation (overruling your instruction to wait) and returns an error code. In the case of either a suspected or actual deadlock, the database server returns an error.

Cautiously use the unlimited waiting period that was created when you specify the WAIT option without *seconds*. If you do not specify an upper limit, and the process that placed the lock somehow fails to release it, suspended processes could wait indefinitely. Because a true deadlock situation does not exist, the database server does not take corrective action.

In a networked environment, the DBA uses the ONCONFIG parameter DEADLOCK_TIMEOUT to establish a default value for *seconds*. If you use a SET LOCK MODE statement to set an upper limit, your value applies only when your waiting period is shorter than the system default. The number of seconds that the process waits applies only if you acquire locks within the current database server and a remote database server within the same transaction.

Related Information

Related statements: LOCK TABLE, SET ISOLATION, SET TRANSACTION and UNLOCK TABLE

For a discussion on how to set the lock mode, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

The SET LOG statement in the following example changes the transaction logging mode to unbuffered logging:

```
SET LOG
```

The SET LOG statement redefines the mode for the current session only. The default mode, which the database administrator sets with the **ondblog** utility, remains unchanged.

The buffering option does not affect retrievals from external tables. For distributed queries, a database with logging can retrieve only from databases with logging, but it makes no difference whether the databases use buffered or unbuffered logging.

ANSI

An ANSI-compliant database cannot use buffered logs.

You cannot change the logging mode of ANSI-compliant databases. If you created a database with the WITH LOG MODE ANSI keywords, you cannot later use the SET LOG statement to change the logging mode to buffered or unbuffered transaction logging. ♦

Related Information

Related statement: CREATE DATABASE

HIGH and LOW Options

The HIGH and LOW options relate to the time the optimizer spends to determine the query plan:

- HIGH

This option directs the optimizer to use a sophisticated, cost-based algorithm that examines all reasonable query-plan choices and selects the best overall alternative.

For large joins, this algorithm can incur more overhead than you desire. In extreme cases, you can run out of memory.

- LOW

This option directs the optimizer to use a less sophisticated, but faster, optimization algorithm. This algorithm eliminates unlikely join strategies during the early stages of optimization and reduces the time and resources spent during optimization.

When you specify a low level of optimization, the database server might not select the optimal strategy because the strategy was eliminated from consideration during the early stages of the algorithm.

IDS

FIRST_ROWS and ALL_ROWS Options

The FIRST_ROWS and ALL_ROWS options relate to the optimization goal of the query:

- FIRST_ROWS

This option directs the optimizer to choose the query plan that returns the first result record as soon as possible.

- ALL_ROWS

This option directs the optimizer to choose the query plan which returns all the records as quickly as possible.

You can also specify the optimization goal of a specific query with the optimization-goal directive. For more information on how to use a directive to specify the optimization goal of a query, see [“Optimizer Directives” on page 4-244](#).

Optimizing SPL Routines

For SPL routines that remain unchanged or change only slightly, you might want to set the SET OPTIMIZATION statement to HIGH when you create the SPL routine. This step stores the best query plans for the SPL routine. Then execute a SET OPTIMIZATION LOW statement before you execute the SPL routine. The SPL routine then uses the optimal query plans and runs at the more cost-effective rate.

Examples

The following example shows optimization across a network. The **central** database (on the **midstate** database server) is to have LOW optimization; the **western** database (on the **rockies** database server) is to have HIGH optimization.

```
CONNECT TO 'central@midstate';
SET OPTIMIZATION LOW;
SELECT * FROM customer;
CLOSE DATABASE;
CONNECT TO 'western@rockies';
SET OPTIMIZATION HIGH;
SELECT * FROM customer;
CLOSE DATABASE;
CONNECT TO 'wyoming@rockies';
SELECT * FROM customer;
```

The **wyoming** database is to have HIGH optimization because it resides on the same database server as the **western** database. The code does not need to respecify the optimization level for the **wyoming** database because the **wyoming** database resides on the **rockies** database server like the **western** database.

The following example directs the optimizer to use the most time to determine a query plan and to then return the first rows of the result as soon as possible.

```
SET OPTIMIZATION LOW;
SET OPTIMIZATION FIRST_ROWS;
SELECT lname, fname, bonus
FROM sales_emp, sales
WHERE sales.empid = sales_emp.empid AND bonus > 5,000
ORDER BY bonus DESC
```



Related Information

Related statements: SET EXPLAIN and UPDATE STATISTICS

For information on other methods by which you can alter the query plan of the optimizer, see [“Optimizer Directives” on page 4-244](#). ♦

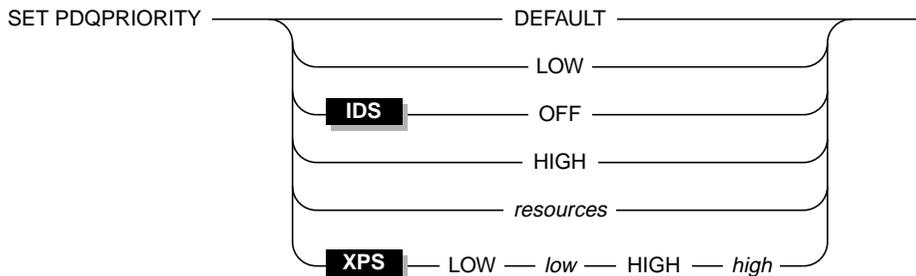
For more information on how to optimize queries, see your [Performance Guide](#).

+

SET PDQRIORITY

The SET PDQRIORITY statement allows an application to set the query priority level dynamically within an application.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>high</i>	Integer value that specifies the desired resource allocation	You must specify a value in the range 1 to 100. The <i>high</i> value must be greater than or equal to the <i>low</i> value.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>low</i>	Integer value that specifies the minimum acceptable resource allocation	You must specify a value in the range 1 to 100.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>resources</i>	Integer value that specifies the query priority level and the percent of resources the database server uses to process the query	Value must be from -1 to 100. For information on the specific meanings of certain values, see “Allocating Database Server Resources” on page 2-753.	Literal Number, p. 4-237

Usage

The priority set with the SET PDQPRIORITY statement overrides the environment variable **PDQPRIORITY**. However, no matter what priority value you set with the SET PDQPRIORITY statement, the ONCONFIG configuration parameter **MAX_PDQPRIORITY** determines the actual priority value that the database server uses for your queries.

For example, assume that the DBA sets the **MAX_PDQPRIORITY** parameter to 50. Then a user enters the following SET PDQPRIORITY statement to set the query priority level to 80 percent of resources:

```
SET PDQPRIORITY 80
```

When it processes the query, the database server uses the value of the **MAX_PDQPRIORITY** parameter to factor the query priority level set by the user. The database server silently processes the query with a priority level of 40. This priority level represents 50 percent of the 80 percent of resources that the user specifies.

IDS

Set PDQ priority to a value that is less than the quotient of 100 divided by the maximum number of prepared statements. For example, if two prepared statements are active, you should set PDQ priority to less than 50. ♦

XPS

In Extended Parallel Server, set PDQ priority to a value greater than 0 when you need more memory for database operations such as sorts, groups, and index builds. For guidelines on which values to use, see your [Performance Guide](#). ♦

SET PDQPRIORITY Keywords

The following table shows the keywords that you can enter for the SET PDQPRIORITY statement.

Keyword	Purpose
DEFAULT	Uses the value that is specified in the PDQPRIORITY environment variable
LOW	Signifies that data is fetched from fragmented tables in parallel In Dynamic Server, when you specify LOW, the database server uses no other forms of parallelism.
OFF	Indicates that PDQ is turned off (Dynamic Server only) The database server uses no parallelism. OFF is the default setting if you use neither the PDQPRIORITY environment variable nor the SET PDQPRIORITY statement.
HIGH	Signifies that the database server determines an appropriate value to use for PDQPRIORITY This decision is based on several factors, including the number of available processors, the fragmentation of the tables being queried, the complexity of the query, and so on. Informix reserves the right to change the performance behavior of queries when HIGH is specified in future releases.

Allocating Database Server Resources

You can specify any integer in the range from -1 to 100 to indicate a query priority level as the percent of resources the database server uses to process the query.

Resources include the amount of memory and the number of processors. The higher the number you specify in this parameter, the more resources the database server uses. Although the use of more resources by a database server usually indicates better performance for a given query, using too many resources can cause contention among the resources and remove resources from other queries, which results in degraded performance.

With the *resources* option, the following values are numeric equivalents of the keywords that indicate query priority level.

Value	Equivalent Keyword-Priority Level
-1	DEFAULT
0	OFF (Dynamic Server only)
1	LOW (Dynamic Server only)

IDS

The following statements are equivalent. The first statement uses the keyword `LOW` to establish a low query-priority level. The second statement uses a value of `1` in the *resources* parameter to establish a low query-priority level.

```
SET PDQPRIORITY LOW;
SET PDQPRIORITY 1;
```

XPS

Using a Range of Values

In Extended Parallel Server, when you specify a range of values in `SET PDQPRIORITY`, you allow the Resource Grant Manager (RGM) some discretion when allocating resources. The largest value in the range is the desired resource allocation, while the smallest value is the minimum acceptable resource allocation for the query. If the minimum PDQ priority exceeds the available system resources, the RGM blocks the query. Otherwise, the RGM chooses the largest PDQ priority in the range specified in `SET PDQPRIORITY` that does not exceed available resources.

Related Information

For information about configuration parameters and about the Resource Grant Manager, see your [Administrator's Guide](#) and your [Performance Guide](#).

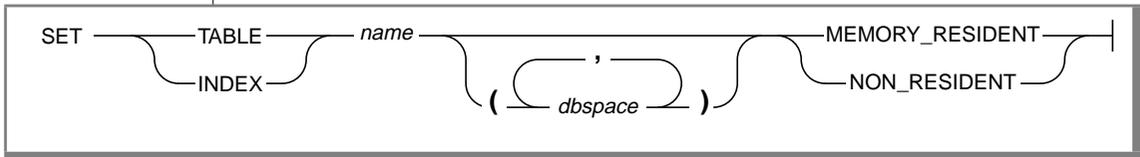
For information about the `PDQPRIORITY` environment variable, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

+

SET Residency

Use the SET Residency statement to specify that one or more fragments of a table or index be resident in shared memory as long as possible.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>dbspace</i>	Name of the dbspace in which the fragment resides	The dbspace must exist.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>name</i>	Name of the table or index for which you want to change the resident state	The table or index must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

The SET Residency statement allows you to specify the tables, indexes, and data fragments that you want to remain in the buffer as long as possible. When a free buffer is requested, pages that are declared MEMORY_RESIDENT are considered last for page replacement.

The default resident state for database objects is nonresident. The resident state is persistent for the time the database server is up. That is, each time the database server is started you must specify the database objects that you want to remain in shared memory.

After a table, index, or data fragment is set to MEMORY_RESIDENT, the resident state remains in effect until one of the following events occurs:

- You use the SET Residency statement to set the database object to NON_RESIDENT.
- The database object is dropped.
- The database server is taken off-line.

You must be user **informix** to set or change the residency status of a database object.

Residency and the Changing Status of Fragments

If new fragments are added to a resident table, the fragments are not marked automatically as resident. You must issue the SET Residency statement for each new fragment or reissue the statement for the entire table.

Similarly, if a resident fragment is detached from a table, the residency status of the fragment remains unchanged. If you want the residency status to change to nonresident, you must issue the SET Residency statement to declare the specific fragment (or the entire table) as nonresident.

Examples

The following example shows how to set the residency status of an entire table.

```
SET TABLE tab1 MEMORY_RESIDENT
```

For fragmented tables or indexes, you can specify residency for individual fragments as the following example shows.

```
SET INDEX index1 (dbspace1, dbspace2) MEMORY_RESIDENT;  
SET TABLE tab1 (dbspace1) NON_RESIDENT
```

This example specifies that the **tab1** fragment in **dbspace1** is not to remain in shared memory while the **index1** fragments in **dbspace1** and **dbspace2** are to remain in shared memory as long as possible.

Related Information

Related statements: SYNTAX

For information on how to monitor the residency status of tables, indexes and fragments, refer to your [Administrator's Guide](#).

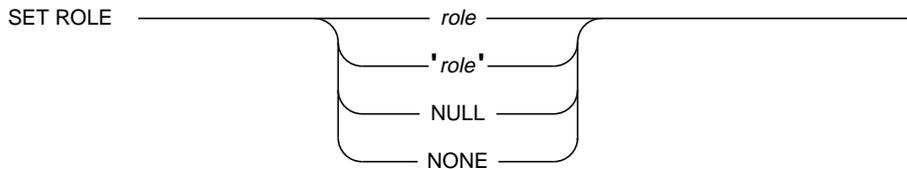
+

IDS

SET ROLE

Use the SET ROLE statement to enable the privileges of a role.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>role</i>	Name of the role that you want to enable	The role must have been created with the CREATE ROLE statement. When a role name is enclosed in quotation marks, the role name is case sensitive.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Usage

Any user who is granted a role can enable the role using the SET ROLE statement. You can only enable one role at a time. If you execute the SET ROLE statement after a role is already set, the new role replaces the old role.

All users are, by default, assigned the role NULL or NONE (NULL and NONE are synonymous). The roles NULL and NONE have no privileges. When you set the role to NULL or NONE, you disable the current role.

When you set a role, you gain the privileges of the role, in addition to the privileges of PUBLIC and your own privileges. If a role is granted to another role, you gain the privileges of both roles, in addition to those of PUBLIC and your own privileges. After a SET ROLE statement executes successfully, the role remains effective until the current database is closed or the user executes another SET ROLE statement. Additionally, the user, not the role, retains ownership of all the database objects, such as tables, that were created during a session.

The scope of a role is within the current database only. You cannot use the privileges you acquire from a role to access data in another database. For example, if you have privileges from a role in the database named **acctg**, and you execute a distributed query over the databases named **acctg** and **inventory**, your query cannot access the data in the **inventory** database unless you were granted privileges in the **inventory** database.

You cannot execute the SET ROLE statement while in a transaction. If the SET ROLE statement is executed while a transaction is active, an error occurs.

If the SET ROLE statement is executed as a part of a trigger or SPL routine, and the owner of the trigger or SPL routine was granted the role with the WITH GRANT OPTION, the role is enabled even if you are not granted the role.

The following example sets the role **engineer**:

```
SET ROLE engineer
```

The following example sets a role and then relinquishes the role after it performs a SELECT operation:

```
EXEC SQL set role engineer;
EXEC SQL select fname, lname, project
        into :efname, :elname, :eproject
        from projects
        where project_num > 100 and lname = 'Larkin';
printf ("%s is working on %s\n", efname, eproject);
EXEC SQL set role null;
```

Related Information

Related statements: CREATE ROLE, DROP ROLE, GRANT, and REVOKE

For a discussion of how to use roles, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

+

XPS

SET SCHEDULE LEVEL

The SET SCHEDULE LEVEL statement specifies the scheduling level of a query when queries are waiting to be processed.

Syntax

```
SET SCHEDULE LEVEL level
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>level</i>	Integer value that determines the scheduling priority of a query	The value must be between 1 and 100. If the value falls outside the range of 1 and 100, the database server uses the default value of 50.	Literal Number, p. 4-237

Usage

The highest priority level is 100. That is, a query at level 100 is more important than a query at level 1. In general, the Resource Grant Manager (RGM) processes a query with a higher scheduling level before a query with a lower scheduling level. The exact behavior of the RGM is influenced by the setting of the DS_ADM_POLICY configuration parameter.

Related Information

Related statement: SET PDQPRIORITY

For information about the Resource Grant Manager, see your [Administrator's Guide](#).

For information about the DS_ADM_POLICY configuration parameter, see your [Administrator's Reference](#).

SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION

The SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION statement lets you change the user name under which database operations are performed in the current session. This statement is enabled by the DBA privilege, which you must obtain from the DBA before the start of your current session. The new identity remains in effect in the current database until you execute another SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION statement or until you close the current database.

Syntax

```
SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION TO _____ 'user' _____ |
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>user</i>	User name under which database operations are to be performed in the current session	You must specify a valid user name. You must put quotation marks around the user name.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Usage

The SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION statement allows a user with the DBA privilege to bypass the privileges that protect database objects. You can use this statement to gain access to a table and adopt the identity of a table owner to grant access privileges. You must obtain the DBA privilege before you start a session in which you use this statement. Otherwise, this statement returns an error.

When you use this statement, the user name to which the authorization is set must have the Connect privilege on the current database. Additionally, the DBA cannot set the authorization to PUBLIC or to any defined role in the current database.

After SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION is executed, all owner-privileged UDRs created while using the new identity will be given RESTRICTED mode. For more information on RESTRICTED mode, see the **sysprocedures** system catalog table in the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

Setting a session to another user causes a change in a user name in the current active database server. In other words, these users are, as far as this database server process is concerned, completely dispossessed of any privileges that they might have while accessing the database server through some administrative utility. Additionally, the new session user is not able to initiate an administrative operation (execute a utility, for example) by virtue of the acquired identity.

After the SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION statement successfully executes, the user must use the SET ROLE statement to assume a role granted to the current user. Any role enabled by a previous user is relinquished.

Restriction on Scope of SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION

When you assume the identity of another user by executing the SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION statement, you can perform operations in the current database only. You cannot perform an operation on a database object outside the current database, such as a remote table. In addition, you cannot execute a DROP DATABASE or RENAME DATABASE statement, even if the database is owned by the real or effective user.

Using SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION to Obtain Privileges

You can use the SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION statement either to obtain access to the data directly or to grant the database-level or table-level privileges needed for the database operation to proceed. The following example shows how to use the SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION statement to obtain table-level privileges:

```
SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION TO 'cath1';
GRANT ALL ON customer TO mary;
SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION TO 'mary';
UPDATE customer
  SET fname = 'Carl'
  WHERE lname = 'Pauli';
```

ANSI

SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION and Transactions

If your database is not ANSI compliant, you must issue the `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION` statement outside a transaction. If you issue the statement within a transaction, you receive an error message.

In an ANSI-compliant database, you can execute the `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION` statement as long as you have not executed a statement that initiates an implicit transaction. Such statements either acquire locks or log data (for example, `CREATE TABLE` or `SELECT`). Statements that do not initiate an implicit transaction are statements that do not acquire locks or log data (for example, `SET EXPLAIN` and `SET ISOLATION`).

The `COMMIT WORK` and `DATABASE` statements do not initiate implicit transactions. So, in an ANSI-compliant database, you can execute the `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION` statement immediately after a `DATABASE` statement or a `COMMIT WORK` statement. ♦

Related Information

Related statements: `CONNECT`, `DATABASE`, `GRANT`, and `SET ROLE`

+

IDS

SET STATEMENT CACHE

Use the SET STATEMENT CACHE statement to turn caching on or off for the current session.

Syntax

```
SET STATEMENT CACHE ON | OFF
```

Usage

You can use the SET STATEMENT CACHE statement to turn caching in the SQL statement cache ON or OFF for the current session. The SQL statement cache is a mechanism that stores identical statements that are repeatedly executed in a buffer.

This mechanism allows qualifying statements to bypass the optimization stage and parsing stage, and avoid recompiling, which reduces memory consumption and improves query processing time.

Precedence and Default Behavior

The SET STATEMENT CACHE statement takes precedence over the STMT_CACHE environment variable and the STMT_CACHE configuration parameter. However, you must enable the SQL statement cache (either by setting the STMT_CACHE configuration parameter or using the **onmode** utility) before a SET STATEMENT CACHE statement can execute successfully.

When you issue a SET STATEMENT CACHE ON statement, the SQL statement cache remains in effect until you issue a SET STATEMENT CACHE OFF statement or until the program ends. If you do not enter a SET STATEMENT CACHE statement, the default behavior is OFF.

Turning the Cache On

Use the ON option to enable the SQL statement cache.

When the SQL statement cache is enabled, each statement that you execute passes through the SQL statement cache to determine if a matching cache entry is present. If so, the database server uses the cached entry to execute the statement.

If the statement does not have a matching entry, the database server tests to see if it qualifies for entry into the cache. For information on the conditions a statement must meet to enter into the cache, see [“Statement Qualification” on page 766](#).

Restrictions on Matching Entries in the SQL Statement Cache

When the database server considers whether or not a statement is identical to a statement in the SQL statement cache, the following items must match:

- Case
- Comments
- Query text strings
- White space
- Optimization settings
 - SET OPTIMIZATION statement options
 - Optimizer directives
 - Settings of the OPTCOMPIND environment variable or the OPTCOMPIND ONCONFIG configuration parameter

Host variable names, however, are insignificant. For example, the following select statements are considered identical:

```
SELECT * FROM tab1 WHERE x = :x AND y = :y;
```

```
SELECT * FROM tab1 WHERE x = :p AND y = :q;
```

In the previous example, although the host names are different, the statements qualify because the case, query text strings, and white space match.

Turning the Cache OFF

Use the OFF option to disable the SQL statement cache. When you turn caching off for your session, no SQL statement cache code is executed for that session.

The SQL statement cache is designed to save memory in environments where identical queries are executed repeatedly and where schema changes are infrequent. If this is not the case, you might want to turn the SQL statement cache off to avoid the overhead of caching.

For example, if you have little cache cohesion, that is, when relatively few matches but many new entries into the cache exist, the cache management overhead is high. In this case, turn the SQL statement cache off.

In addition, if you know that you are executing many statements that do not qualify for the SQL statement cache, you might want to disable it and avoid the overhead of testing to see if each statement qualifies for entry into the cache.

Statement Qualification

A statement that can be cached in the SQL statement cache (and consequently, one that can match a statement that already appears in the SQL statement cache), must meet the following conditions:

- It must be a SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE statement.
- It must contain only built-in data types (excluding BLOB, BOOLEAN, BYTE, CLOB, LVARCHAR, or TEXT).
- It must contain only built-in operators.
- It cannot contain user-defined routines.
- It cannot contain temporary or remote tables.
- It cannot contain subqueries in the select list.
- It cannot be part of a multi-statement PREPARE.
- It cannot have user-permission restrictions on target columns.
- In an ANSI-compliant database, it must contain fully qualified object names.
- It cannot require re-optimization.

Related Information

For information on optimization settings, see “[SET OPTIMIZATION](#)” on page 2-747 and “[Optimizer Directives](#)” on page 4-244.

For information about the `STMT_CACHE` environment variable, see the *[Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#)*.

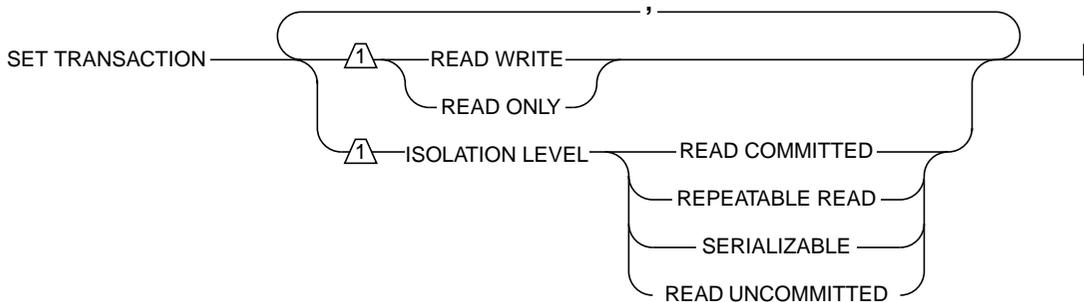
For more information about the `STMT_CACHE` onconfig parameter and the **onmode** utility, see your *[Administrator's Reference](#)*.

For more information on the performance implications of this feature, see your *[Performance Guide](#)*.

SET TRANSACTION

Use the SET TRANSACTION statement to define isolation levels and to define the access mode of a transaction (read-only or read-write).

Syntax



Usage

You can use SET TRANSACTION only in databases with logging.

You can issue a SET TRANSACTION statement from a client computer only after a database is opened.

The database isolation level affects concurrency among processes that attempt to access the same rows simultaneously from the database. The database server uses shared locks to support different levels of isolation among processes that are attempting to read data as the following list shows:

- Read Uncommitted
- Read Committed
- (ANSI) Repeatable Read
- Serializable

The update or delete process always acquires an exclusive lock on the row that is being modified. The level of isolation does not interfere with rows that you are updating or deleting; however, the access mode does affect whether you can update or delete rows. If another process attempts to update or delete rows that you are reading with an isolation level of Serializable or (ANSI) Repeatable Read, that process will be denied access to those rows.

Comparing SET TRANSACTION with SET ISOLATION

The SET TRANSACTION statement complies with ANSI SQL-92. This statement is similar to the Informix SET ISOLATION statement; however, the SET ISOLATION statement is not ANSI compliant and does not provide access modes. In fact, the isolation levels that you can set with the SET TRANSACTION statement are almost parallel to the isolation levels that you can set with the SET ISOLATION statement, as the following table shows.

SET TRANSACTION Isolation Level	SET ISOLATION Isolation Level
Read Uncommitted	Dirty Read
Read Committed	Committed Read
Not supported	Cursor Stability
(ANSI) Repeatable Read	(Informix) Repeatable Read
Serializable	(Informix) Repeatable Read

Another difference between the SET TRANSACTION and SET ISOLATION statements is the behavior of the isolation levels within transactions. You can issue the SET TRANSACTION statement only once for a transaction. Any cursors that are opened during that transaction are guaranteed to get that isolation level (or access mode if you are defining an access mode). With the SET ISOLATION statement, after a transaction is started, you can change the isolation level more than once within the transaction. The following examples illustrate this difference in the behavior of the SET ISOLATION and SET TRANSACTION statements:

SET ISOLATION

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN WORK;
EXEC SQL SET ISOLATION TO DIRTY READ;
EXEC SQL SELECT ... ;
EXEC SQL SET ISOLATION TO REPEATABLE READ;
EXEC SQL INSERT ... ;
EXEC SQL COMMIT WORK;
-- Executes without error
```

SET TRANSACTION

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN WORK;
EXEC SQL SET TRANSACTION ISOLATION LEVEL SERIALIZABLE;
EXEC SQL SELECT ... ;
EXEC SQL SET TRANSACTION ISOLATION LEVEL READ COMMITTED;
-- Produces error 876: Cannot issue SET TRANSACTION
-- in an active transaction.
```

Another difference between SET ISOLATION and SET TRANSACTION is the duration of isolation levels. The isolation level set by SET ISOLATION remains in effect until another SET ISOLATION statement is issued. The isolation level set by SET TRANSACTION only remains in effect until the transaction terminates. Then the isolation level is reset to the default for the database type.

Informix Isolation Levels

The following definitions explain the critical characteristics of each isolation level, from the lowest level of isolation to the highest.

Using the Read Uncommitted Option

Use the Read Uncommitted option to copy rows from the database whether or not locks are present on them. The program that fetches a row places no locks and it respects none. Read Uncommitted is the only isolation level available to databases that do not have transactions.

This isolation level is most appropriate for static tables that are used for queries, that is, tables where data is not being modified, since it provides no isolation. With Read Uncommitted, the program might return a phantom row, which is an uncommitted row that was inserted or modified within a transaction that has subsequently rolled back. No other isolation level allows access to a phantom row.

Using the Read Committed Option

Use the Read Committed option to guarantee that every retrieved row is committed in the table at the time that the row is retrieved. This option does not place a lock on the fetched row. Read Committed is the default level of isolation in a database with logging that is not ANSI compliant.

Read Committed is appropriate to use when each row of data is processed as an independent unit, without reference to other rows in the same or other tables.

Using the Repeatable Read Option

Use the Serializable option to place a shared lock on every row that is selected during the transaction. Another process can also place a shared lock on a selected row, but no other process can modify any selected row during your transaction or insert a row that meets the search criteria of your query during your transaction. If you repeat the query during the transaction, you reread the same information. The shared locks are released only when the transaction commits or rolls back. Serializable is the default isolation level in an ANSI-compliant database.

Serializable isolation places the largest number of locks and holds them the longest. Therefore, it is the level that reduces concurrency the most.

Default Isolation Levels

The default isolation level for a particular database is established according to database type when you create the database. The default isolation level for each database type is described in the following table.

Informix	ANSI	Purpose
Dirty Read	Read Uncommitted	Default level of isolation in a database without logging
Committed Read	Read Committed	Default level of isolation in a database with logging that is not ANSI compliant
Repeatable Read	Serializable	Default level of isolation in an ANSI-compliant database

The default isolation level remains in effect until you issue a SET TRANSACTION statement within a transaction. After a COMMIT WORK statement completes the transaction or a ROLLBACK WORK statement cancels the transaction, the isolation level is reset to the default.

Access Modes

Informix database servers support access modes. Access modes affect read and write concurrency for rows within transactions. Use access modes to control data modification.

You can specify that a transaction is read-only or read-write through the SET TRANSACTION statement. By default, transactions are read-write. When you specify that a transaction is read-only, certain limitations apply. Read-only transactions cannot perform the following actions:

- Insert, delete, or update table rows
- Create, alter, or drop any database object such as schemas, tables, temporary tables, indexes, or SPL routines
- Grant or revoke privileges
- Update statistics
- Rename columns or tables

You can execute SPL routines in a read-only transaction as long as the SPL routine does not try to perform any restricted statement.

Effects of Isolation Levels

You cannot set the database isolation level in a database that does not have logging. Every retrieval in such a database occurs as a Read Uncommitted.

The data that is obtained during retrieval of BYTE or TEXT data can vary, depending on the database isolation levels. Under Read Uncommitted or Read Committed isolation levels, a process is permitted to read a BYTE or TEXT column that is either deleted (if the delete is not yet committed) or in the process of being deleted. Under these isolation levels, an application can read a deleted BYTE or TEXT column when certain conditions exist. For information about these conditions, see the [Administrator's Guide](#).

E/C

In ESQ/L/C, if you use a scroll cursor in a transaction, you can force consistency between your temporary table and the database table either by setting the isolation level to Serializable or by locking the entire table during the transaction.

If you use a scroll cursor with hold in a transaction, you cannot force consistency between your temporary table and the database table. A table-level lock or locks set by Serializable are released when the transaction is completed, but the scroll cursor with hold remains open beyond the end of the transaction. You can modify released rows as soon as the transaction ends, so the retrieved data in the temporary table might be inconsistent with the actual data. ♦

Related Information

Related statements: CREATE DATABASE, SET ISOLATION, and SET LOCK MODE

For a discussion of isolation levels and concurrency issues, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

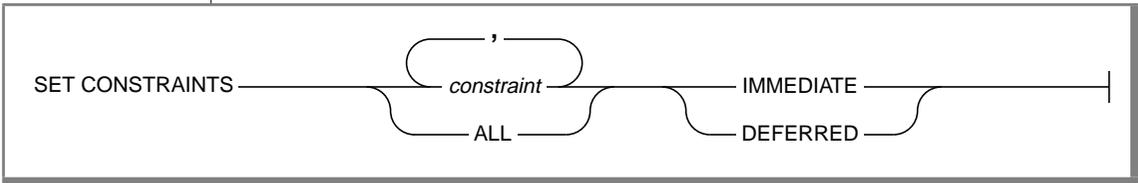
IDS

SET Transaction Mode

Use the SET Transaction Mode statement to specify whether constraints are checked at the statement level or at the transaction level.

To change the mode of constraints to on, off, or filtering, see [“SET Database Object Mode” on page 2-700](#). ♦

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>constraint</i>	Constraint whose transaction mode is to be changed, or a list of constraint names No default value exists.	The specified constraint must exist in a database with logging. You cannot change the transaction mode of a constraint to deferred mode unless the constraint is currently in the enabled mode. All constraints in a list of constraints must exist in the same database.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

When you set the transaction mode of a constraint, the effect of the SET Transaction Mode statement is limited to the transaction in which it is executed. The setting that the SET Transaction Mode statement produces is effective only during the transaction.

You use the IMMEDIATE keyword to set the transaction mode of constraints to statement-level checking. You use the DEFERRED keyword to set the transaction mode to transaction-level checking.

You can set the transaction mode of constraints only in a database with logging.

Statement-Level Checking

When you set the transaction mode to immediate, statement-level checking is turned on, and all specified constraints are checked at the end of each INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE statement. If a constraint violation occurs, the statement is not executed. Immediate is the default transaction mode of constraints.

Transaction-Level Checking

When you set the transaction mode of constraints to deferred, statement-level checking is turned off, and all specified constraints are not checked until the transaction is committed. If a constraint violation occurs while the transaction is being committed, the transaction is rolled back.



Tip: If you defer checking a primary-key constraint, checking the not-null constraint for that column or set of columns is also deferred.

Duration of Transaction Modes

The duration of the transaction mode that the SET Transaction Mode statement specifies is the transaction in which the SET Transaction Mode statement is executed. You cannot execute this statement outside a transaction. Once a COMMIT WORK or ROLLBACK WORK statement is successfully completed, the transaction mode of all constraints reverts to IMMEDIATE.

Switching Transaction Modes

To switch from transaction-level checking to statement-level checking, you can use the SET Transaction Mode statement to set the transaction mode to immediate, or you can use a COMMIT WORK or ROLLBACK WORK statement in your transaction.

Specifying All Constraints or a List of Constraints

You can specify all constraints in the database in your SET Transaction Mode statement, or you can specify a single constraint or list of constraints.

Specifying All Constraints

If you specify the ALL keyword, the SET Transaction Mode statement sets the transaction mode for all constraints in the database. If any statement in the transaction requires that any constraint on any table in the database be checked, the database server performs the checks at the statement level or the transaction level, depending on the setting that you specify in the SET Transaction Mode statement.

Specifying a List of Constraints

If you specify a single constraint name or a list of constraints, the SET Transaction Mode statement sets the transaction mode for the specified constraints only. If any statement in the transaction requires checking of a constraint that you did not specify in the SET Transaction Mode statement, that constraint is checked at the statement level regardless of the setting that you specified in the SET Transaction Mode statement for other constraints.

When you specify a list of constraints, the constraints do not have to be defined on the same table, but they must exist in the same database.

Specifying Remote Constraints

You can set the transaction mode of local constraints or remote constraints. That is, the constraints that are specified in the SET Transaction Mode statement can be constraints that are defined on local tables or constraints that are defined on remote tables.

Examples of Setting the Transaction Mode for Constraints

The following example shows how to defer checking constraints within a transaction until the transaction is complete. The SET Transaction Mode statement in the example specifies that any constraints on any tables in the database are not checked until the COMMIT WORK statement is encountered.

```
BEGIN WORK
SET CONSTRAINTS ALL DEFERRED
.
.
.
COMMIT WORK
```

The following example specifies that a list of constraints is not checked until the transaction is complete:

```
BEGIN WORK
SET CONSTRAINTS update_const, insert_const DEFERRED
.
.
.
COMMIT WORK
```

Related Information

Related Statements: ALTER TABLE and CREATE TABLE

+

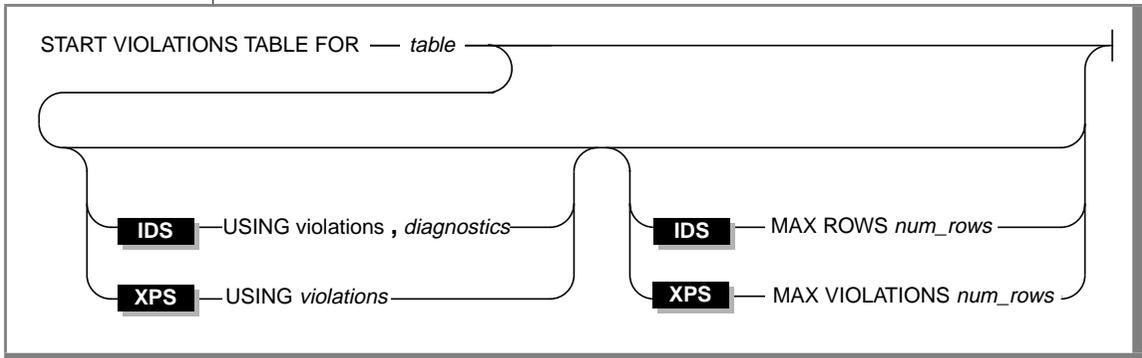
START VIOLATIONS TABLE

Use the START VIOLATIONS TABLE statement to create a violations table and a diagnostics table for a specified target table. The database server associates the violations and diagnostics tables with the target table by recording the relationship among the three tables in the **sysviolations** system catalog table.

XPS

In Extended Parallel Server, the START VIOLATIONS TABLE statement creates a violations table but not a diagnostics table. ♦

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>diagnostics</i>	Name of the diagnostics table to be associated with the target table	The name of the diagnostics table cannot match the name of any existing table in the database.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

(1 of 2)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>num_rows</i>	<p>Maximum number of rows that the database server can insert into the diagnostics table when a single statement is executed on the target table (IDS)</p> <p>Maximum number of rows that any single coserver can insert into the violations table when a single statement is executed on the target table (XPS)</p>	The value that you specify must be an integer in the range from 1 to the maximum value of the INTEGER data type.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>table</i>	Name of the target table for which a violations table and diagnostics table are to be created	<p>If you do not include the USING clause in the statement, the name of the target table must be 124 characters or less (IDS).</p> <p>If you do not include the USING clause in the statement, the name of the target table must be 14 characters or less (XPS).</p> <p>The target table cannot have a violations and diagnostics table associated with it before you execute the statement.</p> <p>The target table cannot be a system catalog table.</p> <p>The target table must be a local table.</p>	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>violations</i>	Name of the violations table to be associated with the target table	The name of the violations table cannot match the name of any existing table in the database.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

(2 of 2)

Usage

The START VIOLATIONS TABLE statement creates the special violations table that holds rows that fail to satisfy constraints and unique indexes during insert, update, and delete operations on target tables. This statement also creates the special diagnostics table that contains information about the integrity violations caused by each row in the violations table.

XPS

In Extended Parallel Server, the `START VIOLATIONS TABLE` statement creates a violations table but not a diagnostics table. ♦

Relationship of `START VIOLATIONS TABLE` and `SET Database Object Mode` Statements

The `START VIOLATIONS TABLE` statement is closely related to the `SET Database Object Mode` statement. If you use the `SET Database Object Mode` statement to set the constraints or unique indexes defined on a table to the filtering database object mode, but you do not use the `START VIOLATIONS TABLE` statement to start the violations and diagnostics tables for this target table, any rows that violate a constraint or unique-index requirement during an insert, update, or delete operation are not filtered out to a violations table. Instead you receive an error message indicating that you must start a violations table for the target table.

Similarly, if you use the `SET Database Object Mode` statement to set a disabled constraint or disabled unique index to the enabled or filtering database object mode, but you do not use the `START VIOLATIONS TABLE` statement to start the violations and diagnostics tables for the table on which the database objects are defined, any existing rows in the table that do not satisfy the constraint or unique-index requirement are not filtered out to a violations table. If, in these cases, you want the ability to identify existing rows that do not satisfy the constraint or unique-index requirement, you must issue the `START VIOLATIONS TABLE` statement to start the violations and diagnostics tables before you issue the `SET Database Object Mode` statement to set the database objects to the enabled or filtering database object mode.

XPS

In Extended Parallel Server, the `SET Database Object Mode` statement is not supported, and the concept of database object modes does not exist. Instead, once you use the `START VIOLATIONS TABLE` statement to create a violations table and associate it with a target table, the existence of this violations table causes all violations of constraints and unique-index requirements by insert, delete, and update operations to be recorded in the violations table.

In other words, once you issue a `START VIOLATIONS TABLE` statement, all constraints and unique indexes in a database on Extended Parallel Server behave like filtering-mode constraints and filtering-mode unique indexes in a database on Dynamic Server. For an explanation of the behavior of filtering-mode constraints and filtering-mode unique indexes, see [“Filtering Mode” on page 2-705](#). ♦

Effect of Violations Table on Concurrent Transactions

A transaction must issue the `START VIOLATIONS TABLE` statement in isolation. That is, no other transaction can be in progress on a target table when a transaction issues a `START VIOLATIONS TABLE` statement on that table. However, any transactions that start on the target table after the first transaction has issued the `START VIOLATIONS TABLE` statement will behave the same way as the first transaction with respect to the violations and diagnostics tables. That is, any constraint and unique-index violations by these subsequent transactions will be recorded in the violations and diagnostics tables.

For example, if transaction A operates on table **tab1** and issues a `START VIOLATIONS TABLE` statement on table **tab1**, the database server starts a violations table named **tab1_vio** and filters any constraint or unique-index violations on table **tab1** by transaction A to table **tab1_vio**. If transactions B and C start on table **tab1** after transaction A has issued the `START VIOLATIONS TABLE` statement, the database server also filters any constraint and unique-index violations by transactions B and C to table **tab1_vio**.

However, the result is that all three transactions do not receive error messages about constraint and unique-index violations even though transactions B and C do not expect this behavior. For example, if transaction B issues an `INSERT` or `UPDATE` statement that violates a check constraint on table **tab1**, the database server does not issue a constraint violation error to transaction B. Instead, the database server filters the bad row to the violations table without notifying transaction B that a data-integrity violation occurred.

IDS

You can prevent this situation from arising in Dynamic Server by specifying the `WITH ERRORS` option when you set database objects to the `FILTERING` mode in a `SET Database Object Mode`, `CREATE TABLE`, `ALTER TABLE`, or `CREATE INDEX` statement. When multiple transactions operate on a table and the `WITH ERRORS` option is in effect, any transaction that violates a constraint or unique-index requirement on a target table receives a data-integrity error message. ♦

IDS

In Extended Parallel Server, once a transaction issues a `START VIOLATIONS TABLE` statement, you have no way to make the database server issue data-integrity violation messages to that transaction or to any other transactions that start subsequently on the same target table. ♦

Stopping the Violations and Diagnostics Tables

After you use a `START VIOLATIONS TABLE` statement to create an association between a target table and the violations and diagnostics tables, the only way to drop the association between the target table and the violations and diagnostics tables is to issue a `STOP VIOLATIONS TABLE` statement for the target table. For more information, see [“STOP VIOLATIONS TABLE” on page 2-800](#).

USING Clause

IDS

You can use the `USING` clause to assign explicit names to the violations and diagnostics tables.

If you omit the `USING` clause, the database server assigns names to the violations and diagnostics tables. The system-assigned name of the violations table consists of the name of the target table followed by the string `vio`. The system-assigned name of the diagnostics table consists of the name of the target table followed by the string `dia`.

If you omit the `USING` clause, the maximum length of the target table is 124 characters. ♦

XPS

You can use the `USING` clause to assign an explicit name to the violations table.

If you omit the `USING` clause, the database server assigns a name to the violations table. The system-assigned name of the violations table consists of the name of the target table followed by the string `vio`.

If you omit the `USING` clause, the maximum length of the target table is 14 characters. ♦

IDS

Use of the MAX ROWS Clause

You can use the `MAX ROWS` clause to specify the maximum number of rows that the database server can insert into the diagnostics table when a single statement is executed on the target table.

If you do not include the `MAX ROWS` clause in the `START VIOLATIONS TABLE` statement, no upper limit exists on the number of rows that can be inserted into the diagnostics table when a single statement is executed on the target table.

Use of the `MAX VIOLATIONS` Clause

You can use the `MAX VIOLATIONS` clause to specify the maximum number of rows that any single coserver can insert into the violations table when a single statement is executed on the target table. Each coserver where the violations table resides has this limit. The first coserver to reach this limit raises an error and causes the statement to fail.

If you do not include the `MAX VIOLATIONS` clause in a `START VIOLATIONS TABLE` statement, no upper limit exists on the number of rows that can be inserted into the violations table when a single statement is executed on the target table.

Examples of `START VIOLATIONS TABLE` Statements

The following examples show different ways to execute the `START VIOLATIONS TABLE` statement.

Starting Violations and Diagnostics Tables Without Specifying Their Names

The following statement starts violations and diagnostics tables for the target table named `cust_subset`. The violations table is named `cust_subset_vio` by default, and the diagnostics table is named `cust_subset_dia` by default.

```
START VIOLATIONS TABLE FOR cust_subset
```

Starting Violations and Diagnostics Tables and Specifying Their Names

The following statement starts a violations and diagnostics table for the target table named **items**. The USING clause assigns explicit names to the violations and diagnostics tables. The violations table is to be named **exceptions**, and the diagnostics table is to be named **reasons**.

```
START VIOLATIONS TABLE FOR items
USING exceptions, reasons
```

IDS

Specifying the Maximum Number of Rows in the Diagnostics Table

The following statement starts violations and diagnostics tables for the target table named **orders**. The MAX ROWS clause specifies the maximum number of rows that can be inserted into the diagnostics table when a single statement, such as an INSERT statement, is executed on the target table.

```
START VIOLATIONS TABLE FOR orders MAX ROWS 50000
```

XPS

Specifying the Maximum Number of Rows in the Violations Table

The following statement starts a violations table for the target table named **orders**. The MAX VIOLATIONS clause specifies the maximum number of rows that any single coserver can insert into the violations table when a single statement, such as an INSERT statement, is executed on the target table.

```
START VIOLATIONS TABLE FOR orders MAX VIOLATIONS 50000
```

Privileges Required for Starting Violations Tables

To start a violations and diagnostics table for a target table, you must meet one of the following requirements:

- You must have the DBA privilege on the database.
- You must be the owner of the target table and have the Resource privilege on the database.
- You must have the Alter privilege on the target table and the Resource privilege on the database.

Structure of the Violations Table

When you issue a `START VIOLATIONS TABLE` statement for a target table, the violations table that the statement creates has a predefined structure. This structure consists of the columns of the target table and three additional columns.

The following table shows the structure of the violations table.

Column Name	Type	Purpose
Same columns as the target table, in the same order that they appear in the target table	These columns of the violations table match the data type of the corresponding columns in the target table, except that <code>SERIAL</code> columns in the target table are converted to <code>INTEGER</code> data types in the violations table.	Table definition of the target table is reproduced in the violations table so that rows that violate constraints or unique-index requirements during insert, update, and delete operations can be filtered to the violations table. Users can examine these bad rows in the violations table, analyze the related rows that contain diagnostics information in the diagnostics table, and take corrective actions.
informix_tupleid	<code>SERIAL</code>	Contains the unique serial identifier that is assigned to the nonconforming row.
informix_optype	<code>CHAR(1)</code>	Indicates the type of operation that caused this bad row. This column can have the following values: I = Insert D = Delete O = Update (with this row containing the original values) N = Update (with this row containing the new values) S = SET Database Object Mode statement (IDS)
informix_recowner	<code>CHAR(8)</code>	Identifies the user who issued the statement that created this bad row.

Relationship Between the Violations and Diagnostics Tables

Users can take advantage of the relationships among the target table, violations table, and diagnostics table to obtain complete diagnostic information about rows that have caused data-integrity violations during INSERT, DELETE, and UPDATE statements.

Each row of the violations table has at least one corresponding row in the diagnostics table. The row in the violations table contains a copy of the row in the target table for which a data-integrity violation was detected. The row in the diagnostics table contains information about the nature of the data-integrity violation caused by the bad row in the violations table. The row in the violations table has a unique serial identifier in the **informix_tupleid** column. The row in the diagnostics table has the same serial identifier in its **informix_tupleid** column.

A given row in the violations table can have more than one corresponding row in the diagnostics table. The multiple rows in the diagnostics table all have the same serial identifier in their **informix_tupleid** column so that they are all linked to the same row in the violations table. Multiple rows can exist in the diagnostics table for the same row in the violations table because a bad row in the violations table can cause more than one data-integrity violation.

For example, a bad row can violate a unique-index requirement for one column, a not-null constraint for another column, and a check constraint for yet another column. In this case, the diagnostics table contains three rows for the single bad row in the violations table. Each of these diagnostic rows identifies a different data-integrity violation that the nonconforming row in the violations table caused.

By joining the violations and diagnostics tables, the DBA or target-table owner can obtain complete diagnostic information about any or all bad rows in the violations table. You can use SELECT statements to perform these joins interactively, or you can write a program to perform them within transactions.

Initial Privileges on the Violations Table

When you issue the START VIOLATIONS TABLE statement to create the violations table, the database server uses the set of privileges granted on the target table as a basis for granting privileges on the violations table. However, the database server follows different rules when it grants each type of privilege.

The following table explains the circumstances under which the database server grants each privilege on the violations table. The first column lists each privilege. The second column explains the conditions under which the database server grants that privilege to a user.

Privilege	Condition for Granting the Privilege
Insert	User has the Insert privilege on the violations table if the user has any of the following privileges on the target table: the Insert privilege, the Delete privilege, or the Update privilege on any column.
Delete	User has the Delete privilege on the violations table if the user has any of the following privileges on the target table: the Insert privilege, the Delete privilege, or the Update privilege on any column.
Select	User has the Select privilege on the informix_tupleid , informix_optype , and informix_reowner columns of the violations table if the user has the Select privilege on any column of the target table. User has the Select privilege on any other column of the violations table if the user has the Select privilege on the same column in the target table.
Update	User has the Update privilege on the informix_tupleid , informix_optype , and informix_reowner columns of the violations table if the user has the Update privilege on any column of the target table. However, even if the user has the Update privilege on the informix_tupleid column, the user cannot update this column because this column is a SERIAL column. User has the Update privilege on any other column of the violations table if the user has the Update privilege on the same column in the target table.

(1 of 2)

Privilege	Condition for Granting the Privilege
Index	User has the Index privilege on the violations table if the user has the Index privilege on the target table. The user cannot create a globally detached index on the violations table even if the user has the Index privilege on the violations table (XPS).
Alter	Alter privilege is not granted on the violations table. (Users cannot alter violations tables.)
References	References privilege is not granted on the violations table. (Users cannot add referential constraints to violations tables.)

(2 of 2)

The following rules apply to ownership of the violations table and privileges on the violations table:

- When the violations table is created, the owner of the target table becomes the owner of the violations table.
- The owner of the violations table automatically receives all table-level privileges on the violations table, including the Alter and References privileges. However, the database server prevents the owner of the violations table from altering the violations table or adding a referential constraint to the violations table.
- You can use the GRANT and REVOKE statements to modify the initial set of privileges on the violations table.
- When you issue an INSERT, DELETE, or UPDATE statement on a target table that has a filtering-mode unique index or constraint defined on it, you must have the Insert privilege on the violations and diagnostics tables.

If you do not have the Insert privilege on the violations and diagnostics tables, the database server executes the INSERT, DELETE, or UPDATE statement on the target table provided that you have the necessary privileges on the target table. The database server does not return an error concerning the lack of insert permission on the violations and diagnostics tables unless an integrity violation is detected during the execution of the INSERT, DELETE, or UPDATE statement.

Similarly, when you issue a SET Database Object Mode statement to set a disabled constraint or disabled unique index to the enabled or filtering mode, and a violations table and diagnostics table exist for the target table, you must have the Insert privilege on the violations and diagnostics tables.

If you do not have the Insert privilege on the violations and diagnostics tables, the database server executes the SET Database Object Mode statement provided that you have the necessary privileges on the target table. The database server does not return an error concerning the lack of insert permission on the violations and diagnostics tables unless an integrity violation is detected during the execution of the SET Database Object Mode statement.

- The grantor of the initial set of privileges on the violations table is the same as the grantor of the privileges on the target table. For example, if the user **henry** was granted the Insert privilege on the target table by both the user **jill** and the user **albert**, the Insert privilege on the violations table is granted to user **henry** both by user **jill** and by user **albert**.
- Once a violations table is started for a target table, revoking a privilege on the target table from a user does not automatically revoke the same privilege on the violations table from that user. Instead you must explicitly revoke the privilege on the violations table from the user.
- If you have fragment-level privileges on the target table, you have the corresponding fragment-level privileges on the violations table.

Example of Privileges on the Violations Table

The following example illustrates how the initial set of privileges on a violations table is derived from the current set of privileges on the target table.

For example, assume that you have a table named **cust_subset** that holds customer data. This table consists of the following columns: **ssn** (customer social security number), **fname** (customer first name), **lname** (customer last name), and **city** (city in which the customer lives).

The following set of privileges exists on the **cust_subset** table:

- User **barbara** has the Insert and Index privileges on the table. She also has the Select privilege on the **ssn** and **lname** columns.
- User **carrie** has the Update privilege on the **city** column. She also has the Select privilege on the **ssn** column.
- User **danny** has the Alter privilege on the table.

Now user **alvin** starts a violations table named **cust_subset_viol**s and a diagnostics table named **cust_subset_diags** for the **cust_subset** table, as follows:

```
START VIOLATIONS TABLE FOR cust_subset
  USING cust_subset_viol, cust_subset_diags
```

The database server grants the following set of initial privileges on the **cust_subset_viol**s violations table:

- User **alvin** is the owner of the violations table, so he has all table-level privileges on the table.
- User **barbara** has the Insert, Delete, and Index privileges on the violations table.

User **barbara** has the Select privilege on the following columns of the violations table: the **ssn** column, the **lname** column, the **informix_tupleid** column, the **informix_optype** column, and the **informix_recowner** column.

- User **carrie** has the Insert and Delete privileges on the violations table.

User **carrie** has the Update privilege on the following columns of the violations table: the **city** column, the **informix_tupleid** column, the **informix_optype** column, and the **informix_recowner** column. However, user **carrie** cannot update the **informix_tupleid** column because this column is a SERIAL column.

User **carrie** has the Select privilege on the following columns of the violations table: the **ssn** column, the **informix_tupleid** column, the **informix_optype** column, and the **informix_recowner** column.

- User **danny** has no privileges on the violations table.

Using the Violations Table

The following rules concern the structure and use of the violations table:

- Every pair of update rows in the violations table has the same value in the **informix_tupleid** column to indicate that both rows refer to the same row in the target table.
- If the target table has columns named **informix_tupleid**, **informix_optype**, or **informix_reowner**, the database server attempts to generate alternative names for these columns in the violations table by appending a digit to the end of the column name (for example, **informix_tupleid1**). If this attempt fails, the database server returns an error, and the violations table is not started for the target table.
- When a table functions as a violations table, it cannot have triggers or constraints defined on it.
- When a table functions as a violations table, users can create indexes on the table, even though the existence of an index affects performance. Unique indexes on the violations table cannot be set to the filtering database object mode.
- If a target table has a violations and diagnostics table associated with it, dropping the target table in cascade mode (the default mode) causes the violations and diagnostics tables to be dropped also. If the target table is dropped in the restricted mode, the existence of the violations and diagnostics tables causes the DROP TABLE statement to fail.
- Once a violations table is started for a target table, you cannot use the ALTER TABLE statement to add, modify, or drop columns in the target table, violations table, or diagnostics table. Before you can alter any of these tables, you must issue a STOP VIOLATIONS TABLE statement for the target table.
- The database server does not clear out the contents of the violations table before or after it uses the violations table during an Insert, Update, Delete, or SET Database Object Mode operation.

- If a target table has a filtering-mode constraint or unique index defined on it and a violations table associated with it, users cannot insert into the target table by selecting from the violations table. Before you insert rows into the target table by selecting from the violations table, you must take one of the following steps:
 - You can set the database object mode of the constraint or unique index to the enabled or disabled database object mode.
 - You can issue a STOP VIOLATIONS TABLE statement for the target table.

If it is inconvenient to take either of these steps, but you still want to copy records from the violations table into the target table, a third option is to select from the violations table into a temporary table and then insert the contents of the temporary table into the target table.

- If the target table that is specified in the START VIOLATIONS TABLE statement is fragmented, the violations table has the same fragmentation strategy as the target table. Each fragment of the violations table is stored in the same dbspace as the corresponding fragment of the target table.
- Once a violations table is started for a target table, you cannot use the ALTER FRAGMENT statement to alter the fragmentation strategy of the target table or the violations table.
- If the target table specified in the START VIOLATIONS TABLE statement is not fragmented, the database server places the violations table in the same dbspace as the target table.
- If the target table has BYTE or TEXT columns, BYTE or TEXT data in the violations table is created in the same blob space as the BYTE or TEXT data in the target table.

Example of a Violations Table

To start a violations and diagnostics table for the target table named **customer** in the demonstration database, enter the following statement:

```
START VIOLATIONS TABLE FOR customer
```

Because your `START VIOLATIONS` statement does not include a `USING` clause, the violations table is named **customer_vio** by default. The **customer_vio** table includes the following columns:

```
customer_num
fname
lname
company
address1
address2
city
state
zipcode
phone
informix_tupleid
informix_optype
informix_recowner
```

The **customer_vio** table has the same table definition as the **customer** table except that the **customer_vio** table has three additional columns that contain information about the operation that caused the bad row.

IDS

Structure of the Diagnostics Table

When you issue a `START VIOLATIONS TABLE` statement for a target table, the diagnostics table that the statement creates has a predefined structure. This structure is independent of the structure of the target table.

The following table shows the structure of the diagnostics table.

Column Name	Type	Purpose
informix_tupleid	INTEGER	Implicitly refers to the values in the informix_tupleid column in the violations table. However, this relationship is not declared as a foreign-key to primary-key relationship.
objtype	CHAR(1)	Identifies the type of the violation. This column can have the following values. C = Constraint violation I = Unique-index violation

(1 of 2)

Column Name	Type	Purpose
objowner	CHAR(8)	Identifies the owner of the constraint or index for which an integrity violation was detected.
objname	CHAR(18)	Contains the name of the constraint or index for which an integrity violation was detected.

(2 of 2)

Initial Privileges on the Diagnostics Table

When the START VIOLATIONS TABLE statement creates the diagnostics table, the database server uses the set of privileges granted on the target table as a basis for granting privileges on the diagnostics table. However, the database server follows different rules when it grants each type of privilege.

The following table explains the circumstances under which the database server grants each privilege on the diagnostics table. The first column lists each privilege. The second column explains the conditions under which the database server grants that privilege to a user.

Privilege	Condition for Granting the Privilege
Insert	User has the Insert privilege on the diagnostics table if the user has any of the following privileges on the target table: the Insert privilege, the Delete privilege, or the Update privilege on any column
Delete	User has the Delete privilege on the diagnostics table if the user has any of the following privileges on the target table: the Insert privilege, the Delete privilege, or the Update privilege on any column
Select	User has the Select privilege on the diagnostics table if the user has the Select privilege on any column in the target table
Update	User has the Update privilege on the diagnostics table if the user has the Update privilege on any column in the target table

(1 of 2)

Privilege	Condition for Granting the Privilege
Index	User has the Index privilege on the diagnostics table if the user has the Index privilege on the target table
Alter	Alter privilege is not granted on the diagnostics table (Users cannot alter diagnostics tables.)
References	References privilege is not granted on the diagnostics table (Users cannot add referential constraints to diagnostics tables.)

(2 of 2)

The following rules concern privileges on the diagnostics table:

- When the diagnostics table is created, the owner of the target table becomes the owner of the diagnostics table.
- The owner of the diagnostics table automatically receives all table-level privileges on the diagnostics table, including the Alter and References privileges. However, the database server prevents the owner of the diagnostics table from altering the diagnostics table or adding a referential constraint to the diagnostics table.
- You can use the GRANT and REVOKE statements to modify the initial set of privileges on the diagnostics table.
- When you issue an INSERT, DELETE, or UPDATE statement on a target table that has a filtering-mode unique index or constraint defined on it, you must have the Insert privilege on the violations and diagnostics tables.

If you do not have the Insert privilege on the violations and diagnostics tables, the database server executes the INSERT, DELETE, or UPDATE statement on the target table provided that you have the necessary privileges on the target table. The database server does not return an error concerning the lack of insert permission on the violations and diagnostics tables unless an integrity violation is detected during the execution of the INSERT, DELETE, or UPDATE statement.

Similarly, when you issue a SET Database Object Mode statement to set a disabled constraint or disabled unique index to the enabled or filtering mode, and a violations table and diagnostics table exist for the target table, you must have the Insert privilege on the violations and diagnostics tables.

If you do not have the Insert privilege on the violations and diagnostics tables, the database server executes the SET Database Object Mode statement provided that you have the necessary privileges on the target table. The database server does not return an error concerning the lack of insert permission on the violations and diagnostics tables unless an integrity violation is detected during the execution of the SET Database Object MODE statement.

- The grantor of the initial set of privileges on the diagnostics table is the same as the grantor of the privileges on the target table. For example, if the user **jenny** was granted the Insert privilege on the target table by both the user **wayne** and the user **laurie**, both user **wayne** and user **laurie** grant the Insert privilege on the diagnostics table to user **jenny**.
- Once a diagnostics table is started for a target table, revoking a privilege on the target table from a user does not automatically revoke the same privilege on the diagnostics table from that user. Instead you must explicitly revoke the privilege on the diagnostics table from the user.
- If you have fragment-level privileges on the target table, you have the corresponding table-level privileges on the diagnostics table.

Example of Privileges on the Diagnostics Table

The following example illustrates how the initial set of privileges on a diagnostics table is derived from the current set of privileges on the target table.

For example, assume that you have a table called **cust_subset** that **holds customer data**. This table consists of the following columns: **ssn** (social security number), **fname** (first name), **lname** (last name), and **city** (city in which the customer lives).

The following set of privileges exists on the **cust_subset** table:

- User **alvin** is the owner of the table.
- User **barbara** has the Insert and Index privileges on the table. She also has the Select privilege on the **ssn** and **lname** columns.
- User **carrie** has the Update privilege on the **city** column. She also has the Select privilege on the **ssn** column.
- User **danny** has the Alter privilege on the table.

Now user **alvin** starts a violations table named **cust_subset_viol**s and a diagnostics table named **cust_subset_diag**s for the **cust_subset** table, as follows:

```
START VIOLATIONS TABLE FOR cust_subset
  USING cust_subset_viol, cust_subset_diag
```

The database server grants the following set of initial privileges on the **cust_subset_diag**s diagnostics table:

- User **alvin** is the owner of the diagnostics table, so he has all table-level privileges on the table.
- User **barbara** has the Insert, Delete, Select, and Index privileges on the diagnostics table.
- User **carrie** has the Insert, Delete, Select, and Update privileges on the diagnostics table.
- User **danny** has no privileges on the diagnostics table.

Using the Diagnostics Table

For information on the relationship between the diagnostics table and the violations table, see [“Relationship Between the Violations and Diagnostics Tables” on page 2-786](#).

The following issues concern the structure and use of the diagnostics table:

- The MAX ROWS clause of the START VIOLATIONS TABLE statement sets a limit on the number of rows that can be inserted into the diagnostics table when you execute a single statement, such as an INSERT or SET Database Object Mode statement, on the target table.
- The MAX ROWS clause limits the number of rows only for operations in which the table functions as a diagnostics table.

- When a table functions as a diagnostics table, it cannot have triggers or constraints defined on it.
- When a table functions as a diagnostics table, users can create indexes on the table, even though the existence of an index affects performance. You cannot set unique indexes on the diagnostics table to the filtering database object mode.
- If a target table has a violations and diagnostics table associated with it, dropping the target table in the cascade mode (the default mode) causes the violations and diagnostics tables to be dropped also. If the target table is dropped in the restricted mode, the existence of the violations and diagnostics tables causes the DROP TABLE statement to fail.
- Once a violations table is started for a target table, you cannot use the ALTER TABLE statement to add, modify, or drop columns in the target table, violations table, or diagnostics table. Before you can alter any of these tables, you must issue a STOP TABLE VIOLATIONS statement for the target table.
- The database server does not clear out the contents of the diagnostics table before or after it uses the diagnostics table during an Insert, Update, Delete, or Set operation.
- If the target table that is specified in the START VIOLATIONS TABLE statement is fragmented, the diagnostics table is fragmented with a round-robin strategy over the same dbspaces in which the target table is fragmented.

Example of a Diagnostics Table

To start a violations and diagnostics table for the target table named **stock** in the demonstration database, enter the following statement:

```
START VIOLATIONS TABLE FOR stock
```

Because your START VIOLATIONS TABLE statement does not include a USING clause, the diagnostics table is named **stock_dia** by default. The **stock_dia** table includes the following columns:

```
informix_tupleid  
objtype  
objowner  
objname
```

This list of columns shows an important difference between the diagnostics table and violations table for a target table. Whereas the violations table has a matching column for every column in the target table, the columns of the diagnostics table do not match any columns in the target table. The diagnostics table created by any START VIOLATIONS TABLE statement always has the same columns with the same column names and data types.

Related Information

Related statements: SET DATABASE OBJECT MODE and STOP VIOLATIONS TABLE

For a discussion of object modes and violation detection, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

+

STOP VIOLATIONS TABLE

Use the STOP VIOLATIONS TABLE statement to drop the association between a target table and the special violations and diagnostics tables.

XPS

In Extended Parallel Server, the diagnostics table does not exist. The STOP VIOLATIONS TABLE statement drops the association between the target table and the violations table. ♦

Syntax

```
STOP VIOLATIONS TABLE FOR _____ table _____|
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>table</i>	Name of the target table whose association with the violations and diagnostics table is to be dropped No default value exists.	The target table must have a violations and diagnostics table associated with it before you can execute the statement. The target table must be a local table.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

The STOP VIOLATIONS TABLE statement drops the association between the target table and the violations and diagnostics tables. After you issue this statement, the former violations and diagnostics tables continue to exist, but they no longer function as violations and diagnostics tables for the target table. They now have the status of regular database tables instead of violations and diagnostics tables for the target table. You must issue the DROP TABLE statement to drop these two tables explicitly.

When Insert, Delete, and Update operations cause data-integrity violations for rows of the target table, the nonconforming rows are no longer filtered to the former violations table, and diagnostics information about the data-integrity violations is not placed in the former diagnostics table.

Example of Stopping a Violations and Diagnostics Table

Assume that a target table named **cust_subset** has an associated violations table named **cust_subset_vio** and an associated diagnostics table named **cust_subset_dia**. To drop the association between the target table and the violations and diagnostics tables, enter the following statement:

```
STOP VIOLATIONS TABLE FOR cust_subset
```

Example of Dropping a Violations and Diagnostics Table

After you execute the STOP VIOLATIONS TABLE statement in the preceding example, the **cust_subset_vio** and **cust_subset_dia** tables continue to exist, but they are no longer associated with the **cust_subset** table. Instead they now have the status of regular database tables. To drop these two tables, enter the following statements:

```
DROP TABLE cust_subset_vio;  
DROP TABLE cust_subset_dia;
```

Privileges Required for Stopping a Violations Table

To stop a violations and diagnostics table for a target table, you must meet one of the following requirements:

- You must have the DBA privilege on the database.
- You must be the owner of the target table and have the Resource privilege on the database.
- You must have the Alter privilege on the target table and the Resource privilege on the database.

Related Information

Related statements: SET DATABASE OBJECT MODE and START VIOLATIONS TABLE

For a discussion of database object modes and violation detection, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

+

XPS

TRUNCATE

Use the TRUNCATE statement to quickly remove all rows from a table and also remove all corresponding index data.

Syntax

TRUNCATE ONLY TABLE *table* |

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>table</i>	Name of the table from which to remove all data	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

You must be the owner of the table or have the DBA privilege to use this statement.

The TRUNCATE statement does not automatically reset the serial value of a column. To reset the serial value of a column, you must do so explicitly, either before or after you run the TRUNCATE statement.

Restrictions

The statement will not succeed if any of the following conditions exist:

- One or more cursors are open on the table
- Referential constraints exist on the table and any of the referencing tables has at least one row
- A shared or exclusive lock on the table already exists

- The statement references one of the following types of tables:
 - external
 - system catalog
 - violations
- It is issued inside a transaction

Using the ONLY and TABLE Keywords

The ONLY and TABLE keywords do not affect the performance of this statement.

The ONLY keyword is compatible with the future implementation of this statement in Dynamic Server. It has no significance in Extended Parallel Server.

The TABLE keyword provides descriptive coding.

Example

The following statement deletes all rows and related index data from the **cust** table:

```
TRUNCATE TABLE cust
```

After the Statement Executes

Information about the success of this statement appears in the logical-log files. For more information about logical-log files, see your [Administrator's Guide](#).

Because the TRUNCATE statement does not alter the schema, the database server does not automatically update statistics. After you use this statement, you might want to issue an UPDATE STATISTICS statement.

If the table was fragmented, after the statement executes, each fragment has a space allocated for it that is the same size as that of the first extent size. The fragment size of any indexes also correspond to the size of the first extents.

When You Might Use This Statement

This statement performs similar operations to those that you can perform with the DELETE statement or a combination of DROP TABLE and CREATE TABLE.

Using this statement can be faster than removing all rows from a table with the DELETE statement because it does not activate any DELETE triggers. In addition, when you use this statement, the database server creates a log entry for the entire TRUNCATE statement rather than for each deleted row.

You might also use this statement instead of dropping a table and then recreating it. When you drop and recreate a table, you have to regrant privileges on the table. In addition, you must recreate any indexes, constraints, and triggers defined on the table. The TRUNCATE statement leaves these database objects and privileges intact.

Related Information

Related Statements: DELETE, DROP TABLE

For more information about the performance implications of this statement, see your [Performance Guide](#).

+

DB

SQLE

UNLOAD

Use the UNLOAD statement to write the rows retrieved in a SELECT statement to an operating-system file.

Use this statement with DB-Access and SQL Editor.

Syntax

```
UNLOAD TO 'filename'
        DELIMITER 'delimiter'
```

SELECT Statement
p. 2-634

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>delimiter</i>	<p>Quoted string that identifies the character to use as the delimiter in the output file</p> <p>If you do not specify a delimiter, the database server uses the setting in the DBDELIMITER environment variable. If DBDELIMITER has not been set, the default delimiter is the pipe (|).</p>	<p>You cannot use the following items as the delimiter: backslash (\), newline character (=CTRL-J), hexadecimal numbers (0 to 9, a to f, A to F).</p>	<p>Quoted String, p. 4-260</p>
<i>filename</i>	<p>Quoted string that specifies the pathname and filename of an operating-system file</p> <p>The output file receives the selected rows from the table during the unload operation. The default pathname for the output file is the current directory.</p>	<p>See “UNLOAD TO File” on p. 2-806.</p>	<p>The pathname and filename must conform to the naming conventions of your operating system.</p>

Usage

To use the UNLOAD statement, you must have the Select privilege on all columns selected in the SELECT statement. For information on database-level and table-level privileges, see [“GRANT” on page 2-500](#).

The SELECT statement can consist of a literal SELECT statement or the name of a character variable that contains a SELECT statement. (See [“SELECT” on page 2-634](#).)

UNLOAD TO File

The UNLOAD TO file contains the selected rows retrieved from the table. You can use the UNLOAD TO file as the LOAD FROM file in a LOAD statement.

The following table shows types of data and their output format in the UNLOAD TO file (when the locale is the default locale, U.S. English).

Data Type	Output Format
boolean	BOOLEAN data is represented as a 't' for a TRUE value and an 'f' for a FALSE value.
character	If a character field contains the delimiter, Informix products automatically escape it with a backslash (\) to prevent interpretation as a special character. (If you use a LOAD statement to insert the rows into a table, backslashes are automatically stripped.) Trailing blanks are automatically clipped.
collections	A collection is unloaded with its values surrounded by braces ({}), and a field delimiter separating each element. For more information, see “Unloading Complex Types” on page 2-811 .
date	DATE values are represented as <i>mm/dd/yyyy</i> , where <i>mm</i> is the month (January = 1, and so on), <i>dd</i> is the day, and <i>yyyy</i> is the year. If you have set the <code>GL_DATE</code> or <code>DBDATE</code> environment variable, the UNLOAD statement uses the specified date format for DATE values.

(1 of 3)

Data Type	Output Format
MONEY	MONEY values are unloaded with no leading currency symbol. They use the comma (,) as the thousands separator and the period (.) as the decimal separator. If you have set the DBMONEY environment variable, the UNLOAD statement uses the specified currency format for MONEY values.
NULL	NULL columns are unloaded by placing no characters between the delimiters.
number	Number data types are displayed with no leading blanks. INTEGER or SMALLINT zero are represented as 0, and FLOAT, SMALLFLOAT, DECIMAL, or MONEY zero are represented as 0.00.
row types (named and unnamed)	A row type is unloaded with its values surrounded by parentheses and a field delimiter separating each element. For more information, see “Unloading Complex Types” on page 2-811 .
simple large objects (TEXT, BYTE)	TEXT and BYTE columns are unloaded directly into the UNLOAD TO file. For more information, see “Unloading Simple Large Objects” on page 2-809 .
smart large objects (CLOB, BLOB)	CLOB and BLOB columns are unloaded into a separate operating-system file on the client computer. The field for the CLOB or BLOB column in the UNLOAD TO file contains the name of this separate file. For more information, see “Unloading Smart Large Objects” on page 2-809 .
time	DATETIME and INTERVAL values are represented in character form, showing only their field digits and delimiters. No type specification or qualifiers are included in the output. The following pattern is used: <i>yyyy-mm-dd hh:mi:ss.fff</i> , omitting fields that are not part of the data. If you have set the GL_DATETIME or DBTIME environment variable, the UNLOAD statement uses the specified format for DATETIME values.

(2 of 3)

Data Type	Output Format
user-defined data formats (opaque types)	The associated opaque type must have an export support function defined if special processing is required to copy the data in the internal format of the opaque type to the format in the UNLOAD TO file. An export binary support function might also be required if the data is in binary format. The data in the UNLOAD TO file would correspond to the format that the export or exportbinary support function returns.

(3 of 3)

For more information on DB environment variables, refer to the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#). For more information on GL environment variables, refer to the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

GLS

If you are using a nondefault locale, the formats of DATE, DATETIME, MONEY, and numeric column values in the UNLOAD TO file are determined by the formats that the locale supports for these data types. For more information, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#). ♦

The following statement unloads rows from the **customer** table where the value of **customer_num** is greater than or equal to 138, and puts them in a file named **cust_file**:

```
UNLOAD TO 'cust_file' DELIMITER '!'
SELECT * FROM customer WHERE customer_num >= 138
```

The output file, **cust_file**, appears as shown in the following example:

```
138!Jeffery!Padgett!Wheel Thrills!3450 El Camino!Suite
10!Palo Alto!CA!94306!!
139!Linda!Lane!Palo Alto Bicycles!2344 University!!Palo
Alto!CA!94301!(415)323-5400
```

Unloading VARCHAR Columns

If you are unloading files that contain VARCHAR columns, note the following information:

- Trailing blanks are retained in VARCHAR fields.
- Do not use the following characters as delimiters in the UNLOAD TO file: 0 to 9, a to f, A to F, newline character, or backslash.

Unloading Simple Large Objects

The database server unloads simple large objects (BYTE and TEXT columns) directly into the UNLOAD TO file. BYTE data are written in hexadecimal dump format with no added spaces or new lines. Consequently, the logical length of an UNLOAD TO file that contains BYTE items can be very long and very difficult to print or edit.

If you are unloading files that contain simple-large-object data types, do not use the following characters as delimiters in the UNLOAD TO file: 0 to 9, a to f, A to F, newline character, or backslash.

GLS

For TEXT columns, the database server handles any required code-set conversions for the data. For more information, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#). ♦

If you are unloading files that contain simple-large-object data types, objects smaller than 10 kilobytes are stored temporarily in memory. You can adjust the 10-kilobyte setting to a larger setting with the **DBBLOBBUF** environment variable. Simple large objects that are larger than the default or the setting of the **DBBLOBBUF** environment variable are stored in a temporary file. For additional information about the **DBBLOBBUF** environment variable, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

IDS

Unloading Smart Large Objects

The database server unloads smart large objects (BLOB and CLOB columns) into a separate operating-system file on the client computer. It creates this file in the same directory as the UNLOAD TO file. The filename of this file has one of the following formats:

- For a BLOB value:
blob#####
- For a CLOB value:
clob#####

In the preceding formats, the pound (#) symbols represent the digits of the unique hexadecimal smart-large-object identifier. The database server uses the hexadecimal ID for the first smart large object in the file. The maximum number of digits for a smart-large-object identifier is 17. However, most smart large objects would have an identifier with significantly fewer digits.

When the database server unloads the first smart large object, it creates the appropriate BLOB or CLOB client file with the hexadecimal identifier of the smart large object. It appends any additional BLOB or CLOB values to the appropriate file until the file size reaches a limit of 2 gigabytes. If additional smart-large-object values are present, the database server creates another BLOB or CLOB client file whose filename contains the hexadecimal identifier of the next smart large object to unload.

Each BLOB or CLOB value is appended to the appropriate file. The database server might create several files if the values are extremely large or there are many values.

In an UNLOAD TO file, a BLOB or CLOB column value appears as follows:

```
start_off, length, client_path
```

In this format, *start_off* is the starting offset (in hexadecimal) of the smart-large-object value within the client file, *length* is the length (in hexadecimal) of the BLOB or CLOB value, and *client_path* is the pathname for the client file. No spaces can appear between these values.

For example, if a CLOB value is 512 bytes long and is at offset 256 in the **/usr/apps/clob9ce7.318** file, the CLOB value appears as follows in the UNLOAD TO file:

```
|100,200,/usr/apps/clob9ce7.318|
```

If a BLOB or CLOB column value occupies an entire client file, the CLOB or BLOB column value appears as follows in the UNLOAD TO file:

```
client_path
```

For example, if a CLOB value occupies the entire file **/usr/apps/clob9ce7.318**, the CLOB value appears as follows in the UNLOAD TO file:

```
|/usr/apps/clob9ce7.318|
```

For CLOB columns, the database server handles any required code-set conversions for the data. For more information, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#). ♦

Unloading Complex Types

In an UNLOAD TO file, complex types appear as follows:

- Collections are introduced with the appropriate constructor (SET, MULTISSET, LIST), and have their elements enclosed in braces ({}) and separated with a comma, as follows:

```
constructor{val1 , val2 , ... }
```

For example, to unload the SET values {1, 3, 4} from a column of the SET (INTEGER NOT NULL) data type, the corresponding field of the UNLOAD TO file appears as follows:

```
|SET{1 , 3 , 4}|
```

- Row types (named and unnamed) are introduced with the ROW constructor and have their fields enclosed with parentheses and separated with a comma, as follows:

```
ROW( val1 , val2 ,... )
```

For example, to unload the ROW values (1, 'abc'), the corresponding field of the UNLOAD TO file appears as follows:

```
|ROW(1 , abc)|
```

DELIMITER Clause

Use the DELIMITER clause to identify the delimiter that separates the data contained in each column in a row in the output file. If you omit this clause, DB-Access checks the **DBDELIMITER** environment variable. If **DBDELIMITER** has not been set, the default delimiter is the pipe (|).

You can specify the **TAB** (CTRL-I) or **<blank>** (ASCII 32) as the delimiter symbol. You cannot use the following as the delimiter symbol:

- Backslash (\)
- Newline character (CTRL-J)
- Hexadecimal numbers (0 to 9, a to f, A to F)

Do not use the backslash (\) as a field separator or UNLOAD delimiter. It serves as an escape character to inform the UNLOAD statement that the next character is to be interpreted as part of the data.

The following statement specifies the semicolon (;) as the delimiter:

```
UNLOAD TO 'cust.out' DELIMITER ';'
SELECT fname, lname, company, city
FROM customer
```

Related Information

Related statements: LOAD and SELECT

For information about setting the **DBDELIMITER** environment variable, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

For a discussion of the GLS aspects of the UNLOAD statement, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

For a task-oriented discussion of the UNLOAD statement and other utilities for moving data, see the [Informix Migration Guide](#).

To change the lock mode of a table in a database without transactions, use the UNLOCK TABLE statement to unlock the table, then issue a new LOCK TABLE statement. The following example shows how to change the lock mode of a table in a database that was created without transactions:

```
LOCK TABLE items IN EXCLUSIVE MODE
.
.
UNLOCK TABLE items
.
.
LOCK TABLE items IN SHARE MODE
```

The UNLOCK TABLE statement fails if it is issued within a transaction. Table locks set within a transaction are released automatically when the transaction completes.

ANSI

If you are using an ANSI-compliant database, do not issue an UNLOCK TABLE statement. The UNLOCK TABLE statement fails if it is issued within a transaction, and a transaction is always in effect in an ANSI-compliant database. ♦

Related Information

Related statements: BEGIN WORK, COMMIT WORK, LOCK TABLE, and ROLLBACK WORK

For a discussion of concurrency and locks, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

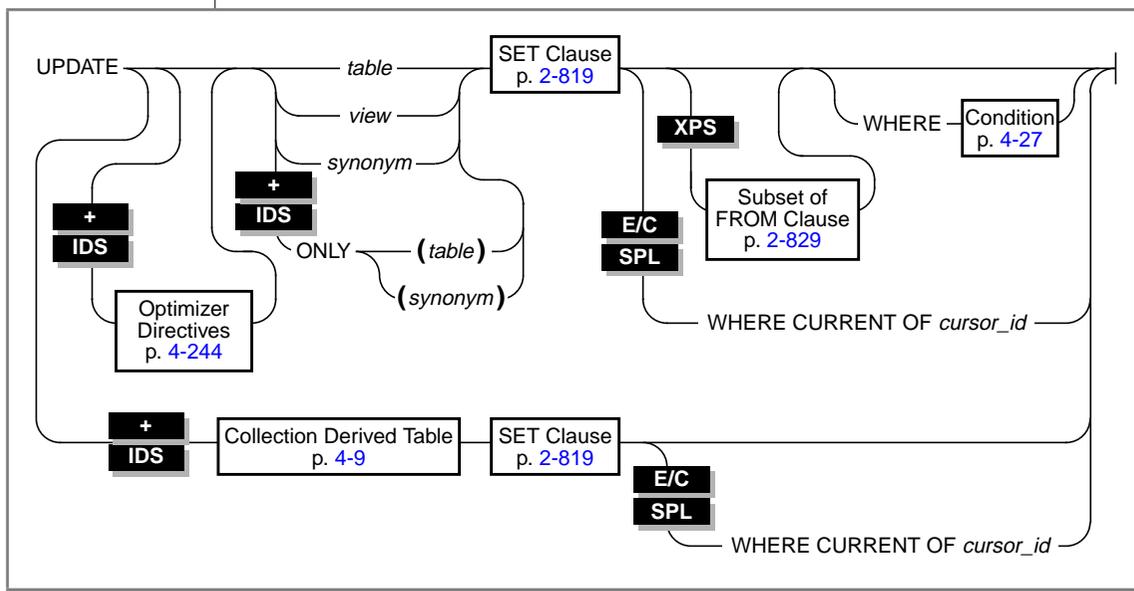
UPDATE

Use the UPDATE statement to change the values in one or more columns of one or more rows in a table or view.

IDS

With Dynamic Server, you can also use this statement to change the values in one or more elements in an ESQL/C collection variable. ♦

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>cursor_id</i>	Name of the cursor to use The current row of the active set for this cursor is updated when the UPDATE statement is executed.	You cannot update a row with a cursor if that row includes aggregates. The specified cursor (as defined in the SELECT...FOR UPDATE portion of a DECLARE statement) can contain only column names.	Identifier, p. 4-205

(1 of 2)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>synonym</i>	Name of the synonym that contains the rows to update	The synonym and the table to which the synonym points must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of the table that contains the rows to update	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>view</i>	Name of the view that contains the rows to update	The view must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

(2 of 2)

Usage

Use the UPDATE statement to update any of the following types of objects:

- A row in a table: a single row, a group of rows, or all rows in a table
- An element in a collection variable
- An ESQL/C **row** variable: a field or all fields

For information on how to update elements of a collection variable, see [“Collection Derived Table” on page 4-9](#). The other sections of this UPDATE statement describe how to update a row in a table. ♦

To update data in a table, you must either own the table or have the Update privilege for the table (see [“GRANT” on page 2-500](#)). To update data in a view, you must have the Update privilege, and the view must meet the requirements that are explained in [“Updating Rows Through a View” on page 2-817](#).

If you omit the WHERE clause, all rows of the target table are updated.

If you are using effective checking, and the checking mode is set to IMMEDIATE, all specified constraints are checked at the end of each UPDATE statement. If the checking mode is set to DEFERRED, all specified constraints are *not* checked until the transaction is committed.

In Extended Parallel Server, if the UPDATE statement is constructed in such a way that a single row might be updated more than once, the database server returns an error. However, if the new value is the same in every update, the database server allows the update operation to take place without reporting an error. ♦

IDS

XPS

DB

If you omit the WHERE clause and are in interactive mode, DB-Access does not run the UPDATE statement until you confirm that you want to change all rows. However, if the statement is in a command file, and you are running from the command line, the statement executes immediately. ♦

IDS

Using the ONLY Keyword

If you use the UPDATE statement to update rows of a supertable, rows from both the supertable and its subtables can be updated. To update rows from the supertable only, you must use the ONLY keyword prior to the table name, as the following example shows:

```
UPDATE ONLY(am_studies_super)
WHERE advisor = "johnson"
SET advisor = "camarillo"
```



Warning: If you use the UPDATE statement on a supertable without the ONLY keyword and without a WHERE clause, all rows of the supertable and its subtables are updated.

You cannot use the ONLY keyword if you plan to use the WHERE CURRENT OF clause to update the current row of the active set of a cursor.

Updating Rows Through a View

You can update data through a *single-table* view if you have the Update privilege on the view (see [“GRANT” on page 2-500](#)). However, certain restrictions exist. For a view to be updatable, the SELECT statement that defines the view must not contain any of the following items:

- Columns in the select list that are aggregate values
- Columns in the select list that use the UNIQUE or DISTINCT keyword
- A GROUP BY clause
- A UNION operator

In addition, if a view is built on a table that has a derived value for a column, that column is not updatable through the view. However, other columns in the view can be updated.

In an updatable view, you can update the values in the underlying table by inserting values into the view.

You can use data-integrity constraints to prevent users from updating values in the underlying table when the update values do not fit the SELECT statement that defined the view. For more information, see [“WITH CHECK OPTION Keywords” on page 2-338](#).

Because duplicate rows can occur in a view even though the underlying table has unique rows, be careful when you update a table through a view. For example, if a view is defined on the **items** table and contains only the **order_num** and **total_price** columns, and if two items from the same order have the same total price, the view contains duplicate rows. In this case, if you update one of the two duplicate total price values, you have no way to know which item price is updated.



Important: *If you are using a view with a check option, you cannot update rows to a remote table.*

Updating Rows in a Database Without Transactions

If you are updating rows in a database without transactions, you must take explicit action to restore updated rows. For example, if the UPDATE statement fails after updating some rows, the successfully updated rows remain in the table. You cannot automatically recover from a failed update.

Updating Rows in a Database with Transactions

If you are updating rows in a database with transactions, and you are using transactions, you can undo the update using the ROLLBACK WORK statement. If you do not execute a BEGIN WORK statement before the update, and the update fails, the database server automatically rolls back any database modifications made since the beginning of the update.

You can create temporary tables with the WITH NO LOG option. These tables are never logged and are not recoverable.

XPS

In Extended Parallel Server, tables that you create with the RAW table type are never logged. Thus, RAW tables are not recoverable, even if the database uses logging. For information about RAW tables, refer to the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#). ♦

ANSI

If you are updating rows in an ANSI-compliant database, transactions are implicit, and all database modifications take place within a transaction. In this case, if an UPDATE statement fails, you can use the ROLLBACK WORK statement to undo the update.

If you are within an explicit transaction, and the update fails, the database server automatically undoes the effects of the update. ♦

Locking Considerations

When a row is selected with the intent to update, the update process acquires an update lock. Update locks permit other processes to read, or *share*, a row that is about to be updated but do not let those processes update or delete it. Just before the update occurs, the update process *promotes* the shared lock to an exclusive lock. An exclusive lock prevents other processes from reading or modifying the contents of the row until the lock is released.

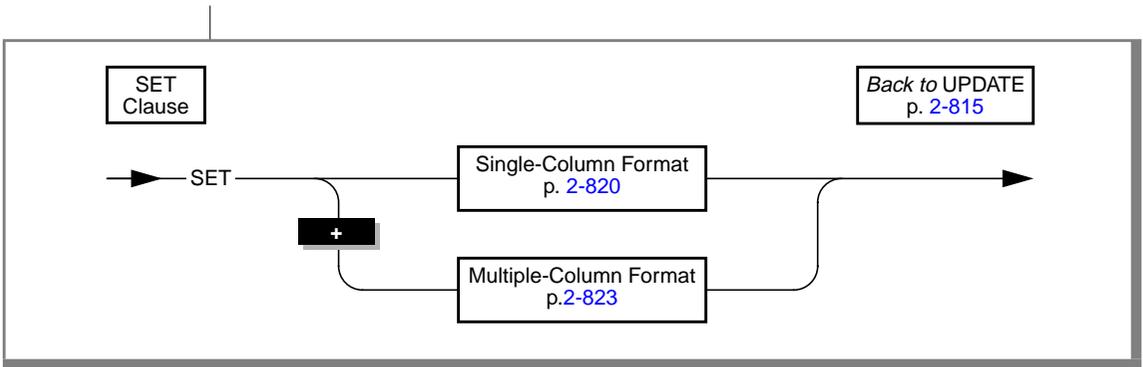
An update process can acquire an update lock on a row or a page that has a shared lock from another process, but you cannot promote the update lock from shared to exclusive (and the update cannot occur) until the other process releases its lock.

If the number of rows affected by a single update is very large, you can exceed the limits placed on the maximum number of simultaneous locks. If this occurs, you can reduce the number of transactions per UPDATE statement, or you can lock the page or the entire table before you execute the statement.

SET Clause

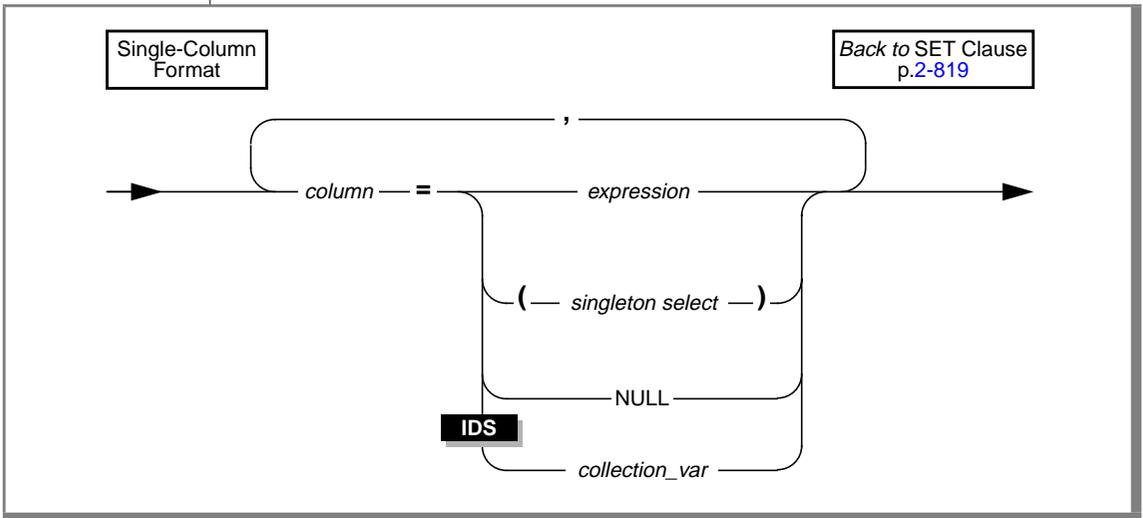
Use the SET clause to identify the columns to update and assign values to each column. The clause supports the following formats:

- A single-column format, which pairs a single column to a single expression
- A multiple-column format, which lists multiple columns and sets them equal to corresponding expressions



Single-Column Format

Use the single-column format of the SET clause to pair a single column to a single expression.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of the column that you want to update	You cannot update SERIAL or SERIAL8 columns. You can use this syntax to update a row column. An expression list can include an SQL subquery that returns a single row of multiple values as long as the number of columns named in the column list equals the number of values that the expressions in the expression list produce.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>collection_var</i>	Name of the host or program collection variable	The collection variable must exist.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>expression</i>	Expression that evaluates to a value	The expression cannot contain aggregate functions.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>singleton select</i>	Subquery that returns exactly one row	The values that the subquery returns must correspond to the columns named in the column list.	SELECT, p. 2-634

You can include any number of single-columns to single-expressions in the UPDATE statement. For information on how to specify values of a row type column in a SET clause, see [“Updating Row-Type Columns” on page 2-826](#).

The following examples illustrate the single-column format of the SET clause.

```
UPDATE customer
  SET address1 = '1111 Alder Court',
      city = 'Palo Alto',
      zipcode = '94301'
 WHERE customer_num = 103;

UPDATE stock
  SET unit_price = unit_price * 1.07;
```

Using a Subquery to Update a Column

You can update a column with the value that a subquery returns.

```
UPDATE orders
  SET ship_charge =
      (SELECT SUM(total_price) * .07
       FROM items
       WHERE orders.order_num = items.order_num)
  WHERE orders.order_num = 1001
```

If you are updating a supertable in a table hierarchy, the SET clause cannot include a subquery that references a subtable.

If you are updating a subtable in a table hierarchy, a subquery in the SET clause can reference the supertable if it references only the supertable. That is, the subquery must use the SELECT...FROM ONLY (*supertable*)...syntax. ♦

Updating a Column to NULL

You can use the NULL keyword to modify a column value when you use the UPDATE statement. For example, for a customer whose previous address required two address lines but now requires only one, you would use the following entry:

```
UPDATE customer
  SET address1 = '123 New Street',
      address2 = null,
      city = 'Palo Alto',
      zipcode = '94303'
  WHERE customer_num = 134
```

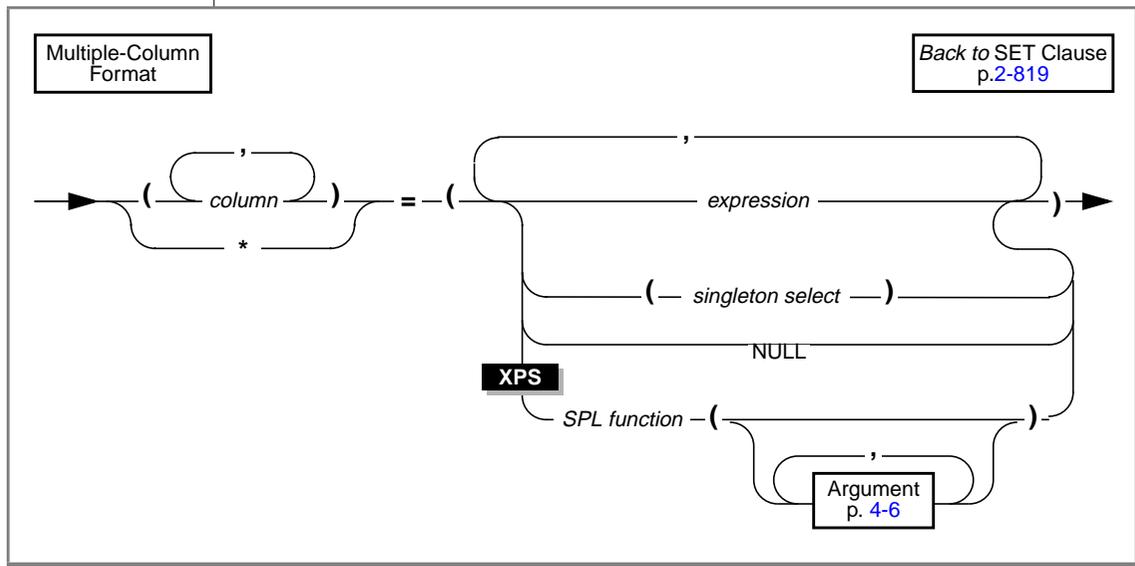
Updating the Same Column Twice

You can specify the same column more than once in the SET clause. If you do so, the column is set to the last value that you specified for the column. In the following example, the user specifies the **fname** column twice in the SET clause. For the row where the customer number is 101, the user sets **fname** first to gary and then to harry. After the UPDATE statement executes, the value of **fname** is harry.

```
UPDATE customer
  SET fname = "gary", fname = "harry"
  WHERE customer_num = 101
```

Multiple-Column Format

Use the multiple-column format of the SET clause to list multiple columns and set them equal to corresponding expressions.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
*	Character that indicates all columns in the specified table or view are to be updated	The restrictions that apply to the multiple columns equal to multiple expressions format discussed under <i>column</i> also apply to the asterisk (*).	The asterisk (*) is a literal value with a special meaning in this statement.
<i>column</i>	Name of the column that you want to update	You cannot update SERIAL or SERIAL8 columns. You cannot use this syntax to update a row column. The number of columns in the column list must be equal to the number of values supplied through expressions, subqueries and so on.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>expression</i>	Expression that evaluates to a value	The expression cannot contain aggregate functions.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>singleton select</i>	Subquery that returns exactly one row	The values that the subquery returns must correspond to the columns named in the column list	SELECT, p. 2-634
<i>SPL function</i>	Name of an SPL routine that returns one or more values.	The values that the function returns must have a one-to-one correspondence to the columns named in the column list.	Identifier, p. 4-205

(2 of 2)

The multiple-column format of the SET clause offers the following options for listing a series of columns you intend to update:

- Explicitly list each column, placing commas between columns and enclosing the set of columns in parentheses.
- Implicitly list all columns in the table by using an asterisk (*).

You must list each expression explicitly, placing commas between expressions and enclosing the set of expressions in parentheses. The number of columns in the column list must be equal to the number of expressions in the expression list, unless the expression list includes an SQL subquery.

The following examples show the multiple-column format of the SET clause:

```
UPDATE customer
  SET (fname, lname) = ('John', 'Doe')
  WHERE customer_num = 101
```

```
UPDATE manufact
  SET * = ('HNT', 'Hunter')
  WHERE manu_code = 'ANZ'
```

Using a Subquery to Update Column Values

An expression list can include an SQL subquery that returns a single row of multiple values as long as the number of columns named, explicitly or implicitly, equals the number of values produced by the expression or expressions that follow the equal sign.

The following examples show the use of subqueries:

```
UPDATE items
  SET (stock_num, manu_code, quantity) =
      ( (SELECT stock_num, manu_code FROM stock
        WHERE description = 'baseball'), 2)
  WHERE item_num = 1 AND order_num = 1001
```

```
UPDATE table1
  SET (col1, col2, col3) =
      ((SELECT MIN (ship_charge),
        MAX (ship_charge) FROM orders),
       '07/01/1997')
  WHERE col4 = 1001
```

IDS

If you are updating the supertable in a table hierarchy, the SET clause cannot include a subquery that references one of its subtables.

If you are updating a subtable in a table hierarchy, a subquery in the SET clause can reference the supertable if it references only the supertable. That is, the subquery must use the SELECT...FROM ONLY (*supertable*)... syntax. ♦

XPS

Using an SPL Function to Update Column Values

When you use an SPL function to update column values, the return values of the function must have a one-to-one correspondence with the listed columns. That is, each value that the SPL function returns must be of the data type expected by the corresponding column in the column list.

If the called SPL routine contains certain SQL statements, the database server returns an error. For information on which SQL statements cannot be used in an SPL routine that is called within a data manipulation statement, see [“Restrictions on an SPL Routine Called in a Data Manipulation Statement” on page 4-302](#).

In the following example, the SPL function **p2()** updates the **i2** and **c2** columns of the **t2** table.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE p2()
  RETURNING int, char(20);
  RETURN 3, 'three';
END PROCEDURE;

UPDATE t2 SET (i2, c2) = (p2())
  WHERE i2 = 2;
```

In Extended Parallel Server, you create an SPL function with the CREATE PROCEDURE statement. The CREATE FUNCTION statement is not available.

Updating Row-Type Columns

You use the SET clause to update a named row-type or unnamed row-type column. For example, suppose you define the following named row type and a table that contains columns of both named and unnamed row types:

```
CREATE ROW TYPE address_t
(
    street CHAR(20),
    city CHAR(15),
    state CHAR(2)
);

CREATE TABLE empinfo
(
    emp_id INT
    name ROW ( fname CHAR(20), lname CHAR(20)),
    address address_t
);
```

To update an unnamed row type, specify the ROW constructor before the parenthesized list of field values. The following statement updates the **name** column (an unnamed row type) of the **empinfo** table:

```
UPDATE empinfo
SET name = ROW('John','Williams')
WHERE emp_id =455
```

To update a named row type, specify the ROW constructor before the parenthesized list of field values and use the cast operator (::) to cast the row value as a named row type. The following statement updates the **address** column (a named row type) of the **empinfo** table:

```
UPDATE empinfo
SET address = ROW('103 Baker St','Tracy','CA')::address_t
WHERE emp_id = 3568
```

For more information on the syntax for ROW constructors, see [“Constructor Expressions” on page 4-116](#). See also [“Literal Row” on page 4-239](#).

E/C

The row-column SET clause can only support literal values for fields. To use a variable to specify a field value, you must select the row into a row variable, use host variables for the individual field values, then update the row column with the row variable. For more information, see [“Updating a Row Variable” on page 2-832](#). ♦

E/C

You can use ESQL/C host variables to insert *non-literal* values as:

- an entire row type into a column.
Use a **row** variable as a variable name in the SET clause to update all fields in a row column at one time.
- individual fields of a row type.
To insert non-literal values into a row-type column, you can first update the elements in a **row** variable and then specify the **collection** variable in the SET clause of an UPDATE statement.

When you use a row variable in the SET clause, the **row** variable must contain values for each field value. For information on how to insert values into a row variable, see [“Updating a Row Variable” on page 2-832](#). ♦

To update only some of the fields in a row, you can perform one of the following operations:

- Specify the field names with field projection for all fields whose values remain unchanged.

For example, the following UPDATE statement changes only the **street** and **city** fields of the **address** column of the **empinfo** table:

```
UPDATE empinfo
SET address = ROW('23 Elm St', 'Sacramento',
                 address.state)
WHERE emp_id = 433
```

The **address.state** field remains unchanged.

- Select the row into a row variable and update the desired fields.
For more information, see [“Updating a Row Variable” on page 2-832](#). ♦

E/C

IDS

E/C

SPL

Updating Collection Columns

You can use the `SET` clause to update values in a collection column. For more information, see [“Collection Constructors” on page 4-118](#).

You can also use a collection variable to update values in a collection column. With a collection variable you can insert one or more individual elements in a collection. For more information, see [“Collection Derived Table” on page 4-9](#). ♦

Example

For example, suppose you define the `tab1` table as follows:

```
CREATE TABLE tab1
(
    int1 INTEGER,
    list1 LIST(ROW(a INTEGER, b CHAR(5)) NOT NULL),
    dec1 DECIMAL(5,2)
)
```

The following `UPDATE` statement updates a row in `tab1`:

```
UPDATE tab1
SET list1 = LIST(ROW(2, 'zyxwv'),
ROW(POW(2,6), '=64'),
ROW(ROUND(ROOT(146)), '=12')),
where int1 = 10
```

The collection column, `list1`, in this example has three elements. Each element is an unnamed row type with an `INTEGER` field and a `CHAR(5)` field. The first element is composed of two literal values, an integer (2) and a quoted string ('zyxwv'). The second and third elements also use a quoted string to indicate the value for the second field. However, they each designate the value for the first field with an expression rather than a literal value.

IDS

Updating Values in Opaque-Type Columns

Some opaque data types require special processing when they are updated. For example, if an opaque data type contains spatial or multirepresentational data, it might provide a choice of how to store the data: inside the internal structure or, for very large objects, in a smart large object.

This processing is accomplished by calling a user-defined support function called **assign()**. When you execute the UPDATE statement on a table whose rows contain one of these opaque types, the database server automatically invokes the **assign()** function for the type. The **assign()** function can make the decision of how to store the data. For more information about the **assign()** support function, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

Subset of FROM Clause

In Extended Parallel Server, you can use a join to determine which column values to update by supplying a FROM clause. You can use columns from any table that is listed in the FROM clause in the WHERE clause to provide values for the columns and rows to update.

As indicated in the diagram for [“UPDATE” on page 2-815](#), you can use only a subset of the FROM clause. You cannot use the LOCAL keyword or the SAMPLES OF segment of the FROM clause with the UPDATE statement.

The following example shows how you can use a FROM clause to introduce tables to be joined in the WHERE clause.

```
UPDATE tab1
SET tab1.a = tab2.a
FROM tab1, tab2, tab3
WHERE tab1.b = tab2.b AND tab2.c =tab3.c
```

For a complete description of the FROM Clause, see the [“FROM Clause” on page 650](#).

WHERE Clause

The WHERE clause lets you limit the rows that you want to update. If you omit the WHERE clause, every row in the table is updated.

The WHERE clause consists of a standard search condition. (For more information, see the “[WHERE Clause](#)” on page 2-660). The following example illustrates a WHERE condition within an UPDATE statement. In this example, the statement updates three columns (**state**, **zipcode**, and **phone**) in each row of the **customer** table that has a corresponding entry in a table of new addresses called **new_address**.

```
UPDATE customer
  SET (state, zipcode, phone) =
      ((SELECT state, zipcode, phone FROM new_address N
        WHERE N.cust_num =
             customer.customer_num))
  WHERE customer_num IN
      (SELECT cust_num FROM new_address)
```

ANSI

SQLSTATE VALUES When Updating an ANSI Database

If you update a table in an ANSI-compliant database with an UPDATE statement that contains the WHERE clause and no rows are found, the database server issues a warning. You can detect this warning condition in either of the following ways:

- The GET DIAGNOSTICS statement sets the **RETURNED_SQLSTATE** field to the value 02000. In an SQL API application, the **SQLSTATE** variable contains this same value.
- In an SQL API application, the **sqlca.sqlcode** and **SQLCODE** variables contain the value 100.

The database server also sets **SQLSTATE** and **SQLCODE** to these values if the UPDATE... WHERE... is a part of a multistatement prepare and the database server returns no rows. ♦

SQLSTATE VALUES When Updating a Non-ANSI Database

In a database that is not ANSI compliant, the database server does not return a warning when it finds no matching rows for the WHERE clause of an UPDATE statement. The **SQLSTATE** code is 00000 and the **SQLCODE** code is zero (0). However, if the UPDATE... WHERE... is a part of a multistatement prepare, and no rows are returned, the database server does issue a warning. It sets **SQLSTATE** to 02000 and the **SQLCODE** value to 100.

E/C

SPL

IDS

E/C

SPL



Using the WHERE CURRENT OF Clause

Use the WHERE CURRENT OF clause to update the current row of the active set of a cursor in the current element of a collection cursor (ESQL/C only).

The UPDATE statement does not advance the cursor to the next row, so the current row position remains unchanged.

You cannot use this clause if you are selecting from only one table in a table hierarchy. That is, you cannot use this option if you use the ONLY keyword. ♦

To use the CURRENT OF keywords, you must have previously used the DECLARE statement to define the *cursor* with the FOR UPDATE option.

If the DECLARE statement that created the cursor specified one or more columns in the FOR UPDATE clause, you are restricted to updating only those columns in a subsequent UPDATE...WHERE CURRENT OF statement. The advantage to specifying columns in the FOR UPDATE clause of a DECLARE statement is speed. The database server can usually perform updates more quickly if columns are specified in the DECLARE statement. ♦

Before you can use the CURRENT OF keywords, you must declare a cursor with the FOREACH statement. ♦

Tip: You can use an update cursor to perform updates that are not possible with the UPDATE statement.

The following ESQL/C example illustrates the CURRENT OF form of the WHERE clause. In this example, updates are performed on a range of customers who receive 10-percent discounts (assume that a new column, **discount**, is added to the **customer** table). The UPDATE statement is prepared outside the WHILE loop to ensure that parsing is done only once.

```
char answer [1] = 'y';
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char fname[32],lname[32];
    int low,high;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

main()
{
    EXEC SQL connect to 'stores_demo';
    EXEC SQL prepare sel_stmt from
        'select fname, lname from customer \
        where cust_num between ? and ? for update';
    EXEC SQL declare x cursor for sel_stmt;
    printf("\nEnter lower limit customer number: ");
```

```

scanf("%d", &low);
printf("\nEnter upper limit customer number: ");
scanf("%d", &high);
EXEC SQL open x using :low, :high;
EXEC SQL prepare u from
    'update customer set discount = 0.1 \
    where current of x';

while (1)
{
    EXEC SQL fetch x into :fname, :lname;
    if ( SQLCODE == SQLNOTFOUND)
        break;
}
printf("\nUpdate %.10s %.10s (y/n)?", fname, lname);
if (answer = getch() == 'y')
    EXEC SQL execute u;
EXEC SQL close x;
}

```

IDS

E/C

Updating a Row Variable

The UPDATE statement with the Collection Derived Table segment allows you to update fields in a **row** variable. The Collection Derived Table segment identifies the **row** variable in which to update the fields. For more information, see [“Collection Derived Table” on page 4-9](#).

To update fields, follow these steps:

1. Create a **row** variable in your ESQL/C program.
2. Optionally, select a row-type column into the **row** variable with the SELECT statement (without the Collection Derived Table segment).
3. Update fields of the **row** variable with the UPDATE statement and the Collection Derived Table segment.
4. Once the **row** variable contains the correct fields, you then use the UPDATE or INSERT statement on a table or view name to save the row variable in the row column (named or unnamed).

The UPDATE statement and the Collection Derived Table segment allow you to update a particular field or group of fields in the **row** variable. You specify the new field values in the SET clause. For example, the following UPDATE changes the **x** and **y** fields in the **myrect** ESQL/C row variable:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
      row (x int, y int, length float, width float) myrect;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
.
.
EXEC SQL select into :myrect from rectangles
      where area = 64;
EXEC SQL update table(:myrect)
      set x=3, y=4;
```

Suppose that after the SELECT statement, the **myrect2** variable has the values **x=0, y=0, length=8, and width=8**. After the UPDATE statement, the **myrect2** variable has field values of **x=3, y=4, length=8, and width=8**.

You cannot use a **row** variable in the Collection Derived Table segment of an INSERT statement. However, you can use the UPDATE statement and the Collection Derived Table segment to insert new field values into a **row** host variable, as long as you specify a value for every field in the row. For example, the following code fragment inserts new field values into the **myrect** row variable and then inserts this **row** variable into the database:

```
EXEC SQL update table(:myrect)
      set x=3, y=4, length=12, width=6;
EXEC SQL insert into rectangles
      values (72, :myrect);
```

If the row variable is an untyped variable, you must use a SELECT statement *before* the UPDATE so that ESQL/C can determine the data types of the fields. An UPDATE of a field or fields in a row variable cannot include a WHERE clause.

The row variable stores the fields of the row. However, it has no intrinsic connection with a database column. Once the row variable contains the correct field values, you must then save the variable into the row column with one of the following SQL statements:

- To update the row column in the table with contents of the **row** variable, use an UPDATE statement on a table or view name and specify the **row** variable in the SET clause.

For more information, see [“Updating Row-Type Columns” on page 2-826](#).

- To insert a row in a column, use the INSERT statement on a table or view name and specify the **row** variable in the VALUES clause.

For more information, see [“Inserting Values into Row-Type Columns” on page 2-546](#).

For more information on how to use SPL row variables, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#). For more information on how to use ESQL/C **row** variables, see the discussion of complex data types in the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer’s Manual](#). ♦

Related Information

Related statements: DECLARE, INSERT, OPEN, SELECT, and FOREACH

For a task-oriented discussion of the UPDATE statement, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For a discussion of the GLS aspects of the UPDATE statement, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

For information on how to access row and collections with ESQL/C host variables, see the discussion of complex data types in the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer’s Manual](#).

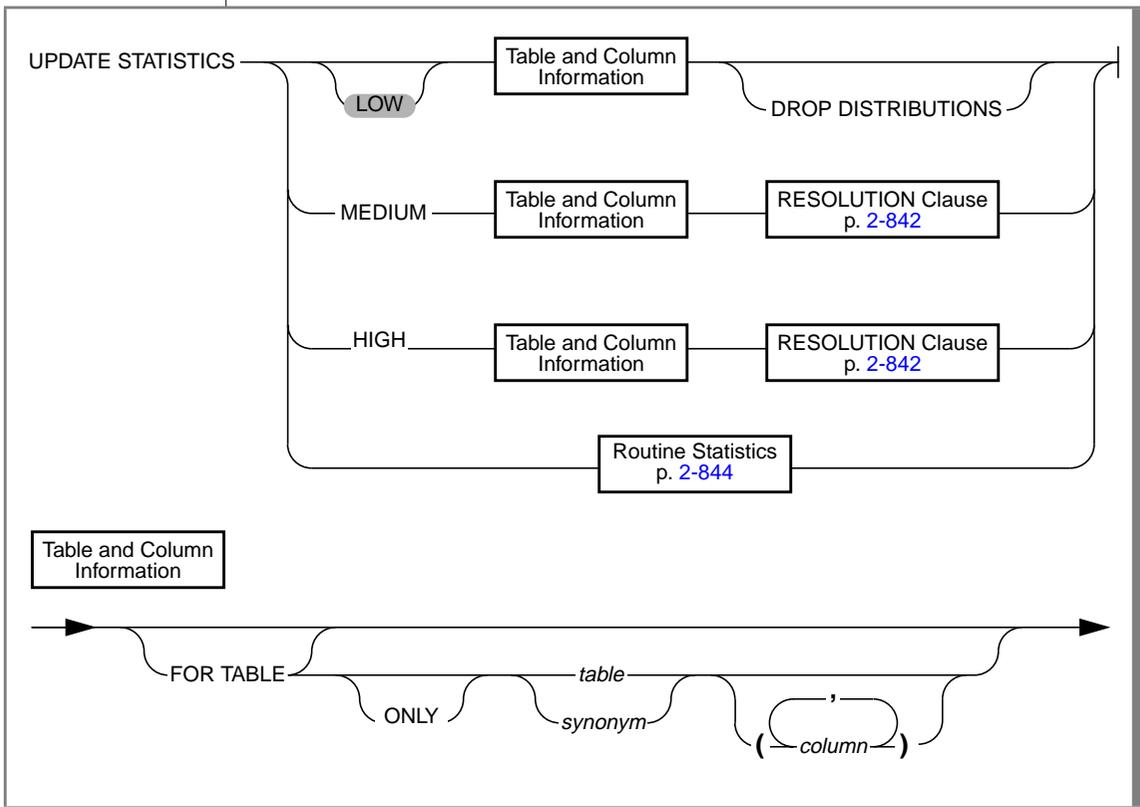
+

UPDATE STATISTICS

Use the UPDATE STATISTICS statement to:

- determine the distribution of column values.
- update the system catalog tables that the server uses to optimize queries.
- force reoptimization of SPL routines.
- convert existing table indexes when you upgrade the database server.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of a column in the specified table	The column must exist. If you use the LOW keyword and want the UPDATE STATISTICS statement to do minimal work, specify a column name that is not part of an index. If you use the MEDIUM or HIGH keywords, <i>column</i> cannot be a BYTE or TEXT column.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>synonym</i>	Name of synonym for table for which statistics are updated	The synonym and the table to which the synonym points must reside in the current database.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of table for which statistics are updated	The table must reside in the current database.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

You cannot update the statistics used by the optimizer for a table or UDR that is external to the current database. That is, you cannot update statistics on remote database objects.

Scope of UPDATE STATISTICS

If you do not specify any clause that begins with the FOR keyword, statistics are updated for every table and SPL routine in the current database, including the system catalog tables. Similarly, if you use a clause that begins with the FOR keyword, but do not specify a table or SPL routine name, the database server updates the statistics for all tables, including temporary tables, or all SPL routines in the current database.

If you use the FOR TABLE clause without a specific table name to build distributions on all of the tables in the database, distributions will also be built on all of the temporary tables in your session.

Updating Statistics for Tables

Although a change to the database might obsolete the corresponding statistics in the **sysables**, **syscolumns**, **sysindexes**, and **sysdistrib** system catalog tables, the database server does not automatically update them.

Issue an UPDATE STATISTICS statement in the following situations to ensure that the stored distribution information reflects the state of the database:

- You perform extensive modifications to a table.
- An application changes the distribution of column values.
The UPDATE STATISTICS statement reoptimizes queries on the modified objects.
- You upgrade a database for use with a newer database server.
The UPDATE STATISTICS statement converts the old indexes to conform to the newer database server index format and implicitly drops the old indexes.

You can choose to convert the indexes table by table or for the entire database at one time. Follow the conversion guidelines in the [Informix Migration Guide](#).

If your application makes many modifications to the data in a particular table, update the system catalog table data for that table routinely with the UPDATE STATISTICS statement to improve query efficiency. The term *many modifications* is relative to the resolution of the distributions. If the data changes do not change the distribution of column values, you do not need to execute UPDATE STATISTICS.

XPS

In Extended Parallel Server, the UPDATE STATISTICS statement does not update, maintain, or collect statistics on indexes. The statement does not update the **syscolumns** and **sysindexes** tables. Any information about indexes, the **syscolumns**, and the **sysindexes** tables in the following pages does not apply to Extended Parallel Server. ♦

IDS

Using the ONLY Keyword

Use the ONLY keyword to collect data for one table in a hierarchy of typed tables. If you do not specify the ONLY keyword and the table that you specify has subtables, the database server creates distributions for that table and every table under it in the hierarchy.

For example, assume your database has the typed table hierarchy that appears in [Figure 2-2](#), which shows a supertable named **employee** that has a subtable named **sales_rep**. The **sales_rep** table, in turn, has a subtable named **us_sales_rep**.

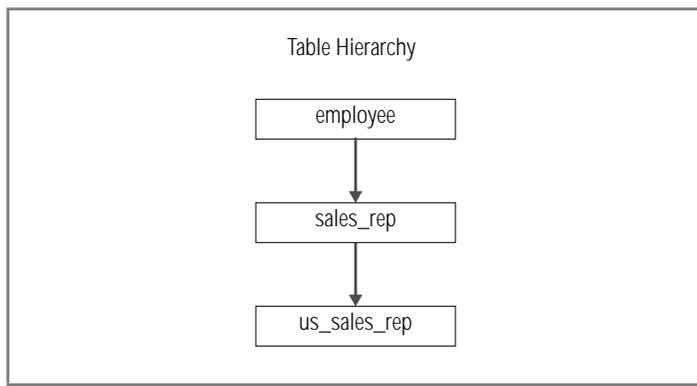


Figure 2-2

When the following statement executes, the database server generates statistics on both the **sales_rep** and **us_sales_rep** tables:

```
UPDATE STATISTICS FOR TABLE sales_rep
```

In contrast, the following example generates statistical data for each column in table **sales_rep** but does not act on tables **employee** or **us_sales_rep**:

```
UPDATE STATISTICS FOR TABLE ONLY sales_rep
```

Because neither of the previous examples mentioned the level at which to update the statistical data, the database server uses the low mode by default.

Examining Index Pages

In Dynamic Server, when you execute the UPDATE STATISTICS statement in any mode, the database server reads through index pages to:

- compute statistics for the query optimizer.
- locate pages that have the delete flag marked as 1.

If pages are found with the delete flag marked as 1, the corresponding keys are removed from the B-tree cleaner list.

This operation is particularly useful if a system crash causes the B-tree cleaner list (which exists in shared memory) to be lost. To remove the B-tree items that have been marked as deleted but are not yet removed from the B-tree, run the UPDATE STATISTICS statement. For information on the B-tree cleaner list, see your *Administrator's Guide*.

Using the LOW Mode Option

Use the LOW mode option to generate and update statistical data regarding table, row, and page count statistics in the **sysables** system catalog table.

If you do not specify a mode, the database server uses low by default.

In Dynamic Server, the LOW mode option updates index and column statistics for specified columns also. The database server generates and updates this statistical data in the **syscolumns**, and **sysindexes** tables.

When you use the low mode, the database server generates the least amount of information about the column. If you want the UPDATE STATISTICS statement to do minimal work, specify a column that is not part of an index.

The following example updates statistics on the **customer_num** column of the **customer** table.

```
UPDATE STATISTICS LOW FOR TABLE customer (customer_num)
```

Because the low mode does not update data in the **sysdistrib** system catalog table, all distributions associated with the **customer** table remain intact, even those that already exist on the **customer_num** column. ♦

Using the DROP DISTRIBUTIONS Option

Use the DROP DISTRIBUTIONS option to force the removal of distribution information from the **sysdistrib** system catalog table.

When you specify the DROP DISTRIBUTIONS option, the database server removes the distribution data that exists for the column or columns you specify. If you do not specify any columns, the database server removes all the distribution data for that table.

You must have the DBA privilege or be the owner of the table to use this option.

The following example shows how to remove distributions for the **customer_num** column in the **customer** table:

```
UPDATE STATISTICS LOW
FOR TABLE customer (customer_num) DROP DISTRIBUTIONS
```

As the example shows, you drop the distribution data at the same time you update the statistical data that the LOW mode option generates.

Using the MEDIUM Mode Option

Use the MEDIUM mode option to update the same statistics that you can perform with the low mode and also generate statistics about the distribution of data values for each specified column. The database server places distribution information in the **sysdistrib** system catalog table

If you use the MEDIUM mode option, the database server scans tables at least once and takes longer to execute on a given table than the LOW mode option.

The constructed distribution is statistically significant. When you use the MEDIUM mode option, the data for the distributions is obtained by sampling a percentage of data rows. Because the data obtained by sampling is usually much smaller than the actual number of rows, this mode executes more quickly than the HIGH mode.

Because the data is obtained by sampling, the results might vary (that is, different sample rows might produce different distribution results). If the results vary significantly, you can adjust the resolution percent or confidence level to obtain more consistent results.

If you do not specify a RESOLUTION clause, the default percentage of data distributed to every bin is 2.5. If you do not specify a value for *confidence_level*, the default confidence is 0.95. This value can be roughly interpreted to mean that 95 percent of the time, the estimate is equivalent to that obtained from high distributions.

You must have the DBA privilege or be the owner of the table to create medium distributions.

For more on the similarities between the Medium and High Modes, see the [“Resolution Clause”](#) on page 2-842.

Using the HIGH Mode Option

Use the HIGH mode option to update the same statistics that you can perform with the low mode and also generate statistics about the distribution of data values for each specified column. The database server places distribution information in the **sysdistrib** system catalog table.

The constructed distribution is exact. Because of the time required to gather this information, this mode executes more slowly than the LOW and MEDIUM modes.

You must have the DBA privilege or be the owner of the table to create high distributions.

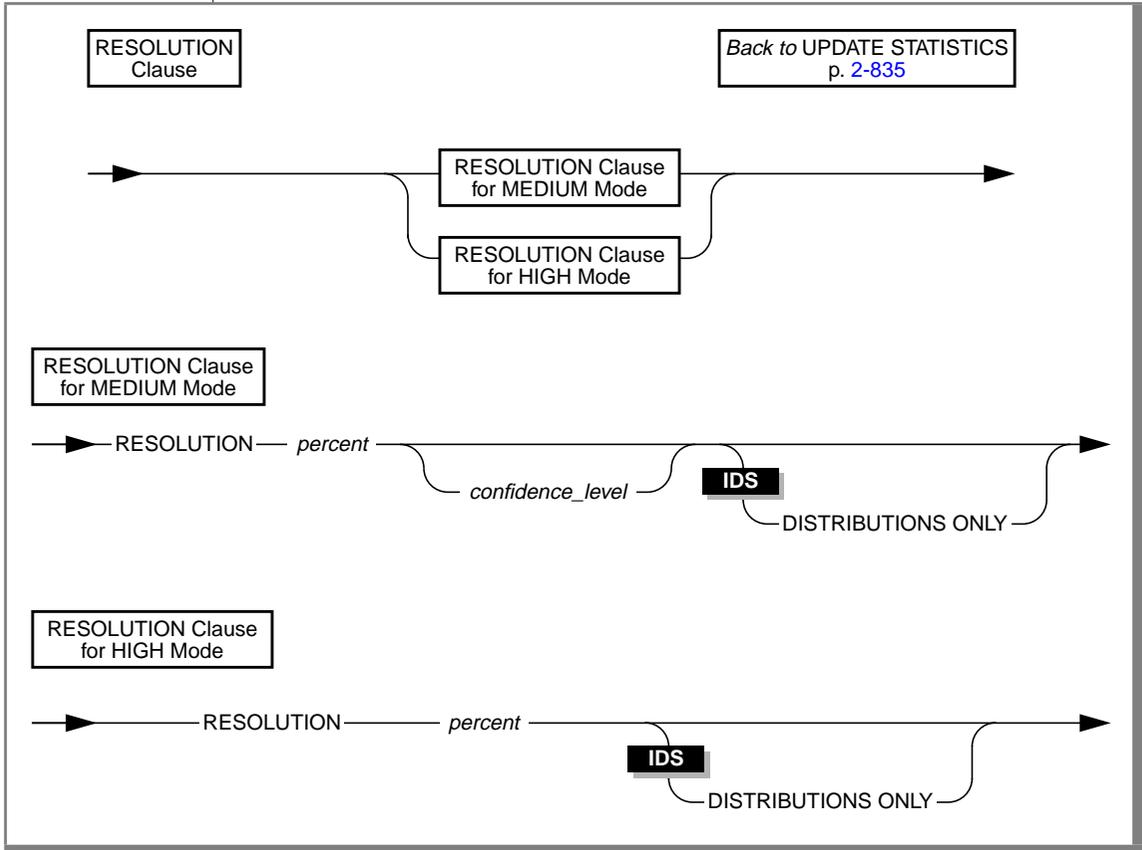
If you do not specify a RESOLUTION clause, the default percentage of data distributed to every bin is 0.5.

If you use the HIGH mode option to update statistics, the database server can take considerable time to gather the information across the database, particularly a database with large tables. The HIGH keyword might scan each table several times (for each column). To minimize processing time, specify a table name and column names within that table.

For more on the similarities between the Medium and High Modes, see the [“Resolution Clause.”](#)

Resolution Clause

Use the Resolution clause to adjust the size of the distribution bin, designate whether or not to avoid calculating data on indexes, and with the Medium mode, to adjust the confidence level.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>confidence_level</i>	Expected fraction of times that the sampling entailed by the MEDIUM keyword should produce the same results as the exact methods entailed by the HIGH keyword The default confidence level is 0.95. This can be roughly interpreted as meaning that 95 percent of the time, the estimate produced by the MEDIUM keyword is equivalent to using high distributions.	The minimum confidence level is 0.80. The maximum confidence level is 0.99.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>percent</i>	Percentage of samples in each bin of a distribution For MEDIUM mode, the default value is 2.5. For HIGH mode, the default value is 0.5	The minimum resolution possible for a table is $1/nrows$, where <i>nrows</i> is the number of rows in the table.	Literal Number, p. 4-237

A *distribution* is a mapping of the data in a column into a set of column values. The contents of the column are divided into bins or ranges, each of which contains an equal portion of the column data. For example, if one bin holds 2 percent of the data, 50 of these 2-percent bins hold all the data. A bin contains the particular range of data values that reflects the appropriate percentage of entries in the column.

The optimizer estimates the effect of a WHERE clause by examining, for each column included in the WHERE clause, the proportionate occurrence of data values contained in the column.

You cannot create distributions for BYTE or TEXT columns. If you include a BYTE or TEXT column in an UPDATE STATISTICS statement that specifies medium or high distributions, no distributions are created for those columns. Distributions are constructed for other columns in the list, and the statement does not return an error.

The amount of space that the DBUPSPACE environment variable specifies determines the number of times the database server scans the designated table to construct a distribution.

IDS

Using the DISTRIBUTIONS ONLY Option to Suppress Index Information

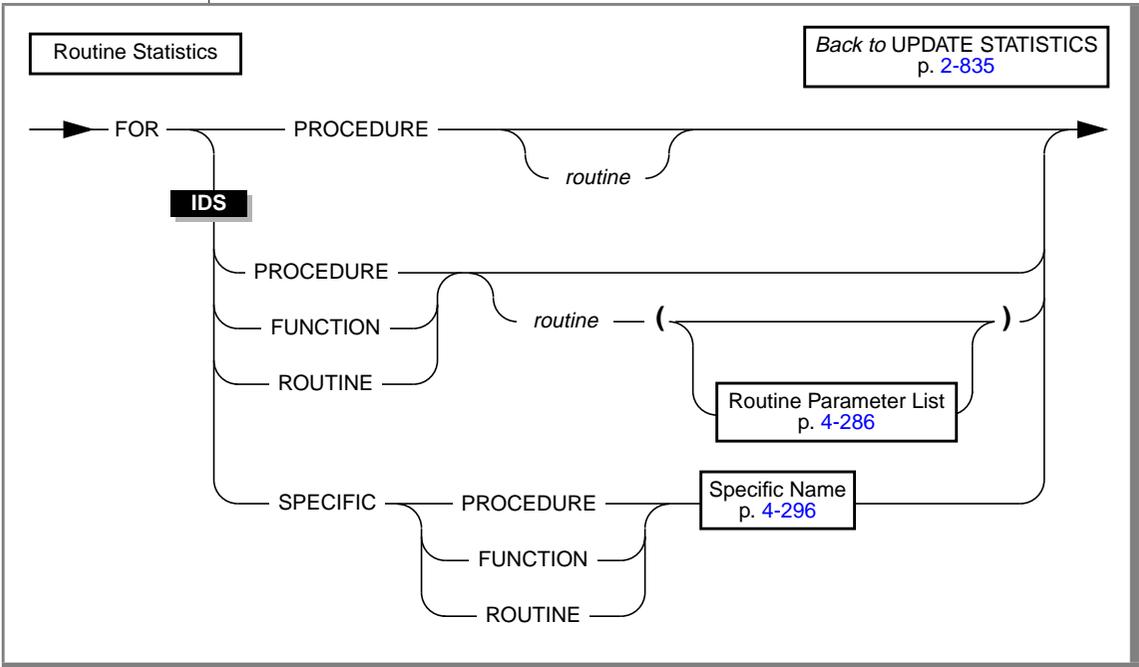
In Dynamic Server, when you specify the DISTRIBUTIONS ONLY option, you do not update index information. This option does not affect existing index information.

Use this option to avoid the examination of index information that can consume considerable processing time.

This option does not affect the recalculation of information on tables, such as the number of pages used, the number of rows, and fragment information. UPDATE STATISTICS needs this data to construct accurate column distributions and requires little time and system resources to collect it.

Routine Statistics

Use the Routine Statistics portion of the UPDATE STATISTICS statement to update the optimized execution plans for SPL routines in the **sysprocplan** system catalog table.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>routine</i>	Name given to the SPL routine in a CREATE FUNCTION or CREATE PROCEDURE statement If you omit <i>routine</i> , the statistics for all SPL routines in the current database are updated.	The SPL routine must reside in the current database. In an ANSI-compliant database, specify the owner as the prefix to the routine name.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

The following table explains the keywords that you can use when you update routine statistics.

KEYWORD	Purpose
SPECIFIC	Reoptimizes the execution plan for an SPL routine identified by <i>specific name</i> .
FUNCTION	Reoptimizes the execution plan for any SPL function with the specified routine name (and parameter types that match <i>routine parameter list</i> , if supplied).
PROCEDURE	Reoptimizes the execution plan for any SPL procedure with the specified routine name (and parameter types that match <i>routine parameter list</i> , if supplied).
ROUTINE	Reoptimizes the execution plan for SPL functions and SPL procedures with the specified routine name (and parameter types that match <i>routine parameter list</i> , if supplied).

The **sysprocplan** system catalog table stores execution plans for SPL routines. Two actions update the **sysprocplan** system catalog table:

- Execution of an SPL routine that uses a modified table
- The UPDATE STATISTICS statement

If you change a table that an SPL routine references, you can run UPDATE STATISTICS to reoptimize on demand, rather than waiting until the next time an SPL routine that uses the table executes.

Updating Statistics for Columns that Contain a User-Defined Type

To collect statistics for a column that holds a user-defined data type, you must specify either medium or high mode. When you execute UPDATE STATISTICS, the database server does not collect values for the **colmin** and **colmax** columns of the **syscolumns** table for columns that hold user-defined data types.

To drop statistics for a column that holds one of these data types, you must execute UPDATE STATISTICS in the low mode and use the DROP DISTRIBUTIONS option. When you use this option, the database server removes the row in the **sysdistrib** system catalog table that corresponds to the **tableid** and **column**. In addition, the database server removes any large objects that might have been created for storing the statistics information.

Requirements

UPDATE STATISTICS collects statistics for opaque data types only if you have defined user-defined routines for **statcollect()**, **statprint()**, and the selectivity functions. You must have usage permissions on these routines.

In some cases, UPDATE STATISTICS also requires an sbspace as specified by the SYSSBSPACENAME onconfig parameter. For information about the statistics routines, refer to the [DataBlade API Programmer's Manual](#). For information about SYSSBSPACENAME, refer to your [Administrator's Reference](#).

Updating Statistics When You Upgrade the Database Server

When you upgrade a database to use with a newer database server, you can use the UPDATE STATISTICS statement to convert the indexes to the form that the newer database server uses. You can choose to convert the indexes one table at a time or for the entire database at one time. Follow the conversion guidelines that are outlined in the [Informix Migration Guide](#).

When you use the UPDATE STATISTICS statement to convert the indexes to use with a newer database server, the indexes are implicitly dropped and recreated. The only time that an UPDATE STATISTICS statement causes table indexes to be implicitly dropped and recreated is when you upgrade a database for use with a newer database server.

Performance

The more specific you make the list of objects that UPDATE STATISTICS examines, the faster it completes execution. Limiting the number of columns distributed speeds the update. Similarly, precision affects the speed of the update. If all other keywords are the same, LOW works fastest, but HIGH examines the most data.

Related Information

Related statements: SET EXPLAIN and SET OPTIMIZATION

For a discussion of the performance implications of UPDATE STATISTICS, see your [Performance Guide](#).

For a discussion of how to use the **dbschema** utility to view distributions created with UPDATE STATISTICS, see the [Informix Migration Guide](#).

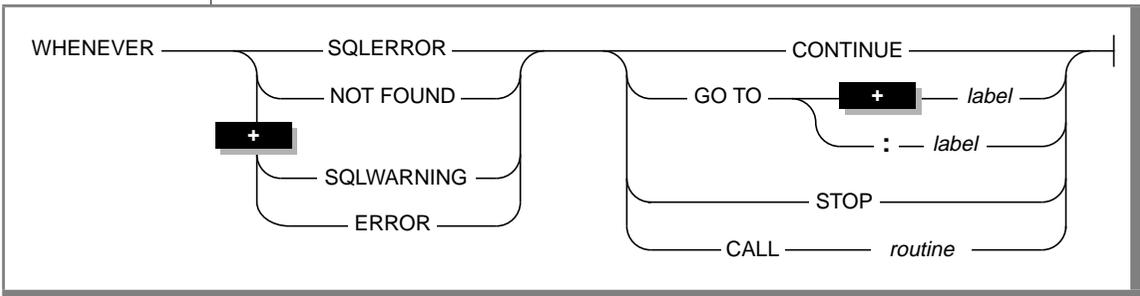
E/C

WHENEVER

Use the **WHENEVER** statement to trap exceptions that occur during the execution of SQL statements.

Use this statement with **ESQL/C**.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>label</i>	Statement label to which program control transfers when an exception occurs	Label must be a paragraph name or a procedure name.	Label must conform to language-specific rules for statement labels.
<i>routine</i>	Name of the user-defined routine (UDR) that is called when an exception occurs	UDR must exist at compile time.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50.

Usage

The **WHENEVER** statement is equivalent to placing an exception-checking routine after every SQL statement. The following table summarizes the types of exceptions for which you can check with the **WHENEVER** statement.

Type of Exception	WHENEVER Clause	For More Information
Errors	SQLERROR	2-851
Warnings	SQLWARNING	2-851
Not Found Condition End of Data Condition	NOT FOUND	2-852

If you do not use the **WHENEVER** statement in a program, the program does not automatically abort when an exception occurs. Your program must explicitly check for exceptions and take whatever corrective action you desire. If you do not check for exceptions, the program simply continues running. However, as a result of the errors, the program might not perform its intended purpose.

In addition to specifying the type of exception for which to check, the **WHENEVER** statement also specifies what action to take when the specified exception occurs. The following table summarizes possible actions that **WHENEVER** can specify.

Type of Action	WHENEVER Keyword	For More Information
Continue program execution	CONTINUE	2-852
Stop program execution	STOP	2-852
Transfer control to a specified label	GOTO GO TO	2-853
Transfer control to a named user-defined routine	CALL	2-854

The Scope of WHENEVER

The ESQ/C preprocessor, not the database server, handles the interpretation of the WHENEVER statement. When the preprocessor encounters a WHENEVER statement in an ESQ/C source file, it inserts the appropriate code into the preprocessed code after each SQL statement based on the exception and the action that WHENEVER lists. The preprocessor defines the scope of a WHENEVER statement as being from the point that it encounters the statement in the source module until it encounters one of the following conditions:

- The next WHENEVER statement with the same exception condition (SQLERROR, SQLWARNING, and NOT FOUND) in the same source module
- The end of the source module

Whichever condition the preprocessor encounters first as it sequentially processes the source module marks the end of the scope of the WHENEVER statement.

The following ESQ/C example program has three WHENEVER statements, two of which are WHENEVER SQLERROR statements. Line 4 uses STOP with SQLERROR to override the default CONTINUE action for errors. Line 8 specifies the CONTINUE keyword to return the handling of errors to the default behavior. For all SQL statements between lines 4 and 8, the preprocessor inserts code that checks for errors and halts program execution if an error occurs. Therefore, any errors that the INSERT statement on line 6 generates cause the program to stop.

After line 8, the preprocessor does not insert code to check for errors after SQL statements. Therefore, any errors that the INSERT statement (line 10), the SELECT statement (line 11), and DISCONNECT statement (line 12) generate are ignored. However, the SELECT statement does not stop program execution if it does not locate any rows; the WHENEVER statement on line 7 tells the program to continue if such an exception occurs.

```
1  main()
2  {
3
4  EXEC SQL connect to 'test';
5  EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR STOP;
6
7  EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR CONTINUE;
8
9  EXEC SQL INSERT INTO test VALUES (1);
10 EXEC SQL INSERT INTO test VALUES (2);
11 EXEC SQL SELECT * FROM test;
12 EXEC SQL DISCONNECT FROM test;
```

```

6 EXEC SQL insert into test_color values ('green');
7 EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND CONTINUE;
8 EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR CONTINUE;

9 printf("\n\nGoing to try second insert\n\n");
10 EXEC SQL insert into test_color values ('blue');
11 EXEC SQL select paint_type from paint where color='red';
12 EXEC SQL disconnect all;
13 printf("\n\nProgram over\n\n");
14 }

```

SQLERROR Keyword

If you use the SQLERROR keyword, any SQL statement that encounters an error is handled as the WHENEVER SQLERROR statement directs. If an error occurs, the **sqlcode** variable (**sqlca.sqlcode**, **SQLCODE**) is less than zero (0) and the SQLSTATE variable has a class code with a value greater than 02.

The following statement causes a program to stop execution if an SQL error exists:

```
WHENEVER SQLERROR STOP
```

If you do not use any WHENEVER SQLERROR statements in a program, the default for WHENEVER SQLERROR is CONTINUE.

ERROR Keyword

ERROR is a synonym for SQLERROR.

SQLWARNING Keyword

If you use the SQLWARNING keyword, any SQL statement that generates a warning is handled as the WHENEVER SQLWARNING statement directs. If a warning occurs, the first field of the warning structure in SQLCA (**sqlca.sqlwarn.sqlwarn0**) is set to W, and the SQLSTATE variable has a class code of 01.

In addition to setting the first field of the warning structure, a warning also sets an additional field to W. The field that is set indicates the type of warning that occurred.

The following statement causes a program to stop execution if a warning condition exists:

```
WHENEVER SQLWARNING STOP
```

If you do not use any `WHENEVER SQLWARNING` statements in a program, the default for `WHENEVER SQLWARNING` is `CONTINUE`.

NOT FOUND Keywords

If you use the `NOT FOUND` keywords, exception handling for `SELECT` and `FETCH` statements is treated differently than for other SQL statements. The `NOT FOUND` keyword checks for the following cases:

- The **End of Data** condition: a `FETCH` statement that attempts to get a row beyond the first or last row in the active set
- The **Not Found** condition: a `SELECT` statement that returns no rows

In each case, the `sqlcode` variable is set to 100, and the `SQLSTATE` variable has a class code of 02. For the name of the `sqlcode` variable in each Informix product, see the table in [“SQLERROR Keyword” on page 2-851](#).

The following statement calls the `no_rows()` function each time the `NOT FOUND` condition exists:

```
WHENEVER NOT FOUND CALL no_rows
```

If you do not use any `WHENEVER NOT FOUND` statements in a program, the default for `WHENEVER NOT FOUND` is `CONTINUE`.

CONTINUE Keyword

Use the `CONTINUE` keyword to instruct the program to ignore the exception and to continue execution at the next statement after the SQL statement. The default action for all exceptions is `CONTINUE`. You can use this keyword to turn off a previously specified option.

STOP Keyword

Use the STOP keyword to instruct the program to stop execution when the specified exception occurs. The following statement halts execution of an ESQL/C program each time that an SQL statement generates a warning:

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLWARNING STOP;
```

GOTO Keywords

Use the GOTO clause to transfer control to the statement that the label identifies when a particular exception occurs. The GOTO keyword is the ANSI-compliant syntax of the clause. The GO TO keywords are a non-ANSI synonym for GOTO.

The following example shows a WHENEVER statement in ESQL/C code that transfers control to the label **missing** each time that the NOT FOUND condition occurs:

```
query_data()
.
.
.
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND GO TO missing;
.
.
.
EXEC SQL fetch lname into :lname;
.
.
.
missing:
    printf("No Customers Found\n");
.
.
.
```

You must define the labeled statement in *each* program block that contains SQL statements. If your program contains more than one user-defined function, you might need to include the labeled statement and its code in *each* function. When the preprocessor reaches the function that does not contain the labeled statement, it tries to insert the code associated with the labeled statement. However, if you do not define this labeled statement within the function, the preprocessor generates an error.

To correct this error, either put a labeled statement with the same label name in each user-defined function, issue another `WHENEVER` statement to reset the error condition, or use the `CALL` clause to call a separate function.

CALL Clause

Use the `CALL` clause to transfer program control to the named UDR when a particular exception occurs. Do not include parentheses after the UDR name. The following `WHENEVER` statement causes the program to call the `error_recovery()` function if the program detects an error:

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR CALL error_recovery;
```

When the named function completes, execution resumes at the next statement after the line that is causing the error. If you want to halt execution when an error occurs, include statements that terminate the program as part of the named function.

Observe the following restrictions on the named function:

- You cannot pass arguments to the named function nor can you return values from the named function. If the named function needs external information, use global variables or the `GOTO` clause of `WHENEVER` to transfer control to a label that calls the named function.
- You cannot specify the name of an SPL routine in the `CALL` clause. To call an SPL routine, use the `CALL` clause to execute a function that contains the `EXECUTE FUNCTION` (or `EXECUTE PROCEDURE`) statement.
- Make sure that all functions that the `WHENEVER...CALL` statement affects can find a declaration of the named function.

Related Information

Related Statements: `EXECUTE FUNCTION`, `EXECUTE PROCEDURE` and `FETCH`

For discussions on exception handling and error checking, see the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

SPL Statements

In This Chapter	3-3
CALL	3-4
CASE	3-7
CONTINUE	3-10
DEFINE	3-11
EXIT	3-24
FOR.	3-26
FOREACH	3-30
IF	3-37
LET.	3-41
ON EXCEPTION	3-45
RAISE EXCEPTION	3-50
RETURN	3-52
SYSTEM	3-55
TRACE	3-58
WHILE	3-62

In This Chapter

You can use Stored Procedure Language (SPL) statements to write SPL routines (formerly referred to as stored procedures), and you can store these routines in the database. SPL routines are effective tools for controlling SQL activity.

This chapter contains descriptions of the SPL statements. The description of each statement includes the following information:

- A brief introduction that explains the purpose of the statement
- A syntax diagram that shows how to enter the statement correctly
- A syntax table that explains each input parameter in the syntax diagram
- Rules of usage, including examples that illustrate these rules

If a statement is composed of multiple clauses, the statement description provides the same set of information for each clause.

For task-oriented information about using SPL routines, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

XPS

In Extended Parallel Server, to create an SPL function you must use the CREATE PROCEDURE statement. Extended Parallel Server does not support the CREATE FUNCTION statement. ♦

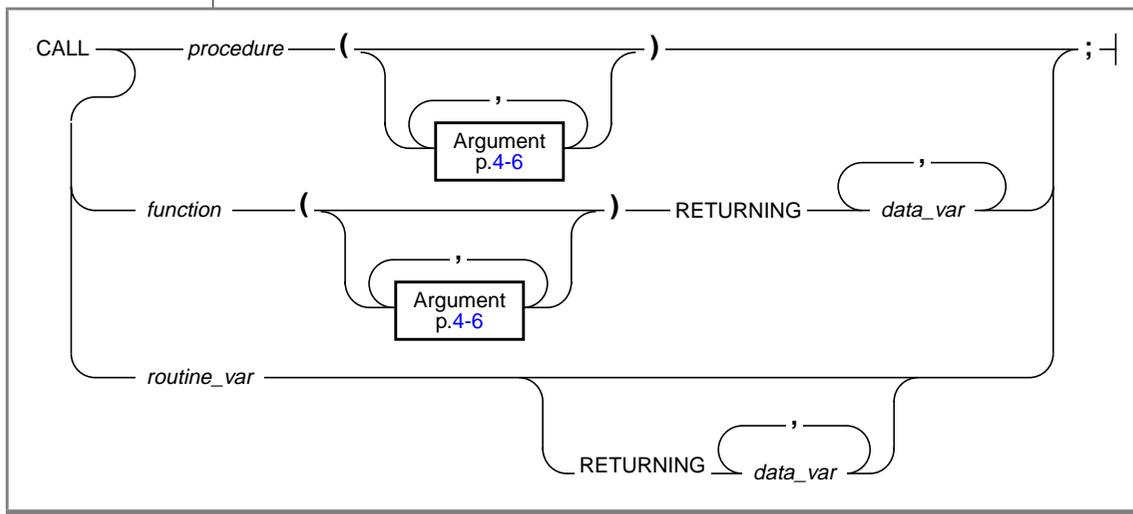
IDS

In Dynamic Server, for backward compatibility, you can create an SPL function with the CREATE PROCEDURE statement. For external functions, you must use the CREATE FUNCTION statement. Informix recommends that you use the CREATE FUNCTION statement as you create all new user-defined functions. ♦

CALL

Use the CALL statement to execute a user-defined routine (UDR) from within an SPL routine.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>data_var</i>	Name of a variable that receives the value or values a function returns	The data type of <i>data_var</i> must be appropriate for the value the function returns.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>function</i>	Name of the user-defined function to call	The function must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>procedure</i>	Name of the user-defined procedure to call	The procedure must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>routine_var</i>	Name of a variable that is set to the name of a UDR	The <i>routine_var</i> must have the data type CHAR, VARCHAR, NCHAR, or NVARCHAR. The name you assign to <i>routine_var</i> must be non-null and the name of an existing UDR.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Usage

The CALL statement invokes a UDR. The CALL statement is identical in behavior to the EXECUTE PROCEDURE and EXECUTE FUNCTION statements, but you can only use CALL from within an SPL routine. You can use CALL in an ESQL/C program or with DB-Access, but only if you place the statement within an SPL routine executed by the program or DB-Access.

If you CALL a user-defined function, specify a RETURNING clause.

Specifying Arguments

If a CALL statement contains more arguments than the called UDR expects, you receive an error.

If a CALL statement specifies fewer arguments than the called UDR expects, the arguments are said to be missing. The database server initializes missing arguments to their corresponding default values. (See [“CREATE PROCEDURE” on page 2-199](#) and [“CREATE FUNCTION” on page 2-146](#).) This initialization occurs before the first executable statement in the body of the UDR.

If missing arguments do not have default values, the database server initializes the arguments to the value of UNDEFINED. An attempt to use any variable that has the value of UNDEFINED results in an error.

In each UDR call, you have the option of specifying parameter names for the arguments you pass to the UDR. Each of the following examples are valid for a UDR that expects character arguments named t, n, and d, in that order:

```
CALL add_col (t='customer', n = 'newint', d = 'integer');  
CALL add_col('customer','newint','integer');
```

The syntax of specifying arguments is described in more detail in [“Argument” on page 4-6](#).

Receiving Input from the Called UDR

The RETURNING clause specifies the data variable that receives values that a called function returns.

The following example shows two UDR calls:

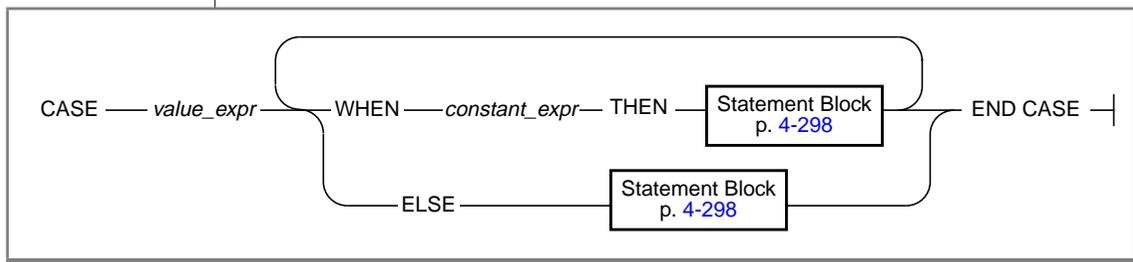
```
CREATE PROCEDURE not_much()  
  DEFINE i, j, k INT;  
  CALL no_args (10,20);  
  CALL yes_args (5) RETURNING i, j, k;  
END PROCEDURE
```

The first routine call (**no_args**) expects no returned values. The second routine call is to a function (**yes_args**), which expects three returned values. The **not_much()** procedure declares three integer variables (**i**, **j**, and **k**) to receive the returned values from **yes_args**.

CASE

Use the CASE statement when you need to take one of many branches depending on the value of an SPL variable or a simple expression. The CASE statement is a fast alternative to the IF statement.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>constant_expr</i>	Constant expression that specifies a literal value	The constant expression can be any of the following literals: a literal number, quoted string, literal datetime, or literal interval. The data type of the constant expression must be compatible with the data type of <i>value_expr</i> .	Constant Expressions, p. 4-108
<i>value_expr</i>	Expression that evaluates to a value	The expression can be an SPL variable or any other type of expression that evaluates to a value.	Expression, p. 4-73

Usage

You can use the CASE statement to create a set of conditional branches within an SPL routine.

Both the WHEN and ELSE clauses are optional, but you must supply one or the other. If you do not specify either a WHEN clause or an ELSE clause, you receive a syntax error.

How the Database Server Executes a CASE Statement

The database server executes the CASE statement in the following way:

- The database server evaluates the *value_expr* parameter.
- If the resulting value matches a literal value specified in the *constant_expr* parameter of a WHEN clause, the database server executes the statement block that follows the THEN keyword in that WHEN clause.
- If the value resulting from the evaluation of the *value_expr* parameter matches the *constant_expr* parameter in more than one WHEN clause, the database server executes the statement block that follows the THEN keyword in the first matching WHEN clause in the CASE statement.
- After the database server executes the statement block that follows the THEN keyword, it executes the statement that follows the CASE statement in the SPL routine.
- If the value of the *value_expr* parameter does not match the literal value specified in the *constant_expr* parameter of any WHEN clause, and if the CASE statement includes an ELSE clause, the database server executes the statement block that follows the ELSE keyword.
- If the value of the *value_expr* parameter does not match the literal value specified in the *constant_expr* parameter of any WHEN clause, and if the CASE statement does not include an ELSE clause, the database server executes the statement that follows the CASE statement in the SPL routine.
- If the CASE statement includes an ELSE clause but not a WHEN clause, the database server executes the statement block that follows the ELSE keyword.

Computation of the Value Expression in CASE

The database server computes the value of the *value_expr* parameter only one time. It computes this value at the start of execution of the CASE statement. If the value expression specified in the *value_expr* parameter contains SPL variables and the values of these variables change subsequently in one of the statement blocks within the CASE statement, the database server does not recompute the value of the *value_expr* parameter. So a change in the value of any variables contained in the *value_expr* parameter has no effect on the branch taken by the CASE statement.

Valid Statements in the Statement Block

The statement block that follows the THEN or ELSE keywords can include any SQL statement or SPL statement that is allowed in the statement block of an SPL routine. For further information on the statement block of an SPL routine, see [“Statement Block” on page 4-298](#).

Example of CASE Statement

In the following example, the CASE statement initializes one of a set of SPL variables (named **j**, **k**, **l**, and **m**) to the value of an SPL variable named **x**, depending on the value of another SPL variable named **i**:

```

CASE i
  WHEN 1 THEN
    LET j = x;
  WHEN 2 THEN
    LET k = x;
  WHEN 3 THEN
    LET l = x;
  WHEN 4 THEN
    LET m = x;
  ELSE
    RAISE EXCEPTION 100; --illegal value
END CASE

```

CONTINUE

Use the CONTINUE statement to start the next iteration of the innermost FOR, WHILE, or FOREACH loop.

Syntax

```
CONTINUE _____ ; _____
                |_____|
                |  FOR  |
                |_____|
                |  WHILE  |
                |_____|
                |  FOREACH  |
                |_____|
```

Usage

When you encounter a CONTINUE statement, the SPL routine skips the rest of the statements in the innermost loop of the indicated type. Execution continues at the top of the loop with the next iteration. In the following example, the **loopskip** function inserts values 3 through 15 into the table **testtable**. The function also returns values 3 through 9 and 13 through 15 in the process. The function does not return the value 11 because it encounters the CONTINUE FOR statement. The CONTINUE FOR statement causes the function to skip the RETURN WITH RESUME statement.

```
CREATE FUNCTION loop_skip()
  RETURNING INT;
  DEFINE i INT;
  .
  .
  .
  FOR i IN (3 TO 15 STEP 2)
    INSERT INTO testtable values(i, null, null);
    IF i = 11
      CONTINUE FOR;
    END IF;
    RETURN i WITH RESUME;
  END FOR;

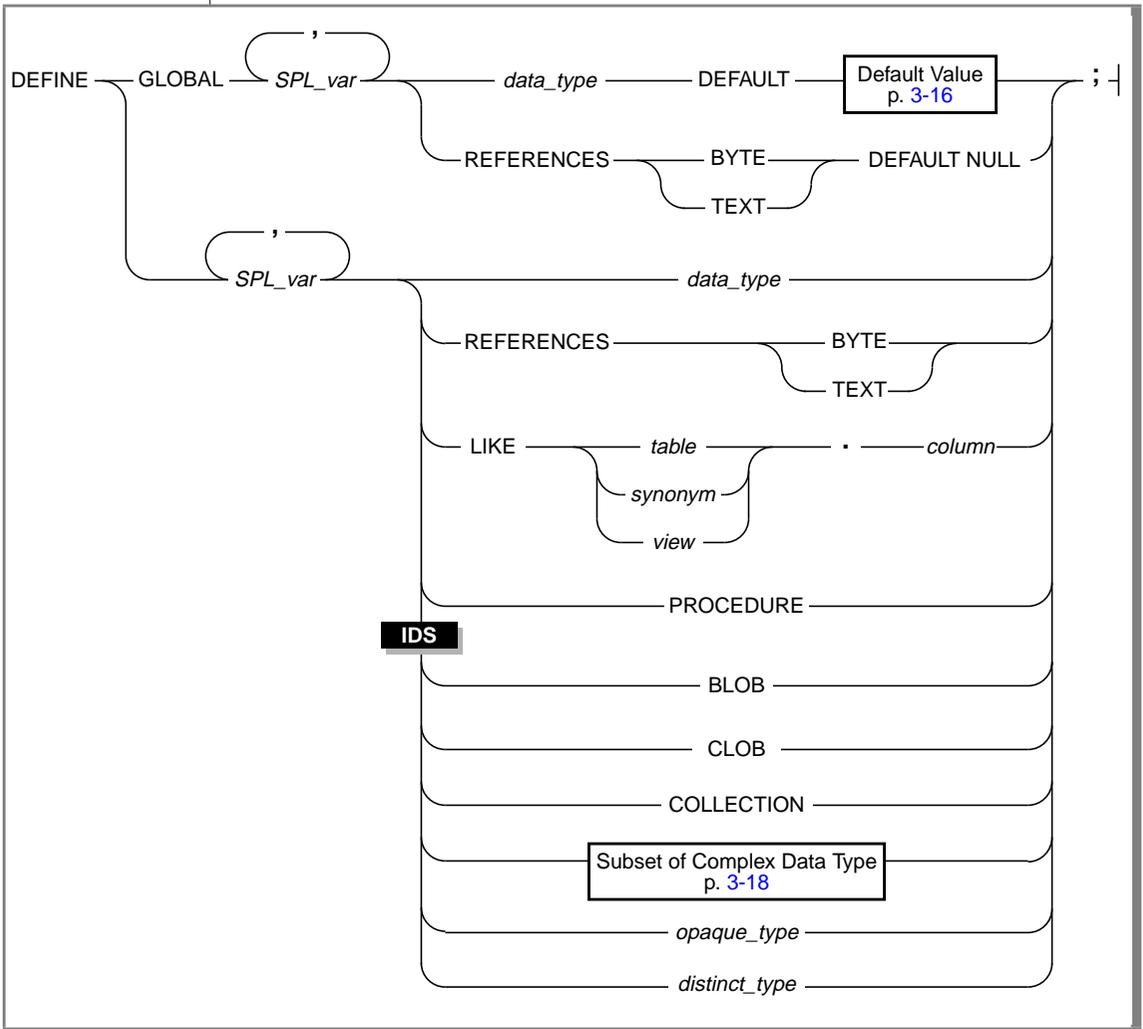
END FUNCTION;
```

The CONTINUE statement generates errors if it cannot find the identified loop.

DEFINE

Use the DEFINE statement to declare variables that an SPL routine uses and to assign them data types.

Syntax



DEFINE

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of a column in the table	The column must exist in the table by the time you run the SPL routine.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>data_type</i>	Data type of the values that the variable holds Variables of INT and INT8 data types hold data from SERIAL and SERIAL8 columns, respectively.	For global variables, the data type can be any built-in data type except SERIAL, SERIAL8, TEXT, BYTE, CLOB, or BLOB. For local variables, the data type can be any built-in data type except SERIAL, SERIAL8, TEXT, or BYTE.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>distinct_type</i>	Name of a distinct type	The distinct type must be defined in the database by the time you run the SPL routine.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>opaque_type</i>	Name of an opaque type	The opaque type must be defined in the database by the time you run the SPL routine.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>SPL_var</i>	Name of the SPL variable that is being defined	The name must be unique within the statement block.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>synonym</i>	Name of a synonym	The synonym and the table to which it refers must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of a table	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>view</i>	Name of a view	The view must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Usage

The DEFINE statement is not an executable statement. The DEFINE statement must appear after the routine header and before any other statements.

If you define a local variable (by using DEFINE without the GLOBAL keyword), the scope of the variable is the statement block in which it is defined. You can use the variable anywhere within the statement block. You can also use the same variable name outside the statement block with a different definition.

If you define a variable with the GLOBAL keyword, the variable is global in scope and is available outside the statement block and to other SPL routines.

Referencing TEXT and BYTE Variables

The REFERENCES keyword lets you use BYTE and TEXT variables. BYTE and TEXT variables do not contain the actual data but are simply pointers to the data. The REFERENCES keyword is a reminder that the SPL variable is just a pointer. Use the SPL variables for BYTE and TEXT data types exactly as you would any other variable.

Redeclaration or Redefinition

If you define the same variable twice within the same statement block, you receive an error. You can redefine a variable within a nested block, in which case it temporarily hides the outer declaration. The following example produces an error:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE example1()
  DEFINE n INT; DEFINE j INT;
  DEFINE n CHAR (1); -- redefinition produces an error
  .
  .
  .
```

The database server allows the redeclaration in the following example. Within the nested statement block, *n* is a character variable. Outside the block, *n* is an integer variable.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE example2()
  DEFINE n INT; DEFINE j INT;
  .
  .
  .
  BEGIN
  DEFINE n CHAR (1); -- character n masks integer variable
                    -- locally
  .
  .
  .
  END
```

Declaring GLOBAL Variables

The GLOBAL keyword indicates that the variables that follow are available to other SPL routines through the global environment. The data types of these variables must match the data types of variables in the *global environment*. The global environment is the memory that is used by all the SPL routines that run within a given DB-Access or SQL API session. The values of global variables are stored in memory.

SPL routines that are running in the current session share global variables. Because the database server does not save global variables in the database, the global variables do not remain when the current session closes. The data types of global variables you use in your SPL routine must match the data types of variables in the global environment.

Databases do not share global variables. The database server and any application development tools do not share global variables.

The first declaration of a global variable establishes the variable in the global environment; subsequent global declarations simply bind the variable to the global environment and establish the value of the variable at that point. The following example shows two SPL procedures, **proc1** and **proc2**; each has defined the global variable **gl_out**:

- SPL procedure **proc1**

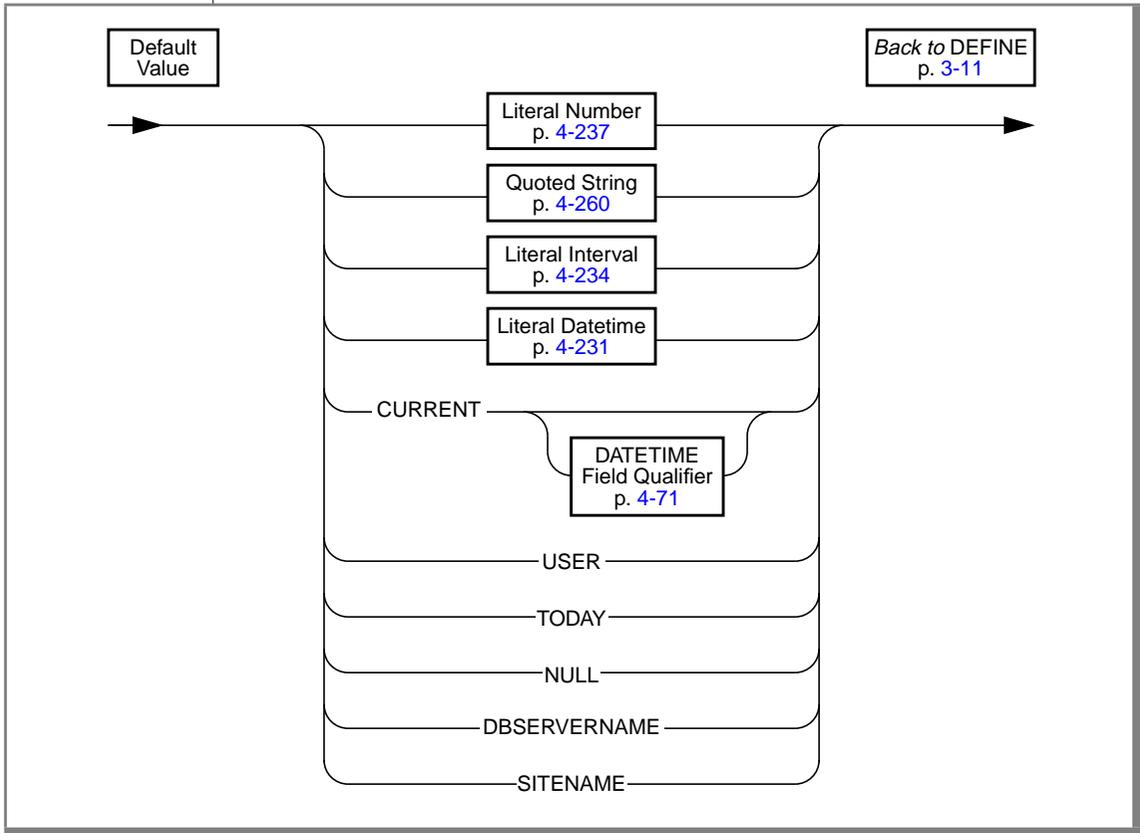
```
CREATE PROCEDURE proc1()  
.  
.  
    DEFINE GLOBAL gl_out INT DEFAULT 13;  
.  
.  
    LET gl_out = gl_out + 1;  
END PROCEDURE;
```

- SPL procedure **proc2**

```
CREATE PROCEDURE proc2()  
.  
.  
    DEFINE GLOBAL gl_out INT DEFAULT 23;  
    DEFINE tmp INT;  
    .  
    .  
    LET tmp = gl_out  
    .  
    .  
END PROCEDURE;
```

If **proc1** is called first, **gl_out** is set to 13 and then incremented to 14. If **proc2** is then called, it sees that the value of **gl_out** is already defined, so the default value of 23 is not applied. Then, **proc2** assigns the existing value of 14 to **tmp**. If **proc2** had been called first, **gl_out** would have been set to 23, and 23 would have been assigned to **tmp**. Later calls to **proc1** would not apply the default of 13.

Default Value



You can provide a literal value or a null value as the default for a global variable. You can also use a call to a built-in function to provide the default value. The following example uses the SITENAME function to provide a default value. It also defines a global BYTE variable.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE gl_def()
  DEFINE GLOBAL gl_site CHAR(200) DEFAULT SITENAME;
  DEFINE GLOBAL gl_byte REFERENCES BYTE DEFAULT NULL;
  :
  :
  :
END PROCEDURE
```

SITENAME or DBSERVERNAME

If you use the value returned by *SITENAME* or *DBSERVERNAME* as the default, the variable must be defined as a CHAR, VARCHAR, NCHAR, or NVARCHAR data type.

IDS

If you are using Dynamic Server, Informix recommends that the size of the variable be at least 128 bytes long. You risk getting an error message during INSERT and ALTER TABLE operations if the length of the variable is too small to store the default value. ♦

XPS

If you are using Extended Parallel Server, Informix recommends that the length of the variable be at least 18 bytes. You risk getting an error message during INSERT and ALTER TABLE operations if the length of the variable is too small to store the default value. ♦

USER

If you use the value returned by *USER* as the default, the variable must be defined as a CHAR, VARCHAR, NCHAR, or NVARCHAR data type.

IDS

If you are using Dynamic Server, Informix recommends that the length of the variable be at least 32 bytes. You risk getting an error message during INSERT and ALTER TABLE operations if the length of the variable is too small to store the default value. ♦

XPS

If you are using Extended Parallel Server, Informix recommends that the length of the variable be at least 8 bytes. You risk getting an error message during INSERT and ALTER TABLE operations if the length of the variable is too small to store the default value. ♦

CURRENT

If you use *CURRENT* as the default, the variable must be a DATETIME value. If the YEAR TO FRACTION keyword has qualified your variable, you can use *CURRENT* without qualifiers. If your variable uses another set of qualifiers, you must provide the same qualifiers when you use *CURRENT* as the default value. The following example defines a DATETIME variable with qualifiers and uses *CURRENT* with matching qualifiers:

```
DEFINE GLOBAL d_var DATETIME YEAR TO MONTH
        DEFAULT CURRENT YEAR TO MONTH;
```

TODAY

If you use TODAY as the default, the variable must be a DATE value.

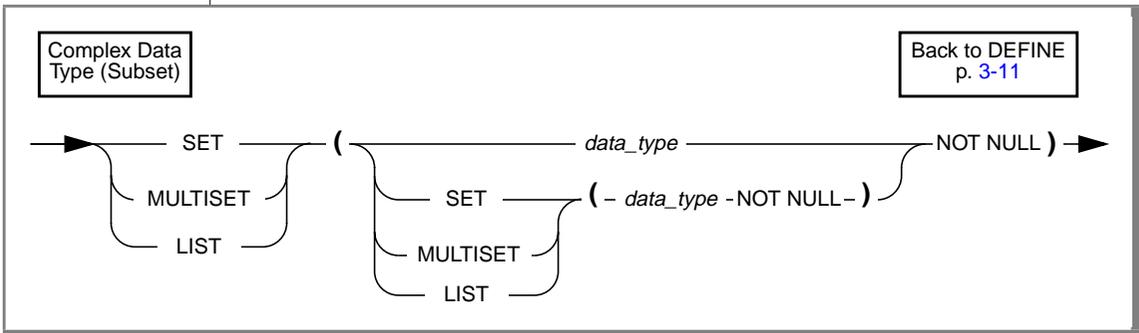
BYTE and TEXT

The only default value possible for a BYTE or TEXT variable is null. The following example defines a TEXT global variable that is called **I_blob**:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE use_text()
  DEFINE i INT;
  DEFINE GLOBAL i_blob REFERENCES TEXT DEFAULT NULL;
END PROCEDURE
```

IDS

Subset of Complex Data Type



Complex Data Type (Subset)

Back to DEFINE p. 3-11

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>data_type</i>	Data type of the elements of a collection	The data type must match the data type of the elements of the collection the variable will contain. The data type can be any data type except a SERIAL, SERIAL8, TEXT, BYTE, CLOB, or BLOB.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Declaring Local Variables

Nonglobal (local) variables do not allow defaults. The following example shows typical definitions of local variables:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE def_ex()
  DEFINE i INT;
  DEFINE word CHAR(15);
  DEFINE b_day DATE;
  DEFINE c_name LIKE customer.fname;
  DEFINE b_text REFERENCES TEXT ;
END PROCEDURE
```

Declaring Collection Variables

A variable of type `COLLECTION`, `SET`, `MULTISET`, and `LIST` is a collection variable and holds a collection fetched from the database. You cannot define a collection variable as global (with the `GLOBAL` keyword) or with a default value.

A variable defined with the type `COLLECTION` is an untyped collection variable. An untyped collection variable is generic and can hold a collection of any type.

A variable defined with the type `SET`, `MULTISET`, or `LIST` is a typed collection variable. A typed collection variable can hold only a collection of its type.

You must use the `NOT NULL` keywords when you define the elements of a typed collection variable, as in the following examples:

```
DEFINE a SET ( INT NOT NULL );

DEFINE b MULTISET ( ROW ( b1 INT,
                        b2 CHAR(50)
                      ) NOT NULL );

DEFINE c LIST( SET( INTEGER NOT NULL ) NOT NULL );
```

Note that with variable `c`, both the `INTEGER` values in the `SET` and the `SET` values in the `LIST` are defined as `NOT NULL`.

You can define collection variables with nested complex types to hold matching nested complex type data. Any type or depth of nesting is allowed. You can nest row types within collection types, collection types within row types, collection types within collection types, row types within collection and row types, and so on.

If you define a variable of `COLLECTION` type, the variable acquires varying type assignments if it is reused within the same statement block, as in the following example:

```
DEFINE a COLLECTION;
LET a = setB;
.
.
.
LET a = listC;
```

In this example, **varA** is a generic collection variable that changes its data type to the data type of the currently assigned collection. The first `LET` statement makes **varA** a `SET` variable. The second `LET` statement makes **varA** a `LIST` variable.

IDS

Declaring Row Variables

Row variables hold data from named or unnamed row types. You can define a generic row variable, a named row variable, or an unnamed row variable.

A generic row variable, defined with the `ROW` keyword, can hold data from any row type. A named row variable holds data from the named row type specified in the variable definition. The following statements show examples of generic row variables and named row variables:

```
DEFINE d ROW; -- generic row variable

DEFINE rectv rectangle_t; -- named row variable
```

A named row variable holds named row types of the same type in the variable definition.

To define a variable that will hold data stored in an unnamed row type, use the `ROW` keyword followed by the fields of the row type, as in:

```
DEFINE area ROW ( x int, y char(10) );
```

Unnamed row types are type-checked only by structural equivalence. Two unnamed row types are considered equivalent if they have the same number of fields, and if the fields have the same type definitions. Therefore, you could fetch either of the following row types into the variable **area** defined above:

```
ROW ( a int, b char(10) )
ROW ( area int, name char(10) )
```

Row variables can have fields, just as row types have fields. To assign a value to a field of a row variable, use the SQL dot notation *variableName.fieldName*, followed by an expression, as in the following example:

```
CREATE ROW TYPE rectangle_t (start point_t, length real,
                             width real);

DEFINE r rectangle_t;
    -- Define a variable of a named row type
LET r.length = 45.5;
    -- Assign a value to a field of the variable
```

When you assign a value to a row variable, you can use any allowed expression described in EXPRESSION.

IDS

Declaring Opaque-Type Variables

Opaque-type variables hold data retrieved from opaque types, which you create with the CREATE OPAQUE TYPE statement. An opaque-type variable can only hold data of the opaque type on which it is defined.

The following example defines a variable of the opaque type **point**, which holds the **x** and **y** coordinates of a two-dimensional point:

```
DEFINE b point;
```

Declaring Variables LIKE Columns

If you use the LIKE clause, the database server assigns the variable the same data type as a column in a table, synonym, or view.

The data types of variables that are defined as database columns are resolved at run time; therefore, *column* and *table* do not need to exist at compile time.

Declaring a Variable LIKE a SERIAL Column

You can use the LIKE keyword to declare that a variable is like a SERIAL column. For example, if the column **serialcol** in the **mytab** table has the SERIAL data type, you can create the following SPL function:

```
CREATE FUNCTION func1()
DEFINE local_var LIKE mytab.serialcol;
RETURN;
END FUNCTION;
```

The variable `local_var` is treated as an INTEGER variable.

Declaring Variables as the PROCEDURE Type

The PROCEDURE keyword indicates that in the current scope, the variable is a call to a UDR.

The DEFINE statement does not have a FUNCTION keyword. Use the PROCEDURE keyword, whether you are calling a user-defined procedure or a user-defined function. ♦

Defining a variable of PROCEDURE type indicates that in the current statement scope, the variable is not a call to a built-in function. For example, the following statement defines `length` as an SPL routine, not as the built-in LENGTH function:

```
DEFINE length PROCEDURE;
.
.
.
LET x = length (a,b,c)
```

This definition disables the built-in LENGTH function within the scope of the statement block. You would use such a definition if you had already created a user-defined routine with the name `length`.

If you create an SPL routine with the same name as an aggregate function (SUM, MAX, MIN, AVG, COUNT) or with the name `extend`, you must qualify the routine name with the owner name.

Declaring Variables for BYTE and TEXT Data

The keyword REFERENCES indicates that the variable does not contain a BYTE or TEXT value but is a pointer to the BYTE or TEXT value. Use the variable as though it holds the data.

The following example defines a local BYTE variable:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE use_byte()
  DEFINE i INT;
  DEFINE l_byte REFERENCES BYTE;
END PROCEDURE --use_byte
```

If you pass a variable of `BYTE` or `TEXT` data type to an SPL routine, the data is passed to the database server and stored in the root `dbspace` or `dbspaces` that the `DBSPACETEMP` environment variable specifies, if it is set. You do not need to know the location or name of the file that holds the data. `BYTE` or `TEXT` manipulation requires only the name of the `BYTE` or `TEXT` variable as it is defined in the routine.

EXIT

Use the EXIT statement to stop the execution of a FOR, WHILE, or FOREACH loop.

Syntax

```
EXIT _____ ; |
           |_____|
           |  FOR  |
           |_____|
           |  WHILE  |
           |_____|
           |  FOREACH  |
```

Usage

The EXIT statement causes the innermost loop of the indicated type (FOR, WHILE, or FOREACH) to terminate. Execution resumes at the first statement outside the loop.

If the EXIT statement cannot find the identified loop, it fails.

If the EXIT statement is used outside all loops, it generates errors.

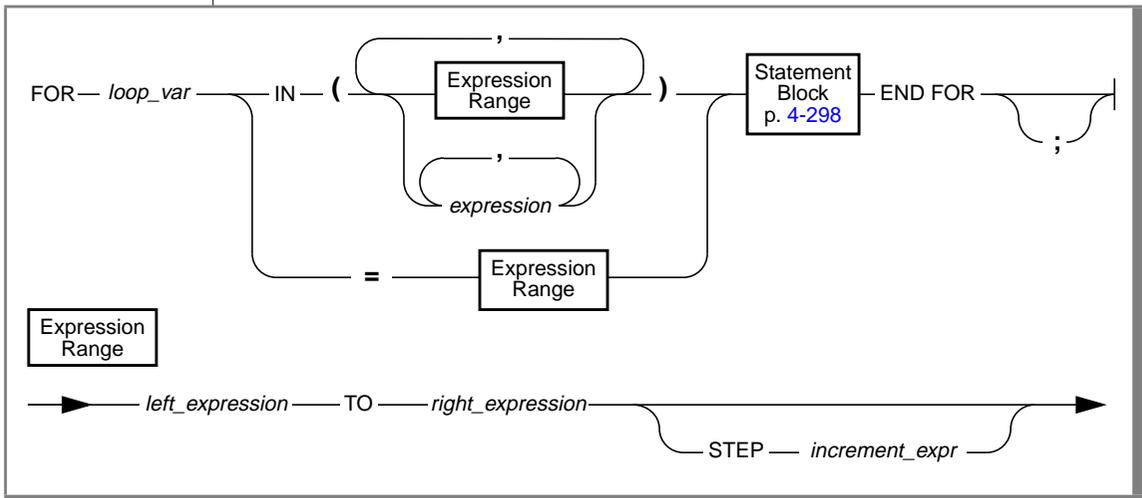
The following example uses an EXIT FOR statement. In the FOR loop, when *j* becomes 6, the IF condition *i* = 5 in the WHILE loop is true. The FOR loop stops executing, and the SPL procedure continues at the next statement outside the FOR loop (in this case, the END PROCEDURE statement). In this example, the procedure ends when *j* equals 6.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE ex_cont_ex()  
  DEFINE i,s,j, INT;  
  
  FOR j = 1 TO 20  
    IF j > 10 THEN  
      CONTINUE FOR;  
    END IF  
  
    LET i,s = j,0;  
    WHILE i > 0  
      LET i = i -1;  
      IF i = 5 THEN  
        EXIT FOR;  
      END IF  
    END WHILE  
  END FOR  
END PROCEDURE
```

FOR

Use the FOR statement to initiate a controlled (definite) loop when you want to guarantee termination of the loop. The FOR statement uses expressions or range operators to establish a finite number of iterations for a loop.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>expression</i>	Numeric or character value against which <i>loop_var</i> is compared to determine if the loop should be executed	The data type of <i>expression</i> must match the data type of <i>loop_var</i> . You can use the output of a SELECT statement as an <i>expression</i> .	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>increment_expr</i>	Positive or negative value by which <i>loop_var</i> is incremented The default is +1 or -1, depending on <i>left_expression</i> and <i>right_expression</i> .	The increment expression cannot evaluate to 0.	Expression, p. 4-73

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>left_expression</i>	Starting expression of a range	The value of <i>left_expression</i> must match the data type of <i>loop_var</i> . It must be either INT or SMALLINT.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>loop_var</i>	Value of this variable determines how many times the loop executes	You must have already defined this variable, and the variable must be valid within this statement block. If you are using <i>loop_var</i> with a range of values and the TO keyword, you must define <i>loop_var</i> explicitly as either INT or SMALLINT.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>right_expression</i>	Ending expression in the range The size of <i>right_expression</i> relative to <i>left_expression</i> determines if the range is stepped through positively or negatively.	The value of <i>right_expression</i> must match the data type of <i>loop_var</i> . It must be either INT or SMALLINT.	Expression, p. 4-73

(2 of 2)

Usage

The database server computes all expressions before the FOR statement executes. If one or more of the expressions are variables, and their values change during the loop, the change has no effect on the iterations of the loop.

The FOR loop terminates when *loop_var* is equal to the values of each element in the expression list or range in succession or when it encounters an EXIT FOR statement.

The database server generates an error if an assignment within the body of the FOR statement attempts to modify the value of *loop_var*.

Using the TO Keyword to Define a Range

The TO keyword implies a range operator. The range is defined by *left_expression* and *right_expression*, and the STEP *increment_expr* option implicitly sets the number of increments. If you use the TO keyword, *loop_var* must be an INT or SMALLINT data type. The following example shows two equivalent FOR statements. Each uses the TO keyword to define a range. The first statement uses the IN keyword, and the second statement uses an equal sign (=). Each statement causes the loop to execute five times.

```
FOR index_var IN (12 TO 21 STEP 2)
  -- statement block
END FOR

FOR index_var = 12 TO 21 STEP 2
  -- statement block
END FOR
```

If you omit the STEP option, the database server gives *increment_expr* the value of -1 if *right_expression* is less than *left_expression*, or +1 if *right_expression* is more than *left_expression*. If *increment_expr* is specified, it must be negative if *right_expression* is less than *left_expression*, or positive if *right_expression* is more than *left_expression*. The two statements in the following example are equivalent. In the first statement, the STEP increment is explicit. In the second statement, the STEP increment is implicitly 1.

```
FOR index IN (12 TO 21 STEP 1)
  -- statement block
END FOR

FOR index = 12 TO 21
  -- statement block
END FOR
```

The database server initializes the value of *loop_var* to the value of *left_expression*. In subsequent iterations, the server adds *increment_expr* to the value of *loop_var* and checks *increment_expr* to determine whether the value of *loop_var* is still between *left_expression* and *right_expression*. If so, the next iteration occurs. Otherwise, an exit from the loop takes place. Or, if you specify another range, the variable takes on the value of the first element in the next range.

Specifying Two or More Ranges in a Single FOR Statement

The following example shows a statement that traverses a loop forward and backward and uses different increment values for each direction:

```
FOR index_var IN (15 to 21 STEP 2, 21 to 15 STEP -3)
  -- statement body
END FOR
```

Using an Expression List as the Range

The database server initializes the value of *loop_var* to the value of the first expression specified. In subsequent iterations, *loop_var* takes on the value of the next expression. When the server has evaluated the last expression in the list and used it, the loop stops.

The expressions in the IN list do not have to be numeric values, as long as you do not use range operators in the IN list. The following example uses a character expression list:

```
FOR c IN ('hello', (SELECT name FROM t), 'world', v1, v2)
  INSERT INTO t VALUES (c);
END FOR
```

The following FOR statement shows the use of a numeric expression list:

```
FOR index IN (15,16,17,18,19,20,21)
  -- statement block
END FOR
```

Mixing Range and Expression Lists in the Same FOR Statement

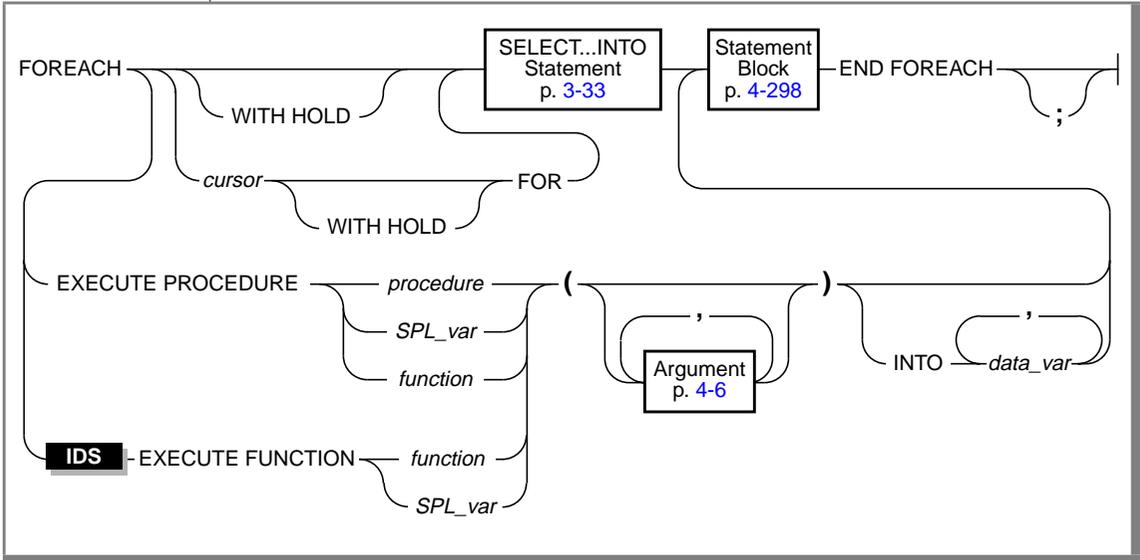
If *loop_var* is an INT or SMALLINT value, you can mix ranges and expression lists in the same FOR statement. The following example shows a mixture that uses an integer variable. Values in the expression list include the value that is returned from a SELECT statement, a sum of an integer variable and a constant, the values that are returned from an SPL function named **p_get_int**, and integer constants.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE for_ex ()
  DEFINE i, j INT;
  LET j = 10;
  FOR i IN (1 TO 20, (SELECT c1 FROM tab WHERE id = 1),
  j+20 to j-20, p_get_int(99),98,90 to 80 step -2)
    INSERT INTO tab VALUES (i);
  END FOR
END PROCEDURE
```

FOREACH

Use a FOREACH loop to select and manipulate more than one row.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>cursor</i>	Identifier that you supply as a name for the FOREACH loop	Each cursor name within a routine must be unique.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>data_var</i>	Name of an SPL variable in the calling SPL routine that will receive the value or values the called function returns	The data type of <i>data_var</i> must be appropriate for the value that is being returned.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>function</i>	Name of the SPL function you want to execute	The function must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

(1 of 2)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>procedure</i>	Name of the SPL procedure you want to execute	The procedure must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>SPL_var</i>	Name of an SPL variable in the calling SPL routine that contains the name of a routine to be executed	The data type of <i>SPL_var</i> must be CHAR, VARCHAR, NCHAR, or NVARCHAR.	Identifier, p. 4-205

(2 of 2)

Usage

A FOREACH loop is the procedural equivalent of using a cursor. When a FOREACH statement executes, the database server takes the following actions:

1. It declares and implicitly opens a cursor.
2. It obtains the first row from the query that is contained within the FOREACH loop, or it obtains the first set of values from the called routine.
3. It assigns to each variable in the variable list the value of the corresponding value from the active set that the SELECT statement or the called routine creates.
4. It executes the statement block.
5. It fetches the next row from the SELECT statement or called routine on each iteration, and it repeats steps 3 and 4.
6. It terminates the loop when it finds no more rows that satisfy the SELECT statement or called routine. It closes the implicit cursor when the loop terminates.

Because the statement block can contain additional FOREACH statements, cursors can be nested. No limit exists to the number of cursors that can be nested.

An SPL routine that returns more than one row, collection element, or set of values is called a cursor function. An SPL routine that returns only one row or value is a noncursor function.

The following SPL procedure illustrates FOREACH statements with a SELECT...INTO clause, with an explicitly named cursor, and with a procedure call:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE foreach_ex()
  DEFINE i, j INT;

  FOREACH SELECT c1 INTO i FROM tab ORDER BY 1
    INSERT INTO tab2 VALUES (i);
  END FOREACH

  FOREACH cur1 FOR SELECT c2, c3 INTO i, j FROM tab
    IF j > 100 THEN
      DELETE FROM tab WHERE CURRENT OF cur1;
      CONTINUE FOREACH;
    END IF
    UPDATE tab SET c2 = c2 + 10 WHERE CURRENT OF cur1;
  END FOREACH

  FOREACH EXECUTE PROCEDURE bar(10,20) INTO i
    INSERT INTO tab2 VALUES (i);
  END FOREACH
END PROCEDURE; -- foreach_ex
```

A select cursor is closed when any of the following situations occur:

- The cursor returns no further rows.
- The cursor is a select cursor without a HOLD specification, and a transaction completes using COMMIT or ROLLBACK statements.
- An EXIT statement executes, which transfers control out of the FOREACH statement.
- An exception occurs that is not trapped inside the body of the FOREACH statement. (See [“ON EXCEPTION” on page 3-45.](#))
- A cursor in the calling routine that is executing this cursor routine (within a FOREACH loop) closes for any reason.

Using a SELECT...INTO Statement

As indicated in the diagram for “FOREACH” on page 3-30, not all clauses and options of the SELECT statement are available for you to use in a FOREACH statement.

The SELECT statement in the FOREACH statement must include the INTO clause. It can also include UNION and ORDER BY clauses, but it cannot use the INTO TEMP clause. For a complete description of SELECT syntax and usage, see “SELECT” on page 634.

The type and count of each variable in the variable list must match each value that the SELECT...INTO statement returns.

Using Hold Cursors

The WITH HOLD keyword specifies that the cursor should remain open when a transaction closes (is committed or rolled back).

Updating or Deleting Rows Identified by Cursor Name

Use the WHERE CURRENT OF *cursor* clause to update or delete the current row of *cursor*.

IDS

Using Collection Variables

The FOREACH statement allows you to declare a cursor for an SPL collection variable. Such a cursor is called a *collection cursor*. You use a collection variable to access the elements of a collection (SET, MULTISSET, LIST) column. Use a cursor when you want to access one or more elements in a collection variable.

Restrictions

When you use a collection cursor to fetch individual elements from a collection variable the FOREACH statement has the following restrictions:

- It cannot contain the WITH HOLD keywords.
- It must contain a restricted select statement within the FOREACH loop.

In addition, the SELECT statement that you associate with the collection cursor has the following restrictions:

- Its general structure is SELECT... INTO... FROM TABLE. The statement selects one element at a time from a collection variable named after the TABLE keyword into another variable called an *element variable*.
- It cannot contain an expression in the select list.
- It cannot include the following clauses or options: WHERE, GROUP BY, ORDER BY, HAVING, INTO TEMP, and WITH REOPTIMIZATION.
- The data type of the element variable must be the same as the element type of the collection.
- The data type of the element variable can be any opaque, distinct, or collection data type, or any built-in data type except SERIAL, SERIAL8, TEXT, BYTE, CLOB or BLOB.
- If the collection contains opaque, distinct, built-in, or collection types, the select list must be an asterisk (*).
- If the collection contains row types, the select list can be a list of one or more field names.

Examples

The following excerpt from an SPL routine shows how to fill a collection variable and then how to use a cursor to access individual elements:

```

DEFINE a SMALLINT;
DEFINE b SET(SMALLINT NOT NULL);

SELECT numbers INTO b FROM table1
   WHERE id = 207;

FOREACH cursor1 FOR
   SELECT * INTO a FROM TABLE(b);
.
.
.
END FOREACH;

```

In this example, the SELECT statement selects one element at a time from the collection variable **b** into the element variable **a**. The select list is an asterisk, because the collection variable **b** contains a collection of built-in types. The variable **b** is used with the TABLE keyword as a Collection Derived Table. For more information, see [“Collection Derived Table” on page 4-9](#).

The next example also shows how to fill a collection variable and then how to use a cursor to access individual elements. This example, however, uses a list of row type fields in its select list.

```

.
.
.
DEFINE employees employee_t;
DEFINE n VARCHAR(30);
DEFINE s INTEGER;

SELECT emp_list into employees FROM dept_table
      WHERE dept_no = 1057;

FOREACH cursor1 FOR
      SELECT name,salary
      INTO n,s FROM TABLE( employees ) AS e;
.
.
.
END FOREACH;
.
.
.

```

In this example, the collection variable **employees** contains a collection of row types. Each row type contains the fields **name** and **salary**. The collection query selects one name and salary combination at a time, placing **name** into **n** and **salary** into **s**. The AS keyword names **e** as an alias for the collection derived table **employees**. The alias exists as long as the SELECT statement executes.

Modifying Elements in a Collection Variable

To update an element of a collection, you must first declare a cursor with the FOREACH statement. Then, within the FOREACH loop, select elements one at a time from the collection variable, using the collection variable as a collection derived table in a SELECT query.

When the cursor is positioned on the element to be updated, you can use the WHERE CURRENT OF clause, as follows:

- The UPDATE statement with the WHERE CURRENT OF clause updates the value in the current element of the collection variable.
- The DELETE statement with the WHERE CURRENT OF clause deletes the current element from the collection variable.

Calling a UDR in the FOREACH Loop

In general, use the following guidelines for calling another UDR from an SPL routine:

- To call a user-defined procedure, use EXECUTE PROCEDURE *procedure name*.
- To call a user-defined function, use EXECUTE FUNCTION *function name* (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE *function name* if the user-defined function was created with the CREATE PROCEDURE statement).

XPS

In Extended Parallel Server, you must use EXECUTE PROCEDURE. Extended Parallel Server does not support the EXECUTE FUNCTION statement. ♦

IDS

In Dynamic Server, if you use EXECUTE PROCEDURE, the database server looks first for a user-defined procedure of the name you specify. If it finds the procedure, the server executes it. If it does not find the procedure, it looks for a user-defined function of the same name to execute. If the database server finds neither a function nor a procedure, it issues an error message.

If you use EXECUTE FUNCTION, the database server looks for a user-defined function of the name you specify. If it does not find a function of that name, the server issues an error message. ♦

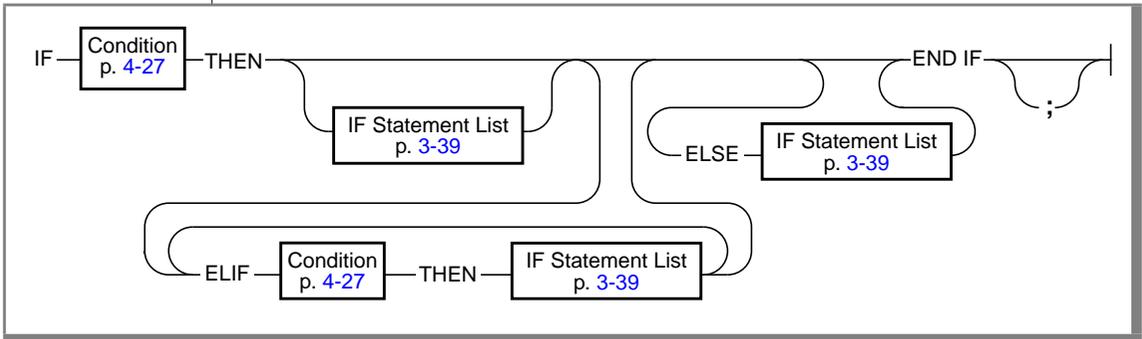
A called SPL function can return zero (0) or more values or rows.

The type and count of each variable in the variable list must match each value that the function returns.

IF

Use an IF statement to create a branch within an SPL routine.

Syntax



Usage

The condition that the IF clause states is evaluated. If the result is true, the statements that follow the THEN keyword execute. If the result is false, and an ELIF clause exists, the statements that follow the ELIF clause execute. If no ELIF clause exists, or if the condition in the ELIF clause is not true, the statements that follow the ELIF keyword execute.

In the following example, the SPL function uses an IF statement with both an ELIF clause and an ELSE clause. The IF statement compares two strings and displays a 1 to indicate that the first string comes before the second string alphabetically, or a -1 if the first string comes after the second string alphabetically. If the strings are the same, a zero (0) is returned.

```
CREATE FUNCTION str_compare (str1 CHAR(20), str2 CHAR(20))
  RETURNING INT;
  DEFINE result INT;

  IF str1 > str2 THEN
    LET result =1;
  ELIF str2 > str1 THEN
    :LET result = -1;
  ELSE
    LET result = 0;
  END IF
  RETURN result;
END FUNCTION -- str_compare
```

ELIF Clause

Use the ELIF clause to specify one or more additional conditions to evaluate.

If you specify an ELIF clause, and the IF condition is false, the ELIF condition is evaluated. If the ELIF condition is true, the statements that follow the ELIF clause execute.

ELSE Clause

The ELSE clause executes if no true previous condition exists in the IF clause or any of the ELIF clauses.

Conditions in an IF Statement

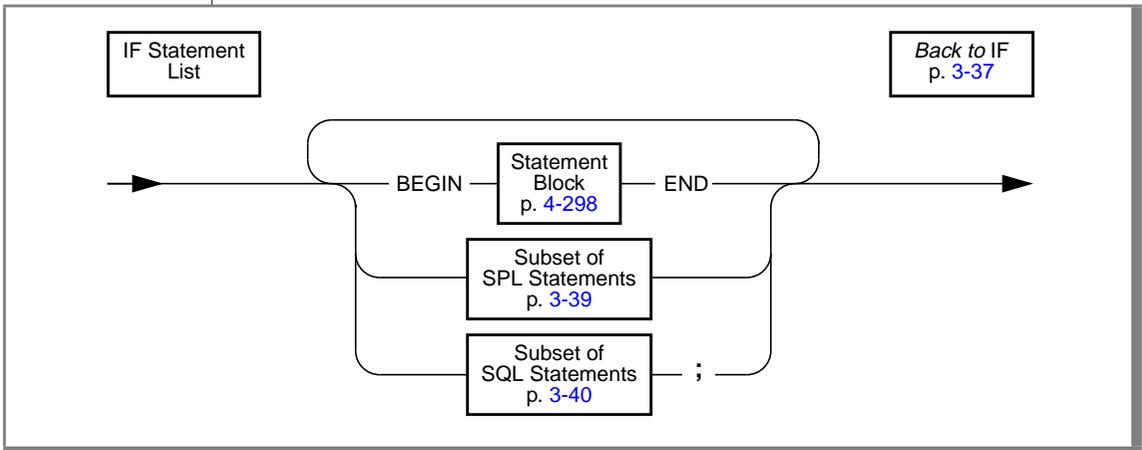
Conditions in an IF statement are evaluated in the same way as conditions in a WHILE statement.

If any expression that the condition contains evaluates to null, the condition automatically becomes untrue. Consider the following points:

1. If the expression x evaluates to null, then x is not true by definition. Furthermore, $\text{not}(x)$ is also *not* true.
2. IS NULL is the sole operator that can yield true for x . That is, x IS NULL is true, and x IS NOT NULL is not true.

An expression within the condition that has an UNKNOWN value (due to the use of an uninitialized variable) causes an immediate error. The statement terminates and raises an exception.

IF Statement List



Subset of SPL Statements Allowed in the IF Statement List

You can use any of the following SPL statements in the IF statement list:

CALL	LET
CONTINUE	RAISE EXCEPTION
EXIT	RETURN
FOR	SYSTEM
FOREACH	TRACE
IF	WHILE

The preceding diagram for the “[IF Statement List](#)” refers to this section.

SQL Statements Not Allowed in an IF Statement

You can use any SQL statement in the IF statement list except those in the following list:

ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR	FREE
CLOSE DATABASE	GET DESCRIPTOR
CONNECT	GET DIAGNOSTICS
CREATE DATABASE	INFO
CREATE PROCEDURE	LOAD
DATABASE	OPEN
DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR	OUTPUT
DECLARE	PREPARE
DESCRIBE	PUT
DISCONNECT	SET CONNECTION
EXECUTE	SET DESCRIPTOR
EXECUTE IMMEDIATE	UNLOAD
FETCH	WHENEVER
FLUSH	

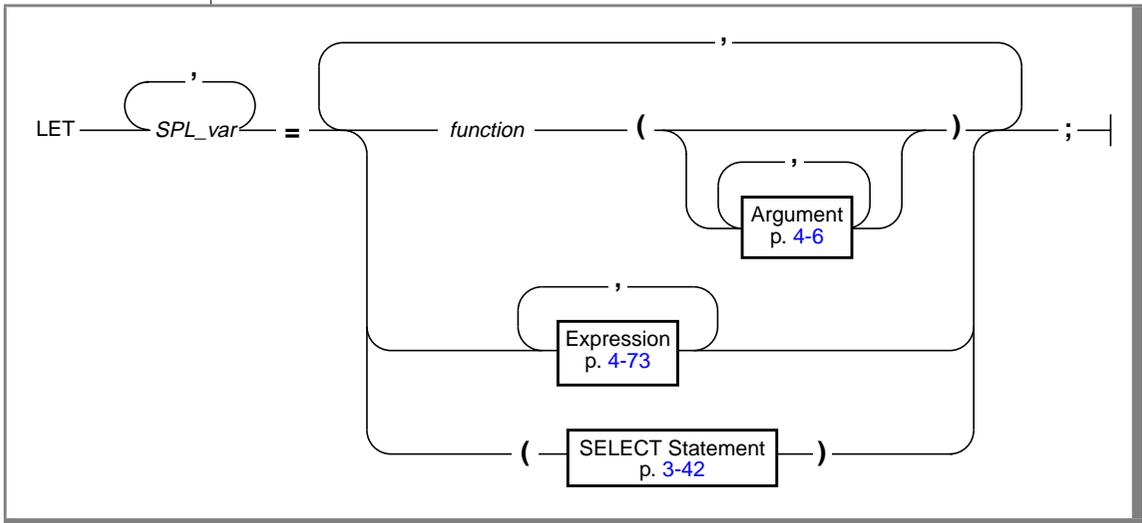
You can use a SELECT statement only if you use the INTO TEMP clause to put the results of the SELECT statement into a temporary table.

The diagram for the [“IF Statement List”](#) on page 3-39 refers to this section.

LET

Use the LET statement to assign values to variables or to call a user-defined function from an SPL routine and assign the return value or values to variables.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>function</i>	Name of the SPL function you want to call	The function must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>SPL_var</i>	SPL variable that receives the value the function returns or is set to the result of the expression	The SPL variable must be defined and must be valid in the statement block.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Usage

If you assign a value to a single variable, it is called a *simple assignment*; if you assign values to two or more variables, it is called a *compound assignment*.

You can also assign the value of an expression to a variable. At run time, the value of the SPL expression is computed first. The resulting value is cast to the data type of *variable*, if possible, and the assignment occurs. If conversion is not possible, an error occurs, and the value of *variable name* is undefined.

A compound assignment assigns multiple expressions to multiple variables. The data types of expressions in the expression list does not need to match the data types of the corresponding variables in the variable list, because the database server automatically converts the data types. (For a detailed discussion of casting, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).)

The following example shows several LET statements that assign values to SPL variables:

```
LET a    = c + d ;
LET a,b  = c,d  ;
LET expire_dt = end_dt + 7 UNITS DAY;
LET name = 'Brunhilda';
LET sname = DBSERVERNAME;
LET this_day = TODAY;
```

You cannot use multiple values to operate on other values. For example, the following statement is illegal:

```
LET a,b = (c,d) + (10,15); -- ILLEGAL EXPRESSION
```

Using a SELECT Statement in a LET Statement

The diagram for “LET” on page 3-41 refers to this section.

The examples in this section use a SELECT statement in a LET statement. You can use a SELECT statement to assign values to one or more variables on the left side of the equals (=) operator, as the following example shows:

```
LET a,b = (SELECT c1,c2 FROM t WHERE id = 1);
LET a,b,c = (SELECT c1,c2 FROM t WHERE id = 1), 15;
```

You cannot use a SELECT statement to make multiple values operate on other values. The following example is illegal:

```
LET a,b = (SELECT c1,c2 FROM t) + (10,15); -- ILLEGAL CODE
```

Because a LET statement is equivalent to a SELECT...INTO statement, the two statements in the following example have the same results: a=c and b=d:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE proof()
  DEFINE a, b, c, d INT;
  LET a,b = (SELECT c1,c2 FROM t WHERE id = 1);
  SELECT c1, c2 INTO c, d FROM t WHERE id = 1
END PROCEDURE
```

If the SELECT statement returns more than one row, you must enclose the SELECT statement in a FOREACH loop.

For a complete description of SELECT syntax and usage, see [“SELECT” on page 2-634](#).

Calling a Function in a LET Statement

You can call a user-defined function in a LET statement and assign the return values to an SPL variable. The SPL variable receives the returned values from the called function.

An SPL function can return multiple values (that is, values from multiple columns in the same row) into a list of variable names. In other words, the function can have multiple values in its RETURN statement and the LET statement can have multiple variables to receive the returned values.

When you call the function, you must specify all the necessary arguments to the function unless the arguments of the function have default values. If you name one of the parameters in the called function, with syntax such as **name = 'smith'**, you must name all of the parameters.

An SPL function that selects and returns more than one row must be enclosed in a FOREACH loop.

The following two example show valid LET statements.

```
LET a, b, c = func1(name = 'grok', age = 17);
LET a, b, c = 7, func2('orange', 'green');
```

The following LET statement is not legal, because it tries to add the output of two functions and then assign the sum to two variables, *a* and *b*. You can easily split this LET statement into two legal LET statements.

```
LET a, b = func1() + func2(); -- ILLEGAL CODE
```

A function called in a LET statement can have an argument of COLLECTION, SET, MULTiset, or LIST. You can assign the value returned by the function to a variable, for example:

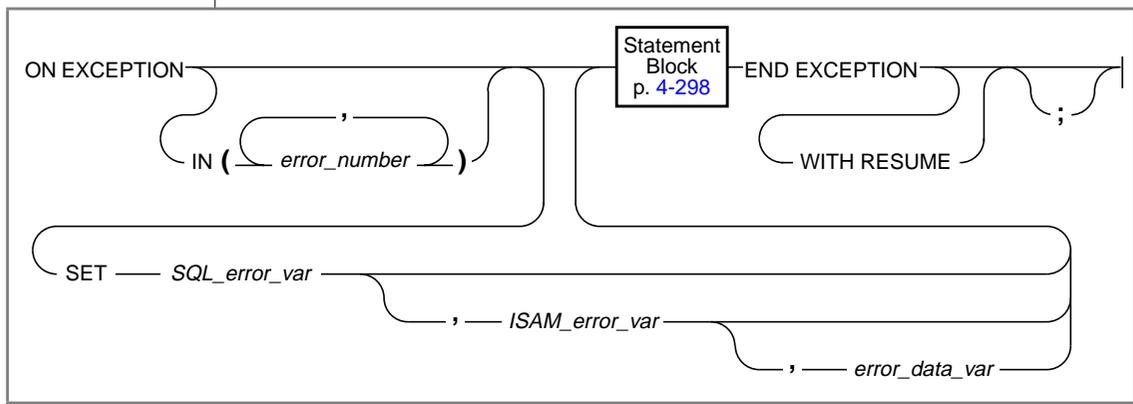
```
LET d = function1(collection1);  
LET a = function2(set1);
```

In the first statement, the SPL function **function1** accepts **collection1** (that is, any collection data type) as an argument and returns its value to the variable **d**. In the second statement, the SPL function **function2** accepts **set1** as an argument and returns a value to the variable **a**.

ON EXCEPTION

Use the ON EXCEPTION statement to specify the actions that are taken for a particular error or a set of errors.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>error_data_var</i>	SPL variable that contains a string returned by an SQL error or a user-defined exception	Must be a character data type to receive the error information. Must be valid in the current statement block.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>error_number</i>	SQL error number, or an error number created by a RAISE EXCEPTION statement, that is to be trapped	Must be of integer data type. Must be valid in the current statement block.	Literal number, p. 4-237
<i>ISAM_error_var</i>	Variable that receives the ISAM error number of the exception raised	Must be of integer data type. Must be valid in the current statement block.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>SQL_error_var</i>	Variable that receives the SQL error number of the exception raised	Must be a character data type. Must be valid in the current statement block.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Usage

The ON EXCEPTION statement, together with the RAISE EXCEPTION statement, provides an error-trapping and error-recovery mechanism for SPL. The ON EXCEPTION statement defines a list of errors that you want to trap as the SPL routine executes and specifies the action (within the statement block) to take when the trap is triggered. If the IN clause is omitted, all errors are trapped.

You can use more than one ON EXCEPTION statement within a given statement block.

The scope of an ON EXCEPTION statement is the statement block that follows the ON EXCEPTION statement and all the statement blocks that are nested within that following statement block.

The exceptions that are trapped can be either system- or user-defined.

When an exception is trapped, the error status is cleared.

If you specify a variable to receive an ISAM error, but no accompanying ISAM error exists, a zero (0) returns to the variable. If you specify a variable to receive the returned error text, but none exists, an empty string goes into the variable.

An ON EXCEPTION statement does not work in a UDR that is called by a trigger.

Placement of the ON EXCEPTION Statement

ON EXCEPTION is a declarative statement, not an executable statement. For this reason, you must use the ON EXCEPTION statement before any executable statement and after any DEFINE statement in an SPL routine.

The following example shows the correct placement of an ON EXCEPTION statement. The **add_salesperson** function inserts a set of values into a table. If the table does not exist, it is created, and the values are inserted. The function also returns the total number of rows in the table after the insert occurs.

```
CREATE FUNCTION add_salesperson(last CHAR(15),
                               first CHAR(15))
  RETURNING INT;
DEFINE x INT;
ON EXCEPTION IN (-206) -- If no table was found, create one
  CREATE TABLE emp_list
    (lname CHAR(15),fname CHAR(15), tele CHAR(12));
  INSERT INTO emp_list VALUES -- and insert values
    (last, first, '800-555-1234');
END EXCEPTION WITH RESUME
INSERT INTO emp_list VALUES (last, first, '800-555-1234')
LET x = SELECT count(*) FROM emp_list;
RETURN x;
END FUNCTION
```

When an error occurs, the database server searches for the last declaration of the ON EXCEPTION statement, which traps the particular error code. The ON EXCEPTION statement can have the error number in the IN clause or have no IN clause. If the database server finds no pertinent ON EXCEPTION statement, the error code passes back to the caller (the SPL routine, application, or interactive user), and execution aborts.

The following example uses two ON EXCEPTION statements with the same error number so that error code 691 can be trapped in two levels of nesting:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE delete_cust (cnum INT)
  ON EXCEPTION IN (-691) -- children exist
  BEGIN -- Begin-end is necessary so that other DELETES
    -- don't get caught in here.
    ON EXCEPTION IN (-691)
      DELETE FROM another_child WHERE num = cnum;
      DELETE FROM orders WHERE customer_num = cnum;
    END EXCEPTION -- for 691

    DELETE FROM orders WHERE customer_num = cnum;
  END

  DELETE FROM cust_calls WHERE customer_num = cnum;
  DELETE FROM customer WHERE customer_num = cnum;
END EXCEPTION
DELETE FROM customer WHERE customer_num = cnum;
END PROCEDURE
```

Using the IN Clause to Trap Specific Exceptions

A trap is triggered if either the SQL error code or the ISAM error code matches an exception code in the list of error numbers. The search through the list begins from the left and stops with the first match.

You can use a combination of an ON EXCEPTION statement without an IN clause and one or more ON EXCEPTION statements with an IN clause to set up default trapping. When an error occurs, the database server searches for the last declaration of the ON EXCEPTION statement that traps the particular error code.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE ex_test ()
  DEFINE error_num INT;
  .
  .
  .
  ON EXCEPTION
  SET error_num
  -- action C
  END EXCEPTION

  ON EXCEPTION IN (-300)
  -- action B
  END EXCEPTION
  ON EXCEPTION IN (-210, -211, -212)
  SET error_num
  -- action A
  END EXCEPTION
  .
  .
  .
```

A summary of the sequence of statements in the previous example would be:

1. Test for an error.
2. If error -210, -211, or -212 occurs, take action A.
3. If error -300 occurs, take action B.
4. If any other error occurs, take action C.

Receiving Error Information in the SET Clause

If you use the SET clause, when an exception occurs, the SQL error code and (optionally) the ISAM error code are inserted into the variables that are specified in the SET clause. If you provided an *error_data_var*, any error text that the database server returns is put into the *error_data_var*. Error text includes information such as the offending table or column name.

Forcing Continuation of the Routine

The first example in “[Placement of the ON EXCEPTION Statement](#)” on [page 3-46](#) uses the WITH RESUME keyword to indicate that after the statement block in the ON EXCEPTION statement executes, execution is to continue at the `LET x = SELECT COUNT(*) FROM emp_list` statement, which is the line following the line that raised the error. For this function, the result is that the count of salespeople names occurs even if the error occurred.

Continuing Execution After an Exception Occurs

If you do not include the WITH RESUME keyword in your ON EXCEPTION statement, the next statement that executes after an exception occurs depends on the placement of the ON EXCEPTION statement, as the following scenarios describe:

- If the ON EXCEPTION statement is inside a statement block with a BEGIN and an END keyword, execution resumes with the first statement (if any) after that BEGIN...END block. That is, it resumes after the scope of the ON EXCEPTION statement.
- If the ON EXCEPTION statement is inside a loop (FOR, WHILE, FOREACH), the rest of the loop is skipped, and execution resumes with the next iteration of the loop.
- If no statement or block, but only the SPL routine, contains the ON EXCEPTION statement, the routine executes a RETURN statement with no arguments to terminate. That is, the routine returns a successful status and no values.

Errors Within the ON EXCEPTION Statement Block

To prevent an infinite loop, if an error occurs during execution of the statement block of an error trap, the search for another trap does not include the current trap.

RAISE EXCEPTION

Use the RAISE EXCEPTION statement to simulate the generation of an error.

Syntax

```
RAISE EXCEPTION — SQL_error_var — , — ISAM_error_var — , — error_text_var — ;
```

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>error_text_var</i>	SPL variable that contains the error text	The SPL variable must be a character data type and must be valid in the statement block.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>ISAM_error_var</i>	Variable or expression that represents an ISAM error number The default value is 0.	The variable or expression must evaluate to a SMALLINT value. You can place a minus sign before the error number.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>SQL_error_var</i>	Variable or expression that represents an SQL error number	The variable or expression must evaluate to a SMALLINT value. You can place a minus sign before the error number.	Expression, p. 4-73

Usage

Use the RAISE EXCEPTION statement to simulate an error or to generate an error with a custom message. An ON EXCEPTION statement can trap the generated error.

If you omit the *ISAM_error_var* parameter, the database server sets the ISAM error code to zero (0) when the exception is raised. If you want to use the *error_text_var* parameter but not specify a value for *ISAM_error_var*, you can specify zero (0) as the value of *ISAM_error_var*.

The statement can raise either system-generated exceptions or user-generated exceptions.

For example, the following statement raises the error number -208 and inserts the text `a missing file` into the variable of the system-generated error message:

```
RAISE EXCEPTION -208, 0, 'a missing file';
```

Special Error Numbers

The special error number -746 allows you to produce a customized message. For example, the following statement raises the error number -746 and returns the quoted text:

```
RAISE EXCEPTION -746, 0, 'You broke the rules';
```

In the following example, a negative value for `alpha` raises exception -746 and provides a specific message describing the problem. The code should contain an `ON EXCEPTION` statement that traps for an exception of -746.

```
FOREACH SELECT c1 INTO alpha FROM sometable
  IF alpha < 0 THEN
    RAISE EXCEPTION -746, 0, 'a < 0 found' -- emergency exit
  END IF
END FOREACH
```

When the SPL routine executes and the `IF` condition is met, the database server returns the following error:

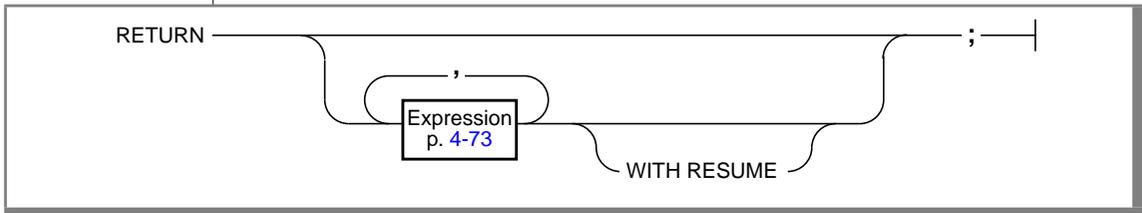
```
-746: a < 0 found.
```

For more information about the scope and compatibility of exceptions, see [“ON EXCEPTION” on page 3-45](#).

RETURN

Use the RETURN statement to designate the values that the SPL function returns to the calling module.

Syntax



Usage

The RETURN statement returns zero (0) or more values to the calling process.

IDS

In Dynamic Server, for backward compatibility, you can use this statement inside a CREATE PROCEDURE statement to create an SPL function. However, Informix recommends that you only use this statement inside the CREATE FUNCTION statement to create new user-defined functions. ♦

All the RETURN statements in the SPL function must be consistent with the RETURNING clause of the CREATE FUNCTION (or CREATE PROCEDURE) statement, which defines the function.

The number and data type of values in the RETURN statement, if any, must match in number and data type the data types that are listed in the RETURNING clause of the CREATE FUNCTION (or CREATE PROCEDURE) statement. You can choose to return no values even if you specify one or more values in the RETURNING clause. If you use a RETURN statement without any expressions, but the calling UDR or program expects one or more return values, it is equivalent to returning the expected number of null values to the calling program.

In the following example, the SPL function includes two acceptable RETURN statements. A program that calls this function should check if no values are returned and act accordingly.

```
CREATE FUNCTION two_returns (stockno INT)
  RETURNING CHAR (15);
  DEFINE des CHAR(15);
  ON EXCEPTION (-272)
  -- if user doesn't have select privs...
    RETURN;
  -- return no values.
  END EXCEPTION;
  SELECT DISTINCT descript INTO des FROM stock
    WHERE stocknum = stockno;
  RETURN des;
END FUNCTION
```

A RETURN statement without any expressions exits only if the SPL function is declared not to return values; otherwise it returns nulls.

IDS

In an SPL program, you can use an external function as an expression in a RETURN statement provided that the external function is not an iterator function. An *iterator function* is an external function that returns one or more rows of data and therefore requires a cursor to execute. ♦

WITH RESUME Keyword

If you use the WITH RESUME keyword, after the RETURN statement executes the next invocation of the SPL function (upon the next FETCH OR FOREACH statement) starts from the statement that follows the RETURN statement. If a function executes a RETURN WITH RESUME statement, the calling UDR or program must call the function within a FOREACH loop.

E/C

If an SPL routine executes a RETURN WITH RESUME statement, a FETCH statement in an ESQL/C application can call it. ♦

RETURN

The following example shows a cursor function that another UDR can call. After the RETURN I WITH RESUME statement returns each value to the calling UDR or program, the next line of **sequence** executes the next time **sequence** is called. If **backwards** equals zero (0), no value is returned to the calling UDR or program, and execution of **sequence** stops.

```
CREATE FUNCTION sequence (limit INT, backwards INT)
  RETURNING INT;
  DEFINE i INT;

  FOR i IN (1 TO limit)
    RETURN i WITH RESUME;
  END FOR

  IF backwards = 0 THEN
    RETURN;
  END IF

  FOR i IN (limit TO 1 STEP -1)
    RETURN i WITH RESUME;
  END IF
END FUNCTION -- sequence
```

SYSTEM

Use the SYSTEM statement to make an operating-system command run from within an SPL routine.

Syntax

```
SYSTEM expression ;
```

SPL_var

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>expression</i>	Any expression that is a user-executable operating-system command	You cannot specify that the command run in the background.	Operating-system dependent
<i>SPL_var</i>	An SPL variable that contains a valid operating-system command	The SPL variable must be of CHAR, VARCHAR, NCHAR, NVARCHAR, or CHARACTER VARYING data type.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Usage

If the supplied expression is not a character expression, *expression* is converted to a character expression before the operating-system command is made. The complete character expression passes to the operating system and executes as an operating-system command.

The operating-system command that the SYSTEM statement specifies cannot run in the background. The database server waits for the operating system to complete execution of the command before it continues to the next statement in the SPL routine.

Your SPL routine cannot use a value or values that the command returns.

If the operating-system command fails (that is, if the operating system returns a nonzero status for the command), an exception is raised that contains the returned operating-system status as the ISAM error code and an appropriate SQL error code.

In DBA- and owner-privileged SPL routines that contain SYSTEM statements, the operating-system command runs with the permissions of the user who is executing the routine.

Specifying Environment Variables in SYSTEM Statements

When the operating-system command that SYSTEM specifies is executed, no guarantee exists that the environment variables that the user application set are passed to the operating system. To ensure that the environment variables that the application set are carried forward to the operating system, enter a SYSTEM command that sets the environment variables before you enter the SYSTEM command that causes the operating-system command to execute.

For information on the operating-system commands that set environment variables, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

UNIX

Examples of the SYSTEM Statement on UNIX

The following example shows a SYSTEM statement in an SPL routine. The SYSTEM statement in this example causes the UNIX operating system to send a mail message to the system administrator.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE sensitive_update()
:
:
:
LET mailcall = 'mail headhoncho < alert';
-- code that evaluates if operator tries to execute a
-- certain command, then sends email to system
-- administrator
SYSTEM mailcall;
:
:
:
END PROCEDURE; -- sensitive_update
```

You can use a double-pipe symbol (| |) to concatenate expressions with a **SYSTEM** statement, as the following example shows:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE sensitive_update2()
  DEFINE user1 char(15);
  DEFINE user2 char(15);
  LET user1 = 'joe';
  LET user2 = 'mary';
  .
  .
  .
  -- code that evaluates if operator tries to execute a
  -- certain command, then sends email to system
  -- administrator
  SYSTEM 'mail -s violation' ||user1 || ' ' || user2
        || '<violation_file';
  .
  .
  .
END PROCEDURE; --sensitive_update2
```

WIN NT

Example of the SYSTEM Statement on Windows NT

The following example shows a **SYSTEM** statement in an SPL routine. The first **SYSTEM** statement in this routine causes the Windows NT operating system to send an error message to a temporary file and to put the message in a system log that is sorted alphabetically. The second **SYSTEM** statement causes the operating system to delete the temporary file.

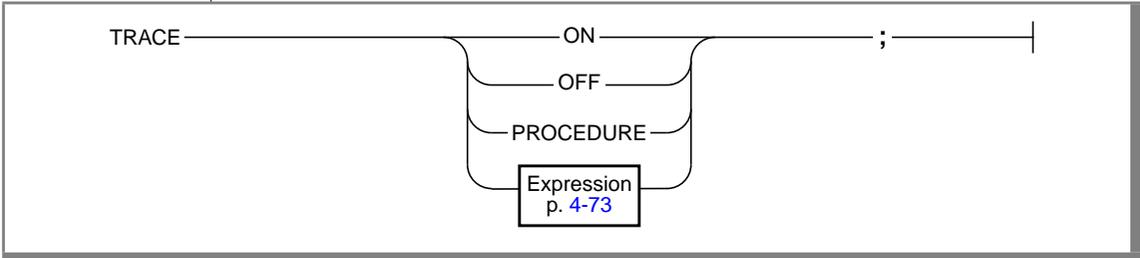
```
CREATE PROCEDURE test_proc()
  .
  .
  .
  SYSTEM 'type errormess101 > %tmp%tmpfile.txt |
        sort >> %SystemRoot%systemlog.txt';
  SYSTEM 'del %tmp%tmpfile.txt';
  .
  .
  .
END PROCEDURE; --test_proc
```

The expressions that follow the **SYSTEM** statements in this example contain two variables, **%tmp%** and **%SystemRoot%**. Both of these variables are defined by the Windows NT operating system.

TRACE

Use the TRACE statement to control the generation of debugging output.

Syntax



Usage

The TRACE statement generates output that is sent to the file that the SET DEBUG FILE TO statement specifies.

Tracing prints the current values of the following items:

- Variables
- Routine arguments
- Return values
- SQL error codes
- ISAM error codes

The output of each executed TRACE statement appears on a separate line.

If you use the TRACE statement before you specify a DEBUG file to contain the output, an error is generated.

Any routine that the SPL routine calls inherits the trace state. That is, a called routine assumes the same trace state (ON, OFF, or PROCEDURE) as the calling routine. The called routine can set its own trace state, but that state is not passed back to the calling routine.

A routine that is executed on a remote database server does not inherit the trace state.

TRACE ON

If you specify the keyword ON, all statements are traced. The values of variables (in expressions or otherwise) are printed before they are used. To turn tracing ON implies tracing both routine calls and statements in the body of the routine.

TRACE OFF

If you specify the keyword OFF, all tracing is turned off.

TRACE PROCEDURE

If you specify the keyword PROCEDURE, only the routine calls and return values, but not the body of the routine, are traced.

The TRACE statement does not have ROUTINE or FUNCTION keywords. Therefore, use the TRACE PROCEDURE keywords even if the SPL routine you want to trace is a function.

Displaying Expressions

You can use the TRACE statement with a quoted string or an expression to display values or comments in the output file. If the expression is not a literal expression, the expression is evaluated before it is written to the output file.

You can use the TRACE statement with an expression even if you used a TRACE OFF statement earlier in a routine. However, you must first use the SET DEBUG statement to establish a trace-output file.

The following example uses a TRACE statement with an expression after using a TRACE OFF statement. The example uses UNIX file-naming conventions.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE tracing ()
  DEFINE i INT;
BEGIN
  ON EXCEPTION IN (1)
  END EXCEPTION; -- do nothing
  SET DEBUG FILE TO '/tmp/foo.trace';
  TRACE OFF;
  TRACE 'Forloop starts';
  FOR i IN (1 TO 1000)
    BEGIN
      TRACE 'FOREACH starts';
      FOREACH SELECT...INTO a FROM t
        IF <some condition> THEN
          RAISE EXCEPTION 1 -- emergency exit
        END IF
      END FOREACH
    -- return some value
  END
END FOR

-- do something
END;
END PROCEDURE
```

Example Showing Different Forms of TRACE

The following example shows several different forms of the TRACE statement. The example uses Windows NT file-naming conventions.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE testproc()
  DEFINE i INT;

  SET DEBUG FILE TO 'C:\tmp\test.trace';
  TRACE OFF;
  TRACE 'Entering foo';

  TRACE PROCEDURE;
  LET i = test2();

  TRACE ON;
  LET i = i + 1;

  TRACE OFF;
  TRACE 'i+1 = ' || i+1;
  TRACE 'Exiting testproc';

  SET DEBUG FILE TO 'C:\tmp\test2.trace';

END PROCEDURE
```

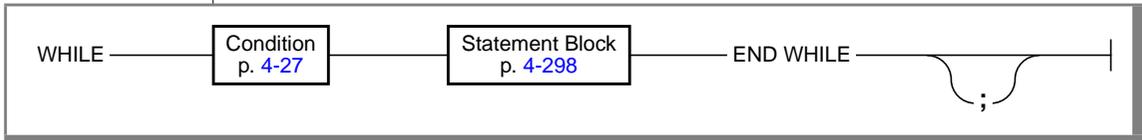
Looking at the Traced Output

To see the traced output, use an editor or utility to display or read the contents of the file.

WHILE

Use the WHILE statement to establish a loop with variable end conditions.

Syntax



Usage

The condition is evaluated once at the beginning of the loop, and subsequently at the beginning of each iteration. The statement block is executed as long as the condition remains true. The loop terminates when the condition evaluates to not true.

If any expression within the condition evaluates to null, the condition automatically becomes not true unless you are explicitly testing for the IS NULL condition.

If an expression within the condition has an unknown value because it references uninitialized SPL variables, an immediate error results. In this case, the loop terminates, and an exception is raised.

Example of WHILE Loops in an SPL Routine

The following example illustrates the use of WHILE loops in an SPL routine. In the SPL procedure, **simp_while**, the first WHILE loop executes a DELETE statement. The second WHILE loop executes an INSERT statement and increments the value of an SPL variable.

```
CREATE PROCEDURE simp_while()
  DEFINE i INT;
  WHILE EXISTS (SELECT fname FROM customer
               WHERE customer_num > 400)
    DELETE FROM customer WHERE id_2 = 2;
  END WHILE;

  LET i = 1;
  WHILE i < 10
    INSERT INTO tab_2 VALUES (i);
    LET i = i + 1;
  END WHILE;
END PROCEDURE
```


Segments

In This Chapter	4-3
Argument	4-6
Collection Derived Table	4-9
Condition	4-27
Database Name.	4-47
Database Object Name	4-50
Data Type.	4-53
DATETIME Field Qualifier	4-71
Expression	4-73
External Routine Reference.	4-202
Identifier	4-205
INTERVAL Field Qualifier	4-223
Jar Name	4-226
Literal Collection	4-227
Literal DATETIME	4-231
Literal INTERVAL.	4-234
Literal Number	4-237
Literal Row	4-239
Optimizer Directives	4-244
Owner Name	4-257
Quoted String	4-260
Relational Operator	4-265
Return Clause	4-270
Routine Modifier	4-274
Routine Parameter List	4-286
Shared-Object Filename	4-292
Specific Name	4-296
Statement Block	4-298

In This Chapter

Segments are language elements, such as table names and expressions, that occur repeatedly in the syntax diagrams for SQL and SPL statements. These language elements are discussed separately in this section for the sake of clarity, ease of use, and comprehensive treatment.

Whenever a segment occurs within the syntax diagram for an SQL or SPL statement, the diagram references the description of the segment in this section.

Scope of Segment Descriptions

The description of each segment includes the following information:

- A brief introduction that explains the purpose of the segment
- A syntax diagram that shows how to enter the segment correctly
- A syntax table that explains each input parameter in the syntax diagram
- Rules of usage, including examples that illustrate these rules

If a segment consists of multiple parts, the segment description provides the same set of information for each part. Some segment descriptions conclude with references to related information in this and other manuals.

Use of Segment Descriptions

The syntax diagram within each segment description is not a stand-alone diagram. Instead it is a subdiagram that is subordinate to the syntax diagram for an SQL or SPL statement.

Syntax diagrams for SQL or SPL statements refer to segment descriptions in two ways:

- A subdiagram-reference box in the syntax diagram for a statement can refer to a segment name and the page number on which the segment description begins.
- The syntax column of the table beneath a syntax diagram can refer to a segment name and the page number on which the segment description begins.

First look up the syntax for the statement, and then turn to the segment description to find out the complete syntax for the segment.

For example, if you want to enter a CREATE VIEW statement that includes a database name and database server name in the view name, first look up the syntax diagram for the CREATE VIEW statement. The table beneath the diagram refers to the Database Object Name segment for the syntax for *view*.

The subdiagram for the Database Object Name segment shows you how to qualify the simple name of a view with the name of the database or with the name of both the database and the database server. Use the syntax in the subdiagram to enter a CREATE VIEW statement that includes the database name and database server name in the view name. The following example creates the **name_only** view in the **sales** database on the **boston** database server:

```
CREATE VIEW sales@boston:name_only AS
SELECT customer_num, fname, lname FROM customer
```

Segments in This Section

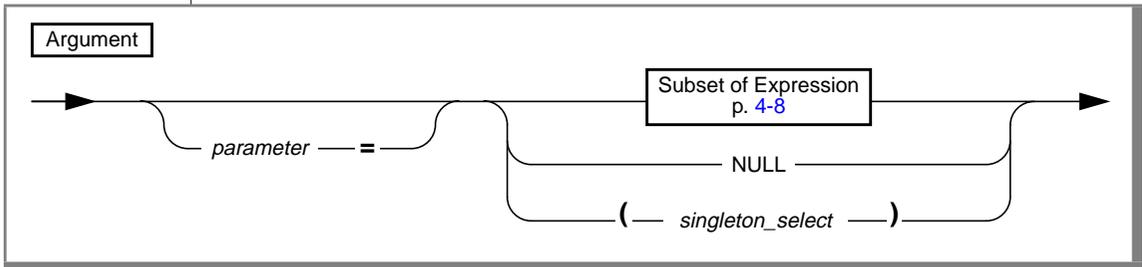
This section describes the following segments.

Argument	Literal DATETIME
Collection Derived Table	Literal INTERVAL
Collection Subquery	Literal Number
Condition	Literal Row
Database Name	Optimizer Directives
Database Object Name	Owner Name
Data Type	Quoted String
DATETIME Field Qualifier	Relational Operator
Expression	Return Clause
External Routine Reference	Routine Modifier
Identifier	Routine Parameter List
INTERVAL Field Qualifier	Shared-Object Filename
Jar Name	Specific Name
Literal Collection	Statement Block

Argument

Use the Argument segment to pass a specific value to a routine parameter. Use the Argument segment wherever you see a reference to an argument in a syntax diagram.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>parameter</i>	Name of a routine parameter for which you supply an argument	The parameter name must match the parameter name that you specified in a corresponding CREATE FUNCTION or CREATE PROCEDURE statement.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>singleton_select</i>	Embedded query that returns exactly one value of the proper data type and length	This can be any SELECT statement as long as it returns only one value.	SELECT, p. 2-634

Usage

A parameter list for a user-defined routine (UDR) is defined in the CREATE PROCEDURE or CREATE FUNCTION statement. If the UDR has a parameter list, you can enter arguments when you execute the UDR. An argument is a specific data element that matches the data type of one of the parameters for the UDR.

When you execute a UDR, you can enter arguments in one of two ways:

- With a parameter name (in the form *parameter name = expression*), even if the arguments are not in the same order as the parameters
- With no parameter name, if the arguments are in the same order as the parameters

If you use a parameter name for one argument, you must use a parameter name for all the arguments.

In the following example, both statements are valid for a user-defined procedure that expects three character arguments, **t**, **d**, and **n**:

```
EXECUTE PROCEDURE add_col (t ='customer', d ='integer', n  
='newint');
```

```
EXECUTE PROCEDURE add_col ('customer','newint','integer') ;
```

Comparing Arguments to the Parameter List

When you create or register a UDR with `CREATE PROCEDURE` or `CREATE FUNCTION`, you specify a parameter list with the names and data types of the parameters the UDR expects.

If you attempt to execute a UDR with more arguments than the UDR expects, you receive an error.

If you execute a UDR with fewer arguments than the UDR expects, the arguments are said to be *missing*. The database server initializes missing arguments to their corresponding default values. This initialization occurs before the first executable statement in the body of the UDR.

If missing arguments do not have default values, the database server initializes the arguments to the value `UNDEFINED`. However, you cannot use a variable with a value of `UNDEFINED` within the UDR. If you do, the database server issues an error.

Subset of Expressions Allowed as an Argument

The diagram for [“Argument” on page 4-6](#) refers to this section.

You can use any expression as an argument, except an aggregate expression. If you use a subquery or function call, the subquery or function must return a single value of the appropriate data type and size. For a complete description of syntax and usage, see [“Expression” on page 4-73](#).

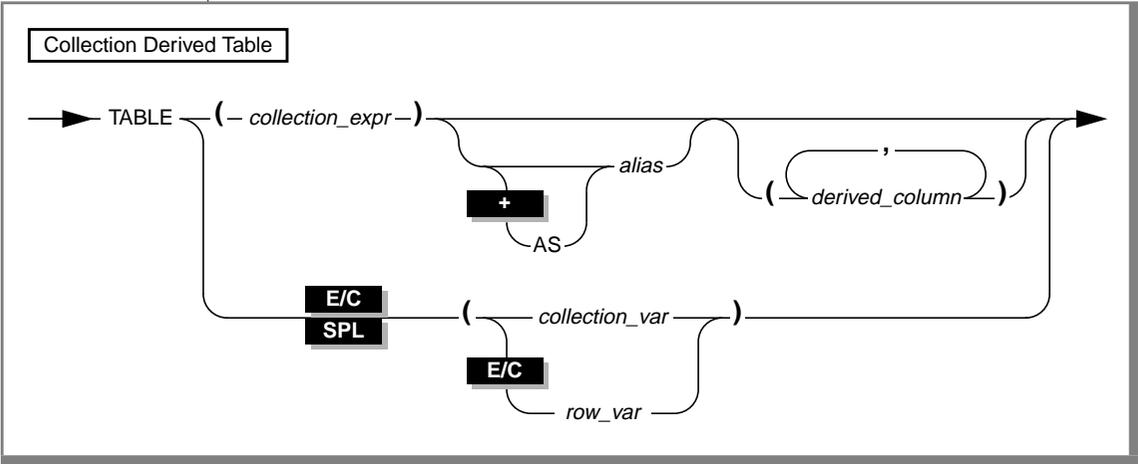
+
IDS

Collection Derived Table

Use the Collection Derived Table segment to:

- access the elements of a collection as you would the rows of a table.
- specify a collection variable to access instead of a table name.
- specify a row variable to access instead of a table name.

Syntax



Collection Derived Table

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>alias</i>	<p>Temporary name for a collection derived table within the scope of a SELECT statement</p> <p>If you do not assign an alias, the database server assigns an implementation-dependent alias name.</p>	<p>If you use a potentially ambiguous word as an alias, you must precede the alias with the keyword AS. For further information on this restriction, see “AS Keyword with Aliases” on page 2-653.</p>	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>collection_expr</i>	<p>Any expression that evaluates to a single collection</p> <p>For example, column references, scalar subquery, dotted expression, functions, operators (through overloading), collection subqueries, literal collections, collection constructors, cast functions, and so on.</p>	<p>See “Restrictions with the Collection-Expression Format” on page 4-11.</p>	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>collection_var</i>	<p>Name of a typed or untyped collection variable that holds the collection derived table</p>	<p>The variable must have been declared in an ESQL/C program or defined in an SPL routine.</p> <p>For more information, see the Informix ESQL/C Programmer’s Manual or DEFINE, respectively.</p>	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.
<i>derived_column</i>	<p>Temporary name for a derived column in a table</p> <p>If you do not assign a derived-column name, the behavior of the database server differs based on the data type of the elements in the underlying collection. For more information, see “Row Type of the Resulting Collection Derived Table” on page 4-13.</p>	<p>If the underlying collection is not a row type, you can specify only one derived-column name.</p>	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>row_var</i>	<p>Name of an ESQL/C row variable that holds the collection derived table</p>	<p>The variable must be declared as row variable in an ESQL/C program.</p> <p>For more information, see the Informix ESQL/C Programmer’s Manual.</p>	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

Usage

A *collection derived table* is a virtual table in which the values in the rows of the table are equivalent to the elements of a collection. In other words, a collection derived table appears as a table in an SQL statement.

The TABLE keyword table converts a collection into a virtual table. You can use the collection expression format to query a collection column or you can use the collection variable or row variable format to manipulate the data in a collection column.

Accessing a Collection Through a Virtual Table

When you use the collection expression format of the Collection Derived Table segment to access the elements of a collection, you can select elements of the collection directly through a virtual table. You can use this format only in the FROM clause of a SELECT statement. The FROM clause can be in either a query or a subquery.

With this format you can use joins, aggregates, WHERE clause, expressions, the ORDER BY clause and other operations not available to you when you use the collection-variable format. This format reduces the need for multiple cursors and temporary tables.

Restrictions with the Collection-Expression Format

When you uses the collection-expression format, certain restrictions apply:

- A collection derived table is read-only.
 - It cannot be the target of insert, update, or delete statements.
To perform insert, update, and delete operations you must use the collection-variable format.
 - It cannot be the underlying table of an updatable cursor or view.
- You cannot use the WITH ORDINALITY keywords to introduce a new column whose value is the ordinality of a row in the list expression.
- If the collection is a list, the resulting collection derived table does not preserve the order of the elements in the list.
- The underlying collection expression cannot evaluate to null.

- The collection expression cannot contain column references to tables that appear in the same FROM clause. That is, the collection derived table must be independent of other tables in the FROM clause.

For example, the following statement returns an error because the collection derived table, **table (parents.children)**, refers to the table **parents**, which is also referenced in the FROM clause:

```
SELECT COUNT(*)
FROM parents, TABLE(parents.children) c_table
WHERE parents.id = 1001
```

To counter this restriction, you might write a query that contains a subquery in the select list:

```
SELECT (SELECT COUNT(*)
        FROM TABLE(parents.children) c_table)
FROM parents
WHERE parents.id = 1001
```

E/C

Additional Restrictions that Apply to ESQL/C

In addition to the restrictions outlined in the previous section, the following restrictions apply when you use the collection-expression format with ESQL/C.

- You cannot use the format TABLE(?)

The type of the underlying collection variable must be determined statically. To counter this restriction, you can explicitly cast the variable to a typed collection type (SET, MULTISET, or LIST) that the database server recognizes. For example,

```
TABLE(CAST(? AS type))
```

- You cannot use the format TABLE(:hostvar)

To counter this restriction, you must explicitly cast the variable to a typed collection type (SET, MULTISET, or LIST) that the database server recognizes. For example

```
TABLE(CAST(:hostvar AS type))
```

- You cannot use the untyped collection-host variable, COLLECTION.

Row Type of the Resulting Collection Derived Table

Although a collection derived table appears to contain columns of individual data types, the resulting columns are, in fact, fields of a row type. The type of row type as well as the column name depends on several factors.

If the data type of the elements of the underlying collection expression is *type*, the database server determines the row type of the collection derived table by the following rules:

- If *type* is a row type, and no derived column list is specified, then the row type of the collection derived table is *type*.
- If *type* is a row type and a derived column list is specified, then the row type of the collection derived table is an unnamed row type whose column types are the same as those of *type* and whose column names are taken from the derived column list.
- If *type* is not a row type, the row type of the collection derived table is an unnamed row type that contains one column of *type*, and whose name is specified in the derived column list. If a name is not specified, the database server assigns an implementation-dependent name to the column.

The extended examples shown in the following table illustrate these rules. The table uses the following schema for its examples.

```
CREATE ROW TYPE person (name CHAR(255), id INT);
CREATE TABLE parents
(
  name CHAR(255),
  id INT,
  children LIST (person NOT NULL)
);
CREATE TABLE parents2
(
  name CHAR(255),
  id INT,
  children_ids LIST (INT NOT NULL)
);
```

Collection Derived Table

Type	Derived-Column List Specified	Resulting Row Type of the Collection Derived Table	Example
Row Type	No	<i>Type</i>	<pre>SELECT (SELECT c_table.name FROM TABLE(parents.children c_table WHERE c_table.id = 1002) FROM parents WHERE parents.id = 1001</pre> <p>In this example, the row type of <i>c_table</i> is <i>parents</i>.</p>
Row Type	Yes	Unnamed row type of which the column type is <i>Type</i> and the column name is the name provided in the derived-column list	<pre>SELECT (SELECT c_table.c_name FROM TABLE(parents.children) c_table(c._name, c_id) WHERE c_table.c_id = 1002) FROM parents WHERE parents.id = 1001</pre> <p>In this example, the row type of <i>c_table</i> is <i>row(c_name CHAR(255), c_id INT)</i>.</p>
Not a row type	No	Unnamed row type that contains one column of <i>Type</i> that is assigned an implementation-dependent name	<p>See the following example.</p> <p>Using the following example, if you do not specify <i>c_id</i>, the database server assigns a name to the derived column. Thus the row type of <i>c_table</i> is <i>row(server_defined_name INT)</i>.</p>
Not a row type	Yes	Unnamed row type that contains one column of <i>Type</i> whose name is the name provided in the derived-column list.	<pre>SELECT(SELECT c_table.c_id FROM TABLE(parents2.child_ids) c_table (c_id) WHERE c_table.c_id = 1002) FROM parents WHERE parents.id = 1001</pre> <p>In this example, the row type of <i>c_table</i> is <i>row(c_id INT)</i>.</p>

Example of a Collection Expression

The following example uses a collection expression to create a collection derived table:

```
CREATE TABLE wanted(person_id int);
CREATE FUNCTION wanted_person_count
(person_set SET(person NOT NULL))
RETURNS INT;
RETURN( SELECT COUNT (*)
FROM TABLE (person_set) c_table, wanted
WHERE c_table.id = wanted.person_id);
END FUNCTION;
```

Accessing a Collection Through a Collection Variable

When you use the collection-variable format of the Collection Derived Table segment, you use a host or program variable to access and manipulate the elements of a collection.

This format allows you to modify the contents of a variable as you would a table in the database and then update the actual table with the contents of the collection variable.

You can use the collection-variable format (the TABLE keyword preceding a collection variable) in place of the name of a table, synonym, or view name in the following SQL statements:

- The FROM clause of the SELECT statement to access an element of the collection variable
- The INTO clause of the INSERT statement to add a new element to the collection variable
- The DELETE statement to remove an element from the collection variable
- The UPDATE statement to modify an existing element in the collection variable
- The DECLARE statement to declare a select or insert cursor to access multiple elements of an ESQL/C collection-host variable.

SPL

- The FETCH statement to retrieve a single element from a collection-host variable that is associated with a select cursor.
- The PUT statement to retrieve a single element from a collection-host variable that is associated with an insert cursor. ♦
- The FOREACH statement to declare a cursor to access multiple elements of an SPL collection variable and to retrieve a single element from this collection variable. ♦

IDS

Using a Collection Variable to Manipulate Collection Elements

When you use data manipulation statements (SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE or DELETE) in conjunction with a collection variable you can modify one or more elements in a collection.

To modify elements in a collection, follow these general steps:

1. Create a collection variable in your SPL routine or ESQL/C program. For information on how to declare a collection variable in ESQL/C, see the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#). For information on how to define a collection variable in SPL, see ["DEFINE" on page 3-11](#).
2. In ESQL/C, allocate memory for the collection; see ["ALLOCATE COLLECTION" on page 2-6](#). ♦
3. Optionally, use a SELECT statement to select a collection column into the collection variable.

If the collection variable is an untyped COLLECTION variable, you must perform a SELECT from the collection column before you use the variable in the Collection Derived Table segment. The SELECT statement allows the database server to obtain the collection type.

E/C

4. Use the appropriate data manipulation statement with the Collection Derived-Table segment to add, delete, or update collection elements in the collection variable.

To insert more than one element or to update or delete a *particular* element or in the collection, you must use a cursor for the collection variable.

- For more information on how to use an update cursor with ESQL/C, see [“DECLARE” on page 2-349](#).
 - For more information on how to use an update cursor with SPL, see [“FOREACH” on page 3-30](#).
5. After the collection variable contains the correct elements, use an INSERT or UPDATE statement on the table or view that holds the actual collection column to save the changes that the collection variable holds.
 - With the UPDATE statement, specify the collection variable in the SET clause.
 - With the INSERT statement, specify the collection variable in the VALUES clause.

The collection variable stores the elements of the collection. However, it has no intrinsic connection with a database column. Once the collection variable contains the correct elements, you must then save the variable into the actual collection column of the table with either an INSERT or an UPDATE statement.

Example of Deleting from a Collection in ESQL/C

Suppose that the **set_col** column of a row in the **table1** table is defined as a SET and for one row contains the values {1, 8, 4, 5, 2}. The following ESQL/C code fragment uses an update cursor and a DELETE statement with a WHERE CURRENT OF clause to delete the element whose value is 4:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    client collection set(smallint not null) a_set;
    int an_int;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
...
EXEC SQL allocate collection :a_set;
EXEC SQL select set_col into :a_set from table1
    where int_col = 6;

EXEC SQL declare set_curs cursor for
    select * from table(:a_set)
    for update;

EXEC SQL open set_curs;
while (i < coll_size)
{
    EXEC SQL fetch set_curs into :an_int;
    if (an_int = 4)
    {
        EXEC SQL delete from table(:a_set)
            where current of set_curs;
        break;
    }
    i++;
}

EXEC SQL update table1 set set_col = :a_set
    where int_col = 6;

EXEC SQL deallocate collection :a_set;
EXEC SQL close set_curs;
EXEC SQL free set_curs;
```

After the DELETE statement executes, this collection variable contains the elements {1, 8, 5, 2}. The UPDATE statement at the end of this code fragment saves the modified collection into the **set_col** column of the database. Without this UPDATE statement, the collection column never has element 4 deleted.

For information on how to use collection-host variables in an ESQL/C program, see the discussion of complex data types in the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

Example of Deleting from a Collection

Suppose that the **set_col** column of a row in the **table1** table is defined as a SET and one row contains the values {1,8,4,5,2}. The following SPL code fragment uses a FOREACH loop and a DELETE statement with a WHERE CURRENT OF clause to delete the element whose value is 4:

```
CREATE_PROCEDURE test6()

    DEFINE a SMALLINT;
    DEFINE b SET(SMALLINT NOT NULL);

    SELECT set_col INTO b FROM table1
        WHERE id = 6;
        -- Select the set in one row from the table
        -- into a collection variable

    FOREACH cursor1 FOR
        SELECT * INTO a FROM TABLE(b);
        -- Select each element one at a time from
        -- the collection derived table b into a
    IF a = 4 THEN
        DELETE FROM TABLE(b)
            WHERE CURRENT OF cursor1;
        -- Delete the element if it has the value 4
        EXIT FOREACH;
    END IF;
END FOREACH;

    UPDATE table1 SET set_col = b
        WHERE id = 6;
        -- Update the base table with the new collection

END PROCEDURE;
```

This SPL routine defines two variables, **a** and **b**, each to hold a set of SMALLINT values. The first SELECT statement selects a SET column from one row of **table1** into **b**. Then, the routine declares a cursor that selects one element at a time from **b** into **a**. When the cursor is positioned on the element with the value 4, the DELETE statement deletes that element from **b**. Last, the UPDATE statement updates the row of **table1** with the new collection that is stored in **b**.

For information on how to use collection variables in an SPL routine, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#). ♦

Example of Updating a Collection

Suppose that the **set_col** column of a table called **table1** is defined as a SET and that it contains the values {1,8,4,5,2}. The following ESQL/C program changes the element whose value is 4 to a value of 10.

```
main
{
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
        int a;
        collection b;
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    EXEC SQL allocate collection :b;
    EXEC SQL select set_col into :b from table1
        where int_col = 6;

    EXEC SQL declare set_curs cursor for
        select * from table(:b)
        for update;

    EXEC SQL open set_curs;
    while (SQLCODE != SQLNOTFOUND)
    {
        EXEC SQL fetch set_curs into :a;
        if (a = 4)
        {
            EXEC SQL update table(:b)(x)
                set x = 10
                where current of set_curs;
            break;
        }
    }

    EXEC SQL update table1 set set_col = :b
        where int_col = 6;

    EXEC SQL deallocate collection :b;
    EXEC SQL close set_curs;
    EXEC SQL free set_curs;
}
```

After you execute this ESQL/C program, the **set_col** column in **table1** contains the values {1,8,10,5,2}.

This ESQL/C program defines two **collection** variables, **a** and **b**, and selects a SET from **table1** into **b**. The WHERE clause ensures that only one row is returned. Then, the program defines a collection cursor, which selects elements one at a time from **b** into **a**. When the program locates the element with the value 4, the first UPDATE statement changes that element value to 10 and exits the loop.

In the first UPDATE statement, **x** is a derived column name used to update the current element in the collection derived table. The second UPDATE statement updates the base table **table1** with the new collection. For information on how to use **collection** host variables in an ESQL/C program, see the discussion of complex data types in the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

Example of Inserting a Value into a Multiset Collection

Suppose the ESQL/C host variable **a_multiset** has the following declaration:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
      client collection multiset(integer not null) a_multiset;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
```

The following INSERT statement adds a new MULTiset element of 142,323 to **a_multiset**:

```
EXEC SQL allocate collection :a_multiset;
EXEC SQL select multiset_col into :a_multiset from table1
      where id = 107;
EXEC SQL insert into table(:a_multiset) values (142323);
EXEC SQL update table1 set multiset_col = :a_multiset
      where id = 107;

EXEC SQL deallocate collection :a_multiset;
```

When you insert elements into a client-collection variable, you cannot specify a SELECT statement or an EXECUTE FUNCTION statement in the VALUES clause of the INSERT. However, when you insert elements into a server-collection variable, the SELECT and EXECUTE FUNCTION statements are valid in the VALUES clause. For more information on client- and server-collection variables, see the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

Accessing a Nested Collection

If the element of the collection is itself a complex type (**collection** or **row** type), the collection is a *nested collection*. For example, suppose the ESQL/C collection variable, **a_set**, is a nested collection that is defined as follows:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    client collection set(list(integer not null)) a_set;
    client collection list(integer not null) a_list;
    int an_int;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
```

To access the elements (or fields) of a nested collection, use a collection or row variable that matches the element type (**a_list** and **an_int** in the preceding code fragment) and a select cursor.

Accessing a Row Variable

The TABLE keyword can make an ESQL/C **row** variable a collection derived table, that is, a row appears as a table in an SQL statement. For a **row** variable, you can think of the collection derived table as a table of one row, with each field of the row type being a column of the table row.

Use the TABLE keyword in place of the name of a table, synonym, or view name in the following SQL statements:

- The FROM clause of the SELECT statement to access a field of the row variable
- The UPDATE statement to modify an existing field in the row variable

The DELETE and INSERT statements do not support a row variable in the Collection Derived Table segment.

For example, suppose an ESQL/C host variable **a_row** has the following declaration:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    row(x int, y int, length float, width float) a_row;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
```

The following ESQL/C code fragment adds the fields in the **a_row** variable to the **row_col** column of the **tab_row** table:

```
EXEC SQL update table(:a_row)
    set x=0, y=0, length=10, width=20;
EXEC SQL update rectangles set rect = :a_row;
```

Related Information

Related statements: DECLARE, DELETE, DESCRIBE, FETCH, INSERT, PUT, SELECT, UPDATE, DEFINE, and FOREACH

For information on how to use collection variables in an SPL routine, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For information on how to use collection or row variables in an ESQL/C program, see the chapter on complex data types in the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).

Collection Subquery

You can use a collection subquery to create a multiset collection from the results of a subquery.

Syntax

Collection Subquery



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>singleton_select</i>	Subquery that returns exactly one row	The subquery cannot repeat the SELECT keyword. The subquery cannot contain either the FIRST or the ORDER BY clause.	SELECT , p. 2-634
<i>subquery</i>	Embedded query	The subquery cannot contain either the FIRST or the ORDER BY clause.	SELECT , p. 2-634

Usage

The following table indicates the significance of the keywords in the collection-subquery syntax.

Keywords	Purpose
MULTISET	Indicates a collection of elements with the following qualities: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ The collection can contain duplicate values. ■ Elements have no specific order associated with them.
SELECT ITEM	When you use the SELECT ITEM keywords, only one expression is allowed in the projection list. Do not repeat the SELECT keyword in the singleton subquery.

You can use a collection subquery in the following locations:

- The SELECT and WHERE clauses of the SELECT statement
- The VALUES clause of the INSERT statement
- The SET clause of the UPDATE statement
- Wherever you can use a collection expression (that is, any expression that evaluates to a single collection)
- As an argument passed to a user-defined routine

Restrictions

The following restrictions apply to a collection subquery:

- It cannot contain duplicate column (field) names in the select list
- It cannot contain aliases for table names in the select list
However, you can use aliases for column (field) names. See collection-subquery examples in [“Row Structure of Results from a Collection Subquery” on page 4-25](#).
- It is read-only.
- It cannot be opened twice.
- It cannot contain null values.
- It cannot contain syntax that attempts to seek within the subquery.

Row Structure of Results from a Collection Subquery

A collection subquery evaluates to a multiset of unnamed row types. The fields of the unnamed row type are elements in the projection list of the subquery.

The following table includes examples that access the schema created with the following statements:

```
CREATE ROW TYPE rt1 (a INT);
CREATE ROW TYPE rt2 (x int, y rt1);
CREATE TABLE tab1 (col1 rt1, col2 rt2);
CREATE TABLE tab2 OF TYPE rt1;
CREATE TABLE tab3 (a ROW(x INT));
```

Collection Derived Table

The following table includes possible collection subqueries and corresponding collections that result.

Collection Subquery	Resulting Collections
...MULTISET (SELECT * FROM tab1)...	MULTISET(ROW(col1 rt1, col2 rt2))
...MULTISET (SELECT col2.y FROM tab1)...	MULTISET(ROW(y rt1))
...MULTISET (SELECT * FROM tab2)...	MULTISET(ROW(a int))
...MULTISET(SELECT p FROM tab2 p)...	MULTISET(ROW(p rt1))
...MULTISET (SELECT * FROM tab3)...	MULTISET(ROW(a ROW(x int)))

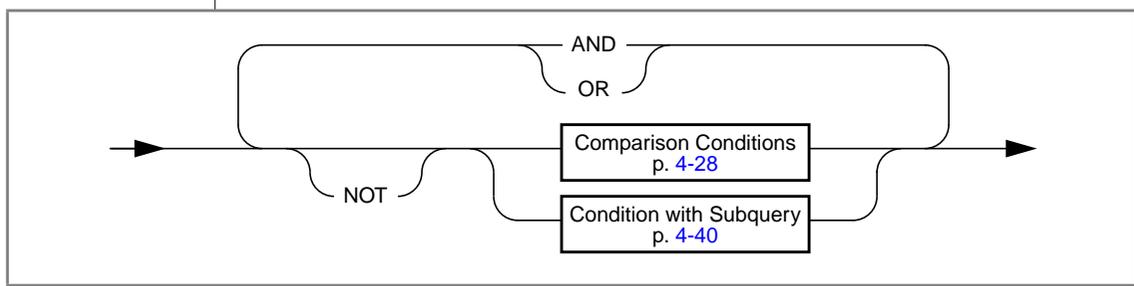
Example

```
SELECT f(MULTISET(select * FROM tab 1 WHERE tab1.x = t.y))
FROM t
WHERE t.name = 'john doe';
```

Condition

Use a condition to test data to determine whether it meets certain qualifications. Use the Condition segment wherever you see a reference to a condition in a syntax diagram.

Syntax



Usage

A condition is a collection of one or more search conditions, optionally connected by the logical operators AND or OR. Search conditions fall into the following categories:

- Comparison conditions (also called filters or Boolean expressions)
- Conditions with a subquery

Restrictions on a Condition

A condition can contain only an aggregate function if it is used in the HAVING clause of a SELECT statement or the HAVING clause of a subquery. You cannot use an aggregate function in a comparison condition that is part of a WHERE clause in a DELETE, SELECT, or UPDATE statement unless the aggregate is on a correlated column that originates from a parent query and the WHERE clause is within a subquery that is within a HAVING clause.

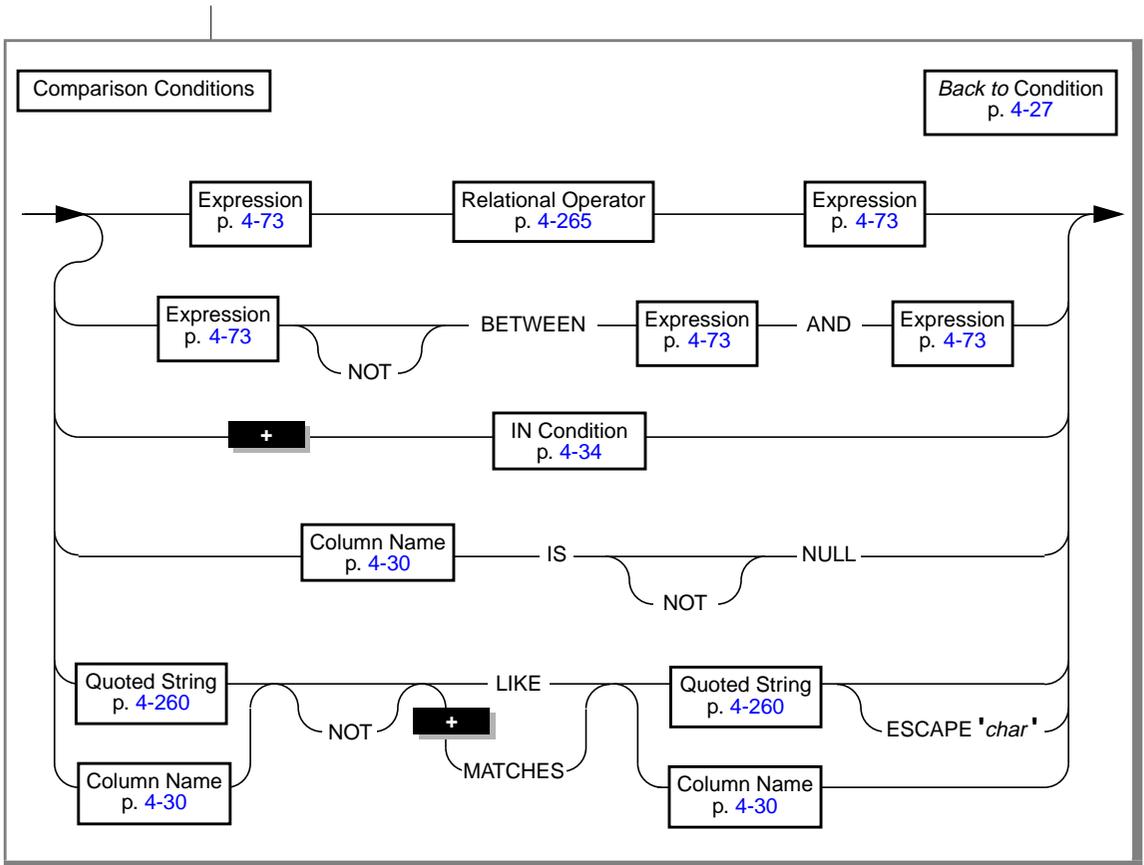
NOT Operator Option

If you preface a condition with the keyword NOT, the test is true only if the condition that NOT qualifies is false. If the condition that NOT qualifies is unknown (uses a null in the determination), the NOT operator has no effect. The following truth table shows the effect of NOT. The letter T represents a true condition, F represents a false condition, and a question mark (?) represents an unknown condition. Unknown values occur when part of an expression that uses an arithmetic operator is null.

NOT	
T	F
F	T
?	?

Comparison Conditions (Boolean Expressions)

Five kinds of comparison conditions exist: Relational Operator, BETWEEN, IN, IS NULL, and LIKE and MATCHES. Comparison conditions are often called Boolean expressions because they evaluate to a simple true or false result. Their syntax is summarized in the following diagram and explained in detail after the diagram.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>char</i>	A single ASCII character that is to be used as the escape character within the quoted string in a LIKE or MATCHES condition	See “ ESCAPE with LIKE ” on page 4-39 and “ ESCAPE with MATCHES ” on page 4-40.	Quoted String, p. 4-260

Refer to the following sections for more information on the use of the different types of comparison conditions:

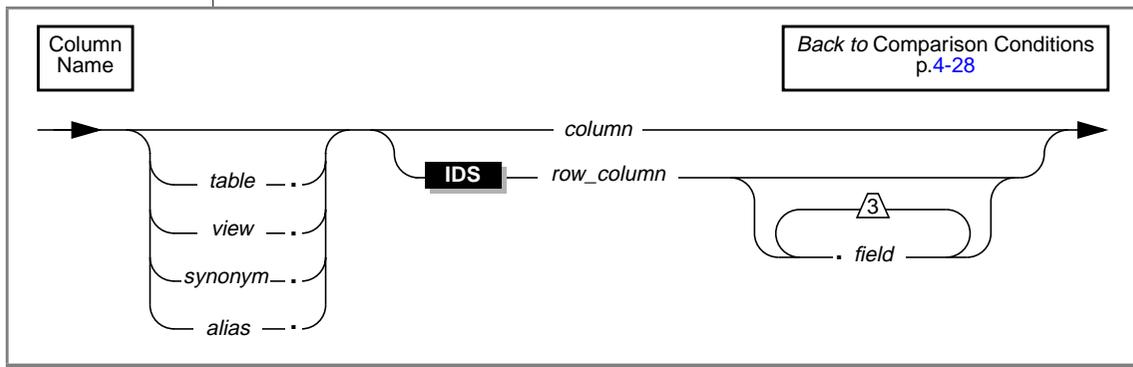
- For relational-operator conditions, refer to [“Relational-Operator Condition”](#) on page 4-32.
- For the BETWEEN condition, refer to [“BETWEEN Condition”](#) on page 4-33.
- For the IN condition, refer to [“IN Condition”](#) on page 4-34.
- For the IS NULL condition, refer to [“IS NULL Condition”](#) on page 4-36.
- For the LIKE and MATCHES condition, refer to [“LIKE and MATCHES Condition”](#) on page 4-36.

For a discussion of the different types of comparison conditions in the context of the SELECT statement, see [“Using a Condition in the WHERE Clause”](#) on page 2-661.



Warning: When you specify a date value in a comparison condition, make sure to specify 4 digits instead of 2 digits for the year. When you specify a 4-digit year, the **DBCENTURY** environment variable has no effect on how the database server interprets the comparison condition. When you specify a 2-digit year, the **DBCENTURY** environment variable can affect how the database server interprets the comparison condition, so the comparison condition might not work as you intended. For more information on the **DBCENTURY** environment variable, see the [“Informix Guide to SQL: Reference.”](#)

Column Name



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>alias</i>	Temporary alternative name for a table or view within the scope of a SELECT statement	You must have defined the alias in the FROM clause of the SELECT statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>column</i>	Name of a column that is used in an IS NULL condition or in a LIKE or MATCHES condition. See “IS NULL Condition” on page 4-36 and “LIKE and MATCHES Condition” on page 4-36 for more information on the meaning of <i>column name</i> in these conditions.	The column must exist in the specified table.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>field</i>	Name of the field that you want to compare in the row column	The field must be a component of the row type that <i>row-column name</i> or <i>field name</i> (for nested rows) specifies.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>row_column</i>	Name of the row column that you specify	The data type of the column must be a named row type or an unnamed row type.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>synonym</i>	Name of a view	The synonym must exist within the database.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of a table	The table must exist within the database.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>view</i>	Name of a synonym	The view must exist within the database.	Database Object Name, p.4-50

Quotation Marks in Conditions

When you compare a column expression with a constant expression in any type of comparison condition, observe the following rules:

- If the column has a numeric data type, do not surround the constant expression with quotation marks.
- If the column has a character data type, surround the constant expression with quotation marks.
- If the column has a date data type, surround the constant expression with quotation marks. Otherwise, you might get unexpected results.

The following example shows the correct use of quotation marks in comparison conditions. The **ship_instruct** column has a character data type. The **order_date** column has a date data type. The **ship_weight** column has a numeric data type.

```
SELECT * FROM orders
      WHERE ship_instruct = 'express'
      AND order_date > '05/01/98'
      AND ship_weight < 30
```

Relational-Operator Condition

Some relational-operator conditions are shown in the following examples:

```
city[1,3] = 'San'
o.order_date > '6/12/98'
WEEKDAY(paid_date) = WEEKDAY(CURRENT-31 UNITS day)
YEAR(ship_date) < YEAR (TODAY)
quantity <= 3
customer_num <> 105
customer_num != 105
```

If either expression is null for a row, the condition evaluates to false. For example, if the **paid_date** column has a null, you cannot use either of the following statements to retrieve that row:

```
SELECT customer_num, order_date FROM orders
      WHERE paid_date = ''

SELECT customer_num, order_date FROM orders
      WHERE NOT PAID !=''
```

An IS NULL condition finds a null value, as shown in the following example. The IS NULL condition is explained fully in [“IS NULL Condition”](#) on [page 4-36](#).

```
SELECT customer_num, order_date FROM orders
      WHERE paid_date IS NULL
```

BETWEEN Condition

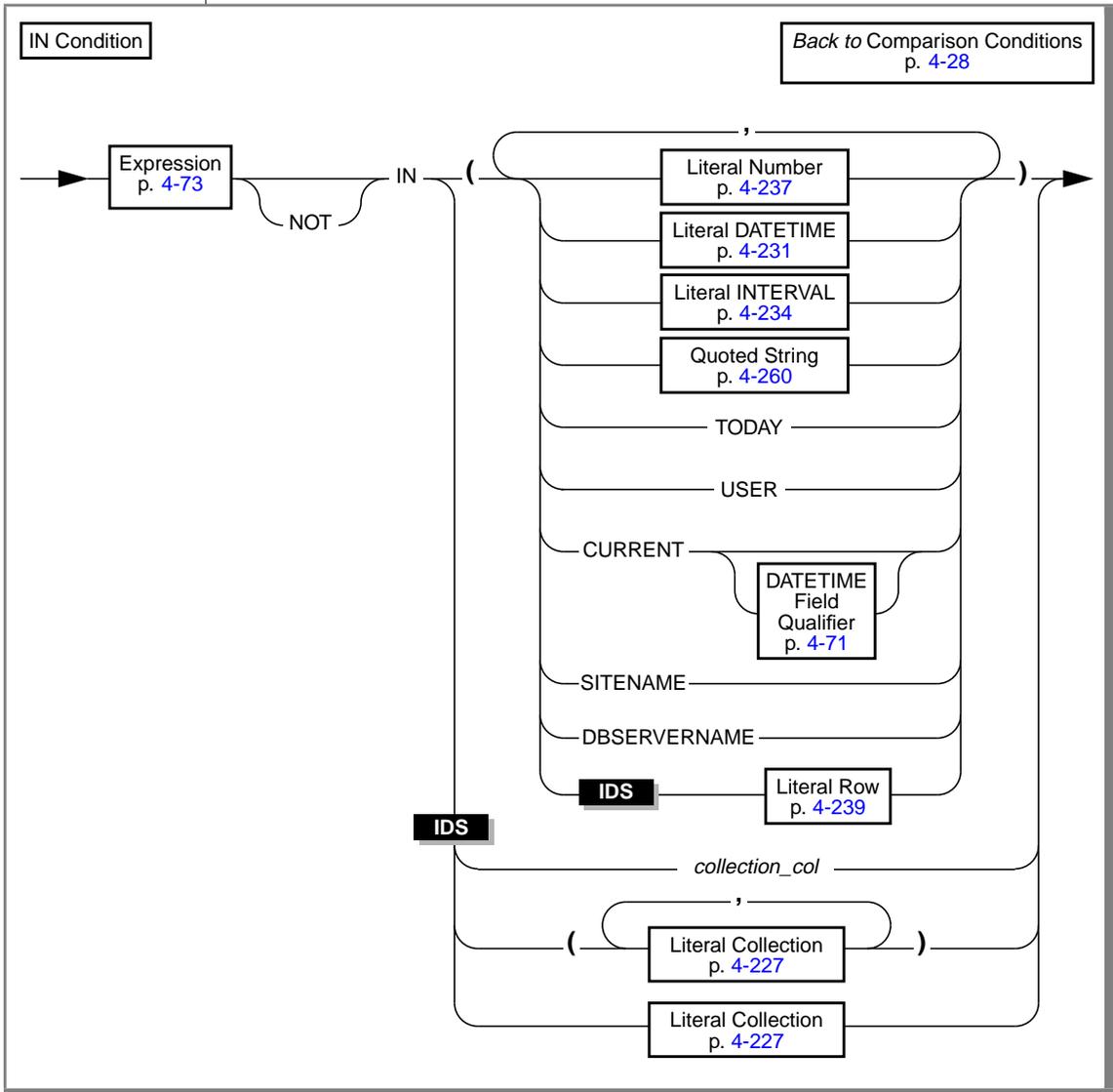
For a BETWEEN test to be true, the value of the expression on the left of the BETWEEN keyword must be in the inclusive range of the values of the two expressions on the right of the BETWEEN keyword. Null values do not satisfy the condition. You cannot use NULL for either expression that defines the range.

Some BETWEEN conditions are shown in the following examples:

```
order_date BETWEEN '6/1/97' and '9/7/97'  
zipcode NOT BETWEEN '94100' and '94199'  
EXTEND(call_dtime, DAY TO DAY) BETWEEN  
    (CURRENT - INTERVAL(7) DAY TO DAY) AND CURRENT  
lead_time BETWEEN INTERVAL (1) DAY TO DAY  
    AND INTERVAL (4) DAY TO DAY  
unit_price BETWEEN loprice AND hiprice
```

IN Condition

The IN condition is satisfied when the expression to the left of the word IN is included in the list of items.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>collection_col</i>	Name of a collection column that is used in an IN condition	The column must exist in the specified table.	Identifier, p. 4-205

The NOT option produces a search condition that is satisfied when the expression is not in the list of items. Null values do not satisfy the condition.

The following examples show some IN conditions:

```
WHERE state IN ('CA', 'WA', 'OR')
```

```
WHERE manu_code IN ('HRO', 'HSK')
```

```
WHERE user_id NOT IN (USER)
```

```
WHERE order_date NOT IN (TODAY)
```

E/C

In ESQL/C, the built-in TODAY function is evaluated at execution time; the built-in CURRENT function is evaluated when a cursor opens or when the query executes, if it is a singleton SELECT statement. ♦

The built-in USER function is case sensitive; it perceives **minnie** and **Minnie** as different values.

IDS

Using the IN Operator with Collection Data Types

You can use the IN operator to determine if an element is contained in a collection. The collection you search can be a simple or nested collection. In a nested collection type, the element type of the collection is also a collection type.

When you use the IN operator to search for an element in a collection, the expression to the left or right of the IN keyword cannot contain a BYTE or TEXT data type.

Suppose you create the following table that contains two collection columns:

```
CREATE TABLE tab_coll
(
  set_num SET(INT NOT NULL),
  list_name LIST(SET(CHAR(10) NOT NULL) NOT NULL)
);
```

The following partial examples show how you might use the IN operator for search conditions on the collection columns of the **tab_coll** table:

```
WHERE 5 IN set_num
WHERE 5.0::INT IN set_num
WHERE "5" NOT IN set_num
WHERE set_num IN ("SET{1,2,3}", "SET{7,8,9}")
WHERE "SET{'john', 'sally', 'bill'}" IN list_name
WHERE list_name IN ("LIST{"SET{'bill', 'usha'}",
                    "SET{'ann', 'moshi'}"},
                    "LIST{"SET{'bob', 'ramesh'}",
                    "SET{'bomani', 'ann'}"}")
```

In general, when you use the IN operator on a collection data type, the database server checks whether the value on the left of the IN operator is an element in the set of values on the right of the IN operator.

IS NULL Condition

The IS NULL condition is satisfied if the column contains a null value. If you use the IS NOT NULL option, the condition is satisfied when the column contains a value that is not null. The following example shows an IS NULL condition:

```
WHERE paid_date IS NULL
```

LIKE and MATCHES Condition

A LIKE or MATCHES condition tests for matching character strings. The condition is true, or satisfied, when either of the following tests is true:

- The value of the column on the left matches the pattern that the quoted string specifies. You can use wildcard characters in the string. Null values do not satisfy the condition.
- The value of the column on the left matches the pattern that the column on the right specifies. The value of the column on the right serves as the matching pattern in the condition.



You can use the single quote (') only with the quoted string to match a literal quote; you cannot use the ESCAPE clause. You can use the quote character as the escape character in matching any other pattern if you write it as '' ''.

Important: You cannot specify a row-type column in a LIKE or MATCHES condition. A row-type column is a column that is defined on a named row type or unnamed row type.

NOT Option

The NOT option makes the search condition successful when the column on the left has a value that is not null and does not match the pattern that the quoted string specifies. For example, the following conditions exclude all rows that begin with the characters `Baxter` in the `Iname` column:

```
WHERE Iname NOT LIKE 'Baxter%'
WHERE Iname NOT MATCHES 'Baxter**'
```

LIKE Option

If you use the keyword LIKE, you can use the following wildcard characters in the quoted string.

Wildcard	Purpose
%	Matches zero or more characters
_	Matches any single character
\	Removes the special significance of the next character (used to match % or _ by writing \% or _)

Using the backslash (\) as an escape character is an Informix extension to ANSI-compliant SQL.

In an ANSI-compliant database, you can only use an escape character to escape a percent sign (%), an underscore (_), or the escape character itself. ♦

ANSI

The following condition tests for the string tennis, alone or in a longer string, such as tennis ball or table tennis paddle:

```
WHERE description LIKE '%tennis%'
```

The following condition tests for all descriptions that contain an underscore. The backslash (\) is necessary because the underscore (_) is a wildcard character.

```
WHERE description LIKE '%\_%'
```

The LIKE operator has an associated operator function called **like()**. You can define a **like()** function to handle your own user-defined data types. For more information, see the [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#) manual.

MATCHES Option

If you use the keyword MATCHES, you can use the following wildcard characters in the quoted string.

Wildcard	Purpose
*	Matches zero or more characters.
?	Matches any single character.
[...]	Match any \r of the enclosed characters, including character ranges as in [a - z]. Characters inside the square brackets cannot be escaped.
^	As the first character within the square brackets matches any character that is not listed. Hence [^abc] matches any character that is not a, b, or c.
\	Removes the special significance of the next character (used to match * or ? by writing * or \?).

The following condition tests for the string tennis, alone or in a longer string, such as tennis ball or table tennis paddle:

```
WHERE description MATCHES '*tennis*'
```

The following condition is true for the names Frank and frank:

```
WHERE fname MATCHES '[Ff]rank'
```

The following condition is true for any name that begins with either F or f:

```
WHERE fname MATCHES '[Ff]*'
```

The following condition is true for any name that ends with the letters a, b, c, or d:

```
WHERE fname MATCHES '*[a-d]'
```

The MATCHES operator has an associated operator function called **matches()**. You can define a **matches()** function to handle your own user-defined data types. For more information, see the [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#) manual.

ESCAPE with LIKE

The ESCAPE clause lets you include an underscore (_) or a percent sign (%) in the quoted string and avoid having them be interpreted as wildcards. If you choose to use z as the escape character, the characters z_ in a string stand for the underscore character (_). Similarly, the characters z% represent the percent sign (%). Finally, the characters zz in the string stand for the single character z. The following statement retrieves rows from the **customer** table in which the **company** column includes the underscore character:

```
SELECT * FROM customer
WHERE company LIKE '%z_%' ESCAPE 'z'
```

You can also use a single-character host variable as an escape character. The following statement shows the use of a host variable as an escape character:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char escp='z';
char fname[20];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
EXEC SQL select fname from customer
into :fname
where company like '%z_%' escape :escp;
```

ESCAPE with MATCHES

The **ESCAPE** clause lets you include a question mark (?), an asterisk (*), and a left or right square bracket ([]) in the quoted string and avoid having them be interpreted as wildcards. If you choose to use *z* as the escape character, the characters *z?* in a string stand for the question mark (?). Similarly, the characters *z** stand for the asterisk (*). Finally, the characters *zz* in the string stand for the single character *z*.

The following example retrieves rows from the **customer** table in which the value of the **company** column includes the question mark (?):

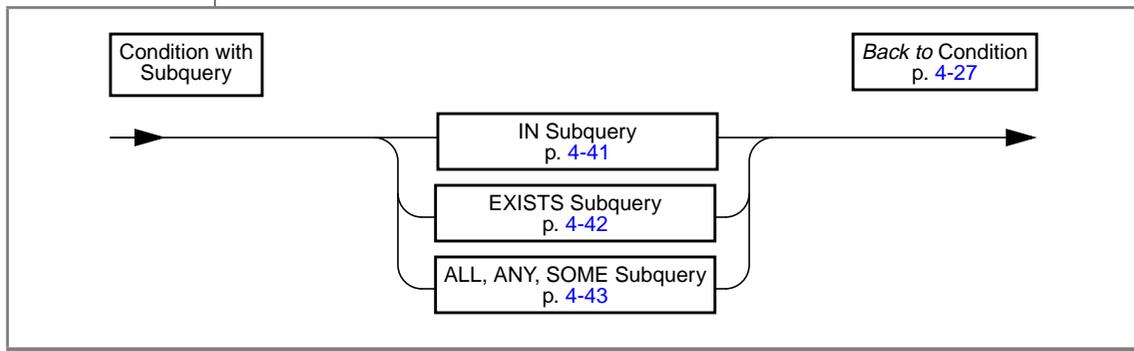
```
SELECT * FROM customer
WHERE company MATCHES '*z?*' ESCAPE 'z'
```

Stand-Alone Condition

A stand-alone condition can be any expression that is not explicitly listed in the syntax for the comparison condition. Such an expression is valid only if its result is of the Boolean type. For example, the following example returns a value of the Boolean type:

```
funcname(x)
```

Condition with Subquery



You can use a SELECT statement within a condition; this combination is called a subquery. You can use a subquery in a SELECT statement to perform the following functions:

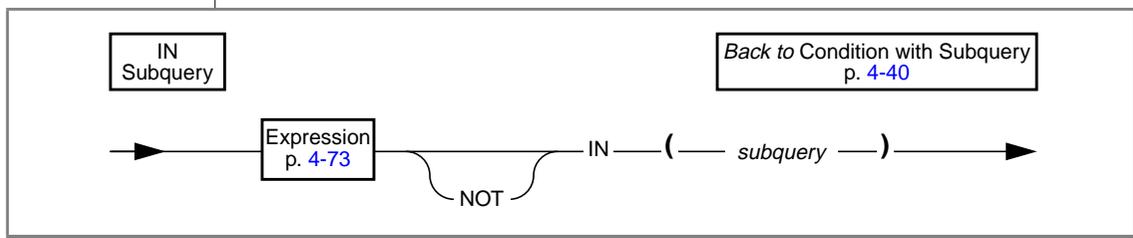
- Compare an expression to the result of another SELECT statement
- Determine whether an expression is included in the results of another SELECT statement
- Ask whether another SELECT statement selects any rows

The subquery can depend on the current row that the outer SELECT statement is evaluating; in this case, the subquery is a *correlated subquery*.

The kinds of subquery conditions are shown in the following sections with their syntax. For a discussion of the different kinds of subquery conditions in the context of the SELECT statement, see [“Using a Condition in the WHERE Clause” on page 2-661](#).

A subquery can return a single value, no value, or a set of values depending on the context in which it is used. If a subquery returns a value, it must select only a single column. If the subquery simply checks whether a row (or rows) exists, it can select any number of rows and columns. A subquery cannot contain BYTE or TEXT data types, nor can it contain an ORDER BY clause. For a complete description of SELECT syntax and usage, see [“SELECT” on page 2-634](#).

IN Subquery



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>subquery</i>	Embedded query	The subquery cannot contain either the FIRST or the ORDER BY clause.	SELECT, p. 2-634

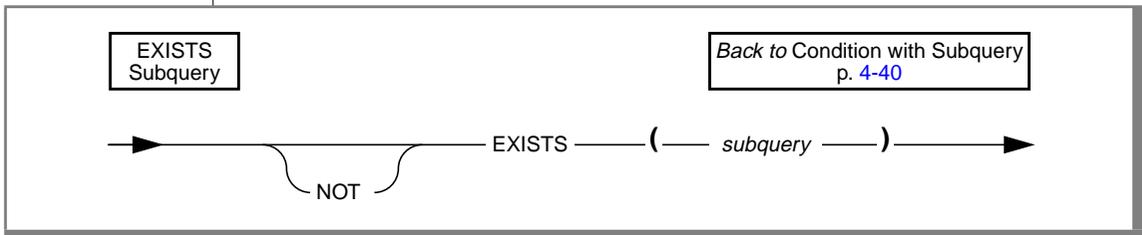
An IN subquery condition is true if the value of the expression matches one or more of the values that the subquery selects. The subquery must return only one column, but it can return more than one row. The keyword IN is equivalent to the =ANY sequence. The keywords NOT IN are equivalent to the !=ALL sequence. See “[ALL, ANY, SOME Subquery](#)” on page 4-43.

The following example of an IN subquery finds the order numbers for orders that do not include baseball gloves (stock_num = 1):

```
WHERE order_num NOT IN
      (SELECT order_num FROM items WHERE stock_num = 1)
```

Because the IN subquery tests for the presence of rows, duplicate rows in the subquery results do not affect the results of the main query. Therefore, you can put the UNIQUE or DISTINCT keyword into the subquery with no effect on the query results, although eliminating testing duplicates can reduce the time needed for running the query.

EXISTS Subquery



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>subquery</i>	Embedded query	The subquery cannot contain either the FIRST or the ORDER BY clause.	SELECT, p. 2-634

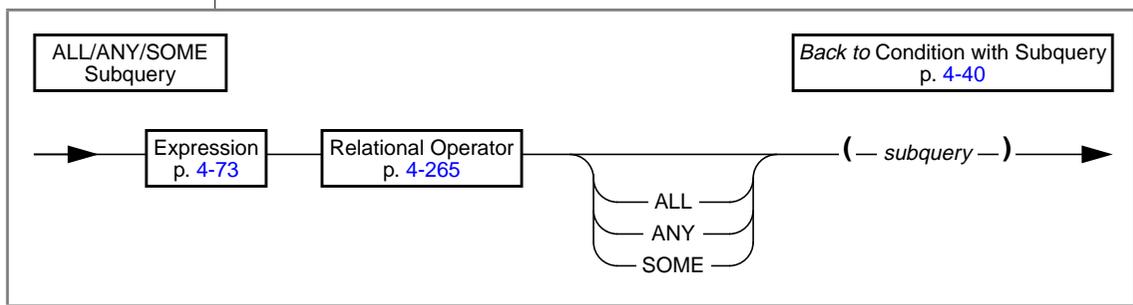
An EXISTS subquery condition evaluates to true if the subquery returns a row. With an EXISTS subquery, one or more columns can be returned. The subquery always contains a reference to a column of the table in the main query. If you use an aggregate function in an EXISTS subquery, at least one row is always returned.

The following example of a SELECT statement with an EXISTS subquery returns the stock number and manufacturer code for every item that has never been ordered (and is therefore not listed in the **items** table). You can appropriately use an EXISTS subquery in this SELECT statement because you use the subquery to test both **stock_num** and **manu_code** in **items**.

```
SELECT stock_num, manu_code FROM stock
WHERE NOT EXISTS (SELECT stock_num, manu_code FROM items
WHERE stock.stock_num = items.stock_num AND
stock.manu_code = items.manu_code)
```

The preceding example works equally well if you use SELECT * in the subquery in place of the column names because the existence of the whole row is tested; specific column values are not tested.

ALL, ANY, SOME Subquery



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>subquery</i>	Embedded query	The subquery cannot contain either the FIRST or the ORDER BY clause.	SELECT, p. 2-634

You use the ALL, ANY, and SOME keywords to specify what makes the search condition true or false. A search condition that is true when the ANY keyword is used might not be true when the ALL keyword is used, and vice versa.

Using the ALL Keyword

The ALL keyword denotes that the search condition is true if the comparison is true for every value that the subquery returns. If the subquery returns no value, the condition is true.

In the following example of the ALL subquery, the first condition tests whether each **total_price** is greater than the total price of every item in order number 1023. The second condition uses the MAX aggregate function to produce the same results.

```
total_price > ALL (SELECT total_price FROM items
                  WHERE order_num = 1023)

total_price > (SELECT MAX(total_price) FROM items
              WHERE order_num = 1023)
```

Using the NOT keyword with an ALL subquery tests whether an expression is not true for at least one element returned by the subquery. For example, the following condition is true when the expression **total_price** is not greater than all the selected values. That is, it is true when **total_price** is not greater than the highest total price in order number 1023.

```
NOT total_price > ALL (SELECT total_price FROM items
                      WHERE order_num = 1023)
```

Using the ANY or SOME Keywords

The ANY keyword denotes that the search condition is true if the comparison is true for at least one of the values that is returned. If the subquery returns no value, the search condition is false. The SOME keyword is an alias for ANY.

The following conditions are true when the total price is greater than the total price of at least one of the items in order number 1023. The first condition uses the ANY keyword; the second uses the MIN aggregate function.

```
total_price > ANY (SELECT total_price FROM items
                  WHERE order_num = 1023)

total_price > (SELECT MIN(total_price) FROM items
              WHERE order_num = 1023)
```

Using the NOT keyword with an ANY subquery tests whether an expression is not true for all elements returned by the subquery. For example, the following condition is true when the expression **total_price** is not greater than any selected value. That is, it is true when **total_price** is greater than none of the total prices in order number 1023.

```
NOT total_price > ANY (SELECT total_price FROM items
                       WHERE order_num = 1023)
```

Omitting the ANY, ALL, or SOME Keywords

You can omit the keywords ANY, ALL, or SOME in a subquery if you know that the subquery will return exactly one value. If you omit the ANY, ALL, or SOME keywords, and the subquery returns more than one value, you receive an error. The subquery in the following example returns only one row because it uses an aggregate function:

```
SELECT order_num FROM items
       WHERE stock_num = 9 AND quantity =
             (SELECT MAX(quantity) FROM items WHERE stock_num = 9)
```

Conditions with AND or OR

You can combine simple conditions with the logical operators AND or OR to form complex conditions. The following SELECT statements contain examples of complex conditions in their WHERE clauses:

```
SELECT customer_num, order_date FROM orders
       WHERE paid_date > '1/1/97' OR paid_date IS NULL

SELECT order_num, total_price FROM items
       WHERE total_price > 200.00 AND manu_code LIKE 'H%'

SELECT lname, customer_num FROM customer
       WHERE zipcode BETWEEN '93500' AND '95700'
          OR state NOT IN ('CA', 'WA', 'OR')
```

The following truth tables show the effect of the AND and OR operators. The letter T represents a true condition, F represents a false condition, and the question mark (?) represents an unknown value. Unknown values occur when part of an expression that uses a logical operator is null.

AND	T	F	?	OR	T	F	?
T	T	F	?	T	T	T	T
F	F	F	F	F	T	F	?
?	?	F	?	?	T	?	?

If the Boolean expression evaluates to UNKNOWN, the condition is not satisfied.

Consider the following example within a WHERE clause:

```
WHERE ship_charge/ship_weight < 5
      AND order_num = 1023
```

The row where **order_num** = 1023 is the row where **ship_weight** is null. Because **ship_weight** is null, **ship_charge/ship_weight** is also null; therefore, the truth value of **ship_charge/ship_weight** < 5 is UNKNOWN. Because **order_num** = 1023 is TRUE, the AND table states that the truth value of the entire condition is UNKNOWN. Consequently, that row is not chosen. If the condition used an OR in place of the AND, the condition would be true.

Related Information

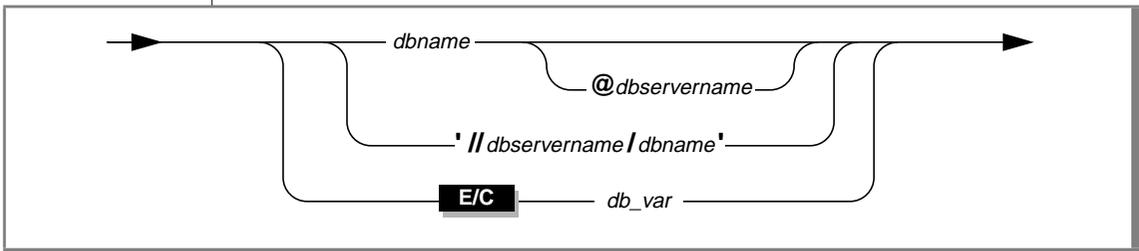
For discussions of comparison conditions in the SELECT statement and of conditions with a subquery, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For information on the GLS aspects of conditions, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

Database Name

Use the Database Name segment to specify the name of a database. Use the Database Name segment whenever you see a reference to a database name in a syntax diagram.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>dbname</i>	Name of the database itself This simple name does not include the pathname or the database server name.	A database name must be unique among the database names on the same database server. In Dynamic Server, <i>dbname</i> can have a maximum of 128 bytes. In Extended Parallel Server, <i>dbname</i> can have a maximum of 18 bytes.	Identifier, p. 4-205

(1 of 2)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>dbservername</i>	Name of the database server on which the database that is named in <i>dbname</i> resides.	The database server that is specified in <i>dbservername</i> must exist. You cannot put a space between the @ symbol and <i>dbservername</i> . In Dynamic Server, <i>dbservername</i> can have a maximum of 128 bytes. In Extended Parallel Server, <i>dbservername</i> can have a maximum of 18 bytes.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>db_var</i>	Host variable that contains a value representing a database environment	Variable must be a fixed-length character data type.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

(2 of 2)

Usage

Database names are not case sensitive. You cannot use delimited identifiers for a database name.

If you are using a nondefault locale, you can use characters from the code set of your locale in the names of databases.

If you are using a multibyte code set, keep in mind that the maximum length of the database name refers to the number of bytes, not the number of characters.

For further information on the GLS aspects of naming databases, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#). ♦

Specifying the Database Server

You can choose a database on another database server as your current database by specifying a database server name. The database server that *dbservername* specifies must match the name of a database server that is listed in your **sqlhosts** information.

GLS

Using the @ Symbol

The @ symbol is a literal character that introduces the database server name. If you specify a database server name, do not put any spaces between the @ symbol and the database server name. You can either put a space between dbname and the @ symbol, or omit the space.

The following examples show valid database specifications:

```
empinfo@personnel  
empinfo @personnel
```

In these examples, **empinfo** is the name of the database and **personnel** is the name of the database server.

Using a Path-Type Naming Method

If you use a path-type naming method, do not put spaces between the quotes, slashes, and names, as the following example shows:

```
'//personnel/empinfo'
```

In this example, **empinfo** is the name of the database and **personnel** is the name of the database server.

Using a Host Variable

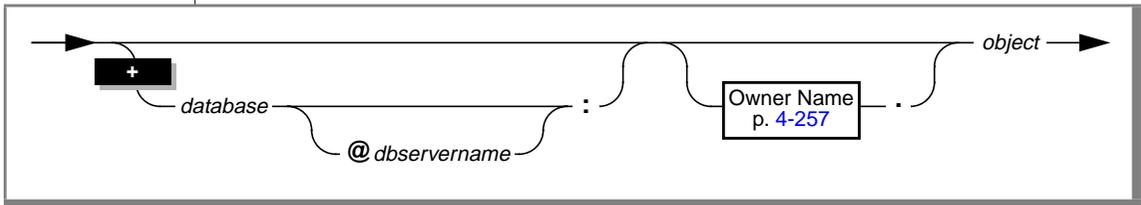
You can use a host variable within an ESQL/C application to contain a value that represents a database environment.

E/C

Database Object Name

Use the Database Object Name segment to specify the name of a constraint, index, trigger, table, synonym, user-defined routine (UDR), or view. Use this segment whenever you see a reference to database object name.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>database</i>	Name of the database where the database object resides	The database must exist.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>dbservername</i>	Name of the database server where the database resides	The database server must exist. You cannot put a space between the @ symbol and dbservername.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>object</i>	Name of a database object in the database	If you are creating the database object, character limitations exist. For more information, see “Identifier” on page 4-205. If you are accessing the database object, the database object must exist. See also, “Usage.”	Identifier, p. 4-205

Usage

If you are creating or renaming a database object, the name that you specify must be unique in relation to other database objects of the same type in the database. For example, a new constraint name must be unique among constraint names that exist in the database.

A new name for a table, synonym, or view, must be unique among all the tables, synonyms, views, and temporary tables that already exist in the database.

IDS

In Dynamic Server, the uniqueness requirement does not apply to UDR names. For more information, see [“Routine Overloading and Naming UDRs with a Routine Signature” on page 4-52](#). ♦

ANSI

In an ANSI-compliant database, the *ownername.object* combination must be unique in a database.

A database object name must include the owner name for a database object that you do not own. For example, if you specify a table that you do not own, you must specify the owner of the table also. The owner of all the system catalog tables is **informix**. ♦

GLS

If you are using a nondefault locale, you can use characters from the code set of your locale in database object names. For more information, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#). ♦

Specifying a Database Object on a Remote Database Server

To specify an object on a remote database server, you must use a *fully qualified identifier*. A fully qualified identifier includes the names of the database, database server, and owner in addition to the database object name.

The following example shows a fully qualified table name:

```
empinfo@personnel:markg.emp_names
```

In this example, the name of the database is **empinfo**. The name of the database server is **personnel**. The name of the owner of the table is **markg**. The name of the table is **emp_names**.

IDS

Restrictions with UDRs on Remote Database Servers

If a UDR exists on a remote database server, you must specify a fully qualified identifier for the UDR. In addition, the UDR must meet the following requirements:

- All of the arguments passed to the UDR are of built-in data types.
- All of the parameters that the UDR accepts are of built-in data types.
- Any values that a user-defined function returns are of built-in data types.

IDS

In other words, you cannot specify a remote UDR if any of its parameters or return values are opaque, distinct, collection, or row types.

Routine Overloading and Naming UDRs with a Routine Signature

Because of routine overloading, the name of a UDR (that is, a user-defined function or a user-defined procedure) does not have to be unique to the database. You can define more than one UDR with the same name as long as the *routine signature* for each UDR is different.

UDRs are uniquely identified by their signature. The signature of a UDR includes the following items:

- The type (function or procedure)
- The name
- The quantity, data type, and order of the parameters
- In an ANSI database, the owner name. ♦

ANSI

For any given UDR, at least one item in the signature must be unique among all the UDRs stored in a name space or database.

Specifying an Existing UDR

When you are specifying the name of an existing UDR, if the name you specify does not uniquely identify the UDR, you must also specify the parameter data types after the UDR name. You must specify the parameter data types in the same order that they were specified when the UDR was created. The database server then uses routine resolution to identify the instance of the UDR to alter, drop, or execute.

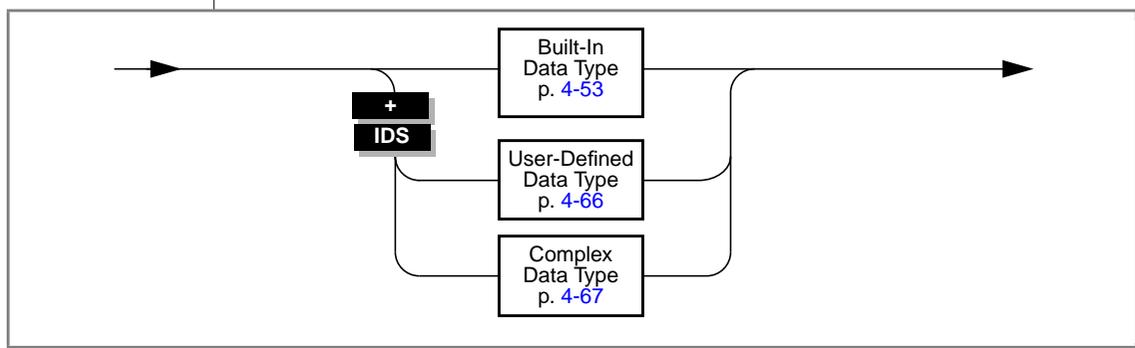
As an alternative you can specify the specific name for the UDR if one was given to it when it was created.

For more information about routine resolution, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

Data Type

The Data Type segment specifies the data type of a column or value. Use the Data Type segment whenever you see a reference to a data type in a syntax diagram.

Syntax

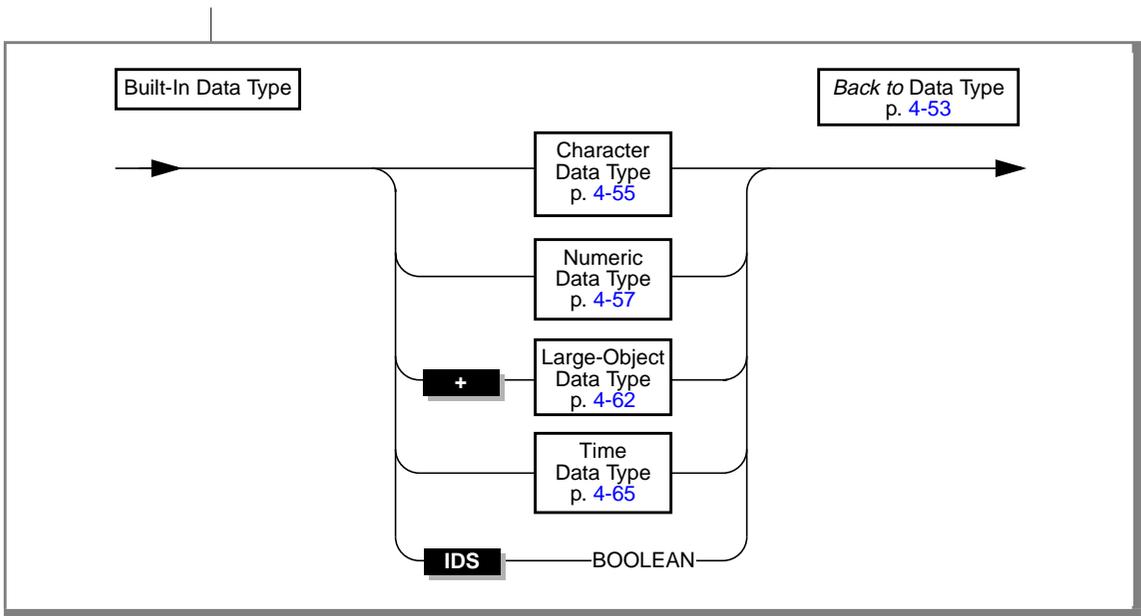


Usage

The following sections summarize each of the categories of data types that the various database server configurations support. For more information, see the discussion of all data types in the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

Built-In Data Type

Built-in data types are data types that are fundamental to the database server. These data types are built into the database server in the sense that the knowledge for how to interpret and transfer these data types is part of the database server software.



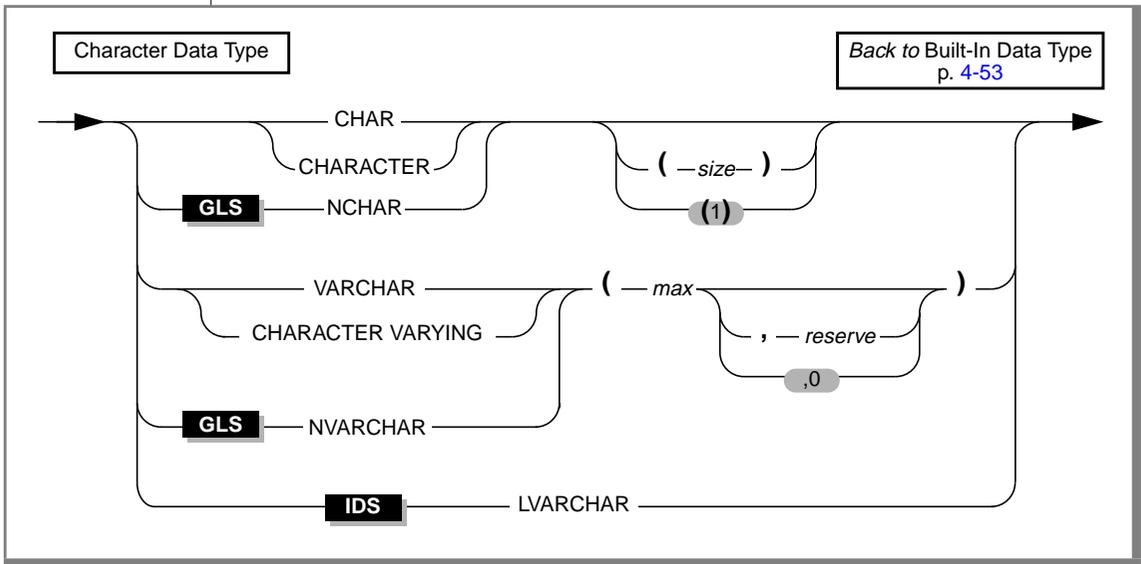
The database server supports the following categories of built-in data types:

- Character data types
- Numeric data types
- Large-object data types
- Time data types

In addition, Dynamic Server supports the BOOLEAN data type.

IDS

Character Data Types



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>max</i>	Maximum size of a CHARACTER VARYING, VARCHAR or NVARCHAR column in bytes	You must specify an integer value between 1 and 255 bytes, inclusive. If you place an index on the column, the largest value you can specify for <i>max</i> is 254 bytes.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>reserve</i>	Amount of space in bytes reserved for a CHARACTER VARYING, VARCHAR or NVARCHAR column even if the actual number of bytes stored in the column is less than <i>reserve</i>	You must specify an integer value between 0 and 255 bytes. However, the value you specify for <i>reserve</i> must be less than the value you specify for <i>max</i> .	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>size</i>	The default value of <i>reserve</i> is 0. Number of bytes in the CHAR or NCHAR column	You must specify an integer value between 1 and 32,767 bytes, inclusive.	Literal Number, p. 4-237

The following table summarizes the available character data types.

Data Type	Purpose
CHAR	Stores single-byte or multibyte text strings of up to 32,767 bytes of text data and supports code-set collation of text data.
CHARACTER	Synonym for CHAR.
CHARACTER VARYING	ANSI-compliant synonym for VARCHAR.
LVARCHAR (IDS)	Stores variable-length strings that are potentially more than 255 bytes, but no more than 2 kilobytes in length.
NCHAR	Stores single-byte or multibyte text strings of up to 32,767 bytes of text data and supports localized collation of the text data.
NVARCHAR	Stores single-byte or multibyte text strings of varying length and up to 255 bytes of text data; it supports localized collation of the text data.
VARCHAR	Stores single-byte or multibyte text strings of varying length and up to 255 bytes of text data; it supports code-set collation of the text data.

The TEXT and CLOB data types also support character data. For more information, see [“Large-Object Data Types” on page 4-62](#).

Fixed- and Varying-Length Data Types

The database server supports storage of fixed-length and varying-length character data. A fixed-length column requires the defined number of bytes regardless of the actual size of the character data. The CHAR data type is a fixed-length character data type. For example, a CHAR(25) column requires 25 bytes of storage for all its column values, so the string “This is a text string” uses 25 bytes of storage. Use the VARCHAR data type to specify varying-length character data.

A varying-length column requires only the number of bytes that its data uses. The VARCHAR and NVARCHAR data types are varying-length character data types. For example, a VARCHAR(25) column reserves up to 25 bytes of storage for the column value, but the string “This is a text string” uses only 21 bytes of the reserved 25 bytes.

The VARCHAR data type can store up to 255 bytes of varying data while the NVARCHAR data type can store up to 2 kilobytes of text data.

NCHAR and NVARCHAR Data Types

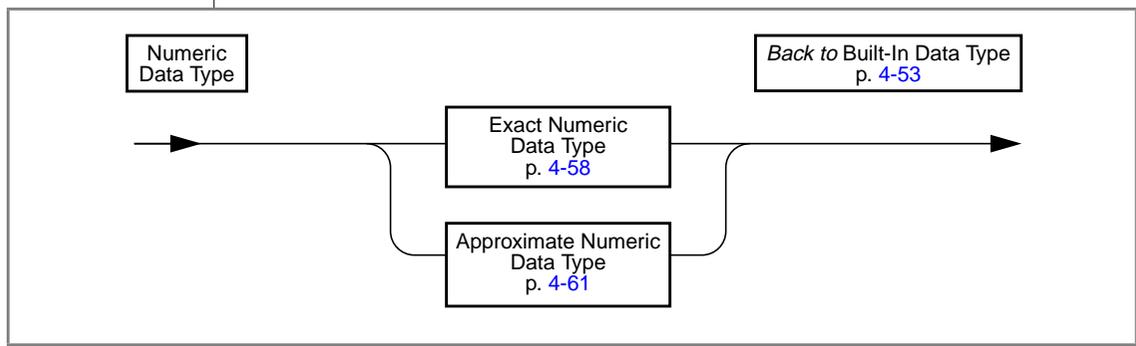
The character data types CHAR, NVARCHAR, and VARCHAR support code-set collation of the text data. That is, the database server collates text data in columns of these types by the order that their characters are defined in the code set.

To accommodate locale-specific order of characters, use the NCHAR and NVARCHAR data types. The NCHAR data type is the fixed-length character data type that supports localized collation. The NVARCHAR data type is the varying-length character data type that can store up to 255 bytes of text data and supports localized collation.

For more information, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

Numeric Data Types

Numeric data types allow the database server to store numbers such as integers and real numbers in a column.

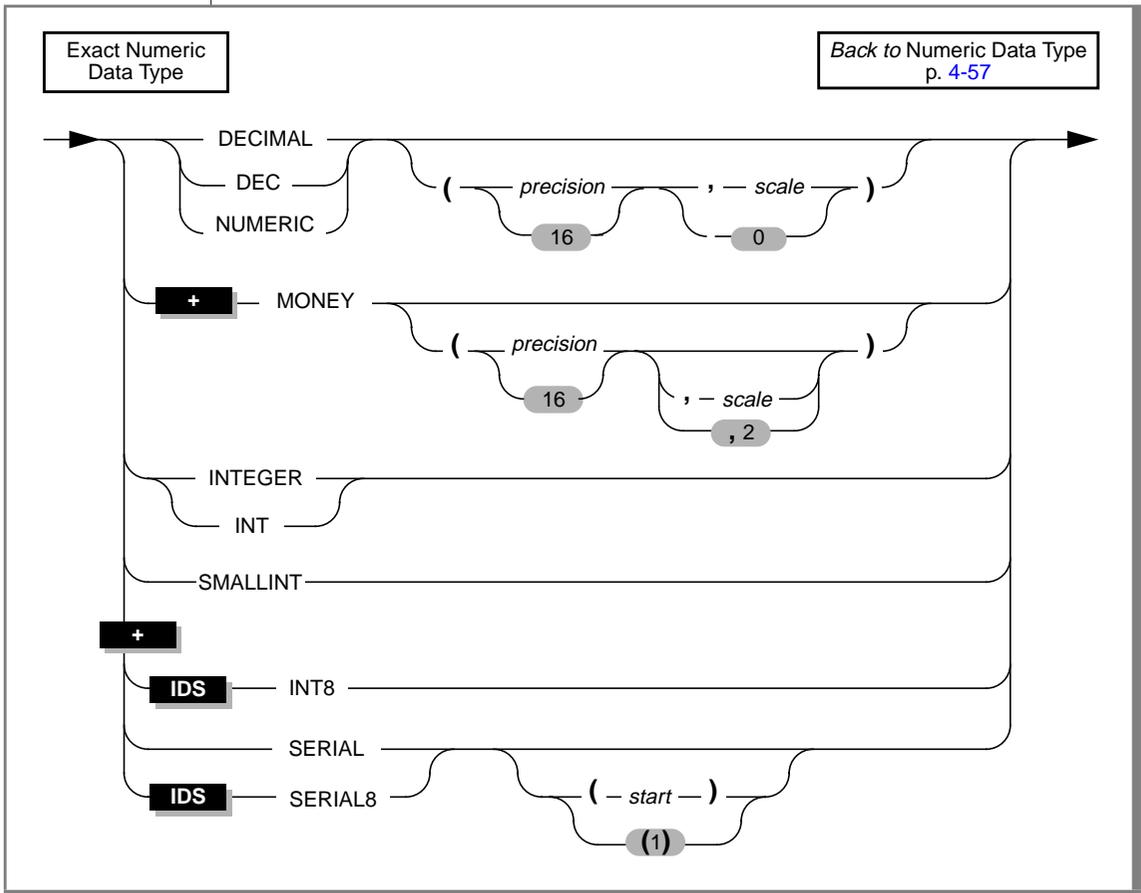


These data types fall into the following two categories:

- Exact numeric data types
- Approximate numeric data types

Exact Numeric Data Types

An exact numeric data type stores a numeric value with a specified precision and scale.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>precision</i>	Total number of significant digits	You must specify an integer between 1 and 32, inclusive.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>scale</i>	Number of digits to the right of the decimal point	You must specify an integer between 1 and <i>precision</i> .	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>start</i>	Starting number for values in a SERIAL or SERIAL8 column	For SERIAL columns you must specify a number greater than 0 and less than 2,147,483,647. For SERIAL8 columns you must specify a number greater than 0 and less than 9,223,372,036,854,775,807.	Literal Number, p. 4-237

The precision of a number is the number of digits that the data type stores. The scale is the number of digits to the right of the decimal separator.

The following table summarizes the exact numeric data types available.

Data Type	Purpose
DEC(p,s)	Synonym for DECIMAL(p,s).
DECIMAL(p,s)	Stores fixed-point decimal (real) values in the range. The <i>p</i> parameter indicates the precision of the decimal value and the <i>s</i> parameter indicates the scale. If no precision is specified, the system default of 16 is used. If no scale is specified, the system default of 0 is used.
INT	Synonym for INTEGER.
INTEGER	Stores a 4-byte integer value. These values can be in the range $-(2^{31})-1$ to $(2^{31})-1$ (the values -2,147,483,647 to 2,147,483,647).
INT8 (IDS)	Stores an 8-byte integer value. These values can be in the range $-(2^{63})-1$ to $(2^{63})-1$ (the values -9,223,372,036,854,775,807 to 9,223,372,036,854,775,807).
MONEY(p,s)	Stores fixed-point currency values. Has the same internal data type as a fixed-point DECIMAL value.
NUMERIC(p,s)	ANSI-compliant synonym for DECIMAL(p,s).

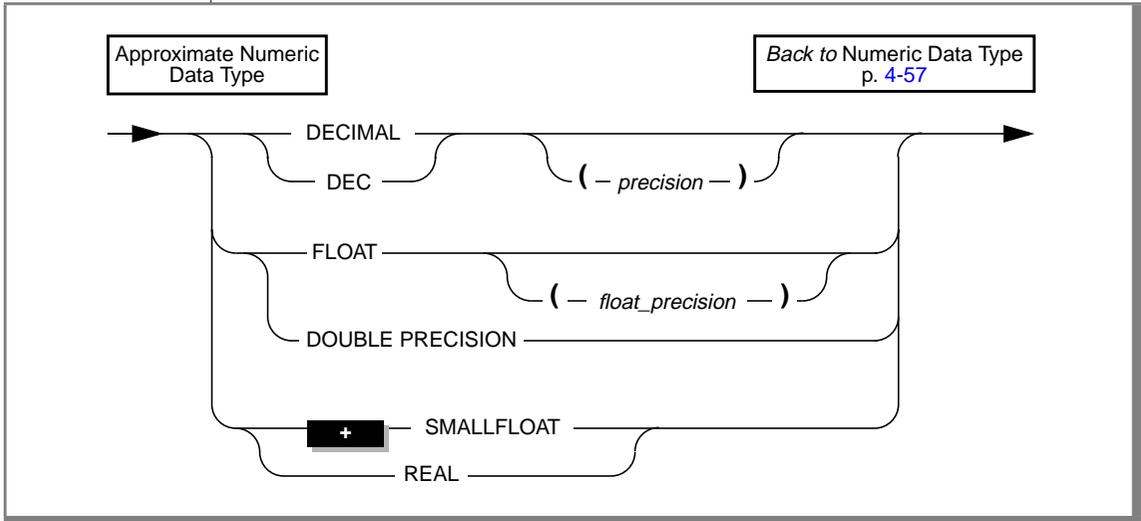
(1 of 2)

Data Type	Purpose
SERIAL	<p>Stores a 4-byte integer value that the database server generates. These values can be in the range $-(2^{31}-1)$ to $(2^{31}-1)$ (the values -2,147,483,647 to 2,147,483,647).</p> <p>If you want to insert an explicit value in a serial column, you can use any nonzero number. However, you cannot start or reset the value (begin the sequence) of a serial column with a negative number.</p> <p>A serial column is not unique by definition. A unique index must exist on the column to ensure unique values. (The index can also be in the form of a primary key or unique constraint.) With such an index, values in serial columns are guaranteed to be unique but not contiguous.</p>
SERIAL8 (IDS)	<p>Stores an 8-byte integer value that the database server generates. These values can be in the range $-(2^{63}-1)$ to $(2^{63}-1)$ (the values -9,223,372,036,854,775,807 to 9,223,372,036,854,775,807).</p> <p>If you want to insert an explicit value in a serial column, you can use any nonzero number. However, you cannot start or reset the value (begin the sequence) of a serial column with a negative number.</p> <p>A serial column is not unique by definition. A unique index must exist on the column to ensure unique values. (The index can also be in the form of a primary key or unique constraint.) With such an index, values in serial columns are guaranteed to be unique but not contiguous.</p>
SMALLINT	<p>Stores a 2-byte integer value. These values can be in the range $-(2^{15}-1)$ to $(2^{15}-1)$ (-32,767 to 32,767).</p>

(2 of 2)

Approximate Numeric Data Types

An approximate numeric data type represents numeric values approximately.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>float_precision</i>	The float precision is ignored.	You must specify a positive integer.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>precision</i>	Total number of significant digits The default is 16.	You must specify an integer between 1 and 32, inclusive.	Literal Number, p. 4-237

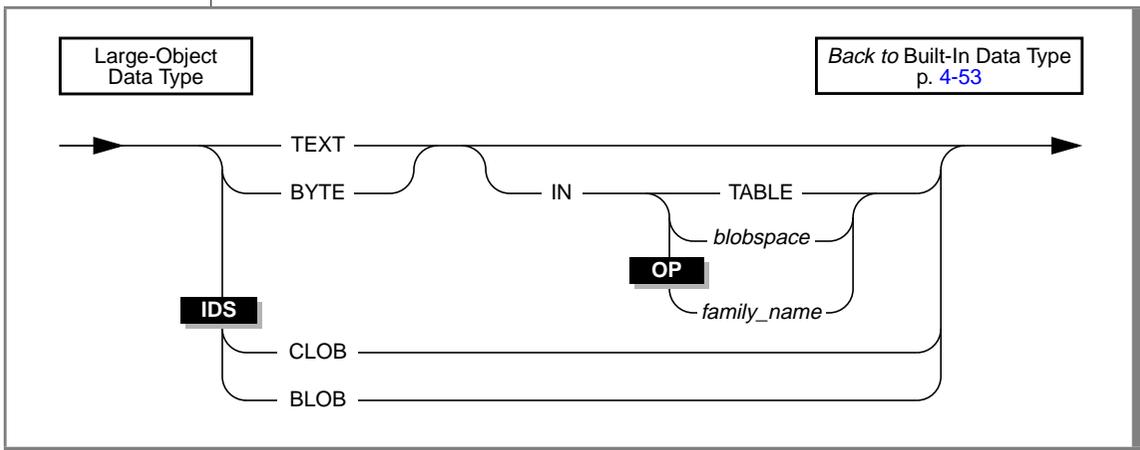
Use approximate numeric data types for very large and very small numbers that can tolerate some degree of rounding during arithmetic operations.

The following table summarizes the approximate numeric data types available.

Data Type	Purpose
DECIMAL(p)	Stores floating-point decimal (real) values in the range. The <i>p</i> parameter indicates the precision of the decimal value. If no precision is specified, the system default of 16 is used.
DOUBLE PRECISION	ANSI-compliant synonym for FLOAT.
FLOAT	Stores double-precision floating-point numbers with up to 16 significant digits.
REAL	ANSI-compliant synonym for SMALLFLOAT.
SMALL-FLOAT	Stores single-precision floating-point numbers with approximately 8 significant digits.

Large-Object Data Types

Large-object data types allow the database server to store extremely large column values such as images and documents independently of the column.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>blob</i>	Name of an existing blob	The blob must exist.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>family_name</i>	Quoted string constant that specifies a family name or variable name in the optical family	The family name or variable name must exist.	Quoted String, p. 4-260. For additional information about optical families, see the Guide to the Optical Subsystem .

These data types fall into the following two categories:

- Simple-large-object data types: TEXT and BYTE
- Smart-large-object data types: CLOB and BLOB

Simple-Large-Object Data Types

A simple-large-object data type stores text or binary data in blobspaces or in tables. (For information on how to create blobspaces, see your [Administrator's Guide](#).) The database server can access a simple-large-object value in one piece. These data types are not recoverable.

The following table summarizes the available simple-large-object data types.

Data Type	Purpose
TEXT	Stores text data of up to 2^{31} bytes.
BYTE	Stores text data of up to 2^{31} bytes.

IDS

Storing BYTE and TEXT data

When you specify a BYTE or TEXT data type, you can specify the location in which it is stored.

You can store data for a BYTE or TEXT column with the table or in a separate blob space. The following example shows how blob spaces and dbspaces are specified. The user creates the **resume** table. The data for the table is stored in the **employ** dbspace. The data in the **vita** column is stored with the table, but the data associated with the **photo** column is stored in a blob space named **photo_space**.

```
CREATE TABLE resume
(
  fname          CHAR(15),
  lname          CHAR(15),
  phone          CHAR(18),
  recd_date      DATETIME YEAR TO HOUR,
  contact_date   DATETIME YEAR TO HOUR,
  comments       VARCHAR(250, 100),
  vita           TEXT IN TABLE,
  photo          BYTE IN photo_space
)
IN employ
```

If you are creating a named row type that includes a BYTE or TEXT column, you cannot use the IN clause to specify a separate storage space.

IDS

Smart-Large-Object Data Types

A smart-large-object data type stores text or binary data in sbspaces. (For information about how to create sbspaces, see your [Administrator's Guide](#).) The database server can provide random access to a smart-large-object value. That is, it can access any portion of the smart-large-object value. These data types are recoverable.

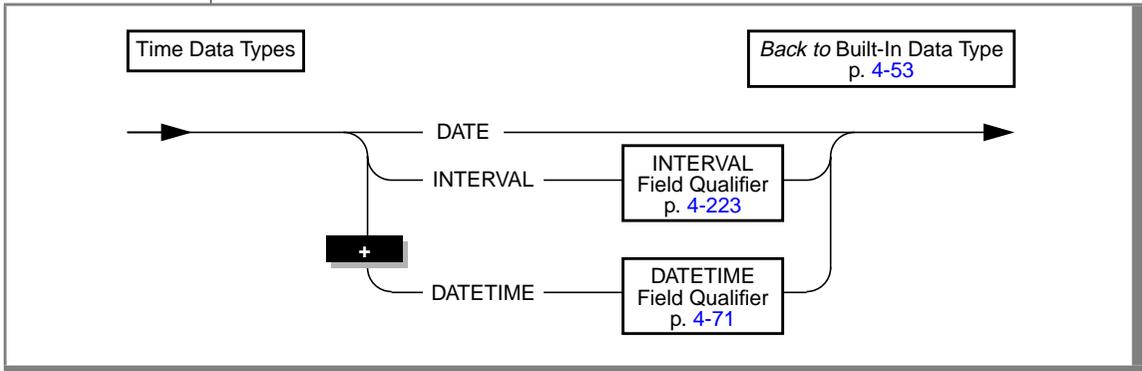
The following table summarizes the smart-large-object data types that Dynamic Server supports.

Data Type	Purpose
BLOB	Stores binary data of up to 4 terabytes (4×2^{40} bytes).
CLOB	Stores text data of up to 4 terabytes (4×2^{40} bytes).

For more information, see the entries for these data types in the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#). For information about the built-in functions you use to import, export, and copy smart large objects, see “[Smart-Large-Object Functions](#)” on page 4-146 and the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

Time Data Types

The time data types allow the database server to store increments of time.

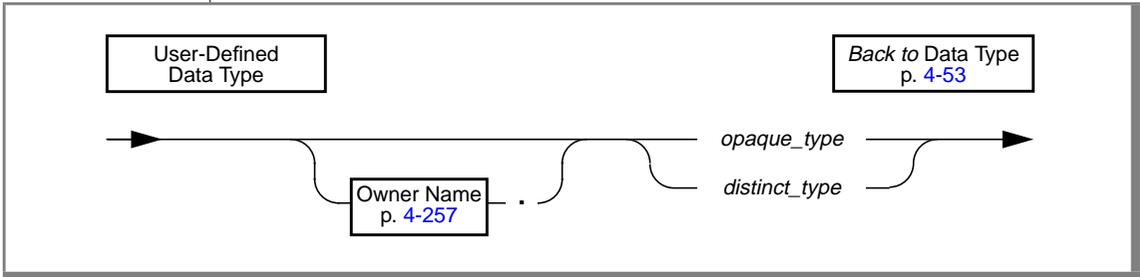


The following table summarizes the time data types available.

Data Type	Purpose
DATE	Stores a date value (<i>mm/dd/yy</i>) as a Julian date.
DATETIME	Stores a date and time value (<i>mm/dd/yy hh:mm:ss.fff</i>) in an internal format.
INTERVAL	Stores a unit of time such as seconds, hours/minutes, or year/month/day.

User-Defined Data Type

A user-defined data type is a data type that a user defines for the database server.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>distinct_type</i>	Name of a distinct data type that has the same structure as an existing data type	The name must be different from all other data types in the database.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>opaque_type</i>	Name of the opaque data type	The name must be different from all other data types in the database.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Dynamic Server supports the following categories of user-defined data types:

- Opaque data types
- Distinct data types

Opaque Data Types

An opaque data type is a user-defined data type that can be used in the same way as a built-in data type. To create an opaque type, you must use the CREATE OPAQUE TYPE statement. Because an opaque type is encapsulated, you create support functions to access the individual components of an opaque type. The internal storage details of the type are hidden, or opaque.

For complete information about how to create an opaque type and its support functions, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

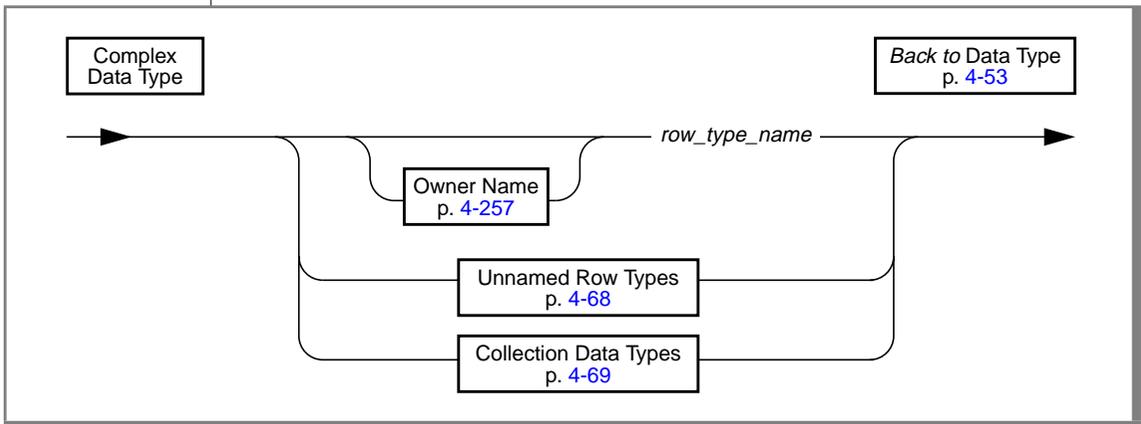
Distinct Data Types

A distinct data type is a user-defined data type that is based on an existing built-in type, opaque type, named row type, or distinct type. To create a distinct type, you must use the CREATE DISTINCT TYPE statement. For more information, see the CREATE DISTINCT TYPE statement.

IDS

Complex Data Type

Complex data types are data types that you create from built-in types, opaque types, distinct types, or other complex types.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<code>row_type_name</code>	Name of a row type created with the CREATE ROW TYPE statement	The row type must already exist.	Identifier, p. 4-205 Data type, p. 4-53

When you create a complex type, you define the components of the complex type. However, unlike an opaque type, a complex type is not encapsulated. You can use SQL to access the individual components of a complex data type.

Dynamic Server supports the following categories of complex data types:

- Row types
 - Named row types
 - Unnamed row types

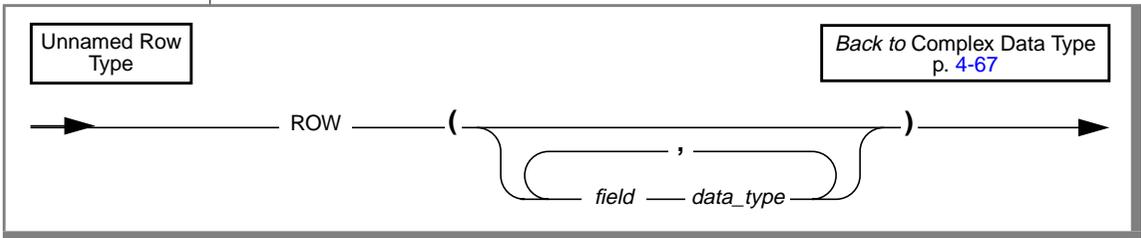
- Collection data types
 - SET
 - MULTISET
 - LIST

Named Row Types

You can assign a named row type to a table or a column. To use a named row type to create a typed table or define a column, the named row type must already exist. To create a named row type, see [“CREATE ROW TYPE” on page 2-216](#).

Unnamed Row Types

An unnamed row type is a group of fields that you create with the ROW constructor. You can use an unnamed row type to define a column. The syntax that you use to define a column as an unnamed row type is shown in the following diagram.



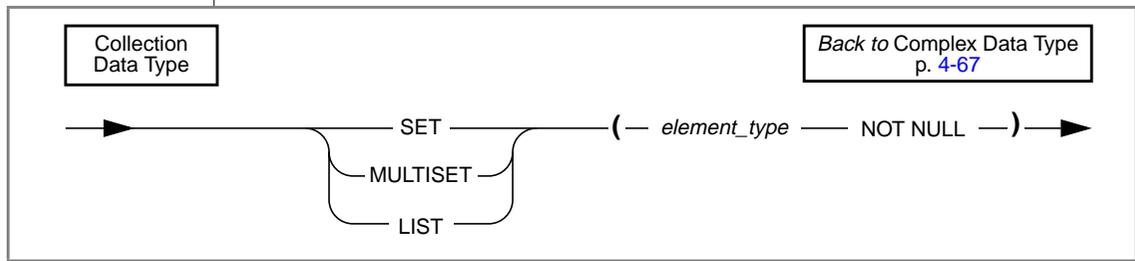
Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>data_type</i>	Data type of the field	The field can be any data type except BYTE or TEXT.	Data Type, p. 4-53
<i>field</i>	Name of a field in the row	The name must be unique within the row type.	Identifier, p. 4-205

An unnamed row type is identified by its structure. For the syntax you use to specify row values for an unnamed row type, see [“Expression” on page 4-73](#).

Collection Data Types

The syntax you use to define a column as a collection type is shown in the following diagram.

For the syntax you use to specify collection values for a collection data type, see [“Collection Constructors” on page 4-118](#).



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>element_type</i>	Data type of the elements of the collection	The element type can be any data type except TEXT, BYTE, SERIAL, or SERIAL8. See also, “Defining the Element Type” on page 4-70 .	Data Type, p. 4-53

Privileges on a collection type are those of the column. You cannot specify privileges on specific elements of a collection.

SET Collection Types

A SET is an unordered collection of elements in which each element is unique. You define a column as a SET collection type when you want to store collections whose elements contain no duplicate values and no specific order associated with them.

MULTISET Collection Types

A MULTISET is an unordered collection of elements in which elements can have duplicate values. You define a column as a MULTISET collection type when you want to store collections whose elements might not be unique and have no specific order associated with them.

LIST Collection Types

A LIST is an ordered collection of elements that allows duplicate elements. A LIST differs from a MULTISET in that each element in a LIST collection has an ordinal position in the collection. You define a column as a LIST collection type when you want to store collections whose elements might not be unique but have a specific order associated with them.

Defining the Element Type

The element type can be any data type except TEXT, BYTE, SERIAL, or SERIAL8. You can nest collection types. That is, an element type can be a collection type.

Every element in the collection must be of the same type. For example, if the element type of a collection type is INTEGER, every element in the collection must be of type INTEGER.

If the element type of a collection is an unnamed row type, the unnamed row type cannot contain fields that hold unnamed row types. That is, a collection cannot contain nested unnamed row types.

When you define a column as a collection type, you must specify that the elements of the collection cannot be null. That is, you must use the NOT NULL keywords after you specify the element type.

Related Information

For more information about choosing a data type for your database, see the [Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation](#).

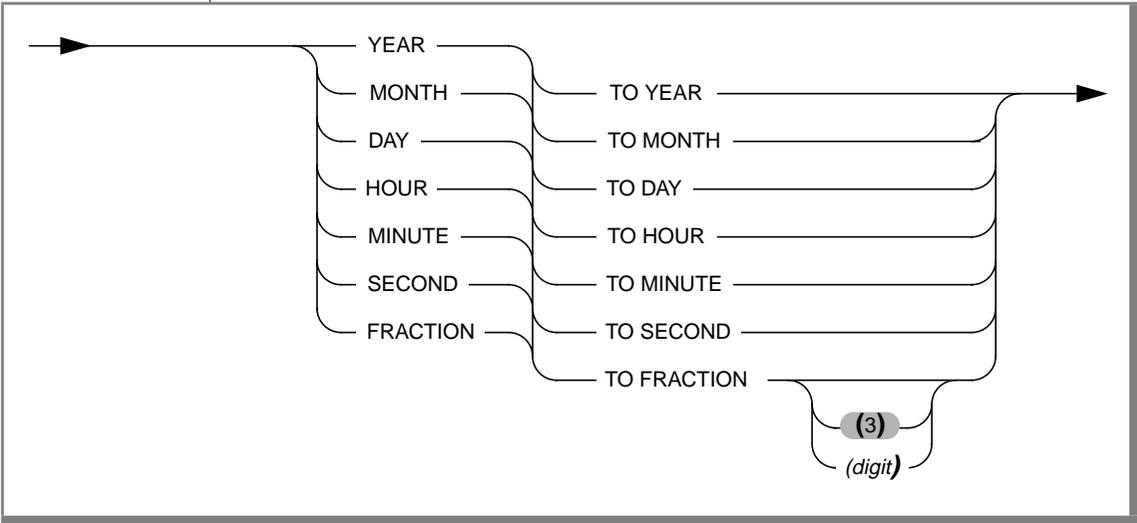
For more information about the specific qualities of individual data types, see the chapter on data types in the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

For more information about multi-byte data types, see the discussion of the NCHAR and NVARCHAR data types and the GLS aspects of other character data types in the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

DATETIME Field Qualifier

Use a DATETIME field qualifier to specify the largest and smallest unit of time in a DATETIME column or value. Use the DATETIME Field Qualifier segment whenever you see a reference to a DATETIME field qualifier in a syntax diagram.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>digit</i>	Single integer that specifies the precision of a decimal fraction of a second. The default precision is 3 digits (a thousandth of a second).	You must specify an integer between 1 and 5, inclusive.	Literal Number, p. 4-237

Usage

Specify the largest unit for the first DATETIME value; after the word TO, specify the smallest unit for the value. The keywords imply that the following values are used in the DATETIME column.

Unit of Time	Purpose
YEAR	Specifies a year, numbered from A.D. 1 to 9999
MONTH	Specifies a month, numbered from 1 to 12
DAY	Specifies a day, numbered from 1 to 31, as appropriate to the month in question
HOUR	Specifies an hour, numbered from 0 (midnight) to 23
MINUTE	Specifies a minute, numbered from 0 to 59
SECOND	Specifies a second, numbered from 0 to 59
FRACTION	Specifies a fraction of a second, with up to five decimal places The default scale is three digits (thousandth of a second).

The following examples show DATETIME qualifiers:

```
DAY TO MINUTE  
YEAR TO MINUTE  
DAY TO FRACTION(4)  
MONTH TO MONTH
```

Related Information

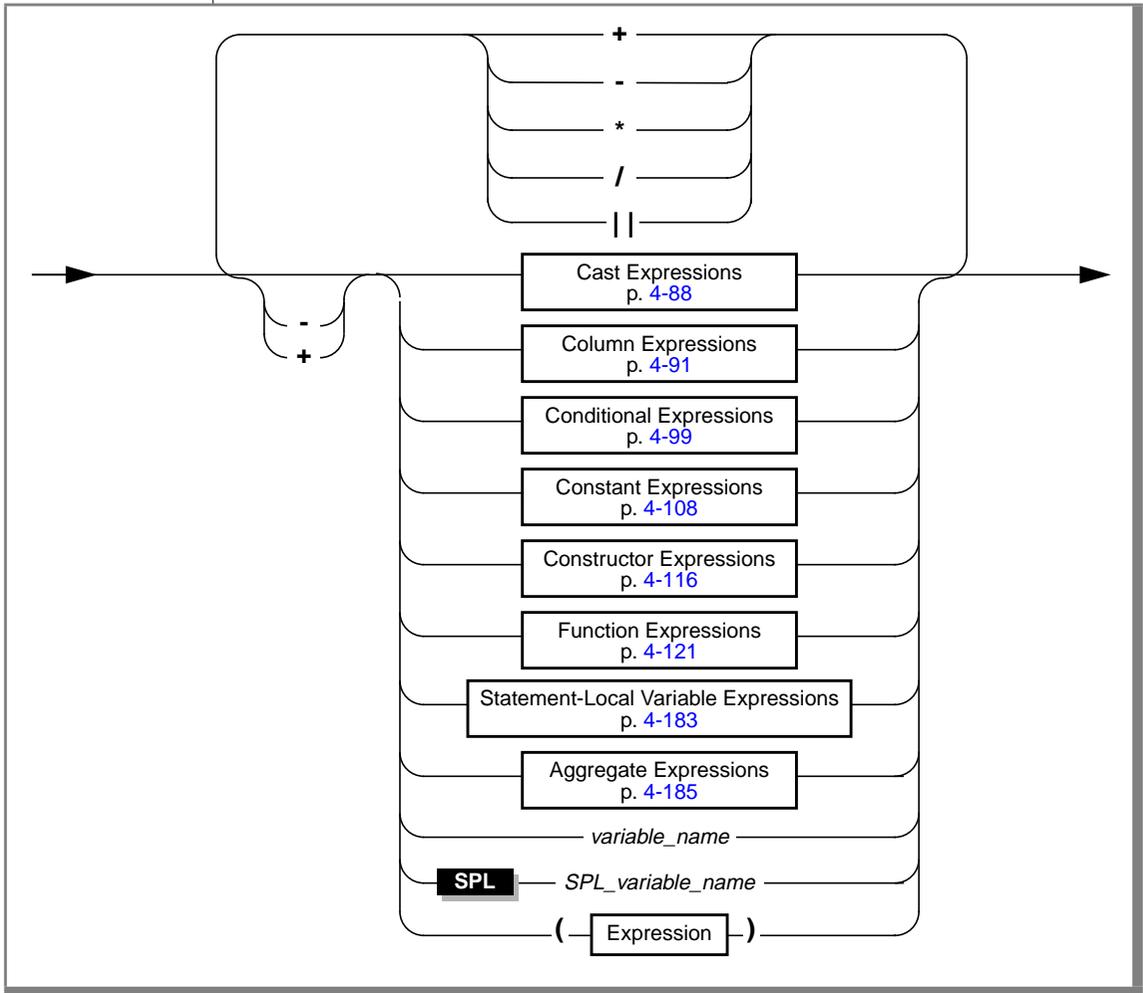
For an explanation of the DATETIME field qualifier, see the discussion of the DATETIME data type in the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

Expression

An expression is one or more pieces of data that is contained in a table or derived from data in the table. Typically you use expressions to express values in data manipulation statements. Use the Expression segment whenever you see a reference to an expression in a syntax diagram.

For an alphabetical listing of the built-in functions in this segment, see [“List of Expressions” on page 4-76](#).

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>SPL_variable_name</i>	Variable that is stored in an SPL routine The value stored in the variable is one of the expression types shown in the syntax diagram.	The expression that is stored in <i>SPL_variable_name</i> must conform to the rules for expressions of that type.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>variable_name</i>	Host variable or program variable The value stored in the variable is one of the expression types shown in the syntax diagram.	The expression that is stored in <i>variable_name</i> must conform to the rules for expressions of that type.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

Usage

This segment describes SQL expressions. The following table shows the different types of SQL expressions as shown in the diagram for “Syntax” on [page 4-74](#) and states the purpose of each type.

Expression Type	Purpose
Arithmetic operators	Provide support for arithmetic operations on two items (binary operators) or one item (unary operators) of an expression
Concatenation operator	Provides the ability to concatenate two string values
Cast operators	Provide the ability to explicit cast from one data type to another
Column expressions	Provide the ability to use full or partial column values in data manipulation statements
Conditional expressions	Provide the ability to return values that depend on the outcome of conditional tests
Constant expressions	Provide the ability to use literal values in data manipulation statements
Constructor expressions	Provide the ability to dynamically create values for complex data types

(1 of 2)

Expression Type	Purpose
Function expressions	Provide the ability to call built-in functions or user-defined functions in data manipulation statements
Statement-Local-Variable expressions	Specify how you can use a defined statement-local variable (SLV) elsewhere in an SQL statement
Aggregate functions	Provide the ability to use built-in aggregate functions or user-defined aggregate functions in data manipulation statements

(2 of 2)

You can also use host variables or SPL variables as expressions. For a complete list of SQL expressions, see [“List of Expressions” on page 4-76](#).

List of Expressions

Each category of SQL expression includes many individual expressions. The following table lists all the SQL expressions in alphabetical order and states the purpose of each expression. The columns in this table have the following meanings:

- The **Name** column gives the name of each expression.
- The **Purpose** column shows the purpose of each expression.
- The **Syntax** column refers to the page that describes the syntax of the expression.
- The **Usage** column refers to the page that describes the usage of the expression.

Each expression listed in the following table is supported on all database servers unless otherwise noted. When an expression is not supported on all database servers, the **Name** column notes in parentheses the database server or servers that do support the expression.

Name	Purpose	Syntax	Usage
ABS function	Returns the absolute value of a given expression	p. 4-123	p. 4-125
ACOS function	Returns the arc cosine of a numeric expression	p. 4-159	p. 4-161
Addition operator (+)	Adds two expressions to make a complex expression	p. 4-74	p. 4-85
ASIN function	Returns the arc sine of a numeric expression	p. 4-159	p. 4-161
ATAN function	Returns the arc tangent of a numeric expression	p. 4-159	p. 4-161
ATAN2 function	Computes the angular component of the polar coordinates (r, θ) associated with (x, y)	p. 4-159	p. 4-162
AVG function	Returns the average of all values in the specified column or expression	p. 4-185	p. 4-194
CARDINALITY function (IDS)	Returns the number of elements in a collection column (SET, MULTISSET, or LIST)	p. 4-129	p. 4-129
CASE expression	Returns one of several possible results, depending on which of several conditional tests evaluates to true	p. 4-100	p. 4-100
CAST expression (IDS)	Provides the ability to cast an expression to another data type	p. 4-88	p. 4-88
Cast operator	See Double-colon cast operator.	p. 4-88	p. 4-88
CHARACTER_LENGTH function	See CHAR_LENGTH function.	p. 4-143	p. 4-145
CHAR_LENGTH function	Returns the number of logical characters (not bytes) in a character column	p. 4-143	p. 4-145
Column expression	Complete or partial column value from a table	p. 4-91	p. 4-91
Concatenation operator	Concatenates the output of two expressions	p. 4-74	p. 4-87
Constant expression	Expression that evaluates to a constant value	p. 4-108	p. 4-108
COS function	Returns the cosine of a radian expression	p. 4-159	p. 4-160

(1 of 9)

Name	Purpose	Syntax	Usage
COUNT (as a set of functions)	Provides a set of functions for counting column values and expressions You invoke each function by specifying the appropriate argument after the COUNT keyword. Each form of the COUNT function is listed below.	p. 4-185	p. 4-189
COUNT (ALL <i>column</i>) function	See COUNT (<i>column</i>) function.	p. 4-185	p. 4-190
COUNT (<i>column</i>) function	Returns the number of non-null values in a specified column	p. 4-185	p. 4-190
COUNT DISTINCT function	Returns the number of unique non-null values in a specified column	p. 4-185	p. 4-190
COUNT UNIQUE function	See COUNT DISTINCT function.	p. 4-185	p. 4-190
COUNT (*) function	Returns the number of rows that satisfy a query. If you do not specify a WHERE clause, this function returns the total number of rows in the table.	p. 4-185	p. 4-189
CURRENT function	Shows the current instant by returning a DATETIME value consisting of the date and the time of day	p. 4-108	p. 4-112
DATE function	Returns a DATE value that corresponds to the non-date expression with which you call it	p. 4-152	p. 4-154
DAY function	Returns an integer that represents the day of the month	p. 4-152	p. 4-155
DBINFO (as a set of functions)	Provides a set of functions for retrieving different types of database information You invoke each function by specifying the appropriate DBINFO option. Each DBINFO option is listed below.	p. 4-130	p. 4-131
DBINFO ('coserverid' string followed by a column name qualified by a table name and the 'currentrow' string) (XPS)	Returns the coserver ID of the coserver where each row of a specified table is located	p. 4-130	p. 4-139

Name	Purpose	Syntax	Usage
DBINFO ('coserverid' string with no other arguments) (XPS)	Returns the coserver ID of the coserver to which the user who entered the query is connected	p. 4-130	p. 4-139
DBINFO ('dbhostname' option)	Returns the hostname of the database server to which a client application is connected	p. 4-130	p. 4-136
DBINFO ('dbspace' string followed by a column name qualified by a table name and the 'currentrow' string) (XPS)	Returns the name of the dbspace where each row of a specified table is located	p. 4-130	p. 4-140
DBINFO ('dbspace' string followed by a tblspace number)	Returns the name of a dbspace corresponding to a tblspace number	p. 4-130	p. 4-133
DBINFO ('serial8' option) (IDS)	Returns the last SERIAL8 value inserted in a table	p. 4-130	p. 4-138
DBINFO ('sessionid' option)	Returns the session ID of the current session	p. 4-130	p. 4-135
DBINFO ('sqlca.sqlerrd1' option)	Returns the last serial value inserted in a table	p. 4-130	p. 4-133
DBINFO ('sqlca.sqlerrd2' option)	Returns the number of rows processed by selects, inserts, deletes, updates, EXECUTE PROCEDURE statements, and EXECUTE FUNCTION statements	p. 4-130	p. 4-134
DBINFO ('version' option)	Returns the exact version of the database server to which a client application is connected	p. 4-130	p. 4-136
DBSERVERNAME function	Returns the name of the database server	p. 4-108	p. 4-111
DECODE function	Evaluates one or more expression pairs and compares the <i>when</i> expression in each pair against a specified value expression When the DECODE function finds a match between the <i>when</i> expression in an expression pair and the specified value expression, it returns the value of the <i>then</i> expression in that expression pair.	p. 4-105	p. 4-105

Name	Purpose	Syntax	Usage
Division operator (/)	Divides one expression by another to make a complex expression	p. 4-74	p. 4-85
Double-colon cast operator (::) (IDS)	Provides the ability to cast an expression to another data type	p. 4-88	p. 4-88
EXP function	Returns the exponent of a numeric expression	p. 4-141	p. 4-141
EXTEND function	Adjusts the precision of a DATETIME or DATE value	p. 4-152	p. 4-156
FILETOBLOB function (IDS)	Creates a BLOB value for data that is stored in a specified operating-system file	p. 4-146	p. 4-147
FILETOCLOB function (IDS)	Creates a CLOB value for data that is stored in a specified operating-system file	p. 4-146	p. 4-147
HEX function	Returns the hexadecimal encoding of an integer expression	p. 4-142	p. 4-142
Host variable	See Variable.	p. 4-74	p. 4-74
IFX_ALLOW_NEWLINE function	Sets a newline mode that allows newline characters in a quoted strings or disallows newline characters in quoted strings within a given session	p. 4-177	p. 4-177
IFX_REPLACE_MODULE function (IDS)	Replaces a loaded shared library with a new version that has a different name or location	p. 4-145	p. 4-145
INITCAP function	Converts a source expression so that every word in the source expression begins with an initial capital letter and all remaining letters in each word are lowercase	p. 4-174	p. 4-177
LENGTH function	Returns the number of bytes in a character column, not including any trailing spaces	p. 4-143	p. 4-144

Name	Purpose	Syntax	Usage
LIST collection constructor (IDS)	<p>Enables you to specify values for collection columns</p> <p>The LIST constructor indicates a collection of elements with the following qualities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ The collection can contain duplicate values. ■ Elements have ordered positions. 	p. 4-118	p. 4-118
Literal BOOLEAN (as an expression)	Provides a literal representation of a BOOLEAN value	p. 4-108	p. 4-108
Literal collection (as an expression) (IDS)	Provides a constant value in data manipulation statements	p. 4-108	p. 4-115
Literal DATETIME (as an expression)	Provides a constant value in data manipulation statements	p. 4-108	p. 4-114
Literal INTERVAL (as an expression)	Provides a constant value in data manipulation statements	p. 4-108	p. 4-114
Literal number (as an expression)	Provides a constant value in data manipulation statements	p. 4-108	p. 4-110
Literal opaque type (as an expression) (IDS)	Provides a literal representation of an opaque data type	p. 4-108	p. 4-108
Literal row (as an expression) (IDS)	Provides a constant value in data manipulation statements	p. 4-108	p. 4-115
LOCOPY function (IDS)	Creates a copy of a smart large object	p. 4-146	p. 4-150
LOGN function	Returns the natural log of a numeric expression	p. 4-141	p. 4-142
LOG10 function	Returns the log of a value to the base 10	p. 4-141	p. 4-142
LOTOFILE function (IDS)	Copies a smart large object to an operating-system file	p. 4-146	p. 4-149
LOWER function	Converts a source expression to lowercase characters	p. 4-174	p. 4-176

(5 of 9)

Name	Purpose	Syntax	Usage
LPAD function	Returns a copy of a source string that is left-padded by a specified number of pad characters	p. 4-172	p. 4-172
MAX function	Returns the largest value in the specified column or expression	p. 4-185	p. 4-194
MDY function	Returns a DATE value with three expressions that evaluate to integers representing the month, day, and year	p. 4-152	p. 4-157
MIN function	Returns the lowest value in the specified column or expression	p. 4-185	p. 4-194
MOD function	Returns the modulus or remainder value for two numeric expressions	p. 4-123	p. 4-126
MONTH function	Returns an integer that corresponds to the month portion of its DATE or DATETIME argument	p. 4-152	p. 4-155
Multiplication operator (*)	Multiplies two expressions to make a complex expression	p. 4-74	p. 4-85
MULTISET collection constructor (IDS)	<p>Enables you to specify values for collection columns</p> <p>The MULTISET constructor indicates a collection of elements with the following qualities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ The collection can contain duplicate values. ■ Elements have no specific order associated with them. 	p. 4-118	p. 4-118
NVL function	<p>Evaluates an expression and returns the value of the expression if the value of the expression is not null</p> <p>If the value of the expression is null, the NVL function returns a specified result.</p>	p. 4-104	p. 4-104
OCTET_LENGTH function	Returns the number of bytes in a character column, including any trailing spaces	p. 4-143	p. 4-144
POW function	Raises a base value to a specified power	p. 4-123	p. 4-126
Procedure-call expression	See User-defined function.	p. 4-179	p. 4-179

Name	Purpose	Syntax	Usage
Program variable	See Variable.	p. 4-74	p. 4-74
Quoted string (as an expression)	Provides a constant value in data manipulation statements	p. 4-108	p. 4-109
RANGE function	Computes the range for a sample of a population	p. 4-185	p. 4-195
REPLACE function	Replaces specified characters in a source string with different characters	p. 4-170	p. 4-170
ROOT function	Returns the root value of a numeric expression	p. 4-123	p. 4-126
ROUND function	Returns the rounded value of an expression	p. 4-123	p. 4-127
ROW constructor (IDS)	Enables you to specify values for columns that are named row types	p. 4-116	p. 4-116
RPAD function	Returns a copy of a source string that is right-padded by a specified number of pad characters	p. 4-173	p. 4-173
SET collection constructor (IDS)	<p>Enables you to specify values for collection columns</p> <p>The SET constructor indicates a collection of elements with the following qualities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ The collection must contain unique values. ■ Elements have no specific order associated with them. 	p. 4-118	p. 4-118
SIN function	Returns the sine of a radian expression	p. 4-159	p. 4-161
SITENAME function	See DBSERVERNAME function.	p. 4-108	p. 4-111
SPL routine expression	See User-defined functions.	p. 4-179	p. 4-179
SPL variable	SPL variable that stores an expression	p. 4-74	p. 4-74
SQRT function	Returns the square root of a numeric expression	p. 4-123	p. 4-128
Statement-Local-Variable expression	Specifies how you can use a defined statement-local variable (SLV) elsewhere in an SQL statement	p. 4-183	p. 4-183

Name	Purpose	Syntax	Usage
STDEV function	Computes the standard deviation for a sample of a population	p. 4-185	p. 4-196
SUBSTR function	Returns a subset of a source string	p. 4-168	p. 4-168
SUBSTRING function	Returns a subset of a source string	p. 4-166	p. 4-166
Subtraction operator (-)	Subtracts one expression from another to make a complex expression	p. 4-74	p. 4-85
SUM function	Returns the sum of all values in the specified column or expression	p. 4-185	p. 4-195
TAN function	Returns the tangent of a radian expression	p. 4-159	p. 4-161
TO_CHAR function	Converts a DATE or DATETIME value to a character string	p. 4-152	p. 4-157
TO_DATE function	Converts a character string to a DATETIME value	p. 4-152	p. 4-158
TODAY function	Returns the system date	p. 4-108	p. 4-112
TRIM function	Removes leading or trailing (or both) pad characters from a string	p. 4-164	p. 4-164
TRUNC function	Returns the truncated value of a numeric expression	p. 4-123	p. 4-128
UNITS keyword	Enables you to display a simple interval or increase or decrease a specific interval or datetime value	p. 4-108	p. 4-114
UPPER function	Converts a source expression to uppercase characters	p. 4-174	p. 4-176
User-defined aggregate (IDS)	An aggregate that you write (as opposed to the built-in aggregates provided by the database server)	p. 4-199	p. 4-199
User-defined function	A function that you write (as opposed to the built-in functions provided by the database server)	p. 4-179	p. 4-179
USER function	Returns a string that contains the login name of the current user	p. 4-108	p. 4-110

Name	Purpose	Syntax	Usage
Variable	host variable or program variable that stores an expression	p. 4-74	p. 4-74
VARIANCE function	Returns the variance for a sample of values as an unbiased estimate of the variance of a population	p. 4-185	p. 4-196
WEEKDAY function	Returns an integer that represents the day of the week	p. 4-152	p. 4-155
YEAR function	Returns a four-digit integer that represents the year	p. 4-152	p. 4-156
* sign	See Multiplication operator.	p. 4-74	p. 4-85
+ sign	See Addition operator.	p. 4-74	p. 4-85
- sign	See Subtraction operator.	p. 4-74	p. 4-85
/ sign	See Division operator.	p. 4-74	p. 4-85
:: symbol	See Double-colon cast operator.	p. 4-88	p. 4-88

(9 of 9)

The following sections describe the syntax and usage of each expression that appears in the preceding table.

Using Arithmetic Operators with Expressions

You can combine expressions with arithmetic operators to make complex expressions. To combine expressions, connect them with the following binary arithmetic operators.

Arithmetic Operation	Arithmetic Operator	Operator Function
Addition	+	plus()
Subtraction	-	minus()
Multiplication	*	times()
Division	/	divide()

The following examples use binary arithmetic operators:

```
quantity * total_price
price * 2
COUNT(*) + 2
```

If you combine a DATETIME value with one or more INTERVAL values, all the fields of the INTERVAL value must be present in the DATETIME value; no implicit EXTEND function is performed. In addition, you cannot use YEAR to MONTH intervals with DAY to SECOND intervals.

The binary arithmetic operators have associated operator functions, as the preceding table shows. Connecting two expressions with a binary operator is equivalent to invoking the associated operator function on the expressions. For example, the following two statements both select the product of the **total_price** column and 2. In the first statement, the * operator implicitly invokes the **times()** function.

```
SELECT (total_price * 2) FROM items
      WHERE order_num = 1001

SELECT times(total_price, 2) FROM items
      WHERE order_num = 1001
```

You cannot combine expressions that use aggregate functions with column expressions.

The database server provides the operator functions associated with the relational operators for all built-in data types. You can define new versions of these binary arithmetic operator functions to handle your own user-defined data types. For more information, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

Informix also provides the following unary arithmetic operators:

Arithmetic Operation	Arithmetic Operator	Operator Function
Positive	+	positive()
Negative	-	negate()

The unary arithmetic operators have the associated operator functions that the preceding table shows. You can define new versions of these arithmetic operator functions to handle your own user-defined data types. For more information on how to write versions of operator functions, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

If any value that participates in an arithmetic expression is null, the value of the entire expression is null, as shown in the following example:

```
SELECT order_num, ship_charge/ship_weight FROM orders
WHERE order_num = 1023
```

If either **ship_charge** or **ship_weight** is null, the value returned for the expression **ship_charge/ship_weight** is also null. If the expression **ship_charge/ship_weight** is used in a condition, its truth value is unknown.

Using the Concatenation Operator with Expressions

You can use the concatenation operator (||) to concatenate two expressions. For example, the following examples are some possible concatenated-expression combinations. The first example concatenates the **zipcode** column to the first three letters of the **lname** column. The second example concatenates the suffix **.dbg** to the contents of a host variable called **file_variable**. The third example concatenates the value returned by the **TODAY** function to the string **Date**.

```
lname[1,3] || zipcode
:file_variable || '.dbg'
'Date:' || TODAY
```

E/C

You cannot use the concatenation operator in an embedded-language-only statement. The ESQL/C-only statements appear in the following list:

ALLOCATE COLLECTION	FETCH
ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR	FLUSH
ALLOCATE ROW	FREE
CLOSE	GET DESCRIPTOR
CREATE FUNCTION FROM	GET DIAGNOSTICS
CREATE PROCEDURE FROM	OPEN
CREATE ROUTINE FROM	PREPARE
DEALLOCATE COLLECTION	PUT
DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR	SET CONNECTION
DEALLOCATE ROW	SET DESCRIPTOR
DECLARE	WHENEVER
DESCRIBE	
EXECUTE	
EXECUTE IMMEDIATE	

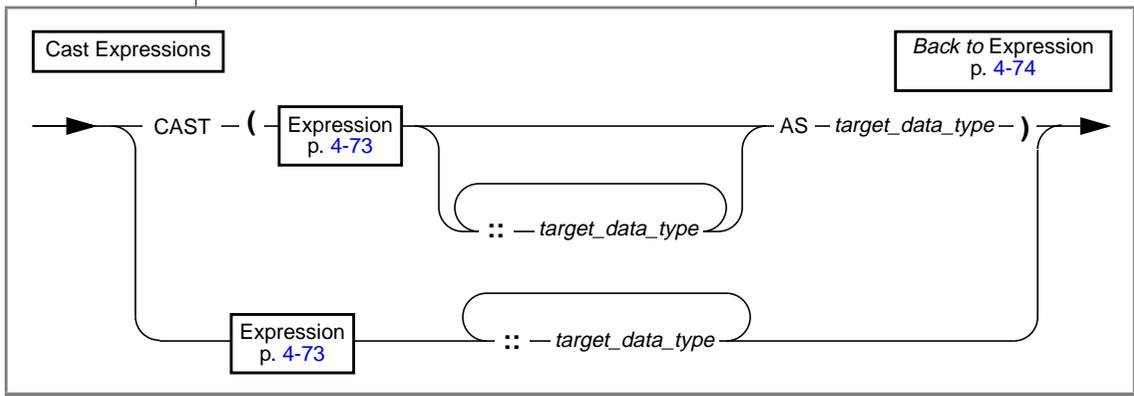
You can use the concatenation operator in the SELECT, INSERT, EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement in the DECLARE statement.

You can use the concatenation operator in the SQL statement or statements in the PREPARE statement. ♦

The concatenation operator (||) has an associated operator function called **concat()**. You can define a **concat()** function to handle your own string-based user-defined data types. For more information, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

IDS

Cast Expressions



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>target_data_type</i>	Data type that results after the cast is applied	See “ Rules for the Target Data Type ” on page 4-89.	Data type, p. 4-53

You can use the CAST AS keywords or the double-colon cast operator (::) to cast an expression to another data type. Both the operator and the keywords invoke a cast from the data type of the expression to the target data type. To invoke an explicit cast you must use either the cast operator or the CAST AS keywords. If you use the cast operator or CAST AS keywords, but no explicit or implicit cast was defined to perform the conversion between two data types, the statement returns an error.

Rules for the Target Data Type

You must observe the following rules and restrictions regarding the *target data type* parameter.

- The target data type must be either a built-in type, a user-defined type, or a named row type in the database.
- The target data type cannot be an unnamed row type or a collection data type.
- The target data type can be a BLOB data type under the following conditions:
 - The source expression (the expression to be cast to another data type) is a BYTE data type.
 - The source expression is a user-defined type and the user has defined a cast from the user-defined type to the BLOB type.
- The target data type can be a CLOB data type under the following conditions:
 - The source expression is a TEXT data type.
 - The source expression is a user-defined type and the user has defined a cast from the user-defined type to the CLOB type.

- You cannot cast a BLOB data type to a BYTE data type.
- You cannot cast a CLOB data type to a TEXT data type.
- An explicit or implicit cast must exist that can convert the data type of the source expression to the target data type.

Examples of Cast Expressions

The following examples show two different ways to convert the sum of *x* and *y* to a user-defined data type, **user_type**. The two methods produce identical results. Both require the existence of an explicit or implicit cast from the type returned by *x + y* to the user-defined type.

```
CAST (x + y) AS user_type
(x + y)::user_type
```

The following examples show two different ways of finding the integer equivalent of the expression **expr**. Both require the existence of an implicit or explicit cast from the data type of **expr** to the INTEGER data type.

```
CAST expr AS INTEGER
expr::INTEGER
```

In the following example, the user casts a BYTE column to the BLOB type and copies the BLOB data to an operating-system file:

```
SELECT LOTOFILE(mybytecol::blob, 'fname', 'client')
FROM mytab
WHERE pkey = 12345
```

In the following example, the user casts a TEXT column to a CLOB value and then updates a CLOB column in the same table to have the CLOB value derived from the TEXT column:

```
UPDATE newtab SET myclobcol = mytextcol::clob
```


Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
*	Signifies that all fields of a row column or of the row type data returned by a row-column expression are selected	You can use the asterisk (*) notation only in the select list of a SELECT statement.	The asterisk (*) is a literal value that you enter from the keyboard.
<i>alias</i>	Temporary alternative name for a table or view within the scope of a SELECT statement This alternative name is established in the FROM clause of the SELECT statement.	The restrictions depend on the clause of the SELECT statement in which <i>alias</i> occurs.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>column</i>	Name of the column that you are specifying	The restrictions depend on the statement in which column occurs.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>field_name</i>	Name of the row field that you are accessing in the row column or row-column expression	The field must be a member of the row that <i>row-column name</i> or <i>row_col_expr</i> or <i>field name</i> (for nested rows) specifies.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>first</i>	Position of the first character in the portion of the column that you are selecting	The column must be one of the following types: BYTE, CHAR, NCHAR, NVARCHAR, TEXT, or VARCHAR.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>last</i>	Position of the last character in the portion of the column that you are selecting	The column must be one of the following types: BYTE, CHAR, NCHAR, NVARCHAR, TEXT, or VARCHAR.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>row_col_expr</i>	Expression that evaluates to row-type values	The result of the expression must be of row type.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>row_column</i>	Name of the row column that you specify	The data type of the column must be a named row type or an unnamed row type.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>synonym</i>	Name of the synonym in which the specified column occurs	The synonym and the table to which the synonym points must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of the table in which the specified column occurs	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>view</i>	Name of the view in which the specified column occurs	The view must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

The following examples show column expressions:

```
company
items.price
cat_advert [1,15]
```

Use a table or alias name whenever it is necessary to distinguish between columns that have the same name but are in different tables. The `SELECT` statements that the following example shows use **customer_num** from the **customer** and **orders** tables. The first example precedes the column names with table names. The second example precedes the column names with table aliases.

```
SELECT * FROM customer, orders
    WHERE customer.customer_num = orders.customer_num

SELECT * FROM customer c, orders o
    WHERE c.customer_num = o.customer_num
```

Using Dot Notation

Dot notation allows you to qualify an SQL identifier with another SQL identifier. You separate the identifiers with the period (.) symbol. For example, you can qualify a column name with any of the following SQL identifiers:

- Table name: *table_name.column_name*
- View name: *view_name.column_name*
- Synonym name: *syn_name.column_name*

The previous forms of dot notation are called *column projections*.

You can also use dot notation to directly access the fields of a row column, as follows:

```
row-column name.field name
```

This use of dot notation is called a *field projection*. For example, suppose you have a column called **rect** with the following definition:

```
CREATE TABLE rectangles
(
    area float,
    rect ROW(x int, y int, length float, width float)
)
```

The following **SELECT** statement uses dot notation to access field **length** of the **rect** column:

```
SELECT rect.length FROM rectangles
WHERE area = 64
```

Selecting All Fields of a Column with Asterisk Notation

If you want to select all fields of a column that has a row type, you can specify the column name without dot notation. For example, you can select all fields of the **rect** column as follows:

```
SELECT rect FROM rectangles
WHERE area = 64
```

You can also use asterisk notation to project all the fields of a column that has a row type. For example, if you want to use asterisk notation to select all fields of the **rect** column, you can enter the following statement:

```
SELECT rect.* FROM rectangles
WHERE area = 64
```

Asterisk notation is a shorthand form of dot notation that is easier than specifying each field of the **rect** column individually:

```
SELECT rect.x, rect.y, rect.length,
       rect.width
FROM rectangles
WHERE area = 64
```

Asterisk notation is not necessary with row-type columns because you can specify just the column name itself to project all of its fields. However, asterisk notation is quite helpful with row-type expressions such as subqueries and user-defined functions that return row-type values. For further information see [“Using Dot Notation with Row-Type Expressions” on page 4-96](#).

You can use asterisk notation with columns and expressions of row type in the select list of a **SELECT** statement only. You cannot use asterisk notation with columns and expressions of row type in any other clause of a **SELECT** statement.

Selecting Nested Fields

When the row type that defines a column itself contains other row types, the column contains nested fields. You use dot notation to access these nested fields within a column. For example, assume that the **address** column of the **employee** table contains the fields **street**, **city**, **state**, and **zip**. In addition, the **zip** field contains the nested fields: **z_code** and **z_suffix**. A query on the **zip** field returns values for the **z_code** and **z_suffix** fields. However, you can specify that a query returns only specific nested fields. The following example shows how to use dot notation to construct a SELECT statement that returns rows for the **z_code** field of the **address** column only.

```
SELECT address.zip.z_code
FROM employee
```

Rules of Precedence

The database server uses the following precedence rules to interpret dot notation:

1. schema *name_a* . table *name_b* . column *name_c* . field *name_d*
2. table *name_a* . column *name_b* . field *name_c* . field *name_d*
3. column *name_a* . field *name_b* . field *name_c* . field *name_d*

When the meaning of a particular identifier is ambiguous, the database server uses precedence rules to determine which database object the identifier specifies. Consider the following two tables:

```
CREATE TABLE b (c ROW(d INTEGER, e CHAR(2)));
CREATE TABLE c (d INTEGER);
```

In the following SELECT statement, the expression **c.d** references column **d** of table **c** (rather than field **d** of column **c** in table **b**) because a table identifier has a higher precedence than a column identifier:

```
SELECT *
FROM b,c
WHERE c.d = 10
```

For more information about precedence rules and how to use dot notation with row columns, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

Using Dot Notation with Row-Type Expressions

You can use dot notation whenever a column has a row data type. However, in addition to column expressions, you can use dot notation with any expression that evaluates to a row type. For example, you can use dot notation in a subquery in an INSERT statement if the subquery returns a single row of values. Assume that you have created a row type named **row_t**:

```
CREATE ROW TYPE row_t (part_id INT, amt INT)
```

Also assume that you have created a typed table named **tab1** that is based on the **row_t** row type:

```
CREATE TABLE tab1 OF TYPE row_t
```

Assume also that you have inserted the following values into table **tab1**:

```
INSERT INTO tab1 VALUES (ROW(1,7));
INSERT INTO tab1 VALUES (ROW(2,10));
```

Finally, assume that you have created another table named **tab2**:

```
CREATE TABLE tab2 (colx INT)
```

Now you can use dot notation to insert the value from just the **part_id** column of table **tab1** into the **tab2** table:

```
INSERT INTO tab2
VALUES ((SELECT t FROM tab1 t
WHERE part_id = 1).part_id)
```

The asterisk form of dot notation is not necessary when you want to select all fields of a row type column because you can just specify the column name itself to select all of its fields. However, the asterisk form of dot notation can be quite helpful when you use a subquery as in the preceding example or when you call a user-defined function to return row type values.

Suppose that you create a user-defined function named **new_row** that returns row type values, and you want to call this function to insert the row type values into a table. Asterisk notation makes it easy to specify that all the row type values produced by the **new_row** function are to be inserted into the table:

```
INSERT INTO mytab2 SELECT new_row (mycol).* FROM mytab1
```

Limitations on Dot Notation

References to the fields of a row-type column or a row-type expression are not allowed in fragment expressions. A fragment expression is an expression that defines a table fragment or an index fragment in statements like CREATE TABLE, CREATE INDEX, and ALTER FRAGMENT.

Using Subscripts on Character Columns

You can use subscripts on **CHAR**, **VARCHAR**, **NCHAR**, **NVARCHAR**, **BYTE**, and **TEXT** columns. The subscripts indicate the starting and ending character positions that are contained in the expression. Together the column subscripts define a column substring. The column substring is the portion of the column that is contained in the expression.

For example, if a value in the **lname** column of the **customer** table is Greenburg, the following expression evaluates to **burg**:

```
lname[6,9]
```

For information on the GLS aspects of column subscripts and substrings, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#). ♦

GLS

Using Rowids

In Dynamic Server, you can use the **rowid** column that is associated with a table row as a property of the row. The **rowid** column is essentially a hidden column in nonfragmented tables and in fragmented tables that were created with the WITH ROWIDS clause. The **rowid** column is unique for each row, but it is not necessarily sequential. Informix recommends, however, that you use primary keys as an access method rather than exploiting the **rowid** column.

The following examples show possible uses of the ROWID keyword in a SELECT statement:

```
SELECT *, ROWID FROM customer

SELECT fname, ROWID FROM customer
ORDER BY ROWID

SELECT HEX(rowid) FROM customer
WHERE customer_num = 106
```

IDS

The last SELECT statement example shows how to get the page number (the first six digits after 0x) and the slot number (the last two digits) of the location of your row.

You cannot use the ROWID keyword in the select list of a query that contains an aggregate function.

Using Smart Large Objects

The SELECT, UPDATE, and INSERT statements do not manipulate the values of smart large objects directly. Instead, they use a *handle value*, which is a type of pointer, to access the BLOB or CLOB value, as follows:

- The SELECT statement returns a handle value to the BLOB or CLOB value that the select list specifies.
SELECT does not return the actual data for the BLOB or CLOB column that the select list specifies. Instead, it returns a handle value to the column data.
- The INSERT and UPDATE statements accept a handle value for a BLOB or CLOB to be inserted or updated.
INSERT and UPDATE do not send the actual data for the BLOB or CLOB column to the database server. Instead, they accept a handle value to this data as the column value.

To access the data of a smart-large-object column, you must use one of the following application programming interfaces (APIs):

- From within an Informix ESQL/C program, use the ESQL/C library functions that access smart large objects.
For more information, see the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#).
- From within a C program such as a DataBlade module, use the Client and Server API.
For more information, see your *DataBlade Developers Kit User's Guide*.

You cannot use the name of a smart-large-object column in expressions that involve arithmetic operators. For example, operations such as addition or subtraction on the smart-large-object handle value have no meaning.

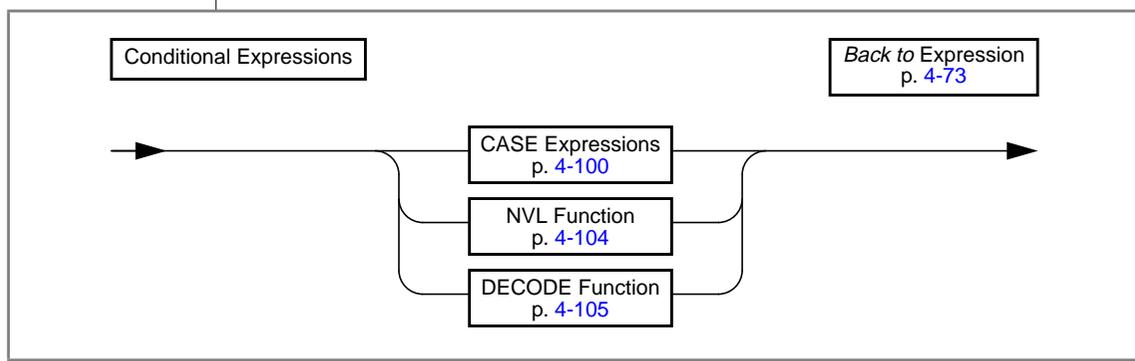
When you select a smart-large-object column, you can assign the handle value to any number of columns: all columns with the same handle value share the CLOB or BLOB value across several columns. This storage arrangement reduces the amount of disk space that the CLOB or BLOB data takes. However, when several columns share the same smart-large-object value, the following conditions result:

- The chance of lock contention on a CLOB or BLOB column increases. If two columns share the same smart-large-object value, the data might be locked by either column that needs to access it.
- The CLOB or BLOB value can be updated from a number of points

To remove these constraints, you can create separate copies of the BLOB or CLOB data for each column that needs to access it. You can use the **LOCOPY** function to create a copy of an existing smart large object. You can also use the built-in functions **LOTOFILE**, **FILETOCLOB**, and **FILETOBLOB** to access smart-large-object values. For more information on these functions, see [“Smart-Large-Object Functions” on page 4-146](#). For more information on the BLOB and CLOB data types, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

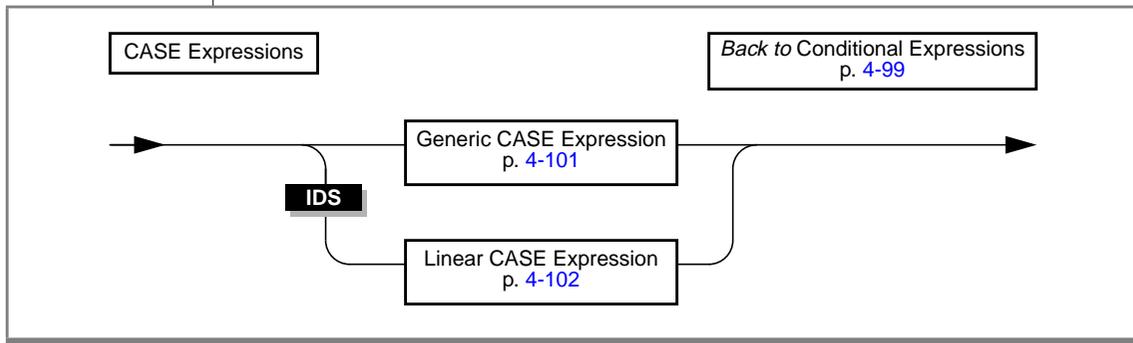
Conditional Expressions

Conditional expressions return values that depend on the outcome of conditional tests. The following diagram shows the syntax for Conditional Expressions.



CASE Expressions

The CASE expression allows an SQL statement such as the SELECT statement to return one of several possible results, depending on which of several condition tests evaluates to true. The CASE expression has two forms as the following diagram shows: generic CASE expressions and linear CASE expressions.



Using CASE Expressions

You can use a generic or linear CASE expression wherever you can use a column expression in an SQL statement (for example, in the select list of a SELECT statement.) You must include at least one WHEN clause in the CASE expression. Subsequent WHEN clauses and the ELSE clause are optional.

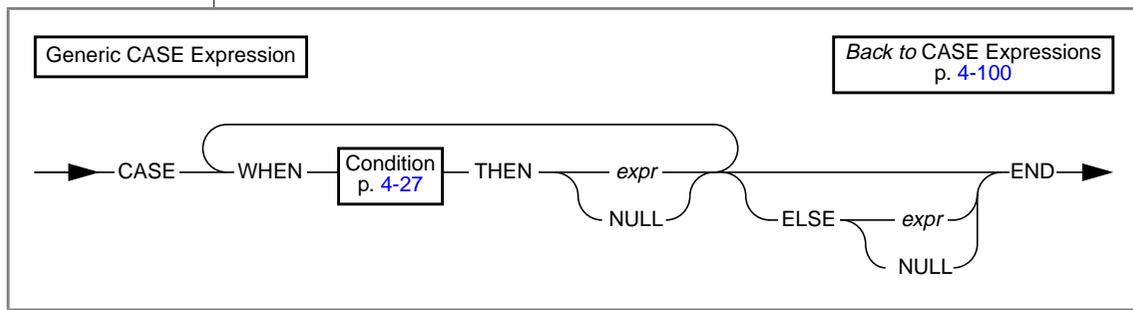
The expressions in the search condition or the result value expression can contain subqueries.

You can nest a CASE expression in another CASE expression.

When a CASE expression appears in an aggregate expression, you cannot use aggregate functions in the CASE expression.

Generic CASE Expressions

A generic CASE expression tests for a true condition in a WHEN clause and when it finds a true condition it returns the result specified in the THEN clause.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>expr</i>	Expression that returns a result value of a certain data type	The data type of <i>expr</i> in a THEN clause must be compatible with the data types of other value expressions in other THEN clauses.	Expression, p. 4-73

The database server processes the WHEN clauses in the order that they appear in the statement. As soon as the database server finds a WHEN clause whose search condition evaluates to true, it takes the corresponding result value expression as the overall result of the CASE expression, and it stops processing the CASE expression.

If no WHEN condition evaluates to true, the database server takes the result of the ELSE clause as the overall result. If no WHEN condition evaluates to true, and no ELSE clause was specified, the resulting value is null. You can use the IS NULL condition to handle null results. For information on how to handle null values, see [“IS NULL Condition” on page 4-36](#).

The following example shows the use of a generic CASE expression in the select list of a SELECT statement. In this example the user retrieves the name and address of each customer as well as a calculated number that is based on the number of problems that exist for that customer.

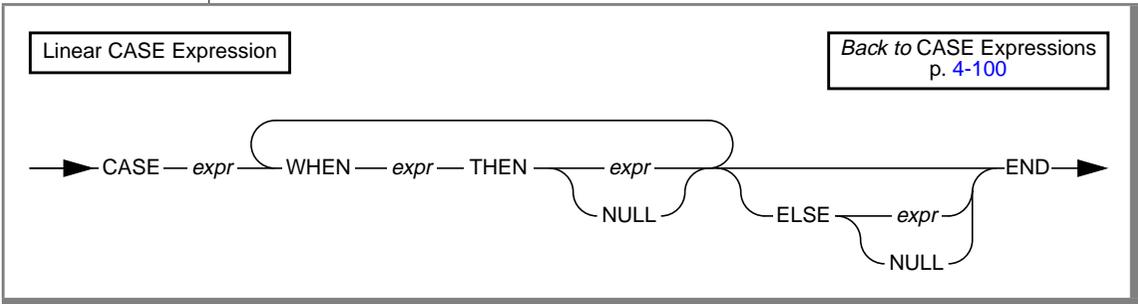
```
SELECT cust_name,
       CASE
         WHEN number_of_problems = 0
           THEN 100
         WHEN number_of_problems > 0 AND number_of_problems < 4
           THEN number_of_problems * 500
         WHEN number_of_problems >= 4 and number_of_problems <= 9
           THEN number_of_problems * 400
         ELSE
           (number_of_problems * 300) + 250
       END,
       cust_address
FROM custtab
```

In a generic CASE expression, all the results should be of the same type, or they should evaluate to a common compatible type. If the results in all the WHEN clauses are not of the same type, or if they do not evaluate to values of mutually compatible types, an error occurs.

IDS

Linear CASE Expressions

A linear CASE expression tests for a match between the value expression that follows the CASE keyword and a value expression in a WHEN clause.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>expr</i>	Expression that evaluates to a value of a certain data type or that returns a result value of a certain data type	<p>The data type of the <i>expr</i> that follows the WHEN keyword in a WHEN clause must be compatible with the data type of the value expression that follows the CASE keyword.</p> <p>The data type of <i>expr</i> in a THEN clause must be compatible with the data types of other value expressions in other THEN clauses.</p>	Expression, p. 4-73

First the database server evaluates the value expression that follows the CASE keyword. Then the database server processes the WHEN clauses in the order that they appear in the CASE expression. As soon as the database server finds a WHEN clause where the value expression after the WHEN keyword evaluates to the same value as the value expression that follows the CASE keyword, it takes the value expression that follows the THEN keyword as the overall result of the CASE expression. Then the database server stops processing the CASE expression.

If none of the value expressions that follow the WHEN keywords evaluates to the same value as the value expression that follows the CASE keyword, the database server takes the result value expression of the ELSE clause as the overall result of the CASE expression. If all of the value expressions that follow the WHEN keyword in all the WHEN clauses do not evaluate to the same value as the value expression that follows the CASE keyword, and the user did not specify an ELSE clause, the resulting value is null.

The following example shows a linear CASE expression in the select list of a SELECT statement. For each movie in a table of movie titles, the SELECT statement displays the title of the movie, the cost of the movie, and the type of movie. The statement uses a CASE expression to derive the type of each movie.

```
SELECT title,
       CASE movie_type
         WHEN 1 THEN 'HORROR'
         WHEN 2 THEN 'COMEDY'
         WHEN 3 THEN 'ROMANCE'
         WHEN 4 THEN 'WESTERN'
         ELSE 'UNCLASSIFIED'
       END,
       our_cost
FROM movie_titles
```

In linear CASE expressions, the types of value expressions in all the WHEN clauses have to be compatible with the type of the value expression that follows the CASE keyword.

NVL Function

The NVL expression returns different results depending on whether its first argument evaluates to null.

NVL Function

[Back to Conditional Expressions](#)
p. 4-99



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>expr1</i> <i>expr2</i>	Any expression that evaluates to a value of a certain data type or that returns a result value of a certain data type	The expression cannot be a host variable or a BYTE or TEXT data type. The <i>expression1</i> and <i>expression2</i> values must evaluate to a compatible data type.	Expression, p. 4-73

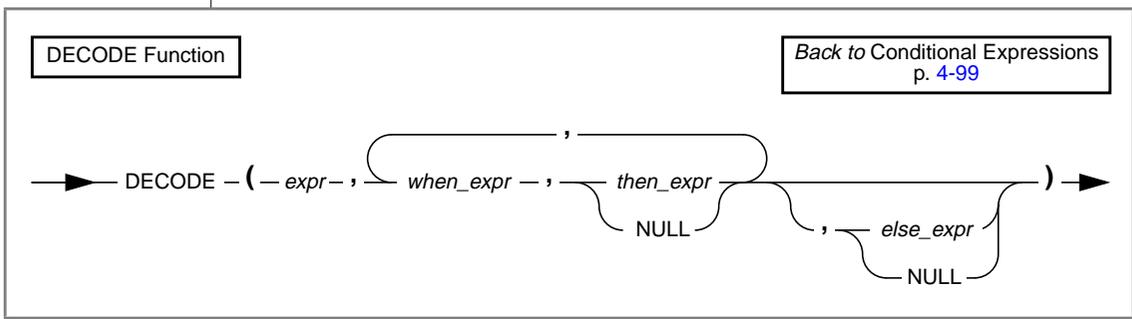
NVL evaluates *expression1*. If *expression1* is not null, NVL returns the value of *expression1*. If *expression1* is null, NVL returns the value of *expression2*. The expressions *expression1* and *expression2* can be of any data type, as long as they evaluate to a common compatible type.

Suppose that the **addr** column of the **employees** table has null values in some rows, and the user wants to be able to print the label `Address unknown` for these rows. The user enters the following SELECT statement to display the label `Address unknown` when the **addr** column has a null value.

```
SELECT fname, NVL (addr, 'Address unknown') AS address
FROM employees
```

DECODE Function

The **DECODE** expression is similar to the **CASE** expression in that it can print different results depending on the values found in a specified column.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>expr</i> <i>else_expr</i> <i>then_expr</i> <i>when_expr</i>	Expression that evaluates to a value of a certain data type or that returns a result value of a certain data type	The data type of <i>when_expr</i> must be compatible with the data type of <i>expr</i> . The data type of <i>then_expr</i> must be compatible with the data type of <i>else_expr</i> . You cannot specify NULL for the <i>when_expr</i> . The database server does not decode undefined values.	Expression, p. 4-73

The expressions *expr*, *when_expr*, and *then_expr* are required. **DECODE** evaluates *expr* and compares it to *when_expr*. If the value of *when_expr* matches the value of *expr*, **DECODE** returns *then_expr*.

The expressions *when_expr* and *then_expr* are an expression pair, and you can specify any number of expression pairs in the **DECODE** function. In all cases, **DECODE** compares the first member of the pair against *expr* and returns the second member of the pair if the first member matches *expr*.

If no expression matches *expr*, **DECODE** returns *else_expr*. However, if no expression matches *expr* and the user did not specify *else_expr*, **DECODE** returns NULL.

You can specify any data type as input, but two limitations exist.

- All occurrences of the parameter *when_expr* must have the same data type, or they must evaluate to a common compatible type. Similarly, all occurrences of *when_expr* must have the same data type as *expr*, or they must evaluate to a common compatible type.
- All occurrences of the parameter *then_expr* must have the same data type, or they must evaluate to a common compatible type. Similarly, all occurrences of *then_expr* must have the same data type as *else_expr*, or they must evaluate to a common compatible type.

Suppose that a user wants to convert descriptive values in the **evaluation** column of the **students** table to numeric values in the output. The following table shows the contents of the **students** table.

firstname	evaluation
Edward	Great
Joe	Not done
Mary	Good
Jim	Poor

The user now enters a **SELECT** statement with the **DECODE** function to convert the descriptive values in the **evaluation** column to numeric equivalents.

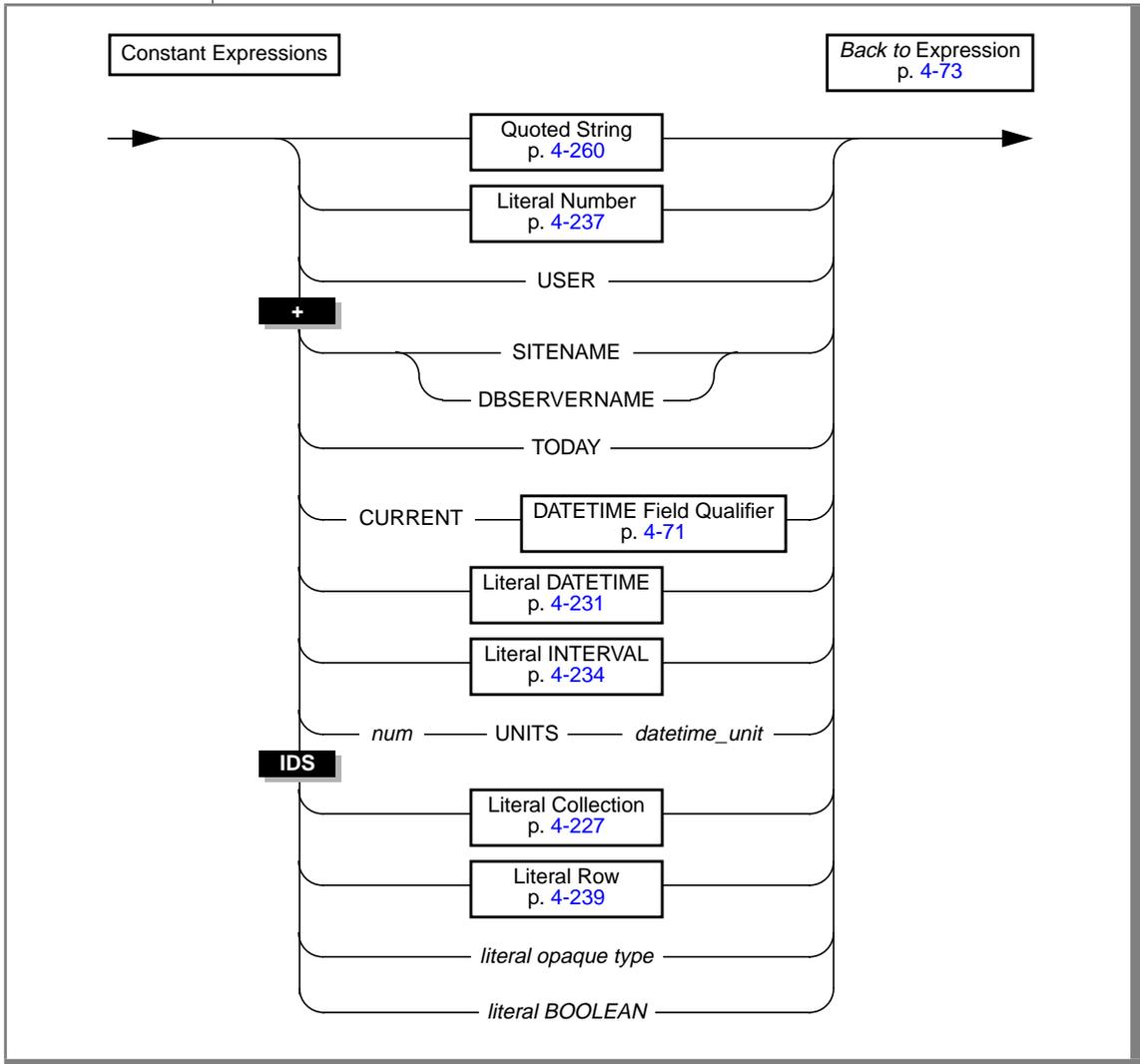
```
SELECT firstname, DECODE(evaluation,
    'Poor', 0,
    'Fair', 25,
    'Good', 50,
    'Very Good', 75,
    'Great', 100,
    -1) as grade
FROM students
```

The following table shows the output of this **SELECT** statement.

firstname	grade
Edward	100
Joe	-1
Mary	50
Jim	0

Constant Expressions

The following diagram shows the possible syntax for constant expressions.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>datetime_unit</i>	Unit that specifies an interval precision; that is, YEAR, MONTH, DAY, HOUR, MINUTE, SECOND, or FRACTION If the unit is YEAR, the expression is a year-month interval; otherwise, the expression is a day-time interval.	The datetime unit must be one of the keywords that is listed in the Purpose column. You can enter the keyword in uppercase or lowercase letters. You cannot put quotation marks around the keyword.	See the Restrictions column.
<i>literal BOOLEAN</i>	Literal representation of a BOOLEAN value	A literal BOOLEAN can be only <i>t</i> (TRUE) or <i>f</i> (FALSE).	Quoted string, p. 4-260
<i>literal opaque type</i>	Literal representation for an opaque data type	The literal must be recognized by the input support function of the associated opaque type.	Defined by the developer of the opaque type.
<i>num</i>	Literal number that you use to specify the number of datetime units For more information on this parameter, see “UNITS Keyword” on page 4-114 .	If <i>num</i> is not an integer, it is rounded down to the nearest whole number when it is used. The value that you specify for <i>n</i> must be appropriate for the datetime unit that you choose.	Literal Number, p. 4-237

Quoted String as an Expression

The following examples show quoted strings as expressions:

```
SELECT 'The first name is ', fname FROM customer
INSERT INTO manufact VALUES ('SPS', 'SuperSport')
UPDATE cust_calls SET res_dtime = '1997-1-1 10:45'
WHERE customer_num = 120 AND call_code = 'B'
```

For more information, see [“Quoted String” on page 4-260](#).

Literal Number as an Expression

The following examples show literal numbers as expressions:

```
INSERT INTO items VALUES (4, 35, 52, 'HRO', 12, 4.00)
INSERT INTO acreage VALUES (4, 5.2e4)
SELECT unit_price + 5 FROM stock
SELECT -1 * balance FROM accounts
```

For more information, see [“Literal Number” on page 4-237](#).

USER Function

The **USER** function returns a string that contains the login name of the current user (that is, the person running the process).

The following statements show how you might use the **USER** function:

```
INSERT INTO cust_calls VALUES
  (221,CURRENT,USER,'B','Decimal point off', NULL, NULL)
SELECT * FROM cust_calls WHERE user_id = USER
UPDATE cust_calls SET user_id = USER WHERE customer_num = 220
```

The **USER** function does not change the case of a user ID. If you use **USER** in an expression and the present user is **Robertm**, the **USER** function returns **Robertm**, not **robertm**.

If you specify **USER** as the default value for a column, the column must have a **CHAR**, **VARCHAR**, **NCHAR**, or **NVARCHAR** data type.

If you specify **USER** as the default value for a column, Informix recommends that the size of the column be at least 32 bytes long. You risk getting an error message during **INSERT** and **ALTER TABLE** operations if the length of the column is too small to store the default value. ♦

If you specify **USER** as the default value for a column, Informix recommends that the size of the column be at least 8 bytes long. You risk getting an error message during **INSERT** and **ALTER TABLE** operations if the length of the column is too small to store the default value. ♦

IDS

XPS

ANSI

In an ANSI-compliant database, if you do not use quotes around the owner name, the name of the table owner is stored as uppercase letters. If you use the **USER** keyword as part of a condition, you must be sure that the way the user name is stored agrees with the values that the **USER** function returns, with respect to case. ♦

DBSERVERNAME and SITENAME Functions

The **DBSERVERNAME** function returns the database server name, as defined in the ONCONFIG file for the installation where the current database resides or as specified in the **INFORMIXSERVER** environment variable. The two function names, **DBSERVERNAME** and **SITENAME** are synonymous. You can use the **DBSERVERNAME** function to determine the location of a table, to put information into a table, or to extract information from a table. You can insert **DBSERVERNAME** into a simple character field or use it as a default value for a column.

If you specify **DBSERVERNAME** as a default value for a column, the column must have a CHAR, VARCHAR, NCHAR, or NVARCHAR data type.

IDS

If you specify **DBSERVERNAME** as the default value for a column, Informix recommends that the size of the column be at least 128 bytes long. You risk getting an error message during INSERT and ALTER TABLE operations if the length of the column is too small to store the default value. ♦

XPS

If you specify **DBSERVERNAME** as the default value for a column, Informix recommends that the size of the column be at least 18 bytes long. You risk getting an error message during INSERT and ALTER TABLE operations if the length of the column is too small to store the default value. ♦

In the following example, the first statement returns the name of the database server where the **customer** table resides. Because the query is not restricted with a WHERE clause, it returns **DBSERVERNAME** for every row in the table. If you add the **DISTINCT** keyword to the **SELECT** clause, the query returns **DBSERVERNAME** once. The second statement adds a row that contains the current site name to a table. The third statement returns all the rows that have the site name of the current system in **site_col**. The last statement changes the company name in the **customer** table to the current system name.

```
SELECT DBSERVERNAME FROM customer

INSERT INTO host_tab VALUES ('1', DBSERVERNAME)

SELECT * FROM host_tab WHERE site_col = DBSERVERNAME

UPDATE customer SET company = DBSERVERNAME
WHERE customer_num = 120
```

TODAY Function

Use the **TODAY** function to return the system date as a **DATE** data type. If you specify **TODAY** as a default value for a column, it must be a **DATE** column.

The following examples show how you might use the **TODAY** function in an **INSERT**, **UPDATE**, or **SELECT** statement:

```
UPDATE orders (order_date) SET order_date = TODAY
WHERE order_num = 1005

INSERT INTO orders VALUES
(0, TODAY, 120, NULL, N, '1AUE217', NULL, NULL, NULL,
NULL)

SELECT * FROM orders WHERE ship_date = TODAY
```

CURRENT Function

The **CURRENT** function returns a **DATETIME** value with the date and time of day, showing the current instant.

If you do not specify a datetime qualifier, the default qualifier is **YEAR TO FRACTION(3)**. The **USEOSTIME** configuration parameter specifies whether or not the database server uses subsecond precision when it obtains the current time from the operating system. For more information on the **USEOSTIME** configuration parameter, see your [Administrator's Reference](#).

You can use the **CURRENT** function in any context in which you can use a literal DATETIME (see [“Literal DATETIME” on page 4-231](#)). If you specify **CURRENT** as the default value for a column, it must be a DATETIME column and the qualifier of **CURRENT** must match the column qualifier, as the following example shows:

```
CREATE TABLE new_acct (col1 int, col2 DATETIME YEAR TO DAY
    DEFAULT CURRENT YEAR TO DAY)
```

If you use the **CURRENT** keyword in more than one place in a single statement, identical values can be returned at each point of the call. You cannot rely on the **CURRENT** function to provide distinct values each time it executes.

The returned value comes from the system clock and is fixed when any SQL statement starts. For example, any call to **CURRENT** from inside the SPL function that an EXECUTE FUNCTION (or EXECUTE PROCEDURE) statement names returns the value when the SPL function starts.

The **CURRENT** function is always evaluated in the database server where the current database is located. If the current database is in a remote database server, the returned value is from the remote host.

The **CURRENT** function might not execute in the physical order in which it appears in a statement. You should not use the **CURRENT** function to mark the start, end, or a specific point in the execution of a statement.

If your platform does not provide a system call that returns the current time with subsecond precision, the **CURRENT** function returns a zero for the FRACTION field.

In the following example, the first statement uses the **CURRENT** function in a WHERE condition. The second statement uses the **CURRENT** function as the input for the **DAY** function. The last query selects rows whose **call_dtime** value is within a range from the beginning of 1997 to the current instant.

```
DELETE FROM cust_calls WHERE
    res_dtime < CURRENT YEAR TO MINUTE

SELECT * FROM orders WHERE DAY(ord_date) < DAY(CURRENT)

SELECT * FROM cust_calls WHERE call_dtime
    BETWEEN '1997-1-1 00:00:00' AND CURRENT
```

For more information, see [“DATETIME Field Qualifier” on page 4-71](#).

Literal DATETIME as an Expression

The following examples show literal DATETIME as an expression:

```
SELECT DATETIME (1997-12-6) YEAR TO DAY FROM customer

UPDATE cust_calls SET res_dtime = DATETIME (1998-07-07 10:40)
      YEAR TO MINUTE
      WHERE customer_num = 110
      AND call_dtime = DATETIME (1998-07-07 10:24) YEAR TO
      MINUTE

SELECT * FROM cust_calls
      WHERE call_dtime
      = DATETIME (1998-12-25 00:00:00) YEAR TO SECOND
```

For more information, see [“Literal DATETIME” on page 4-231](#).

Literal INTERVAL as an Expression

The following examples show literal INTERVAL as an expression:

```
INSERT INTO manufact VALUES ('CAT', 'Catwalk Sports',
      INTERVAL (16) DAY TO DAY)

SELECT lead_time + INTERVAL (5) DAY TO DAY FROM manufact
```

The second statement in the preceding example adds five days to each value of **lead_time** selected from the **manufact** table.

For more information, see [“Literal INTERVAL” on page 4-234](#).

UNITS Keyword

The UNITS keyword enables you to display a simple interval or increase or decrease a specific interval or datetime value.

If *n* is not an integer, it is rounded down to the nearest whole number when it is used.

In the following example, the first SELECT statement uses the UNITS keyword to select all the manufacturer lead times, increased by five days. The second SELECT statement finds all the calls that were placed more than 30 days ago. If the expression in the WHERE clause returns a value greater than 99 (maximum number of days), the query fails. The last statement increases the lead time for the ANZA manufacturer by two days.

IDS

```

SELECT lead_time + 5 UNITS DAY FROM manufact

SELECT * FROM cust_calls
      WHERE (TODAY - call_dtime) > 30 UNITS DAY

UPDATE manufact SET lead_time = 2 UNITS DAY + lead_time
      WHERE manu_code = 'ANZ'

```

Literal Collection as an Expression

The following examples show literal collections as expressions:

```

INSERT INTO tab_a (set_col) VALUES ("SET{6, 9, 3, 12, 4}")

INSERT INTO TABLE(a_set) VALUES (9765)

UPDATE table1 SET set_col = "LIST{3}"

SELECT set_col FROM table1
      WHERE SET{17} IN (set_col)

```

For more information, see [“Literal Collection” on page 4-227](#). For syntax that allows you to use expressions that evaluate to element values, see [“Collection Constructors” on page 4-118](#).

IDS

Literal Row as an Expression

The following examples show literal rows as expressions:

```

INSERT INTO employee VALUES
      (ROW('103 Baker St', 'San Francisco',
          'CA', 94500))

UPDATE rectangles
      SET rect = ROW(8, 3, 7, 20)
      WHERE area = 140

EXEC SQL update table(:a_row)
      set x=0, y=0, length=10, width=20;

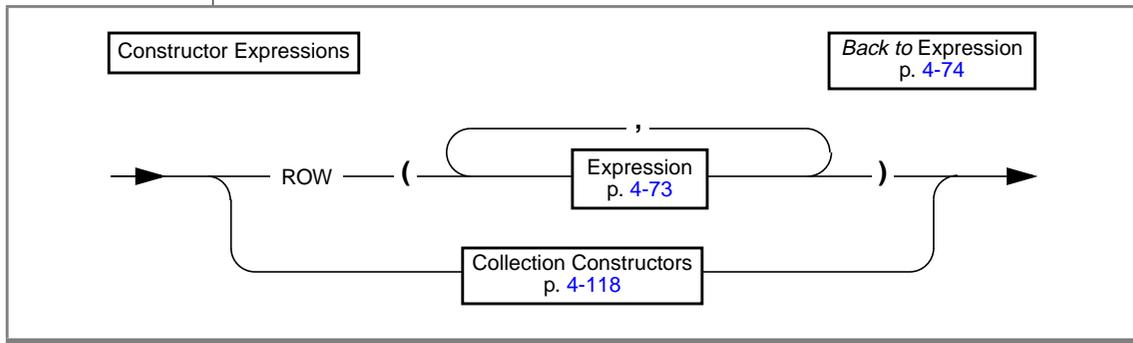
SELECT row_col FROM tab_b
      WHERE ROW(17, 'abc') IN (row_col)

```

For more information, see [“Literal Row” on page 4-239](#). For syntax that allows you to use expressions that evaluate to field values, see [“ROW Constructors” on page 4-116](#).

Constructor Expressions

A *constructor* is a function that the database server uses to create an instance of a particular data type. The database server supports ROW and collection constructors.



ROW Constructors

You use ROW constructors to generate values for row-type columns. Suppose you create the following named row type and a table that contains the named row type **row_t** and an unnamed row type:

```
CREATE ROW TYPE row_t ( x INT, y INT);
CREATE TABLE new_tab
(
  col1 row_t,
  col2 ROW( a CHAR(2), b INT
)
```

When you define a column as a named row type or unnamed row type, you must use a ROW constructor to generate values for the row column. To create a value for either a named row type or unnamed row type, you must complete the following steps:

- Begin the expression with the ROW keyword.
- Specify a value for each field of the row type.
- Enclosed the field values within parentheses.

The format of the value for each field must be compatible with the data type of the row field to which it is assigned.

You can use any kind of expression as a value with a ROW constructor, including literals, functions, and variables. The following examples show the use of different types of expressions with ROW constructors to specify values:

```
ROW(5, 6.77, 'HM0')
ROW(col1.lname, 45000)
ROW('john davis', TODAY)
ROW(USER, SITENAME)
```

The following statement uses literal numbers and quoted strings with ROW constructors to insert values into **col1** and **col2** of the **new_tab** table:

```
INSERT INTO new_tab
VALUES
(
ROW(32, 65)::row_t,
ROW('CA', 34)
)
```

When you use a ROW constructor to generate values for a named row type, you must explicitly cast the row value to the appropriate named row type. The cast is necessary to generate a value of the named row type. To cast the row value as a named row type, you can use the cast operator (::) or the CAST AS keywords, as shown in the following examples:

```
ROW(4,5)::row_t
CAST (ROW(3,4) AS row_t)
```

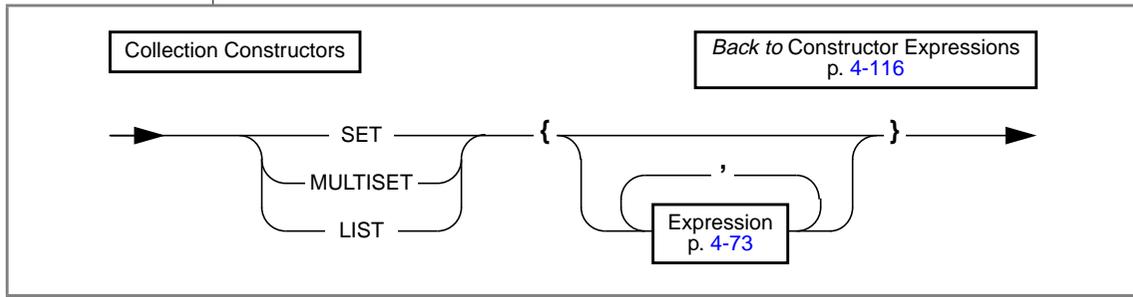
You can use a ROW constructor to generate row type values not only in INSERT and UPDATE statements but also in SELECT statements. In the following example, the WHERE clause of a SELECT statement specifies a row type value that is cast as type **person_t**

```
SELECT *
FROM person_tab
WHERE col1 = ROW('charlie','hunter')::person_t
```

For further information on using ROW constructors in INSERT and UPDATE statements, see the INSERT and UPDATE statements in this manual. For information on named row types, see the CREATE ROW TYPE statement. For information on unnamed row types, see the discussion of the ROW data type in the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#). For task-oriented information on named row types and unnamed row types, see the [Informix Guide to Database Design and Implementation](#).

Collection Constructors

Use a collection constructor to specify values for a collection column.



You can use collection constructors in the WHERE clause of the SELECT statement and the VALUES clause of the INSERT statement. You can also pass collection constructors to UDRs.

The following table differentiates the types of collections that you can construct.

Keyword	Purpose
SET	Indicates a collection of elements with the following qualities: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ The collection must contain unique values. ■ Elements have no specific order associated with them.
MULTISET	Indicates a collection of elements with the following qualities: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ The collection can contain duplicate values. ■ Elements have no specific order associated with them.
LIST	Indicates a collection of elements with the following qualities: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ The collection can contain duplicate values. ■ Elements have ordered positions.

You can use any kind of expression with a collection constructor, including literals, functions, and variables. When you use a collection constructor with a list of arbitrary expressions, the database server evaluates each expression to its equivalent literal form and uses the literal values to construct the collection.

You specify an empty collection with a set of empty braces ({}).

The element type of the collection can be any built-in or extended data type.

Restrictions on Collection Constructors

Elements of a collection cannot be null, therefore if an expression element evaluates to a null value the database server returns an error.

The element type of each expression must be homogeneous, that is, they must be exactly the same type. This can be accomplished by casting the entire collection constructor expression to a collection type, or by casting individual element expressions to the same type.

If the database server cannot determine the collection type and the element types are not homogeneous, then the collection constructor will return an error. In the case of host variables, this determination is made at bind time when the client informs the database server the element type of the host variable.

Examples of Collection Constructors

The following extended example illustrates that you can construct collection with many various expressions as long as the resulting values are of the same type.

```
CREATE FUNCTION f (a int RETURNS int;
RETURN a+1;
END FUNCTION;

CREATE TABLE tab1 (x SET(INT NOT NULL));

INSERT INTO tab1 VALUES
(
SET{10,
    1+2+3,
    f(10)-f(2),
    SQRT(100) +POW(2,3),
```

```
(SELECT tabid FROM systables
   WHERE tabname = 'sysusers'),
'T'::BOOLEAN::INT}
)

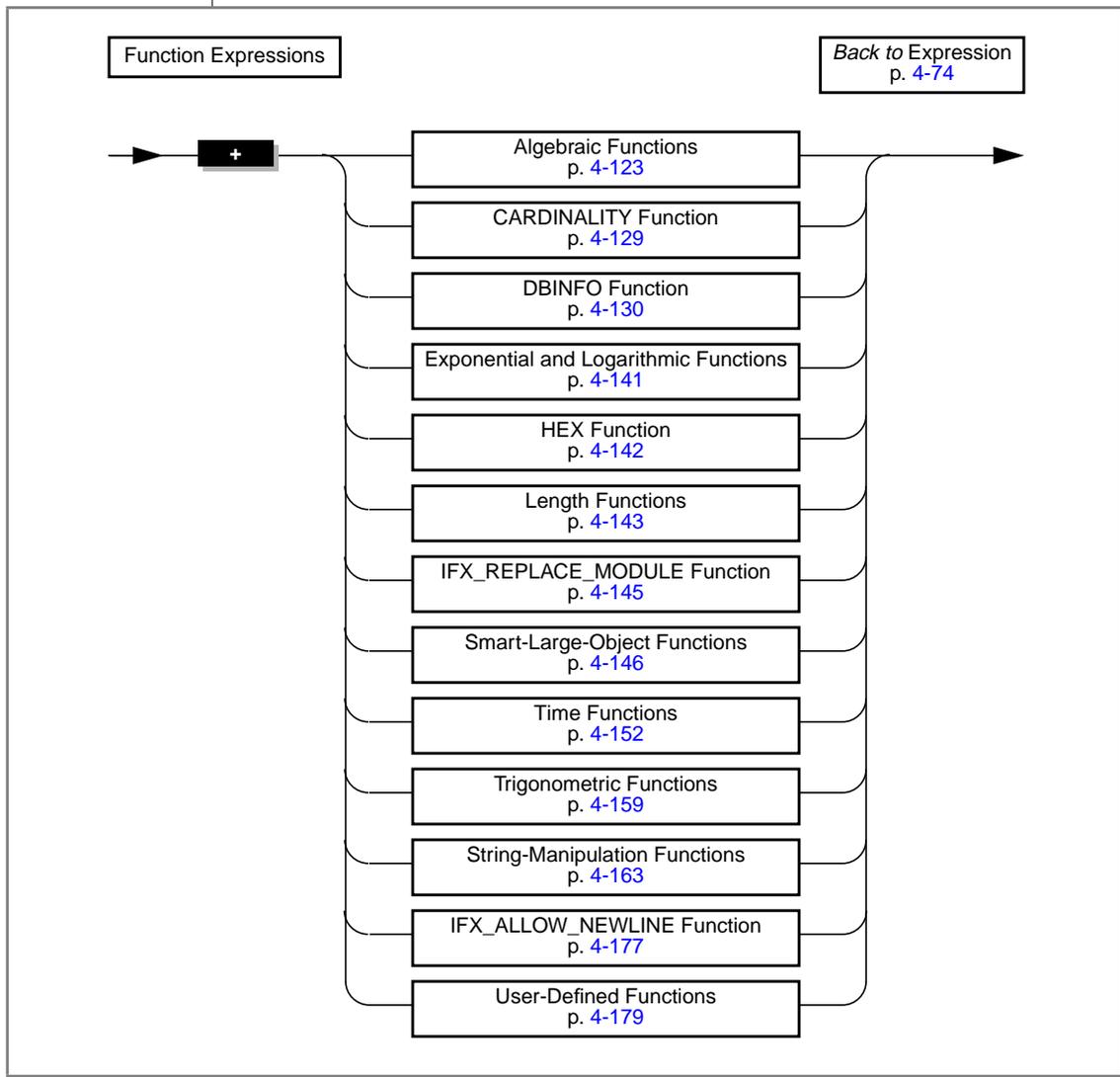
SELECT * FROM tab1 WHERE
x=SET{10,
      1+2+3,
      f(10)-f(2),
      SQRT(100) +POW(2,3),
      (SELECT tabid FROM systables
        WHERE tabname = 'sysusers'),
      'T'::BOOLEAN::INT}
}
```

This example assumes that a cast from BOOLEAN to INT exists.

For information about a more restrictive, but still-supported syntax for how to specify values for a collection column, see [“Literal Collection” on page 4-227](#).

Function Expressions

A function expression can call built-in functions or user-defined functions, as the following diagram shows.



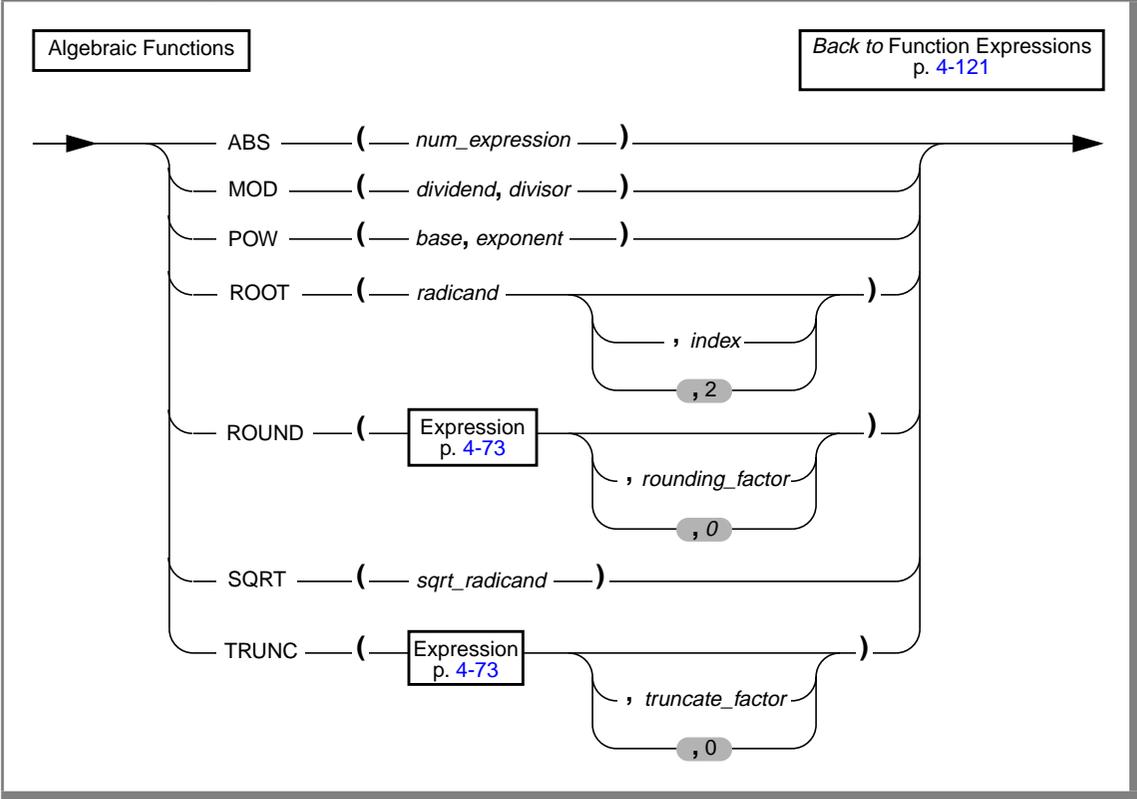
Examples of Function Expressions

The following examples show function expressions:

```
EXTEND (call_dtime, YEAR TO SECOND)
MDY (12, 7, 1900 + cur_yr)
DATE (365/2)
LENGTH ('abc') + LENGTH (pvar)
HEX (customer_num)
HEX (LENGTH(123))
TAN (radians)
ABS (-32)
EXP (3)
MOD (10,3)
```

Algebraic Functions

An algebraic function takes one or more arguments, as the following diagram shows.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>base</i>	Value to be raised to the power that is specified in exponent The base value is the first argument that is supplied to the POW function.	You can enter in <i>base</i> any real number or any expression that evaluates to a real number.	Expression, p. 4-73

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>dividend</i>	Value to be divided by the value in divisor The <i>dividend</i> value is the first argument supplied to the MOD function.	You can enter in <i>dividend</i> any real number or any expression that evaluates to a real number.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>divisor</i>	Value by which the value in dividend is to be divided The <i>divisor</i> value is the second argument that is supplied to the MOD function.	You can enter in <i>divisor</i> any real number except zero or any expression that evaluates to a real number other than zero.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>exponent</i>	Power to which the value that is specified in base is to be raised The <i>exponent</i> value is the second argument that is supplied to the POW function.	You can enter in <i>exponent</i> any real number or any expression that evaluates to a real number.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>index</i>	Type of root to be returned, where 2 represents square root, 3 represents cube root, and so on The <i>index</i> value is the second argument that is supplied to the ROOT function. The default value of <i>index</i> is 2.	You can enter in <i>index</i> any real number except zero or any expression that evaluates to a real number other than zero.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>num_expression</i>	Numeric expression for which an absolute value is to be returned The expression serves as the argument for the ABS function.	The value of <i>num_expression</i> can be any real number.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>radicand</i>	Expression whose root value is to be returned The radicand value is the first argument that is supplied to the ROOT function.	You can enter in <i>radicand</i> any real number or any expression that evaluates to a real number.	Expression, p. 4-73

(2 of 3)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>rounding_factor</i>	<p>Number of digits to which a numeric expression is to be rounded</p> <p>The <i>rounding_factor</i> value is the second argument that is supplied to the ROUND function. The default value of <i>rounding_factor</i> is zero. This default means that the numeric expression is rounded to zero digits or the ones place.</p>	The value you specify in <i>rounding_factor</i> must be an integer between +32 and -32, inclusive.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>sqrt_radicand</i>	<p>Expression whose square root value is to be returned</p> <p>The <i>sqrt_radicand</i> value is the argument that is supplied to the SQRT function.</p>	You can enter in <i>sqrt_radicand</i> any real number or any expression that evaluates to a real number.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>truncate_factor</i>	<p>Position to which a numeric expression is to be truncated</p> <p>The <i>truncate_factor</i> value is the second argument that is supplied to the TRUNC function. The default value of <i>truncate_factor</i> is zero. This default means that the numeric expression is truncated to zero digits or the ones place.</p>	The value you specify in <i>truncate_factor</i> must be an integer between +32 and -32, inclusive. For more information on this restriction, see “TRUNC Function” on page 4-128.	Literal Number, p. 4-237

(3 of 3)

ABS Function

The **ABS** function gives the absolute value for a given expression. The function requires a single numeric argument. The value returned is the same as the argument type. The following example shows all orders of more than \$20 paid in cash (+) or store credit (-). The **stores_demo** database does not contain any negative balances; however, you might have negative balances in your application.

```
SELECT order_num, customer_num, ship_charge
FROM orders WHERE ABS(ship_charge) > 20
```

MOD Function

The **MOD** function returns the modulus or remainder value for two numeric expressions. You provide integer expressions for the dividend and divisor. The divisor cannot be 0. The value returned is INT8. The following example uses a 30-day billing cycle to determine how far into the billing cycle today is:

```
SELECT MOD(today - MDY(1,1,year(today)),30) FROM orders
```

POW Function

The **POW** function raises the *base* to the *exponent*. This function requires two numeric arguments. The return type is FLOAT. The following example returns all the information for circles whose areas (πr^2) are less than 1,000 square units:

```
SELECT * FROM circles WHERE (3.1416 * POW(radius,2)) < 1000
```

If you want to use *e*, the base of natural logarithms, as the base, see the [“EXP Function” on page 4-141](#).

ROOT Function

The **ROOT** function returns the root value of a numeric expression. This function requires at least one numeric argument (the *radicand* argument) and allows no more than two (the *radicand* and *index* arguments). If only the *radicand* argument is supplied, the value 2 is used as a default value for the *index* argument. The value 0 cannot be used as the value of *index*. The value that the **ROOT** function returns is FLOAT. The first SELECT statement in the following example takes the square root of the expression. The second SELECT statement takes the cube root of the expression.

```
SELECT ROOT(9) FROM angles          -- square root of 9
SELECT ROOT(64,3) FROM angles       -- cube root of 64
```

The **SQRT** function uses the form $SQRT(x)=ROOT(x)$ if no index is given.

ROUND Function

The **ROUND** function returns the rounded value of an expression. The expression must be numeric or must be converted to numeric.

If you omit the digit indication, the value is rounded to zero digits or to the ones place. The digit limitation of 32 (+ and -) refers to the entire decimal value.

Positive-digit values indicate rounding to the right of the decimal point; negative-digit values indicate rounding to the left of the decimal point, as [Figure 4-1](#) shows.

Figure 4-1
ROUND Function

Expression:	2 4 5 3 6 . 8 7 4 6
ROUND (24,536.8746, -2) = 24,500.00	↓ ↓ ↓
ROUND (24,536.8746, 0) = 24,537.00	↓ ↓ ↓
ROUND (24,536.8746, 2) = 24,536.87	-2 0 2

The following example shows how you can use the **ROUND** function with a column expression in a **SELECT** statement. This statement displays the order number and rounded total price (to zero places) of items whose rounded total price (to zero places) is equal to 124.00.

```
SELECT order_num , ROUND(total_price) FROM items
WHERE ROUND(total_price) = 124.00
```

If you use a **MONEY** data type as the argument for the **ROUND** function and you round to zero places, the value displays with **.00**. The **SELECT** statement in the following example rounds an **INTEGER** value and a **MONEY** value. It displays 125 and a rounded price in the form **xxx.00** for each row in **items**.

```
SELECT ROUND(125.46), ROUND(total_price) FROM items
```

SQRT Function

The **SQRT** function returns the square root of a numeric expression.

The following example returns the square root of 9 for each row of the **angles** table:

```
SELECT SQRT(9) FROM angles
```

TRUNC Function

The **TRUNC** function returns the truncated value of a numeric expression.

The expression must be numeric or a form that can be converted to a numeric expression. If you omit the digit indication, the value is truncated to zero digits or to the one's place. The digit limitation of 32 (+ and -) refers to the entire decimal value.

Positive digit values indicate truncating to the right of the decimal point; negative digit values indicate truncating to the left of the decimal point, as [Figure 4-2](#) shows.

Figure 4-2
TRUNC Function

Expression:	2 4 5 3 6 . 8 7 4 6
TRUNC (24536.8746, -2) =24500	↓ ↓ ↓
TRUNC (24536.8746, 0) = 24536	↓ ↓ ↓
TRUNC (24536.8746, 2) = 24536.87	-2 0 2

If you use a **MONEY** data type as the argument for the **TRUNC** function and you truncate to zero places, the **.00** places are removed. For example, the following **SELECT** statement truncates a **MONEY** value and an **INTEGER** value. It displays 125 and a truncated price in integer format for each row in **items**.

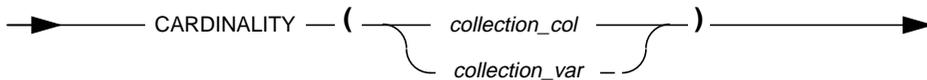
```
SELECT TRUNC(125.46), TRUNC(total_price) FROM items
```

IDS

CARDINALITY Function

The **CARDINALITY** function returns the number of elements in a collection column (SET, MULTISET, LIST).

CARDINALITY Function

[Back to Function Expressions](#)
 p. 4-121


Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>collection_col</i>	Name of an existing collection column	You must specify an integer or an expression that evaluates to an integer.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>collection_var</i>	Name of a host or program collection variable	The collection variable must exist.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

Suppose that the **set_col** SET column contains the following value:

```
{3, 7, 9, 16, 0}
```

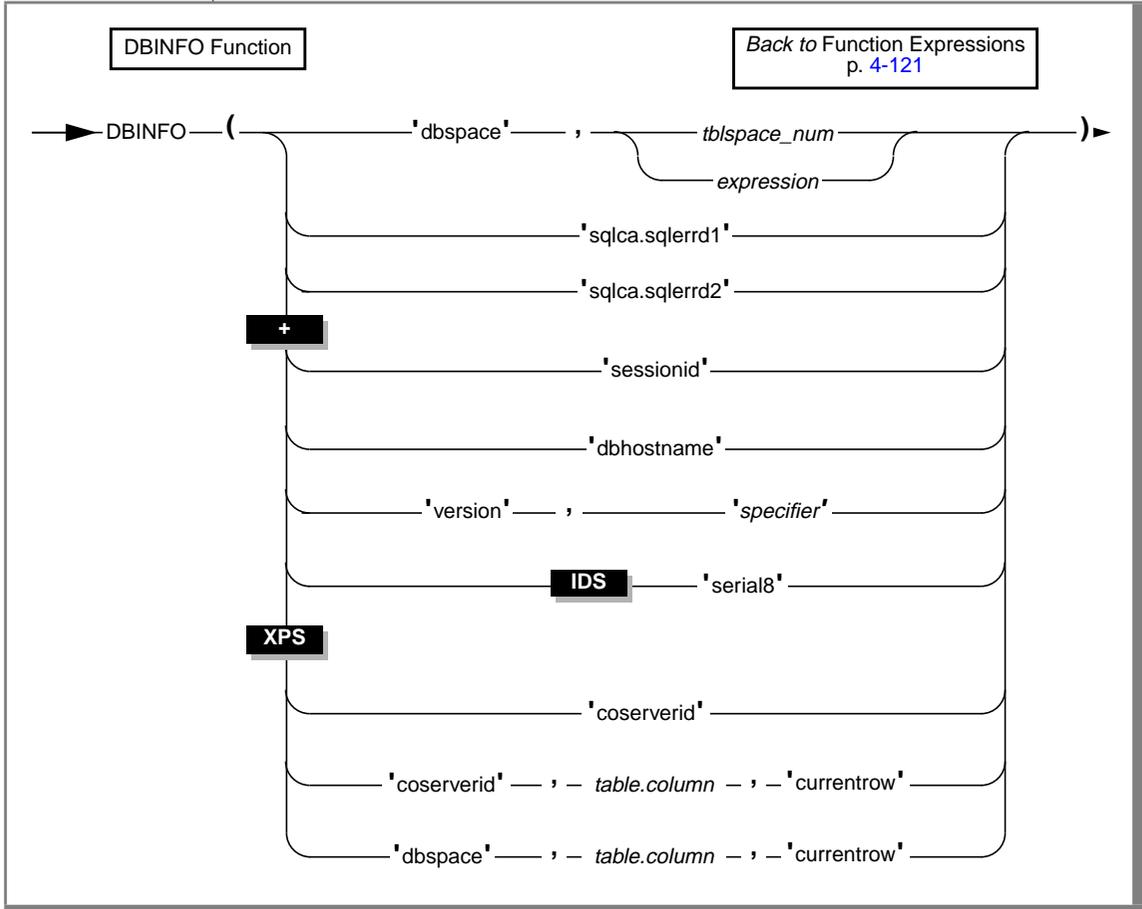
The following SELECT statement returns 5 as the number of elements in the **set_col** column:

```
SELECT CARDINALITY(set_col)
FROM table1
```

If the collection contains duplicate elements, **CARDINALITY** counts each individual element.

DBINFO Function

The following diagram shows the syntax of the **DBINFO** function.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of a column in the table that you specify in <i>table</i> .	The specified column must exist in the table that you specify in <i>table</i> .	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>expression</i>	Expression that evaluates to <i>tblspace_num</i>	The expression can contain SPL variables, host variables, column names, or subqueries, but it must evaluate to a numeric value.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>specifier</i>	Literal value that specifies which part of the version string is to be returned	For the set of values that you can provide for <i>specifier</i> , see “Using the ‘version’ Option” on page 4-136.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>table</i>	Table for which you want to display the dbspace name or coserver ID corresponding to each row	The specified table must match the name of a table in the FROM clause of the query	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>tblspace_num</i>	Tblspace number (partition number) of a table	The specified tblspace number must exist. That is, it must occur in the partnum column of the systables table for the database.	Literal Number, p. 4-237

DBINFO Options

The **DBINFO** function is actually a set of functions that return different types of information about the database. You invoke each function by specifying a particular option after the **DBINFO** keyword. You can use any **DBINFO** option anywhere within SQL statements and within UDRs.

The following table shows the different types of database information that you can retrieve with the **DBINFO** options. The **Option** column shows the name of each **DBINFO** option. The **Purpose** column shows the type of database information that the option retrieves. The next three columns give the names of the database servers on which each option is supported. A check mark in these columns shows that the given database server supports the given option. The **Page** column shows the page where you can find more information about a given option.

Option	Purpose	Page
'dbspace' <i>tblspace_num</i>	Returns the name of a dbspace corresponding to a tblspace number	4-133
'sqlca.sqlerrd1'	Returns the last serial value inserted in a table	4-133
'sqlca.sqlerrd2'	Returns the number of rows processed by selects, inserts, deletes, updates, EXECUTE PROCEDURE statements, and EXECUTE FUNCTION statements	4-134
'sessionid'	Returns the session ID of the current session	4-135
'dbhostname'	Returns the hostname of the database server to which a client application is connected	4-136
'version'	Returns the exact version of the database server to which a client application is connected	4-136
'serial8' (IDS)	Returns the last SERIAL8 value inserted in a table	4-138
'coserverid' (XPS)	Returns the coserver ID of the coserver to which the user who entered the query is connected	4-139
'coserverid' <i>table.column</i> 'currentrow' (XPS)	Returns the coserver ID of the coserver where each row of a specified table is located	4-139
'dbspace' <i>table.column</i> 'currentrow' (XPS)	Returns the name of the dbspace where each row of a specified table is located	4-140

Using the 'dbspace' Option Followed by a Tblspace Number

The **'dbspace'** option returns a character string that contains the name of the dbspace corresponding to a tblspace number. You must supply an additional parameter, either *tblspace_num* or an expression that evaluates to *tblspace_num*. The following example uses the **'dbspace'** option. First, it queries the **sysables** system catalog table to determine the *tblspace_num* for the table **customer**, then it executes the function to determine the dbspace name.

```
SELECT tabname, partnum FROM systables
   where tabname = 'customer'
```

If the statement returns a partition number of 1048892, you insert that value into the second argument to find which dbspace contains the **customer** table, as shown in the following example:

```
SELECT DBINFO ('dbspace', 1048892) FROM systables
   where tabname = 'customer'
```

If the table for which you want to know the dbspace name is fragmented, you must query the **sysfragments** system catalog table to find out the tblspace number of each table fragment. Then you must supply each tblspace number in a separate **DBINFO** query to find out all the dbspaces across which a table is fragmented.

Using the 'sqlca.sqlerrd1' Option

The **'sqlca.sqlerrd1'** option returns a single integer that provides the last serial value that is inserted into a table. To ensure valid results, use this option immediately following a singleton **INSERT** statement that inserts a single row with a serial value into a table.

Tip: To obtain the value of the last **SERIAL8** value that is inserted into a table, use the **'serial8'** option of **DBINFO**. For more information, see [“Using the 'serial8' Option” on page 4-138](#).



The following example uses the **'sqlca.sqlerrd1'** option:

```
EXEC SQL create table fst_tab (ordernum serial, partnum int);
EXEC SQL create table sec_tab (ordernum serial);

EXEC SQL insert into fst_tab VALUES (0,1);
EXEC SQL insert into fst_tab VALUES (0,4);
EXEC SQL insert into fst_tab VALUES (0,6);

EXEC SQL insert into sec_tab values
(dbinfo('sqlca.sqlerrd1'));
```

This example inserts a row that contains a primary-key serial value into the **fst_tab** table, and then uses the **DBINFO** function to insert the same serial value into the **sec_tab** table. The value that the **DBINFO** function returns is the serial value of the last row that is inserted into **fst_tab**.

Using the 'sqlca.sqlerrd2' Option

The **'sqlca.sqlerrd2'** option returns a single integer that provides the number of rows that **SELECT**, **INSERT**, **DELETE**, **UPDATE**, **EXECUTE PROCEDURE**, and **EXECUTE FUNCTION** statements processed. To ensure valid results, use this option after **SELECT**, **EXECUTE PROCEDURE**, and **EXECUTE FUNCTION** statements have completed executing. In addition, to ensure valid results when you use this option within cursors, make sure that all rows are fetched before the cursors are closed.

The following example shows an SPL routine that uses the **'sqlca.sqlerrd2'** option to determine the number of rows that are deleted from a table:

```
CREATE FUNCTION del_rows (pnumb int)
RETURNING int;

DEFINE nrows int;

DELETE FROM fst_tab WHERE part_number = pnumb;
LET nrows = DBINFO('sqlca.sqlerrd2');
RETURN nrows;

END FUNCTION
```

Using the 'sessionid' Option

The **'sessionid'** option of the **DBINFO** function returns the session ID of your current session.

When a client application makes a connection to the database server, the server starts a session with the client and assigns a session ID for the client. The session ID serves as a unique identifier for a given connection between a client and a database server. The database server stores the value of the session ID in a data structure in shared memory that is called the session control block. The session control block for a given session also includes the user ID, the process ID of the client, the name of the host computer, and a variety of status flags.

When you specify the **'sessionid'** option, the database server retrieves the session ID of your current session from the session control block and returns this value to you as an integer. Some of the System-Monitoring Interface (SMI) tables in the **sysmaster** database include a column for session IDs, so you can use the session ID that the **DBINFO** function obtained to extract information about your own session from these SMI tables. For further information on the session control block, see the [Administrator's Guide](#). For further information on the **sysmaster** database and the SMI tables, see the [Administrator's Reference](#).

In the following example, the user specifies the **DBINFO** function in a **SELECT** statement to obtain the value of the current session ID. The user poses this query against the **systables** system catalog table and uses a **WHERE** clause to limit the query result to a single row.

```
SELECT DBINFO('sessionid') AS my_sessionid
FROM systables
WHERE tabname = 'systables'
```

In the preceding example, the **SELECT** statement queries against the **systables** system catalog table. However, you can obtain the session ID of the current session by querying against any system catalog table or user table in the database. For example, you can enter the following query to obtain the session ID of your current session:

```
SELECT DBINFO('sessionid') AS user_sessionid
FROM customer
where customer_num = 101
```

You can use the **DBINFO 'sessionid'** option not only in SQL statements but also in SPL routines. The following example shows an SPL function that returns the value of the current session ID to the calling program or routine:

```
CREATE FUNCTION get_sess()  
RETURNING INT;  
RETURN DBINFO('sessionid');  
END FUNCTION;
```

Using the 'dbhostname' Option

You can use the **'dbhostname'** option to retrieve the hostname of the database server to which a database client is connected. This option retrieves the physical computer name of the computer on which the database server is running.

In the following example, the user enters the **'dbhostname'** option of **DBINFO** in a **SELECT** statement to retrieve the hostname of the database server to which DB-Access is connected:

```
SELECT DBINFO('dbhostname')  
FROM systables  
WHERE tabid = 1
```

The following table shows the result of this query.

(constant)
rd_lab1

Using the 'version' Option

You can use the **'version'** option of the **DBINFO** function to retrieve the exact version number of the database server against which the client application is running. This option retrieves the exact version string from the message log. The value of the full version string is the same as that displayed by the **-V** option of the **oninit** utility.

You use the *specifier* parameter of the **'version'** option to specify which part of the version string you want to retrieve. The following table lists the values you can enter in the *specifier* parameter, shows which part of the version string is returned for each *specifier* value, and gives an example of what is returned by each value of *specifier*. Each example returns part of the complete version string `Dynamic Server Version 9.20.UC1`.

Value of specifier Parameter	Part of Version String Returned	Example of Return Value
'server-type'	Type of server	Dynamic Server
'major'	Major version number of the current server version	9
'minor'	Minor version number of the current server version	20
'os'	Operating-system identifier within the version string: T = Windows NT U = UNIX 32 bit running on a 32-bit operating system H = UNIX 32 bit running on a 64-bit operating system F = UNIX 64 bit running on a 64-bit operating system	U
'level'	Interim release level of the current server version	C1
'full'	Complete version string as it would be returned by oninit -V	Dynamic Server Version 9.20.UC1

The following example shows how to use the **'version'** option of **DBINFO** in a **SELECT** statement to retrieve the major version number of the database server that the DB-Access client is connected to.

```
SELECT DBINFO('version', 'major')
FROM systables
WHERE tabid = 1
```

The following table shows the result of this query.

(constant)
7

IDS



Using the 'serial8' Option

The **'serial8'** option returns a single integer that provides the last SERIAL8 value that is inserted into a table. To ensure valid results, use this option immediately following an INSERT statement that inserts a SERIAL8 value.

Tip: To obtain the value of the last SERIAL value that is inserted into a table, use the **'sqlca.sqlerrd1'** option of **DBINFO()**. For more information, see [“Using the 'sqlca.sqlerrd1' Option” on page 4-133.](#)

The following example uses the 'serial8' option:

```
EXEC SQL create table fst_tab
      (ordernum serial8, partnum int);
EXEC SQL create table sec_tab (ordernum serial8);

EXEC SQL insert into fst_tab VALUES (0,1);
EXEC SQL insert into fst_tab VALUES (0,4);
EXEC SQL insert into fst_tab VALUES (0,6);

EXEC SQL insert into sec_tab
      select dbinfo('serial8')
      from sec_tab where partnum = 6;
```

This example inserts a row that contains a primary-key SERIAL8 value into the **fst_tab** table, and then uses the **DBINFO** function to insert the same SERIAL8 value into the **sec_tab** table. The value that the **DBINFO** function returns is the SERIAL8 value of the last row that is inserted into **fst_tab**. The subquery in the last line contains a **WHERE** clause so that a single value is returned.

XPS

Using the 'coserverid' Option with No Other Arguments

The **'coserverid'** option with no other arguments returns a single integer that corresponds to the coserver ID of the coserver to which the user who entered the query is connected.

Suppose that you use the following statement to create the **mytab** table:

```
CREATE TABLE mytab (mycol INT)
  FRAGMENT BY EXPRESSION
    mycol < 5 in rootdbs.1
    mycol > 5 in rootdbs.2
```

Also suppose that the dbspace named **rootdbs.1** resides on coserver 1, and the dbspace named **rootdbs.2** resides on coserver 2.

Also suppose that you use the following statements to insert rows into the **mytab** table:

```
INSERT INTO mytab VALUES ('1');
INSERT INTO mytab VALUES ('6');
```

Finally, suppose that you are logged on to coserver 1 when you make the following query. This query displays the values of all columns in the row where the value of the **mycol** column is 1. This query also displays the coserver ID of the coserver to which you are logged on when you enter the query.

```
SELECT *, DBINFO ('coserverid') AS cid
  FROM mytab
 WHERE mycol = 1
```

The following table shows the result of this query.

mycol	cid
1	1

XPS

Using the 'coserverid' Option Followed by Table and Column Names

Use the **'coserverid'** option followed by the table name and column name and the **'currentrow'** string to find out the coserver ID where each row in a specified table is located. This option is especially useful when you fragment a table across multiple coservers.

In the following example, the user asks to see all columns and rows of the **mytab** table as well as the coserver ID of the coserver where each row resides. For a description of the **mytab** table, see [“Using the 'coserverid' Option with No Other Arguments” on page 4-139](#).

```
SELECT *, DBINFO ('coserverid', mytab.mycol, 'currentrow')
       AS cid
FROM mytab
```

The following table shows the result of this query.

mycol	cid
1	1
6	2

The column that you specify in the **DBINFO** function can be any column in the specified table.

XPS

Using the 'dbspace' Option Followed by Table and Column Names

Use the **'dbspace'** option followed by the table name and column name and the **'currentrow'** string to find out the name of the dbspace where each row in a specified table is located. This option is especially useful when you fragment a table across multiple dbspaces.

In the following example, the user asks to see all columns and rows of the **mytab** table as well as the name of the dbspace where each row resides. For a description of the **mytab** table, see [“Using the 'coserverid' Option with No Other Arguments” on page 4-139](#).

```
SELECT *, DBINFO ('dbspace', mytab.mycol, 'currentrow')
       AS dbsp
FROM mytab
```

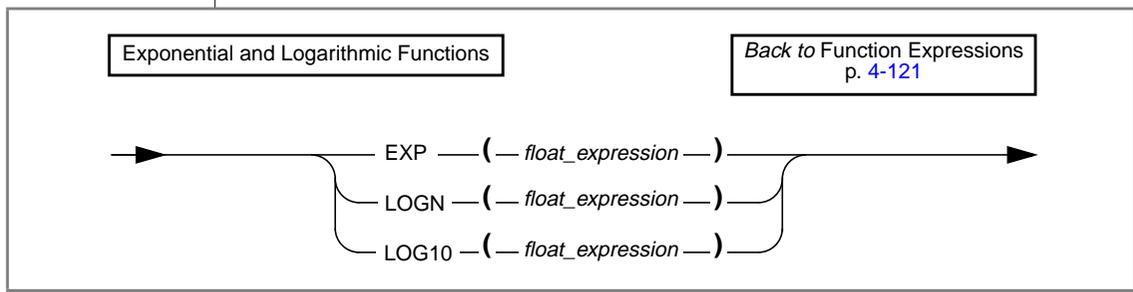
The following table shows the result of this query.

mycol	dbspace
1	rootdbs.1
6	rootdbs.2

The column that you specify in the **DBINFO** function can be any column in the specified table.

Exponential and Logarithmic Functions

Exponential and logarithmic functions take at least one argument. The return type is **FLOAT**. The following example shows exponential and logarithmic functions.



Exponential and Logarithmic Functions

[Back to Function Expressions p. 4-121](#)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>float_expression</i>	<p>Expression that serves as an argument to the EXP, LOGN, or LOG10 functions</p> <p>For information on the meaning of <i>float_expression</i> in these functions, see the individual heading for each function on the following pages.</p>	The domain of the expression is the set of real numbers, and the range of the expression is the set of positive real numbers.	Expression, p. 4-73

EXP Function

The **EXP** function returns the exponent of a numeric expression. The following example returns the exponent of 3 for each row of the **angles** table:

```
SELECT EXP(3) FROM angles
```

For this function, the base is always *e*, the base of natural logarithms, as the following example shows.

```
e=exp(1)=2.718281828459
```

When you want to use the base of natural logarithms as the base value, use the **EXP** function. If you want to specify a particular value to raise to a specific power, see the [“POW Function” on page 4-126](#).

LOGN Function

The **LOGN** function returns the natural log of a numeric expression. The logarithmic value is the inverse of the exponential value. The following **SELECT** statement returns the natural log of population for each row of the **history** table:

```
SELECT LOGN(population) FROM history WHERE country='US'
ORDER BY date
```

LOG10 Function

The **LOG10** function returns the log of a value to base 10. The following example returns the log base 10 of distance for each row of the **travel** table:

```
SELECT LOG10(distance) + 1 digits FROM travel
```

HEX Function

The **HEX** function returns the hexadecimal encoding of an integer expression.

HEX Function

[Back to Function Expressions](#)
p. 4-121

→ **HEX** (*int_expression*) →

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>int_expression</i>	Numeric expression for which you want to know the hexadecimal equivalent	You must specify an integer or an expression that evaluates to an integer.	Expression, p. 4-73

The following example displays the data type and column length of the columns of the **orders** table in hexadecimal format. For MONEY and DECIMAL columns, you can then determine the precision and scale from the lowest and next-to-the-lowest bytes. For VARCHAR and NVARCHAR columns, you can determine the minimum space and maximum space from the lowest and next to the lowest bytes. For more information about encoded information, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

```
SELECT colname, coltype, HEX(collength)
FROM syscolumns C, systables T
WHERE C.tabid = T.tabid AND T.tabname = 'orders'
```

The following example lists the names of all the tables in the current database and their corresponding tblspace number in hexadecimal format. This example is particularly useful because the two most significant bytes in the hexadecimal number constitute the dbspace number. They identify the table in **oncheck** output (in Dynamic Server) and in **onutilcheck** output (in Extended Parallel Server).

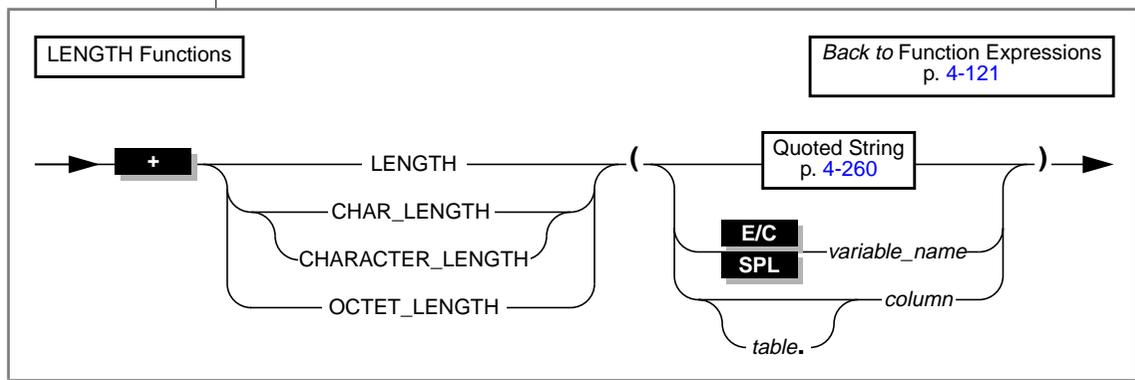
```
SELECT tabname, HEX(partnum) FROM systables
```

The **HEX** function can operate on an expression, as the following example shows:

```
SELECT HEX(order_num + 1) FROM orders
```

Length Functions

You can use length functions to determine the length of a column, string, or variable.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of a column in the specified table	The column must have a character data type.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>table</i>	Name of the table in which the specified column occurs	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>variable_name</i>	Host variable or SPL variable that contains a character string	The host variable or procedure variable must have a character data type.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for variable names.

The following list names the list functions:

- **LENGTH**
- **OCTET_LENGTH**
- **CHAR_LENGTH** (also known as **CHARACTER_LENGTH**)

Each of these functions has a distinct purpose.

The LENGTH Function

The **LENGTH** function returns the number of bytes in a character column, not including any trailing spaces. With **BYTE** or **TEXT** columns, the **LENGTH** function returns the full number of bytes in the column, including trailing spaces.

The following example illustrates the use of the **LENGTH** function:

```
SELECT customer_num, LENGTH(fname) + LENGTH(lname),
       LENGTH('How many bytes is this?')
FROM customer WHERE LENGTH(company) > 10
```

E/C

In **ESQL/C**, you can use the **LENGTH** function to return the length of a character variable. ♦

GLS

For information on **GLS** aspects of the **LENGTH** function, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#). ♦

The OCTET_LENGTH Function

The **OCTET_LENGTH** function returns the number of bytes in a character column, including any trailing spaces. For a discussion of the **OCTET_LENGTH** function, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

The CHAR_LENGTH Function

The **CHAR_LENGTH** function returns the number of characters (not bytes) in a character column. The **CHARACTER_LENGTH** function is a synonym for the **CHAR_LENGTH** function. For a discussion of the **CHAR_LENGTH** function, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

IDS

C

IFX_REPLACE_MODULE Function

The **IFX_REPLACE_MODULE** function replaces a loaded shared library with a new version that has a different name or location.

IFX_REPLACE_MODULE
Function[Back to Function Expressions](#)
p. 4-121

IFX_REPLACE_MODULE (— *old_module* — , — *new_module* — , — " C " —)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>new_module</i>	Full pathname of the new shared library to replace the shared library that <i>old_module</i> specifies.	The shared library must exist with the specified pathname.	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>old_module</i>	Full pathname of the shared library to replace with the shared library that <i>new_module</i> specifies.	The shared library must exist with the specified pathname.	Quoted String, p. 4-260

The **IFX_REPLACE_MODULE** function returns an integer value to indicate the status of the update, as follows:

- Zero (0) to indicate success
- A negative integer to indicate an error

UNIX

For example, to replace the **circle.so** shared library that resides in the **/usr/apps/opaque_types** directory with one that resides in the **/usr/apps/shared_libs** directory, you can use the following EXECUTE FUNCTION statement to execute the **IFX_REPLACE_MODULE** function:

```
EXECUTE FUNCTION
  ifx_replace_module("/usr/apps/opaque_types/circle.so",
    "/usr/apps/shared_libs/circle.so", "c") ◆
```

WIN NT

For example, to replace the **circle.so** shared library that resides in the **C:\usr\apps\opaque_types** directory with one that resides in the **C:\usr\apps\shared_libs** directory, you can use the following EXECUTE FUNCTION statement to execute the **IFX_REPLACE_MODULE** function:

```
EXECUTE FUNCTION
  ifx_replace_module("C:\usr\apps\opaque_types\circle.so",
    "C:\usr\apps\shared_libs\circle.so", "c") ◆
```

E/C

To execute the **IFX_REPLACE_MODULE** function in an Informix ESQL/C application, you must associate the function with a cursor. ◆

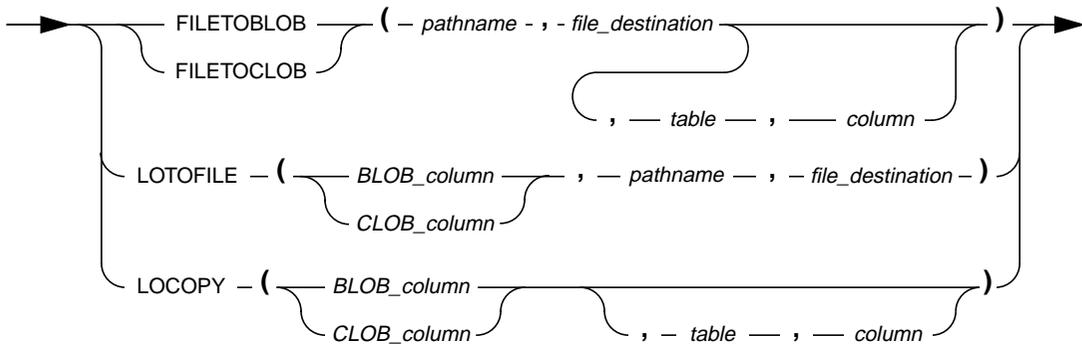
For more information on how to use **IFX_REPLACE_MODULE** to update a shared library, see the chapter on how to design a UDR in [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

IDS

Smart-Large-Object Functions

Smart-Large-Object Functions

Back to Function Expressions
p. 4-121



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>BLOB_column</i>	Name of a column of type BLOB	If you specify <i>table</i> and <i>column</i> , a BLOB column must exist in that table.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>CLOB_column</i>	Name of a column of type CLOB	If you specify <i>table</i> and <i>column</i> , a CLOB column must exist in that table.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>column</i>	Name of a column within table whose storage characteristics are used for the copy of the BLOB or CLOB value	This column must have CLOB or BLOB as its data type.	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>file_destination</i>	String that indicates the computer on which to put or get the smart large object	The only valid values are the strings <code>server</code> or <code>client</code> .	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>pathname</i>	Directory path and filename to locate the smart large object	The pathname must exist on the computer designated by file destination.	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>table</i>	Name of the table that contains column, whose storage characteristics are used for the copy of the BLOB or CLOB value	The table must exist in the database and it must contain a CLOB or BLOB column.	Quoted String, p. 4-260

FILETOBLOB and FILETOCLOB Functions

The **FILETOBLOB** function creates a BLOB value for data that is stored in a specified operating-system file. Similarly, the **FILETOCLOB** function creates a CLOB value for data that is stored in an operating-system file. These functions determine the operating-system file to use from the following parameters:

- The *pathname* parameter identifies the directory path and name of the source file.
- The *file destination* parameter identifies the computer, client or server, on which this file resides:
 - Set *file destination* to `client` to identify the client computer as the location of the source file. The *pathname* can be either a full pathname or relative to the current directory.
 - Set *file destination* to `server` to identify the server computer as the location of the source file. The *pathname* must be a full pathname.

The *table* and *column* parameters are optional:

- If you omit *table* and *column*, the **FILETOBLOB** function creates a BLOB value with the system-specified storage defaults, and the **FILETOCLOB** function creates a CLOB value with the system-specified storage defaults.

These functions obtain the system-specific storage characteristics from either the ONCONFIG file or the sbspace. For more information on system-specified storage defaults, see the [Administrator's Guide](#).

- If you specify *table* and *column*, the **FILETOBLOB** and **FILETOCLOB** functions use the storage characteristics from the specified column for the BLOB or CLOB value that they create.

The **FILETOBLOB** function returns a handle value (a pointer) to the new BLOB value. Similarly, the **FILETOCLOB** function returns a handle value to the new CLOB value. Neither of these functions actually stores the smart-large-object value into a column in the database. You must assign the BLOB or CLOB value to the appropriate column.

GLS

The **FILETOCLOB** function performs any code-set conversion that might be required when it copies the file from the client or server computer to the database. ♦

The following INSERT statement uses the **FILETOCLOB** function to create a CLOB value from the value in the **haven.rsm** file:

```
INSERT INTO candidate (cand_num, cand_lname, resume)
VALUES (0, 'Haven', FILETOCLOB('haven.rsm', 'client'))
```

In the preceding example, the **FILETOCLOB** function reads the **haven.rsm** file in the current directory on the client computer and returns a handle value to a CLOB value that contains the data in this file. Because the **FILETOCLOB** function does not specify a table and column name, this new CLOB value has the system-specified storage characteristics. The INSERT statement then assigns this CLOB value to the **resume** column in the **candidate** table.

LOTOFILE Function

The **LOTOFILE** function copies a smart large object to an operating-system file. The first parameter specifies the BLOB or CLOB column to copy. The function determines the operating-system file to create from the following parameters:

- The *pathname* parameter identifies the directory path and name of the source file.
- The *file destination* parameter identifies the computer, client or server, on which this file resides:
 - Set *file destination* to `client` to identify the client computer as the location of the source file. The *pathname* can be either a full pathname or relative to the current directory.
 - Set *file destination* to `server` to identify the server computer as the location of the source file. The pathname must be a full pathname.

By default, the **LOTOFILE** function generates a filename of the form:

file.hex_id

In this format, *file* is the filename you specify in *pathname* and *hex_id* is the unique hexadecimal smart-large-object identifier. The maximum number of digits for a smart-large-object identifier is 17; however most smart large objects would have an identifier with significantly fewer digits.

For example, suppose you specify a *pathname* value as follows:

```
'/tmp/resume'
```

If the CLOB column has an identifier of **203b2**, the **LOTOFILE** function would create the file:

```
/tmp/resume.203b2 ◆
```

For example, suppose you specify a *pathname* value as follows:

```
'C:\tmp\resume'
```

If the CLOB column has an identifier of **203b2**, the **LOTOFILE** function would create the file:

```
C:\tmp\resume.203b2 ◆
```

UNIX

WIN NT

UNIX

To change the default filename, you can specify the following wildcards in the filename of the *pathname*:

- One or more contiguous question mark (?) characters in the filename can generate a unique filename.

The **LOTOFILE** function replaces each question mark with a hexadecimal digit from the identifier of the BLOB or CLOB column.

For example, suppose you specify a *pathname* value as follows:

```
'/tmp/resume??.txt'
```

The **LOTOFILE** function puts 2 digits of the hexadecimal identifier into the name. If the CLOB column has an identifier of **203b2**, the **LOTOFILE** function would create the file:

```
/tmp/resume20.txt ◆
```

If you specify more than 17 question marks, the **LOTOFILE** function ignores them.

- An exclamation point (!) at the end of the filename indicates that the filename does not need to be unique.

For example, suppose you specify a *pathname* value as follows:

```
'C:\tmp\resume.txt!'
```

The **LOTOFILE** function does not use the smart-large-object identifier in the filename so it generates the following file:

```
C:\tmp\resume.txt ◆
```

If the filename you specify already exists, **LOTOFILE** returns an error.

The **LOTOFILE** function performs any code-set conversion that might be required when it copies a CLOB value from the database to a file on the client or server computer. ◆

GLS

LOCOPY Function

The **LOCOPY** function creates a copy of a smart large object. The first parameter specifies the BLOB or CLOB column to copy. The *table* and *column* parameters are optional:

- If you omit *table* and *column*, the **LOCOPY** function creates a smart large object with system-specified storage defaults and copies the data in the BLOB or CLOB column into it.

The **LOCOPY** function obtains the system-specific storage defaults from either the **ONCONFIG** file or the sbspace. For more information on system-specified storage defaults, see the [Administrator's Guide](#).

- When you specify *table* and *column*, the **LOCOPY** function uses the storage characteristics from the specified *column* for the BLOB or CLOB value that it creates.

The **LOCOPY** function returns a handle value (a pointer) to the new BLOB or CLOB value. This function does *not* actually store the new smart-large-object value into a column in the database. You must assign the BLOB or CLOB value to the appropriate column.

The following ESQL/C code fragment copies the CLOB value in the **resume** column of the **candidate** table to the **resume** column of the **interview** table:

```

/* Insert a new row in the interviews table and get the
 * resulting SERIAL value (from sqlca.sqlerrd[1])
 */
EXEC SQL insert into interviews (intrv_num, intrv_time)
      values (0, '09:30');
intrv_num = sqlca.sqlerrd[1];

/* Update this interviews row with the candidate number
 * and resume from the candidate table. Use LOCOPY to
 * create a copy of the CLOB value in the resume column
 * of the candidate table.
 */
EXEC SQL update interviews
      SET (cand_num, resume) =
          (SELECT cand_num,
              LOCOPY(resume, 'candidate', 'resume')
           FROM candidate
           WHERE cand_lname = 'Haven')
      WHERE intrv_num = :intrv_num;

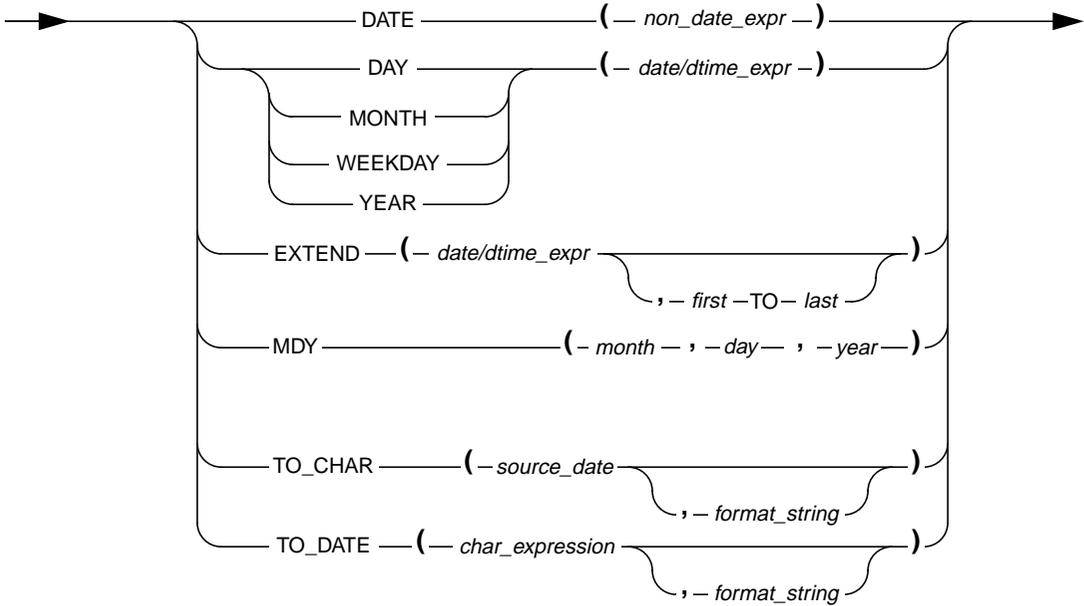
```

In the preceding example, the **LOCOPY** function returns a handle value for the copy of the CLOB **resume** column in the **candidate** table. Because the **LOCOPY** function specifies a table and column name, this new CLOB value has the storage characteristics of this **resume** column. If you omit the table (**candidate**) and column (**resume**) names, the **LOCOPY** function uses the system-defined storage defaults for the new CLOB value. The **UPDATE** statement then assigns this new CLOB value to the **resume** column in the **interviews** table.

Time Functions

Time Functions

Back to Function Expressions
p. 4-121



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>char_expression</i>	Expression to be converted to a DATE or DATETIME value	The expression must be of a character data type. It can be a constant, host variable, expression, or column.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>date/dtime_expr</i>	Expression that serves as an argument in the following functions: DAY, MONTH, WEEKDAY, YEAR, and EXTEND	The expression must evaluate to a DATE or DATETIME value.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>day</i>	Expression that represents the number of the day of the month	The expression must evaluate to an integer not greater than the number of days in the specified month.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>first</i>	Qualifier that specifies the first field in the result If you do not specify <i>first</i> and <i>last</i> qualifiers, the default value of <i>first</i> is YEAR.	The qualifier can be any DATETIME qualifier, as long as it is larger than <i>last</i> .	DATETIME Field Qualifier, p. 4-71
<i>format_string</i>	String that represents the format of the DATE or DATETIME value	This string must have a character data type. The string must contain a valid date format, according to the formats allowed in the GL_DATE and GL_DATETIME environment variables. The string can be a column, host variable, expression, or constant.	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>last</i>	Qualifier that specifies the last field in the result If you do not specify <i>first</i> and <i>last</i> qualifiers, the default value of <i>last</i> is FRACTION(3).	The qualifier can be any DATETIME qualifier, as long as it is smaller than <i>first</i> .	DATETIME Field Qualifier, p. 4-71
<i>month</i>	Expression that represents the number of the month	The expression must evaluate to an integer between 1 and 12, inclusive.	Expression, p. 4-73

(1 of 2)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>non_date_expr</i>	Expression whose value is to be converted to a DATE data type	You can specify any expression that can be converted to a DATE data type. Usually you specify an expression that evaluates to a CHAR, DATETIME, or INTEGER value.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>source_date</i>	Expression that represents a date that is to be converted to a character string	This value must be of type DATETIME or DATE. It can be a host variable, expression, column, or constant.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>year</i>	Expression that represents the year	The expression must evaluate to a four-digit integer. You cannot use a two-digit abbreviation.	Expression, p. 4-73

(2 of 2)

DATE Function

The **DATE** function returns a DATE value that corresponds to the non-date expression with which you call it. The argument can be any expression that can be converted to a DATE value, usually a CHAR, DATETIME, or INTEGER value. The following WHERE clause specifies a CHAR value for the non-date expression:

```
WHERE order_date < DATE('12/31/97')
```

When the **DATE** function interprets a CHAR non-date expression, it expects this expression to conform to any DATE format that the **DBDATE** environment specifies. For example, suppose **DBDATE** is set to Y2MD/ when you execute the following query:

```
SELECT DISTINCT DATE('02/01/1998') FROM ship_info
```

This SELECT statement generates an error because the **DATE** function cannot convert this non-date expression. The **DATE** function interprets the first part of the date string (02) as the year and the second part (01) as the month. For the third part (1998), the **DATE** function encounters four digits when it expects a two-digit day (valid day values must be between 01 and 31). It therefore cannot convert the value. For the SELECT statement to execute successfully with the Y2MD/ value for **DBDATE**, the non-date expression would need to be '98/02/01'. For information on the format of **DBDATE**, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

When you specify a positive **INTEGER** value for the non-date expression, the **DATE** function interprets the value as the number of days after the default date of December 31, 1899. If the integer value is negative, the **DATE** function interprets the value as the number of days before December 31, 1899. The following **WHERE** clause specifies an **INTEGER** value for the non-date expression:

```
WHERE order_date < DATE(365)
```

The database server searches for rows with an **order_date** value less than December 31, 1900 (12/31/1899 plus 365 days).

DAY Function

The **DAY** function returns an integer that represents the day of the month. The following example uses the **DAY** function with the **CURRENT** function to compare column values to the current day of the month:

```
WHERE DAY(order_date) > DAY(CURRENT)
```

MONTH Function

The **MONTH** function returns an integer that corresponds to the month portion of its type **DATE** or **DATETIME** argument. The following example returns a number from 1 through 12 to indicate the month when the order was placed:

```
SELECT order_num, MONTH(order_date) FROM orders
```

WEEKDAY Function

The **WEEKDAY** function returns an integer that represents the day of the week; zero (0) represents Sunday, one represents Monday, and so on. The following lists all the orders that were paid on the same day of the week, which is the current day:

```
SELECT * FROM orders  
WHERE WEEKDAY(paid_date) = WEEKDAY(CURRENT)
```

YEAR Function

The **YEAR** function returns a four-digit integer that represents the year. The following example lists orders in which the **ship_date** is earlier than the beginning of the current year:

```
SELECT order_num, customer_num FROM orders
       WHERE year(ship_date) < YEAR(TODAY)
```

Similarly, because a DATE value is a simple calendar date, you cannot add or subtract a DATE value with an INTERVAL value whose *last* qualifier is smaller than DAY. In this case, convert the DATE value to a DATETIME value.

EXTEND Function

The **EXTEND** function adjusts the precision of a DATETIME or DATE value. The expression cannot be a quoted string representation of a DATE value.

If you do not specify *first* and *last* qualifiers, the default qualifiers are YEAR TO FRACTION(3).

If the expression contains fields that are not specified by the qualifiers, the unwanted fields are discarded.

If the *first* qualifier specifies a larger (that is, more significant) field than what exists in the expression, the new fields are filled in with values returned by the **CURRENT** function. If the *last* qualifier specifies a smaller field (that is, less significant) than what exists in the expression, the new fields are filled in with constant values. A missing MONTH or DAY field is filled in with 1, and the missing HOUR to FRACTION fields are filled in with 0.

In the following example, the first **EXTEND** call evaluates to the **call_dtime** column value of YEAR TO SECOND. The second statement expands a literal DATETIME so that an interval can be subtracted from it. You must use the **EXTEND** function with a DATETIME value if you want to add it to or subtract it from an INTERVAL value that does not have all the same qualifiers. The third example updates only a portion of the datetime value, the hour position. The **EXTEND** function yields just the *hh:mm* part of the datetime. Subtracting 11:00 from the hours and minutes of the datetime yields an INTERVAL value of the difference, plus or minus, and subtracting that from the original value forces the value to 11:00.

```

EXTEND (call_dtime, YEAR TO SECOND)

EXTEND (DATETIME (1989-8-1) YEAR TO DAY, YEAR TO MINUTE)
      - INTERVAL (720) MINUTE (3) TO MINUTE

UPDATE cust_calls SET call_dtime = call_dtime -
      (EXTEND(call_dtime, HOUR TO MINUTE) - DATETIME (11:00) HOUR
      TO MINUTE) WHERE customer_num = 106

```

MDY Function

The **MDY** function returns a type DATE value with three expressions that evaluate to integers representing the month, day, and year. The first expression must evaluate to an integer representing the number of the month (1 to 12).

The second expression must evaluate to an integer that represents the number of the day of the month (1 to 28, 29, 30, or 31, as appropriate for the month.)

The third expression must evaluate to a four-digit integer that represents the year. You cannot use a two-digit abbreviation for the third expression. The following example sets the **paid_date** associated with the order number 8052 equal to the first day of the present month:

```

UPDATE orders SET paid_date = MDY(MONTH(TODAY), 1,
      YEAR(TODAY))
      WHERE po_num = '8052'

```

TO_CHAR Function

The **TO_CHAR** function converts a DATE or DATETIME value to a character string. The character string contains the date that was specified in the *source_date* parameter, and represents this date in the format that was specified in the *format_string* parameter.

You can use this function only with built-in data types. ♦

If the value of the *source_date* parameter is null, the result of the function is a null value.

If you omit the *format_string* parameter, the **TO_CHAR** function uses the default date format to format the character string. The default date format is specified by environment variables such as **GL_DATETIME** and **GL_DATE**.

The *format_string* parameter does not have to imply the same qualifiers as the *source_date* parameter. When the implied formatting mask qualifier in *format_string* is different from the qualifier in *source_date*, the **TO_CHAR** function extends the DATETIME value as if it had called the **EXTEND** function.

In the following example, the user wants to convert the **begin_date** column of the **tab1** table to a character string. The **begin_date** column is defined as a DATETIME YEAR TO SECOND data type. The user uses a SELECT statement with the **TO_CHAR** function to perform this conversion.

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(begin_date, '%A %B %d, %Y %R')
FROM tab1
```

The symbols in the *format_string* parameter in this example have the following meanings. For a complete list of format symbols and their meanings, see the **GL_DATE** and **GL_DATETIME** environment variables in the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

Symbol	Meaning
%A	Full weekday name as defined in the locale
%B	Full month name as defined in the locale
%d	Day of the month as a decimal number
%Y	Year as a 4-digit decimal number
%R	Time in 24-hour notation

The result of applying the specified *format_string* to the **begin_date** column is as follows:

```
Wednesday July 23, 1997 18:45
```

TO_DATE Function

The **TO_DATE** function converts a character string to a DATETIME value. The function evaluates the *char_expression* parameter as a date according to the date format you specify in the *format_string* parameter, and returns the equivalent date.

You can use this function only with built-in data types. ♦

If the value of the *char_expression* parameter is null, the result of the function is a null value.

If you omit the *format_string* parameter, the **TO_DATE** function applies the default DATETIME format to the DATETIME value. The default DATETIME format is specified by the **GL_DATETIME** environment variable.

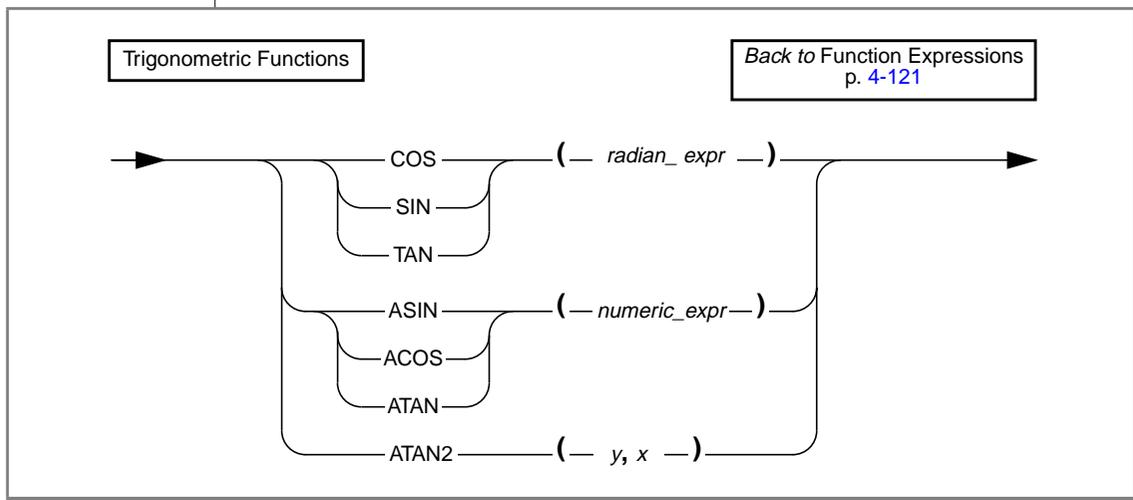
In the following example, the user wants to convert a character string to a DATETIME value in order to update the **begin_date** column of the **tab1** table with the converted value. The **begin_date** column is defined as a DATETIME YEAR TO SECOND data type. The user uses an UPDATE statement that contains a **TO_DATE** function to accomplish this result.

```
UPDATE tab1
   SET begin_date = TO_DATE('Wednesday July 23, 1997 18:45',
                           '%A %B %d, %Y %R');
```

The *format_string* parameter in this example tells the **TO_DATE** function how to format the converted character string in the **begin_date** column. For a table that shows the meaning of each format symbol in this format string, see [“TO_CHAR Function” on page 4-157](#).

Trigonometric Functions

A trigonometric function takes an argument, as the following diagram shows.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>numeric_expr</i>	Numeric expression that serves as an argument to the ASIN, ACOS, or ATAN functions	The expression must evaluate to a value between -1 and 1, inclusive.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>radian_expr</i>	Expression that evaluates to the number of radians For further information, see “Formulas for Radian Expressions” on page 4-160 .	The expression must evaluate to a numeric value.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>x</i>	Expression that represents the x coordinate of the rectangular coordinate pair (x, y)	The expression must evaluate to a numeric value.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>y</i>	Expression that represents the y coordinate of the rectangular coordinate pair (x, y)	The expression must evaluate to a numeric value.	Expression, p. 4-73

Formulas for Radian Expressions

The **COS**, **SIN**, and **TAN** functions take the number of radians (*radian_expr*) as an argument.

If you are using degrees and want to convert degrees to radians, use the following formula:

$$\# \text{ degrees} * \pi / 180 = \# \text{ radians}$$

If you are using radians and want to convert radians to degrees, use the following formula:

$$\# \text{ radians} * 180 / \pi = \# \text{ degrees}$$

COS Function

The **COS** function returns the cosine of a radian expression. The following example returns the cosine of the values of the degrees column in the **anglestbl** table. The expression passed to the **COS** function in this example converts degrees to radians.

```
SELECT COS(degrees*180/3.1416) FROM anglestbl
```

SIN Function

The **SIN** function returns the sine of a radian expression. The following example returns the sine of the values in the **radians** column of the **anglestbl** table:

```
SELECT SIN(radians) FROM anglestbl
```

TAN Function

The **TAN** function returns the tangent of a radian expression. The following example returns the tangent of the values in the **radians** column of the **anglestbl** table:

```
SELECT TAN(radians) FROM anglestbl
```

ACOS Function

The **ACOS** function returns the arc cosine of a numeric expression. The following example returns the arc cosine of the value (-0.73) in radians:

```
SELECT ACOS(-0.73) FROM anglestbl
```

ASIN Function

The **ASIN** function returns the arc sine of a numeric expression. The following example returns the arc sine of the value (-0.73) in radians:

```
SELECT ASIN(-0.73) FROM anglestbl
```

ATAN Function

The **ATAN** function returns the arc tangent of a numeric expression. The following example returns the arc tangent of the value (-0.73) in radians:

```
SELECT ATAN(-0.73) FROM anglestbl
```

ATAN2 Function

The **ATAN2** function computes the angular component of the polar coordinates (r , θ) associated with (x , y). The following example compares *angles* to θ for the rectangular coordinates (4, 5):

```
WHERE angles > ATAN2(4,5)      --determines  $\theta$  for (4,5) and
                                compares to angles
```

You can determine the length of the radial coordinate r using the expression shown in the following example:

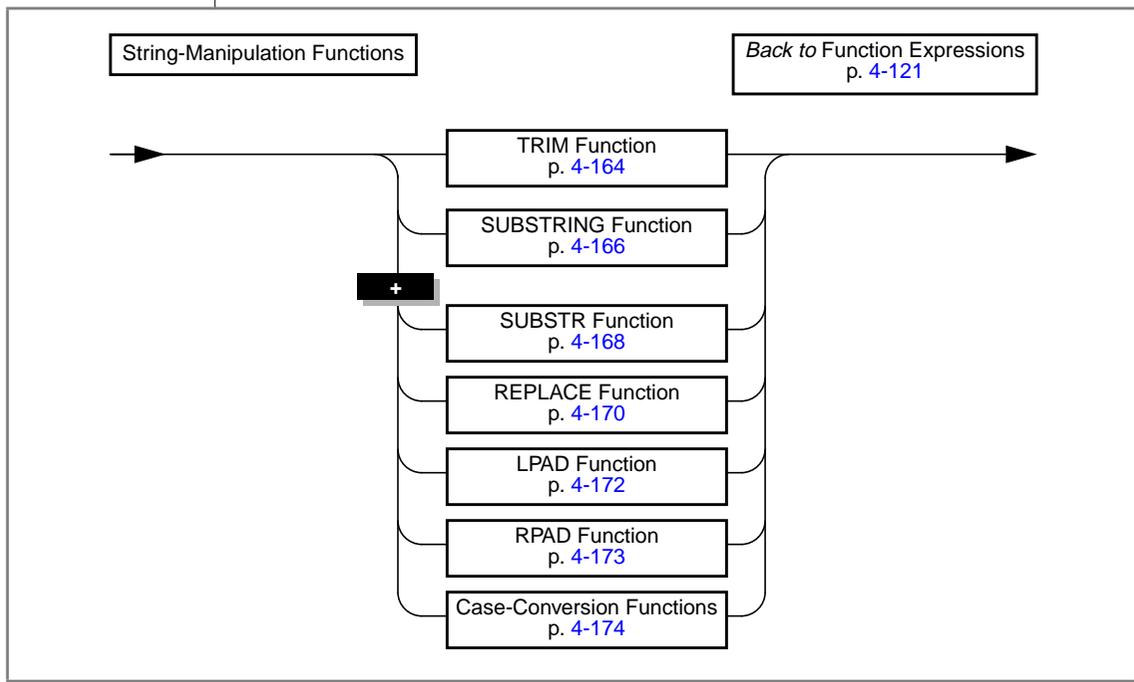
```
SQRT(POW(x,2) + POW(y,2))     --determines  $r$  for (x,y)
```

You can determine the length of the radial coordinate r for the rectangular coordinates (4,5) using the expression shown in the following example:

```
SQRT(POW(4,2) + POW(5,2))     --determines  $r$  for (4,5)
```

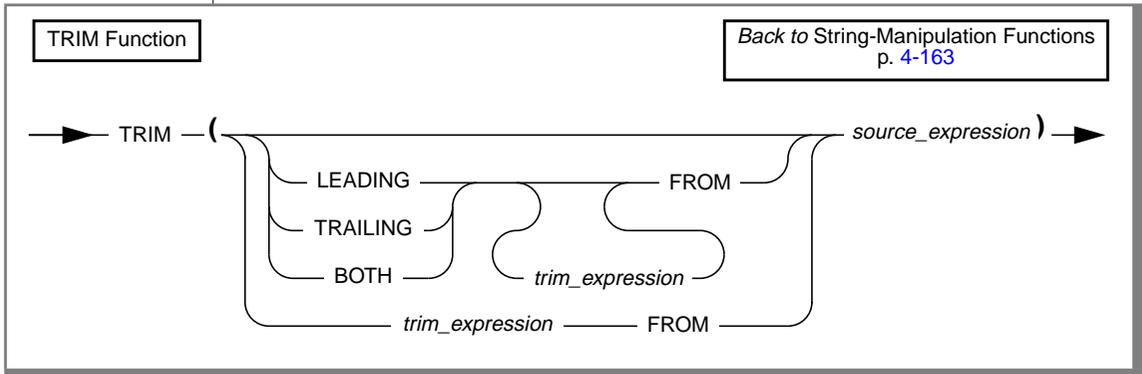
String-Manipulation Functions

String-manipulation functions perform various operations on strings of characters. The syntax for string-manipulation functions is as follows.



TRIM Function

Use the **TRIM** function to remove leading or trailing (or both) pad characters from a string.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>trim_expression</i>	Expression that evaluates to a single character or null	This expression must be a character expression.	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>source_expression</i>	Arbitrary character string expression, including a column or another TRIM function	This expression cannot be a host variable.	Quoted String, p. 4-260

The **TRIM** function returns a VARCHAR string that is identical to the character string passed to it, except that any leading or trailing pad characters, if specified, are removed. If no trim specification (LEADING, TRAILING, or BOTH) is specified, then BOTH is assumed. If no *trim_expression* is used, a single space is assumed. If either the *trim_expression* or the *source_expression* evaluates to null, the result of the **TRIM** function is null. The maximum length of the resultant string must be 255 or less, because the VARCHAR data type supports only 255 characters.

Some generic uses for the **TRIM** function are shown in the following example:

```
SELECT TRIM (c1) FROM tab;
SELECT TRIM (TRAILING '#' FROM c1) FROM tab;
SELECT TRIM (LEADING FROM c1) FROM tab;
UPDATE c1='xyz' FROM tab WHERE LENGTH(TRIM(c1))=5;
SELECT c1, TRIM(LEADING '#' FROM TRIM(TRAILING '%' FROM
'###abc%%')) FROM tab;
```

GLS

When you use the DESCRIBE statement with a SELECT statement that uses the TRIM function in the select list, the described character type of the trimmed column depends on the database server you are using and the data type of the *source_expression*. For further information on the GLS aspects of the TRIM function in ESQL/C, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#). ♦

Fixed Character Columns

The TRIM function can be specified on fixed-length character columns. If the length of the string is not completely filled, the unused characters are padded with blank space. [Figure 4-3](#) shows this concept for the column entry '##A2T##', where the column is defined as CHAR(10).

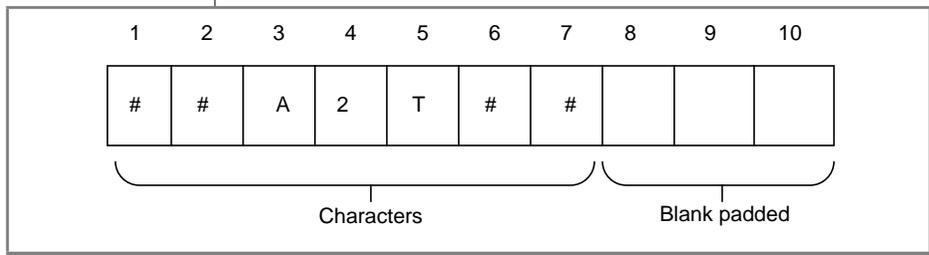


Figure 4-3
Column Entry in a
Fixed-Length
Character Column

If you want to trim the pound sign (#) *trim_expression* from the column, you need to consider the blank padded spaces as well as the actual characters. For example, if you specify the trim specification BOTH, the result from the trim operation is A2T##, because the TRIM function does not match the blank padded space that follows the string. In this case, the only pound signs (#) trimmed are those that precede the other characters. The SELECT statement is shown, followed by [Figure 4-4](#), which presents the result.

```
SELECT TRIM(LEADING '#' FROM col1) FROM taba
```

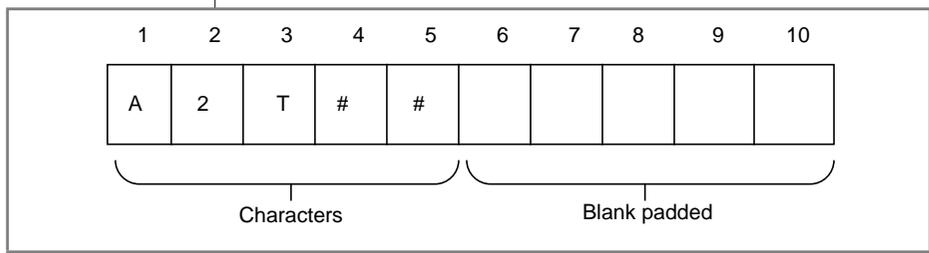


Figure 4-4
Result of TRIM
Operation

The following SELECT statement removes all occurrences of the pound sign (#):

```
SELECT TRIM(BOTH '#' FROM TRIM(TRAILING ' ' FROM col1)) FROM taba
```

SUBSTRING Function

The **SUBSTRING** function returns a subset of a source string.

SUBSTRING Function

[Back to String-Manipulation Functions](#)
p. 4-163



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>length</i>	Number of characters to be returned from <i>source_string</i>	This parameter must be an integer. This parameter can be an expression, constant, column, or host variable.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>source_string</i>	String that serves as input to the SUBSTRING function	This parameter can be any data type that can be converted to a character data type. This parameter can be an expression, constant, column, or host variable.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>start_position</i>	Column position in <i>source_string</i> where the SUBSTRING function starts to return characters	This parameter must be an integer. This parameter can be an expression, constant, column, or host variable. This parameter can be preceded by a plus sign (+), a minus sign (-), or no sign.	Literal Number, p. 4-237

IDS

You can use this function only with built-in data types. ♦

The subset begins at the column position that *start_position* specifies. The following table shows how the database server determines the starting position of the returned subset based on the input value of the *start_position*.

Value of <i>Start_Position</i>	How the Database Server Determines the Starting Position of the Return Subset
Positive	Counts forward from the first character in <i>source_string</i> For example, if <i>start_position</i> = 1, the first character in the <i>source_string</i> is the first character in the return subset.
Zero (0)	Counts from one position before (that is, left of) the first character in <i>source_string</i> For example, if <i>start_position</i> = 0 and <i>length</i> = 1, the database server returns null, whereas if <i>length</i> = 2, the database server returns the first character in <i>source_string</i> .
Negative	Counts backward from one position before (that is, left of) the first character in <i>source_string</i> For example, if <i>start_position</i> = -1, the starting position of the return subset is two positions (0 and -1) before the first character in <i>source_string</i> .

The size of the subset is specified by *length*. The *length* parameter refers to the number of logical characters rather than to the number of bytes. If you omit the *length* parameter, the **SUBSTRING** function returns the entire portion of *source_string* that begins at *start_position*.

In the following example, the user specifies that the subset of the source string that begins in column position 3 and is two characters long should be returned.

```
SELECT SUBSTRING('ABCDEFGH' FROM 3 FOR 2)
FROM mytable
```

The following table shows the output of this SELECT statement.

(constant)
CD

In the following example, the user specifies a negative *start_position* for the return subset.

```
SELECT SUBSTRING('ABCDEFG' FROM -3 FOR 7)
      FROM mytable
```

The database server starts at the -3 position (four positions before the first character) and counts forward for 7 characters. The following table shows the output of this SELECT statement.

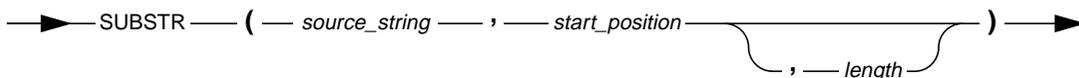
(constant)
ABC

SUBSTR Function

The **SUBSTR** function has the same purpose as the **SUBSTRING** function (to return a subset of a source string), but it uses different syntax.

SUBSTR Function

[Back to String-Manipulation Functions](#)
p. 4-163



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>length</i>	Number of characters to be returned from <i>source_string</i>	This parameter must be an integer. This parameter can be an expression, constant, column, or host variable.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>source_string</i>	String that serves as input to the SUBSTR function	This parameter can be any data type that can be converted to a character data type. This parameter can be an expression, constant, column, or host variable.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>start_position</i>	Column position in <i>source_string</i> where the SUBSTR function starts to return characters	This parameter must be an integer. This parameter can be an expression, constant, column, or host variable. This parameter can be preceded by a plus sign (+), a minus sign (-), or no sign.	Literal Number, p. 4-237

IDS

You can use this function only with built-in data types. ♦

The **SUBSTR** function returns a subset of *source_string*. The subset begins at the column position that *start_position* specifies. The following table shows how the database server determines the starting position of the returned subset based on the input value of the *start_position*.

Value of <i>Start_Position</i>	How the Database Server Determines the Starting Position of the Return Subset
Positive	Counts forward from the first character in <i>source_string</i>
Zero (0)	Counts forward from the first character in <i>source_string</i> (that is, treats a <i>start_position</i> of 0 as equivalent to 1)
Negative	Counts backward from the last character in <i>source_string</i> A value of -1, returns the last character in <i>source_string</i> .

The *length* parameter specifies the number of characters (not bytes) in the subset. If you omit the *length* parameter, the **SUBSTR** function returns the entire portion of *source_string* that begins at *start_position*.

In the following example, the user specifies that the subset of the source string to be returned begins at a starting position 3 characters back from the end of the string. Because the source string is 7 characters long, the starting position is the fifth column of `source_string`. Because the user does not specify a value for *length*, the database server returns the entire portion of the source string that begins in column position 5.

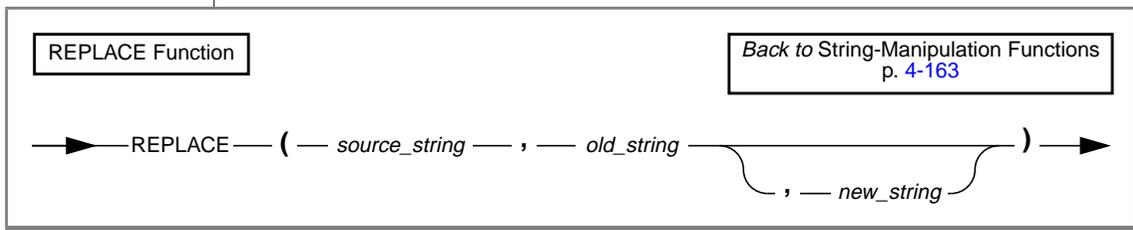
```
SELECT SUBSTR('ABCDEFG', -3)
FROM mytable
```

The following table shows the output of this SELECT statement.

(constant)
EFG

REPLACE Function

The **REPLACE** function replaces specified characters within a source string with different characters.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>new_string</i>	Character or characters that replace <i>old_string</i> in the return string	This parameter can be any data type that can be converted to a character data type. The parameter can be an expression, column, constant, or host variable.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>old_string</i>	Character or characters in <i>source_string</i> that are to be replaced by <i>new_string</i>	This parameter can be any data type that can be converted to a character data type. The parameter can be an expression, column, constant, or host variable.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>source_string</i>	String of characters that serves as input to the REPLACE function	This parameter can be any data type that can be converted to a character data type. The parameter can be an expression, column, constant, or host variable.	Expression, p. 4-73

IDS

You can use this function only with built-in data types. ♦

The **REPLACE** function returns a copy of *source_string* in which every occurrence of *old_string* is replaced by *new_string*. If you omit the *new_string* option, every occurrence of *old_string* is omitted from the return string.

In the following example, the user replaces every occurrence of *xz* in the source string with *t*.

```
SELECT REPLACE('Mighxzy xzime', 'xz', 't')
FROM mytable
```

The following table shows the output of this SELECT statement.

(constant)

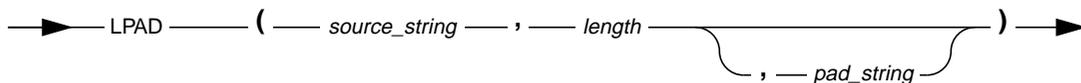
Mighty time

LPAD Function

The **LPAD** function returns a copy of *source_string* that is left-padded to the total number of characters specified by *length*.

LPAD Function

[Back to String-Manipulation Functions](#)
p. 4-163



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>length</i>	Integer value that indicates the total number of characters in the return string	This parameter can be an expression, constant, column, or host variable.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>pad_string</i>	String that specifies the pad character or characters	This parameter can be any data type that can be converted to a character data type. The parameter can be an expression, column, constant, or host variable.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>source_string</i>	String that serves as input to the LPAD function	This parameter can be any data type that can be converted to a character data type. The parameter can be an expression, column, constant, or host variable.	Expression, p. 4-73

IDS

You can use this function only with built-in data types. ♦

The *pad_string* parameter specifies the pad character or characters to be used for padding the source string. The sequence of pad characters occurs as many times as necessary to make the return string reach the length specified by *length*. The sequence of pad characters in *pad_string* is truncated if it is too long to fit into *length*. If you omit the *pad_string* parameter, the default value is a single blank.

In the following example, the user specifies that the source string is to be left-padded to a total length of 16 characters. The user also specifies that the pad characters are a sequence consisting of a dash and an underscore (-_).

```
SELECT LPAD('Here we are', 16, '-_')
FROM mytable
```

The following table shows the output of this SELECT statement.

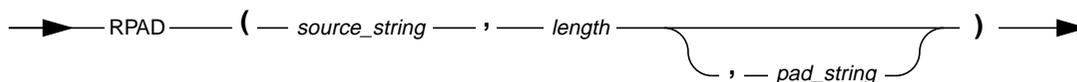
(constant)
--Here we are

RPAD Function

The **RPAD** function returns a copy of *source_string* that is right-padded to the total number of characters that *length* specifies.

RPAD Function

[Back to String-Manipulation Functions](#)
p. 4-163



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>length</i>	Integer value that indicates the total number of characters in the return string	This parameter can be an expression, constant, column, or host variable.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>pad_string</i>	String that specifies the pad character or characters	This parameter can be any data type that can be converted to a character data type. The parameter can be an expression, column, constant, or host variable.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>source_string</i>	String that serves as input to the RPAD function	This parameter can be any data type that can be converted to a character data type. The parameter can be an expression, column, constant, or host variable.	Expression, p. 4-73

You can use this function only with built-in data types. ♦

The *pad_string* parameter specifies the pad character or characters to be used to pad the source string. The sequence of pad characters occurs as many times as necessary to make the return string reach the length that *length* specifies. The sequence of pad characters in *pad_string* is truncated if it is too long to fit into *length*. If you omit the *pad_string* parameter, the default value is a single blank.

In the following example, the user specifies that the source string is to be right-padded to a total length of 18 characters. The user also specifies that the pad characters to be used are a sequence consisting of a question mark and an exclamation point (!?)

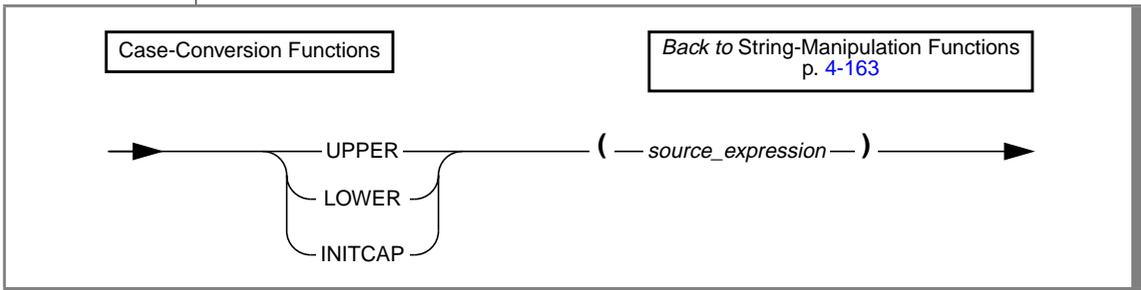
```
SELECT RPAD('Where are you', 18, '?!')
FROM mytable
```

The following table shows the output of this SELECT statement.

(constant)
Where are you?!?!?

Case-Conversion Functions

The case-conversion functions enable you to perform case-insensitive searches in your queries and specify the format of the output. The case-conversion functions are **UPPER**, **LOWER**, and **INITCAP**. The following diagram shows the syntax of these case-conversion functions.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>source_expression</i>	Column name, function, quoted string, host variable, or any expression that evaluates to a character string	This expression must be a character data type. If you use a host variable, the variable must be declared with a length long enough to handle the converted string.	Expression, p. 4-73

IDS

GLS

The input type of *source_expression* must be a character data type. When the column is described, the data type the database server returns is the same as the input type. For example, if the input type is CHAR, the output type is also CHAR.

You can use these functions only with built-in data types. ♦

The byte length returned from the describe of a column with a case-conversion function is the input byte length of the source string. If you use a case-conversion function with a multibyte *source_expression*, the conversion might increase or decrease the length of the string. If the byte length of the result string exceeds the byte length of *source_expression*, the database server truncates the result string to fit into the byte length of *source_expression*. ♦

If *source_expression* is null, the result of a case-conversion function is also null.

The database server treats a case-conversion function as an SPL routine in the following instances:

- If it has no argument
- If it has one argument, and that argument is a named argument
- If it has more than one argument
- If it appears in a SELECT list with a host variable as an argument

If none of the conditions in the preceding list are met, the database server treats a case-conversion function as a system function.

The following example shows how you can use all the case-conversion functions in the same query to specify multiple output formats for the same value:

```
Input value:
SAN Jose

Query:
SELECT City, LOWER(City), Lower("City"),
       UPPER (City), INITCAP(City)
FROM Weather;

Query output:
SAN Jose   san jose   city   SAN JOSE   San Jose
```

UPPER Function

The **UPPER** function returns a copy of the *source_expression* in which every lowercase alphabetical character in the *source_expression* is replaced by a corresponding uppercase alphabetic character.

The following example shows how to use the **UPPER** function to perform a case-insensitive search on the **lname** column for all employees with the last name of **curran**:

```
SELECT title, INITCAP(fname), INITCAP(lname) FROM employees
WHERE UPPER (lname) = "CURRAN"
```

Because the **INITCAP** function is specified in the select list, the database server returns the results in a mixed-case format. For example, the output of one matching row might read: accountant James Curran.

LOWER Function

The **LOWER** function returns a copy of the *source_expression* in which every uppercase alphabetic character in the *source_expression* is replaced by a corresponding lowercase alphabetic character.

The following example shows how to use the **LOWER** function to perform a case-insensitive search on the **City** column. This statement directs the database server to replace all instances (that is, any variation) of the words **san jose**, with the mixed-case format, **San Jose**.

```
UPDATE Weather SET City = "San Jose"
WHERE LOWER (City) = "san jose";
```

INITCAP Function

The **INITCAP** function returns a copy of the *source_expression* in which every word in the *source_expression* begins with uppercase letter. With this function, a word begins after any character other than a letter. Thus, in addition to a blank space, symbols such as commas, periods, colons, and so on, introduce a new word.

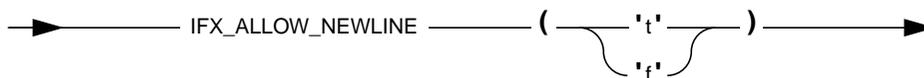
For an example of the **INITCAP** function, see [“UPPER Function” on page 4-176](#).

IFX_ALLOW_NEWLINE Function

The **IFX_ALLOW_NEWLINE** function sets a newline mode that allows newline characters in quoted strings or disallows newline characters in quoted strings within a given session.

IFX_ALLOW_NEWLINE Function

[Back to Function Expressions](#)
p. 4-121



If you enter 't' as the argument of this function, you enable newline characters in quoted strings in the session. If you enter 'f' as the argument of this function, you disallow newline characters in quoted strings in the session.

You can set the newline mode for all sessions by setting the `ALLOW_NEWLINE` parameter in the `ONCONFIG` file to a value of 0 (newline characters not allowed) or to a value of 1 (newline characters allowed). If you do not set this configuration parameter, the default value is 0. Each time you start a session, the new session inherits the newline mode set in the `ONCONFIG` file. To change the newline mode for the session, execute the `IFX_ALLOW_NEWLINE` function. Once you have set the newline mode for a session, the mode remains in effect until the end of the session or until you execute the `IFX_ALLOW_NEWLINE` function again within the session.

In the following example, assume that you did not specify any value for the `ALLOW_NEWLINE` parameter in the `ONCONFIG` file, so by default newline characters are not allowed in quoted strings in any session. After you start a new session, you can enable newline characters in quoted strings in that session by executing the `IFX_ALLOW_NEWLINE` function:

```
EXECUTE PROCEDURE IFX_ALLOW_NEWLINE('t')
```

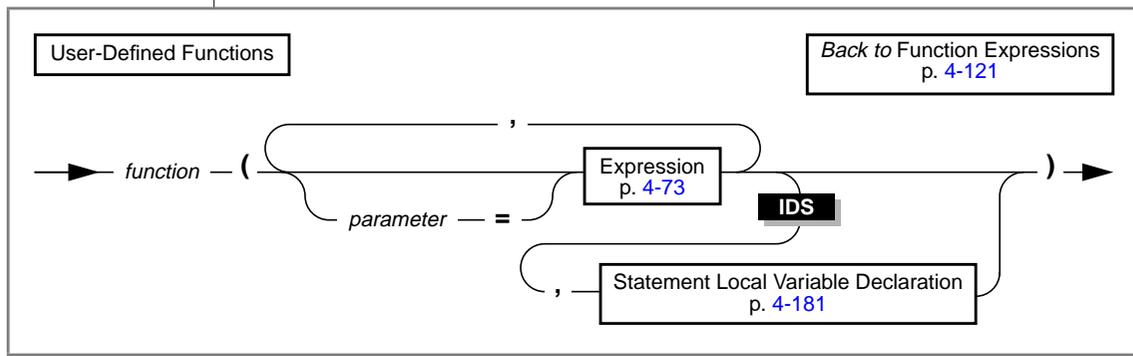
E/C

The newline mode that is set by the `ALLOW_NEWLINE` parameter in the `ONCONFIG` file or by the execution of the `IFX_ALLOW_NEWLINE` function in a session applies only to quoted-string literals in SQL statements. The newline mode does not apply to quoted strings contained in host variables in SQL statements. Host variables can contain newline characters within string data regardless of the newline mode currently in effect. For example, you can use a host variable to insert data containing newline characters into a column even if the `ALLOW_NEWLINE` parameter in the `ONCONFIG` file is set to 0. ♦

For further information on how the `IFX_ALLOW_NEWLINE` function affects quoted strings, see [“Quoted String” on page 4-260](#). For further information on the `ALLOW_NEWLINE` parameter in the `ONCONFIG` file, see the [Administrator's Reference](#).

User-Defined Functions

A user-defined function is a function that you write in SPL or in a language external to the database, such as C or Java.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>function</i>	Name of the called function	The function must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>parameter</i>	Name of a parameter for which you supply an argument to the function The parameter name is originally specified in a CREATE FUNCTION statement.	If you use the <i>parameter</i> = option for any argument in the called function, you must use it for all arguments.	Identifier, p. 4-205

You can call user-defined functions within SQL statements. Unlike built-in functions, user-defined functions can only be used by the creator of the function, the DBA, and the users who have been granted the Execute privilege on the function. For more information, see [“GRANT” on page 2-500](#).

The following examples show some user-defined function expressions. The first example omits the *parameter* option when it lists the function argument:

```
read_address('Miller')
```

This second example uses the *parameter* option to specify the argument value:

```
read_address(lastname = 'Miller')
```

When you use the *parameter* option, the *parameter* name must match the name of the corresponding parameter in the function registration. For example, the preceding example assumes that the `read_address()` function had been registered as follows:

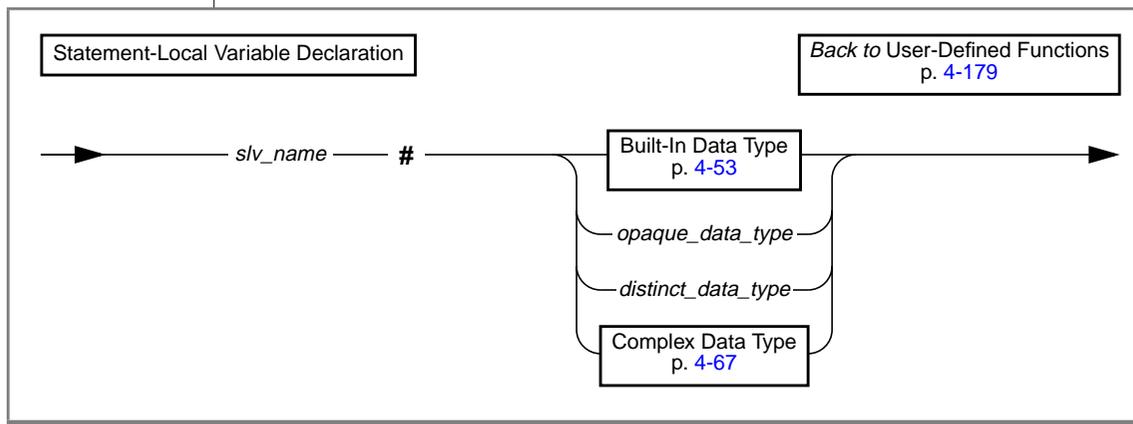
```
CREATE FUNCTION read_address(lastname CHAR(20))
RETURNING address_t ...
```

A statement-local variable (SLV) enables you to transmit a value from a user-defined function call to another part of the SQL statement. To use an SLV with a call to a user-defined function, follow these steps:

- Write an OUT parameter for the user-defined function.
For more information on how to write a user-defined function with an OUT parameter, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).
- When you register the user-defined function, specify the OUT keyword in front of the OUT parameter.
For more information, see [“Specifying an OUT Parameter for a User-Defined Function” on page 4-290](#).
- Declare the SLV in a function expression that calls the user-defined function with the OUT parameter.
The call to the user-defined function must be made within a WHERE clause. See [“Statement-Local Variable Declaration” on page 4-181](#) for information about the syntax to declare the SLV.
- Use the SLV that the user-defined function has initialized within the SQL statement.
Once the call to the user defined function has initialized the SLV, you can use this value in other parts of the SQL statement. See [“Statement-Local Variable Expressions” on page 4-183](#) for information about the use of an SLV within an SQL statement.

Statement-Local Variable Declaration

The Statement-Local Variable Declaration declares a statement-local variable (SLV) in a call to a user-defined function that defines an OUT parameter.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<code>distinct_data_type</code>	Name of a distinct data type	The distinct data type must already exist in the database.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<code>opaque_data_type</code>	Name of an opaque data type	The opaque data type must already exist in the database.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<code>slv_name</code>	Name of a statement local variable you are defining	The <code>slv_name</code> exists only for the life of the statement. The <code>slv_name</code> must be unique within the statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205

You declare an SLV in a user-defined function call so that a user-defined function can assign the value of its OUT parameter to the SLV. The call to the user-defined function *must* exist in the WHERE clause of the SQL statement. For example, if you register a function with the following CREATE FUNCTION statement, you can use its `y` parameter as a statement-local variable in a WHERE clause:

```
CREATE FUNCTION find_location(a FLOAT, b FLOAT, OUT y INTEGER)
RETURNING VARCHAR(20)
EXTERNAL NAME "/usr/lib/local/find.so"
LANGUAGE C
```

In this example, **find_location()** accepts two FLOAT values that represent a latitude and a longitude and returns the name of the nearest city, along with an extra value of type INTEGER that represents the population rank of the city.

You can now call **find_location()** in a WHERE clause:

```
SELECT zip_code_t FROM address
       WHERE address.city = find_location(32.1, 35.7, rank # INT)
       AND rank < 101;
```

The function expression passes two FLOAT values to **find_location()** and declares an SLV named **rank** of type INT. In this case, **find_location()** will return the name of the city nearest latitude 32.1 and longitude 35.7 (which may be a heavily populated area) whose population rank is between 1 and 100. The statement will then return the zip code that corresponds to that city.

The WHERE clause of the SQL statement *must* produce an SLV that is used within other parts of the statement. The following SELECT statement is *illegal* because the select list produces the SLV:

```
-- illegal SELECT statement
SELECT title, contains(body, 'dog and cat', rank # INT), rank
       FROM documents
```

The data type you use when you declare the SLV in a statement must be the same as the data type of the OUT parameter in the CREATE FUNCTION statement. If you use different but compatible data types, such as INTEGER and FLOAT, the database server automatically performs the cast between the data types.

SLVs shared the name space with UDR variables and the column names of the table involved in the SQL statement. Therefore, the database uses the following precedence to resolve ambiguous situations:

- UDR variables
- Column names
- SLVs

Once the user-defined function assigns its OUT parameter to the SLV, you can use this SLV value in other parts of the SQL statement. For more information, see [“Statement-Local Variable Expressions” on page 4-183](#).

Statement-Local Variable Expressions

The Statement-Local Variable Expression specifies how you can use a defined statement-local variable (SLV) elsewhere in an SQL statement.

Statement-Local Variable Expressions

[Back to Expression](#)
p. 4-73

→ *SLV_variable* →

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>SLV_variable</i>	Statement-local variable (SLV) that was defined in a call to a user-defined function within the same SQL statement.	The <i>SLV_variable</i> exists only for the life of the statement. Its name must be unique within the statement.	Identifier, p. 4-205

You define an SLV in the call to a user-defined function in the WHERE clause of the SQL statement. This user-defined function must be defined with an OUT parameter. The call to the user-defined function assigns the value of the OUT parameter to the SLV. For more information, see “[Statement-Local Variable Declaration](#)” on page 4-181.

Once the user-defined function assigns its OUT parameter to the SLV, you can use this value in other parts of the SQL statement. You can use the value of this OUT parameter elsewhere in the statement, subject to the following scoping rules:

- The SLV is *read-only* throughout the query (or subquery) in which it is defined.
- The scope of an SLV extends from the query in which the SLV is defined down into all nested subqueries.

In other words, if a query contains a subquery, an SLV that is visible in the query is also visible to all subqueries of that query.

- In nested queries, the scope of an SLV does *not* extend upwards.

In other words, if a query contains a subquery and the SLV is defined in the subquery, it is *not* visible to the parent query.



- In queries that involve UNION, the SLV is only visible in the query in which it is defined.

The SLV is not visible to all other queries involved in the UNION.

- For INSERT, DELETE, and UPDATE statements, an SLV is not visible outside the SELECT portion of the statement.

Within this SELECT portion, all the above scoping rules apply.

Important: A statement-local variable is valid only for the life of a single SQL statement.

The following SELECT statement calls the **find_location()** function in a WHERE clause and defines the **rank** SLV. In this example, **find_location()** accepts two values that represent a latitude and a longitude and returns the name of the nearest city, along with an extra value of type INTEGER that represents the population rank of the city.

```
SELECT zip_code_t FROM address
       WHERE address.city = find_location(32.1, 35.7, rank # INT)
       AND rank < 101;
```

When execution of the **find_location()** function completes successfully, the function has initialized the **rank** SLV. The SELECT then uses this **rank** value in a second WHERE-clause condition. In this example, the Statement-Local Variable Expression is the variable **rank** in the second WHERE-clause condition:

```
rank < 101
```

If the user-defined function that initializes the SLV is *not* executed in an iteration of the statement, the SLV has a value of null. SLV values do *not* persist across iterations of the statement. At the start of each iteration, the database server sets the SLV value to null.

Each user-defined function can have only *one* OUT parameter and *one* SLV. However, a single SQL statement can invoke multiple functions that have OUT parameters. For example, the following partial statement calls two user-defined functions with OUT parameters, whose values are referenced with the SLV names **out1** and **out2**:

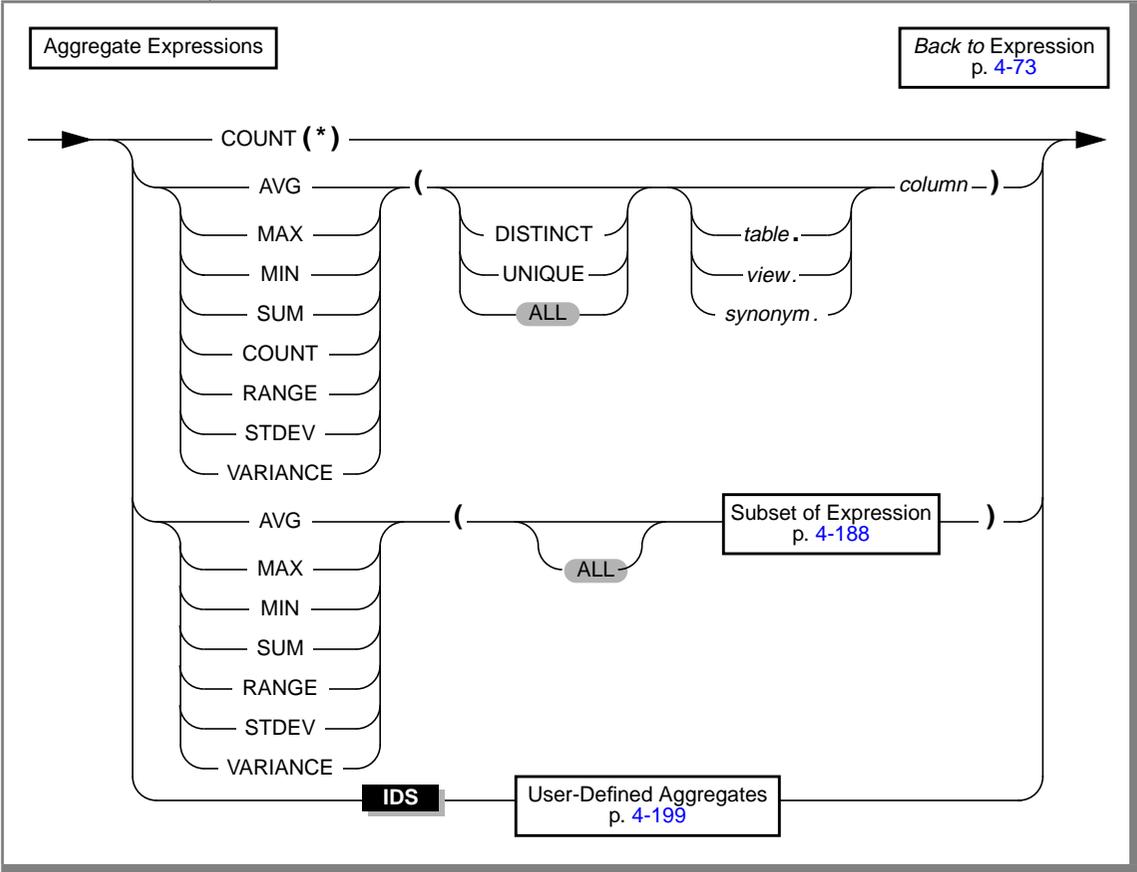
```
SELECT...
       WHERE func_2(x, out1 # INTEGER) < 100
       AND (out1 = 12 OR out1 = 13)
       AND func_3(a, out2 # FLOAT) = "SAN FRANCISCO"
       AND out2 = 3.1416;
```

For more information on how to write a user-defined function with an OUT parameter, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

Aggregate Expressions

An aggregate expression uses an aggregate function to summarize selected database data.

You cannot use an aggregate expression in a condition that is part of a WHERE clause unless you use the aggregate expression within a subquery.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of the column to which the specified aggregate function is applied	If you specify an aggregate expression and one or more columns in the SELECT clause of a SELECT statement, you must put all the column names that are not used within the aggregate expression or a time expression in the GROUP BY clause. You cannot apply an aggregate function to a BYTE or TEXT column. For other general restrictions, see “ Subset of Expressions Allowed in an Aggregate Expression ” on page 4-188 . For restrictions that depend on the keywords that precede <i>column</i> , see the headings for individual keywords on the following pages.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>synonym</i>	Name of the synonym in which the specified column occurs	The synonym and the table to which the synonym points must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of the table in which the specified column occurs	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>view</i>	Name of the view in which the specified column occurs	The view must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

An aggregate function returns one value for a set of queried rows. The following examples show aggregate functions in SELECT statements:

```
SELECT SUM(total_price) FROM items WHERE order_num = 1013
SELECT COUNT(*) FROM orders WHERE order_num = 1001
SELECT MAX(LENGTH(fname) + LENGTH(lname)) FROM customer
```

If you use an aggregate function and one or more columns in the select list, you must put all the column names that are not used as part of an aggregate or time expression in the GROUP BY clause.

Types of Aggregate Expressions

You can use two types of aggregate expressions in SQL statements: built-in aggregates and user-defined aggregates. The built-in aggregates include all the aggregates shown in the syntax diagram in [“Aggregate Expressions” on page 4-185](#) except for the “User-Defined Aggregates” category. User-defined aggregates are any new aggregates that the user creates with the CREATE AGGREGATE statement.

Built-in Aggregates

Built-in aggregates are aggregate expressions that are provided by the database server, such as AVG, SUM, and COUNT. By default, these aggregates work only with built-in data types, such as INTEGER and FLOAT.

You can extend these built-in aggregates to work with extended data types. To extend built-in aggregates, you must create UDRs that overload several binary operators.

Once you have overloaded the binary operators for a built-in aggregate, you can use that aggregate with an extended data type in an SQL statement. For example, if you have overloaded the **plus** operator for the SUM aggregate to work with a specified row type and assigned this row type to the **complex** column of the **complex_tab** table, you can apply the SUM aggregate to the **complex** column:

```
SELECT SUM(complex) FROM complex_tab
```

For further information on extending built-in aggregates, see the [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#) manual.

For information on invoking built-in aggregates, see the descriptions of individual built-in aggregates in the following pages.

User-Defined Aggregates

A user-defined aggregate is an aggregate that you define to perform an aggregate computation that is not provided by the database server. For example, you can create a user-defined aggregate named SUMSQ that returns the sum of the squared values of a specified column. User-defined aggregates can work with built-in data types or extended data types or both, depending on how you define the support functions for the user-defined aggregate.

To create a user-defined aggregate, use the `CREATE AGGREGATE` statement. In this statement you name the new aggregate and specify the support functions for the aggregate. Once you have created the new aggregate and its support functions, you can use the aggregate in SQL statements. For example, if you have created the `SUMSQ` aggregate and specified that it works with the `FLOAT` data type, you can apply the `SUMSQ` aggregate to a `FLOAT` column named **digits** in the **test** table:

```
SELECT SUMSQ(digits) FROM test
```

For further information on creating user-defined aggregates, see [“CREATE AGGREGATE” on page 2-115](#) and the discussion of user-defined aggregates in the *Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000* manual.

For information on invoking user-defined aggregates, see [“User-Defined Aggregates” on page 4-199](#).

Subset of Expressions Allowed in an Aggregate Expression

As indicated in the diagrams for [“Aggregate Expressions” on page 4-185](#) and [“User-Defined Aggregates” on page 4-199](#), not all expressions are available for you to use when you use an aggregate expression. The argument of an aggregate function cannot itself contain an aggregate function. You cannot use the aggregate functions in the following situations:

- `MAX(AVG(order_num))`
- An aggregate function in a `WHERE` clause, unless it is contained in a subquery, or if the aggregate is on a correlated column that originates from a parent query and the `WHERE` clause is within a subquery that is within a `HAVING` clause
- An aggregate function on a `BYTE` or `TEXT` column

You cannot use a collection column as an argument to the following aggregate functions:

- `AVG`
- `SUM`
- `MIN`
- `MAX`

For the full syntax of expressions, see [“Expression” on page 4-73](#).

Including or Excluding Duplicates in the Row Set

The **DISTINCT** keyword causes the function to be applied only to unique values from the named column. The **UNIQUE** keyword is a synonym for the **DISTINCT** keyword.

The **ALL** keyword is the opposite of the **DISTINCT** keyword. If you specify the **ALL** keyword, all the values that are selected from the named column or expression, including any duplicate values, are used in the calculation.

Overview of COUNT Functions

The **COUNT** function is actually a set of functions that enable you to count column values and expressions in different ways. You invoke each form of the **COUNT** function by specifying a particular argument after the **COUNT** keyword. Each form of the **COUNT** function is explained in the following subsections. For a comparison of the different forms of the **COUNT** function, see [“Comparison of the Different COUNT Functions”](#) on page 4-191.

COUNT(*) Function

The **COUNT (*)** function returns the number of rows that satisfy the **WHERE** clause of a **SELECT** statement. The following example finds how many rows in the **stock** table have the value **HRO** in the **manu_code** column:

```
SELECT COUNT(*) FROM stock WHERE manu_code = 'HRO'
```

If the **SELECT** statement does not have a **WHERE** clause, the **COUNT (*)** function returns the total number of rows in the table. The following example finds how many rows are in the **stock** table:

```
SELECT COUNT(*) FROM stock
```

If the **SELECT** statement contains a **GROUP BY** clause, the **COUNT (*)** function reflects the number of values in each group. The following example is grouped by the first name; the rows are selected if the database server finds more than one occurrence of the same name:

```
SELECT fname, COUNT(*) FROM customer
   GROUP BY fname
   HAVING COUNT(*) > 1
```

If the value of one or more rows is null, the **COUNT (*)** function includes the null columns in the count unless the **WHERE** clause explicitly omits them.

COUNT DISTINCT and COUNT UNIQUE Functions

The **COUNT DISTINCT** function return the number of unique values in the column or expression, as the following example shows. If the **COUNT DISTINCT** function encounters nulls, it ignores them.

```
SELECT COUNT (DISTINCT item_num) FROM items
```

Nulls are ignored unless every value in the specified column is null. If every column value is null, the **COUNT DISTINCT** function returns a zero (0) for that column.

The **UNIQUE** keyword has exactly the same meaning as the **DISTINCT** keyword when the **UNIQUE** keyword is used with the **COUNT** keyword. The **UNIQUE** keyword returns the number of unique non-null values in the column or expression.

The following example uses the **COUNT UNIQUE** function, but it is equivalent to the preceding example that uses the **COUNT DISTINCT** function:

```
SELECT COUNT (UNIQUE item_num) FROM items
```

COUNT column Function

The **COUNT *column*** function returns the total number of non-null values in the column or expression, as the following example shows:

```
SELECT COUNT (item_num) FROM items
```

You can include the **ALL** keyword before the specified column name for clarity, but the query result is the same whether you include the **ALL** keyword or omit it.

The following example shows how to include the **ALL** keyword in the **COUNT *column*** function:

```
SELECT COUNT (ALL item_num) FROM items
```

Comparison of the Different COUNT Functions

You can use the different forms of the **COUNT** function to retrieve different types of information about a table. The following table summarizes the meaning of each form of the **COUNT** function.

COUNT Function	Description
COUNT (*)	Returns the number of rows that satisfy the query If you do not specify a WHERE clause, this function returns the total number of rows in the table.
COUNT DISTINCT or COUNT UNIQUE	Returns the number of unique non-null values in the specified column
COUNT (column) or COUNT (ALL column)	Returns the total number of non-null values in the specified column

Some examples can help to show the differences among the different forms of the **COUNT** function. The following examples pose queries against the **orders** table in the demonstration database. Most of the examples query against the **ship_instruct** column in this table. For information on the structure of the **orders** table and the data in the **ship_instruct** column, see the description of the demonstration database in the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

Examples of the Count(*) Function

In the following example, the user wants to know the total number of rows in the **orders** table. So the user uses the **COUNT(*)** function in a **SELECT** statement without a **WHERE** clause.

```
SELECT COUNT(*) AS total_rows FROM orders
```

The following table shows the result of this query.

total_rows
23

In the following example, the user wants to know how many rows in the **orders** table have a null value in the **ship_instruct** column. The user uses the **COUNT(*)** function in a **SELECT** statement with a **WHERE** clause, and specifies the **IS NULL** condition in the **WHERE** clause.

```
SELECT COUNT (*) AS no_ship_instruct
FROM orders
WHERE ship_instruct IS NULL
```

The following table shows the result of this query.

no_ship_instruct
2

In the following example, the user wants to know how many rows in the **orders** table have the value `express` in the **ship_instruct** column. So the user specifies the **COUNT (*)** function in the select list and the equals (=) relational operator in the **WHERE** clause.

```
SELECT COUNT (*) AS ship_express
FROM ORDERS
WHERE ship_instruct = 'express'
```

The following table shows the result of this query.

ship_express
6

Examples of the COUNT column Function

In the following example the user wants to know how many non-null values are in the **ship_instruct** column of the **orders** table. The user enters the **COUNT column** function in the select list of the **SELECT** statement.

```
SELECT COUNT(ship_instruct) AS total_notnulls
FROM orders
```

The following table shows the result of this query.

total_notnulls
21

The user can also find out how many non-null values are in the **ship_instruct** column by including the ALL keyword in the parentheses that follow the COUNT keyword.

```
SELECT COUNT (ALL ship_instruct) AS all_notnulls
FROM orders
```

The following table shows that the query result is the same whether you include or omit the ALL keyword.

all_notnulls
21

Examples of the COUNT DISTINCT Function

In the following example, the user wants to know how many unique non-null values are in the **ship_instruct** column of the **orders** table. The user enters the **COUNT DISTINCT** function in the select list of the SELECT statement.

```
SELECT COUNT(DISTINCT ship_instruct) AS unique_notnulls
FROM orders
```

The following table shows the result of this query.

unique_notnulls
16

AVG Function

The **AVG** function returns the average of all values in the specified column or expression. You can apply the **AVG** function only to number columns. If you use the **DISTINCT** keyword, the average (mean) is greater than only the distinct values in the specified column or expression. The query in the following example finds the average price of a helmet:

```
SELECT AVG(unit_price) FROM stock WHERE stock_num = 110
```

Nulls are ignored unless every value in the specified column is null. If every column value is null, the **AVG** function returns a null for that column.

MAX Function

The **MAX** function returns the largest value in the specified column or expression. Using the **DISTINCT** keyword does not change the results. The query in the following example finds the most expensive item that is in stock but has not been ordered:

```
SELECT MAX(unit_price) FROM stock
WHERE NOT EXISTS (SELECT * FROM items
WHERE stock.stock_num = items.stock_num AND
stock.manu_code = items.manu_code)
```

Nulls are ignored unless every value in the specified column is null. If every column value is null, the **MAX** function returns a null for that column.

MIN Function

The **MIN** function returns the lowest value in the column or expression. Using the **DISTINCT** keyword does not change the results. The following example finds the least expensive item in the **stock** table:

```
SELECT MIN(unit_price) FROM stock
```

Nulls are ignored unless every value in the specified column is null. If every column value is null, the **MIN** function returns a null for that column.

SUM Function

The **SUM** function returns the sum of all the values in the specified column or expression, as shown in the following example. If you use the **DISTINCT** keyword, the sum is for only distinct values in the column or expression.

```
SELECT SUM(total_price) FROM items WHERE order_num = 1013
```

Nulls are ignored unless every value in the specified column is null. If every column value is null, the **SUM** function returns a null for that column.

You cannot use the **SUM** function with a character column.

RANGE Function

The **RANGE** function computes the range for a sample of a population. It computes the difference between the maximum and the minimum values, as follows:

```
range(expr) = max(expr) - min(expr)
```

You can apply the **RANGE** function to only numeric columns. The following query finds the range of ages for a population:

```
SELECT RANGE(age) FROM u_pop
```

As with other aggregates, the **RANGE** function applies to the rows of a group when the query includes a **GROUP BY** clause, as shown in the following example:

```
SELECT RANGE(age) FROM u_pop
GROUP BY birth
```

Because **DATE** data types are stored internally as integers, you can use the **RANGE** function on columns of type **DATE**. When used with a **DATE** column, the return value is the number of days between the earliest and latest dates in the column.

Nulls are ignored unless every value in the specified column is null. If every column value is null, the **RANGE** function returns a null for that column.

Important: *All computations for the **RANGE** function are performed in 32-digit precision, which should be sufficient for many sets of input data. The computation, however, loses precision or returns incorrect results when all of the input data values have 16 or more digits of precision.*



STDEV Function

The **STDEV** function computes the standard deviation for a population. It is the square root of the **VARIANCE** function.

You can apply the **STDEV** function only to numeric columns. The following query finds the standard deviation on a population:

```
SELECT STDEV(age) FROM u_pop WHERE u_pop.age > 0
```

As with the other aggregates, the **STDEV** function applies to the rows of a group when the query includes a **GROUP BY** clause, as shown in the following example:

```
SELECT STDEV(age) FROM u_pop
      GROUP BY birth
      WHERE STDEV(age) > 0
```

Nulls are ignored unless every value in the specified column is null. If every column value is null, the **STDEV** function returns a null for that column.



Important: All computations for the **STDEV** function are performed in 32-digit precision, which should be sufficient for many sets of input data. The computation, however, loses precision or returns incorrect results when all of the input data values have 16 or more digits of precision.

Although **DATE** data is stored internally as an integer, you cannot use this function on columns of type **DATE**.

VARIANCE Function

The **VARIANCE** function returns the population variance. It computes the following value:

$$(\text{SUM}(X_i^2) - (\text{SUM}(X_i)^2)/N)/N$$

In this formula, X_i is each value in the column and N is the total number of values in the column.

You can apply the **VARIANCE** function only to numeric columns.

The following query finds the variance on a population:

```
SELECT VARIANCE(age) FROM u_pop WHERE u_pop.age > 0
```

As with the other aggregates, the **VARIANCE** function applies to the rows of a group when the query includes a **GROUP BY** clause, as shown in the following example:

```
SELECT VARIANCE(age) FROM u_pop
      GROUP BY birth
      WHERE VARIANCE(age) > 0
```

When you use the **VARIANCE** function, nulls are ignored unless every value in the specified column is null. If every column value is null, the **VARIANCE** function returns a null for that column. If the total number of values in the column is equal to one, the **VARIANCE** function returns a zero variance. If you want to omit this special case, you can adjust the query construction. For example, you might include a **HAVING COUNT(*) > 1** clause.



Important: All computations for the **VARIANCE** function are performed in 32-digit precision, which should be sufficient for many sets of input data. The computation, however, loses precision or returns incorrect results when all of the input data values have 16 or more digits of precision.

Although **DATE** data is stored internally as an integer, you cannot use this function on columns of type **DATE**.

Summary of Aggregate Function Behavior

An example can help to summarize the behavior of the aggregate functions. Assume that the **testtable** table has a single **INTEGER** column that is named **a_number**. The contents of this table are as follows.

a_number
2
2
2
3
3
4
(null)

You can use aggregate functions to obtain different types of information about the **a_number** column and the **testtable** table. In the following example, the user specifies the **AVG** function to obtain the average of all the non-null values in the **a_number** column:

```
SELECT AVG(a_number) AS average_number
FROM testtable
```

The following table shows the result of this query.

average_number
2.66666666666667

You can use the other aggregate functions in **SELECT** statements that are similar to the one shown in the preceding example. If you enter a series of **SELECT** statements that have different aggregate functions in the select list and do not have a **WHERE** clause, you receive the results that the following table shows.

Function	Results
COUNT (*)	7
COUNT (DISTINCT)	3
COUNT (ALL a_number)	6
COUNT (a_number)	6
AVG	2.66666666666667
AVG (DISTINCT)	3.00000000000000
MAX	4
MAX(DISTINCT)	4
MIN	2
MIN(DISTINCT)	2
SUM	16

Function	Results
SUM(DISTINCT)	9
RANGE	2
STDEV	0.74535599249993
VARIANCE	0.55555555555556

(2 of 2)

E/C

Error Checking in ESQ/C

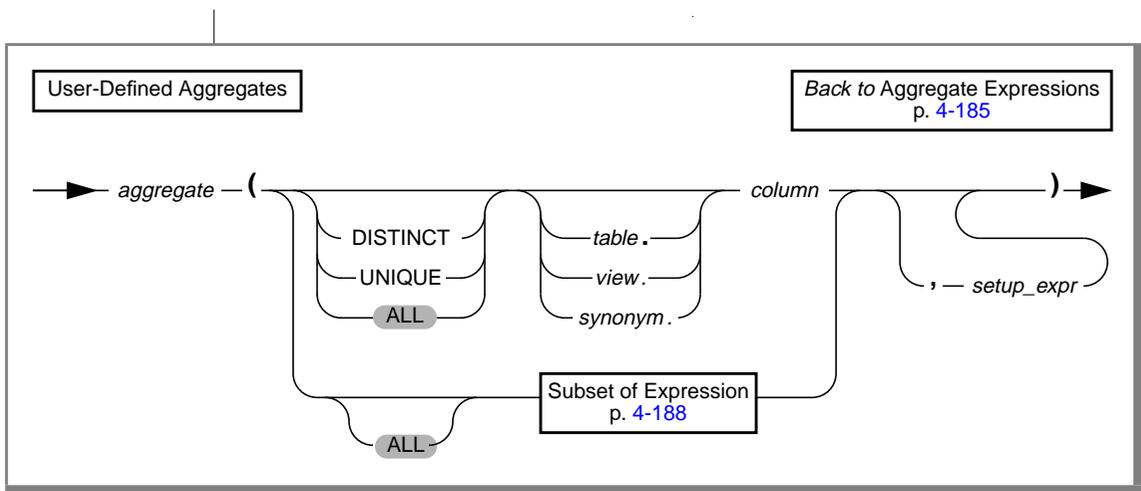
Aggregate functions always return one row; if no rows are selected, the function returns a null. You can use the **COUNT (*)** function to determine whether any rows were selected, and you can use an indicator variable to determine whether any selected rows were empty. Fetching a row with a cursor associated with an aggregate function always returns one row; hence, 100 for end of data is never returned into the **sqlcode** variable for a first fetch attempt.

You can also use the GET DIAGNOSTICS statement for error checking. ♦

IDS

User-Defined Aggregates

You can create your own aggregate expressions with the **CREATE AGGREGATE** statement and then invoke these aggregates wherever you can invoke the built-in aggregates. The following diagram shows the syntax for invoking a user-defined aggregate.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>aggregate</i>	Name of the user-defined aggregate to invoke	The user-defined aggregate and the support functions defined for the aggregate must exist.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>column</i>	Name of a column within table whose storage characteristics are used for the copy of the BLOB or CLOB value	This column must have CLOB or BLOB as its data type.	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>setup_expr</i>	Set-up expression that customizes the aggregate for a particular invocation	Any columns referenced in the set-up expression must be listed in the GROUP BY clause of the query. The set-up expression cannot be a lone host variable.	Expression, p. 4-73
<i>synonym</i>	Name of the synonym in which the specified column occurs	The synonym and the table to which the synonym points must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of the table in which the specified column occurs	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>view</i>	Name of the view in which the specified column occurs	The view must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

Use the **DISTINCT** or **UNIQUE** keywords to specify that the user-defined aggregate is to be applied only to unique values in the named column or expression. Use the **ALL** keyword to specify that the aggregate is to be applied to all values in the named column or expression. If you omit the **DISTINCT**, **UNIQUE**, and **ALL** keywords, **ALL** is the default value. For further information on the **DISTINCT**, **UNIQUE**, and **ALL** keywords, see [“Including or Excluding Duplicates in the Row Set” on page 4-189](#).

When you specify a set-up expression, this value is passed to the **INIT** support function that was defined for the user-defined aggregate in the **CREATE AGGREGATE** statement.

In the following example, you apply the user-defined aggregate named **my_avg** to all values of the **quantity** column in the **items** table:

```
SELECT my_avg(quantity) FROM items
```

In the following example, you apply the user-defined aggregate named **my_sum** to unique values of the **quantity** column in the **items** table. You also supply the value 5 as a set-up expression. This value might specify that the initial value of the sum that **my_avg** will compute is 5.

```
SELECT my_sum(DISTINCT quantity, 5) FROM items
```

For further information on user-defined aggregates, see [“CREATE AGGREGATE” on page 2-115](#) and the discussion of user-defined aggregates in [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#).

Related Information

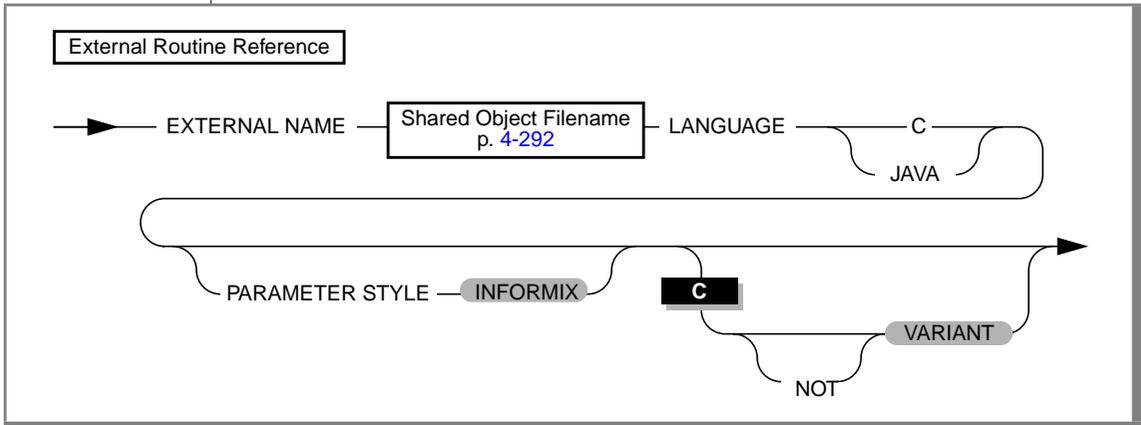
For a discussion of expressions in the context of the **SELECT** statement, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For discussions of column expressions, length functions, and the **TRIM** function, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

External Routine Reference

Use an External Routine Reference when you write an external routine.

Syntax



Usage

The External Routine Reference provides the following information about an external routine:

- The pathname to the executable object code, stored in a shared-object file
 For C, this file is either a DLL or a shared library, depending on your operating system.
 For Java, this file is a jar file. Before you can create a UDR written in Java, you must assign a jar identifier to the external jar file with the **sqlj.install_jar** procedure. For more information, see [“sqlj.install_jar” on page 2-447](#).
- The name of the language in which the UDR is written
- The parameter style of the UDR
- The **VARIANT** or **NOT VARIANT** option, if you specify one
 This option applies only to C user-defined functions. ♦

C

Parameter Style

By default, the parameter style is INFORMIX. If you specify an OUT parameter, the OUT argument is passed by reference.

C

VARIANT or NOT VARIANT

The **VARIANT** and **NOT VARIANT** options apply only to user-defined functions written in C.

A function is *variant* if it returns different results when it is invoked with the same arguments or if it modifies a database or variable state. For example, a function that returns the current date or time is a variant function.

By default, user-defined functions are variant. If you specify **NOT VARIANT** when you create or modify a function, the function cannot contain any SQL statements.

If the function is nonvariant, the database server might cache the return variant functions. For more information on functional indexes, see [“CREATE INDEX” on page 2-157](#).

To register a nonvariant function, add the **NOT VARIANT** option in this clause or in the Routine Modifier clause that is discussed in [“Routine Modifier” on page 4-274](#). However, if you specify the modifier in both places, you must use the same modifier in both clauses.

C

Example of a C User-Defined Function

The following example registers an external function named **equal()** that takes two values of **point** data type as arguments. In this example, **point** is an opaque type that specifies the **x** and **y** coordinates of a two-dimensional point.

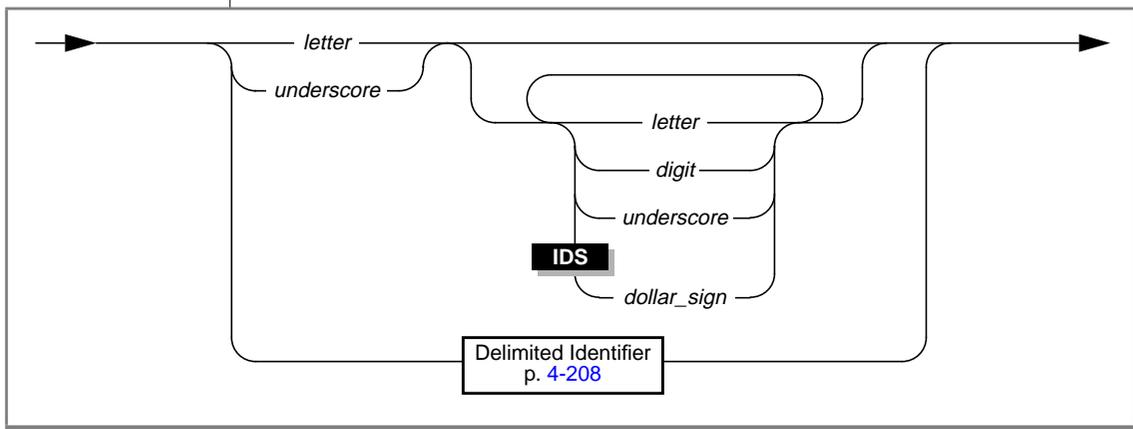
```
CREATE FUNCTION equal( a point, b point )
RETURNING BOOLEAN;
EXTERNAL NAME
"/usr/lib/point/lib/libbtype1.so(point1_equal)"
LANGUAGE C
END FUNCTION
```

The function returns a single value of type `BOOLEAN`. The external name specifies the path to the C shared object file where the object code of the function is stored. The external name indicates that the library contains another function, **`point1_equal`**, which is invoked while **`equal(point, point)`** is executing.

Identifier

An identifier specifies the simple name of a database object, such as a column, table, index, or view. Use the Identifier segment whenever you see a reference to an identifier in a syntax diagram.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>digit</i>	Integer that forms part of the identifier	You must specify a number between 0 and 9, inclusive. The first character of an identifier cannot be a number.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>dollar_sign</i>	Dollar sign symbol (\$) that forms part of the identifier	The dollar-sign symbol cannot be the first character of an identifier. Informix recommends that you do not use the dollar-sign symbol in identifiers because this symbol is a special character and the use of this symbol in an identifier might cause conflicts with other syntax elements.	A dollar sign symbol (\$) is a literal value that you enter from the keyboard.

(1 of 2)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>letter</i>	Letter that forms part of the identifier	<p>If you are using the default locale, a letter must be an alphabetical uppercase or lowercase character in the range of A to Z or a to z (in the ASCII code set).</p> <p>If you are using a nondefault locale, <i>letter</i> must be an alphabetic character that the locale supports. For further information, see “Support for Non-ASCII Characters in Identifiers” on page 4-208.</p>	Letters are literal values that you enter from the keyboard.
<i>underscore</i>	Underscore character (_) that forms part of the identifier	You cannot substitute a space character, dash, hyphen, or any other nonalphanumeric character for the underscore character.	Underscore character (_) is a literal value that you enter from the keyboard.

(2 of 2)

Usage

The elements of an identifier cannot be separated by blanks. To include a space character in an identifier, you must specify a delimited identifier. For more information, see [“Delimited Identifiers” on page 4-208](#).

IDS

An identifier can contain up to 128 bytes, inclusive. For example, the following table name is valid: **employee_information**. ♦

XPS

An identifier can contain up to 18 bytes, inclusive. For example, the following table name is valid: **employee_info**. ♦

GLS

If you are using a multibyte code set, keep in mind that the maximum length of an identifier refers to the number of bytes, not the number of characters. For further information on the GLS aspects of identifiers, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#). ♦

IDS

E/C

The database server checks the internal version number of the client application and the setting of the `IFX_LONGID` environment variable to determine whether a client application is capable of handling long identifiers (identifiers that are up to 128 bytes in length). For further information on the `IFX_LONGID` environment variable, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#). ♦

Use of Uppercase Characters

You can specify the name of a database object with uppercase characters, but the database server shifts the name to lowercase characters unless the `DELIMIDENT` environment variable is set and the name of the database object is enclosed in double quotes. When these conditions are true, the database server treats the name of the database object as a delimited identifier and preserves the uppercase characters in the name. For further information on delimited identifiers, see “[Delimited Identifiers](#)” on [page 4-208](#).

Use of Reserved Words as Identifiers

Although you can use almost any word as an identifier, syntactic ambiguities can result from using reserved words as identifiers in SQL statements. The statement might fail or might not produce the expected results. For a discussion of the syntactic ambiguities that can result from using reserved words as identifiers and an explanation of workarounds for these problems, see “[Potential Ambiguities and Syntax Errors](#)” on [page 4-211](#).

IDS

XPS

For a list of all the reserved words in the Informix implementation of SQL in Dynamic Server, see [Appendix A, “Reserved Words for Dynamic Server”](#). ♦

For a list of all the reserved words in the Informix implementation of SQL in Extended Parallel Server, see [Appendix B, “Reserved Words for Extended Parallel Server”](#). ♦

Delimited identifiers provide the easiest and safest way to use a reserved word as an identifier without causing syntactic ambiguities. No workarounds are necessary when you use a reserved word as a delimited identifier. For the syntax and usage of delimited identifiers, see “[Delimited Identifiers](#)” on [page 4-208](#).



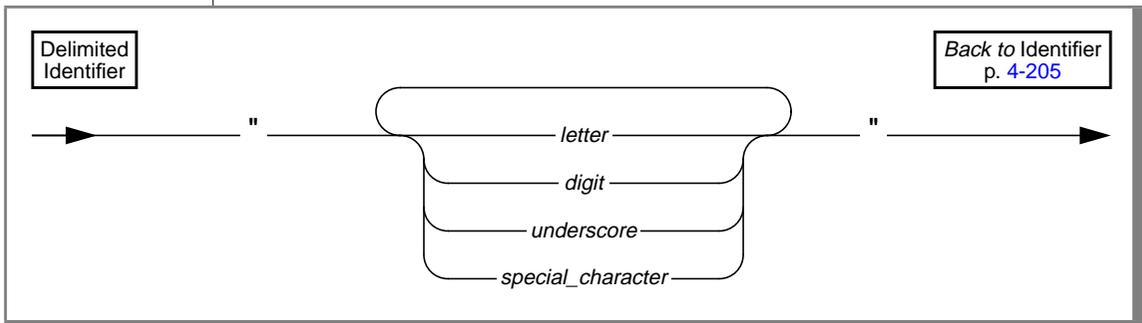
GLS

Tip: If you receive an error message that seems unrelated to the statement that caused the error, check to determine whether the statement uses a reserved word as an un delimited identifier.

Support for Non-ASCII Characters in Identifiers

If you are using a nondefault locale, you can use any alphabetic character that your locale recognizes as a *letter* in an SQL identifier name. You can use a non-ASCII character as a letter as long as your locale supports it. This feature enables you to use non-ASCII characters in the names of database objects such as indexes, tables, and views. For a list of SQL identifiers that support non-ASCII characters, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

Delimited Identifiers



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>digit</i>	Integer that forms part of the delimited identifier	You must specify a number between 0 and 9, inclusive.	Literal Number, p. 4-237

(1 of 2)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>letter</i>	Letter that forms part of the delimited identifier	Letters in delimited identifiers are case-sensitive. If you are using the default locale, a letter must be an uppercase or lowercase character in the range a to z (in the ASCII code set). If you are using a nondefault locale, <i>letter</i> must be an alphabetic character that the locale supports. For more information, see “Support for Non-ASCII Characters in Delimited Identifiers” on page 4-209.	Letters are literal values that you enter from the keyboard.
<i>special_character</i>	Nonalphanumeric character, such as #, \$, or a space, that forms part of the delimited identifier	If you are using the ASCII code set, you can specify any ASCII nonalphanumeric character.	Nonalphanumeric characters are literal values that you enter from the keyboard.
<i>underscore</i>	Underscore (<code>_</code>) that forms part of the delimited identifier	You can use a dash (--), hyphen (-), or any other appropriate character in place of the underscore character.	Underscore (<code>_</code>) is a literal value that you enter from the keyboard.

(2 of 2)

Delimited identifiers allow you to specify names for database objects that are otherwise identical to SQL reserved keywords, such as TABLE, WHERE, DECLARE, and so on. The only database object for which you cannot use delimited identifiers is database name.

Delimited identifiers are case sensitive.

Delimited identifiers are compliant with the ANSI standard.

When you create a database object, avoid including one or more trailing blanks in a delimited identifier. In other words, immediately follow the last non-blank character of the name with the end quote.

Support for Nonalphanumeric Characters

You can use delimited identifiers to specify nonalphanumeric characters in the names of database objects. However, you cannot use delimited identifiers to specify nonalphanumeric characters in the names of storage objects such as dbspaces and blobspaces.

Support for Non-ASCII Characters in Delimited Identifiers

When you are using a nondefault locale whose code set supports non-ASCII characters, you can specify non-ASCII characters in most delimited identifiers. The rule is that if you can specify non-ASCII characters in the undelimited form of the identifier, you can also specify non-ASCII characters in the delimited form of the same identifier. For a list of identifiers that support non-ASCII characters and for information on non-ASCII characters in delimited identifiers, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

Effect of DELIMIDENT Environment Variable

To use delimited identifiers, you must set the **DELIMIDENT** environment variable. When you set the **DELIMIDENT** environment variable, database objects enclosed in double quotes (") are treated as identifiers and database objects enclosed in single quotes (') are treated as strings. If the **DELIMIDENT** environment variable is not set, values enclosed in double quotes are also treated as strings.

If the **DELIMIDENT** environment variable is set, the **SELECT** statement in the following example must be in single quotes in order to be treated as a quoted string:

```
PREPARE ... FROM 'SELECT * FROM customer'
```

If a delimited identifier name is used in the **SELECT** statement that defines a view, then the **DELIMIDENT** environment variable must be set in order for the view to be accessed, even if the view name itself contains no special characters.

Examples of Delimited Identifiers

The following example shows how to create a table with a case-sensitive table name:

```
CREATE TABLE "Power_Ranger" (...)
```

The following example shows how to create a table whose name includes a space character. If the table name were not enclosed in double quotes ("), you could not use a space character in the name.

```
CREATE TABLE "My Customers" (...)
```

The following example shows how to create a table that uses a keyword as the table name:

```
CREATE TABLE "TABLE" (...)
```

Using Double Quotes Within a Delimited Identifier

If you want to include a double-quote (") in a delimited identifier, you must precede the double-quote (") with another double-quote ("), as shown in the following example:

```
CREATE TABLE "My""Good""Data" (...)
```

Potential Ambiguities and Syntax Errors

Although you can use almost any word as an SQL identifier, syntactic ambiguities can occur. An ambiguous statement might not produce the desired results. The following sections outline some potential pitfalls and workarounds.

Using Functions as Column Names

The following two examples show a workaround for using a built-in function as a column name in a SELECT statement. This workaround applies to the aggregate functions (AVG, COUNT, MAX, MIN, SUM) as well as the function expressions (algebraic, exponential and logarithmic, time, hex, length, dbinfo, trigonometric, and trim functions).

Using **avg** as a column name causes the following example to fail because the database server interprets **avg** as an aggregate function rather than as a column name:

```
SELECT avg FROM mytab -- fails
```

If the **DELIMITED** environment variable is set, you could use **avg** as a column name as shown in the following example:

```
SELECT "avg" from mytab -- successful
```

The workaround in the following example removes ambiguity by including a table name with the column name:

```
SELECT mytab.avg FROM mytab
```

If you use the keyword **TODAY**, **CURRENT**, or **USER** as a column name, ambiguity can occur, as shown in the following example:

```
CREATE TABLE mytab (user char(10),
                    CURRENT DATETIME HOUR TO SECOND, TODAY DATE)

INSERT INTO mytab VALUES('josh', '11:30:30', '1/22/98')

SELECT user, current, today FROM mytab
```

The database server interprets **user**, **current**, and **today** in the **SELECT** statement as the built-in functions **USER**, **CURRENT**, and **TODAY**. Thus, instead of returning `josh, 11:30:30, 1/22/89`, the **SELECT** statement returns the current user name, the current time, and the current date.

If you want to select the actual columns of the table, you must write the **SELECT** statement in one of the following ways:

```
SELECT mytab.user, mytab.current, mytab.today FROM mytab;

EXEC SQL select * from mytab;
```

Using Keywords as Column Names

Specific workarounds exist for using a keyword as a column name in a **SELECT** statement or other SQL statement. In some cases, more than one suitable workaround might be available.

Using ALL, DISTINCT, or UNIQUE as a Column Name

If you want to use the **ALL**, **DISTINCT**, or **UNIQUE** keywords as column names in a **SELECT** statement, you can take advantage of a workaround.

First, consider what happens when you try to use one of these keywords without a workaround. In the following example, using **all** as a column name causes the **SELECT** statement to fail because the database server interprets **all** as a keyword rather than as a column name:

```
SELECT all FROM mytab -- fails
```

You need to use a workaround to make this `SELECT` statement execute successfully. If the `DELIMITED` environment variable is set, you can use **all** as a column name by enclosing **all** in double quotes. In the following example, the `SELECT` statement executes successfully because the database server interprets **all** as a column name:

```
SELECT "all" from mytab -- successful
```

The workaround in the following example uses the keyword `ALL` with the column name **all**:

```
SELECT ALL all FROM mytab
```

The rest of the examples in this section show workarounds for using the keywords `UNIQUE` or `DISTINCT` as a column name in a `CREATE TABLE` statement.

Using **unique** as a column name causes the following example to fail because the database server interprets **unique** as a keyword rather than as a column name:

```
CREATE TABLE mytab (unique INTEGER) -- fails
```

The workaround in the following example uses two SQL statements. The first statement creates the column **mycol**; the second renames the column **mycol** to **unique**.

```
CREATE TABLE mytab (mycol INTEGER)
RENAME COLUMN mytab.mycol TO unique
```

The workaround in the following example also uses two SQL statements. The first statement creates the column **mycol**; the second alters the table, adds the column **unique**, and drops the column **mycol**.

```
CREATE TABLE mytab (mycol INTEGER)
ALTER TABLE mytab
  ADD (unique integer)
  DROP (mycol)
```

Using INTERVAL or DATETIME as a Column Name

The examples in this section show workarounds for using the keyword **INTERVAL** (or **DATETIME**) as a column name in a **SELECT** statement.

Using **interval** as a column name causes the following example to fail because the database server interprets **interval** as a keyword and expects it to be followed by an **INTERVAL** qualifier:

```
SELECT interval FROM mytab -- fails
```

If the **DELIMITED** environment variable is set, you could use **interval** as a column name, as shown in the following example:

```
SELECT "interval" from mytab -- successful
```

The workaround in the following example removes ambiguity by specifying a table name with the column name:

```
SELECT mytab.interval FROM mytab;
```

The workaround in the following example includes an owner name with the table name:

```
SELECT josh.mytab.interval FROM josh.mytab;
```

IDS

Using rowid as a Column Name

Every nonfragmented table has a virtual column named **rowid**. To avoid ambiguity, you cannot use **rowid** as a column name. Performing the following actions causes an error:

- Creating a table or view with a column named **rowid**
- Altering a table by adding a column named **rowid**
- Renaming a column to **rowid**

You can, however, use the term **rowid** as a table name.

```
CREATE TABLE rowid (column INTEGER,  
date DATE, char CHAR(20))
```

Important: Informix recommends that you use primary keys as an access method rather than exploiting the **rowid** column.



Using Keywords as Table Names

The examples in this section show workarounds that involve owner naming when you use the keyword `STATISTICS` or `OUTER` as a table name. This workaround also applies to the use of `STATISTICS` or `OUTER` as a view name or synonym.

Using **statistics** as a table name causes the following example to fail because the database server interprets it as part of the `UPDATE STATISTICS` syntax rather than as a table name in an `UPDATE` statement:

```
UPDATE statistics SET mycol = 10
```

The workaround in the following example specifies an owner name with the table name, to avoid ambiguity:

```
UPDATE josh.statistics SET mycol = 10
```

Using **outer** as a table name causes the following example to fail because the database server interprets **outer** as a keyword for performing an outer join:

```
SELECT mycol FROM outer -- fails
```

The workaround in the following example uses owner naming to avoid ambiguity:

```
SELECT mycol FROM josh.outer
```

Workarounds That Use the Keyword AS

In some cases, although a statement is not ambiguous and the syntax is correct, the database server returns a syntax error. The preceding pages show existing syntactic workarounds for several situations. You can use the `AS` keyword to provide a workaround for the exceptions.

You can use the `AS` keyword in front of column labels or table aliases.

The following example uses the `AS` keyword with a column label:

```
SELECT column-name AS display-label FROM table-name
```

The following example uses the `AS` keyword with a table alias:

```
SELECT select-list FROM table-name AS table-alias
```

Using AS with Column Labels

The examples in this section show workarounds that use the AS keyword with a column label. The first two examples show how you can use the keyword UNITS (or YEAR, MONTH, DAY, HOUR, MINUTE, SECOND, or FRACTION) as a column label.

Using **units** as a column label causes the following example to fail because the database server interprets it as a DATETIME qualifier for the column named **mycol**:

```
SELECT mycol units FROM mytab
```

The workaround in the following example includes the AS keyword:

```
SELECT mycol AS units FROM mytab;
```

The following examples show how the AS or FROM keyword can be used as a column label.

Using **as** as a column label causes the following example to fail because the database server interprets **as** as identifying **from** as a column label and thus finds no required FROM clause:

```
SELECT mycol as from mytab -- fails
```

The following example repeats the AS keyword:

```
SELECT mycol AS as from mytab
```

Using **from** as a column label causes the following example to fail because the database server expects a table name to follow the first **from**:

```
SELECT mycol from FROM mytab -- fails
```

The following example uses the AS keyword to identify the first **from** as a column label:

```
SELECT mycol AS from FROM mytab
```

Using AS with Table Aliases

The examples in this section show workarounds that use the AS keyword with a table alias. The first pair shows how to use the ORDER, FOR, GROUP, HAVING, INTO, UNION, WITH, CREATE, GRANT, or WHERE keyword as a table alias.

Using **order** as a table alias causes the following example to fail because the database server interprets **order** as part of an ORDER BY clause:

```
SELECT * FROM mytab order -- fails
```

The workaround in the following example uses the keyword AS to identify **order** as a table alias:

```
SELECT * FROM mytab AS order;
```

The following two examples show how to use the keyword WITH as a table alias.

Using **with** as a table alias causes the following example to fail because the database server interprets the keyword as part of the WITH CHECK OPTION syntax:

```
EXEC SQL select * from mytab with; -- fails
```

The workaround in the following example uses the keyword AS to identify **with** as a table alias:

```
EXEC SQL select * from mytab as with;
```

The following two examples show how to use the keyword CREATE (or GRANT) as a table alias.

Using **create** as a table alias causes the following example to fail because the database server interprets the keyword as part of the syntax to create an entity such as a table, synonym, or view:

```
EXEC SQL select * from mytab create; -- fails
```

The workaround in the following example uses the keyword AS to identify **create** as a table alias:

```
EXEC SQL select * from mytab as create;
```

Fetching Keywords as Cursor Names

In a few situations, no workaround exists for the syntactic ambiguity that occurs when a keyword is used as an identifier in an SQL program.

In the following example, the `FETCH` statement specifies a cursor named **next**. The `FETCH` statement generates a syntax error because the preprocessor interprets **next** as a keyword, signifying the next row in the active set and expects a cursor name to follow **next**. This occurs whenever the keyword `NEXT`, `PREVIOUS`, `PRIOR`, `FIRST`, `LAST`, `CURRENT`, `RELATIVE`, or `ABSOLUTE` is used as a cursor name.

```
/* This code fragment fails */
EXEC SQL declare next cursor for
      select customer_num, lname from customer;

EXEC SQL open next;
EXEC SQL fetch next into :cnum, :lname;
```

Using Keywords as Variable Names in UDRs

If you use any of the following keywords as identifiers for variables in a user-defined routine (UDR), you can create ambiguous syntax.

<code>CURRENT</code>	<code>OFF</code>
<code>DATETIME</code>	<code>ON</code>
<code>GLOBAL</code>	<code>PROCEDURE</code>
<code>INTERVAL</code>	<code>SELECT</code>
<code>NULL</code>	

Using `CURRENT`, `DATETIME`, `INTERVAL`, and `NULL` in `INSERT`

A UDR cannot insert a variable using the `CURRENT`, `DATETIME`, `INTERVAL`, or `NULL` keyword as the name.

For example, if you define a variable called **null**, when you try to insert the value **null** into a column, you receive a syntax error, as shown in the following example:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE problem()
.
.
.
DEFINE null INT;
LET null = 3;
INSERT INTO tab VALUES (null); -- error, inserts NULL, not 3
```

Using NULL and SELECT in a Condition

If you define a variable with the name *null* or *select*, using it in a condition that uses the IN keyword is ambiguous. The following example shows three conditions that cause problems: in an IF statement, in a WHERE clause of a SELECT statement, and in a WHILE condition:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE problem()
.
.
.
DEFINE x,y,select, null, INT;
DEFINE pfname CHAR[15];
LET x = 3; LET select = 300;
LET null = 1;
IF x IN (select, 10, 12) THEN LET y = 1; -- problem if

IF x IN (1, 2, 4) THEN
SELECT customer_num, fname INTO y, pfname FROM customer
WHERE customer IN (select, 301, 302, 303); -- problem in

WHILE x IN (null, 2) -- problem while
.
.
.
END WHILE;
```

You can use the variable *select* in an IN list if you ensure it is not the first element in the list. The workaround in the following example corrects the IF statement shown in the preceding example:

```
IF x IN (10, select, 12) THEN LET y = 1; -- problem if
```

No workaround exists to using *null* as a variable name and attempting to use it in an IN condition.

Using ON, OFF, or PROCEDURE with TRACE

If you define an SPL variable called *on*, *off*, or *procedure*, and you attempt to use it in a TRACE statement, the value of the variable does not trace. Instead, the TRACE ON, TRACE OFF, or TRACE PROCEDURE statements execute. You can trace the value of the variable by making the variable into a more complex expression. The following example shows the ambiguous syntax and the workaround:

```
DEFINE on, off, procedure INT;

TRACE on;          --ambiguous
TRACE 0+ on;       --ok
TRACE off;         --ambiguous
TRACE ''||off;     --ok

TRACE procedure;  --ambiguous
TRACE 0+procedure;--ok
```

Using GLOBAL as a Variable Name

If you attempt to define a variable with the name *global*, the define operation fails. The syntax shown in the following example conflicts with the syntax for defining global variables:

```
DEFINE global INT; -- fails;
```

If the **DELIMIDENT** environment variable is set, you could use **global** as a variable name, as shown in the following example:

```
DEFINE "global" INT; -- successful
```

Using EXECUTE, SELECT, or WITH as Cursor Names

Do not use an EXECUTE, SELECT, or WITH keyword as the name of a cursor. If you try to use one of these keywords as the name of a cursor in a FOREACH statement, the cursor name is interpreted as a keyword in the FOREACH statement. No workaround exists.

The following example does not work:

```
DEFINE execute INT;
FOREACH execute FOR SELECT coll -- error, looks like
                                -- FOREACH EXECUTE PROCEDURE
INTO var1 FROM tab1; --
```

SELECT Statements in WHILE and FOR Statements

If you use a SELECT statement in a WHILE or FOR loop, and if you need to enclose it in parentheses, enclose the entire SELECT statement in a BEGIN...END statement block. The SELECT statement in the first WHILE statement in the following example is interpreted as a call to the procedure **var1**; the second WHILE statement is interpreted correctly:

```

DEFINE var1, var2 INT;
WHILE var2 = var1
    SELECT col1 INTO var3 FROM TAB -- error, seen as call
var1()
    UNION
    SELECT co2 FROM tab2;
END WHILE

WHILE var2 = var1
BEGIN
    SELECT col1 INTO var3 FROM TAB -- ok syntax
    UNION
    SELECT co2 FROM tab2;
END
END WHILE

```

SET Keyword in the ON EXCEPTION Statement

If you use a statement that begins with the keyword SET inside the statement ON EXCEPTION, you must enclose it in a BEGIN...END statement block. The following list shows some of the SQL statements that begin with the keyword SET.

SET	SET LOCK MODE
SET DEBUG FILE	SET LOG
SET EXPLAIN	SET OPTIMIZATION
SET ISOLATION	SET PDQPRIORITY

The following examples show incorrect and correct use of a SET LOCK MODE statement inside an ON EXCEPTION statement.

The following ON EXCEPTION statement returns an error because the SET LOCK MODE statement is not enclosed in a BEGIN...END statement block:

```

ON EXCEPTION IN (-107)
    SET LOCK MODE TO WAIT; -- error, value expected, not 'lock'
END EXCEPTION

```

The following ON EXCEPTION statement executes successfully because the SET LOCK MODE statement is enclosed in a BEGIN...END statement block:

```
ON EXCEPTION IN (-107)
  BEGIN
    SET LOCK MODE TO WAIT; -- ok
  END
END EXCEPTION
```

Related Information

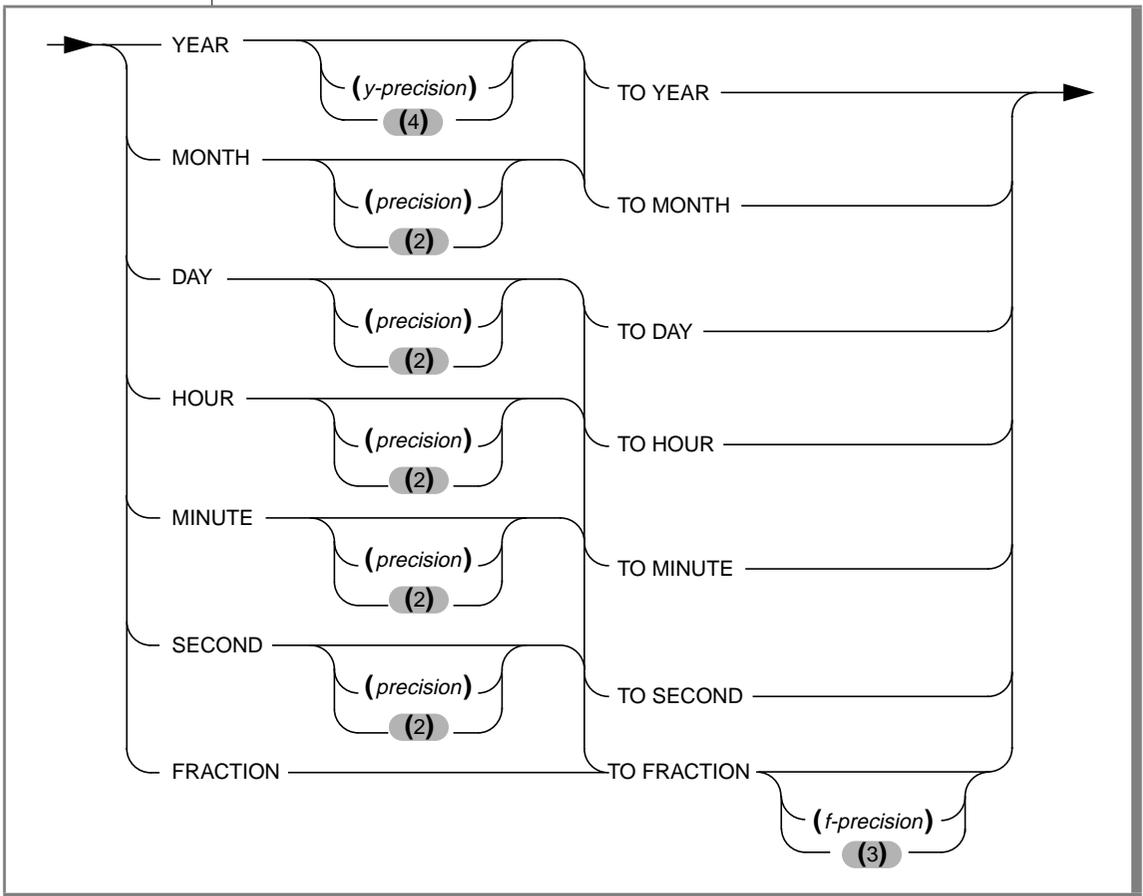
For a discussion of owner naming, see your [Performance Guide](#).

For a discussion of identifiers that support non-ASCII characters and a discussion of non-ASCII characters in delimited identifiers, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

INTERVAL Field Qualifier

The INTERVAL field qualifier specifies the units for an INTERVAL value. Use the INTERVAL Field Qualifier segment whenever you see a reference to an INTERVAL field qualifier in a syntax diagram.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>f-precision</i>	Maximum number of digits used in the fraction field The default value of <i>f-precision</i> is 3.	The maximum value that you can specify in <i>f-precision</i> is 5.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>precision</i>	Number of digits in the largest number of months, days, hours, or minutes that the interval can hold The default value of <i>precision</i> is 2.	The maximum value that you can specify in <i>precision</i> is 9.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>y-precision</i>	Number of digits in the largest number of years that the interval can hold The default value of <i>y-precision</i> is 4.	The maximum value that you can specify in <i>y-precision</i> is 9.	Literal Number, p. 4-237

Usage

The next two examples show INTERVAL data types of the YEAR TO MONTH type. The first example can hold an interval of up to 999 years and 11 months, because it gives 3 as the precision of the year field. The second example uses the default precision on the year field, so it can hold an interval of up to 9,999 years and 11 months.

```
YEAR (3) TO MONTH
YEAR TO MONTH
```

When you want a value to contain only one field, the first and last qualifiers are the same. For example, an interval of whole years is qualified as YEAR TO YEAR or YEAR (5) TO YEAR, for an interval of up to 99,999 years.

The following examples show several forms of INTERVAL qualifiers:

```
YEAR(5) TO MONTH
DAY (5) TO FRACTION(2)
DAY TO DAY
FRACTION TO FRACTION (4)
```

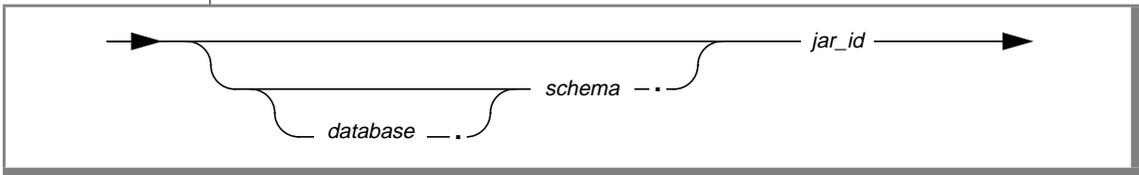
Related Information

For information about how to specify INTERVAL field qualifiers and use INTERVAL data in arithmetic and relational operations, see the discussion of the INTERVAL data type in the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

Jar Name

Use the Jar Name segment to specify the name of a jar ID. Use this segment whenever you see a reference to Jar Name in a syntax diagram.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>database</i>	Name of the database in which to install or access <i>jar_id</i> . The default is the current database.	The fully qualified identifier of <i>database.package.jar_id</i> must not exceed 255 bytes.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>jar_id</i>	Name of the jar file that contains the Java class which you want to access	The <i>jar_id</i> must correspond to a jar identifier in the current database. The fully qualified identifier of <i>database.package.jar_id</i> must not exceed 255 bytes.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>schema</i>	Name of the schema The default is the current schema.	The fully qualified identifier of <i>database.package.jar_id</i> must not exceed 255 bytes.	Identifier, p. 4-205

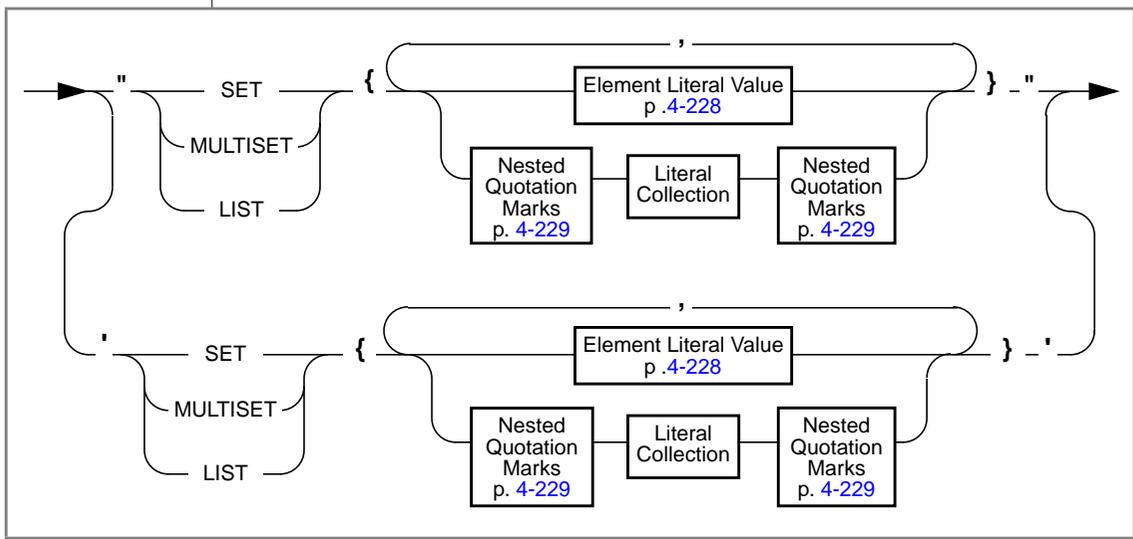
If a Jar name is specified as a character string value to the **sqlj.install_jar**, **sqlj.replace_jar**, or **sqlj.remove_jar** procedures, then any identifiers in the jar name that are delimited identifiers will include the surrounding double quote characters.

Before you can access a *jar_id* in any way (including its use in a CREATE FUNCTION or CREATE PROCEDURE statement), it must be defined in the current database with the **install_jar()** procedure. For more information, see [“EXECUTE PROCEDURE” on page 2-444](#).

Literal Collection

Use the Literal Collection segment to specify values for a collection column. For syntax that allows you to use expressions that evaluate to element values, see [“Collection Constructors” on page 4-118](#).

Syntax



Usage

You can specify literal collection values for each of the collection data types: SET, MULTISET, or LIST.

To specify a single literal-collection value, specify the collection type and the literal values. The following SQL statement inserts four integer values into the `set_col` column that is declared as `SET(INT NOT NULL)`:

```
INSERT INTO table1 (set_col) VALUES ("SET{6, 9, 9, 4}")
```

You specify an empty collection with a set of empty braces ({}). The following INSERT statement inserts an empty list into a collection column `list_col` that is declared as `LIST(INT NOT NULL)`:

```
INSERT INTO table2 (list_col) VALUES ("LIST{}")
```

If you are passing a literal collection as an argument to an SPL routine, make sure that there is a space between the parentheses that surround the arguments and the quotation marks that indicate the beginning and end of the literal collection. ♦

If you specify a collection as a literal value in a literal row string you need not include the quotation marks around the collection itself. Only the outermost quotation marks that delineate the row string literal are necessary. No quotation marks need surround the nested collection type. For an example, see [“Literals for Nested Rows” on page 4-243](#).

Element Literal Value

The diagram for [“Literal Collection” on page 4-227](#) refers to this section.

Elements of a collection can be literal values for the data types in the following table.

For a Collection of Type	Literal Value Syntax
BOOLEAN	‘t’ or ‘f’, representing true or false The literal must be specified as a quoted string.
CHAR, VARCHAR, NCHAR, NVARCHAR, CHARACTER VARYING, DATE	Quoted String, p. 4-260
DATETIME	Literal DATETIME, p. 4-231
DECIMAL, MONEY, FLOAT, INTEGER, INT8, SMALLFLOAT, SMALLINT	Literal Number, p. 4-237
INTERVAL	Literal INTERVAL, p. 4-234

(1 of 2)

For a Collection of Type	Literal Value Syntax
Opaque data types	Quoted String, p. 4-260 The string must be a literal that is recognized by the input support function for the associated opaque type.
Row Type	“Literal Row” on page 4-239 When the collection element type is a named row type, you do not have to cast the values that you insert to the named row type.

(2 of 2)



Important: You cannot specify the simple-large-object data types (BYTE and TEXT) as the element type for a collection.

Quoted strings must be specified with a different type of quotation mark than the quotation marks that encompass the collection so that the database server can parse the quoted strings. Therefore, if you use double quotation marks to specify the collection, use single quotation marks to specify individual, quoted-string elements.

Nested Quotation Marks

The diagram for “[Literal Collection](#)” on page 4-227 refers to this section.

A *nested collection* is a collection that is the element type for another collection.

Whenever you nest collection literals, you use nested quotation marks. In these cases, you must follow the rule for nesting quotation marks. Otherwise, the server cannot correctly parse the strings.

The general rule is that you must double the number of quotation marks for each new level of nesting. For example, if you use double quotation marks for the first level, you must use two double quotation marks for the second level, four double quotation marks for the third level, eight for the fourth level, sixteen for the fifth level, and so on. Likewise, if you use single quotes for the first level, you must use two single quotation marks for the second level and four single quotation marks for the third level.

There is no limit to the number of levels you can nest, as long as you follow this rule.

Example of Nested Quotation Marks

The following example illustrates the case for two levels of nested collection literals, using double quotation marks. Table **tab5** is a one-column table whose column, **set_col**, is a nested collection type.

The following statement creates the **tab5** table:

```
CREATE TABLE tab5 (set_col SET(SET(INT NOT NULL) NOT NULL));
```

The following statement inserts values into the table **tab5**:

```
INSERT INTO tab5 VALUES (
  "SET{"SET{34, 56, 23, 33}"})"
```

For any individual literal value, the opening quotation marks and the closing quotation marks must match. In other words, if you open a literal with two double quotes, you must close that literal with two double quotes ("a literal value").

E/C

To specify nested quotation marks within an SQL statement in an ESQL/C program, you use the C escape character for every double quote inside a single-quote string. Otherwise, the ESQL/C preprocessor cannot correctly interpret the literal collection value. For example, the preceding INSERT statement on the **tab5** table would appear in an ESQL/C program as follows:

```
EXEC SQL insert into tab5
  values ('set{\set{34, 56, 23, 33}\}');
```

For more information, see the chapter on complex data types in the [Informix ESQL/C Programmer's Manual](#). ♦

If the collection is a nested collection, you must include the collection-constructor syntax for each level of collection type. Suppose you define the following column:

```
nest_col SET(MULTISET (INT NOT NULL) NOT NULL)
```

The following statement inserts three elements into the **nest_col** column:

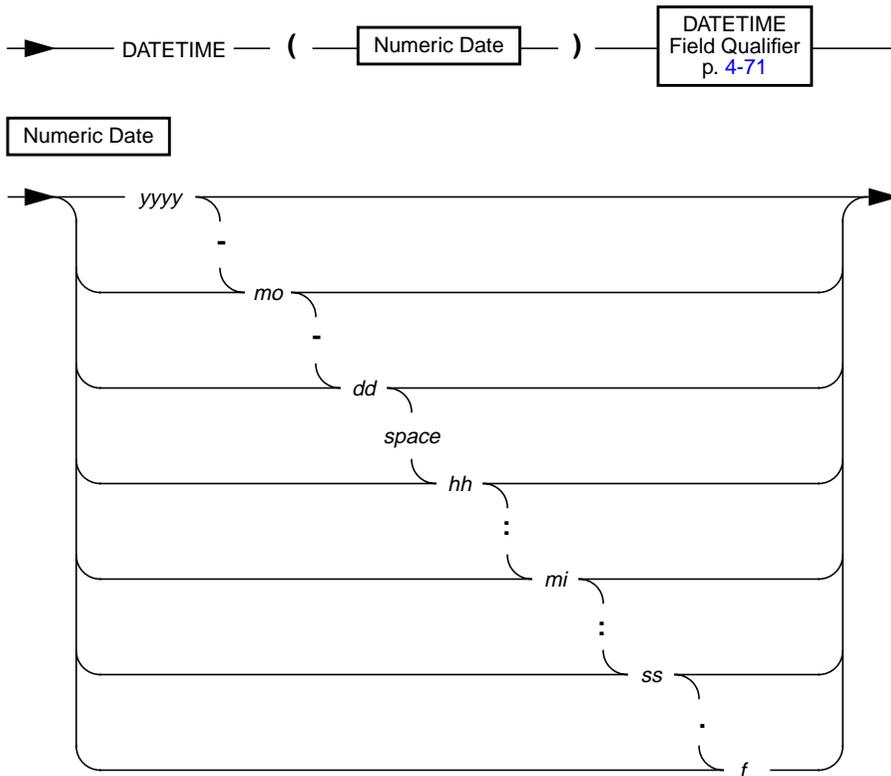
```
INSERT INTO tabx (nest_col)
  VALUES ("SET{'MULTISET{1, 2, 3}'})"
```

To learn how to use quotation marks in INSERT statements, see [“Nested Quotation Marks” on page 4-229](#).

Literal DATETIME

The literal DATETIME segment specifies a literal DATETIME value. Use the literal DATETIME segment whenever you see a reference to a literal DATETIME in a syntax diagram.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>dd</i>	Day expressed in digits	You can specify up to 2 digits.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>f</i>	Decimal fraction of a second expressed in digits	You can specify up to 5 digits.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>hh</i>	Hour expressed in digits	You can specify up to 2 digits.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>mi</i>	Minute expressed in digits	You can specify up to 2 digits.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>mo</i>	Month expressed in digits	You can specify up to 2 digits.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>space</i>	Space character	You cannot specify more than 1 space character.	The space character is a literal value that you enter by pressing the space bar on the keyboard.
<i>ss</i>	Second expressed in digits	You can specify up to 2 digits.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>yyyy</i>	Year expressed in digits	You can specify up to 4 digits. If you specify 2 digits, the database server uses the setting of the DBCENTURY environment variable to extend the year value. If the DBCENTURY environment variable is not set, the database server uses the current century to extend the year value.	Literal Number, p. 4-237

Usage

You must specify both a numeric date and a DATETIME field qualifier for this date in the Literal DATETIME segment. The DATETIME field qualifier must correspond to the numeric date you specify. For example, if you specify a numeric date that includes a year as the largest unit and a minute as the smallest unit, you must specify YEAR TO MINUTE as the DATETIME field qualifier.

The following examples show literal DATETIME values:

```
DATETIME (97-3-6) YEAR TO DAY
```

```
DATETIME (09:55:30.825) HOUR TO FRACTION
```

```
DATETIME (97-5) YEAR TO MONTH
```

The following example shows a literal DATETIME value used with the EXTEND function:

```
EXTEND (DATETIME (1997-8-1) YEAR TO DAY, YEAR TO MINUTE)  
- INTERVAL (720) MINUTE (3) TO MINUTE
```

Related Information

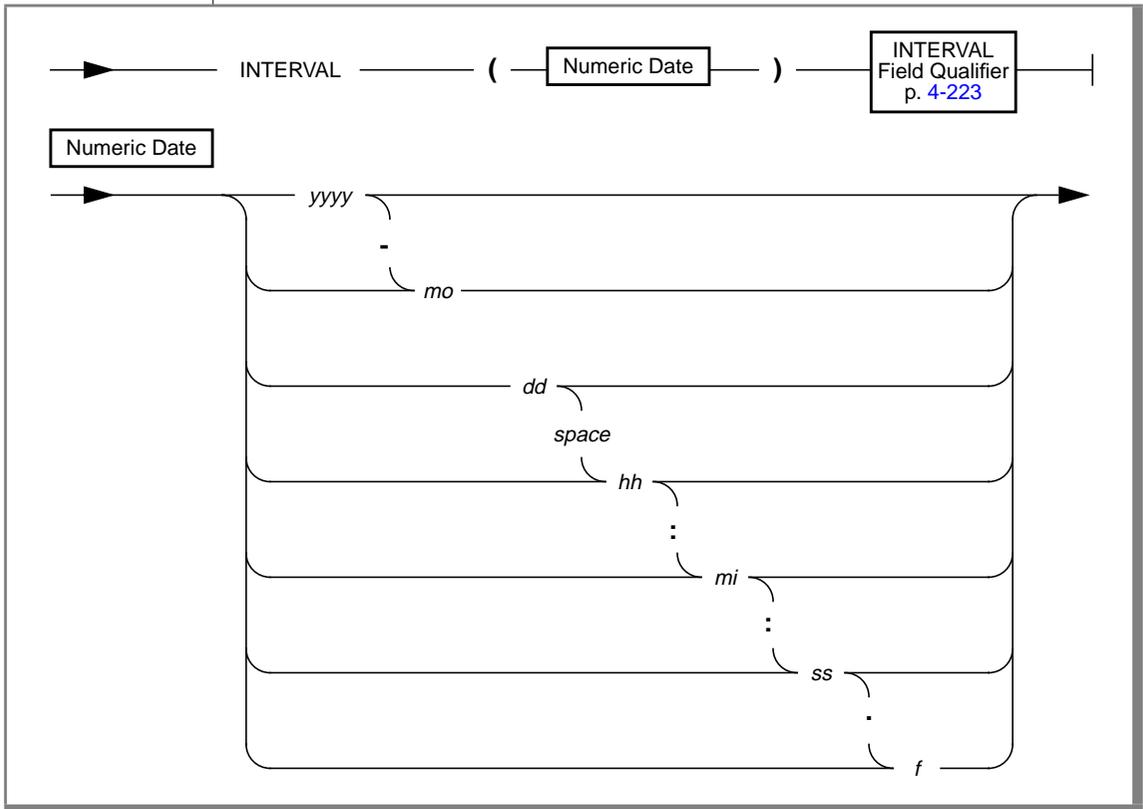
For discussions of the DATETIME data type and the DBCENTURY environment variable, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

For a discussion of customizing DATETIME values for a locale, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

Literal INTERVAL

The Literal INTERVAL segment specifies a literal INTERVAL value. Use the Literal INTERVAL segment whenever you see a reference to a literal INTERVAL in a syntax diagram.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>dd</i>	Number of days	The maximum number of digits allowed is 2, unless this is the first field and the precision is specified differently by the INTERVAL field qualifier.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>f</i>	Decimal fraction of a second	You can specify up to 5 digits, depending on the precision given to the fractional portion in the INTERVAL field qualifier.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>hh</i>	Number of hours	The maximum number of digits allowed is 2, unless this is the first field and the precision is specified differently by the INTERVAL field qualifier.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>mi</i>	Number of minutes	The maximum number of digits allowed is 2, unless this is the first field and the precision is specified differently by the INTERVAL field qualifier.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>mo</i>	Number of months	The maximum number of digits allowed is 2, unless this is the first field and the precision is specified differently by the INTERVAL field qualifier.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>space</i>	Space character	You cannot use any other character in place of the space character.	The space character is a literal value that you enter by pressing the space bar on the keyboard.
<i>ss</i>	Number of seconds	The maximum number of digits allowed is 2, unless this is the first field and the precision is specified differently by the INTERVAL field qualifier.	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>yyyy</i>	Number of years	The maximum number of digits allowed is 4, unless this is the first field and the precision is specified differently by the INTERVAL field qualifier.	Literal Number, p. 4-237

Usage

The following examples show literal INTERVAL values:

```
INTERVAL (3-6) YEAR TO MONTH  
INTERVAL (09:55:30.825) HOUR TO FRACTION  
INTERVAL (40 5) DAY TO HOUR
```

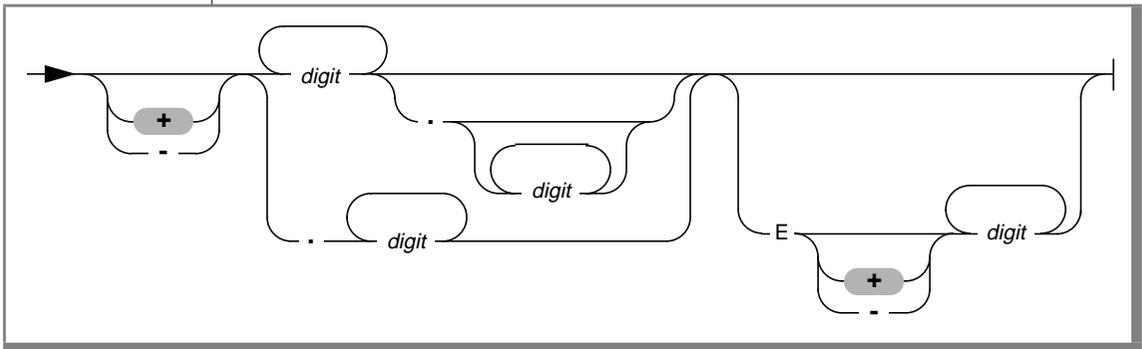
Related Information

For information on how to use INTERVAL data in arithmetic and relational operations, see the discussion of the INTERVAL data type in the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

Literal Number

A literal number is an integer or noninteger (floating) constant. Use the Literal Number segment whenever you see a reference to a literal number in a syntax diagram.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>digit</i>	Digit that forms part of the literal number	You must specify a value between 0 and 9, inclusive.	Digits are literal values that you enter from the keyboard.

Usage

Literal numbers do not contain embedded commas; you cannot use a comma to indicate a decimal point. You can precede literal numbers with a plus or a minus sign.

Integers

Integers do not contain decimal points. The following examples show some integers:

10 -27 25567

Floating and Decimal Numbers

Floating and decimal numbers contain a decimal point and/or exponential notation. The following examples show floating and decimal numbers:

123.456 1.23456E2 123456.0E-3

The digits to the right of the decimal point in these examples are the decimal portions of the numbers.

The E that occurs in two of the examples is the symbol for exponential notation. The digit that follows E is the value of the exponent. For example, the number 3E5 (or 3E+5) means 3 multiplied by 10 to the fifth power, and the number 3E-5 means 3 multiplied by 10 to the minus fifth power.

Literal Numbers and the MONEY Data Type

When you use a literal number as a MONEY value, do not precede it with a money symbol or include commas.

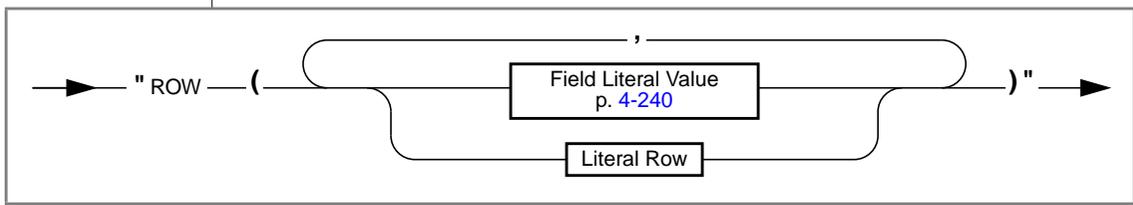
Related Information

For discussions of numeric data types, such as DECIMAL, FLOAT, INTEGER, and MONEY, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

Literal Row

The Literal Row segment specifies the syntax for literal values of named row types and unnamed row types. For syntax that allows you to use expressions that evaluate to field values, see [“ROW Constructors” on page 4-116](#).

Syntax

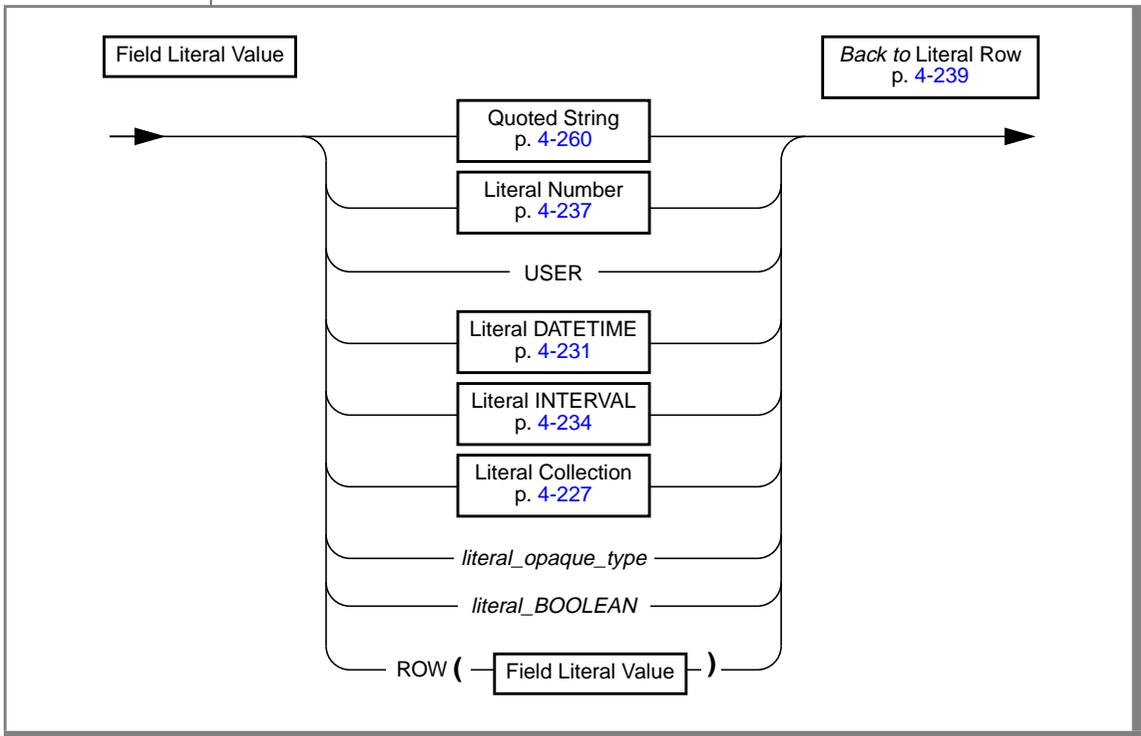


Usage

You can specify literal values for named row types and unnamed row types. The literal row value is introduced with a ROW constructor. The entire literal row value must be enclosed in quotes.

The format of the value for each field of the row type must be compatible with the data type of the corresponding field.

Field Literal Value



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>literal_opaque_type</i>	Literal representation for an opaque data type	Must be a literal that is recognized by the input support function for the associated opaque type.	Defined by the developer of the opaque type.
<i>literal_BOOLEAN</i>	Literal representation of a BOOLEAN value	A literal BOOLEAN value can only be 't' (TRUE) or 'f' (FALSE) and must be specified as a quoted string.	Quoted String, p. 4-260

Fields of a row can be literal values for the data types in the following table.

For a Field of Type	Literal Value Syntax
BOOLEAN	't' or 'f', representing true or false The literal must be specified as a quoted string.
CHAR, VARCHAR, LVARCHAR, NCHAR, NVARCHAR, CHARACTER VARYING, DATE	Quoted String, p. 4-260
DATETIME	Literal DATETIME, p. 4-231
DECIMAL, MONEY, FLOAT, INTEGER, INT8, SMALLFLOAT, SMALLINT	Literal Number, p.4-237
INTERVAL	Literal INTERVAL, p. 4-234
Opaque data types	Quoted String, p. 4-260 The string must be a literal that is recognized by the input support function for the associated opaque type.
Collection type (SET, MULTISSET, LIST)	"Literal Collection" on page 4-227 For information on a literal collection value as a column value or as a collection-variable value, see "Nested Quotation Marks" on page 4-229. For information on literal collection value as literal for a row type, see "Literals for Nested Rows" on page 4-243.
Another row type (named or unnamed)	For information on a row type value as literal a row type, see "Literals for Nested Rows" on page 4-243



Important: You cannot specify the simple-large-object data types (BYTE and TEXT) as the field type for a row.

Literals of an Unnamed Row Type

To specify a literal value for an unnamed row type, introduce the literal row with the ROW constructor and enclose the values in parentheses. For example, suppose you define the **rectangles** table, as follows:

```
CREATE TABLE rectangles
(
    area FLOAT,
    rect ROW(x INTEGER, y INTEGER, length FLOAT, width FLOAT),
)
```

The following INSERT statement inserts values into the **rect** column of the **rectangles** table:

```
INSERT INTO rectangles (rect)
VALUES ("ROW(7, 3, 6.0, 2.0)")
```

Literals of a Named Row Type

To specify a literal value for a named row, type, introduce the literal row with the ROW type constructor and enclose the literal values for each field in parentheses. In addition, you can cast the row literal to the appropriate named row type to ensure that the row value is generated as a named row type. The following statements create the named row type **address_t** and the **employee** table:

```
CREATE ROW TYPE address_t
(
    street CHAR(20),
    city CHAR(15),
    state CHAR(2),
    zipcode CHAR(9)
);

CREATE TABLE employee
(
    name CHAR(30),
    address address_t
);
```

The following INSERT statement inserts values into the **address** column of the **employee** table:

```
INSERT INTO employee (address)
VALUES (
"ROW('103 Baker St', 'Tracy','CA', 94060)"::address_t)
```

Literals for Nested Rows

If the literal value is for a nested row, specify the ROW type constructor for each row level. However, only the outermost row is enclosed in quotes. For example, suppose you create the following **emp_tab** table:

```
CREATE TABLE emp_tab
(
    emp_name CHAR(10),
    emp_info ROW( stats ROW(x INT, y INT, z FLOAT))
);
```

The following INSERT statement adds a row to the **emp_tab** table:

```
INSERT INTO emp_tab
VALUES ('joe boyd', "ROW(ROW(8,1,12.0))" )
```

Similarly, if the row string literal contains a nested collection, only the outermost quotation marks that delineate the row string literal are necessary. No quotation marks need surround the nested collection type.

Related Information

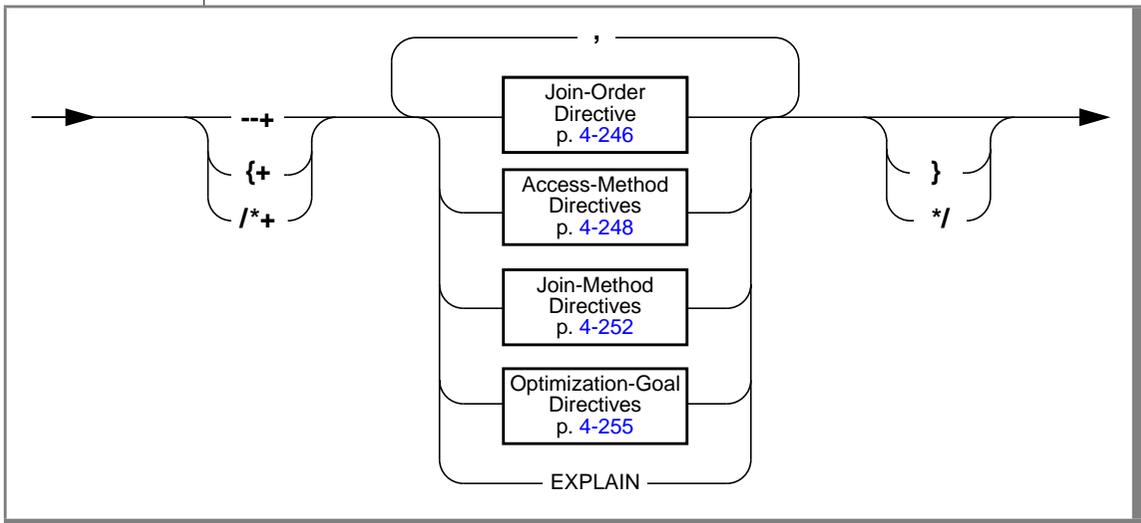
Related statements: CREATE ROW TYPE, INSERT, UPDATE, and SELECT

For information on ROW constructors, see the Expression segment. See also the Collection Literal segment.

Optimizer Directives

The Optimizer Directives segment specifies keywords that you can use to partially or fully specify the query plan of the optimizer. Use this segment whenever you see a reference to Optimizer Directives in a syntax diagram.

Syntax



Usage

Use one or more optimizer directives to partially or fully specify the query plan of the optimizer.

When you use an optimizer directive, the scope of the optimizer directive is for the current query only.

By default, optimizer directives are enabled. To obtain information about how specified directives are processed, view the output of the SET EXPLAIN statement. To disable optimizer directives, you must set either the **IFX_DIRECTIVES** environment variable to 0 or OFF or the DIRECTIVES parameter in the ONCONFIG file to 0.

Optimizer Directives as Comments

An optimizer directive or a string of optimizer directives immediately follows the DELETE, SELECT, or UPDATE keyword in the form of a comment.

After the comment symbol, the first character in a directive is always a plus (+) sign. No space is allowed between the comment symbol and the plus sign.

You can use any of the following comment styles:

- A double dash (--)
The double dash needs no closing symbol because it sets off only one comment line of text. When you use this style, include only the optimizer directive information on the comment line.
- Braces ({})
- C-language style comments, slash and asterisk (/* */).
In ESQL/C, the **-keep** command option to the **esql** compiler must be specified when you use C-style comments.

E/C

For more information on SQL comment symbols, see [“How to Enter SQL Comments” on page 1-6](#).

If you use multiple directives in one query, you must separate them. You can separate directives with a space, a comma, or any character that you choose. However, Informix recommends that you separate directives with a comma.

Syntax errors that appear in an optimizer directive do not cause a working query to break. The output of the SET EXPLAIN statement contains information related to such errors.

Restrictions on Optimizer Directives

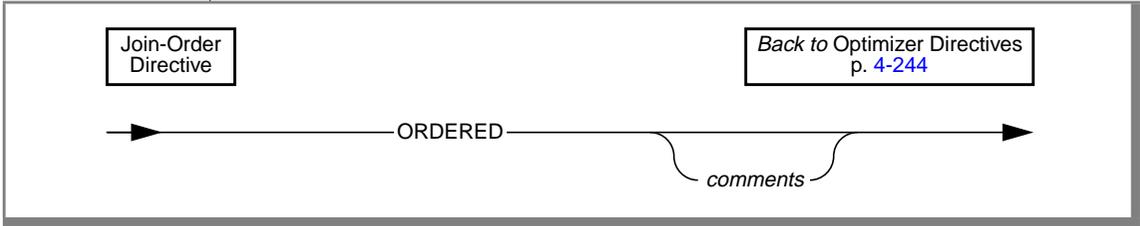
In general, you can specify optimizer directives for any query block in a DELETE, SELECT, or UPDATE statement. However, you cannot use optimizer directives when your statement includes one of the following items:

- Distributed queries, that is, queries that access one or more remote tables
- In ESQL/C, statements that contain the WHERE CURRENT OF cursor clause ♦

E/C

Using the Join-Order Directive

Use the ORDERED join-order directive to force the optimizer to join tables in the order in which they appear in the FROM clause.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>comments</i>	Any text that explains the purpose of the directive or other significant information	Text must appear inside the comment symbols.	Character string

For example, the following query forces the database server to join the **dept** and **job** tables, and then join the result with the **emp** table.

```
SELECT --+ ORDERED
       name, title, salary, dname
FROM dept, job, emp
Where title = 'clerk'
AND loc = 'Palo Alto'
AND emp.dno = dept.dno
AND emp.job= job.job
```

Because no predicates occur between the **dept** table and the **job** table, this query forces a Cartesian product.

Using the Ordered Directive with Views

When your query involves a view, the placement of the ORDERED join-order directive determines whether you are specifying a partial- or total-join order.

- **Specifying partial-join order when you create a view**

If you use the ORDERED join-order directive when you create a view, the base tables are joined contiguously in the order specified in the view definition.

For all subsequent queries on the view, the database server joins the base tables contiguously in the order specified in the view definition. When used in a view, the ORDERED directive does not affect the join order of other tables named in the FROM clause in a query.

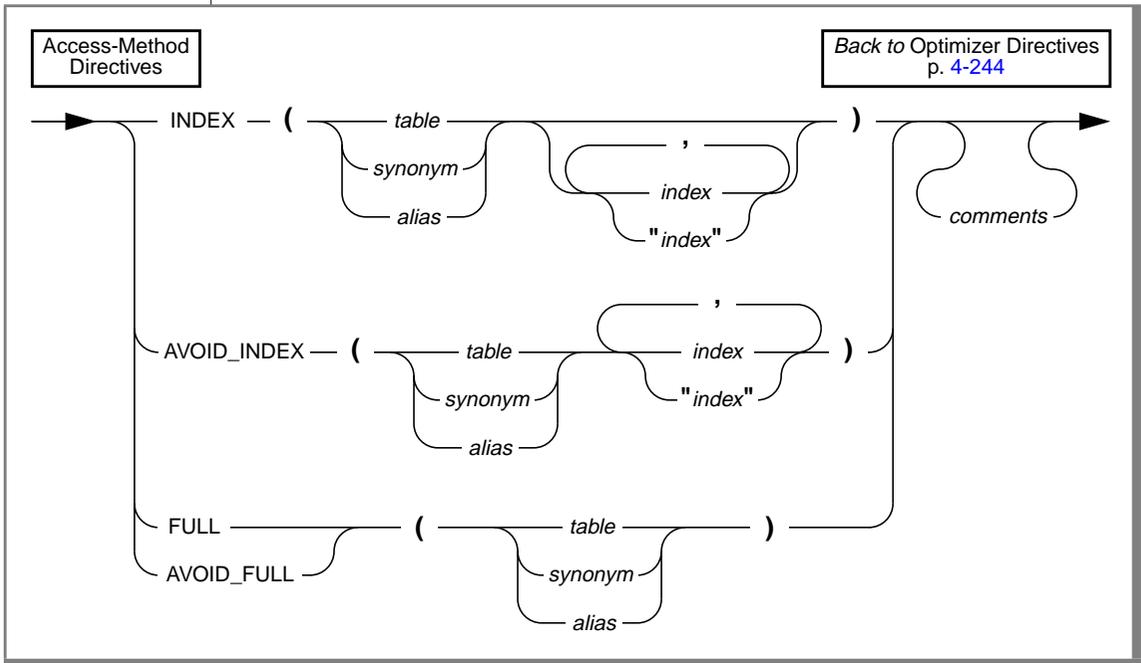
- **Specifying total-join order when you query a view**

When you specify the ORDERED join-order directive in a query that uses a view, all tables are joined in the order specified, even those tables that form views. If a view is included in the query, the base tables are joined contiguously in the order specified in the view definition.

For examples that use the ORDERED join-order directive with views, refer to your [Performance Guide](#).

Access-Method Directives

Use the access-method directive to specify the manner in which the optimizer should search the tables.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>alias</i>	Temporary alternative name assigned to the table or view in the FROM clause	When an alias is declared in the FROM clause, the alias also must be used in the optimizer directive.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>comments</i>	Any text that explains the purpose of the directive or other significant information	Text must appear outside the parenthesis, but inside the comment symbols.	Character string

(1 of 2)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>index</i>	Name of the index for which you want to specify a query plan directive	The index must be defined on the specified table. With the AVOID_INDEX directive, at least one index must be specified.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>synonym</i>	Name of the synonym for which you want to specify a query plan directive	The synonym and the table to which the synonym points must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of the table for which you want to specify a query plan directive	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

(2 of 2)

You can separate the elements that appear within the parentheses with either one or more spaces or by commas.

The following table lists the purpose of each of the access-method directives and how it affects the query plan of the optimizer.

Keywords	Purpose	Optimizer Action
AVOID_FULL	Do not perform a full-table scan on the listed table.	The optimizer considers the various indexes it can scan. If no index exists, the optimizer performs a full table scan.
AVOID_INDEX	Do not use any of the indexes listed.	The optimizer considers the remaining indexes and a full table scan. If all indexes for a particular table are specified, the optimizer uses a full table scan to access the table.

(1 of 2)

Keywords	Purpose	Optimizer Action
FULL	Perform a full-table scan.	Even if an index exists on a column, the optimizer uses a full table scan to access the table.
INDEX	Use the index specified to access the table.	If more than one index is specified, the optimizer chooses the index that yields the least cost. If no indexes are specified, then all the available indexes are considered.

(2 of 2)

Prohibiting a Full Scan of a Table

Both the AVOID_FULL and INDEX keywords specify that the optimizer should avoid a full scan of a table. However, Informix recommends that you use the AVOID_FULL keyword to specify the intent to avoid a full scan on the table. In addition to specifying that the optimizer not use a full-table scan, the negative directive allows the optimizer to use indexes that are created after the access-method directive is specified.

Using Multiple Access-Method Directives on the Same Table

In general, you can specify only one access-method directive per table. However, you can specify both AVOID_FULL and AVOID_INDEX for the same table. When you specify both of these access-method directives, the optimizer avoids performing a full scan of the table and it avoids using the specified index or indexes.

This combination of negative directives allows the optimizer to use indexes that are created after the access-method directives are specified.

Examples that Uses an Access-Method Directive

Suppose that you have a table named **emp**, that contains the following indexes: **loc_no**, **dept_no**, and **job_no**. When you perform a **SELECT** that uses the table in the **FROM** clause you might direct the optimizer to access the table in one of the following ways:

Example Using a Positive Directive

```
SELECT {+INDEX(emp dept_no)}
```

In this example the access-method directive forces the optimizer to scan the index on the **dept_no** column.

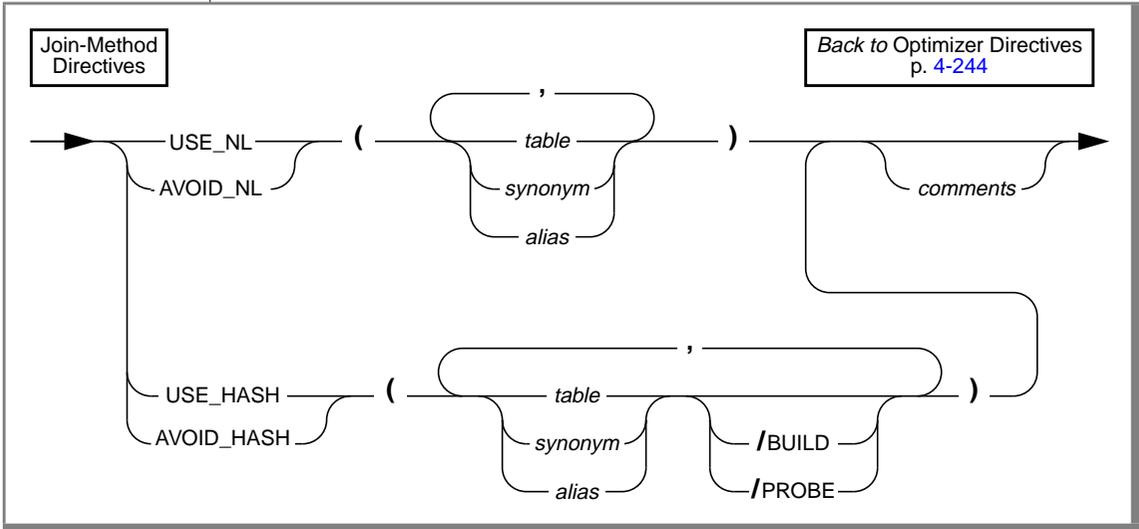
Example Using Negative Directives

```
SELECT {+AVOID_INDEX(emp loc_no, job_no), AVOID_FULL(emp)}
```

This example includes multiple access-method directives. These access-method directives also force the optimizer to scan the index on the **dept_no** column. However, if a new index, **emp_no** is created for table **emp**, the optimizer can consider it.

Join-Method Directives

Use join-method directives to influence how the database server joins tables in a query.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>alias</i>	Temporary alternative name assigned to the table or view in the FROM clause	When an alias is declared in the from clause, the alias also must be used in the optimizer directive.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>comments</i>	Any text that explains the purpose of the directive or other significant information	Text must appear outside the parenthesis, but inside the comment symbols.	Character string
<i>synonym</i>	Name of the synonym for which you want to specify a query plan directive	The synonym and the table to which the synonym points must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50
<i>table</i>	Name of the table for which you want to specify a query plan directive	The table must exist.	Database Object Name, p. 4-50

You can separate the elements that appear within the parentheses with either one or more spaces or by commas.

The following table lists the purpose of each of the join-method directives

Keyword	Purpose
USE_NL	Uses the listed tables as the inner table in a nested-loop join. If n tables are specified in the FROM clause, then at most $n-1$ tables can be specified in the USE_NL join-method directive.
USE_HASH	Uses a hash join to access the listed table. You can also choose whether the table will be used to create the hash table, or to probe the hash table.
AVOID_NL	Does not use the listed table as the inner table in a nested loop join. A table listed with this directive can still participate in a nested loop join as the outer table.
AVOID_HASH	Does not access the listed table using a hash join. Optionally, you can allow a hash join, but restrict the table from being the one that is probed, or the table from which the hash table is built.

A join-method directive takes precedence over the join method forced by the OPTCOMPIND configuration parameter.

Specifying the Role of the Table in a Hash Join

When you specify that you want to avoid or use a hash join, you can also specify the role of each table:

- **BUILD**

When used with `USE_HASH`, this keyword indicates that the specified table be used to construct a hash table. When used with `AVOID_HASH`, this keyword indicates that the specified table *not* be used to construct a hash table.

- **PROBE**

When used with `USE_HASH`, this keyword indicates that the specified table be used to probe the hash table. When used with `AVOID_HASH`, this keyword indicates that the specified table *not* be used to probe the hash table. You can specify multiple probe tables as long as there is at least one table for which you do not specify `PROBE`.

If neither the `BUILD` nor `PROBE` keyword is specified, the optimizer uses cost to determine the role of the table.

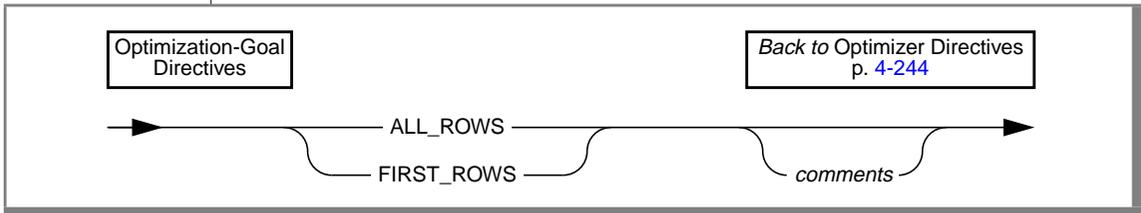
Example Using Join Method Directives

In the following example, the `USE_HASH` join-method directive forces the optimizer to construct a hash table on the **dept** table and consider only the hash table to join the **dept** table with the other tables. Because no other directives are specified, the optimizer can choose the least expensive join methods for the other joins in the query.

```
SELECT /*+ USE_HASH (dept /BUILD)
      Force the optimizer to use the dept table to
      construct a hash table */
name, title, salary, dname
FROM emp, dept, job
WHERE loc = 'Phoenix'
AND emp.dno = dept.dno
AND emp.job = job.job
```

Optimization-Goal Directives

Use optimization-goal directives to specify the measure that is used to determine the performance of a query result.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>comments</i>	Any text that explains the purpose of the directive or other significant information	Text must appear outside the parenthesis, but inside the comment symbols.	Character string

The two optimization-goal directives are:

- **FIRST_ROWS**

This directive tells the optimizer to choose a plan that optimizes the process of finding only the first screenful of rows that satisfies the query.

Use this option to decrease initial response time for queries that use an interactive mode or that require the return of only a few rows.

- **ALL_ROWS**

This directive tells the optimizer to choose a plan that optimizes the process of finding all rows that satisfy the query.

This form of optimization is the default.

An optimization-goal directive takes precedence over the **OPT_GOAL** environment variable and the **OPT_GOAL** configuration parameter.

Restrictions on Optimization-Goal Directives

You cannot use an optimization-goal directive in the following instances:

- In a view definition
- In a subquery

Example of an Optimization-Goal Directive

The following query returns the names of the employees who earned the top fifty bonuses. The optimization-goal directive directs the optimizer to return the first screenful of rows as fast as possible.

```
SELECT {+FIRST_ROWS
      Return the first screenful of rows as fast as possible}
FIRST 50 lname, fname, bonus
FROM emp
ORDER BY bonus DESC
```

For information about how to set the optimization goal for an entire session, see the SET OPTIMIZATION statement.

Directive-Mode Directive

Use the EXPLAIN directive-mode directive to turn SET EXPLAIN ON for a particular query. You can use this directive to test and debug query plans. Information about the query plan is printed to the **sqexplain.out** file. This directive is redundant when SET EXPLAIN ON is already specified.

You cannot use the EXPLAIN directive-mode directive in two situations:

- In a view definition
- In a subquery

Related Information

For information about the **sqexplain.out** file, see SET EXPLAIN.

For information about how to set optimization settings for an entire session, see SET OPTIMIZATION.

For a discussion about optimizer directives and performance, see your [Performance Guide](#).

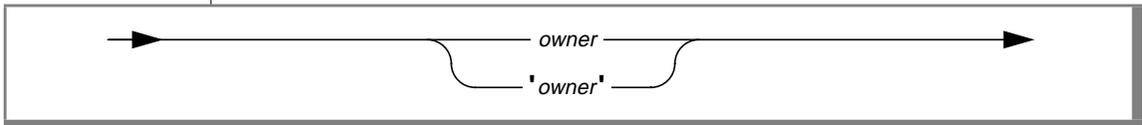
For information on the **IFX_DIRECTIVES** environment variable, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

For information on the DIRECTIVES parameter in the ONCONFIG file, see your [Administrator's Reference](#).

Owner Name

The owner name segment specifies the name of the owner of a database object in a database. Use this segment whenever you see a reference to Owner Name in a syntax diagram.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>owner</i>	User name of the owner of a database object in a database	In Dynamic Server, the maximum length of <i>owner</i> is 32 bytes. In Extended Parallel Server, the maximum length of <i>owner</i> is 8 bytes. If you are using an ANSI-compliant database, you must enter the <i>owner</i> for a database object that you do not own.	Name must conform to the conventions of your operating system.

Usage

In databases that are not ANSI compliant, the owner name is optional. You do not need to specify *owner* when you create database objects or use data access statements. If you do not specify *owner* when you create a database object, the database server assigns your login name as the owner of the object in most cases. For exceptions to this rule, see [“Ownership of Created Database Objects” on page 2-153](#) in CREATE FUNCTION and [“Ownership of Created Database Objects” on page 2-208](#) in CREATE PROCEDURE.

If you specify *owner* in data-access statements, the database server checks it for correctness. Without quotation marks, *owner* is case insensitive.

The following example shows four queries that can access data successfully from the table **kaths.tab1**:

```
SELECT * FROM tab1
SELECT * FROM kaths.tab1
SELECT * FROM KATHS.tab1
SELECT * FROM KathS.tab1
```

Using Quotation Marks

When you use quotation marks, *owner* is case sensitive. In other words, quotation marks signal the database server to read or store the name exactly as typed. This case sensitivity applies when you create or access a database object.

Suppose you have a table whose owner is Sam. You can use one of the following two statements to access data in the table.

```
SELECT * FROM table1
SELECT * FROM 'Sam'.table1
```

The first query succeeds because the owner name is not required. The second query succeeds because the specified owner name matches the owner name as it is stored in the database.

Accessing Information from the System Catalog Tables

If you use the owner name as one of the selection criteria to access database object information from one of the system catalog tables, the owner name is case sensitive. Because this type of query requires that you use quotation marks, you must type the owner name exactly as it is stored in the system catalog table. Of the following two examples, only the second successfully accesses information on the table **Kaths.table1**.

```
SELECT * FROM systables WHERE tablename = 'table1' AND owner
= 'kaths'
SELECT * FROM systables WHERE tablename = 'table1' AND owner
= 'Kaths'
```

User **informix** is the owner of the system catalog tables.



Tip: The *USER* keyword returns the login name exactly as it is stored on the system. If the owner name is stored differently from the login name (for example, a mixed-case owner name and an all lowercase login name), the `owner = USER` syntax fails.

ANSI-Compliant Databases Restrictions and Case Sensitivity

If you specify the owner name when you create or rename a database object in an ANSI-compliant database, you must include the owner name in data access statements. You must include the owner name when you access a database object that you do not own.

The following table describes how the database server reads and stores *owner* when you create, rename, or access a database object.

Owner Name Specification Method	What the Database Server Does
Do not specify	Reads or stores owner exactly as the login name is stored in the system Users must specify <i>owner</i> for a database object or database they do not own.
Specify without quotation marks	Reads or stores <i>owner</i> in uppercase letters
Enclose within quotation marks	Reads or stores <i>owner</i> exactly as typed For more information on how the database server handles this specification method, see “Using Quotation Marks” on page 4-258 and “Accessing Information from the System Catalog Tables” on page 4-258 .

Because the database server automatically upshifts *owner* if it is not enclosed in quotation marks, case-sensitive errors can cause queries to fail.

For example, if you are the user **nancy**, and you use the following statement, the resulting view has the name **nancy.njcust**.

```
CREATE VIEW 'nancy'.njcust AS
  SELECT fname, lname FROM customer WHERE state = 'NJ'
```

The following **SELECT** statement fails because it tries to match the name **NANCY.njcust** to the actual owner and table name of **nancy.njcust**.

```
SELECT * FROM nancy.njcust
```

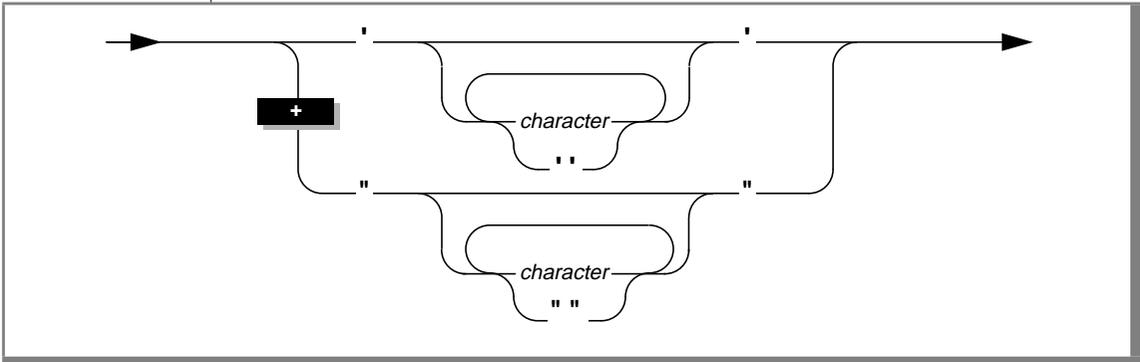


Tip: When you use the owner name as one of the selection criteria in a query, (for example, `WHERE owner = 'kaths'`), make sure that the quoted string matches the owner name as it is stored in the database. If the database server cannot find the database object or database, you might need to modify the query so that the quoted string uses uppercase letters (for example, `WHERE owner = 'KATHS'`).

Quoted String

A quoted string is a string constant that is surrounded by quotation marks. Use the Quoted String segment whenever you see a reference to a quoted string in a syntax diagram.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>character</i>	Forms part of the quoted string	The character or characters in the quoted string cannot be surrounded by double quotes if the DELIMIDENT environment variable is set.	Characters are literal values that you enter from the keyboard.

Usage

You use quoted strings to specify string constants in data manipulation statements and other SQL statements. For example, you can use a quoted string in an INSERT statement to insert a value into a column with a character data type.

Restrictions on Specifying Characters in Quoted Strings

You must observe the following restrictions when you specify *character* in quoted strings:

- If you are using the ASCII code set, you can specify any printable ASCII character, including a single quote or double quote. For restrictions that apply to using quotes in quoted strings, see [“Using Quotes in Strings” on page 4-262](#).
- If you are using a nondefault locale, you can specify non-ASCII characters, including multibyte characters, that the code set of your locale supports. For further information, see the discussion of quoted strings in the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#). ♦
- If you enable newline characters for quoted strings, you can embed newline characters in quoted strings. For further information on how to enable newline characters for quoted strings, see [“Newline Characters in Quoted Strings” on page 4-262](#).
- When you set the **DELIMIDENT** environment variable, you cannot use double quotes to delimit a quoted string. When **DELIMIDENT** is set, a string enclosed in double quotes is an identifier, not a quoted string. When **DELIMIDENT** is not set, a string enclosed in double quotes is a quoted string, not an identifier. For further information, see [“Using Quotes in Strings” on page 4-262](#).
- You can enter **DATETIME** and **INTERVAL** data as quoted strings. For the restrictions that apply to entering **DATETIME** and **INTERVAL** data in quoted-string format, see [“DATETIME and INTERVAL Values as Strings” on page 4-263](#).
- Quoted strings that are used with the **LIKE** or **MATCHES** keyword in a search condition can include wildcard characters that have a special meaning in the search condition. For further information, see [“LIKE and MATCHES in a Condition” on page 4-263](#).
- When you insert a value that is a quoted string, you must observe a number of restrictions. For further information, see [“Inserting Values as Quoted Strings” on page 4-264](#).

Newline Characters in Quoted Strings

By default, the string constant must be written on a single line; that is, you cannot use embedded newline characters in a quoted string. However, you can override this default behavior in one of two ways:

- To enable newline characters in quoted strings in all sessions, set the `ALLOW_NEWLINE` parameter to 1 in the `ONCONFIG` file.
- To enable newline characters in quoted strings for a particular session, execute the built-in function, `IFX_ALLOW_NEWLINE`, within the session.

In the following example, the user enables newline characters in quoted strings for a particular session:

```
EXECUTE PROCEDURE IFX_ALLOW_NEWLINE('T')
```

If newline characters in quoted strings are not enabled for a session, the following statement is illegal and results in an error:

```
SELECT 'The quick brown fox
       jumped over the old gray fence'
FROM customer
WHERE customer_num = 101
```

However, if you enable newline characters in quoted strings for the session, the statement in the preceding example is legal and executes successfully.

For more information on the `IFX_ALLOW_NEWLINE` function, see [“IFX_ALLOW_NEWLINE Function” on page 4-177](#). For more information on the `ALLOW_NEWLINE` parameter in the `ONCONFIG` file, see your [Administrator's Reference](#).

Using Quotes in Strings

The single quote has no special significance in string constants delimited by double quotes. Likewise, the double quote has no special significance in strings delimited by single quotes. For example, the following strings are valid:

```
"Nancy's puppy jumped the fence"
'Billy told his kitten, "No!"'
```

If your string is delimited by double quotes, you can include a double quote in the string by preceding the double quote with another double quote, as shown in the following string:

```
"Enter ""y"" to select this row"
```

When the **DELIMIDENT** environment variable is set, double quotes delimit identifiers, not strings. For more information on delimited identifiers, see [“Delimited Identifiers” on page 4-208](#).

DATETIME and INTERVAL Values as Strings

You can enter DATETIME and INTERVAL data in the literal forms described in the [“Literal DATETIME” on page 4-231](#) and [“Literal INTERVAL” on page 4-234](#), or you can enter them as quoted strings. Valid literals that are entered as character strings are converted automatically into DATETIME or INTERVAL values. The following INSERT statements use quoted strings to enter INTERVAL and DATETIME data:

```
INSERT INTO cust_calls(call_dtime) VALUES ('1997-5-4 10:12:11')
```

```
INSERT INTO manufact(lead_time) VALUES ('14')
```

The format of the value in the quoted string must exactly match the format specified by the qualifiers of the column. For the first case in the preceding example, the **call_dtime** column must be defined with the qualifiers YEAR TO SECOND for the INSERT statement to be valid.

LIKE and MATCHES in a Condition

Quoted strings with the LIKE or MATCHES keyword in a condition can include wildcard characters. For a complete description of how to use wildcard characters, see [“Condition” on page 4-27](#).

XPS

IDS

Inserting Values as Quoted Strings

If you are inserting a value that is a quoted string, you must adhere to the following conventions:

- Enclose CHAR, VARCHAR, NCHAR, NVARCHAR, DATE, DATETIME, and INTERVAL values in quotation marks.
- Set DATE values in the *mm/dd/yyyy* format or in the format specified by the **DBDATE** environment variable, if set.
- You cannot insert strings longer than 256 bytes. ♦
- You cannot insert strings longer than 32 kilobytes. ♦
- Numbers with decimal values must contain a decimal point. You cannot use a comma as a decimal indicator.
- You cannot precede MONEY data with a dollar sign (\$) or include commas.
- You can include NULL as a placeholder only if the column accepts null values.

Related Information

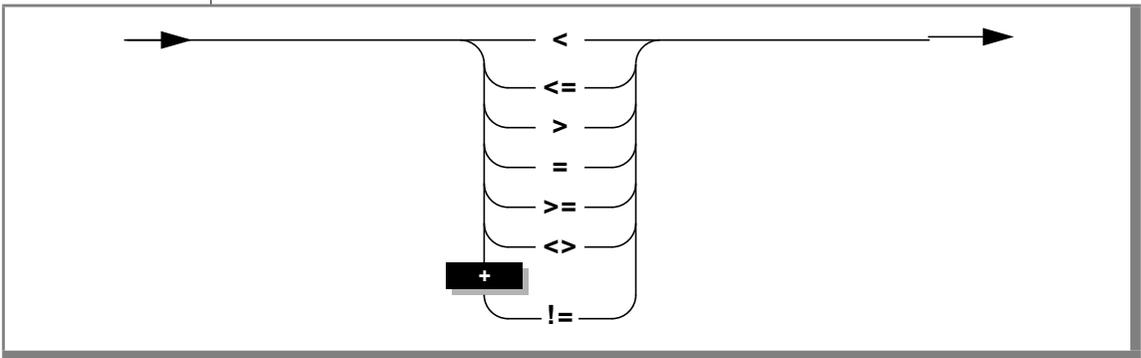
For a discussion of the **DELIMITED** environment variable, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Reference](#).

For a discussion of the GLS aspects of quoted strings, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

Relational Operator

A relational operator compares two expressions quantitatively. Use the Relational Operator segment whenever you see a reference to a relational operator in a syntax diagram.

Syntax



Each operator shown in the syntax diagram has a particular meaning.

Relational Operator	Meaning
<	Less than
<=	Less than or equal to
>	Greater than
=	Equal to
>=	Greater than or equal to
<>	Not equal to
!=	Not equal to

Usage

For DATE and DATETIME expressions, *greater than* means later in time.

For INTERVAL expressions, *greater than* means a longer span of time.

For CHAR, VARCHAR, and LVARCHAR expressions, *greater than* means *after* in code-set order.

Locale-based collation order is used for NCHAR and NVARCHAR expressions. So for NCHAR and NVARCHAR expressions, *greater than* means *after* in the locale-based collation order. For more information on locale-based collation order and the NCHAR and NVARCHAR data types, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#). ♦

Using Operator Functions in Place of Relational Operators

Each relational operator is bound to a particular operator function, as shown in the table below. The operator function accepts two values and returns a boolean value of true, false, or unknown.

Relational Operator	Associated Operator Function
<	lessthan()
<=	lessthanorequal()
>	greater than()
>=	greaterthanorequal()
=	equal()
<>	notequal()
!=	notequal()

Connecting two expressions with a binary operator is equivalent to invoking the operator function on the expressions. For example, the following two statements both select orders with a shipping charge of \$18.00 or more. The `>=` operator in the first statement implicitly invokes the **greaterthanorequal()** operator function.

```
SELECT order_num FROM orders
   WHERE ship_charge >= 18.00

SELECT order_num FROM orders
   WHERE greaterthanorequal(ship_charge, 18.00)
```

The database server provides the operator functions associated with the relational operators for all built-in data types. When you develop a user-defined data type, you must define the operator functions for that type for users to be able to use the relational operator on the type.

Collating Order for English Data

If you are using the default locale (U.S. English), the database server uses the code-set order of the default code set when it compares the character expressions that precede and follow the relational operator.

On UNIX, the default code set is the ISO8859-1 code set, which consists of the following sets of characters:

- The ASCII characters have code points in the range of 0 to 127. This range contains control characters, punctuation symbols, English-language characters, and numerals.
- The 8-bit characters have code points in the range 128 to 255. This range includes many non-English-language characters (such as é, â, ö, and ñ) and symbols (such as £, ©, and ¿). ♦

In Windows NT, the default code set is Microsoft 1252. This code set includes both the ASCII code set and a set of 8-bit characters. ♦

UNIX

WIN NT

The following table shows the ASCII code set. The **Num** column shows the ASCII code numbers, and the **Char** column shows the ASCII character corresponding to each ASCII code number. ASCII characters are sorted according to their ASCII code number. Thus lowercase letters follow uppercase letters, and both follow numerals. In this table, the caret symbol (^) stands for the CTRL key. For example, ^X means CTRL-X.

Num	Char	Num	Char	Num	Char	Num	Char	Num	Char	Num	Char	Num	Char
0	^@	20	^T	40	(	60	<	80	P	100	d	120	x
1	^A	21	^U	41	)	61	=	81	Q	101	e	121	y
2	^B	22	^V	42	*	62	>	82	R	102	f	122	z
3	^C	23	^W	43	+	63	?	83	S	103	g	123	{
4	^D	24	^X	44	,	64	@	84	T	104	h	124	|
5	^E	25	^Y	45	-	65	A	85	U	105	i	125	}
6	^F	26	^Z	46	.	66	B	86	V	106	j	126	~
7	^G	27	esc	47	/	67	C	87	W	107	k	127	del
8	^H	28	^\ ^]	48	0	68	D	88	X	108	l		
9	^I	29	^] ^^	49	1	69	E	89	Y	109	m		
10	^J	30	^^ ^_	50	2	70	F	90	Z	110	n		
11	^K	31	^_ !	51	3	71	G	91	[	111	o		
12	^L	32	! "	52	4	72	H	92	\	112	p		
13	^M	33	" #	53	5	73	I	93	]	113	q		
14	^N	34	# \$	54	6	74	J	94	^	114	r		
15	^O	35	\$ %	55	7	75	K	95	_	115	s		
16	^P	36	% &	56	8	76	L	96	`	116	t		
17	^Q	37	& '	57	9	77	M	97	a	117	u		
18	^R	38	' :	58	:	78	N	98	b	118	v		
19	^S	39	: ;	59	;	79	O	99	c	119	w		

Support for ASCII Characters in Nondefault Code Sets

Most code sets in nondefault locales (called nondefault code sets) support the ASCII characters. If you are using a nondefault locale, the database server uses ASCII code-set order for any ASCII data in CHAR and VARCHAR expressions, as long as the nondefault code set supports these ASCII characters.

Related Information

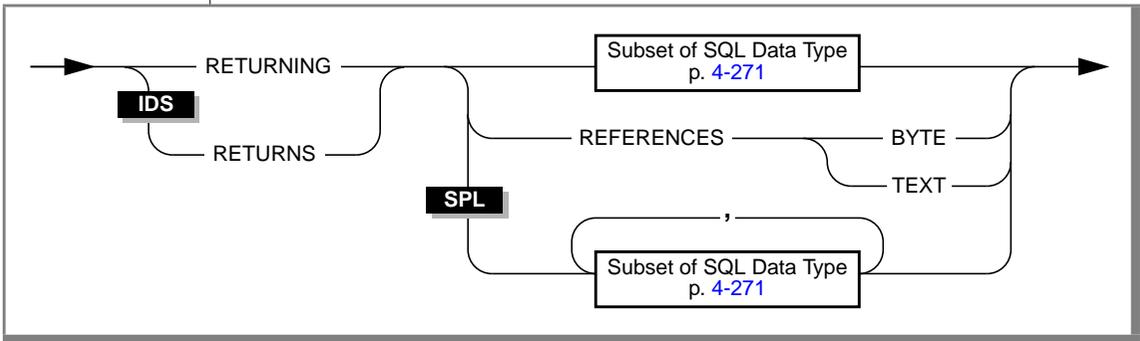
For a discussion of relational operators in the SELECT statement, see the [Informix Guide to SQL: Tutorial](#).

For a discussion of the GLS aspects of relational operators, see the [Informix Guide to GLS Functionality](#).

Return Clause

The Return Clause specifies the data type of a value or values that a user-defined function returns. Use this segment whenever you see reference to the Return Clause in a syntax diagram.

Syntax



Usage

IDS

For backward compatibility, you can continue to create SPL functions with the CREATE PROCEDURE statement (that is include a Return Clause with the CREATE PROCEDURE statement). However, Informix recommends that you use the CREATE FUNCTION statement to create an SPL routine that returns one or more values. ♦

Once you use the return clause to indicate the type of values that are to be returned, you can use the RETURN SPL statement at any point in the statement block to return SPL variables that correspond to the values in the return clause.

Limits on Return Values

SPL

For an SPL function, you can specify more than one data type in the return clause. ♦

Ext

For an external function, you can specify only one data type in the return clause. However, an external function can return more than one row of data if it is an iterator function. For more information, see [“ITERATOR” on page 4-279](#). ♦

Subset of SQL Data Types

As indicated in the diagram for the [“Return Clause” on page 4-270](#), not all data types are available in a return clause. For more information on data types, see [“Data Type” on page 4-53](#).

SPL

The default precision of a DECIMAL returned by an SPL function is 16 digits. If you want a function to return a different number of significant digits, you must specify the precision in the Return clause. ♦

XPS

A user-defined function can return values of any built-in data type *except* SERIAL, TEXT, or BYTE. ♦

IDS

A user-defined function can return values of any built-in data type *except* those listed in the following table.

Data Type	C	Java	SPL
BLOB	✓		✓
BYTE	✓	✓	✓
COLLECTION		✓	
CLOB	✓		✓
LIST		✓	
MULTISET		✓	
ROW		✓	✓
SET		✓	✓
SERIAL	✓	✓	✓
SERIAL8	✓	✓	✓
TEXT	✓	✓	✓

If you use a complex type in the return clause, the calling user-defined routine must define variables of the appropriate complex types to hold the values that the C or SPL user-defined function returns.

User-defined functions can return a value or values of defined opaque or distinct data types. ♦

Using the REFERENCES Clause to Point to a Simple Large Object

A user-defined function cannot return a BYTE or TEXT value (collectively called *simple large objects*) directly. A user-defined function can, however, use the REFERENCES keyword to return a descriptor that contains a pointer to a BYTE or TEXT object.

The following example shows how to select a text column within an SPL routine and then return the value:

```
CREATE FUNCTION sel_text()  
  RETURNING REFERENCES text;  
  
DEFINE blob_var REFERENCES text;  
  
SELECT blob_col INTO blob_var  
  FROM blob_table  
  WHERE key_col = 10;  
RETURN blob_var  
  
END FUNCTION
```

XPS

In Extended Parallel Server, to recreate this example use the CREATE PROCEDURE statement instead of the CREATE FUNCTION statement. ♦

Cursor and Noncursor Functions

A *cursor* function allows the fetching of the return values one by one by iterating on the generated result set of return values. Such a function is an implicitly iterated function.

A function that returns only one set of values (such as one or more columns from a single row of a table) is a *noncursor* function.

The return clause can occur in a cursor function or in a noncursor function. In the following example, the return clause can return zero (0) or one value if it occurs in a noncursor function. However, if this clause is associated with a cursor function, it returns more than one row from a table, and each returned row contains zero or one value.

```
RETURNING INT;
```

In the following example, the return clause can return zero (0) or two values if it occurs in a noncursor function. However, if this clause is associated with a cursor function, it returns more than one row from a table and each returned row contains zero or two values.

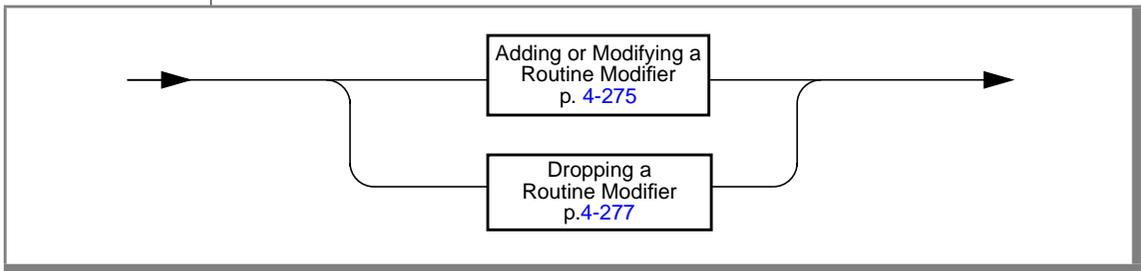
```
RETURNING INT, INT;
```

In both of the preceding examples, the receiving function or program must be written appropriately to accept the information that the function returns.

Routine Modifier

A routine modifier specifies characteristics of how a user-defined routine (UDR) behaves. Use the Routine Modifier segment whenever you see a reference to a routine modifier in a syntax diagram.

Syntax

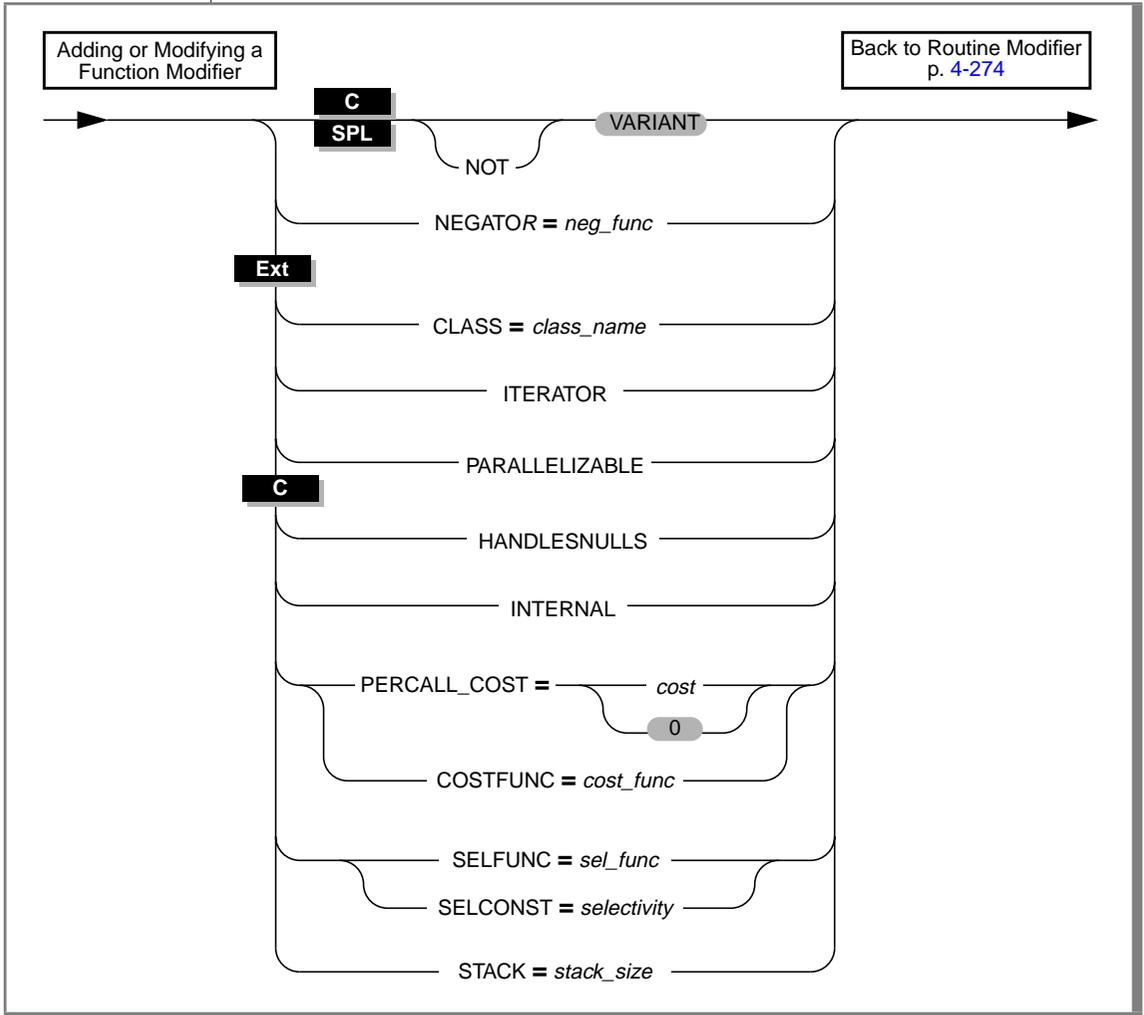


Some modifiers are available only with user-defined functions. For information on whether or not a specific routine modifier applies only to user-defined functions (that is, if it does not apply to user-defined procedures), see the textual description for the modifier.

The options in this segment do not apply to SPL procedures.

Adding or Modifying a Routine Modifier

Use this portion of the Routine Modifier segment to add or modify values for routine modifiers for a UDR.



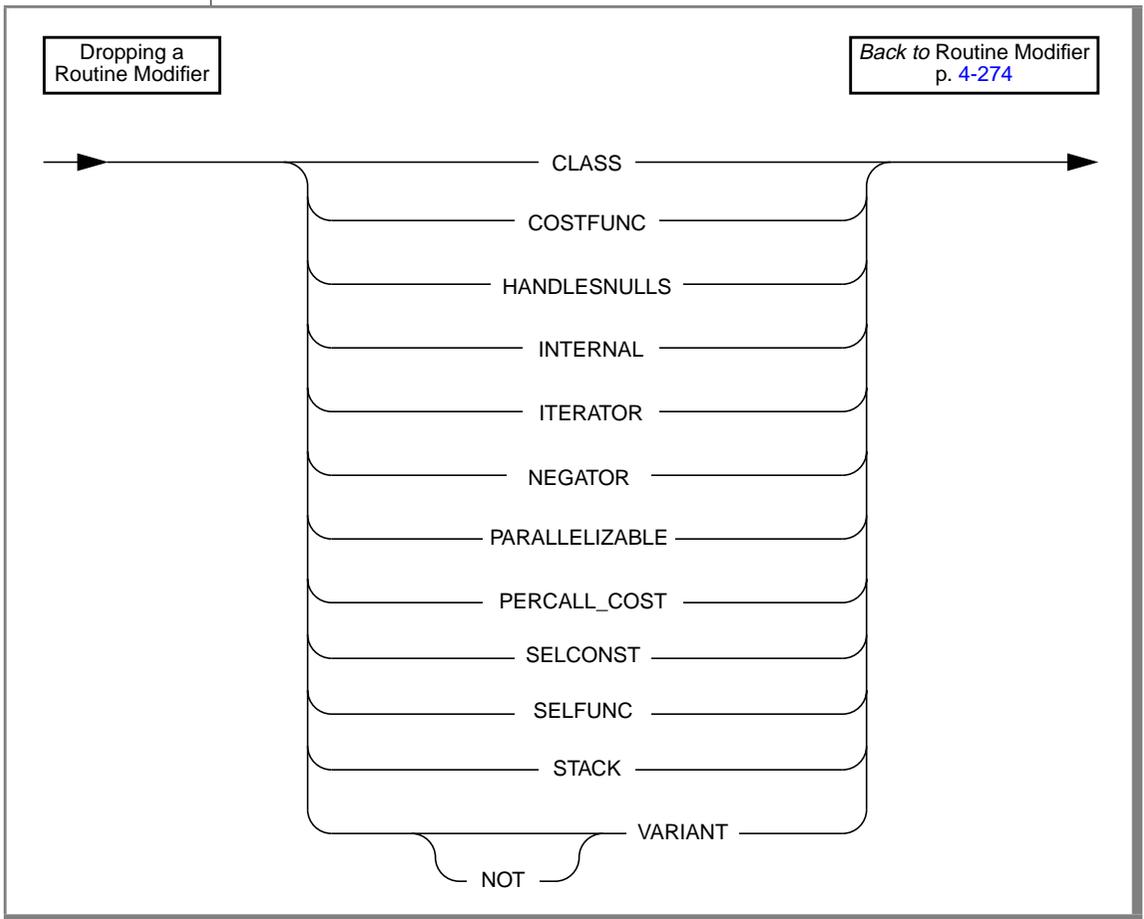
Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>class_name</i>	<p>Name of the virtual processor (VP) class in which to run the external routine</p> <p>The default for C UDRs is CPU VP.</p> <p>The default for UDRs written in Java is JVP.</p>	<p>A C UDR must run in either the CPU VP or in a user-defined VP class.</p> <p>If you specify a user-defined VP class, the class must be defined before the UDR runs.</p> <p>A UDR written in Java must run in a JVP</p>	Quoted String, p. 4-260
<i>cost</i>	<p>CPU use cost for each invocation of a C UDR</p> <p>The default is 0.</p>	<p>The <i>cost</i> must be a positive integer with a value between 1 (lowest cost) and $2^{31}-1$ (highest cost).</p>	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>cost_func</i>	Name of a companion user-defined function to invoke	<p>To execute <i>cost_func</i>, you must have the Execute privilege on both the function you are invoking directly and the companion function.</p> <p>Both functions must have the same owner.</p>	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>neg_func</i>	Name of a negator function that can be invoked instead of the current function	<p>To execute <i>neg_func</i>, you must have the Execute privilege on both the function you are invoking directly and the companion function.</p> <p>Both functions must have the same owner.</p>	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>sel_func</i>	Name of a companion user-defined function to invoke	<p>To execute <i>sel_func</i>, you must have the Execute privilege on both the function you are invoking directly and the companion function.</p> <p>Both functions must have the same owner.</p>	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>selectivity</i>	<p>CPU use cost for each invocation of a C UDR</p> <p>The default is 0.</p>	<p>The <i>selectivity</i> must be a positive float with a value between 1 (lowest cost) and $2^{31}-1$ (highest cost).</p>	Literal Number, p. 4-237
<i>stack_size</i>	Size (in bytes) of the thread stack for threads that execute the C UDR	<p>The <i>stack_size</i> must be a positive integer.</p> <p>Usually, this stack size is larger than the stack size that the STACKSIZE configuration parameter specifies.</p>	Literal Number, p. 4-237

You can add these modifiers in any order. If you list the same modifier more than once, the last setting overrides previous values.

Dropping a Routine Modifier

Use this portion of the Routine Modifier segment to drop an existing modifier from a UDR.

When you drop an existing modifier, the database server sets the value of the modifier to the default value, if a default exists.



Dropping a Routine Modifier

[Back to Routine Modifier p. 4-274](#)

Modifier Descriptions

The following sections describe the modifiers that you can use to help the database server optimally execute a UDR.

EXT

CLASS

Use the CLASS modifier to specify the name of a virtual-processor (VP) class in which to run an external routine.

C

You can execute C UDRs in the following types of VP classes:

- The CPU virtual-processor class (CPU VP)
- A user-defined virtual-processor class

If you do not use the CLASS modifier to specify a VP class, the UDR runs in the CPU VP.

User-defined VP classes protect the database server from ill-behaved C UDRs. An ill-behaved C UDR has at least one of the following characteristics:

- It runs in the CPU VP for a long time without yielding.
- It is not thread safe.
- It calls an unsafe operating-system routine.

A well-behaved C UDR has none of these characteristics. Execute only well-behaved C UDRs in the CPU VP.



Warning: Execution of an ill-behaved C UDR in the CPU VP can cause serious interference with the operation of the database server. In addition, the UDR itself might not produce correct results. For a more detailed discussion of ill-behaved UDRs, see the [DataBlade API Programmer's Manual](#). ♦

Java

By default, a UDR written in Java runs in a Java virtual processor class (JVP). Therefore, the CLASS routine modifier is optional for a UDR written in Java. However, Informix recommends that you use the CLASS routine modifier when you register a UDR written in Java to improve readability of your SQL statements. ♦

C***COSTFUNC***

Use the **COSTFUNC** modifier to specify the cost of a C UDR. The *cost* of the UDR is an estimate of the time required to execute it.

Occasionally, the cost of a UDR depends on the inputs to the UDR. In that case, you can use a user-defined function that calculates a cost that depends on the input value.

C***HANDLESNULLS***

Use the **HANDLESNULLS** modifier to specify that a C UDR can handle null values that are passed to it as arguments. If you do not specify **HANDLESNULLS** for a C UDR, and if you pass an argument with a null value to it, the C UDR does not execute and returns a null value.

By default, a C UDR does *not* handle null values. ♦

SPL

The **HANDLESNULLS** modifier is not available for SPL routines because SPL routines handle null values by default. ♦

Ext***INTERNAL***

Use the **INTERNAL** modifier with an external routine to specify that an SQL or SPL statement cannot call the external routine.

An external routine that is specified as **INTERNAL** is not considered during routine resolution. Use the **INTERNAL** modifier for external routines that define access methods, language managers, and so on.

By default, an external routine is *not* internal; that is, an SQL or SPL statement can call the routine.

Ext***ITERATOR***

Use the **ITERATOR** modifier with external functions to specify that the function is an *iterator function*. An iterator function is a function that returns a single element per function call to return a set of data; that is, it is called with an initial call and zero or more subsequent calls until the set is complete.

An iterator function is similar to an SPL function that contains the **RETURN WITH RESUME** statement.

E/C

By default, an external function is *not* an iterator function.

An iterator function requires a cursor. The cursor allows the client application to retrieve the values one at a time with the FETCH statement. ♦

For more information on how to write iterator functions, see the [DataBlade API Programmer's Manual](#).

NEGATOR

Use the NEGATOR modifier with user-defined functions that return Boolean values.

The NEGATOR modifier names a companion user-defined function, called a *negator function*, to the current function. A negator function takes the same arguments as its companion function, in the same order, but returns the Boolean complement. That is, if a function returns TRUE for a given set of arguments, its negator function returns FALSE when passed the same arguments, in the same order.

For example, the following functions are negator functions:

```
equal(a,b)
notequal(a,b)
```

Both functions take the same arguments, in the same order, but return complementary Boolean values.

When it is more efficient to do so, the optimizer can use the negator function instead of the function you specify.

To invoke a user-defined function that has a negator function, you must have the Execute privilege on both functions. In addition, the function must have the same owner as its negator function.

Ext

PARALLELIZABLE

Use the PARALLELIZABLE modifier to indicate that an external routine can be executed in parallel in the context of a parallelizable data query (PDQ) statement.

By default, an external routine is non-parallelizable; that is, it executes in sequence.

C

If your UDR has a complex type as either a parameter or a return value, you cannot use the parallelizable modifier.

If you specify the PARALLELIZABLE modifier for an external routine that cannot be parallelizable, the database server returns a runtime error.

A C UDR that calls only PDQ thread-safe DataBlade API functions is parallelizable. The following categories of DataBlade API functions are PDQ thread safe:

- Data handling
 - An exception in this category is that collection manipulation functions (**mi_collection_***) are not PDQ thread safe.
- Session, thread, and transaction management
- Function execution
- Memory management
- Exception handling
- Callbacks
- Miscellaneous

For details of the DataBlade API functions included in each category, see the [DataBlade API Programmer's Manual](#).

If your UDR calls a function that is not included in one of these categories, it is not PDQ thread safe and therefore not parallelizable. ♦

Java

To parallelize UDR calls, the database server must have multiple instances of JVPs. UDRs written in Java that open a JDBC connection are not parallelizable. ♦

C

PERCALL_COST

Use the PERCALL_COST modifier to specify the approximate CPU usage cost that a C UDR incurs each time it executes. The optimizer uses the cost you specify to determine the order in which to evaluate SQL predicates in the UDR for best performance.

For example, the following query has two predicates joined by a logical AND:

```
SELECT * FROM tab1 WHERE func1() = 10 AND func2() = 'abc';
```

In this example, if one predicate returns FALSE, the optimizer need not evaluate the other predicate. The optimizer uses the cost you specify to order the predicates so that the least expensive predicate is evaluated first.

The CPU usage cost must be an integer between 1 and $2^{31}-1$, with 1 the lowest cost and $2^{31}-1$ the most expensive. To calculate an approximate cost per call, add the following two figures:

- The number of lines of code that execute each time the C UDR is called
- The number of predicates that require an I/O access

The default cost per execution is 0. When you drop the PERCALL_COST modifier, the cost per execution returns to 0.

C

SELCONST

Use the SELCONST modifier to specify the selectivity of a C UDR. The *selectivity* of the UDR is an estimate of the fraction of the rows that will be selected by the query. That is, the number of times the UDR will need to be executed.

The value of selectivity constant, **selconst**, is a floating-point number between 0 and 1 that represents the fraction of the rows for which you expect the UDR to return TRUE.

C

SELFUNC

Use the SELFUNC modifier with a C UDR to name a companion user-defined function, called a *selectivity function*, to the current UDR. The selectivity function provides selectivity information about the current UDR to the optimizer.

The *selectivity* of a UDR is an estimate of the fraction of the rows that will be selected by the query. That is, it is an estimate of the number of times the UDR will execute.

Concept of Selectivity

Selectivity refers to the number of rows that would qualify for a query that does a search based on an equality predicate. The fewer the number of rows that qualify, the more selective the query.

For example, the following query has a search condition based on the **customer_num** column in the **customer** table:

```
SELECT * FROM customer
WHERE customer_num = 102;
```

Since each row in the table has a different customer number, this is a highly selective query.

In contrast, the following query is not selective:

```
SELECT * FROM customer
WHERE state = 'CA';
```

Since most of the rows in the **customer** table are for customers in California, more than half of the rows in the table would be returned.

Restrictions on the SELFUNC Modifier

The selectivity function that you specify must satisfy the following criteria:

- It must take the same number of arguments as the current C UDR.
- The data type of each argument must be SELFUNC_ARG.
- It must return a value of type FLOAT between 0 and 1, which represents the percentage of selectivity of the function. (1 is highly selective; 0 is not at all selective.)
- It can be written in any language the database server supports.

A user who invokes the C UDR must have the Execute privilege both on that UDR and on the selectivity function that the SELFUNC modifier specifies.

Both the C UDR and the selectivity function must have the same owner.

For information on C language macros that you can use to extract information about the arguments to the selectivity function, see the [DataBlade API Programmer's Manual](#).

C

STACK

Use the STACK modifier with a C UDR to override the default stack size that the STACKSIZE configuration parameter specifies.

The STACK modifier specifies the size of the thread stack, which a user thread uses to hold information such as routine arguments and function return values.

A UDR needs to have enough stack space for all its local variables. For a particular UDR, you might need to specify a stack size larger than the default size to prevent stack overflow.

When a UDR that includes the STACK modifier executes, the database server allocates a thread-stack size of the specified number of bytes. Once the UDR completes execution, subsequent UDRs execute in threads with a stack size that the STACKSIZE configuration parameter specifies (unless any of these subsequent UDRs have also specified the STACK modifier).

For more information about the thread stack, see your [Administrator's Guide](#) and the [DataBlade API Programmer's Manual](#).

C

SPL

VARIANT and NOT VARIANT

Use the VARIANT and NOT VARIANT modifiers with C user-defined functions and SPL functions. A function is *variant* if it returns different results when it is invoked with the same arguments or if it modifies a database or variable state. For example, a function that returns the current date or time is a variant function.

By default, user-defined functions are variant. If you specify NOT VARIANT when you create or modify a user-defined function, the function cannot contain any SQL statements.

If the user-defined function is nonvariant, the database server might cache the return values of expensive functions. You can create functional indexes only on nonvariant functions. For more information on functional indexes, see [“CREATE INDEX” on page 2-157](#).

C

You can specify VARIANT or NOT VARIANT in this clause or in the EXTERNAL Routine Reference. For more information, see [“External Routine Reference” on page 4-202](#). However, if you specify the modifier in both places, you must use the same modifier in both clauses. ♦

Related Information

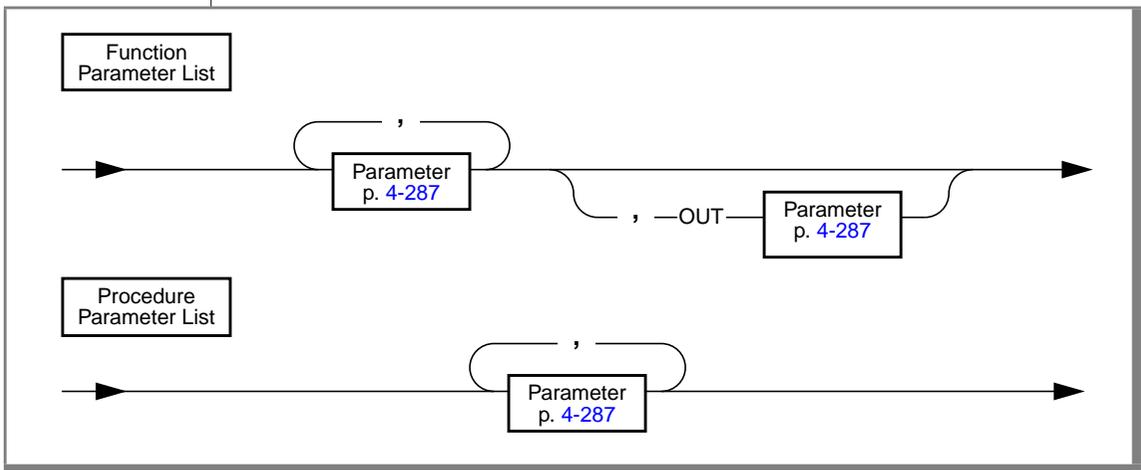
For more information on user-defined routines, see [Extending Informix Dynamic Server 2000](#) and the [DataBlade API Programmer's Manual](#).

For more information about how these modifiers can affect performance, see your [Performance Guide](#).

Routine Parameter List

Use the appropriate part of the Routine Parameter List segment whenever you see a reference to a Routine Parameter List in a syntax diagram.

Syntax



IDS

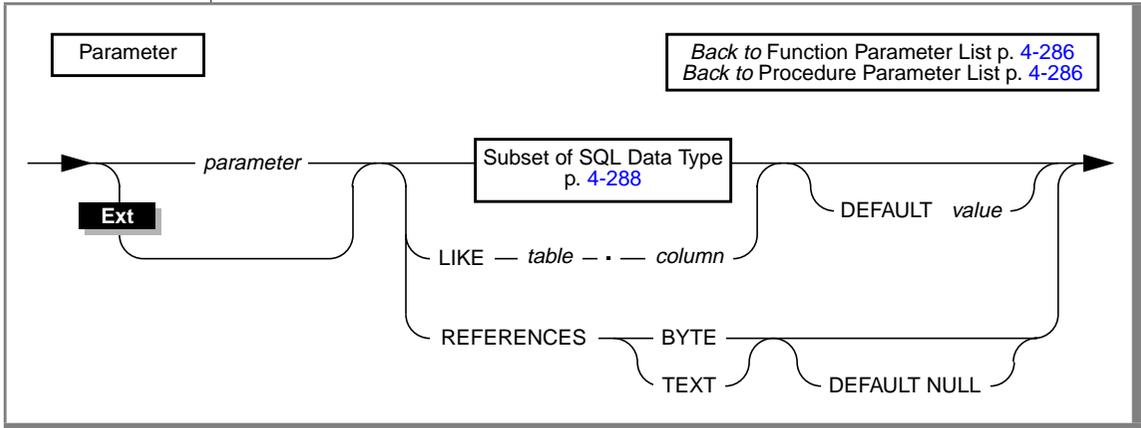
In Dynamic Server, although you can use the Function Parameter List with a CREATE PROCEDURE statement to write and register an SPL routine that returns one or more values (that is, an SPL function), Informix recommends that you use the Function Parameter List only with the CREATE FUNCTION statement.

XPS

In Extended Parallel Server, you can use the Function Parameter List with the CREATE PROCEDURE statement because the database server does not support the CREATE FUNCTION statement. ♦

Parameter

A parameter is one item in a Function Parameter List or Procedure Parameter List.



[Back to Function Parameter List p. 4-286](#)
[Back to Procedure Parameter List p. 4-286](#)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>column</i>	Name of a column whose data type is assigned to the parameter	The column must exist in the specified table.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>parameter</i>	Name of a parameter the UDR can accept	The parameter name is required for SPL routines.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>table</i>	Name of the table that contains <i>column</i>	The table must exist in the database.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>value</i>	Default value that a UDR uses if you do not supply a value for the parameter when you call the UDR	This value must be a literal. If <i>value</i> is a literal, the value must have the same data type as <i>parameter</i> . If <i>value</i> is a literal and its type is an opaque type, an input function must be defined on the type.	Literal Number, p. 4-237

Usage

To define a parameter when creating a UDR, specify its name and its data type. You can specify the data type directly or use the LIKE or REFERENCES clause to identify the data type.

The name is optional for external routines. ♦

SPL

Limits on Parameters

You can define any number of parameters for an SPL routine. However, the total length of all the parameters passed to an SPL routine must be less than 32 kilobytes.

Subset of SQL Data Types

As indicated in the diagram for “[Parameter](#)” on page 4-287, not all data types are available for you to use as a parameter.

A UDR can define a parameter of any data type defined in the database, except SERIAL, SERIAL8, TEXT, BYTE, CLOB, or BLOB.

In addition to the allowable built-in types, a parameter can be a complex type or user-defined data type.

Java

Complex types are not yet allowed as parameter data types for UDRs written in Java. ♦

For more information on data types, see “[Data Type](#)” on page 4-53.

Using the LIKE Clause

Use the LIKE clause to specify that the data type of a parameter is the same as a column defined in the database and changes with the column definition. If you define a parameter with LIKE, the data type of the parameter changes as the data type of the column changes.

IDS

Restriction on Routine Overloading

If you use the LIKE clause to define any of the parameters for the UDR, you cannot overload the UDR. The database server does not consider such a UDR in the routine resolution process.

For example, suppose you create the following user-defined procedure:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE cost (a LIKE tab.col, b INT)
.
.
.
END PROCEDURE;
```

You cannot create another user-defined procedure named **cost()** in the same database with two arguments. However, you can create a user-defined procedure named **cost()** with a number of arguments other than two.

To circumvent this restriction with the LIKE clause, you might want to use user-defined data types to achieve the same purpose.

Using the REFERENCES Clause

Use the REFERENCES clause to specify that a parameter contains BYTE or TEXT data. The REFERENCES keyword allows you to use a pointer to a BYTE or TEXT object as a parameter.

If you use the DEFAULT NULL option in the REFERENCES clause, and you call the UDR without a parameter, a null value is used.

Using the DEFAULT Clause

Use the DEFAULT keyword followed by an expression to specify a default value for a parameter. If you provide a default value for a parameter, and the UDR is called with fewer arguments than were defined for that UDR, the default value is used. If you do not provide a default value for a parameter, and the UDR is called with fewer arguments than were defined for that UDR, the calling application receives an error.

The following example shows a CREATE FUNCTION statement that specifies a default value for a parameter. This function finds the square of the *i* parameter. If the function is called without specifying the argument for the *i* parameter, the database server uses the default value 0 for the *i* parameter.

```
CREATE FUNCTION square_w_default
  (i INT DEFAULT 0) {Specifies default value of i}
  RETURNING INT; {Specifies return of INT value}

  DEFINE j INT; {Defines routine variable j}
  LET j = i * i; {Finds square of i and assigns it to j}
  RETURN j; {Returns value of j to calling module}
END FUNCTION;
```

XPS

In Extended Parallel Server, to recreate this example use the CREATE PROCEDURE statement instead of the CREATE FUNCTION statement.



Warning: When you specify a date value as the default value for a parameter, make sure to specify 4 digits instead of 2 digits for the year. When you specify a 4-digit year, the **DBCENTURY** environment variable has no effect on how the database server interprets the date value. When you specify a 2-digit year, the **DBCENTURY** environment variable can affect how the database server interprets the date value, so the **UDR** might not use the default value that you intended. For more information on the **DBCENTURY** environment variable, see the [“Informix Guide to SQL: Reference.”](#)

Specifying an OUT Parameter for a User-Defined Function

When you register a user-defined function, you can specify that the last parameter in the list is an OUT parameter. The OUT parameter corresponds to a value the function returns indirectly, through a pointer. The value the function returns through the pointer is an extra value, in addition to the value it returns explicitly.

Once you register a user-defined function with an OUT parameter, you can use the function with a statement-local variable (SLV) in an SQL statement. You can only mark one parameter as OUT, and it must be the last parameter.

If you specify an OUT parameter, and you use Informix-style parameters, the argument is passed to the OUT parameter by reference. The OUT parameter is not significant in determining the routine signature.

For example, the following declaration of a C user-defined function allows you to return an extra value through the **y** parameter:

```
int my_func( int x, int *y );
```

You would register the C user-defined function with a **CREATE FUNCTION** statement similar to the following example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION my_func( x INT, OUT y INT )
RETURNING INT
EXTERNAL NAME "/usr/lib/local_site.so"
LANGUAGE C
END FUNCTION;
```

C

Java

For example, the following declaration of a Java method allows you to return an extra value by passing an array:

```
public static String allVarchar(String arg1, String[] arg2)
throws SQLException
{
    arg2[0] = arg1;
    return arg1;
}
```

You would register the user-defined function with a CREATE FUNCTION statement similar to the following example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION all_varchar(varchar(10), OUT varchar(7))
RETURNING varchar(7)
WITH (class = "jvp")
EXTERNAL NAME
'informix.testclasses.jlm.Param.allVarchar(java.lang.String,
java.lang.String[])'
LANGUAGE JAVA;
```

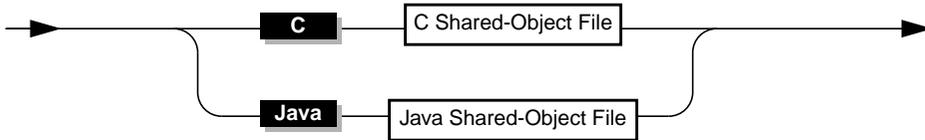
IDS

EXT

Shared-Object Filename

Use a shared-object filename to supply a pathname to an executable object file when you register or alter an external routine.

Syntax



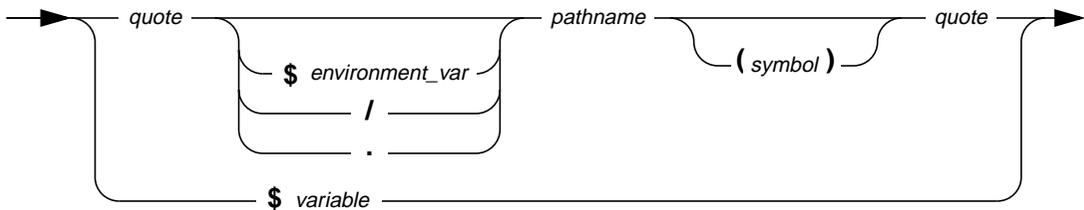
C

C Shared-Object File

To specify the location of a C shared-object file, specify the path to the executable file within a quoted pathname or a variable that holds the full pathname of the executable file.

C Shared-Object File

Back to Shared-Object Filename
[p. 4-292](#)



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>environment_var</i>	Platform-independent location indicator	The <i>environment_var</i> must begin with a dollar sign (\$).	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>pathname</i>	Pathname to the dynamically loadable executable file	An absolute pathname must begin with a slash mark (\). A relative pathname need not begin with a period (.). Each directory name must end with a slash mark (\). The filename at the end of the pathname must end in .so and must refer to an executable file in a shared object library.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>quote</i>	Either a single (') or double (") quotation mark symbol	The opening and closing quotation marks must match.	A quotation mark is a literal symbol (either ' or ") that you enter from the keyboard.
<i>symbol</i>	Optional entry point to the dynamically loadable executable file	Use a symbol only if the entry point has a different name than the UDR you are registering with CREATE FUNCTION or CREATE PROCEDURE. You must enclose a symbol in parentheses.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>variable</i>	Platform-independent location indicator that contains the full pathname to the executable file	You must begin the variable name with a dollar sign (\$).	Identifier, p. 4-205

You can omit a pathname, and enter just a filename, if you want to refer to an internal function.

A relative pathname need not begin with a period, and is relative to the current directory at the time the CREATE or ALTER statement is run.

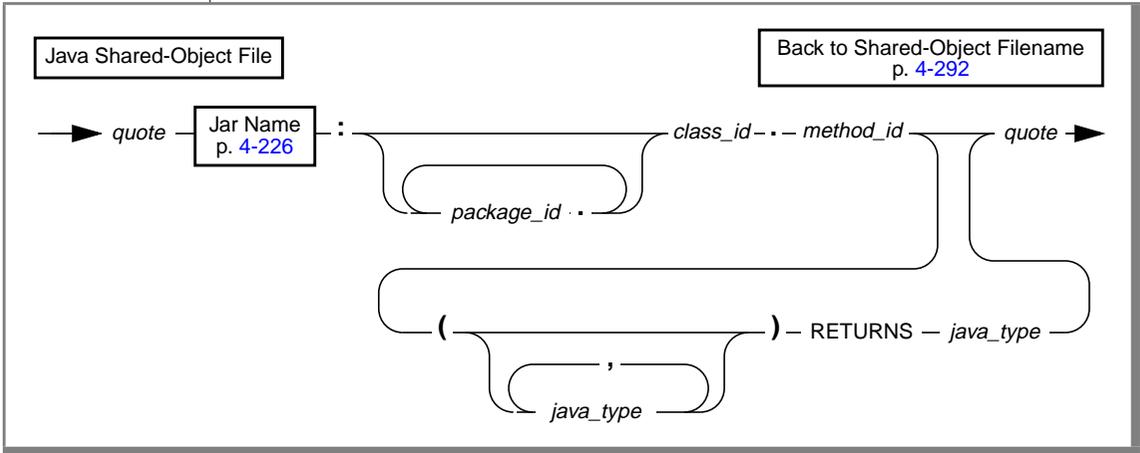
If you use a *symbol*, it refers to an optional entry point in the executable object file. Use a symbol only if the entry point has a name other than the name of the UDR that you are registering.

You can include spaces or tabs within a Quoted Pathname.

Java

Java Shared-Object File

To specify the name of a Java shared-object file, specify the name of the static Java method to which the UDR corresponds and the location of the Java binary that defines the method.



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>class_id</i>	Name of the Java class that contains the method to implement the UDR	The Java class must exist in the jar file that Jar Name identifies.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for Java identifiers.
<i>java_type</i>	Name of a Java data type for a parameter in the Java-method signature	The Java data type must be defined in a JDBC class or by an SQL-to-Java mapping. For more information on mapping user-defined data types to Java data types, see “sqlj.setUDTextName” on page 2-453 .	Name must conform to language-specific rules for Java identifiers.

(1 of 2)

Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>method_id</i>	Name of the Java method that implements the UDR	The method must exist in the Java class that <i>java_class_name</i> specifies.	Name must conform to language-specific rules for Java identifiers.
<i>package_id</i>	Name of the package that contains the Java class		Name must conform to language-specific rules for Java identifiers.
<i>quote</i>	Either a single (') or double (") quotation mark	The opening and closing quotation marks must match	A quotation mark is a literal symbol (either ' or ") that you enter from the keyboard.

(2 of 2)

Before you can create a UDR written in Java, you must assign a jar identifier to the external jar file with the `sqlj.install_jar` procedure. For more information, see [“sqlj.install_jar” on page 2-447](#).

You can include the Java signature of the method that implements the UDR in the shared-object filename.

- If you do *not* specify the Java signature, the routine manager determines the *implicit* Java signature from the SQL signature in the CREATE FUNCTION or CREATE PROCEDURE statement.

It maps SQL data types to the corresponding Java data types with the JDBC and SQL-to-Java mappings. For information on mapping user-defined data types to Java data types, see [“sqlj.setUDTextName” on page 2-453](#).

- If you do specify the Java signature, the routine manager uses this *explicit* Java signature as the name of the Java method to use.

For example, if the Java method `explosiveReaction()` implements the Java UDR `sql_explosive_reaction()` (as discussed in [“sqlj.install_jar” on page 2-447](#)), its shared-object filename could be:

```
course_jar:Chemistry.explosiveReaction
```

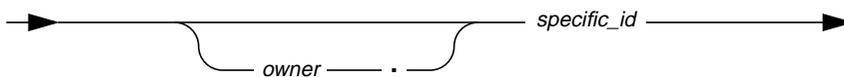
The preceding shared-object filename provides an implicit Java signature. The following shared-object filename is the equivalent with an explicit Java signature:

```
course_jar:Chemistry.explosiveReaction(int)
```

Specific Name

Use a specific name to give a UDR a name that is unique in the database or name space. Use the specific name segment whenever you see a reference to specific name in a syntax diagram.

Syntax



Element	Purpose	Restrictions	Syntax
<i>owner</i>	Name of the owner of the UDR	The <i>owner</i> must be the same <i>owner</i> used in the function name or procedure name for this UDR. For more information, see “Restrictions on the Owner Name” on page 4-297.	Identifier, p. 4-205
<i>specific_id</i>	Unique name of the UDR	The specific identifier can be up to 128 characters long. The <i>specific_id</i> must be unique within the database. For implementation differences between ANSI and non-ANSI databases, see “Restrictions on the Specific_ID” on page 4-297.	Identifier, p. 4-205

Usage

A specific name is a unique identifier that you define in a CREATE PROCEDURE or CREATE FUNCTION statement to serve as an alternative name for a UDR.

Because you can overload routines, a database can have more than one UDR with the same name and different parameter lists. You can assign a UDR a specific name that uniquely identifies the specific UDR.

If you give a UDR a specific name when you create it, you can later use the specific name when you alter, drop, grant or revoke privileges, or update statistics on that UDR. Otherwise, you need to include the parameter data types with the UDR name if the name alone does not uniquely identify the UDR.

Restrictions on the Owner Name

When you give a UDR a specific name, the *owner* must be the same *owner* used in the function name or procedure name for the UDR you create. That is, whether or not you specify the owner name in either the UDR name or the specific name or both, the owner names must match.

When you do not specify an owner name, the database server uses the user ID of the person creating the UDR. Therefore, if you specify the owner name in one location and not the other, the owner name that you specify must match your user ID.

Restrictions on the Specific_ID

In a non-ANSI database, the *specific_id* must be unique within the database. In other words, two specific names cannot have the same *specific_id*, even if they have two different owners.

ANSI

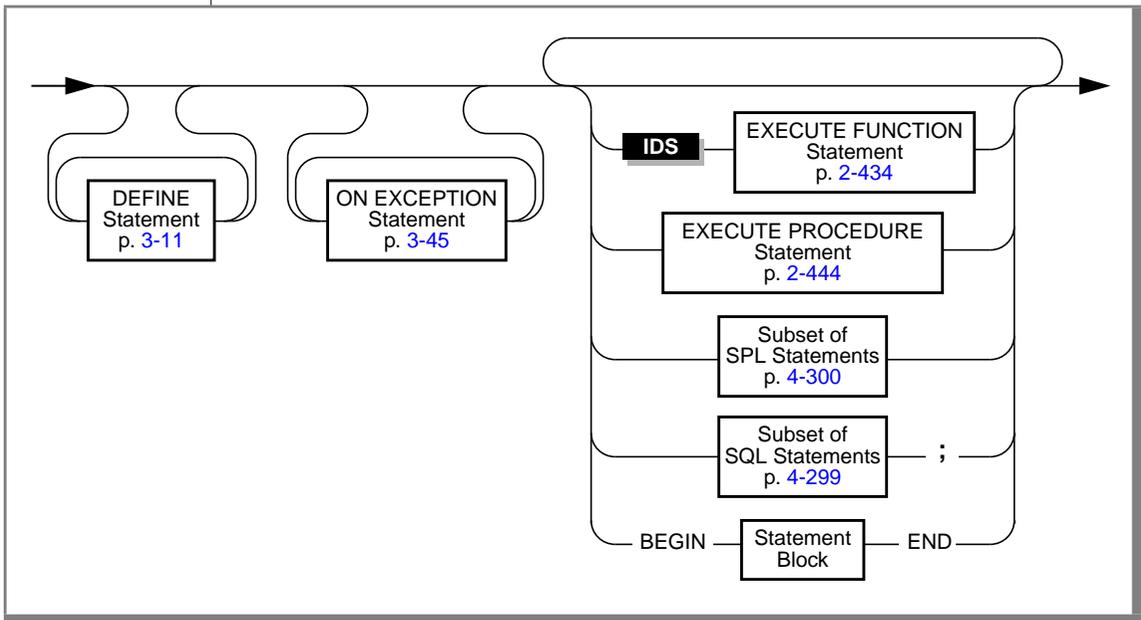
In an ANSI-compliant database, you can use the same specific identifier for two UDRs within the same database if the UDRs have different owners. The combination *owner.specific_id* must be unique. In other words, the specific name of the UDR must be unique for the owner.

The specific name must be unique within the schema. ♦

Statement Block

Use a statement block to specify the operations to take place when the SPL routine is called. Use the statement block segment whenever you see a reference to statement block in a syntax diagram.

Syntax



Usage

If the statement block portion of the statement is empty, no operation takes place when you call the SPL routine.



Warning: When you specify a date value in an expression in any statement in the statement block, make sure to specify 4 digits instead of 2 digits for the year. When you specify a 4-digit year, the **DBCENTURY** environment variable has no effect on how the database server interprets the date value. When you specify a 2-digit year, the **DBCENTURY** environment variable can affect how the database server interprets the date value, so the routine might produce unpredictable results. For more information on the **DBCENTURY** environment variable, see the [“Informix Guide to SQL: Reference.”](#)

SQL Statements Not Allowed in the Statement Block

The diagram for the [“Statement Block” on page 4-298](#) refers to this section.

The following table lists the SQL statements that are *not* allowed in an SPL routine.

ALLOCATE COLLECTION	EXECUTE
ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR	EXECUTE IMMEDIATE
ALLOCATE ROW	FETCH
CLOSE	FLUSH
CLOSE DATABASE	FREE
CONNECT	GET DESCRIPTOR
CREATE DATABASE	INFO
CREATE FUNCTION	LOAD
CREATE FUNCTION FROM	OPEN
CREATE PROCEDURE	OUTPUT
CREATE PROCEDURE FROM	PREPARE
DATABASE	PUT
DEALLOCATE COLLECTION	SET CONNECTION
DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR	SET DESCRIPTOR
DEALLOCATE ROW	UNLOAD
DECLARE	UPDATE STATISTICS
DESCRIBE	WHENEVER
DISCONNECT	

For example, you cannot close the current database or select a new database within an SPL routine. Likewise you cannot drop the current SPL routine within the routine. You can, however, drop another SPL routine.

You can use a SELECT statement in only two cases:

- You can use the INTO TEMP clause to put the results of the SELECT statement into a temporary table.
- You can use the SELECT... INTO form of the SELECT statement to put the resulting values into SPL variables.

If an SPL routine is later to be called as part of a data manipulation statement, additional restrictions exist. For more information, see [“Restrictions on an SPL Routine Called in a Data Manipulation Statement”](#) on page 4-302.

Subset of SPL Statements Allowed in the Statement Block

The diagram for the [“Statement Block”](#) on page 4-298 refers to this section.

You can use any of the following SPL statements in the statement block:

CALL	LET
CONTINUE	RAISE EXCEPTION
EXIT	RETURN
FOR	SYSTEM
FOREACH	TRACE
IF	WHILE

Using the BEGIN-END Keywords to Define a Statement Block

You can use the BEGIN-END keywords to limit the scope of SPL variables and exception handlers. Variable declarations and exception handlers defined inside a BEGIN-END statement block are local to that statement block and are not accessible from outside the statement block.

The following code sample demonstrates the use of a BEGIN-END statement block to define the scope of a variable:

```

CREATE DATABASE demo;

CREATE TABLE tracker (
  who_submitted CHAR(80),
  -- Show which part of code was running.
  value INT,
  -- Show value of the variable.
  sequential_order SERIAL
  -- Show order in which statements were executed.
);

CREATE PROCEDURE demo_local_var()
DEFINE var1 INT;
DEFINE var2 INT;
  LET var1 = 1;
  LET var2 = 2;
  INSERT INTO tracker (who_submitted, value)
    VALUES ('var1 param before sub-block', var1);

BEGIN
  DEFINE var1 INT;  -- same name as global parameter.
  LET var1 = var2;
  INSERT INTO tracker (who_submitted, value)
    VALUES ('var1 var defined inside the "IF/BEGIN".', var1);
END

INSERT INTO tracker (who_submitted, value)
  VALUES ('var1 param after sub-block (unchanged!)', var1);
END PROCEDURE;

EXECUTE PROCEDURE demo_local_var();

SELECT sequential_order, who_submitted, value
FROM tracker
ORDER BY sequential_order;

```

This example defines three independent variables, two of which are named **var1**. (The example uses two different variables with the same name to illustrate how a statement block limits the scope of a variable. In general, using the same name for different variables is not a good idea.)

Because of the statement block, only one **var1** variable is in scope at a time.

The **var1** variable that is defined inside the statement block is the only **var1** variable that can be referenced from within the statement block.

The **var1** variable that is defined outside the statement block can not be referenced from within the statement block. Because this variable is out of scope, it is unaffected by the change in value to the **var1** variable that takes place inside the BEGIN-END statement block. After all the statements run, the outer **var1** still has a value of 1.

The **var2** variable shows that an inner statement block does not lose access to outer variables that were not explicitly superseded. The outer variable **var2** is still in scope from within the statement block because it was not superseded by a block-specific variable.

Restrictions on an SPL Routine Called in a Data Manipulation Statement

If an SPL routine is called as part of an INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, or SELECT statement, the routine cannot execute any statement in the following list.

ALTER ACCESS METHOD	DROP INDEX
ALTER FRAGMENT	DROP OPCLASS
ALTER INDEX	DROP OPTICAL CLUSTER
ALTER OPTICAL CLUSTER	DROP ROLE
ALTER TABLE	DROP ROW TYPE
BEGIN WORK	DROP SYNONYM
COMMIT WORK	DROP TABLE
CREATE ACCESS METHOD	DROP TRIGGER
CREATE AGGREGATE	DROP TYPE
CREATE DISTINCT TYPE	DROP VIEW
CREATE OPAQUE TYPE	RENAME COLUMN
CREATE OPCLASS	RENAME TABLE
CREATE ROLE	ROLLBACK WORK
CREATE ROW TYPE	SET CONSTRAINTS
CREATE TRIGGER	
DROP ACCESS METHOD	
DROP AGGREGATE	

◆

XPS

If an SPL routine is called as part of an INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, or SELECT statement, the routine can execute *only* the following statements:

SELECT	SET EXPLAIN
SET PLOAD FILE	SET OPTIMIZATION
SET DEBUG FILE TO	



However, if the SPL routine is called within a statement that is not a data manipulation statement (namely EXECUTE FUNCTION or EXECUTE PROCEDURE), the routine can execute any statement that does not appear in the list that appears in [“SQL Statements Not Allowed in the Statement Block” on page 4-299](#).

Use of Transactions in SPL Routines

You can use the BEGIN WORK and COMMIT WORK statements in SPL routines. You can start a transaction, finish a transaction, or start and finish a transaction in an SPL routine. If you start a transaction in a routine that is executed remotely, you must finish the transaction before the routine exits.

IDS

Support for Roles and User Identity

You can use roles with SPL routines. You can execute role-related statements (CREATE ROLE, DROP ROLE, and SET ROLE) and SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION statements within an SPL routine. You can also grant privileges to roles with the GRANT statement within an SPL routine. Privileges that a user has acquired through enabling a role or by a SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION statement are not relinquished when an SPL routine is executed.

For further information about roles, see the CREATE ROLE, DROP ROLE, GRANT, REVOKE, and SET ROLE statements.

Reserved Words for Dynamic Server 2000

This appendix lists the reserved words in the Informix implementation of SQL in Dynamic Server. Although you can use almost any word as an SQL identifier, syntactic ambiguities can occur. An ambiguous statement might not produce the desired results.

To avoid using a reserved word, Informix recommends that you qualify the word with an owner name or modify the word. For example, rather than name a database object `ORDER`, you might name it `o_order` or `yatin.order`. For a discussion of additional workarounds for particular reserved words, see [“Identifier” on page 4-205](#).

A
ABSOLUTE
ACCESS
ACCESS_METHOD
ADD
AFTER
AGGREGATE
ALIGNMENT
ALL
ALL_ROWS
ALLOCATE
ALTER
AND
ANSI
ANY
APPEND
AS
ASC
AT
ATTACH
AUDIT
AUTHORIZATION
AUTO
AUTOFREE
AVG

B
BEFORE
BEGIN
BETWEEN
BINARY
BOOLEAN
BOTH

BUFFERED
BUILTIN
BY
BYTE

C
CACHE
CALL
CANNOTHASH
CARDINALITY
CASCADE
CASE
CAST
CHAR
CHAR_LENGTH
CHARACTER
CHARACTER_LENGTH
CHECK
CLASS
CLIENT
CLOSE
CLUSTER
CLUSTERSIZE
COARSE
COBOL
CODESET
COLLECTION
COLUMN
COMMIT
COMMITTED
coMMUTATOR
CONCURRENT
CONNECT

CONNECTION
CONST
CONSTRAINT
CONSTRAINTS
CONSTRUCTOR
CONTINUE
COPY
COSTFUNC
COUNT
CRCOLS
CREATE
CURRENT
CURSOR

D
DATABASE
DATAFILES
DATASKIP
DATE
DATETIME
DAY
DBA
dbDATE
DBMONEY
DBPASSWORD
DEALLOCATE
DEBUG
DEC
DEC_T
DECIMAL
DECLARE
DECODE
DEFAULT

DEFERRED
DEFERRED_PREPARE
DEFINE
DELAY
DELETE
DELIMITER
DELUXE
DEREF
DESC
DESCRIBE
DESCRIPTOR
DETACH
DIAGNOSTICS
DIRTY
DISABLED
DISCONNECT
DISTINCT
DISTRIBUTIONS
DOCUMENT
DOMAIN
DORMANT
DOUBLE
DROP
DTIME_T

E
EACH
ELIF
ELSE
ENABLED
END
ENUM
ENVIRONMENT

ERROR
ESCAPE
EXCEPTION
EXCLUSIVE
EXEC
EXECUTE
EXISTS
EXIT
EXPLAIN
EXPLICIT
EXPRESS
EXPRESSION
EXTEND
EXTENT
EXTERN
EXTERNAL

F
FAR
FETCH
FILE
FILLFACTOR
FILTERING
FIRST
FIRST_ROWS
FIXCHAR
FIXED
FLOAT
FLUSH
FOR
FOREACH
FOREIGN
FORMAT
FORTRAN

FOUND
FRACTION
FRAGMENT
FREE
FROM
FUNCTION

G
GENERAL
GET
GK
GLOBAL
GO
GOTO
GRANT
GROUP

H
HANDLESNULLS
HASH
HAVING
HIGH
HOLD
HOUR
HYBRID

I
IF
IFX_INT8_T
IFX_LO_CREATE_SPEC_T
IFX_LO_STAT_T
IMMEDIATE
IMPLICIT
IN
INDEX

INDEXES
INDICATOR
INFORMIX
INIT
INNER
INSERT
INT
INT8
INTEG
INTEGER
INTERNAL
INTERNALLENGTH
INTERVAL
INTO
INTRVL_T
IS
ISOLATION
ITEM
ITERATOR

J
JOIN

K
KEEP
KEY

L
LABEQ
LABELGE
LABELGLB
LABELGT
LABELLE
LABELLT

LABELLUB
LABELTOSTRING
LANGUAGE
LAST
LEADING
LEFT
LET
LEVEL
LIKE
LIST
LISTING
LOC_T
LOCAL
LOCATOR
LOCK
LOCKS
LOG
LONG
LOW
LVARCHAR

M
MATCHES
MAX
MAXERRORS
MAXLEN
MDY
MEDIAN
MEDIUM
MEMORY_RESIDENT
MIDDLE
MIN
MINUTE

MODE	ONLY
MODERATE	OPAQUE
MODIFY	OPCLASS
MODULE	OPEN
MONEY	OPERATIONAL
MONTH	OPTICAL
MOUNTING	OPTIMIZATION
MULTISET	OPTION
	OR
N	ORDER
NAME	OUT
NCHAR	OUTER
NEGATOR	P
NEW	PAGE
NEXT	PARALLELIZABLE
NO	PARAMETER
NON_RESIDENT	PASCAL
NONE	PASSEDBYVALUE
NORMAL	PDQPRIORITY
NOT	PERCALL_COST
NOTEMPLATEARG	PLI
NULL	PLOAD
NUMERIC	PRECISION
NVARCHAR	PREPARE
NVL	PREVIOUS
o	PRIMARY
OCTET_LENGTH	PRIOR
OF	PRIVATE
OFF	PRIVILEGES
OLD	PROCEDURE
ON	PUBLIC
	PUT

R	ROLLFORWARD
RAISE	ROUND
RANGE	ROUTINE
RAW	ROW
READ	ROWID
REAL	ROWIDS
RECORDEND	ROWS
REF	S
REFERENCES	SAMEAS
REFERENCING	SAMPLES
REGISTER	SCHEDULE
REJECTFILE	SCHEMA
RELATIVE	SCRATCH
RELEASE	SCROLL
REMAINDER	SECOND
RENAME	SECONDARY
REOPTIMIZATION	SECTION
REPEATABLE	SELCONST
REPLICATION	SELECT
RESERVE	SELFUNC
RESOLUTION	SERIAL
RESOURCE	SERIAL8T
RESTRICT	SERIALIZABLE
RESUME	SESSION
RETAIN	SET
RETURN	SHARE
RETURNING	SHORT
RETURNS	SIGNED
REVOKE	SIZE
ROBIN	SKALL
ROLE	SKINHIBIT
ROLLBACK	

SKSHOW
SMALLFLOAT
SMALLINT
SOME
SPECIFIC
SQL
sQLCODE
SQLERROR
SQLWARNING
STABILITY
STACK
STANDARD
START
STATIC
STATISTICS
STDEV
STEP
STOP
STRATEGIES
STRINGTOLABEL
STRUCT
STYLE
SUBSTR
SUBSTRING
SUM
SUPPORT
SYNC
SYNONYM
SYSTEM

T
TABLE
TEMP
TEXT
THEN
TIME
TIMEOUT
TO
TODAY
TRACE
TRAILING
TRANSACTION
TRIGGER
TRIGGERS
TRIM
TYPE
TYPEDEF

U
UNCOMMITTED
UNDER
UNION
UNIQUE
UNITS
UNLOCK
UNSIGNED
UPDATE
USAGE
USER
USING

V
VALUE
VALUES
VAR
VARCHAR
VARIABLE
VARIANCE
VARIANT
VARYING
VIEW
VIOLATIONS

W
WAIT
WARNING
WHEN
WHENEVER
WHERE
WHILE
WITH
WITHOUT
WORK
WRITE

X
xLOAD
XUNLOAD

Y
YEAR

Reserved Words for Extended Parallel Server

This appendix lists the reserved words in the Informix implementation of SQL for Extended Parallel Server. Informix recommends that you not use any of these words as an SQL identifier. If you do, errors or syntactic ambiguities can occur.

To avoid using a reserved word, Informix recommends that you qualify the word with an owner name or modify the word. For example, rather than name a database object `ORDER`, you might name it `o_order` or `yatin.order`. For a discussion of additional workarounds for particular reserved words, see [“Identifier” on page 4-205](#).

A	CHARACTER
ADD	CHARACTER_LENGTH
AFTER	CHECK
ALL	CLOSE
ALTER	CLUSTER
AND	CLUSTERSIZE
ANSI	COARSE
ANY	COBOL
APPEND	CODESET
AS	COLUMN
ASC	COMMIT
ATTACH	COMMITTED
AUDIT	CONNECT
AUTHORIZATION	CONSTRAINT
AVG	CONSTRAINTS
B	CONTINUE
BEFORE	COPY
BEGIN	COUNT
BETWEEN	CREATE
BITMAP	CURRENT
BOTH	CURSOR
BUFFERED	D
BY	DATABASE
BYTE	DATAFILES
C	DATASKIP
CACHE	DATE
CALL	DATETIME
CASCADE	DAY
CASE	DBA
CHAR	dbDATE
CHAR_LENGTH	DBMONEY
	DEBUG

DEC	EXIT
DECIMAL	EXPLAIN
DECLARE	EXPRESS
DECODE	EXPRESSION
DEFAULT	EXTEND
DEFERRED	EXTENT
DEFINE	EXTERNAL
DELETE	F
DELIMITER	FETCH
DELUXE	FILE
DESC	FILLFACTOR
DETACH	FILTERING
DIRTY	FIRST
DISTINCT	FLOAT
DISTRIBUTIONS	FOR
DOCUMENT	FOREACH
DOUBLE	FOREIGN
DROP	FORMAT
E	FORTRAN
EACH	FOUND
ELIF	FRACTION
ELSE	FRAGMENT
END	FROM
ENVIRONMENT	G
ESCAPE	GK
EXCEPTION	GLOBAL
EXCLUSIVE	GO
EXEC	GOTO
EXECUTE	GRANT
EXISTS	GROUP

H	LEVEL
HASH	LIKE
HAVING	LISTING
HIGH	LOCAL
HOLD	LOCK
HOUR	LOCKS
HYBRID	LOG
I	LOW
IF	M
IMMEDIATE	MATCHES
IN	MAX
INDEX	MAXERRORS
INDICATOR	MEDIUM
INIT	MEMORY_RESIDENT
INSERT	MIDDLE
INT	MIN
INTEGER	MINUTE
INTERVAL	MODE
INTO	MODIFY
IS	MODULE
ISOLATION	MONEY
K	MONTH
KEY	MOUNTING
L	N
LABELEQ	NCHAR
LABELGE	NEW
LABELGT	NEXT
LABELLE	NO
LABELLT	NON_RESIDENT
LANGUAGE	NORMAL
LEADING	NOT
LET	NULL

NUMERIC
NVARCHAR
NVL
0
OCTET_LENGTH
OF
OFF
OLD
ON
ONLY
OPEN
OPERATIONAL
OPTICAL
OPTIMIZATION
OPTION
OR
ORDER
OUTER
P
PAGE
PASCAL
PDQPRIORITY
PLI
PLOAD
PRECISION
PRIMARY
PRIVATE
PRIVILEGES
PROCEDURE
PUBLIC

R
RAISE
RANGE
RAW
READ
REAL
RECORDEND
RECOVER
REFERENCES
REFERENCING
REJECTFILE
RELEASE
REMAINDER
RENAME
REPEATABLE
RESERVE
RESOLUTION
RESOURCE
RESTRICT
RESUME
RETAIN
RETURN
RETURNING
RETURNS
REVOKE
RIDLIST
ROBIN
ROLLBACK
ROLLFORWARD
ROUND
ROW
ROWS

S

SAMEAS
SAMPLES
SCHEDULE
SCHEMA
SCRATCH
SCROLL
SECOND
SECTION
SELECT
SERIAL
SERIALIZABLE
SET
SHARE
SIZE
SKALL
SKINHIBIT
SKSHOW
SMALLFLOAT
SMALLINT
SOME
SQL
sQLCODE
SQLERROR
STABILITY
STANDARD
START
STATIC
STATISTICS
STDEV
STEP
STOP

SUBSTRING

SUM

SYNC

SYNONYM

SYSTEM

T

TABLE

TEMP

TEXT

THEN

TIMEOUT

TO

TRACE

TRAILING

TRANSACTION

TRIGGER

TRIM

TYPE

U

UNCOMMITTED

UNION

UNIQUE

UNITS

UNLOCK

UPDATE

USAGE

USING

V

VALUES

VARCHAR

VARIANCE

VARYING
VIEW
VIOLATIONS

W
WAIT
WHEN
WHENEVER
WHERE
WHILE
WITH
WORK
WRITE

X
xLOAD
XUNLOAD

Y
YEAR

Index

A

- ABS function 4-123, 4-125
- ABSOLUTE keyword
 - in FETCH statement 2-455
- Access control. *See* Privilege.
- ACCESS keyword
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-78
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-273
 - in INFO statement 2-532
- Access method
 - index 2-158
 - primary 2-279
 - secondary 2-158
 - specifying in CREATE TABLE 2-279
- ACOS function 4-159, 4-161
- Action clause, in CREATE TRIGGER 2-307, 2-314
- Active set
 - constructing with OPEN statement 2-568
 - sequential cursor 2-360
- ADD CONSTRAINT keywords, in ALTER TABLE statement 2-80
- ADD keyword
 - in ALTER FRAGMENT statement 2-35
 - in ALTER FUNCTION statement 2-41
 - in ALTER PROCEDURE statement 2-48
 - in ALTER ROUTINE statement 2-51
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-59, 2-86
 - ADD ROWIDS keywords, in ALTER TABLE statement 2-58
 - ADD TYPE keywords, in ALTER TABLE statement 2-86
- AFTER keyword
 - in ALTER FRAGMENT statement 2-15, 2-35
 - in CREATE TRIGGER statement 2-307, 2-314
- Aggregate functions
 - AVG 4-185
 - COUNT 4-185
 - in ESQL 4-199
 - in EXISTS subquery 4-42
 - in expressions 2-641
 - in GROUP BY Clause 2-671
 - in SELECT statement 2-642
 - MAX 4-185
 - MIN 4-185
 - RANGE 4-195
 - STDEV 4-196
 - SUM 4-185
 - summary 4-197
 - VARIANCE 4-196
- Algebraic functions
 - ABS 4-125
 - MOD 4-126
 - POW 4-126
 - ROOT 4-126
 - ROUND 4-127
 - SQRT 4-128
 - TRUNC 4-128
- Alias
 - for a table in SELECT statement 2-652, 4-10
 - use with GROUP BY clause 2-674

- ALIGNMENT keyword, in
 - CREATE OPAQUE TYPE statement 2-188
- ALL keyword
 - beginning a subquery 2-665
 - in Condition segment 4-43
 - in CREATE INDEX statement 2-183
 - in DISCONNECT statement 2-389
 - in Expression segment 4-185, 4-199
 - in GRANT FRAGMENT statement 2-525
 - in GRANT statement 2-505
 - in REVOKE FRAGMENT statement 2-629
 - in REVOKE statement 2-614
 - in SELECT statement 2-636, 2-639
 - in SET TRANSACTION Mode statement 2-774
 - with UNION operator 2-634, 2-690
- Allocating memory
 - for a collection variable 2-6
- Allowing newline characters in
 - quoted strings 4-262
- ALL_ROWS keyword
 - in Optimizer Directives Segment 4-255
 - in SET OPTIMIZATION statement 2-747
- ALS. *See* Global Language Support.
- ALTER FRAGMENT statement
 - attaching with expression 2-23
 - attaching with hybrid 2-24
 - attaching with round-robin 2-23
 - effects on
 - BYTE and TEXT columns 2-21
 - indexes 2-20
 - triggers 2-21
 - how executed 2-14
 - hybrid fragmentation 2-26
 - privileges required 2-13
 - restrictions 2-14
 - reverting to non-fragmented table
 - with DETACH 2-26
 - with INIT 2-29
 - with generalized-key index 2-28
- ALTER keyword
 - in GRANT statement 2-505
 - in REVOKE statement 2-614
- ALTER TABLE statement
 - adding rowids 2-58
 - cascading deletes 2-67
 - changing column data type 2-72
 - changing table lock mode 2-85
 - dropping a column 2-69
 - privileges needed 2-56
 - reclustering a table 2-45
 - restrictions
 - ADD clause 2-60
 - DROP clause 2-70
 - general 2-55
 - MODIFY clause 2-73
- American National Standards Institute. *See* ANSI compliance.
- AND keyword
 - in Condition segment 4-27, 4-28, 4-45
 - in CREATE INDEX statement 2-185
 - with BETWEEN keyword 2-662
- ANSI compliance
 - ansi flag Intro-16, 2-225, 2-231, 2-287, 2-336
 - icon Intro-14
 - level Intro-22
 - list of SQL statements 1-13
 - table naming 2-607
 - updating rows 2-818
- ANSI keyword
 - in CREATE DATABASE statement 2-124
- ANSI-compliant database
 - creating 2-126
 - cursor in 2-356
 - database object naming 4-259
 - description of 2-126
 - opaque-type naming 2-187
 - operator-class naming 2-194
 - procedure name 2-514, 2-620, 2-845
 - table privileges 2-283
 - with BEGIN WORK 2-92
- ANY keyword
 - in Condition segment 4-43
 - in SELECT statement 2-665
- APPEND keyword
 - in SET DEBUG FILE TO statement 2-712
 - in SET EXPLAIN statement 2-730
 - in SET PLOAD FILE statement 2-755
- Application
 - comments in 1-8
 - single-threaded 2-696
 - thread-safe 2-391, 2-696, 2-699
- Argument 4-6
- Arithmetic functions. *See* Algebraic functions.
- Arithmetic operators
 - binary 4-85
 - syntax 4-73
 - unary 4-86
- Array, moving rows into with
 - FETCH 2-462
- AS keyword
 - in CONNECT statement 2-103
 - in ALTER FRAGMENT statement 2-15
 - in Collection Derived Table segment 4-9
 - in CREATE CAST statement 2-119
 - in CREATE DISTINCT TYPE statement 2-127
 - in CREATE INDEX statement 2-184
 - in CREATE TRIGGER statement 2-310, 2-311, 2-312, 2-313
 - in CREATE VIEW statement 2-334
 - in DROP CAST statement 2-395
 - in Expression segment 4-88
 - in GRANT FRAGMENT statement 2-523
 - in GRANT statement 2-500
 - in SELECT statement 2-636
 - with display labels 2-644
 - with table aliases 2-653
- AS REMAINDER keywords, in
 - ALTER FRAGMENT statement 2-15

ASC keyword
 in CREATE INDEX statement 2-161
 in SELECT statement 2-674, 2-677
 order with nulls 2-678

ASCII code set 4-268

ASCII keyword
 in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-139

ASIN function 4-159, 4-161

Assign support function 2-191, 2-544, 2-556, 2-560, 2-829

Asterisk (*)
 arithmetic operator 4-73
 as wildcard character 4-38
 use in SELECT statement 2-636

AT keyword, in INSERT statement 2-535

ATAN function 4-159, 4-161

ATAN2 function 4-159, 4-162

ATTACH keyword, in ALTER FRAGMENT statement 2-15

Attached index 2-173

AUTHORIZATION keyword, in CREATE SCHEMA statement 2-223

Autofree feature
 in SET AUTOFREE 2-691

Automatic type conversion. *See* Data type conversion.

AVG function 4-185, 4-194

AVOID HASH keyword, in Optimizer Directives segment 4-252

AVOID_FULL keyword, in Optimizer Directives segment 4-248

AVOID_INDEX keyword, in Optimizer Directives segment 4-248

AVOID_NL keyword, in Optimizer Directives segment 4-252

B

Backslash (\)
 as escape character 4-38
 as wildcard character 4-37

BEFORE keyword
 in ALTER FRAGMENT statement 2-15, 2-35
 in ALTER TABLE statement 2-59
 in CREATE TRIGGER statement 2-307, 2-314

BEGIN keyword
 in IF statement 3-39
 in Statement Block segment 4-298

BEGIN WORK statement
 locking in a transaction 2-91
 use in ANSI-compliant databases 2-92

BETWEEN keyword
 in Condition segment 4-28, 4-33
 in SELECT statement 2-662

BINARY keyword, in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-132

BITMAP keyword, in CREATE INDEX statement 2-157

BLOB data type 4-64
 copying to a file 4-149
 copying to a smart large object 4-150
 creating from a file 4-147
 handle values 4-98
 storing 2-78, 2-273
 syntax 4-62
 unloading 2-807, 2-809

BLOB keyword
 in Data Type segment 4-62
 in DEFINE statement 3-11

Boldface type Intro-11

Boolean data type
 unloading 2-806

Boolean expressions 4-27

BOTH keyword, in Expression segment 4-164

Braces ({}), comment symbol 1-7

B-tree cleaner list 2-839

B-tree index
 btree_ops operator class 2-198
 default operator class 2-198
 uses 2-170

B-tree secondary access
 method 2-170

BUFFERED keyword
 in CREATE DATABASE statement 2-124
 in SET LOG statement 2-745

BUFFERED LOG keywords
 in CREATE DATABASE 2-125

Built-in aggregate
 defined 4-187
 extending 2-117

Built-in data type
 owner 2-127
 syntax 4-54

Built-in routines
 jvpcontrol 2-439
 sqlj.alter_java_path 2-451
 sqlj.install_jar 2-447
 sqlj.remove_jar 2-450
 sqlj.replace_jar 2-449
 sqlj.unsetUDTextName 2-454

BYTE column, modifying 2-74

BYTE data
 effect of isolation on
 retrieval 2-740, 2-773
 in CREATE TABLE 4-63
 loading 2-556
 storing 4-63
 unloading 2-807, 2-809

BYTE data type
 syntax 4-63
 with SET DESCRIPTOR 2-729
 with SPL routines 3-13, 3-22

BYTE keyword
 in Data Type segment 4-62
 in DEFINE statement 3-11
 in Return Clause segment 4-270
 in Routine Parameter List segment 4-287

C**C keyword**

- in External Routine Reference segment 4-202
- in GRANT statement 2-516
- in REVOKE statement 2-622

Calculated expression, restrictions with GROUP BY 2-671**CALL keyword**

- in WHENEVER statement 2-848

CALL statement 3-4**CANNOTHASH keyword, in CREATE OPAQUE TYPE statement 2-188****CARDINALITY function 4-129****Caret (^)**

- as wildcard character 4-38
- use with square brackets 4-38

CASCADE keyword

- in ALTER TABLE statement 2-64
- in CREATE TABLE statement 2-241
- in DROP TABLE statement 2-413
- in DROP VIEW statement 2-420
- in REVOKE statement 2-610

Cascading deletes

- CREATE TABLE example 2-245
- CREATE TABLE with 2-67, 2-244
- locking associated with 2-376
- logging 2-376
- multiple child tables 2-376

Cascading triggers

- and triggering table 2-324, 2-328
- description of 2-327
- maximum number of 2-327
- scope of correlation names 2-319
- triggered actions 2-309

CASE keyword, in Expression segment 4-101, 4-102**CASE statement 3-7****Case-conversion functions**

- INITCAP 4-174
- LOWER 4-174
- UPPER 4-174

Cast

- built-in 2-121, 2-395
- creating 2-119
- dropping 2-395

explicit 2-121**function for 2-122**

- implicit 2-121
- privileges 2-120
- registering 2-119
- symbol 4-88

CAST keyword, in Expression segment 4-88**cdrsrvr, replication column name 2-255****cdftime, replication column name 2-255****CHAR data type**

- defined 4-56
- in INSERT 4-264

Character data type

- fixed and varying length 4-56
- syntax 4-55

CHARACTER VARYING data type. See VARCHAR data type.**syntax 4-55****CHARACTER_LENGTH**

- function 4-143, 4-145

CHAR_LENGTH function 4-143, 4-145**Check constraints**

- description of 2-136, 2-245
- reject files 2-142
- unloading data 2-142

CHECK keyword

- in ALTER TABLE statement 2-68
- in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-136
- in CREATE TABLE statement 2-245
- in CREATE VIEW statement 2-334

CLASS keyword, in Routine Modifier segment 4-275**CLASS_ORIGIN keyword in GET DIAGNOSTICS statement 2-491****CLOB data type**

- copying to a file 4-149
- copying to a smart large object 4-150
- creating from a file 4-147
- handle values 4-98
- in Data Type segment 4-64

syntax 4-62**unloading 2-807, 2-809****CLOB keyword**

- in Data Type segment 4-62
- in DEFINE statement 3-11

CLOSE DATABASE statement prerequisites to close 2-98 syntax 2-98**CLOSE statement**

- closing a collection cursor 2-96
- closing a select cursor 2-95
- closing an insert cursor 2-95
- cursors affected by transaction end 2-96
- syntax 2-94

CLUSTER keyword

- in ALTER INDEX statement 2-44
- in CREATE INDEX statement 2-159

Clustered index 2-44, 2-160**COARSE keyword**

- in ALTER INDEX statement 2-44
- in CREATE INDEX statement 2-181

Code set, ISO 8859-1 Intro-4**CODESET keyword**

- in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-139
- in SELECT statement 2-688

Code, sample, conventions for Intro-19**Collation, with relational operators 4-267****Collection**

- accessing a nested collection 4-22
- example of deleting elements 4-18
- example of inserting elements 4-21
- example of updating 4-20
- nested 4-229

Collection constructors

- example 4-119
- restrictions 4-119

Collection cursor

- closing 2-96
- DECLARE for ESQ/C variable 2-367
- defined 2-367

- FOR EACH with 3-33
- in SPL 3-33
- inserting into 2-466, 2-599
- opening 2-571
- Collection data type 4-69
 - deleting 2-380
 - element, searching for with
 - IN 4-35
 - IN operator 4-35
 - loading 2-560
 - MULTISET 4-69
 - returning number of
 - elements 4-129
 - selecting from 2-656
 - unloading 2-806
 - updating 4-16
- Collection derived table 4-9
 - collection cursor 2-466, 2-599
 - collection variables with 4-15
 - INSERT statement with 2-370, 2-551
 - row types in 4-13
 - row variables with 4-22
 - SELECT statement with 2-656, 4-15
 - SELECT with, fields from row
 - variable 2-658
 - TABLE keyword 4-11, 4-15, 4-22
 - UPDATE row variable with 2-832
 - UPDATE statement with 4-15, 4-22
 - where allowed 4-22
- COLLECTION keyword, in
 - DEFINE statement 3-11
- Collection Subquery
 - creating a multiset collection 4-24
 - example 4-26
 - restrictions 4-25
 - resulting row structure 4-25
 - where used 4-25
- Collection types
 - defining a column 4-69
 - LIST 4-70
 - MULTISET 4-69
 - SET 4-69
- Collection variable
 - accessing 4-15
 - accessing values 4-15
 - allocating memory for 2-6
 - associating cursor with 2-367
 - cursor for 2-466
 - deallocating memory for 2-343
 - describing 2-386
 - in SELECT statement 2-657
 - manipulating values 4-16
 - opening a cursor 2-571
 - selecting from 2-656
 - selecting, inserting
 - elements 2-367
 - updating 4-16
- Collections
 - accessing elements 4-11
 - deleting elements from 2-380
 - generating values for 4-118
 - inserting values into 2-544
 - restrictions when accessing
 - elements 4-11
 - restrictions when defining 4-70
 - restrictions with inserting null
 - values 2-545
 - selecting from 2-657
 - specifying literal values 4-228
 - updating 2-828
- Column
 - adding 2-59
 - adding a NOT NULL
 - constraint 2-75
 - as an expression 2-640, 4-91
 - changing the data type 2-75
 - defining as primary key 2-240
 - dropping 2-69, 2-70
 - inserting into 2-537
 - modifying with ALTER
 - TABLE 2-72
 - number, effect on triggers 2-301
 - primary or foreign key 2-240
 - privileges 2-507
 - projection 4-93
 - referenced and referencing 2-242
 - removing a NOT NULL
 - constraint 2-75
 - renaming 2-604
 - specifying a subscript 2-676, 4-97
 - specifying check constraint
 - for 2-136, 2-245
 - virtual 2-337
- Column definition clause 2-233
- Column name
 - dot notation 4-93
 - using functions as names 4-211
 - using keywords as names 4-212
 - when qualified 2-318
- Column value
 - in triggered action 2-320
 - qualified vs. unqualified 2-320
 - when unqualified 2-320
- COLUMNS keyword, in INFO
 - statement 2-532
- COMBINE keyword, in CREATE
 - AGGREGATE statement 2-115
- Command file
 - comment symbols in 1-7
 - defined 1-7
- Comment icons Intro-12
- Comment symbol
 - braces ({}) 1-7
 - double dash (--) 1-7
 - examples of 1-8
 - how to enter 1-6
 - in application programs 1-8
 - in command file 1-7
 - in prepared statements 2-582
 - in SPL routine 1-7
 - in SQL APIs 1-8
- COMMIT keyword, in TRUNCATE
 - statement 2-802
- COMMIT WORK statement
 - in ANSI-compliant
 - databases 2-101
 - in non-ANSI databases 2-101
 - syntax 2-100
- COMMITTED READ keywords, in
 - SET ISOLATION
 - statement 2-736
- Compare support function 2-191
- Complex data type
 - loading element values 2-560
 - unloading 2-811
- Compliance
 - icons Intro-14
 - with industry standards Intro-22
- Compound assignment 3-42
- Concatenation operator (||) 4-73, 4-87

- Concurrency
 - with SET ISOLATION 2-736
 - with SET TRANSACTION 2-772
 - with START VIOLATIONS TABLE 2-781
- CONCURRENT keyword, in CONNECT statement 2-103
- Condition
 - comparison 4-28, 4-30
 - IN operator 4-34
 - NOT IN operator 4-34
- Condition segment
 - description of 4-27
 - join conditions 2-666
 - keywords
 - ALL 4-43
 - ANY 4-43
 - BETWEEN 4-33
 - EXISTS 4-42
 - IS NOT NULL 4-36
 - IS NULL 4-36
 - LIKE 4-36
 - MATCHES 4-36
 - NOT 4-37
 - SOME 4-43
 - null values 4-28
 - relational operators in 4-32
 - subquery in SELECT 4-40
- Conditional expressions
 - CASE 4-99
 - DECODE 4-99
 - NVL 4-99
- CONNECT keyword
 - in GRANT 2-503
 - in GRANT statement 2-502
 - in REVOKE statement 2-611
- Connect privilege 2-503
- CONNECT statement
 - connection context 2-105
 - connection identifiers 2-105
 - database environment 2-108
 - implicit connections 2-106
 - INFORMIXSERVER environment variable 2-105
 - Locating a database with DBPATH 2-111
 - syntax 2-103
 - USER clause 2-112
 - WITH CONCURRENT TRANSACTION option 2-107
- Connecting to data
 - sqlhosts file and sqlxexec daemon 2-111
- Connection
 - context 2-105, 2-390, 2-695
 - current 2-104, 2-391, 2-699
 - default 2-106, 2-390, 2-698
 - dormant 2-104, 2-390, 2-695
 - identifiers 2-105
 - implicit 2-106, 2-390, 2-698
- CONNECTION_ALIAS keyword
 - in GET DIAGNOSTICS statement 2-491
- Constant expression
 - in SELECT 2-641
 - inserting with PUT 2-595
 - restrictions with GROUP BY 2-671
- Constant expressions 4-108
- Constraint
 - adding primary-key behavior of the database server 2-81
 - adding referential 2-82
 - adding to a column with data 2-76
 - adding unique, behavior of the database server 2-81
 - adding with ALTER TABLE 2-80, 2-81
 - affected by dropping a column from table 2-70
 - checking 2-329
 - dropping with ALTER TABLE 2-83
 - encountering violations while adding 2-82
 - filtering to violations table 2-705
 - limit on size 2-250
 - modifying a column that has constraints 2-72
 - names 2-247
 - name, specifying 4-50
 - number of columns allowed 2-250
 - privileges needed to create 2-82
 - transaction mode 2-774
 - with DROP INDEX 2-401
- CONSTRAINT keyword
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-64, 2-80, 2-83
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-247
- Constraint Name. *See* Database Object Name.
- CONSTRAINTS keyword
 - in SET Database Object Mode statement 2-701, 2-702
 - in SET TRANSACTION Mode statement 2-774
- Constructor functions
 - collections 4-118
 - row 4-116
- Consumed table 2-16
- Contact information Intro-23
- CONTINUE keyword, in WHENEVER statement 2-848
- CONTINUE statement 3-10
- Conventions, documentation Intro-10
- Correlated subquery, definition of 4-41
- Correlation name
 - and user-defined routines 2-319
 - in COUNT DISTINCT clause 2-319
 - in GROUP BY clause 2-319
 - in routine 2-326
 - in SET clause 2-319
 - new 2-313
 - old 2-313
 - rules for 2-319
 - scope of 2-319
 - table of values 2-320
 - using 2-319
 - when to use 2-319
- COS function 4-159, 4-160
- COSTFUNC keyword, in Routine Modifier segment 4-275, 4-277

- COUNT field
 - in GET DESCRIPTOR statement 2-476
 - in SET DESCRIPTOR statement 2-719
 - with DESCRIBE statement 2-385
- COUNT function
 - restriction with CREATE TRIGGER statement 2-319
 - syntax 4-189
 - use 4-185
- COUNT keyword. *See* COUNT field and COUNT function.
- CRCOLS keyword
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-255
- CRCOLS keyword, in CREATE TABLE statement 2-255
- CREATE AGGREGATE statement 2-115
- CREATE CAST statement 2-119
- CREATE DATABASE statement
 - ANSI compliance 2-126
 - syntax 2-124
 - using with PREPARE 2-125
- CREATE DISTINCT TYPE statement 2-127
- CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-131
- CREATE FUNCTION statement
 - See also Informix Guide to SQL Tutorial.*
- 2-146
- CREATE INDEX statement
 - cluster with fragments 2-160
 - composite indexes 2-164
 - disabled indexes 2-181
 - generalized-key index 2-182
 - implicit table locks 2-158
 - index-type options 2-159
 - sort order 2-164
 - specifying lock modes 2-46, 2-181
 - specifying object modes 2-178
 - storage options 2-172
- CREATE OPAQUE TYPE statement 2-186
- CREATE PROCEDURE
 - statement 2-199
 - See also Informix Guide to SQL Tutorial.*
- CREATE PROCEDURE FROM statement 2-209
- CREATE ROLE statement 2-212
- CREATE ROUTINE FROM statement 2-214
- CREATE ROW TYPE statement 2-216
- CREATE SCHEMA statement
 - defining a trigger 2-298
 - specifying owner of created objects with GRANT 2-224
 - syntax 2-222
 - with CREATE sequences 2-224
- CREATE SYNONYM statement
 - chaining synonyms 2-228
 - syntax 2-226
- CREATE TABLE statement
 - access method option 2-279
 - column definition clause 2-233
 - column-level constraints 2-289
 - constraints
 - check 2-245
 - composite keys 2-250, 2-254
 - defining 2-237
 - distinct 2-239
 - example 2-240, 2-253
 - foreign key 2-241
 - NOT NULL 2-235, 2-239
 - primary key 2-240
 - referential 2-241
 - restrictions 2-238
 - unique 2-239
 - creating composite columns 2-250
 - creating shadow replication columns 2-255
 - defining constraints 2-250
 - fragmenting
 - by expression 2-262
 - by hash 2-263
 - by hybrid 2-264
 - by range 2-265
 - general 2-259
 - round-robin 2-261
 - locking options 2-278
- ON DELETE CASCADE
 - keywords 2-67
- PUT clause 2-273
- setting columns to NOT NULL 2-239
- specifying cascading deletes 2-244
- specifying column default values 2-234
- specifying extent size 2-276
- specifying storage location 2-256
- WITH CRCOLS keywords 2-255
- WITH ROWIDS keywords 2-261
- CREATE TEMP TABLE statement.
 - See* CREATE Temporary TABLE statement.
- CREATE TRIGGER statement
 - disabling triggers 2-332
 - in ESQL/C application 2-298
 - privilege to use 2-297
 - syntax 2-296
 - triggered action clause 2-315
 - use 2-297
- CREATE VIEW statement
 - column data types 2-335
 - privileges 2-335
 - restrictions on 2-336
 - syntax 2-334
 - virtual column 2-337
 - WITH CHECK OPTION 2-338
 - with SELECT * notation 2-335
- CROCOLS keyword
 - in CREATE Temporary TABLE statement 2-291
- CTRL-J (newline), preserving in quoted strings 4-262
- Current database, specifying with DATABASE 2-341
- CURRENT DORMANT keywords, in SET CONNECTION statement 2-694
- CURRENT function 4-112
 - as input for DAY function 4-113
 - example 2-547
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-60
 - in Condition segment 4-34
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-234

- in DEFINE statement 3-16
- in expression 4-108
- in INSERT statement 2-541, 2-547
- in WHERE condition 4-113
- CURRENT keyword
 - in DELETE statement 2-373
 - in DISCONNECT statement 2-389
 - in FETCH statement 2-455
 - in SET CONNECTION statement 2-694
 - in UPDATE statement 2-815, 2-831
- Cursor
 - activating with OPEN 2-566
 - affected by transaction end 2-96
 - characteristics 2-360
 - closing 2-94
 - closing with ROLLBACK WORK 2-632
 - declaring 2-349
 - for update
 - restricted statements 2-363
 - using in ANSI-mode databases 2-364, 2-365
 - using in non-ANSI databases 2-364, 2-365
 - freeing automatically with SET AUTOFREE 2-691
 - manipulation statements 1-10
 - opening 2-568
 - optimization statements 1-11
 - prepared statement with 2-366
 - read-only
 - restricted statements 2-363
 - using in ANSI-mode databases 2-364, 2-365
 - using in non-ANSI databases 2-364, 2-365
 - retrieving values with FETCH 2-455
 - select hold examples 2-362
 - sequence of program operations 2-354
 - statement identifier with 2-366
 - statement, as trigger event 2-299
 - with INTO keyword in SELECT 2-647
 - with transactions 2-371

- Cursor function 3-31, 4-272
- CURSOR keyword, in DECLARE statement 2-349
- CURSOR STABILITY keywords, in SET ISOLATION statement 2-736

D

- Data
 - access statements 1-11
 - definition statements 1-10
 - inserting with the LOAD 2-553
 - integrity statements 1-11
 - manipulation statements 1-10
- Data distributions
 - confidence 2-841
 - on temporary tables 2-836
 - RESOLUTION 2-841
- DATA field
 - in GET DESCRIPTOR statement 2-476
 - in SET DESCRIPTOR statement 2-722
 - with DESCRIBE statement 2-385
- DATA keyword. *See* DATA field.
- Data replication 2-58
- Data type 4-53
 - casting 2-119, 4-89
 - changing with ALTER TABLE 2-75
 - collection 4-69
 - complex 4-67
 - considerations for INSERT 2-543, 4-264
 - distinct 4-67
 - opaque 2-186
 - simple large object 4-63
 - specifying with CREATE VIEW 2-335
 - See also* each data type listed under its own name.
- Data Type segment 4-53
- Database
 - closing with CLOSE DATABASE 2-98
 - creating with CREATE DATABASE 2-124

- default isolation levels 2-738, 2-772
- dropping 2-397
- lock 2-342
- naming conventions 4-48
- naming with variable 4-49
- opening in exclusive mode 2-342
- optimizing queries 2-836
- remote 4-49
- renaming 2-606
- Database administrator (DBA) 2-504
 - privileges
 - granting 2-501
 - revoking 2-611
- Database Name segment
 - for remote database 4-49
 - naming conventions 4-47
 - naming with variable 4-49
 - syntax 4-47
- Database object
 - naming 4-50
 - naming owner 4-257
- Database object mode
 - for triggers 2-332
 - in SET Database Object Mode statement 2-703
 - privileges required 2-700
- Database Object Name segment 4-50
- DATABASE statement
 - determining database type 2-342
 - exclusive mode 2-342
 - specifying current database 2-341
 - SQLWARN after 2-342
 - syntax 2-341
- Database-level privilege
 - passing grant ability 2-520
 - See also* Privilege.
- DATAFILES keyword
 - in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-137
- Dataskip, skipping unavailable dbspaces 2-709
- DATE data type
 - defined 4-65
 - functions in 4-152
- DATE function 4-152, 4-154

- DATETIME data type 4-65
 - as quoted string 4-263
 - field qualifiers 4-71
 - in expression 4-114
 - in INSERT 4-264
 - syntax 4-231
- DATETIME Field Qualifier segment 4-71
- DATETIME keyword
 - in Literal DATETIME segment 4-231
- Date, getting current 4-112
- DAY function 4-152, 4-155
- DAY keyword
 - in DATETIME 4-71
 - in DATETIME segment 4-231
 - in INTERVAL 4-223, 4-234
 - in INTERVAL Field Qualifier segment 4-223
- DBA keyword
 - in CREATE FUNCTION statement 2-146
 - in CREATE PROCEDURE statement 2-200
 - in GRANT statement 2-502
 - in REVOKE statement 2-611
- DBA permission, with CREATE SCHEMA 2-224
- DB-Access utility Intro-5
- DBANSIWARN environment variable 2-225, 2-231, 2-336
- DBBLOBBUF environment variable 2-559, 2-809
- DBCENTURY environment variable 2-555, 4-299
- DBDATE environment variable 2-806
- DBDELIMITER environment variable 2-561
- DBINFO function 4-130
- DBMONEY environment variable 2-807
- DBPATH environment variable 2-111
- DBSERVERNAME function
 - description of 4-111
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-60
 - in Condition segment 4-34
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-234
- in CREATE TABLE statement 2-234
- in DEFINE statement 3-16
 - returning server name 4-111
- DBSPACETEMP environment variable 2-293
- DbSPACE, skipping if unavailable 2-709
- DBTIME environment variable 2-807
- DDL statements, summary 1-10
- Deadlock detection 2-744
- DEALLOCATE COLLECTION statement 2-343
- DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement 2-345
- DEALLOCATE ROW statement 2-347
- DECIMAL data type 4-59, 4-62
- DECLARE statement
 - collection derived table with 4-15
 - collection variables with 4-15
 - cursor characteristics 2-360
 - CURSOR keyword 2-360
 - cursors with prepared statements 2-366
 - cursors with transactions 2-371
 - FOR UPDATE keywords 2-355
 - function cursor 2-353
 - insert cursor 2-358, 2-363
 - restrictions with SELECT with ORDER BY 2-679
 - SCROLL keyword 2-361
 - select cursor 2-354
 - syntax 2-349
 - updating specified columns 2-356
 - WHERE CURRENT OF clause 2-355
 - WITH HOLD keywords 2-362
 - with SELECT statement 2-648
- DECODE function 4-105
- DEFAULT keyword
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-60
 - in CONNECT statement 2-103
 - in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-139
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-234
- in DEFINE statement 3-11
- in DISCONNECT statement 2-389, 2-390
- in Routine Parameter List segment 4-287
- in SET CONNECTION statement 2-694, 2-698
- in SET DATASKIP statement 2-709
- in SET PDQPRIORITY statement 2-751
- Default locale Intro-4
- DEFERRED keyword
 - in SET TRANSACTION Mode statement 2-774
- Deferred-Prepare feature 2-715
- DEFINE keyword
 - in Statement Block segment 4-298
- DEFINE statement
 - default value clause 3-16
 - syntax 3-11
- DELETE keyword
 - in CREATE TRIGGER statement 2-296, 2-315
 - in GRANT FRAGMENT statement 2-525
 - in GRANT statement 2-505
 - in REVOKE FRAGMENT statement 2-629
 - in REVOKE statement 2-614
- DELETE statement
 - and triggers 2-298, 2-316
 - cascading 2-375
 - collection columns with 2-380
 - collection derived table with 4-15
 - collection variables with 4-15
 - cursor with 2-355
 - OUT parameters and 4-184
 - restrictions when using a join 2-378
 - syntax 2-373
 - using joins 2-378
 - with SELECT...FOR UPDATE 2-680
 - with update cursor 2-377
 - within a transaction 2-374
- Deleting all rows from a table 2-802
- Deleting from a specific table in a table hierarchy 2-375

- DELIMITED environment
 - variable 4-210
- Delimited identifiers
 - multibyte characters in 4-209
 - non-ASCII characters in 4-209
 - syntax 4-208
- DELIMITED keyword
 - in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-139
- Delimiter
 - for LOAD input file 2-561
 - specifying with UNLOAD 2-811
- DELIMITER keyword
 - in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-139
 - in LOAD statement 2-553
 - in SELECT statement 2-687
 - in UNLOAD statement 2-805
- DELUXE keyword, in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-139
- Demonstration databases Intro-5
- Dependencies, software Intro-4
- DESC keyword
 - in CREATE INDEX statement 2-161
 - in SELECT statement 2-674, 2-677
 - order with nulls 2-678
- DESCRIBE statement
 - collection variable with 2-386
 - describing statement type 2-383
 - distinct data type with 2-482
 - INTO sqllda pointer clause 2-386
 - opaque data type with 2-481
 - relation to GET DESCRIPTOR 2-479
 - syntax 2-382
 - USING SQL DESCRIPTOR clause 2-385
 - with SET DESCRIPTOR 2-729
- DESCRIPTOR keyword
 - in EXECUTE statement 2-425, 2-430
 - in FETCH statement 2-455
 - in OPEN statement 2-566
 - in PUT statement 2-593
- Destroy support function 2-191, 2-380, 2-415
- DETACH keyword, in ALTER FRAGMENT statement 2-25
- Detached index 2-173
- Diagnostics table
 - creating with START VIOLATIONS TABLE 2-778
 - examples 2-796, 2-798, 2-801
 - how to stop 2-800
 - privileges on 2-794
 - relationship to target table 2-786
 - relationship to violations table 2-786
 - restriction on dropping 2-415
 - structure 2-793
- DIRTY READ keywords, in SET ISOLATION statement 2-736
- DISABLED keyword
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-64
 - in CREATE INDEX statement 2-178
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-247
 - in CREATE TRIGGER statement 2-332
 - in SET AUTOFREE statement 2-691
 - in SET Database Object Mode statement 2-703, 2-707
 - in SET DEFERRED_PREPARE statement 2-715
- DISCONNECT statement
 - ALL keyword 2-392
 - CURRENT keyword 2-391
 - DEFAULT option 2-390
- DISK keyword, in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-137
- Display labels
 - in CREATE VIEW statement 2-336
 - in SELECT statement 2-636, 2-644
- Distinct data type 4-67
 - casting 2-128
 - casts and DROP TYPE 2-418
 - creating with CREATE DISTINCT TYPE 2-127
 - DESCRIBE with 2-482
 - dropping casts on 2-396
 - dropping with DROP TYPE 2-418
 - dynamic SQL with 2-482
 - GET DESCRIPTOR with 2-482
 - in dynamic SQL 2-728
 - privileges 2-127
 - restrictions on source type 2-127
 - source data type 2-482, 2-728
 - with SET DESCRIPTOR 2-728
- DISTINCT keyword
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-62, 2-81
 - in CREATE INDEX statement 2-159, 2-183
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-237, 2-250
 - in CREATE Temporary TABLE statement 2-289, 2-290
 - in Expression segment 4-185, 4-199
 - in SELECT statement 2-636, 2-639
 - in subquery 4-42
- Distributions
 - dropping 2-840
 - medium 2-842
 - privileges required to create 2-841
- DISTRIBUTIONS keyword
 - in UPDATE STATISTICS statement 2-835, 2-842
- divide() operator function 4-85
- Division (/) symbol, arithmetic operator 4-73
- DML statements, summary 1-10
- DOCUMENT keyword
 - in CREATE FUNCTION statement 2-146
 - in CREATE PROCEDURE statement 2-200
- Documentation notes Intro-21
- Documentation, types of
 - documentation notes Intro-21
 - error message files Intro-20
 - machine notes Intro-21
 - on-line help Intro-20
 - on-line manuals Intro-20
 - printed manuals Intro-20
 - related reading Intro-22
 - release notes Intro-21

DORMANT keyword, in SET CONNECTION statement 2-694
 Dot notation 4-93
 DOUBLE PRECISION data type 4-62
 Double-dash (--) comment symbol 1-7
 DROP AGGREGATE statement 2-393
 DROP CAST statement 2-395
 DROP CONSTRAINT keywords in ALTER TABLE statement 2-83
 DROP DATABASE statement 2-397
 DROP DISTRIBUTIONS keywords in UPDATE STATISTICS statement 2-835
 DROP FUNCTION statement 2-399
 DROP INDEX statement 2-401
 DROP keyword in ALTER FRAGMENT statement 2-37 in ALTER FUNCTION statement 2-41 in ALTER PROCEDURE statement 2-48 in ALTER ROUTINE statement 2-51 in ALTER TABLE statement 2-69 in UPDATE STATISTICS statement 2-835
 DROP OPCLASS statement 2-403
 DROP ROLE statement 2-407
 DROP ROUTINE statement 2-408
 DROP ROW TYPE statement 2-410
 DROP SYNONYM statement 2-412
 DROP TABLE statement 2-413
 DROP TRIGGER statement 2-417
 DROP TYPE keywords, in ALTER TABLE statement 2-89
 DROP TYPE statement 2-418
 DROP VIEW statement 2-420
 Duplicate values, in a query 2-639
 Dynamic management statements 1-11

Dynamic routine-name specification of SPL functions 2-439 of SPL procedures 2-446

E

EACH keyword, in CREATE TRIGGER statement 2-307, 2-314
 EBCDIC keyword, in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-139
 ELIF keyword, in IF statement 3-37
 ELSE keyword in CASE statement 3-7 in Expression segment 4-101, 4-102 in IF statement 3-37
 ENABLED keyword in ALTER TABLE statement 2-64 in CREATE INDEX statement 2-178 in CREATE TABLE statement 2-247 in CREATE TRIGGER statement 2-332 in SET AUTOFREE statement 2-691 in SET Database Object Mode statement 2-703, 2-707 in SET DEFERRED_PREPARE statement 2-715
 END CASE keywords, in CASE statement 3-7
 END EXCEPTION keywords, in ON EXCEPTION statement 3-45
 END FOR keywords, in FOR statement 3-26
 END FOREACH keywords, in FOREACH statement 3-30
 END FUNCTION keywords, in CREATE FUNCTION statement 2-146
 END IF keywords, in IF statement 3-37

END keyword in Expression segment 4-101, 4-102 in Statement Block segment 4-298
 END PROCEDURE keywords, in CREATE PROCEDURE statement 2-200
 END WHILE keywords, n WHILE statement 3-62
 Environment variable Intro-11 NODEFDAC 2-148, 2-203
 Environment variable, setting with SYSTEM statement 3-56
 en_us.8859-1 locale Intro-4
 equal() operator function 4-266
 Error checking continuing after error in SPL routine 3-49 error status with ON EXCEPTION 3-46 with SYSTEM 3-56 with WHENEVER 2-851
 ERROR keyword in ALTER TABLE statement 2-64 in CREATE INDEX statement 2-178 in CREATE TABLE statement 2-247 in SET Database Object Mode statement 2-703 in WHENEVER statement 2-848 synonym for SQLERROR 2-851
 Error message files Intro-20
 ESCAPE keyword in Condition segment 4-28, 4-37 in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-139 in SELECT statement 2-688 with LIKE keyword 2-664, 4-39 with MATCHES keyword 2-664, 4-40
 ESQL/C collection cursor with FETCH 2-466 collection cursor with PUT 2-599 cursor example 2-362 deallocating collection variable memory 2-343

- deallocating row variable
 - memory 2-347
- inserting collection variables
 - with 2-544
- inserting row variables 2-547
- EXCEPTION keyword
 - in GET DIAGNOSTICS statement 2-491
- EXCLUSIVE keyword
 - in DATABASE statement 2-341
 - in LOCK TABLE statement 2-563
- Executable file location 4-292
- EXECUTE FUNCTION keywords
 - in CREATE TRIGGER statement 2-315
 - in DECLARE statement 2-349
 - in INSERT statement 2-550
 - in Statement Block segment 4-298
- EXECUTE FUNCTION keywords
 - in FOREACH statement 3-30
- EXECUTE FUNCTION statement and triggers 2-316
 - how it works 2-435
 - INTO clause 2-436
 - preparing 2-439
 - syntax 2-434
- EXECUTE IMMEDIATE statement
 - restricted statement types 2-442
 - syntax 2-441
- EXECUTE ON keywords
 - in GRANT statement 2-513
 - in REVOKE statement 2-620
- EXECUTE PROCEDURE keywords
 - in CREATE TRIGGER statement 2-315
 - in DECLARE statement 2-349
 - in FOREACH statement 3-30
 - in INSERT statement 2-550
 - in Statement Block segment 4-298
- EXECUTE PROCEDURE statement
 - in FOREACH 3-30
 - in triggered action 2-316
 - syntax 2-444
- EXECUTE statement
 - and sqlca record 2-424
 - error conditions with 2-424
 - INTO clause 2-425
 - INTO DESCRIPTOR clause 2-428
- INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR
 - clause 2-428
 - parameterizing a statement 2-430
 - syntax 2-422
- USING DESCRIPTOR
 - clause 2-432
 - with USING keyword 2-430
- EXISTS keyword
 - beginning a subquery 2-665
 - in Condition segment 4-42
 - in Condition subquery 4-42
- EXIT statement 3-24
- EXP function 4-141
- EXPLICIT keyword, in CREATE
 - CAST statement 2-119
- Exponential function 4-141
- Export support function 2-191, 2-808
- Exportbinary support
 - function 2-191, 2-808
- EXPRESS keyword, in CREATE
 - EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-139
- Expression
 - boolean 4-28, 4-30
 - casting 4-89
 - list of 4-76
 - ordering by 2-678
 - smart large objects in 4-98
- EXPRESSION keyword
 - in ALTER FRAGMENT statement 2-30, 2-33
 - in CREATE INDEX statement 2-175
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-259
- Expression segment
 - aggregate expressions 4-185
 - cast expressions 4-88
 - column expressions 4-91
 - combined expressions 4-85
 - list of expressions 4-76
 - syntax 4-73
- EXTEND function 4-152, 4-156
- Extension to SQL, symbol
 - for Intro-14
- EXTENT keyword
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-78
- EXTENT SIZE keywords
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-78
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-273, 2-276
- Extent, revising the size 2-84
- External function
 - as operator-class strategy function 2-196
 - as operator-class support function 2-197
- CREATE FUNCTION 2-152
- dropping 2-399
- executing 2-434, 2-583
- limits on return values 4-271
- non-variant 4-203
- OUT parameter 4-183
- registering 2-152
- variant 4-203
- EXTERNAL keyword
 - in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-132
 - in External Routine Reference segment 4-202
 - in SELECT statement 2-683
- EXTERNAL NAME keywords
 - in ALTER FUNCTION statement 2-41
 - in ALTER PROCEDURE statement 2-48
 - in ALTER ROUTINE statement 2-51
- External procedure
 - creating body of 2-206
 - executing 2-583
- External routine
 - as triggered action 2-316
- CREATE PROCEDURE FROM
 - statement in 2-210
 - creating a function in 2-155
 - definition 2-202
 - pathname syntax 4-292
 - preparing 2-583
 - referencing 4-202
- External Routine Reference
 - segment 4-202
- External routine reference,
 - example 4-203
- External table
 - creating 2-131
 - integer data types 2-133

null values 2-134
 restrictions in joins and
 subqueries 2-654
 use with SELECT statement 2-686
 EXTYPEID field
 in GET DESCRIPTOR
 statement 2-476
 in SET DESCRIPTOR
 statement 2-722
 with DESCRIBE statement 2-385
 EXTYPEID keyword. *See*
 EXTYPEID field.
 EXTYPELENGTH field
 in GET DESCRIPTOR
 statement 2-476
 in SET DESCRIPTOR
 statement 2-722
 with DESCRIBE statement 2-385
 EXTYPELENGTH keyword. *See*
 EXTYPELENGTH field.
 EXTYPENAME field
 in GET DESCRIPTOR
 statement 2-476
 in SET DESCRIPTOR
 statement 2-722
 with DESCRIBE statement 2-385
 EXTYPENAME keyword. *See*
 EXTYPENAME field.
 EXTYPEOWNERLENGTH field
 in GET DESCRIPTOR
 statement 2-476
 in SET DESCRIPTOR
 statement 2-722
 with DESCRIBE statement 2-385
 EXTYPEOWNERLENGTH
 keyword. *See*
 EXTYPEOWNERLENGTH
 field.
 EXTYPEOWNERNAME field
 in GET DESCRIPTOR
 statement 2-476
 in SET DESCRIPTOR
 statement 2-722
 with DESCRIBE statement 2-385
 EXTYPEOWNERNAME keyword.
 See EXTYPEOWNERNAME
 field.

F

Feature icons Intro-12
 Features of this product,
 new Intro-6
 FETCH statement
 as affected by CLOSE 2-95
 checking results with
 SQLCA 2-468
 collection derived table with 4-16
 collection variables with 4-16
 collection with 2-466
 fetching a row for update 2-465
 INTO clause 2-462
 locking for update 2-465
 relation to GET
 DESCRIPTOR 2-475
 specifying memory location of a
 value 2-460
 USING DESCRIPTOR
 clause 2-464
 with
 concatenation operator 4-88
 program arrays 2-462
 scroll cursor 2-459
 sequential cursor 2-458
 X/Open mode 2-458
 Field projection 4-93
 Field qualifier
 for DATETIME 4-71
 for INTERVAL 4-223, 4-234
 File
 sending output with the OUTPUT
 statement 2-578
 FILE TO keywords
 in SET EXPLAIN statement 2-730
 FILETOBLOB function 4-146, 4-147
 FILETOCLOB function 4-145,
 4-146, 4-147
 FILLFACTOR keyword, in
 CREATE INDEX
 statement 2-171
 FILTERING keyword
 in ALTER TABLE statement 2-64
 in CREATE INDEX
 statement 2-178
 in CREATE TABLE
 statement 2-247
 in SET Database Object Mode
 statement 2-703
 FINAL keyword, in CREATE
 AGGREGATE statement 2-115
 Find Error utility Intro-21
 finderr utility Intro-21
 FIRST keyword
 in FETCH statement 2-455
 in SELECT statement 2-638
 FIRST_ROWS keyword
 in Optimizer Directives
 Segment 4-255
 in SET OPTIMIZATION
 statement 2-747
 FIXED keyword, in CREATE
 EXTERNAL TABLE
 statement 2-139
 Fixed-length opaque data
 type 2-187
 FLOAT data type 4-62
 FLUSH statement 2-469
 FOR EACH ROW keywords
 in CREATE TRIGGER
 statement 2-307, 2-314
 FOR keyword
 in CONTINUE statement 3-10
 in CREATE OPCLASS
 statement 2-193
 in CREATE SYNONYM
 statement 2-226
 in CREATE TRIGGER
 statement 2-307
 in DECLARE statement 2-349
 in EXIT statement 3-24
 in FOREACH statement 3-30
 in INFO statement 2-532
 in SET AUTOFREE
 statement 2-691
 in SET Database Object Mode
 statement 2-701
 in START VIOLATIONS TABLE
 statement 2-778
 in STOP VIOLATIONS TABLE
 statement 2-800
 in UPDATE STATISTICS
 statement 2-835, 2-844

- For keyword
 - in CREATE TRIGGER statement 2-314
- FOR READ ONLY keywords, in DECLARE statement 2-349
- FOR statement
 - specifying multiple ranges 3-29
 - syntax 3-26
 - using expression lists 3-29
 - using increments 3-28
- FOR TABLE keywords, in UPDATE STATISTICS statement 2-835
- FOR UPDATE keywords
 - in DECLARE statement 2-349
 - in SELECT statement 2-634, 2-679
 - relation to UPDATE 2-831
 - with column list 2-356
- FOREACH keyword
 - in CONTINUE statement 3-10
 - in EXIT statement 3-24
- FOREACH statement
 - collection derived table with 4-16
 - collection variables with 4-16
 - syntax 3-30
- Foreign key constraint 2-252
- FOREIGN KEY keywords
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-81
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-250
- FORMAT keyword
 - in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-139
 - in SELECT statement 2-688
- FRACTION keyword
 - as DATETIME field qualifier 4-231
 - as INTERVAL field qualifier 4-234
 - in DATETIME Field Qualifier segment 4-71
 - in INTERVAL Field Qualifier segment 4-223
- FRAGMENT BY keywords
 - in ALTER FRAGMENT statement 2-30, 2-33
 - in CREATE INDEX statement 2-175
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-259
- Fragmentation
 - adding a fragment 2-35
 - adding rowids 2-58
 - altering fragments 2-12
 - arbitrary rule 2-262
 - attaching tables 2-15
 - built-in hash distribution scheme 2-263
 - combining tables 2-15
 - defining a new strategy 2-15
 - detaching a table fragment 2-25
 - dropping an existing fragment 2-37
 - dropping rowids 2-58
 - fragment expressions 2-23
 - if you run out of log/disk space 2-14
 - modifying an existing fragment expression 2-38
 - modifying indexes 2-40
 - number of rows in fragment 2-15
 - of indexes 2-175
 - of tables 2-259
 - of temporary tables 2-292
 - reading data from local fragments 2-654
 - reinitializing strategy 2-33
 - remainder 2-37
 - reverting to non-fragmented 2-29
 - rowid 2-29
 - rowid columns with 2-261
 - skipping an unavailable dbspace 2-709
 - strategy
 - by expression 2-262
 - by round-robin 2-261
 - range rule 2-262
 - text and byte data types 2-20
- Fragment-level privilege
 - granting 2-523
 - revoking 2-628
- FRAGMENTS keyword, in INFO statement 2-532
- FREE statement 2-575
- FROM keyword
 - in CREATE INDEX statement 2-184
 - in DELETE statement 2-373
 - in Expression segment 4-164
 - in LOAD statement 2-553
 - in PREPARE statement 2-579
 - in PUT statement 2-593
 - in REVOKE FRAGMENT statement 2-628
 - in REVOKE statement 2-610
 - in UPDATE statement 2-829
- FROM keyword, in SELECT statement 2-650
- FROM ONLY. *See* ONLY keyword.
- FULL keyword
 - in Optimizer Directives Segment 4-248
- Function
 - altering with ALTER FUNCTION 2-41
 - casting 2-122
 - creating indirectly from a stored file 2-155
 - creating with CREATE FUNCTION 2-146
 - creating with CREATE FUNCTION FROM 2-155
 - dropping with DROP FUNCTION 2-399
 - dropping with DROP ROUTINE 2-408
 - modifying path to executable file 2-42
 - modifying routine modifiers 2-42
 - shared library 4-145
 - smart large object 4-146
 - Specific Name 4-296
 - system catalog tables for 2-151
- Function cursor
 - and cursor functions 2-438
 - opening 2-569
 - reopening 2-569
- Function expressions 4-121
- FUNCTION keyword
 - in CREATE FUNCTION statement 2-146
 - in DROP FUNCTION statement 2-399
 - in GRANT statement 2-513
 - in REVOKE statement 2-620
 - in UPDATE STATISTICS statement 2-844

Functional index, in composite
index 2-164

Function, SQL

ABS 4-125
ACOS 4-161
ASIN 4-161
ATAN 4-161
ATAN2 4-162
AVG 4-194
CARDINALTY 4-129
CASE expression 4-100
CHARACTER_LENGTH 4-145
CHAR_LENGTH 4-145
COS 4-160
COUNT 4-189
CURRENT 4-112
DAY 4-155
DBSERVERNAME 4-111
DECODE 4-105
EXP 4-141
Exponential 4-141
EXTEND 4-156
FILETOBLOB 4-147
FILETOCLOB 4-147
HEX 4-142
IFX_REPLACE_MODULE 4-145
INITCAP 4-174
LENGTH 4-144
LOCOPY 4-150
LOG10 4-142
Logarithmic 4-141
LOGN 4-142
LOTOFILE 4-149
LOWER 4-174
LPAD 4-172
MAX 4-194
MDY 4-157
MIN 4-194
MOD 4-126
MONTH 4-155
NVL 4-104
OCTET_LENGTH 4-144
POW 4-126
RANGE 4-195
ROOT 4-126
ROUND 4-127
RPAD 4-173

SIN 4-161
SITENAME 4-111
SQRT 4-128
STDEV 4-196
SUBSTR 4-168
SUM 4-195
TAN 4-161
Time 4-152
TODAY 4-112
TO_CHAR 4-157
TRIM function 4-121
TRUNC 4-128
UPPER 4-174
USER 4-110
VARIANCE 4-196
WEEKDAY 4-155
Function, user-defined
definition 2-201

G

Generalized-key index
affected by dropping a
column 2-72
affected by modifying a
column 2-77
description of 2-182
SELECT clause 2-183
WHERE clause 2-185
GET DESCRIPTOR statement
syntax 2-475
use with FETCH statement 2-463
GET DIAGNOSTICS statement
exception clause 2-491
SQLSTATE codes 2-485
syntax 2-483
GK INDEX keywords
in CREATE INDEX
statement 2-157
GK index. *See* Generalized-key
index.
Global environment variable,
definition 3-14
GLOBAL keyword, in DEFINE
statement 3-11
Global Language Support
(GLS) Intro-4

GLS. *See* Global Language Support.
GL_DATE environment
variable 2-555, 2-806
GL_DATETIME environment
variable 2-556, 2-807
GO TO keywords, in WHENEVER
statement 2-848
GRANT FRAGMENT statement
AS grantor clause 2-530
syntax 2-523
WITH GRANT OPTION
clause 2-529
GRANT keyword
in GRANT FRAGMENT
statement 2-523
in GRANT statement 2-500
GRANT statement
ALL keyword 2-508
changing grantor 2-521
column-specific privileges 2-507
database-level privileges 2-502
EXECUTE ON (user-defined
routine) 2-513
passing grant ability 2-520
role name and privileges 2-518
table-level privileges 2-505
UNDER keyword 2-507, 2-512
USAGE ON LANGUAGE
clause 2-516
USAGE ON (user-defined data
type) 2-511
view name and privileges 2-510
WITH GRANT OPTION
keywords 2-520
greaterthanorequal() operator
function 4-266
greaterthan() operator
function 4-266
GROUP BY keywords, in SELECT
statement 2-669

H

HANDLENULLS keyword
in CREATE AGGREGATE
statement 2-115
in Routine Modifier
segment 4-275, 4-277

HASH keyword
 in ALTER FRAGMENT statement 2-30
 in CREATE INDEX statement 2-175
 in CREATE TABLE statement 2-259
 HAVING keyword, in SELECT statement 2-634
 HEADINGS keyword, in OUTPUT statement 2-577
 HEX function 4-98, 4-142
 HEX keyword
 in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-132
 HIGH INTEG keywords
 in ALTER TABLE statement 2-78
 in CREATE TABLE statement 2-273
 HIGH keyword
 in SET OPTIMIZATION statement 2-747
 in SET PDQPRIORITY statement 2-751
 in UPDATE STATISTICS statement 2-835
 Hold cursor
 definition of 2-360
 insert cursor with hold 2-363
 HOLD keyword
 in DECLARE statement 2-349
 in FOREACH statement 3-30
 HOUR keyword
 as DATETIME field qualifier 4-231
 as INTERVAL field qualifier 4-234
 in DATETIME Field Qualifier segment 4-71
 in INTERVAL Field Qualifier segment 4-223
 HYBRID keyword
 in ALTER FRAGMENT statement 2-30
 in CREATE INDEX statement 2-175
 in CREATE TABLE statement 2-259, 2-265

I

IBM-format binary, in external tables 2-133
 Icons
 compliance Intro-14
 feature Intro-12
 Important Intro-12
 platform Intro-12
 product Intro-12
 syntax diagram Intro-15
 Tip Intro-12
 Warning Intro-12
 IDATA field
 in GET DESCRIPTOR statement 2-476
 in SET DESCRIPTOR statement 2-722
 with X/Open programs 2-479
 IDATA keyword. *See* IDATA field.
 Identifier segment
 column names 4-216
 cursor name 4-218, 4-220
 delimited identifiers 4-208
 multibyte characters in 4-208
 non-ASCII characters in 4-208
 routines 4-218
 syntax 4-205
 table names 4-215, 4-217
 uppercase characters in 4-207
 using keywords as column names 4-212
 variable name 4-220
 IF statement
 relation to CASE statement 3-7
 syntax 3-37
 with null values 3-39
 IFX_ALLOW_NEWLINE function
 effect on quoted strings 4-262
 syntax 4-177
 IFX_REPLACE_MODULE
 function 4-145
 ILENGTH field
 in GET DESCRIPTOR statement 2-476
 in SET DESCRIPTOR statement 2-722
 with X/Open programs 2-479

ILENGTH keyword. *See* ILENGTH field.
 IMMEDIATE keyword, in SET TRANSACTION Mode statement 2-774
 IMPLICIT keyword, in CREATE CAST statement 2-119
 Import support function 2-191, 2-556
 Important paragraphs, icon for Intro-12
 Importbinary support function 2-191, 2-556
 IN keyword
 as a condition 2-662, 4-42
 in ALTER FRAGMENT statement 2-27, 2-33
 in ALTER TABLE statement 2-78
 in Condition segment 4-34, 4-41
 in CREATE DATABASE statement 2-124
 in CREATE INDEX statement 2-172
 in CREATE TABLE statement 2-256, 2-259, 2-265, 2-269, 2-273
 in CREATE Temporary TABLE statement 2-292
 in Data Type segment 4-62
 in FOR statement 3-26
 in LOCK TABLE statement 2-563
 in ON EXCEPTION statement 3-45
 Index
 bidirectional traversal 2-165
 cleaner list. *See* B-tree cleaner list.
 clustered fragments 2-160
 composite 2-164
 converting during upgrade 2-835, 2-846
 creating 2-157
 disabled 2-181
 displaying information for 2-534
 Dropping with DROP INDEX 2-401
 effects of altering table fragmentation 2-20
 memory-resident 2-756
 name, specifying 4-50

- on ORDER BY columns 2-679
- provide for expansion 2-171
- resident in memory 2-756
- side-effect 2-197
- unique 2-179
 - filtering to violations table 2-705
 - restrictions 2-34
 - with temporary tables 2-685
- INDEX keyword
 - in ALTER FRAGMENT statement 2-12
 - in GRANT statement 2-505
 - in Optimizer Directives Segment 4-248
 - in REVOKE statement 2-614
 - in SET Residency statement 2-756
- Index Name. *See* Database Object Name.
- Index privilege 2-506
- INDEXES keyword
 - in INFO statement 2-532
 - in SET Database Object Mode statement 2-702
- INDICATOR field
 - in GET DESCRIPTOR statement 2-476
 - in SET DESCRIPTOR statement 2-722
- INDICATOR keyword
 - in EXECUTE FUNCTION statement 2-436
 - in EXECUTE statement 2-425, 2-430
 - in FETCH statement 2-455
 - in PUT statement 2-593
 - in SELECT statement 2-647, 2-648
 - See also* INDICATOR field.
- INDICATOR variable
 - See also* INDICATOR keyword.
- Indicator variable, in expression 4-199
- Industry standards, compliance with Intro-22
- INFO statement 2-532

- INFORMIX keyword
 - in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-139
 - in External Routine Reference segment 4-202
- INFORMIXDIR/bin directory Intro-5
- INFORMIXSERVER environment variable 2-105
- informix, privileges associated with user 2-504
- INFORMIX.JVPCONTROL function 2-439
- INIT keyword
 - in ALTER FRAGMENT statement 2-27
 - in CREATE AGGREGATE statement 2-115
- INITCAP function 4-174
- Initial-cap characters, converting to 4-174
- Input support function 2-190
- Insert buffer
 - counting inserted rows 2-470, 2-602
 - filling with constant values 2-595
 - inserting rows with a cursor 2-539
 - storing rows with PUT 2-594
 - triggering flushing 2-601
- Insert cursor 2-359
 - benefits 2-360
 - closing 2-95
 - in INSERT 2-539
 - in PUT 2-596
 - opening 2-570
 - reopening 2-571
 - result of CLOSE in SQLCA 2-95
 - with hold 2-363
- INSERT INTO keywords
 - in INSERT 2-535
 - in LOAD 2-561
- INSERT keyword
 - in CREATE TRIGGER statement 2-296, 2-315
 - in DECLARE statement 2-349

- in GRANT FRAGMENT statement 2-525
- in GRANT statement 2-505
- in LOAD statement 2-553
- in REVOKE FRAGMENT statement 2-629
- in REVOKE statement 2-614
- INSERT statement
 - and triggers 2-298, 2-316
 - AT clause 2-537
 - collection column values 2-544
 - collection derived table, with 2-551, 4-15
 - collection variables, with 4-15
 - effect of transactions 2-540
 - ESQL/C 2-544, 2-547
 - filling insert buffer with PUT 2-594
 - in dynamic SQL 2-549
 - insert cursor compared with 2-360
 - inserting
 - rows through a view 2-538
 - rows with a cursor 2-539
 - into collection cursor 2-599
 - nulls 2-548
 - opaque variables 2-544
 - OUT parameters and 4-184
 - row type field values 2-546
 - row variables 2-551
 - SERIAL and SERIAL8 columns 2-543
 - smart large objects with 4-98
 - specifying values to insert 2-541
 - syntax 2-535
 - using functions 2-547
 - VALUES clause
 - expressions with 2-547
 - with DECLARE statement 2-349
 - with insert cursor 2-358
 - with SELECT statement 2-548
- INT8 data type 4-59
- INTEG keyword
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-78
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-273

INTEGER data type 4-59
 Integers, in external tables 2-133
 Integrity. *See* Data integrity.
 INTERNAL keyword, in Routine
 Modifier segment 4-275, 4-277
 INTERNALLENGTH keyword, in
 CREATE OPAQUE TYPE
 statement 2-186
 INTERVAL data type
 as quoted string 4-263
 field qualifier, syntax 4-223
 in expression 4-114
 in INSERT 4-264
 loading 2-556
 syntax 4-65, 4-234
 INTERVAL keyword
 in Literal INTERVAL
 segment 4-234
 INTO DESCRIPTOR keywords
 in EXECUTE 2-428
 INTO EXTERNAL keywords, in
 SELECT statement 2-686
 INTO keyword
 in DESCRIBE statement 2-382
 in EXECUTE FUNCTION
 statement 2-436
 in EXECUTE PROCEDURE
 statement 2-444
 in EXECUTE statement 2-425
 in FETCH statement 2-455
 in FOREACH statement 3-30
 in INSERT statement 2-535
 in LOAD statement 2-553
 INTO keyword, in SELECT
 statement 2-645
 INTO SCRATCH keywords, in
 SELECT statement 2-686
 INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR keywords
 in EXECUTE statement 2-428
 INTO TEMP clause
 in SELECT statement 2-684
 with UNION operator 2-689
 IS keyword
 in Condition segment 4-28
 in WHERE clause 2-663
 IS NOT NULL keywords, in
 Condition segment 4-36
 IS NULL keywords, in Condition
 segment 4-36

ISAM error code 3-45, 3-50
 ISO 8859-1 code set Intro-4
 Isolation level
 definitions 2-737, 2-770
 use with FETCH statement 2-465
 ISOLATION LEVEL keywords, in
 SET TRANSACTION
 statement 2-768
 Item descriptor, defined 2-9
 ITEM keyword, in Collection
 Subquery segment 4-24
 ITER keyword, in CREATE
 AGGREGATE 2-115
 iterator function 4-279
 ITERATOR keyword, in Routine
 Modifier segment 4-275, 4-277
 ITYPE field
 in GET DESCRIPTOR
 statement 2-476
 in SET DESCRIPTOR
 statement 2-722
 with X/Open programs 2-479
 ITYPE keyword. *See* ITYPE field.

J

JAVA keyword
 in External Routine Reference
 segment 4-202
 in GRANT statement 2-516
 in REVOKE statement 2-622
 Java UDRs 2-447, 2-450, 2-451
 CLASS routine modifier 4-278
 creating functions 2-152
 creating procedures 2-206
 Getting JVP memory
 information 2-440
 Getting JVP thread
 information 2-440
 installing a Jar file 2-447
 jvpcontrol function 2-439
 removing a Jar file 2-450
 replacing a Jar file 2-449
 sqlj.alter_java_path
 procedure 2-451
 sqlj.replace_jar procedure 2-449
 sqlj.setUDTExtName
 procedure 2-453

sqlj.unsetUDTExtName
 procedure 2-454
 unmapping a user-defined
 type 2-454
 Java Virtual Processor Class
 getting memory
 information 2-440
 getting thread information 2-440
 JDBC Driver built-in function 2-439
 Join
 in Condition segment 2-666
 in DELETE statement 2-378
 in UPDATE statement 2-829
 multiple-table join 2-668
 outer 2-652, 2-669
 self-join 2-668
 two-table join 2-668
 Join column. *See* Foreign key.
 Join on key query 2-184
 Joins
 in UPDATE statement 2-830
 jvpcontrol function 2-439
 JVP. *See* Java Virtual Processor
 Class.

K

KEEP ACCESS TIME keywords
 in ALTER TABLE statement 2-78
 in CREATE TABLE
 statement 2-273
 KEEP keyword, in ALTER TABLE
 statement 2-78
 Keyword
 formatting conventions Intro-11
 Keyword. *See also* Reserved words.

L

LANGUAGE keyword
 in External Routine Reference
 segment 4-202
 in GRANT statement 2-516
 in REVOKE statement 2-622
 Language, privileges on 2-516,
 2-622

- Large object
 - constraints 2-239, 2-251
 - syntax 4-62
- LAST keyword, in FETCH
 - statement 2-455
- LEADING keyword, in Expression
 - segment 4-164
- LENGTH field
 - in GET DESCRIPTOR
 - statement 2-476
 - in SET DESCRIPTOR
 - statement 2-722
 - with DATETIME and INTERVAL
 - types 2-726
 - with DECIMAL and MONEY
 - types 2-726
 - with DESCRIBE statement 2-385
- LENGTH function 2-641, 4-143, 4-144
- Length functions 4-143
- LENGTH keyword. *See* LENGTH field.
- lessthanorequal() operator
 - function 4-266
- lessthan() operator function 4-266
- LET statement 3-41
- Library, shared 4-145
- LIKE keyword
 - in Condition segment 4-28, 4-36
 - in DEFINE statement 3-11
 - in Routine Parameter List
 - segment 4-287
 - in SELECT statement 2-663
 - wildcard characters 2-664
- like() operator function 4-38
- LIST
 - See also* Collections.
- LIST columns
 - generating values for 4-118
- LIST data type
 - definition of 4-118
 - deleting elements from 2-380
 - unloading 2-806
 - updating elements in 2-832
- LIST keyword
 - in DEFINE statement 3-18
 - in Expression segment 4-118
 - in Literal Collection
 - segment 4-227
- LISTING keyword
 - in CREATE FUNCTION
 - statement 2-146
 - in CREATE PROCEDURE
 - statement 2-200
- List-mode format, in SET Database
 - Object Mode statement 2-702
- Literal
 - Collection 4-227
 - expression with 4-115
 - nested example 4-229
 - quotation marks with 4-229
 - DATETIME
 - in ALTER TABLE
 - statement 2-60
 - in expression 4-108, 4-114
 - in INSERT statement 2-541
 - segment 4-231
 - with IN keyword 2-662
 - INTERVAL
 - in expression 4-108, 4-114
 - in INSERT statement 2-541
 - segment 4-234
 - Number
 - in expression 4-108, 4-110
 - in INSERT 2-541
 - segment 4-237
 - with IN keyword 4-35
 - Row
 - expression with 4-115
 - nested row containing 4-243
- Literal Collection segment 4-227
- Literal Row segment 4-239
- Literal values, specifying as default
 - values 2-235, 4-228
- LOAD statement
 - DELIMITER clause 2-561
 - format requirements 2-555
 - INSERT INTO clause 2-561
 - loading CHAR and VARCHAR
 - data types 2-558
 - loading CLOB or BLOB
 - columns 2-559
 - loading collections 2-560
 - loading row types 2-560
 - loading TEXT or BYTE
 - columns 2-558
 - opaque-type columns 2-560
 - specifying the table to load
 - into 2-561
 - syntax 2-553
 - the LOAD FROM file 2-554
 - VARCHAR, TEXT, or BYTE data
 - types 2-558
- LOCAL keyword, in SELECT
 - statement 2-654
- Locale Intro-4
 - default Intro-4
 - en_us.8859-1 Intro-4
- LOCK keyword
 - in ALTER INDEX statement 2-44
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-85
- LOCK MODE keywords
 - in ALTER INDEX statement 2-44
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-85
 - in CREATE INDEX
 - statement 2-181
 - in CREATE TABLE
 - statement 2-278
- LOCK TABLE statement
 - in databases with
 - transactions 2-564
 - in databases without
 - transactions 2-565
 - syntax 2-563
 - use in transactions 2-91
- Locking
 - during
 - inserts 2-540
 - updates 2-358, 2-819
 - exclusive locks 2-563
 - in transaction 2-91
 - overriding row-level 2-564
 - releasing with COMMIT WORK
 - statement 2-100
 - releasing with ROLLBACK
 - WORK statement 2-632
 - shared locks 2-563
 - types of locks 2-85, 2-278
 - update cursors effect on 2-358
 - update locks 2-819
 - waiting period 2-743
 - when creating a referential
 - constraint 2-68, 2-243
 - with
 - FETCH statement 2-465

SET ISOLATION
 statement 2-736
 SET LOCK MODE
 statement 2-742
 SET TRANSACTION
 statement 2-768
 UNLOCK TABLE
 statement 2-813
 LOCOPY function 4-146, 4-150
 Log file, for load and unload
 jobs 2-755
 LOG keyword
 in ALTER TABLE statement 2-78
 in CREATE DATABASE
 statement 2-124
 in CREATE TABLE
 statement 2-273
 in CREATE Temporary TABLE
 statement 2-286
 in SET LOG statement 2-745
 LOG10 function 4-141
 Logarithmic functions
 LOG10 function 4-141
 LOGN function 4-142
 Logging
 buffered versus unbuffered 2-745
 cascading deletes 2-376
 changing mode with SET
 LOG 2-745
 in CREATE DATABASE
 statement 2-125
 with triggers 2-331
 Logical operator, in Condition
 segment 4-45
 LOGN function 4-141
 Lohandles support function 2-191
 Loop
 controlled 3-26
 indefinite with WHILE 3-62
 LOTOFILE function 4-146, 4-149
 LOW keyword
 in SET OPTIMIZATION
 statement 2-747
 in SET PDQPRIORITY
 statement 2-751
 in UPDATE STATISTICS
 statement 2-835
 LOWER function 4-174

Lower-case characters, converting
 to 4-174
 LPAD function 4-172
 LVARCHAR data type 4-56
 LVARCHAR data type, syntax 4-55

M

Machine notes Intro-21
 Mail, sending from SPL
 routines 3-56
 MATCHES keyword
 in Condition segment 4-28
 in SELECT statement 2-663
 wildcard characters 2-664
 MATCHES keyword in Condition
 segment 4-36
 matches() operator function 4-39
 MAX function 4-185, 4-194
 MAX keyword
 in ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR
 statement 2-8
 in CREATE TABLE
 statement 2-268
 in START VIOLATIONS TABLE
 statement 2-778
 MAX ROWS keywords, in START
 VIOLATIONS TABLE
 statement 2-778
 MAX VIOLATIONS keywords, in
 START VIOLATIONS TABLE
 statement 2-778
 MAXERRORS environment
 variable 2-140
 MAXERRORS keyword
 in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE
 statement 2-139
 MAXLEN keyword
 in CREATE OPAQUE TYPE
 statement 2-188
 MDY function 4-152, 4-157
 MEDIUM keyword, in UPDATE
 STATISTICS statement 2-835
 Memory
 allocating for collection
 variable 2-6
 allocating for row variable 2-10

 deallocating for collection
 variable 2-343
 deallocating for row
 variable 2-347
 MEMORY keyword, in EXECUTE
 FUNCTION statement 2-439
 Memory-resident indexes, setting.
 See SET Residency statement.
 Memory-resident tables, setting. See
 SET Residency statement.
 MEMORY_RESIDENT keyword, in
 SET Residency statement 2-756
 Message file for error
 messages Intro-20
 MESSAGE_LENGTH keyword, in
 GET DIAGNOSTICS
 statement 2-491
 MESSAGE_TEXT keyword, in GET
 DIAGNOSTICS
 statement 2-491
 MIN function 4-185, 4-194
 MIN keyword, in CREATE TABLE
 statement 2-268
 Minus (-) sign, arithmetic
 operator 4-73
 minus() operator function 4-85
 MINUTE keyword
 in DATETIME Field Qualifier
 segment 4-71
 in INTERVAL Field Qualifier
 segment 4-223
 Mixed-case characters, converting
 to 4-174
 MOD function 4-123, 4-126
 MODE ANSI keywords
 See also ANSI.
 MODE keyword
 in ALTER INDEX statement 2-44
 in ALTER TABLE statement 2-85
 in CREATE DATABASE
 statement 2-124
 in CREATE INDEX
 statement 2-181
 in CREATE TABLE
 statement 2-278
 in LOCK TABLE statement 2-563
 Model. See Data model.

MODIFY keyword
 in ALTER FRAGMENT statement 2-38
 in ALTER FUNCTION statement 2-41
 in ALTER PROCEDURE statement 2-48
 in ALTER ROUTINE statement 2-51
 in ALTER TABLE statement 2-72
MODIFY NEXT SIZE keywords, in ALTER TABLE statement 2-84
 Modifying routine modifiers
 with ALTER FUNCTION statement 2-42
 with ALTER PROCEDURE statement 2-49
 with ALTER ROUTINE statement 2-52
MONEY data type
 loading 2-555
 syntax 4-58
MONTH function 4-152, 4-155
MONTH keyword
 in DATETIME Field Qualifier segment 4-71
 in INTERVAL Field Qualifier segment 4-223
MORE keyword, in GET DIAGNOSTICS statement 2-489
 Multiple triggers
 column numbers in 2-301
 example 2-301
 order of execution 2-301
 preventing overriding 2-330
 Multiple-column constraints
 in ALTER TABLE statement 2-81
 in CREATE TABLE statement 2-250
 Multiplication sign (*), arithmetic operator 4-73
 Multirow query, destination of returned values 2-460
MULTISET
 creating from subquery results 4-24
See also Collections.

MULTISET columns
 generating values for 4-118
MULTISET data type
 definition of 4-24, 4-118
 deleting elements from 2-380
 unloading 2-806
 updating elements in 2-832
MULTISET keyword
 in Collection Subquery segment 4-24
 in DEFINE statement 3-18
 in Expression segment 4-118
 in Literal Collection segment 4-227

N

NAME field
 in GET DESCRIPTOR statement 2-476
 in SET DESCRIPTOR statement 2-722
 with DESCRIBE statement 2-385
NAME keyword
 in ALTER FUNCTION statement 2-41
 in ALTER PROCEDURE statement 2-48
 in ALTER ROUTINE statement 2-51
 in External Routine Reference segment 4-202
See also NAME field.
Named row type
 assigning with ALTER TABLE 2-86
 associating with a column 4-68
 constraints in table containing 2-220
 creating with CREATE ROW TYPE 2-216
 dropping with DROP ROW TYPE 2-410
 inheritance 2-218
 privileges on 2-512
 unloading 2-807, 2-811
 updating fields 2-832
Naming convention
 database 4-48
 database objects 4-50
 table 4-50
NCHAR data type syntax 4-55
 negate() operator function 4-86
 negator function 4-280
NEGATOR keyword, in Routine Modifier segment 4-275, 4-280
 Nested ordering, in SELECT statement 2-678
 New features of this product Intro-6
NEW keyword, in CREATE TRIGGER statement 2-310, 2-312, 2-313
 Newline characters, preserving in quoted strings 4-262
NEXT keyword
 in ALTER TABLE statement 2-84
 in FETCH statement 2-455
NEXT SIZE keywords
 in CREATE TABLE statement 2-276
NO KEEP ACCESS TIME keywords
 in ALTER TABLE statement 2-78
 in CREATE TABLE statement 2-273
NO LOG keywords
 in ALTER TABLE statement 2-78
 in CREATE TABLE statement 2-273
 in SELECT statement 2-683
NODEFDAC environment
 variable 2-148, 2-203
 effects on new routine 2-148, 2-203
 effects on new table 2-283
 GRANT statement with 2-510, 2-515
Noncursor function 4-272
NONE keyword, in SET ROLE statement 2-758
 Nonlogging temporary tables, creating 2-287
NON_RESIDENT keyword, in SET Residency statement 2-756

NORMAL keyword
 in ALTER INDEX statement 2-44
 in CREATE INDEX statement 2-181
 NOT CLUSTER keywords
 in ALTER INDEX 2-46
 NOT FOUND keywords
 in WHENEVER statement 2-848
 NOT keyword
 in Condition segment 4-27, 4-28, 4-34, 4-37, 4-42
 in Routine Modifier segment 4-275
 in SELECT statement 2-663
 in SET LOCK MODE statement 2-742
 with BETWEEN keyword 2-662
 with IN keyword 2-664
 NOT NULL keywords
 in ALTER TABLE statement 2-62
 in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-136
 in CREATE ROW TYPE statement 2-220
 in CREATE TABLE statement 2-237
 in CREATE Temporary TABLE statement 2-289
 in DEFINE statement 3-18
 NOT VARIANT keywords, in External Routine Reference segment 4-202
 NOT WAIT keywords, in SET LOCK MODE 2-743
 notequal() operator function 4-266
 NULL keyword
 in ALTER TABLE statement 2-60
 in Argument segment 4-6
 in Condition segment 4-28
 in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-132
 in CREATE TABLE statement 2-234
 in CREATE Temporary TABLE statement 2-289
 in DEFINE statement 3-11

in Expression segment 4-101, 4-102, 4-105
 in INSERT statement 2-541
 in Routine Parameter List segment 4-287
 in SET ROLE statement 2-758
 in UPDATE statement 2-820, 2-823
 NULL keyword, ambiguous as a routine variable 4-219
 Null value
 checking for in SELECT statement 2-426, 2-431
 in IF statement 3-39
 inserting with the VALUES clause 2-548
 loading 2-555
 returned implicitly by SPL function 3-52
 updating a column 2-822
 used in Condition with NOT operator 4-28
 used in the ORDER BY clause 2-678
 with AND and OR keywords 4-28
 with WHILE statement 3-62
 NULLABLE field
 in GET DESCRIPTOR statement 2-476
 in SET DESCRIPTOR statement 2-722
 with DESCRIBE statement 2-385
 NULLABLE keyword. *See* NULLABLE field.
 NUMBER keyword, in GET DIAGNOSTICS statement 2-489
 Numeric data type 4-57
 NVARCHAR data type 4-56
 syntax 4-55
 NVL function 4-104

O

Object mode. *See* Database object mode.
 OCTET_LENGTH function 4-143, 4-144
 OF keyword
 in CREATE TRIGGER statement 2-302
 in CREATE VIEW statement 2-334
 in DECLARE statement 2-349
 in DELETE statement 2-373
 in UPDATE statement 2-815
 OF TYPE keywords
 in CREATE TABLE statement 2-280
 in CREATE VIEW statement 2-334
 OFF keyword
 in SET DATASKIP statement 2-709
 in SET EXPLAIN statement 2-730
 in SET PDQPRIORITY statement 2-751
 in SET STATEMENT CACHE statement 2-764
 in TRACE statement 3-58
 OLD keyword, in CREATE TRIGGER statement 2-311, 2-312, 2-313
 ON DELETE CASCADE keywords
 in ALTER TABLE statement 2-64
 in CREATE TABLE statement 2-241
 restrictions with triggers 2-298
 ON EXCEPTION statement
 placement of 3-46
 syntax 3-45
 ON EXCEPTION keywords, in Statement Block segment 4-298
 ON keyword
 in ALTER FRAGMENT statement 2-12
 in CREATE INDEX statement 2-157
 in CREATE TRIGGER statement 2-296

- in GRANT FRAGMENT statement 2-523
- in GRANT statement 2-505, 2-511, 2-516
- in REVOKE FRAGMENT statement 2-628
- in REVOKE statement 2-614, 2-618, 2-620, 2-622
- in SET DATASKIP statement 2-709
- in SET EXPLAIN statement 2-730
- in SET STATEMENT CACHE statement 2-764
- in TRACE statement 3-58
- On-line help Intro-20
- On-line manuals Intro-20
- ONLY keyword
 - in DELETE statement 2-373, 2-375
 - in SELECT statement 2-654
 - in TRUNCATE statement 2-802
 - in UPDATE statement 2-815, 2-817
 - in UPDATE STATISTICS statement 2-835, 2-842
- Opaque data type
 - alignment of 2-189
 - as argument 2-189
 - associating with a column 4-66
 - creating 2-186
 - DESCRIBE with 2-481
 - dropping with DROP TYPE 2-418
 - extended identifier 2-481, 2-727
 - fixed-length 2-187
 - GET DESCRIPTOR with 2-481
 - in DELETE 2-379
 - in DROP TABLE 2-415
 - in dynamic SQL 2-727
 - in INSERT 2-544
 - in LOAD 2-560
 - in UPDATE 2-828
 - loading 2-556, 2-560
 - modifiers 2-188
 - name of 2-481, 2-727
 - naming 2-187
 - owner name 2-481, 2-728
 - sizing 2-187
- support functions 2-190
- unloading 2-808
- varying-length 2-188
 - with SET DESCRIPTOR 2-727
- Opaque variable, inserting 2-544
- OPEN statement
 - collection cursor 2-571
 - constructing the active set 2-568
 - opening a function cursor 2-568
 - opening an insert cursor 2-570
 - opening select or update cursors 2-568
 - reopening a cursor 2-569, 2-571
 - substituting values for question-mark (?) parameters 2-572
 - syntax 2-566
 - with FREE 2-575
- OPERATIONAL keyword
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-87
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-230
- Operator class
 - btree_ops 2-198
 - creating 2-193
 - default 2-198
 - default for B-Tree 2-197
 - definition 2-168, 2-193
 - dropping with DROP OPCLASS 2-403
 - rtree_ops 2-198
 - specifying with CREATE INDEX 2-161, 2-168
- Operator function
 - divide() 4-85
 - equal() 4-266
 - greaterthanorequal() 4-266
 - greaterthan() 4-266
 - lessthanorequal() 4-266
 - lessthan() 4-266
 - like() 4-38
 - matches() 4-39
 - minus() 4-85
 - negate() 4-86
 - notequal() 4-266
 - plus() 4-85
 - positive() 4-86
 - times() 4-85
- Optical Subsystem, list of statements 1-12
- Optimization, specifying a high or low level 2-747
- Optimizer
 - and Optimizer Directives segment 4-244
 - and SET OPTIMIZATION statement 2-747
 - strategy functions 2-195
 - with UPDATE STATISTICS 2-845
- Optimizer directives
 - comment syntax 4-245
 - join-order 4-246
 - ORDERED 4-246
 - restrictions 4-245
- Optimizer Directives segment 4-244
- Optimizing
 - a query 2-731
 - a server 2-747
 - across a network 2-749
- OPTION keyword
 - in CREATE TRIGGER statement 2-334
 - in GRANT FRAGMENT statement 2-523
 - in GRANT statement 2-500
- OR keyword
 - defined 4-45
 - in Condition segment 4-27
- ORDER BY keywords
 - in SELECT statement 2-674
 - restricted in INSERT 2-548
- Order of execution, of action statements 2-316
- ORDERED keyword, in Optimizer Directives segment 4-246
- OUT keyword, in Routine Parameter List segment 4-286
- Outer join. *See* Join, outer.
- OUTPUT statement 2-577
- Output support function 2-190
- Owner
 - ANSI-compliance 2-518
 - case-sensitivity 4-258
 - in ANSI-compliant database 4-259
 - in CREATE SYNONYM 2-227
 - in Database Object Name segment 4-257

in Object Name segment 4-50
 in Owner Name segment 4-257
 in RENAME COLUMN 2-604
 in RENAME TABLE 2-607
 in system catalog table 2-83
 Owner Name segment 4-257

P

Packed decimal, in external tables 2-133
 PACKED keyword
 in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-132
 PAGE keyword
 in ALTER TABLE statement 2-85
 in CREATE TABLE statement 2-278
 Parallel distributed queries, SET PRIORITY statement 2-751
 PARALLELIZABLE keyword
 in Routine Modifier segment 4-275, 4-277
 Parameter
 BYTE or TEXT in SPL 3-23
 in CALL statement 3-5
 PARAMETER STYLE keywords
 keyword
 in External Routine Reference segment 4-202
 Parameterizing
 defined 2-430
 prepared statements 2-430
 Parameterizing a statement, with SQL identifiers 2-587
 Parent-child relationship 2-242
 PASSEDBYVALUE keyword
 in CREATE OPAQUE TYPE statement 2-188
 PDQ, SET PDQPRIORITY statement 2-751
 PERCALL_COST keyword
 in Routine Modifier segment 4-275, 4-277
 Percent (%) sign, as wildcard 4-37
 Permission. *See also* Privilege.
 Pipe character 2-140, 2-687
 PIPE keyword
 in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-137
 in OUTPUT statement 2-577
 Pipe (|), delimiter 2-805, 2-811
 Platform icons Intro-12
 Plus (+) sign, arithmetic operator 4-73
 plus() operator function 4-85
 positive() operator function 4-86
 POW function 4-123, 4-126
 Precedence, dot notation 4-95
 PRECISION field
 in GET DESCRIPTOR statement 2-476
 in SET DESCRIPTOR statement 2-722
 with DESCRIBE statement 2-385
 PRECISION keyword. *See* PRECISION field.
 PREPARE statement
 deferring 2-715
 for collection variables 2-583
 increasing efficiency 2-592
 multistatement text 2-442, 2-590, 2-591
 parameterizing a statement 2-585
 parameterizing for SQL identifiers 2-587
 question (?) mark as placeholder 2-580
 releasing resources with FREE 2-473
 restrictions with SELECT 2-582
 statement identifier 2-366
 statement identifier use 2-580
 syntax 2-579
 valid statement text 2-582
 with external routines 2-583
 with SPL routines 2-583
 Prepared statement
 comment symbols in 2-582
 DESCRIBE statement with 2-383
 executing 2-422
 parameterizing 2-430
 prepared object limit 2-351, 2-580
 valid statement text 2-582
 Preserving newline characters in quoted strings 4-262
 PREVIOUS keyword
 in FETCH statement 2-455
 PRIMARY KEY keywords
 in ALTER TABLE statement 2-62, 2-81
 in CREATE TABLE statement 2-237, 2-250
 in CREATE Temporary TABLE statement 2-289, 2-290
 Primary-key constraint
 data type conversion 2-75
 defining column as 2-240
 dropping 2-83
 requirements for 2-62, 2-240
 rules of use 2-242
 using 2-240
 Printed manuals Intro-20
 PRIOR keyword, in FETCH statement 2-455
 PRIVATE keyword, in CREATE SYNONYM statement 2-226
 Privilege
 alter 2-507
 chaining grantors
 effect of REVOKE 2-625
 Connect 2-503
 database-level
 granting 2-502
 revoking 2-611
 Execute 2-513
 Execute (user-defined routine)
 revoking 2-620
 granting with GRANT 2-500
 needed, to create a cast 2-120
 on languages 2-516, 2-622
 on named row type 2-512
 public
 NODEFDAC effect on 2-510, 2-515
 role name 2-518, 2-624
 table-level
 ANSI-compliance 2-510
 column-specific 2-506
 effect on view 2-510
 revoking 2-614
 Usage 2-511
 revoking 2-618
 Usage (user-defined data type) 2-512

Privileges
 DBA 2-504
 for triggered action 2-326
 fragment-level
 defined 2-525
 duration of 2-527
 granting with GRANT
 FRAGMENT 2-523
 revoking 2-628
 role in command
 validation 2-526
 needed, to drop an index 2-401
 on a synonym 2-226
 on a table fragment 2-523
 on a view 2-335
 Resource 2-503
 PRIVILEGES keyword
 in GRANT statement 2-505
 in INFO statement 2-532
 in REVOKE statement 2-614
 Procedure
 creating from file 2-210
 dropping with DROP
 PROCEDURE 2-404
 dropping with DROP
 ROUTINE 2-408
 modifying path to executable
 file 2-49
 modifying routine modifiers 2-49
 privileges 2-202
 specific name 4-296
 stored. *See* SPL Routine.
 system catalog tables for 2-205
 user-defined, definition 2-201
 Procedure cursor
 opening 2-568
 PROCEDURE keyword
 in CREATE PROCEDURE
 statement 2-200
 in DEFINE statement 3-11
 in DROP PROCEDURE
 statement 2-404
 in GRANT statement 2-513
 in REVOKE statement 2-620
 in TRACE statement 3-58
 in UPDATE STATISTICS
 statement 2-844
 Procedure Name. *See* Database
 Object Name.

Product icons Intro-12
 Program group
 Documentation notes Intro-22
 Release notes Intro-22
 Projection
 column with dot notation 4-93
 field with dot notation 4-93
 Projection list. *See* Select list.
 Promotable lock 2-358
 PUBLIC keyword
 in CREATE SYNONYM
 statement 2-226
 in GRANT statement 2-517
 in REVOKE statement 2-623
 PUT keyword
 in ALTER TABLE statement 2-78
 in CREATE TABLE
 statement 2-273
 PUT statement
 collection derived table with 4-16
 collection variables with 4-16
 FLUSH with 2-595
 source of row values 2-595
 syntax 2-593
 use in transactions 2-595

Q

Qualifier, field
 for DATETIME 4-71, 4-231
 for INTERVAL 4-223, 4-234
 Query
 optimizing with Optimizer
 Directives 4-244
 optimizing with SET
 OPTIMIZATION 2-747
 piping results to another
 program 2-578
 scheduling level for 2-760
 sending results to an operating
 system file 2-578
 sending results to another
 program 2-578
 Question mark (?)
 as placeholder in PREPARE 2-580
 as wildcard 4-38
 naming variables in PUT 2-597

Quotation marks
 double 4-211
 effects of DELIMITED
 environment variable 4-210
 in owner name 4-258
 in quoted string 4-260, 4-262
 single 4-210
 with delimited identifier 4-208
 Quoted Pathname segment 4-292
 Quoted Pathname segment. *See*
 Shared Object File Name
 segment.
 Quoted string
 DATETIME values as
 strings 4-263
 effects of DELIMITED
 environment variable 4-210
 in expression 4-108, 4-109
 in INSERT 2-541, 4-264
 INTERVAL values as
 strings 4-263
 newline characters in 4-177, 4-262
 syntax 4-260
 wildcards 4-263
 with LIKE keywords 2-663

R

RAISE EXCEPTION statement 3-50
 RANGE function 4-185, 4-195
 RANGE keyword, in CREATE
 TABLE statement 2-265
 RAW keyword
 in ALTER TABLE statement 2-87
 in CREATE TABLE
 statement 2-230
 READ COMMITTED keywords
 in SET TRANSACTION
 statement 2-768
 READ ONLY keywords, in SET
 TRANSACTION
 statement 2-768
 READ UNCOMMITTED
 keywords, in SET
 TRANSACTION
 statement 2-768

- READ WRITE keywords, in SET TRANSACTION statement 2-768
- REAL data type 4-62
- Receive support function 2-190
- RECORDEND environment variable 2-140, 2-687
- RECORDEND keyword
 - in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-139
- RECORDEND keyword in SELECT statement 2-688
- REFERENCES keyword
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-64
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-241
 - in DEFINE statement 3-11
 - in GRANT statement 2-505
 - in INFO statement 2-532
 - in Return Clause segment 4-270
 - in REVOKE statement 2-614
 - in Routine Parameter List segment 4-287
- References privilege, definition of 2-506
- REFERENCING keyword
 - in CREATE TRIGGER statement 2-310, 2-311, 2-312, 2-313
- Referential constraint
 - and a DELETE trigger 2-298
 - dropping 2-83
 - locking 2-243
 - restrictions 2-66
- REJECTFILE keyword
 - in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-139
- REJECTFILE keyword, in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE 2-140
- Related reading Intro-22
- Relational operator
 - IN 4-34
 - segment 4-265
 - with WHERE keyword in SELECT 2-661
- RELATIVE keyword
 - in FETCH statement 2-455
- Release notes Intro-21
- REMAINDER IN keywords
 - in ALTER FRAGMENT statement 2-30, 2-33, 2-35, 2-38
 - in CREATE INDEX statement 2-175
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-259, 2-265, 2-269
- RENAME COLUMN statement 2-604
- RENAME DATABASE statement 2-606
- RENAME TABLE statement
 - ANSI-compliant naming 2-607
 - syntax 2-607
- REOPTIMIZATION keyword, in OPEN statement 2-566
- Repeatable Read isolation level, emulating during update 2-465
- REPEATABLE READ keywords
 - in SET ISOLATION statement 2-736
 - in SET TRANSACTION statement 2-768
- REPLACE function 4-170
- REPLICATION keyword, in BEGIN WORK statement 2-91
- Reserved words
 - listed A-1, 1
 - SQL A-1, 1
- Reserved words, SQL
 - as identifiers 4-207
 - list of A-1, 1
 - using in triggered action 2-317
 - with delimited identifiers 4-209
- RESOLUTION keyword, in UPDATE STATISTICS statement 2-842
- RESOURCE keyword
 - in GRANT statement 2-502
 - in REVOKE statement 2-611
- Resource privilege 2-503
- RESTRICT keyword
 - in DROP OPCLASS statement 2-403
 - in DROP ROW TYPE statement 2-410
 - in DROP TABLE statement 2-413
 - in DROP VIEW statement 2-420
 - in REVOKE statement 2-610
- RESUME keyword
 - in ON EXCEPTION statement 3-45
 - in RETURN statement 3-52
- RETAIN UPDATE LOCKS keywords, in SET ISOLATION statement 2-736
- RETURN statement
 - returning insufficient values 3-52
 - returning null values 3-52
 - syntax 3-52
- Return value, declaring in CREATE FUNCTION 4-270
- RETURNED_SQLSTATE keyword, in GET DIAGNOSTICS statement 2-491
- RETURNING keyword
 - example 2-151, 2-153, 2-156
 - in CALL statement 3-4
 - in Return Clause Segment 4-270
- RETURNS keyword
 - in Return Clause segment 4-270
 - in Shared Object File Name segment 4-294
- REVOKE FRAGMENT statement 2-628
- REVOKE statement
 - ALL keyword behavior 2-617
 - CASCADE keyword 2-625
 - column-specific privileges 2-616
 - effect on grantor chain 2-625
 - EXECUTE ON (user-defined routine) 2-620
 - No record found message 2-616
 - privileges needed 2-611
 - PUBLIC keyword 2-616
 - RESTRICT option 2-626
 - role name and privileges 2-624
 - table-level privileges 2-614
 - UNDER keyword 2-615
 - USAGE ON LANGUAGE clause 2-622
- rofferr utility Intro-21
- Role
 - creating with CREATE ROLE statement 2-213
 - definition 2-213
 - dropping with DROP ROLE statement 2-407

- enabling with SET ROLE 2-758
- establishing with CREATE, GRANT, SET 2-519
 - granting name with GRANT 2-519
 - granting privileges with GRANT 2-520
 - revoking privileges with REVOKE 2-624
- scope of 2-759
- setting with SET ROLE 2-758
- ROLLBACK WORK statement
 - syntax 2-632
 - with WHENEVER 2-91, 2-99, 2-633
- ROOT function 4-123, 4-126
- ROUND function 4-123, 4-127
- ROUND ROBIN keywords
 - in ALTER FRAGMENT statement 2-30
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-259
- Routine
 - as triggered action 2-326
 - checking references 2-326
 - creating with CREATE ROUTINE FROM 2-214
 - dropping with DROP ROUTINE 2-408
 - modifying
 - path to executable file 2-53
 - routine modifiers 2-52
 - privileges 2-202
 - rules with triggers 2-326
 - specific name 4-296
- ROUTINE keyword
 - in DROP ROUTINE statement 2-408
 - in GRANT statement 2-513
 - in REVOKE statement 2-620
 - in UPDATE STATISTICS statement 2-844
- Routine modifier
 - CLASS 4-278
 - COSTFUNC 4-279
 - HANDLESNULLS 4-279
 - INTERNAL 4-279
 - ITERATOR 4-279

- NEGATOR 4-280
- NOT VARIANT 4-284
- PARALLELIZABLE 4-280
- PERCALL_COST 4-281
- SELCONST 4-282
- SELFUNC 4-282
- STACK 4-284
- VARIANT 4-284
- Row
 - deleting 2-373
 - engine response to locked row 2-743
 - finding location of 4-98
 - inserting
 - through a view 2-538
 - with a cursor 2-539
 - order, guaranteeing independence of 2-309
 - retrieving with FETCH 2-460
 - rowid definition 2-460
 - updating through a view 2-817
 - writing buffered rows with FLUSH 2-469
- ROW constructor, in Expression segment 4-116
- ROW keyword
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-85
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-278
 - in CREATE TRIGGER statement 2-307, 2-314
 - in Expression segment 4-116
 - in Literal Row segment 4-239
- Row type
 - constructor syntax 4-116
 - dot notation with 4-93
 - in collection-derived tables 4-13
 - loading field values 2-556, 2-560
 - nested 4-243
 - selecting fields 2-643, 2-658
 - selecting from 2-658
 - unloading 2-807, 2-811
 - updating 2-826, 2-832
- Row variable
 - accessing 4-22
 - allocating memory for 2-10
 - deallocating memory for 2-347
 - inserting 2-546
 - inserting into 2-551

- selecting from 2-658
- updating 2-832
- Rowid
 - adding column with INIT clause 2-29
 - adding with ALTER TABLE 2-58
 - dropping from fragmented tables 2-58
 - use in a column expression 4-98
 - use in fragmented tables 2-29
 - used as column name 4-214
- ROWID keyword, in Expression segment 4-91
- ROWIDS keyword
 - in ALTER FRAGMENT statement 2-27
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-259
- ROWS keyword, in START VIOLATIONS TABLE statement 2-778
- Row-type columns, generating values for 4-116
- ROW_COUNT keyword, in GET DIAGNOSTICS statement 2-489
- RPAD function 4-173
- R-tree index
 - creating 2-170
 - default operator class 2-198
 - rtree_ops operator class 2-198
 - uses 2-170
- rtree secondary access method 2-170

S

- sales_demo database Intro-5
- SAMEAS keyword, in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-132
- Sample-code conventions Intro-19
- SAMPLES OF keywords, in SELECT statement 2-655
- Sampling data 2-655
- sbspace
 - specifying in ALTER TABLE 2-78
 - specifying in CREATE TABLE 2-273

- SBSPECNAME parameter 2-274
- SCALE field
 - with DESCRIBE statement 2-385
- SCALE keyword
 - in GET DESCRIPTOR statement 2-476
 - in SET DESCRIPTOR statement 2-722
- SCALE keyword. *See* SCALE field.
- Schema. *See* Data model.
- SCRATCH keyword
 - in CREATE Temporary TABLE statement 2-286
 - in SELECT statement 2-683
- Scratch table
 - creating 2-287, 2-686
 - duration 2-295
 - when deleted 2-295
 - See also* Temporary tables.
- Scroll cursor
 - definition of 2-360
 - FETCH with 2-459
- SCROLL keyword, in DECLARE statement 2-349
- SECOND keyword
 - in DATETIME Field Qualifier segment 4-71
 - in INTERVAL Field Qualifier segment 4-223
- Secondary access method
 - B-tree 2-170
 - default operator class 2-197
 - definition 2-158, 2-193
 - R-tree 2-170
 - specifying with CREATE OPCLASS 2-193
 - USING clause 2-169
- Segment
 - defined 4-3
 - relation to SPL statements 4-4
 - relation to SQL statements 4-4
- SELCONST keyword, in Routine Modifier segment 4-275, 4-277
- Select cursor
 - opening 2-568, 2-569
 - reopening 2-569
 - use of 2-354
- SELECT ITEM keywords
 - in Collection Subquery segment 4-24
- SELECT keyword
 - ambiguous use as routine variable 4-219
 - in Collection Subquery segment 4-24
 - in Condition segment 4-41, 4-42, 4-43
 - in CREATE INDEX statement 2-183
 - in CREATE TRIGGER statement 2-302, 2-336
 - in DECLARE statement 2-349
 - in GRANT statement 2-505
 - in INSERT statement 2-535
 - in LET statement 3-41
 - in OUTPUT statement 2-577
 - in REVOKE statement 2-614
 - in UNLOAD statement 2-805
- Select list 2-636
- SELECT statement
 - aggregate functions in 4-185
 - and triggers 2-302
 - BETWEEN condition 2-662
 - collection derived table with 4-15
 - collection variables with 4-15
 - collection with 2-656
 - column numbers 2-678
 - cursor for 2-679, 2-681
 - FIRST clause 2-638
 - FOR READ ONLY clause 2-681
 - FOR UPDATE clause 2-679
 - FROM clause 2-650
 - GROUP BY clause 2-669
 - HAVING clause 2-672
 - IN condition 2-662
 - in FOR EACH ROW trigger 2-309
 - in INSERT 2-548
 - indicator variables with 2-438
 - INTO clause with ESQL 2-645
 - INTO EXTERNAL clause 2-686
 - INTO SCRATCH clause 2-686
 - INTO TEMP clause 2-684
 - IS NULL condition 2-663
 - joining tables in WHERE clause 2-666
- LIKE or MATCHES
 - condition 2-663
 - null values in the ORDER BY clause 2-678
- ORDER BY clause 2-674
- outer join 2-652
- relational-operator
 - condition 2-661
- restrictions in routine 4-300
- restrictions with INTO clause 2-582
- row type 2-643
- row type with 2-658
- ROWID keyword 4-97
- SELECT clause 2-636
- select numbers 2-678
- singleton 2-646
- smart large objects with 4-98
- SPL routine in 2-642
- subquery with WHERE keyword 2-661
- syntax 2-634
- UNION operator 2-688
- use of expressions 2-640
- user-defined routine in 2-642
- with
 - DECLARE 2-349
 - FOREACH 3-30
 - LET 3-42
 - WITH NO LOG keywords 2-685
- writing rows retrieved to an ASCII file 2-805
- Selecting from a specific table in a table hierarchy 2-654
- Selectivity
 - argument information 4-283
 - definition of 4-283
- Selectivity function 4-282
- Self-join, description of 2-668
- SELFFUNC keyword, in Routine Modifier segment 4-275, 4-277
- Send support function 2-191
- Sequential cursor
 - DECLARE with 2-360
 - definition of 2-360
 - with FETCH 2-458

- Serial column
 - nonsequential numbers in 2-264
 - resetting values 2-74
 - use with hash
 - fragmentation 2-264
- SERIAL data type
 - inserting values 2-543
 - length 4-60
 - resetting values 2-74, 2-544
 - value range 4-60
- SERIAL8 data type
 - inserting values 2-543
 - value range 4-60
- SERIALIZABLE keyword, in SET TRANSACTION statement 2-768
- SERVER_NAME keyword, in GET DIAGNOSTICS statement 2-491
- Session control block
 - accessed by DBINFO function 4-135
 - defined 4-135
- Session ID, returned by DBINFO function 4-135
- SET data type
 - See also* Collections.
- SET AUTOFREE statement 2-691
- SET columns, generating values for 4-118
- SET CONNECTION statement 2-694
- SET CONSTRAINTS. *See* SET Database Object Mode statement and SET Transaction Mode statement.
- SET data type
 - definition of 4-118
 - deleting elements from 2-380
 - unloading 2-806
 - updating elements in 2-832
- SET Database Object Mode statement
 - error options 2-706
 - list-mode format 2-702
 - relationship to START VIOLATIONS TABLE 2-780
 - syntax 2-700
- table-mode format 2-701
- with CREATE TRIGGER statement 2-329
- data manipulation statements 2-704
- SET DATASKIP statement 2-709
- SET DEBUG FILE TO statement
 - syntax 2-712
 - with TRACE statement 3-58
- SET DEFERRED_PREPARE statement 2-715
- SET DESCRIPTOR statement
 - the VALUE clause 2-721
 - X/Open mode 2-725
- SET EXPLAIN statement 2-733
- SET INDEXES. *See* SET Database Object Mode statement.
- SET INDEX. *See* SET Residency statement.
- SET ISOLATION statement
 - default 2-738
 - definition of isolation levels 2-737, 2-770
 - effects of isolation 2-740
 - similarities to SET TRANSACTION statement 2-769
 - syntax 2-736
- SET keyword
 - in DEFINE statement 3-18
 - in Expression segment 4-118
 - in Literal Collection segment 4-227
 - in ON EXCEPTION statement 3-45
 - in UPDATE statement 2-819
- SET LOCK MODE statement
 - setting wait period 2-743
 - syntax 2-742
- SET LOG statement 2-745
- SET OPTIMIZATION statement
 - ALL_ROWS option 2-748
 - FIRST_ROWS option 2-748
 - HIGH option 2-748
 - LOW option 2-748
 - syntax 2-747
- SET PDQPRIORITY statement 2-751
- SET PLOAD FILE statement 2-755
- SET Residency statement 2-756
- SET ROLE statement 2-758
- SET SCHEDULE LEVEL statement 2-760
- SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION statement 2-761
- SET TABLE. *See* SET Residency statement.
- SET Transaction Mode statement 2-774
- SET TRANSACTION statement
 - default database levels 2-772
 - effects of isolation 2-773
 - similarities to SET ISOLATION statement 2-769
 - syntax 2-768
- SET TRIGGERS. *See* SET Database Object Mode statement.
- setnet32 2-109
- SHARE keyword, in LOCK TABLE statement 2-563
- Shared library functions 4-145
- Side-effect index 2-197
- Simple assignment, in SPL 3-42
- Simple large object
 - assigning to a column 4-62
 - loading 2-556, 2-558
- Simple large-object
 - unloading 2-807, 2-809
- SIN function 4-159, 4-161
- Single-threaded application 2-696
- Singleton SELECT statement 2-646
- SITENAME function
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-60
 - in Condition segment 4-34
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-234
 - in DEFINE statement 3-16
 - in Expression segment 4-111
 - See* DBSERVERNAME function.
- SIZE keyword
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-84
 - in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-139
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-273, 2-276
 - in TRUNCATE statement 2-802

- SMALLFLOAT data type 4-62
- Smart large object 4-64
 - accessing column data 4-98
 - assigning to a column 4-62
 - copying to a file 4-149
 - copying to a smart large object 4-150
 - creating from a file 4-145, 4-147
 - expressions with 4-98
 - extent size 2-275
 - functions 4-146
 - functions for copying 4-146
 - generating filename for 4-150
 - handle values 4-98
 - loading values 2-556, 2-559
 - logging 2-275
 - logging options 2-275
 - storing 2-78, 2-273
 - unloading 2-807, 2-809
- Software dependencies Intro-4
- SOME keyword
 - beginning a subquery 2-665
 - in Condition segment 4-43
- Sorting
 - in a combined query 2-689
 - in SELECT 2-674
- SOURCEID field
 - in GET DESCRIPTOR statement 2-476
 - in SET DESCRIPTOR statement 2-722
- SOURCETYPE field
 - in GET DESCRIPTOR statement 2-476
 - in SET DESCRIPTOR statement 2-722
- SPECIFIC FUNCTION keywords
 - in ALTER FUNCTION statement 2-41
 - in GRANT statement 2-513
 - in REVOKE statement 2-620
 - in UPDATE STATISTICS statement 2-844
- SPECIFIC keyword
 - in CREATE FUNCTION statement 2-146
 - in CREATE PROCEDURE statement 2-200
- in DROP FUNCTION statement 2-399
- in DROP PROCEDURE statement 2-404
- in DROP ROUTINE statement 2-408
- in GRANT statement 2-513
- in REVOKE statement 2-620
- in UPDATE STATISTICS statement 2-844
- Specific Name segment 4-296
- SPECIFIC PROCEDURE keywords
 - in ALTER PROCEDURE statement 2-48
 - in GRANT statement 2-513
 - in REVOKE statement 2-620
 - in UPDATE STATISTICS statement 2-844
- SPECIFIC ROUTINE keywords
 - in ALTER ROUTINE statement 2-51
 - in GRANT statement 2-513
 - in REVOKE statement 2-620
 - in UPDATE STATISTICS statement 2-844
- Specification 2-161
- SPL function
 - CREATE FUNCTION 2-150
 - CREATE FUNCTION example 2-151
 - cursors with 3-30
 - dropping 2-399
 - dynamic routine-name specification 2-439
 - executing 2-434, 2-583
 - optimization 2-150
 - punctuation for 2-151
 - registering 2-150
 - registering from inside an external routine 2-155
- SPL keyword
 - in GRANT statement 2-516
 - in REVOKE statement 2-622
- SPL procedure
 - creating with CREATE PROCEDURE 2-205
 - dynamic routine-name specification 2-446
 - executing 2-583
 - optimization 2-205
 - registering with CREATE PROCEDURE 2-205
- SPL routine
 - as triggered action 2-316
 - BYTE and TEXT data types 3-22
 - comments in 1-7
 - debugging 3-58
 - definition 2-202, 3-3
 - dropping with DROP PROCEDURE 2-406
 - executing operating system commands from 3-55
 - handling multiple rows 3-53
 - header 3-12
 - in SELECT statement 2-642
 - limits on parameters 4-288
 - modifying, restrictions on 2-409
 - naming output file for TRACE statement 2-712
 - ownership of created objects 2-208
 - preparing 2-583
 - receiving data from SELECT 2-645
 - restrictions when used with DML statements 4-302
 - sending mail from 3-56
 - simulating errors 3-50
 - SQL-statement restrictions 4-299
 - creating *See also Informix Guide to SQL Tutorial.*
- SPL statements, description 3-3
- SQL
 - comments 1-6
 - compliance of statements with ANSI standard 1-13
 - reserved words 4-207, A-1, 1
 - statement types 1-9
- SQL code Intro-19
- SQL Communications Area (SQLCA)
 - and EXECUTE statement 2-424
 - inserting rows 4-138
 - result after CLOSE 2-95
 - result after DATABASE 2-342
 - result after DESCRIBE 2-383
 - result after FETCH 2-468

- result after FLUSH 2-470
- result after OPEN 2-570
- result after PUT 2-601
- result after SELECT 2-649
- warning when dbspace
 - skipped 2-709
- SQL DESCRIPTOR keywords
 - in DESCRIBE statement 2-382
 - in EXECUTE statement 2-425, 2-430
 - in FETCH statement 2-455
 - in OPEN statement 2-566
 - in PUT statement 2-593
- SQL expression. *See* Expression.
- SQL statements, restrictions within
 - SPL routines 4-299
- SQL statement. *See* Statement, SQL.
- SQLCA. *See* SQL Communications Area.
- sqllda structure
 - in DESCRIBE 2-382, 2-384
 - in EXECUTE 2-427
 - in EXECUTE...INTO 2-428
 - in FETCH 2-464
 - in OPEN 2-426, 2-431, 2-567, 2-594
 - in OPEN...USING
 - DESCRIPTOR 2-574
- SQLERRD array
 - value of inserted SERIAL8
 - value 4-138
- SQLERROR keyword, in
 - WHENEVER statement 2-848
- sqlhosts file 2-109
- SQLJ built-in procedures 2-446
- SQLJ.ALTER_JAVA_PATH
 - procedure 2-451
- sqlj.alter_java_path
 - procedure 2-451
- SQLJ.INSTALL_JAR
 - procedure 2-447
- SQLJ.REMOVE_JAR
 - procedure 2-450
- SQLJ.REPLACE_JAR
 - procedure 2-449
- SQLJ.SETUDTEXTNAME
 - procedure 2-453
- SQLJ.UNSETUDTEXTNAME
 - procedure 2-454
- SQLNOTFOUND, error conditions
 - with EXECUTE statement 2-424
- SQLSTATE
 - list of codes 2-485
 - not found condition 2-852
 - runtime errors 2-851
 - warnings 2-851
- SQLWARNING keyword, in
 - WHENEVER statement 2-848
- SQRT function 4-123, 4-128
- Square brackets [...], as wildcard
 - characters 4-38
- STACK keyword
 - in Routine Modifier
 - segment 4-275, 4-277
- STANDARD keyword
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-87
 - in CREATE TABLE
 - statement 2-230
- START VIOLATIONS TABLE
 - statement
 - privileges 2-784
 - relationship to SET Database
 - Object Mode statement 2-780
 - starting and stopping 2-782
 - syntax 2-778
- Statement block segment
 - BEGIN 4-300
 - END 4-300
- Statement identifier
 - cursor for 2-366
 - definition of 2-580
 - in DECLARE 2-349
 - in FREE 2-472, 2-473
 - in PREPARE 2-580
 - releasing 2-581
- Statement-local variable (SLV)
 - data type of 4-182
 - definition of 4-180
 - expression 4-183
 - name space of 4-182
 - precedence of 4-182
 - scope of 4-183
 - using 4-183
- Statement-local variable,
 - declaration 4-181
- Statement, SQL
 - ANSI-compliant 1-13
 - extensions to ANSI standard 1-14
 - how to enter 1-4
- STATIC keyword
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-87
 - in CREATE TABLE
 - statement 2-230
- STATUS keyword
 - in INFO statement 2-532
- Status, displaying with INFO
 - statement 2-534
- STDEV function 4-185, 4-196
- STEP keyword, in FOR
 - statement 3-26
- STOP keyword, in WHENEVER
 - statement 2-848
- STOP VIOLATIONS TABLE
 - statement
 - description of 2-800
 - privileges 2-801
 - syntax 2-800
- Stored procedure
 - replaced by SPL routine 2-202
 - See* SPL Routine.
- stores_demo database Intro-5
 - See also* Demonstration database.
- Storing smart large objects 2-273
- STRATEGIES keyword, in CREATE
 - OPCLASS statement 2-193
- Strategy function
 - definition 2-195
 - optimizer use of 2-195
 - side-effect data 2-197
 - specifying in CREATE
 - OPCLASS 2-195
- String-manipulation
 - functions 4-163
- Structured Query Language. *See* SQL.
- STYLE keyword
 - in External Routine Reference
 - segment 4-202
- SUBCLASS_ORIGIN keyword
 - in GET DIAGNOSTICS
 - statement 2-491

Subquery
 beginning with ALL, ANY, SOME
 keywords 2-665
 beginning with EXISTS
 keyword 2-665
 beginning with IN
 keyword 2-664
 correlated 4-41
 definition of 2-661
 in Condition segment 4-40
 restrictions with UNION
 operator 2-689
 with DISTINCT keyword 2-640
Subscripting, on character
 columns 2-676, 4-97
SUBSTR function 4-168
Substring
 in column expression 4-97
 in ORDER BY clause of
 SELECT 2-676
SUBSTRING function 4-170, 4-172,
 4-173
Subtable, inherited
 properties 2-282
SUM function 4-185, 4-195
superstores_demo database Intro-5
Support function
 assigning 2-191, 2-544, 2-560,
 2-829
 comparing 2-191
 defining 2-190
 definition of 2-197
 destroy 2-191, 2-380, 2-415
 export 2-191
 exportbinary 2-191
 import 2-191
 importbinary 2-191
 input 2-190
 lohandles 2-191
 output 2-190
 receive 2-190
 send 2-191
 specifying in CREATE
 OPCLASS 2-197
SUPPORT keyword, in CREATE
 OPCLASS statement 2-193
Surviving table 2-16

Synonym
 ANSI-compliant naming 2-227
 chaining 2-228
 creating 2-226
 difference from alias 2-226
 dropping 2-412
Syntax 2-48
Syntax conventions
 description of Intro-14
 example diagram Intro-18
 icons used in Intro-15
Syntax diagrams, elements
 in Intro-15
System catalog
 database entries 2-124
 dropping tables 2-415
 sysdepend 2-420
 systabauth 2-522
 sysxdtypes 2-186
 user-defined function
 information 2-151
 user-defined procedure
 information 2-205
System descriptor area
 assigning values to 2-719
 item descriptors in 2-9
 OPEN using 2-431, 2-573, 2-598
 resizing 2-721
 use with EXECUTE
 statement 2-432
 with DESCRIBE 2-385
 with EXECUTE...INTO 2-427
System name, in database
 name 4-49
System requirements
 database Intro-4
 software Intro-4
SYSTEM statement
 setting environment variables
 with 3-56
 syntax 3-55
sysxdtypes
 DESCRIBE and GET
 DESCRIPTOR with 2-481,
 2-482
sysxdtypes system catalog
 table 2-186, 2-418, 2-727, 2-728

T

Table
 adding a constraint 2-80, 2-81
 adding a constraint to a column
 with data 2-76
 alias in SELECT 2-650
 consumed 2-16
 creating 2-230
 creating a synonym for 2-226
 defining fragmentation
 strategy 2-259
 diagnostic 2-793
 dropping 2-413
 dropping a synonym 2-412
 dropping a system table 2-415
 engine response to locked
 table 2-743
 external 2-131, 2-686
 isolating 2-257
 joins in Condition segment 2-666
 loading data with the LOAD
 statement 2-553
 locking
 with ALTER INDEX 2-45
 with LOCK TABLE 2-563
 logging 2-287
 memory-resident 2-756
 name, specifying 4-50
 privileges
 column-specific 2-617
 granting 2-505
 revoking 2-614
 privileges on 2-283
 resident in memory 2-756
 scratch 2-287, 2-686
 surviving 2-16
 target 2-786
 temporary 2-287, 2-684
 unlocking 2-813
 violations 2-785
TABLE keyword
 in ALTER FRAGMENT
 statement 2-12
 in ALTER TABLE statement 2-85
 in Collection Derived Table
 segment 4-9
 in CREATE TABLE
 statement 2-278

- in Data Type segment 4-62
 - in SET Residency statement 2-756
 - in TRUNCATE statement 2-802
 - in UPDATE STATISTICS statement 2-835
 - Table-level privilege, passing grant ability 2-520
 - Table-mode format, in SET Database Object Mode statement 2-701
 - TABLES keyword, in INFO statement 2-532
 - TAN function 4-159, 4-161
 - Target table
 - relationship to diagnostics table 2-786
 - relationship to violations table 2-786
 - TEMP keyword
 - in SELECT statement 2-683
 - TEMP keyword, in CREATE Temporary TABLE statement 2-286
 - Temp table
 - See Temporary table.
 - Temporary table
 - and fragmentation 2-292
 - constraints allowed 2-289
 - creating constraints for 2-289
 - defining columns 2-288
 - differences from permanent tables 2-294
 - duration 2-294
 - example of creating 2-293
 - INFO statement restrictions 2-294
 - storage of 2-293
 - updating statistics 2-836
 - when deleted 2-294
 - where stored 2-293
 - TEXT column, modifying 2-74
 - TEXT data type
 - associating with a column 4-63
 - loading 2-556
 - storage of 4-63
 - unloading 2-807, 2-809
 - with SET DESCRIPTOR 2-729
 - with SPL routines 3-13, 3-22
 - TEXT keyword
 - in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE statement 2-132
 - in Data Type segment 4-62
 - in DEFINE statement 3-11
 - in Return Clause segment 4-270
 - in Routine Parameter List segment 4-287
 - THEN keyword
 - in CASE statement 3-7
 - in Expression segment 4-101, 4-102
 - in IF statement 3-37
 - Thread
 - defined 2-696
 - in multithreaded application 2-696
 - THREADS keyword, in EXECUTE FUNCTION statement 2-439
 - Thread-safe application
 - description 2-391, 2-696, 2-699
 - Time and date, getting current 4-112
 - Time data types 4-65
 - Time Function
 - use in Function Expressions 4-152
 - Time function
 - restrictions with GROUP BY 2-671
 - use in SELECT 2-641
 - TIME keyword
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-78
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-273
 - times() operator function 4-85
 - Tip icons Intro-12
 - TO CLUSTER keywords, in ALTER INDEX statement 2-44
 - TO keyword
 - in ALTER FRAGMENT statement 2-38
 - in ALTER INDEX statement 2-44
 - in CONNECT statement 2-103
 - in Expression segment 4-152
 - in FOR statement 3-26
 - in GRANT FRAGMENT statement 2-523
 - in GRANT statement 2-500
 - in OUTPUT statement 2-577
 - in RETURN COLUMN statement 2-604
 - in RENAME DATABASE statement 2-606
 - in RENAME TABLE statement 2-607
 - in SET EXPLAIN statement 2-730
 - in SET ISOLATION statement 2-736
 - in SET LOCK MODE statement 2-742
 - in SET PLOAD FILE statement 2-755
 - in SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION statement 2-761
 - in TRUNCATE statement 2-802
 - in UNLOAD statement 2-805
- TO SIZE keywords
 - in TRUNCATE statement 2-802
- TODAY function 4-112
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-60
 - in Condition segment 4-34
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-234
 - in DEFINE statement 3-16
 - in expression 4-108
 - in INSERT 2-541, 2-547
- TO_CHAR function 4-152, 4-157
- TO_DATE function 4-152
 - Function, SQL TO_DATE 4-158
- TP/XA. See Transaction manager.
- TRACE statement 3-58
- TRAILING keyword, in Expression segment 4-164
- Transaction
 - description of 2-93
 - example 2-362
 - example with data manipulation statements 2-93
 - in active connection 2-107
 - using cursors in 2-371
- TRANSACTION keyword, in CONNECT statement 2-103
- Transaction mode,
 - constraints 2-774

Trigger
 affected by dropping a column
 from table 2-71
 affected by modifying a
 column 2-77
 database object modes for
 setting 2-700
 effects of altering table
 fragmentation 2-21
 external routines with 2-316
 in client/server
 environment 2-330
 name, specifying 4-50
 number on a table 2-298
 overriding 2-330
 SPL routines with 2-316
Trigger event
 definition of 2-298
 in CREATE TRIGGER
 statement 2-298
 INSERT 2-310
 privileges on 2-299
 with cursor statement 2-299
Triggered action
 action on triggering table 2-321
 action statements 2-316
 anyone can use 2-327
 cascading 2-309
 correlation name in 2-319, 2-326
 for multiple triggers 2-309
 list syntax 2-315
 merged 2-308
 sequence of 2-307
 WHEN condition 2-315
Triggering statement
 affecting multiple rows 2-309
 consistent results 2-317
 execution of 2-300
 guaranteeing same result 2-298
 UPDATE 2-301
Triggering table
 action on 2-321
 and cascading triggers 2-328
TRIGGERS keyword
 in SET Database Object Mode
 statement 2-701, 2-702

Trigonometric function
 ACOS function 4-161
 ASIN function 4-161
 ATAN function 4-161
 ATAN2 function 4-162
 COS function 4-160
 SIN function 4-161
 TAN function 4-161
 TRIM function 4-164
 TRUNC function 4-123, 4-128
TRUNCATE statement
 example 2-803
 privileges 2-802
 restrictions 2-802
 use 2-804
TYPE field
 changing from BYTE or
 TEXT 2-729
 in GET DESCRIPTOR
 statement 2-476
 in SET DESCRIPTOR
 statement 2-722
 setting in X/Open
 programs 2-725
 with DESCRIBE statement 2-385
 with X/Open programs 2-479
TYPE keyword
 in ALTER TABLE statement 2-86,
 2-87
 in CREATE TABLE
 statement 2-280
 in CREATE VIEW
 statement 2-334
 in GRANT statement 2-511
 in REVOKE statement 2-618
 See also TYPE field.
Typed table
 ADD TYPE 2-86
 altering 2-89
 altering serial columns 2-74
 inheritance with 2-282

U

UDR. *See* User-Defined Routine.
UNDER keyword
 in CREATE ROW TYPE
 statement 2-216
 in CREATE TABLE
 statement 2-280
 in GRANT statement 2-505, 2-511
 in REVOKE statement 2-614,
 2-618
UNDER ON TYPE keywords
 in GRANT statement 2-511
 in REVOKE statement 2-618
Underscore (_), as wildcard 4-37
UNION operator
 in SELECT statement 2-634, 2-688
 OUT parameters and 4-184
 restrictions on use 2-689
Unique constraint
 dropping 2-83
 rules of use 2-239, 2-242
UNIQUE keyword
 in ALTER TABLE statement 2-62,
 2-81
 in CREATE INDEX
 statement 2-159, 2-183
 in CREATE TABLE
 statement 2-237, 2-250
 in CREATE Temporary TABLE
 statement 2-289, 2-290
 in Expression segment 4-185,
 4-199
 in SELECT 2-636, 2-639
 in subquery 4-42
UNITS keyword
 in Expression segment 4-108,
 4-114
UNIX operating system
 default locale for Intro-4
UNKNOWN truth values 4-28
UNLOAD statement
 DELIMITER clause 2-811
 syntax 2-805
 UNLOAD TO file 2-806
 unloading CLOB or BLOB
 columns 2-809
 unloading collections 2-811
 unloading row types 2-811

- unloading TEXT or BYTE
 - columns 2-809
- VARCHAR, TEXT, or BYTE
 - columns 2-808
- UNLOAD TO file 2-806
- UNLOCK TABLE statement 2-813
- Unnamed row data type
 - updating fields 2-832
- Unnamed row type 4-68
 - field definition 4-68
 - unloading 2-807, 2-811
- Updatable view 2-339
- Update cursor
 - locking considerations 2-358
 - opening 2-568
 - restricted statements 2-363
 - use in DELETE 2-377
- UPDATE keyword
 - in CREATE TRIGGER
 - statement 2-300, 2-315
 - in GRANT FRAGMENT
 - statement 2-525
 - in GRANT statement 2-505
 - in REVOKE FRAGMENT
 - statement 2-629, 2-630
 - in REVOKE statement 2-614
- Update privilege, with a
 - view 2-817
- UPDATE statement
 - and transactions 2-818
 - and triggers 2-298, 2-300, 2-316
 - collection derived table with 4-15
 - collection variables with 4-15, 4-16
 - cursor with 2-355
 - locking considerations 2-819
 - opaque-type columns 2-828
 - OUT parameters and 4-184
 - rolling back updates 2-819
 - row types 2-826
 - SET clause 2-820
 - single-column SET clause 2-820, 2-823
 - smart large objects with 4-98
 - syntax 2-816
 - updating a column to null 2-822
 - updating a column twice 2-822
 - updating fields of a row
 - type 2-826, 2-832
 - updating through a view 2-817
 - use of expressions 2-819
 - with
 - FETCH 2-465
 - SELECT...FOR UPDATE 2-680
 - WHERE keyword 2-829
- UPDATE STATISTICS statement
 - distribution bins 2-843
 - dropping data distributions 2-840
 - examining index pages 2-839
 - only one table in hierarchy 2-837
 - specifying distributions
 - only 2-844
 - using when upgrading database
 - server 2-846
- Update trigger, defining
 - multiple 2-301
- Updating a specific table in a table
 - hierarchy 2-817
- Upgrading the database
 - server 2-837, 2-846
- Upgrading to a newer database
 - server 2-846
- UPPER function 4-174
- Upper-case characters, converting
 - to 4-174
- USAGE keyword
 - in GRANT statement 2-511, 2-516
 - in REVOKE statement 2-618, 2-622
- USAGE ON LANGUAGE
 - keywords
 - in GRANT statement 2-516
 - in REVOKE statement 2-622
- USAGE ON TYPE keywords
 - in GRANT statement 2-511
 - in REVOKE statement 2-618
- USER function 4-110
 - as affected by ANSI
 - compliance 4-111
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-60
 - in Condition segment 4-34
 - in CREATE TABLE
 - statement 2-234
 - in DEFINE statement 3-16
 - in expression 4-108
 - in INSERT statement 2-541, 2-547
 - in Literal Row segment 4-240
- User informix, privileges associated
 - with 2-504
- USER keyword
 - in CONNECT statement 2-112
- User-defined aggregate
 - creating 2-115
 - defined 4-187
 - dropping 2-393
 - invoking 4-199
- User-defined data type 4-66
 - privileges 2-511, 2-512
 - revoking 2-618
- User-defined function
 - cursor 2-438
 - inserting data with 2-550
 - iterator 4-279
 - negator 4-280
 - noncursor 2-437
 - OUT parameter 4-183
 - selectivity 4-282
 - variant 4-203, 4-284
- User-defined functions 4-179
- User-defined routine
 - arguments 2-189
 - definition 2-201
 - dropping with DROP
 - ROUTINE 2-408
 - in SELECT statements 2-642
 - inserting data with 2-550
 - ownership of created
 - objects 2-153
 - privileges
 - revoking 2-620
 - REFERENCES keyword with
 - BYTE or TEXT data type 3-22
 - return values 4-270
- Users, types of Intro-3
- USE_HASH keyword
 - in Optimizer Directives
 - Segment 4-252
- USE_NL keyword
 - in Optimizer Directives
 - Segment 4-252
- USING BITMAP keywords
 - in CREATE INDEX
 - statement 2-157
- Using correlation names 2-319

USING DESCRIPTOR keywords
 in FETCH 2-464
 in OPEN 2-566
 in PUT 2-432
 syntax in EXECUTE 2-430

USING keyword
 in CONNECT statement 2-112
 in CREATE EXTERNAL TABLE
 statement 2-131
 in CREATE INDEX
 statement 2-157, 2-169
 in CREATE TABLE
 statement 2-279
 in DELETE statement 2-373
 in EXECUTE 2-430
 in EXECUTE statement 2-430
 in FETCH statement 2-455
 in OPEN 2-566, 2-572
 in OPEN statement 2-566
 in PUT statement 2-593
 in START VIOLATIONS TABLE
 statement 2-778

USING SQL DESCRIPTOR
 keywords
 in DESCRIBE 2-385
 in DESCRIBE statement 2-382
 in EXECUTE 2-432

V

VALUE clause
 after null value is fetched 2-480
 relation to FETCH 2-480
 use in GET DESCRIPTOR 2-478
 use in SET DESCRIPTOR 2-721

VALUE keyword
 in GET DESCRIPTOR
 statement 2-476
 in SET DESCRIPTOR
 statement 2-719

VALUES clause
 effect with PUT 2-596
 in INSERT 2-541
 syntax in INSERT 2-535

VALUES keyword
 in INSERT statement 2-541

VARCHAR data type 4-56
 in LOAD statement 2-558
 in UNLOAD statement 2-808

Variable
 default values in SPL 3-16, 3-19
 define in SPL 3-11
 local 3-12
 local, in SPL 3-19
 PROCEDURE type 3-22
 unknown values in IF 3-39

VARIABLE keyword
 in CREATE OPAQUE TYPE
 statement 2-186

VARIANCE function 4-185, 4-196

Variant function 4-284

VARIANT keyword
 in External Routine Reference
 segment 4-202
 in Routine Modifier
 segment 4-275, 4-277

Varying-length data type, opaque
 data type 2-188

Varying-length opaque data
 type 2-189

View
 affected by dropping a
 column 2-71
 affected by modifying a
 column 2-78
 creating a view 2-334
 creating synonym for 2-226
 dropping 2-420
 name, specifying 4-50
 privileges 2-510
 union 2-337
 updatable 2-339
 updating 2-817
 with SELECT * notation 2-335

Views
 affected by altering table
 fragmentation 2-21

VIOLATIONS keyword
 in START VIOLATIONS TABLE
 statement 2-778

Violations table
 creating with START
 VIOLATIONS TABLE 2-778
 effect on concurrent
 transactions 2-781
 examples 2-789, 2-792, 2-801
 how to stop 2-800
 privileges on 2-786

relationship to diagnostics
 table 2-786
 relationship to target table 2-786
 restriction on dropping 2-415
 structure 2-785

W

WAIT keyword
 in SET LOCK MODE
 statement 2-742

WAIT keyword, in the SET LOCK
 MODE statement 2-743

Warning icons Intro-12

Warning, if dbspace skipped 2-709

WEEKDAY function 4-152

WHEN condition, in triggers 2-316

WHEN keyword
 in CASE statement 3-7
 in CREATE TRIGGER
 statement 2-314
 in Expression segment 4-101,
 4-102

WHENEVER statement
 CALL keyword 2-848
 syntax and use 2-848

WHERE clause
 in SELECT 2-634
 joining tables 2-666
 with a subquery 2-661
 with ALL keyword 2-665
 with ANY keyword 2-665
 with BETWEEN keyword 2-662
 with IN keyword 2-662
 with IS keyword 2-663
 with relational operator 2-661
 with SOME keyword 2-665

WHERE CURRENT OF keywords
 in DELETE statement 2-373
 in UPDATE statement 2-815

WHERE keyword
 in CREATE INDEX
 statement 2-185
 in DELETE statement 2-373
 in UPDATE statement 2-815

WHILE keyword
 in CONTINUE statement 3-10
 in EXIT statement 3-24

- WHILE statement
 - syntax 3-62
 - with NULL expressions 3-62
- Wildcard character
 - asterisk (*) 4-38
 - backslash (\) 4-37, 4-38
 - caret (^) 4-38
 - percent sign (%) 4-37
 - question mark (?) 4-38
 - square brackets ([...]) 4-38
 - underscore (_) 4-37
 - with LIKE 2-663, 4-37
 - with LIKE or MATCHES 4-263
 - with MATCHES 2-663, 4-38
- Windows NT
 - default locale for Intro-4
- wing 4-166
- WITH APPEND keywords
 - in SET DEBUG FILE TO statement 2-712
 - in SET EXPLAIN statement 2-730
 - in SET PLOAD FILE statement 2-755
- WITH BUFFERED LOG keywords,
 - in CREATE DATABASE 2-125
- WITH CHECK OPTION keywords,
 - in CREATE VIEW statement 2-334
- WITH COMMIT keywords, in
 - TRUNCATE statement 2-802
- WITH CONCURRENT TRANSACTION keywords, in
 - CONNECT statement 2-103
- WITH CRCOLS keywords
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-255
 - in CREATE Temporary TABLE statement 2-291
- WITH ERROR keywords
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-64
 - in CREATE INDEX statement 2-178
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-247
 - in SET Database Object Mode statement 2-703
- WITH GRANT OPTION keywords
 - in GRANT FRAGMENT statement 2-523
 - in GRANT statement 2-500
- WITH HOLD keywords
 - in DECLARE statement 2-349
 - in FOREACH statement 3-30
- WITH keyword
 - in ALTER FUNCTION statement 2-41
 - in ALTER PROCEDURE statement 2-48
 - in ALTER ROUTINE statement 2-51
 - in CONNECT statement 2-103
 - in CREATE AGGREGATE statement 2-115
 - in CREATE CAST statement 2-119
 - in CREATE DATABASE statement 2-124
 - in CREATE FUNCTION statement 2-146
 - in CREATE INDEX statement 2-178
 - in CREATE PROCEDURE statement 2-200
 - in CREATE VIEW statement 2-334
 - in DECLARE statement 2-349
 - in GRANT FRAGMENT statement 2-523
 - in GRANT statement 2-500
 - in OPEN statement 2-566
 - in SET Database Object Mode statement 2-703
 - in SET DEBUG FILE TO statement 2-712
 - in SET EXPLAIN statement 2-730
 - in SET PLOAD FILE statement 2-755
 - in TRUNCATE statement 2-802
- WITH LISTING IN keywords
 - in CREATE FUNCTION statement 2-146
 - in CREATE PROCEDURE statement 2-200
- WITH LOG keywords, in CREATE DATABASE statement 2-124
- WITH LOG MODE ANSI keywords, in CREATE DATABASE 2-125
- WITH MAX keywords, in
 - ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR statement 2-8
- WITH NO LOG keywords
 - in CREATE Temporary TABLE statement 2-286
 - in SELECT statement 2-683, 2-685
- WITH REOPTIMIZATION keywords, in
 - OPEN statement 2-566
- WITH RESUME keywords
 - in ON EXCEPTION statement 3-45
 - in RETURN statement 3-52
- WITH ROWIDS keywords
 - in ALTER FRAGMENT statement 2-27
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-259
- WITHOUT ERROR keywords
 - in ALTER TABLE statement 2-64
 - in CREATE INDEX statement 2-178
 - in CREATE TABLE statement 2-247
 - in SET Database Object Mode statement 2-703
- WITHOUT HEADINGS keywords,
 - in OUTPUT statement 2-577
- WITHOUT keyword
 - in BEGIN WORK statement 2-91
 - in CREATE INDEX statement 2-178
 - in OUTPUT statement 2-577
 - in SET Database Object Mode statement 2-703
- WORK keyword
 - in BEGIN WORK statement 2-91
 - in COMMIT WORK statement 2-100
 - in ROLLBACK WORK statement 2-632
- WORK WITHOUT REPLICATION keywords, in
 - BEGIN WORK statement 2-91

X

X/Open compliance level Intro-22
 X/Open mode
 FETCH statement 2-458
 SET DESCRIPTOR
 statement 2-725

Y

YEAR function
 defined 4-152
 SQL 4-156
 YEAR keyword
 in DATETIME data type 4-71
 in DATETIME Field Qualifier
 segment 4-231
 in INTERVAL data type 4-234
 in INTERVAL Field Qualifier
 segment 4-223

Z

Zoned decimal, in external
 tables 2-133
 ZONED keyword, in CREATE
 EXTERNAL TABLE
 statement 2-132

Symbols

(escape character), allowing
 newlines in quoted
 strings 4-262
 !, exclamation point
 generating smart-large-object
 filename 4-150
 ", double quotes
 around quoted string 4-260
 in quoted string 4-262
 with delimited identifiers 4-208,
 4-211
 \$INFORMIXDIR/etc/sqlhosts. *See*
 sqlhosts file.
 %, percent sign, as wildcard 4-37
 (|), pipe character 2-140, 2-687

*, asterisk
 as wildcard character 4-38
 arithmetic operator 4-73
 use in SELECT 2-636
 +, plus sign, arithmetic
 operator 4-73
 --, double dash, comment
 symbol 1-7
 -, minus sign, arithmetic
 operator 4-73
 .., period
 dot notation 4-93
 /, division symbol, arithmetic
 operator 4-73
 ?, question mark
 generating unique large-object
 filename with 4-150
 placeholder in prepared
 statement
 requires OPEN...USING 2-572
 replacement options in USING
 clause 2-572
 ?, question mark
 as placeholder in PREPARE 2-580
 as wildcard 4-38
 naming variables in PUT 2-597
 [...], square brackets
 as wildcard characters 4-38
 \, backslash
 escape character with
 UNLOAD 2-811
 \, backslash, as wildcard
 character 4-37
 ^, caret, as wildcard character 4-38
 _ , underscore, as wildcard 4-37
 {}, braces, comment symbol 1-7
 ||, concatenation operator 4-73,
 4-87
 ', single quotes
 around quoted string 4-260
 in quoted string 4-262